



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

B

956,583



824.5

M186

268

V.3





1211

AN ENGLISH GRAMMAR:

METHODICAL, ANALYTICAL, AND HISTORICAL.

WITH A TREATISE ON THE ORTHOGRAPHY, PROSODY, INFLECTIONS
AND SYNTAX OF THE ENGLISH TONGUE;

*AND NUMEROUS AUTHORITIES CITED IN ORDER OF HISTORICAL
DEVELOPMENT.*

By PROFESSOR MAETZNER,
OF BERLIN.

TRANSLATED FROM THE GERMAN, WITH THE SANCTION OF THE AUTHOR,

By CLAIR JAMES GRECE, LL.D.,
FELLOW OF THE PHILOLOGICAL SOCIETY.

IN THREE VOLUMES.—Vol. III.

LONDON: JOHN MURRAY.

BOSTON:

ROBERTS, BROTHERS.

1874.



CONTENTS.

Second Part. The Doctrine of the Joining of Words and Sentences.

Section The First. The Doctrine of the Joining of Words, or, of the Simple Sentence.

The adverbial Determinations of the Sentence.

The intermediate forms of the Verb as adverbial Determinations.

	Pag.
the Infinitive	1
the pure Infinitive	1
1) as subject	1
2) as predicative Determination	3
3) in the adverbial Relation	3
a) with transitive Verbs <i>will, shall, may must, can — dare, need, ought, gin, have, bid, do, make — see, behold, view, espy, mark, watch, hear, feel, find, know, perceive, discern, observe</i> and others — <i>list, please, wish, desire, intend, deign, teach, help</i> and others.	3
b) with intransitive Verbs of motion (<i>go, come</i>)	16
c) after the Particles <i>as</i> and <i>than</i>	17
4) independently (elliptically)	18
the prepositional Infinitive with <i>to</i>	19
1) as Subject	20
2) as predicative complement	21
3) in the objective and adverbial relation	21
a) with transitive Verbs	22
α) the Active in its relation to the mere infinitive as object . .	22
β) the construction of the accusative with the Infinitive . . .	25
γ) the notions <i>have</i> and <i>give</i> with an accusative and the infinitive active of a transitive Verb	30
d) with the passive of verbs which besides a case of the Object have the infinitive	31
b) with intransitive Verbs	33
α) <i>be</i>	33
β) Verbs of motion	35
γ) Verbs of Rest	36
δ) Verbs denoting inclination, utility, capacity and tendency .	36
ε) Verbs expressing notions of activity of the emotions . . .	37
4) in immediate combination with the adjective	37

	Pag.
a) Adjectives expressing readiness, inclination appropriateness etc.	37
b) Adjectives like certain, sure, worthy, content, happily, tired etc.	39
c) Adjectives like easy, hard, important, necessary, beautiful, agreeable, new etc.	40
5) in combination with the substantive	41
a) with the meaning of a genitive of the Latin geround	41
b) in immediate combination with an abstract or concrete substantive notion	43
6) Annexed to sentences with determinations of kind or measure (<i>so, as, such, enough, too, more</i>)	44
7) the infinitive as result, purpose or motive of an act	44
a) the active subject also that of the infinitive	44
b) the infinitive in looser connection in the place of a causal Determination	46
8) the prepositional infinitive in the abridgment of interrogative and relative dependent sentences	47
9) the prepositional infinitive stands independently	48
a) in emotional expression	48
b) of parenthetical nature	49
Repetition and Omission of the particle <i>to</i> with a succession of infinitives	50
1) with Infinitives of equal degree	50
2) with Infinitives of unequal degree	52
The prepositional Infinitive with <i>for to</i>	53
1) indicates a teleological Determination	54
2) in the grammatical import of a subject and object	54
a) gerundially with <i>be</i>	55
b) with Adjectives of readiness or of emotion	55
c) with substantives like a genitive of the gerund	56
d) attaches itself to Determinations of kind and measure	56
e) to express the motive and causality or an equivalent	56
f) in the abridged interrogative sentence	56
g) following a preceding infinitive of the same degree with or without <i>to</i>	56
The prepositional Infinitive with <i>at</i>	57
Tenses of Infinitives	58
1) Infinitive of the Present	58
2) Infinitive of the Preterite	59
a) with a verb of the predicate tense	59
b) with a verb of the predicate in the tenses of the past	59
Interchange of the Infinitive with a dependent sentence	62
The Participles	62
The Participle of the Present	62
1) as sharing the character of the adjective	63
a) its attachment in a predicative and completing manner to intransitive verbs	63
a) with <i>be</i>	63
b) with intransitive verbs of motion rest and abiding	63
b) with transitive verbs with a reference back to the subject	64
c) attaching itself to the subject as well as the object as in concord and contemporaneous	65
d) coinciding with the infinitive in connection with an objective Determination of the Sentence	65
e) expressing various logical relations, for which dependent sentences may be substituted	67
f) as an adjective in the narrower sense	68
g) as an absolute participle	70
2) as a gerund	73

Contents.

	Pag.
a) employed as a grammatical and logical subject	74
b) as a predicative determination	74
c) as an objective Determination	74
d) with Prepositions	75
The compound participle of the past of the active	78
1) a) annexed to the subject and object of the sentence	78
b) standing absolutely	78
2) analogously to the gerund	78
The participle of the perfect	79
1) as a predicative Determination	79
2) annexed to the subject or object in the sentence	79
3) Its logical relations correspond to those of the participle present	82
4) as an adjective	83
5) standing absolutely	85
6) passing over into the meaning of the active	86
The compound participle of the passive	87
1) a) predicative	88
b) standing absolutely with a particular subject	88
2) in connection with <i>being</i>	89
compared with <i>having been</i>	89
1) a) leaning upon the subject or object	89
b) standing absolutely	89
2) in the manner of a gerund	89
D. The Adverb	90
1) a) coinciding in form with the adjective	93
b) coinciding in form with the prepositions	93
2) falling into different classes according to meaning	100
a) α) the adverbs of place in general (where, whence, whither)	100
β) to denote a space determinable subjective and referred to abstract objects falling space	102
γ) <i>there</i> pleonastically	104
b) adverbs of time	105
a) Determinations of the when, as well as of repetition and succession in time	105
β) since when? from when?	109
γ) how long?	110
c) adverbs of the kind and the manner	111
α) <i>who, thus, so</i>	111
β) <i>otherwise</i>	116
γ) affirmative and negative particles	117
d) Causal adverbs	136
3) in the place of a predicative and an attributive determination	137
a) predicatively	137
b) attributively	138
III. The attributive Determinations	140
A. The attributive relation in the narrower sense	140
1) determinative Determinations	140
a) the article	141
the definite article	141
α) In general	141
β) continued with single classes of substantives	144
αα) concrete names of kinds	144
a) names of things, limited to an individual	144
b) names of things for persons	145
c) Names of Things	149
d) Names of Kinds of Persons and things generalized	153
ββ) Proper names	153

	Page
a) Names of persons with another attribut. Determin.	153
b) Names of Peoples, parties, sects	157
c) Proper names of impersonal objects	168
γγ) Collectives	162
δδ) Names of Materials	163
εε) abstract substantives	164
γ) the mere article used substantively	164
αα) adjectives and participles	165
ββ) Numerals	166
δ) the definite article connected with substantives determinately defined	167
ε) <i>the</i> before <i>which</i>	168
ζ) the definite article with quantitative determinations	168
η) the definite article added to an adjective	170
θ) before the comparative of adjectives and adverbs	171
Repetition and Nonrepetition of the definite article	172
The indefinite article.	176
α) αα) originally only with names of kinds	176
ββ) according to its nature only with singular notions	178
γγ) denotes any individual	179
β) connected with other substantives than names of kinds	180
αα) Proper names	180
ββ) abstract substantives	181
γ) Transformation of an adjective into a substantive not capable of inflection	182
δ) the indefinite article with pronouns	183
αα) <i>what, such, many</i>	183
ββ) <i>one, other</i>	185
γγ) <i>half</i>	187
Repetition and Nonrepetition of indefinite article	188
The omission of the defin. and indefn. article in particular	190
α) The so-called saxon genitive	191
β) in complete or incomplete comparative sentences	191
γ) in negative and interrogative sentences (<i>never, ever</i>)	192
δ) with the superlative of the adjective	193
ε) with the inumeration or compression and opposition of substantives	193
ζ) Repetition of the same substantive	194
η) in the predicative relation	195
αα) Nominative of the Singular	195
ββ) the predicative accusative	197
θ) in the adverbial relation of the sentence	198
αα) the case of the object	198
ββ) in prepositional members	200
α) with local determinations (earth, land, bottom, coast, sea)	200
β) with an adjective	204
γ) in the attributive relation	204
αα) attributive adjective	204
ββ) the genitive	205
*) in independent or elliptical members of the sentence	207
b) the Numeral the Root number	207
α) in concord with the substantive	207
β) with the partitive genitive and <i>of</i>	209
γ) like <i>both</i> and <i>all</i> appositively	209
δ) for the ordinal number	209
ε) elliptically	210
The Ordinal number	211

	Pag.
α) with another determination or the definite article	212
β) with the indefinite article	212
γ) Periphrasis of a partitive genitive based upon <i>of</i> with a substantive	213
δ) elliptically	214
The remaining numerals	214
α) Fractional Numbers	214
β) Multiplicative numerals	215
c) Pronominal adjectives	215
The possessive Pronoun	215
α) interchanging with the personal pronoun accompanied by <i>of</i>	215
β) Reference of a relative pronoun to the person indicated	218
γ) with adjectives especially in the comparative	218
δ) with the vocative	219
ε) strengthened by <i>own</i>	220
ζ) with defining determinations (<i>this, which, both, all, half</i> etc.)	220
η) the connection with <i>of</i>	220
θ) combination of a substantive with <i>his</i> instead of the simple genitive	223
ι) a substantive determined by different possessives	224
κ) Transition of <i>thy, thine</i> into <i>your, yours</i> in addresses	225
λ) used substantively or elliptically of persons and things	225
μ) omitted	226
ν) its omission	226
The demonstrative pronoun	228
α) Opposition of <i>this</i> and <i>that</i>	228
β) <i>this</i>	229
γ) <i>that</i>	231
δ) <i>this</i> and <i>that</i> with the plural	233
ε) <i>yon, yond, yonder</i>	234
ζ) strengthening by <i>same</i>	234
η) Repetition of <i>this</i> and <i>that</i>	235
The interrogative pronoun	236
α) <i>which</i>	236
β) <i>what</i>	237
The relative pronoun	238
α) Repetition of a substantive notion	238
β) Substitution of another substantive notion	239
γ) Reference of the substantive cited by <i>which</i> to members of sentences not taken, substantively or to entire sentences	239
The indeterminate pronoun	240
<i>one</i>	240
α) with temporal substantives	240
β) standing alone	241
γ) used substantively	242
<i>no none</i>	244
α) in general	244
β) <i>none</i> isolated	246
γ) <i>none</i> used substantively	247
<i>some</i>	247
α) adjectively	247
β) with reference to a preceding substantive	249
γ) used substantively	259
<i>enough</i>	250
α) immediately annexed to a substantive	250
β) adjectively	250
γ) used substantively	250

	Page
<i>few</i>	251
α) annexed to the substantive notion	251
β) referred back	251
γ) used substantively	251
<i>any</i>	252
α) its import in affirmative assertive, and commanding, as well as interrogatory, conditional and negative sentences	252
β) <i>any</i> standing alone, referring back	253
γ) used substantively	254
<i>many</i>	254
α) immediately accompanied by a substantive	254
β) used substantively	255
<i>much</i>	255
<i>each</i> and <i>every</i>	260
α) the adjective combination of both	260
β) referred backwards	261
<i>either</i> and <i>neither</i>	262
α) in combination with a substantive	263
β) absolutely	263
<i>other</i>	264
α) annexed to the substantive	264
β) in reference back	264
γ) with the expression of totality	265
<i>such</i>	266
α) in immediate combination with the substantive	266
β) referred back	268
γ) used substantively	268
<i>all</i>	269
α) in combination with substantive notions	269
β) referred backward	272
γ) used substantively	273
<i>sundry, certain, several, different, divers</i>	274
Repetition and Nonrepetition of the indeterminate pronouns	274
The indeterminate pronouns in the partitive relation	275
α) in combination with the plural	275
β) accompanied by a singular with <i>of</i>	275
2) Qualitative determinations	278
The Adjective	279
a) determines a substantive in the stricter sense	279
b) also the noninflected adjective used substantively	279
c) after the indeterminate pronouns compounded with <i>thing</i>	280
d) simple and periphrastic degrees of comparison	281
α) the comparative	281
β) the superlative	281
γ) both in combination with a notion to be taken partitively introduced by <i>of</i>	284
e) the adjective referred to more than one substantive	286
f) <i>several</i> adjectives applied to the same substantive	287
α) primitive predicates of one and the same subject	287
αα) Inordination	287
ββ) Coordination	287
β) the various adjectives originally predicates of various sub- jectives	288
αα) in the singular	288
ββ) in the plural	289
g) the adjective determined by adverbs	289
The adnominal substantive	291

Contents.

IX

	Pag.
The genitive	291
a) The closer relation of the adnominal genitive	292
a) genitive of the subject	292
b) the objective genitive	293
b) the adnominal genitive with determinations of measure	294
c) appositive genitive of a proper name after a name of a kind	295
d) repetition of the genitive for the sake of stress	295
e) the genitive without repetition of the word of relation	296
f) the genitive used elliptically	297
g) two genitives preceding a substantive	297
h) Nondenotation of the genitive	298
The accusative	298
The Substantive with prepositions	299
of	299
off and out of	311
from	311
to (unto)	311
toward, towards	313
into	314
up and down	314
through	314
across, round, around	314
against	314
in	315
on, upon	316
at	317
by	317
with	317
between, betwixt	318
for	318
before	319
after	319
over	319
above	319
under	320
within, without	320
beyond	320
over against	320
Pronouns and verbs with attributive determination	321
B Apposition	322
The appositive substantive	322
a) as an explanatory determination to another substantive	322
b) leaning upon a pronoun	325
c) apposition with a possessive pronoun	326
d) in the train of members of sentences, sentences and constructions	327
The appositive adjective	327
a) with the substantive	327
b) with pronouns	328
The appositive pronoun and numeral	328

	Pag.
Section the Second. The Doctrine of the Joining of Sentences.	
The Coordination of Sentences	330
A) Contraction of coordinate Sentences	330
1) Various subjects combined with the same notion of activity	330
2) Various determinations of a predicative or adverbial kind combined with the same notion of activity	331

3) Several notion of activity combined with the same subject . . .	
4) Various notions of activity referred to the same predicative or adverbial determinations . . .	
B) Syndetic coordination . . .	
1) Copulative Coordination . . .	
a) <i>and</i> connects agreeing members of a series of thoughts with one another . . .	
b) <i>and</i> combines notions allied in sense, standing opposed to one another . . .	
c) manifold repetition of the word in a copulative manner . . .	
d) <i>and</i> at the beginning of a sentence . . .	
e) <i>and</i> connecting sentences and members of sentences in an illustrative manner . . .	
f) the sentence with <i>and</i> contains the consequence . . .	
g) <i>and</i> connects the contrary . . .	
h) <i>also, eke, besides, more, over, further, now</i> . . .	
i) <i>and . . . and, both . . . and, as well as . . . — alike</i> . . .	
<i>and, what . . . and what, what . . . and, what . . . what</i> . . .	
k) a negative sentence connected with an affirmative one . . .	
α) by <i>and</i> . . .	
β) by <i>neither</i> . . .	
l) one negative sentence is connected with another . . .	
α) by <i>neither, or</i> . . .	
β) with alternative reference by <i>neither . . . nor . . . nor</i> . . .	
γ) omission of the negation in the first member . . .	
δ) <i>neither</i> at the end of a sentence . . .	
m) mutual reference of opposed members . . .	
2) disjunctive coordination . . .	
a) α) by the simple <i>or (either)</i> . . .	
β) members opposed in form only . . .	
γ) the annexed member presents a correction . . .	
δ) Inference with <i>or</i> . . .	
b) articulation made more sharply prominent by <i>either . . . or, or . . . or, either . . . either</i> . . .	
c) the disjunctive question (<i>whether . . . or, — or</i>) . . .	
d) <i>or, either . . . or, or . . . or</i> attach themselves to a negation . . .	
e) <i>either</i> at the end of sentences after a preceding <i>or</i> . . .	
f) <i>else, otherwise</i> . . .	
3) the adversative coordination . . .	
a) <i>but</i> . . .	
b) <i>yet (still)</i> . . .	
c) <i>nevertheless (not the less)</i> . . .	
d) <i>notwithstanding (nonobstant)</i> . . .	
e) <i>though</i> . . .	
f) <i>however, howsoever</i> . . .	
g) <i>meantime, meanwhile</i> . . .	
4) the causal coordination . . .	
a) <i>for</i> introduces the reason . . .	
b) the conclusion introduced by . . .	
α) <i>therefore, wherefore</i> . . .	
β) <i>thereon, thereupon</i> . . .	
γ) <i>then</i> . . .	
δ) <i>hence, whence</i> . . .	
ε) <i>so</i> . . .	
ζ) <i>ergo</i> . . .	
η) <i>accordingly, consequently</i> . . .	
C. Asyndetic Coordination . . .	

	Pag.
1) The copulative Coordination interchanged with the asyndetic	370
a) Sentences with adverbs denoting the succession	370
b) lively narrative	371
c) where parts of sentences recur	371
d) in a climax	373
e) with an apposition	373
f) Mixture of a syndetic and syndetic connection	374
α) Termination by <i>and</i>	374
β) Connection by couples	375
g) Polysyndetic connection	375
2) the disjunctive coordination more rarely undenoted	376
a) Exclusion of one member by the other	376
b) Mixture of syndetic and asyndetic disjunction	376
α) <i>or</i> with the last or with several members	377
β) opposition of Double members connected by <i>or</i>	377
3) Asyndetic antithesis	377
a) Limitation	377
b) Negation	378
4) in the causal relation	378
a) the member connected asyndetically contains the reason	378
b) the succession	378
II. The subordination of sentences	379
A. Different terms for the members	379
1) the protasis and the apodosis	379
2) the intermediate sentence	380
3) the parenthesis	381
4) Compass of a period	383
a) a principal and a dependent sentence	383
b) a principal sentence with several dependent sentences	383
α) the dependent sentences are of the same degree	383
β) the dependent sentences are not of the same degree	384
γ) the dependent sentences are related grammatically indifferently to one another	385
c) several principal sentences subordinated to one and to several dependent sentences	385
Words of reference in the principal and in the dependent sentence	386
A. Correlatives of the dependent sentence in the principal sentence	386
1) <i>it, this, that</i>	386
2) <i>there, thence, thither, then, therefore</i>	387
3) <i>yet, still, nevertheless</i>	389
4) <i>so</i>	389
5) Correlative of the adjective sentence	389
B. Conjunctions in the dependent sentence	389
1) <i>that</i>	389
a) <i>after that, before that, ere that, till that, since that, for that, because that, but that, notwithstanding that, in that</i>	390
b) <i>while that, if that, though that, lest that, in that</i>	393
c) <i>how that, why that, whether that, where that, when that, who — what — that — which that, as that, so that</i>	395
2) <i>that</i> instead of the repetition of another particle	398
3) Repetition of <i>that</i>	399
4) <i>that</i> falls away	399
Abbreviation and contraction of the dependent with the principal sentence	402
A. Substantive sentences	402
B. Sentences of the determination of the determination of place	403
C. Sentences of the determination of time	403
D. Abbreviated causal sentences	404

	Pag.
E. Conditional sentences	404
F. Concessive sentences	404
G. Final sentences	405
H. Modal sentences with <i>as</i> and <i>than</i>	405
Ellipsis of a sentence	407
A. The substantive sentence with <i>that</i>	407
1) denotes a wish	408
2) suggests a principal sentence which would express surprise, indignation regret	408
3) in combination with <i>not</i> and <i>only</i>	408
4) rarely an elliptical final sentence with <i>that</i>	409
5) <i>that I know</i>	409
B. Elliptic conditional sentence	410
The dependent sentence in particular according to its sorts	411
A. The dependent sentence as a subject and as a predicative determin.	411
1) as subject	411
a) the substantive sentence with <i>that</i>	411
b) the indirect interrogative sentence	412
c) the adjective sentence used substantively	412
2) as a predicative determination	412
B. The dependent sentence as an adverbial determination of the sentence	412
The case sentence	412
1) a) the case sentence with <i>that</i> after notions of activity	413
b) with adjectives	414
c) adnominally	414
2) the dependent sentence with <i>lest</i>	415
3) the dependent sentence with <i>but that</i> or <i>but</i>	416
4) indirect interrogative sentences	419
a) the sentence itself called in question	419
b) a determination of the sentence	421
c) attached to the principal sentence by a preposition	423
The adverbial sentence	423
The dependent sentence of the determination of place	423
1) introduced by a relative adverb of place	423
2) the adverb of place suggests a circumstance of time	424
3) <i>whereas</i>	425
4) Generalization by the addition of <i>ever</i> or <i>soever</i>	426
The dependent sentence of the determination of time	427
1) When? in general within one of the three spheres of time	427
a) \alphawhen	427
β) various logical relations of the dependent to the principal sent.	439
γ) <i>when as</i> obsolete)	430
d) Generalization by <i>ever</i> , <i>soever</i>	430
b) The space of time is determined by a substantive as the correlative of the dependent sentence	431
\alphawhen	431
\betathat	431
c) the dependent sentence leans upon the temporal <i>now</i>	433
d) Transfer of the modal sentence to the region of time (<i>as</i>)	433
e) <i>against</i>	435
2) the immediate coincidence and the immediate succession of acts	435
a) <i>as soon as</i> , <i>soon as</i>	435
b) <i>no sooner but</i> and <i>no sooner than</i>	437
c) <i>scarce</i> , <i>scarcely</i> , <i>hardly</i> — <i>when</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>before</i> or <i>but</i>	437
3) the duration of the activity	438
a) <i>the while</i> , <i>while</i> , <i>whilst</i>	438

	Pag.
b) <i>as (so) long as</i>	441
4) the duration of the activity contained in the principal sentence denoted from its point of commencement or up to its final point	441
a) <i>α) since</i>	441
<i>β) since causally</i>	442
b) <i>till, until</i>	443
5) The dependent sentence contains a preceding or succeeding act	445
a) <i>after</i>	445
b) <i>ere (or), before (afore)</i>	446
<i>α) The dependent sentence with ere is the older</i>	446
<i>β) before not distinct from ere</i>	447
<i>γ) both indicate preference (whether, than)</i>	447
The dependent sentence of the causal relation	448
Dependent sentence of the cause	448
The causal sentence in the narrower sense	448
1) a) <i>that</i>	448
b) after a comparative <i>that</i> interchanging with <i>because</i> and <i>as</i>	449
c) <i>that</i> after interrogative sentences to express the motive	450
2) <i>for, for that</i>	450
3) <i>because</i>	451
4) <i>in that</i>	452
5) a) the modal sentence with <i>as</i>	453
b) <i>forasmuch as, inasmuch as</i>	453
6) <i>now and since</i>	454
7) <i>seeing, considering (that)</i>	454
The conditional sentence	454
1) introduced by <i>if</i>	454
a) the realization of its subject matter remains undecided	454
b) the questioning or negation of it is supposed by the context	455
c) the context teaches the validity in fact of the condit. sentence	455
d) the conditional sentence borders on the temporal sentence	456
e) conditional and exceptive relation with <i>if</i> and <i>if not</i>	456
2) <i>and, an', (and if, an if)</i>	457
3) introduced by <i>so</i>	457
4) periphrastic forms, <i>on, (upon) condition (that), conditionally that, in case (that), provided (that) — say, suppose</i>	459
5) inverted form of words of the question	459
6) the exceptive case introduced by <i>unless, 'less</i>	461
7) the exceptive <i>but</i>	462
a) with affirmative assertive, principal sentences	462
b) with negative principal sentences (<i>scarce, scarcely</i>)	463
c) with interrogatory principal sentences	465
d) before a member, a sentence or incomplete sentence	466
<i>α) with affirmative determinations</i>	466
<i>β) in reference to negative determinations</i>	467
<i>γ) in reference to an interrogative sentence</i>	468
8) <i>without</i>	468
9) <i>save, saving, except, excepting (that), reserved</i>	468
10) <i>though</i>	469
The concessive sentence	470
1) a) <i>though</i>	470
b) <i>though</i> takes the place of the conditioning <i>if</i> in the combinations <i>as though, what though</i>	472
c) <i>if</i> may take the place of the concessive sentence	472
2) <i>albeit, albe</i>	473
3) <i>notwithstanding</i>	474
4) Sentences with inverted subject	474

5) disjunctive sentences	3
6) generalized sentences (<i>ever, soever, so</i>)	3
7) the modal instead of the concessive sentence	3
Dependent sentences of the consequence	3
The consecutive sentence	3
1) in the dependent sentence <i>that</i>	3
a) <i>that</i> , without leaning upon a modal determination	3
b) negative dependent sentence with <i>that</i> leaning upon a negative principal sentence	3
2) Leaning of the dependent sentence with <i>that</i> on <i>so, such</i> and <i>that</i>	3
3) after <i>so</i> and <i>such</i> <i>that</i> is exchanged with <i>as</i>	3
4) a dependent sentence with <i>but</i> substituted for a negative consequence	3
The final sentence	3
1) introduced by <i>that</i>	3
a) <i>that</i> standing alone	3
b) <i>so that</i>	3
c) <i>in order that</i>	3
d) <i>for that</i>	3
2) <i>lest</i> , especially in the negative final sentence	3
The modal sentence	3
1) relation of equality or assimilation	3
a) $\alpha)$ <i>as</i> — <i>as</i>	3
$\beta)$ <i>so</i> — <i>as</i>	3
$\gamma)$ <i>as</i> — <i>so</i>	3
$\delta)$ <i>as</i> — <i>thus</i>	3
$\epsilon)$ <i>as</i> — <i>such</i>	3
$\zeta)$ <i>as</i> — <i>the same</i>	3
b) <i>as</i> without correlative	3
$\alpha)$ <i>also, als, so</i> supplanted by <i>as</i>	3
$\beta)$ various shades of the sentences and parts of sentences annexed by <i>as</i>	3
$\alpha\alpha)$ the dependent sentence contains an illustrative remark	3
$\beta\beta)$ — — — — — an asseveration	3
$\gamma\gamma)$ — — — — — compares an act with an assumed one	3
$\delta\delta)$ — — — — — becomes a causal sentence in the narrower sense	3
$\epsilon\epsilon)$ — — — — — transferred to the region of time	3
$\zeta\zeta)$ the notion with reference to which the members are compared, taken absolutely, or it has in the correlative an indication of the measure	3
$\eta\eta)$ members of sentences are added as instances to the asseveration of the principal sentence	3
$\theta\theta)$ <i>as</i> is associated with a predicative nominative and accus.	3
$\iota\iota)$ the same transformation with a notion otherwise appositive	3
$\gamma)$ <i>as</i> apparently used pleonastically	3
c) a proportional equation arises	3
$\alpha)$ <i>the</i> — <i>the</i>	3
$\beta)$ <i>as</i> — <i>so</i>	3
$\gamma)$ the members stand in a causal relation	3
$\delta)$ opposition of two superlatives	3
$\epsilon)$ the sentences introduced by <i>in proportion as</i>	3
2) Relation of inequality	3
a) <i>than</i> with a comparative	3
b) <i>than</i> conditioned by other notions	3
C. The dependent sentence as an attributive determination	3
The adjective sentence in the narrower sense	3

Contents.

XV

	Pag.
1) with <i>that</i> , <i>which</i> and <i>who</i>	510
a) <i>that</i>	510
b) <i>which</i>	513
c) <i>who</i>	517
2) The pronominal relative sentence represented by other forms of the sentence	520
a) <i>where</i> , <i>whence</i> , <i>whither</i>	520
b) <i>when</i>	521
c) <i>why</i>	521
d) the conjunction <i>that</i>	522
e) <i>as</i>	523
3) the relative pronoun suppressed	524
4) subordinate adjective sentences. — The second sentence not a relative one	525
5) Sentences with the adnominal <i>which</i> and <i>what</i>	526
a) <i>which</i>	526
b) <i>what</i>	526
The adjective sentence used substantively	528
1) Sentences with <i>who</i> , <i>whoever</i> , <i>whosoever</i>	528
2) with <i>what</i>	530
General remarks upon relative sentences	532
1) the relative sentence serves to connect a fact	532
2) a conditional substituted for the relative sentence	533
3) as a concessive sentence	534
4) the relative is attracted by the principal sentence	534

Section the Third. Of the Collocation of Words and Sentences.

I. The position of the subject and of the predicate	535
A. 1) in the indicative principal sentence the subject in the front	536
2) the sentence commences with the verb of the predicate	536
3) transposition of predicative determinations	537
4) the object placed in the front has as a consequence the inversion of the subject	538
5) particles or prepositional determinations effect an inversion of the subject	538
6) negative particles (<i>never</i> , <i>neither</i> , <i>nor</i>) in the front effect the same	541
7) in the principal sentence as the apodosis the inverted subject often stands after the verb of the predicate	541
B. In the interrogative sentence without an interrogative word the inversion of the subject the rule	542
C. Imperative sentences make the pronominal subject of the verb follow, likewise optative sentences	543
D. Dependent sentences	544
1) Substantive sentences	544
2) Sentences of the determination of place	544
3) Conditional and concessive sentences	544
4) Modal sentences	545
5) Adjective sentences	545
E. Position of the compound times of the verb of the predicate	545
II. The position of the adverbial determinations of the sentence	546
A. The Cases	546
1) the case of the object	546
2) the added factitive accusative	547
3) position of the accusative with determinations of measure	547
4) the case accompanied by a preposition	548
5) the vocative	550

B. The Participials	
1) the Infinitive	
a) as subject, b) otherwise qualified	
2) the Participles	
a) conceived as to their verbal character	
b) in the absolute participal construction	
c) the gerunds construed with prepositions	
C. The Adverb	
1) after the verb of the predicate	
2) at the front	
3) inserted between subject and verb	
4) Sentences with auxiliary verbs or modal verbs and completing particle or infinitive	
5) the adverb determines a single notion	
6) Position of <i>not</i>	
7) the sentence contains a number of adverbial determinations	
8) the adverb as representative of attributive determinations	
III. The position of attributive determinations of the sentence	
A. The determination of the substantive notion	
1) the article	
2) the numerals	
3) the pronouns	
B. The attributive adjective	
1) a single	
a) before the substantive	
b) placed after it	
2) more than one adjective	
a) precede, b) follow, c) arrange themselves about	
C. the adnominal substantive	
1) in the genitive, 2) in proportional members	
D. Apposition	
IV. Collocation of sentences	
A. In the relation of coordination	
B. In the relation of subordination	
1) the substantive sentence	
2) the adverbial sentence	
3) the adjective sentence	
4) position of introductive conjunctions	
5) Concatenation and Implication of dependent sentences	
Index of words and things	

C. The Intermediate Forms of the Verb as adverbial Determinations.

The Infinitive.

The Infinitive, as the abstract expression of the activity, which is denoted by its two forms in its becoming or in its completion, appears especially as an adverbial determination of the sentence and becomes a mean for abbreviating dependent sentences. It receives its more particularly determined sphere of time through the verb of the predicate or from the context generally. It is likewise, with reference to its subject, dependent upon other parts of the sentence, because its verbal nature is adapted to bring to remembrance the reference to a subject. It therefore essentially appears in the condition of grammatical dependence, and although, from its abstract nature, it may appear as a genuine substantive, therefore may itself become the subject of the sentence, it does not even then disdain the particle *to*, which also renders it externally recognisable as a subordinate member of the sentence.

The pure Infinitive.

The infinitive stands either with or without an accompanying particle. In the former case we call it the pure infinitive. Its use has been, in the course of time, limited to narrower bounds, yet it is still sometimes met with in Modern-English, where its combination with the particle *to* has long become familiar.

1. The pure infinitive sometimes becomes the subject of the sentence.

Have is have (SHAKSP., John 1, 1.). Mother what does *marry* mean? (LONGF. I. 132.) In these cases the infinitive is to be conceived in its whole abstract or material value; in others it leans, with a more particular reference to the activity of a subject and its further reference, on impersonal sentences with or without the neutral subject *it*, and appears as the logical or even grammatical subject of the sentence. *Will't please* you, *pass* along? (SHAKSP., Rich. III. 3, 1.) *Will't please* you, *hear* me? (Ant. a. Cleop. 2, 5.) *Will't please* your highness *walk*? (Lear 4, 7.) *May*

it please your highness sit? (Macb. 3, 4.) When *him list* the raskall routes *appall* (SPENSER, F. Qu. 1, 7, 25.). *Me lists* not tell what words were made (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 5, 25.). Him *booteth* not resist (SPENSER, F. Qu. 1, 3, 20.). Of him I gather'd honour; Which he, to seek of me again, perforce, *Behoves* me keep at utterance (SHAKSP., Cymb. 3, 1.). The last instances may also be referred here, although *list* and *behave* originally required a genitive, whose place the infinitive might take. The infinitive has for a long time not been felt with the meaning of a dependent case. Moreover, the pure infinitive sometimes occurs with impersonal sentences with a predicative adjective, as *good*, *better*, *best*, which often appears elliptically: 'Tis *best* put finger in the eye (SHAKSP., Taming 1, 1.). *It were best* not call (Cymb. 3, 6.). *It were best* not know myself (Macb. 1, 2.). *As good* dissemble that thou never mean'st, As first mean truth and then dissemble it (MARLOWE, Jew of M. 1, 2.). *Better* be with the dead, Whom we, to gain our place, have sent to peace (SHAKSP., Macb. 3, 2.). *Better* end here unborn (MILT., P. L. 11, 502.). *Better* dwell in the midst of alarms Than reign in this horrible place (COWP. p. 336). *Best* stand upon our guard (SHAKSP., Temp. 2, 1.). *Best* draw my sword (Cymb. 3, 6.). Truth's in a well — *best* leave that well alone (TAYLOR A. READE, Masks 2.). It seems inappropriate to regard these elliptical sentences as abbreviations of personal sentences, which occur with a similar predicative determination and the pure infinitive: *Thou wert better* gull the devil (SHAKSP., John 4, 3.). *I were best* leave him, for he will not hear (I Henry VI. 5, 3.). Madam, you're *best* consider (Cymb. 3, 2.). *We were best* look that your devil can answer the stealing of this same cup (MARLOWE, Doct. Faust 3, 3.). As little may we see therein abbreviations of personal sentences with the verb *have*. See further on *have*.

In all cases cited the infinitive with *to* is appropriate to the modern mode: in former times the pure infinitive frequently appears. Old-Engl.: As *him lust* devyse (CHAUC., C. T. 1792.). *Me list* not pley for age (3865.). *Me lest* yit ful wel slepe And pleie tweies and ones (SKUYS SAGES 1632.). Hens *behufys* the hy (TOWN. M. p. 135.). For thi *behofes* us fle and flytt (p. 136.). *It is beter* let hym in styлле, Than hereinne that he yow spille (RICH. C. DE L. 4137.). *It is better* hold that I have Then go from doore to doore and crave (TOWN. M. p. 11.). *Bettyr* is on huntynge goode (IPOM. 1244.). *Yete me is best* take mi chaunce, And *sle* me (mi?) childe, and do penance (LAY LE FREINE 107.). *Betere* hem were han y-be barouns (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 212.). *Wraththen* the . . . *Were* me loth (Anecd. p. 3.). Ah *me were* levere with lawe leose my lyf, Then so to fote hem *falle* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 158.). *Lerne* the bylese *Levest* me were (P. PLOUGHM. p. 452.). Halfsax.: *pan kinge luste* slepe (LAZAM. III. 214.). *Himm listte* pa Wel etenn off an appell (ORM. 8119.). *Himm birrp* nu forþwarrrd wazenn (18468.). Anglosax.: *Me gepuhte* witan þe (LUC. 1, 3.). Þus unc *gedafenað* calle rihtvisnisse *gefyllan* (MATH. 3, 15.). *þe* gebyrede *gevistfull* jan and *gehlissan* (LUC. 15, 32.). *Elcne* þara *þe* þas hōc *redan lyste* (BOETH., Proem.). *Hine ridan lyste* (34, 7.). Gif his *þe* gēman *lyst* (ÆLF. METRA 31, 1. Grein.). *Leofre ys* *us* bebn *beavungeu* for lare þanne hit ne *cunnan* (THORPE. Anal. p. 101.). *Eallum* *us* *leofre* *ys* *vicjan* mid þan *yrōlinge* þonne mic þe (p. 113.). *Gebeorhlice* [*ys*] *me* *faran* *tō* *eā* mid *scype* minum, þanne *faran* mid manegum *scypum* on huntunge hrane (p. 107.). *Plythlic* *pin*

C. The intermediate Forms of the Verb. The Infinitive. The pure Infin. 3

hit ys gefōn hval (ib.). Moreover the pure interchanges from early times with the prepositional infinitive. Old-Engl.: Now *liste me to lerne* etc. (DEPOS. or RICH. II. p. 8.). *Us list to speke* of no playe (IPOM. 1696.). *It behoveth the men to bere vitaille* with hem (MAENDEV. p. 58.). *This behovyth me noht*, With myn hondis *to baptyse* the (COV. MYST. p. 201.). *Loth him was* that dede *to don*, And wele *lother* his liif *for gon* (AMIS A. AMIL. 646.). Halfsax.: All swa *bihofepp* . . . *pe manuess Sune onn erpe*, *To wurpenn hofenn upp* (ORM. 16706.). *Lað him wes to leosen leouen* his leoden (LAJAM. II. 556.). *Leouere heom his to libben* bi þan wode-roten al swa þat wilde swin (I. 20. cf. I. 248. III. 161.). Even Anglosaxon uses the infinitive with *tō*: *Eaðere ys oðfende tō farenne* purh nædle þyrel, þonne se rica and se welega on Godes rice gā (MARC. 10, 25.). See Prepos. Infinitive.

The above mentioned personal sentences with a predicative complement are also met with in Old-Engl., employed in such wise as to represent the impersonal: *That gadkyng were as good Have grevyd me nought* (TOWN. M. p. 130.). Who so says hym agane *Were better be slane* (p. 85.). *I am lever etc*; What is drynk with oute mete? (p. 89.). The infinitive with *to* also occurs, as in Modern-English: *I am nought leef to gabbe* (CHAUC., C. T. 3510.). *Thou wer jayrer to be a pylgryme* (RICH. C. DE L. 1715.). *He were better* his dethe *to take* (TOWN. M. p. 187.). *To do what I am best* (p. 70.). Comp. Modern-Engl.: *You were best to go to bed* (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 5, 1. cf. Merch. of Ven. 2, 8.). Francis hastily endeavoured to recall what *he were best to say* (SCOTT). A dependent sentence stands instead of the infinitive in Old-Engl.: *I were lever* than alle wardly wyn, *That I had for hym onys onkynde* (TOWN. M. p. 40.). Nay yit *were I leysfer my child were dede* (p. 37.). In manuscripts the personal sentence sometimes interchanges with the impersonal: *A man were better dwell* in desert (CHAUC., C. T. p. 109. I. Tyrwh.), and: *It were better* to a man *to dwelle* in desert (p. 153. II. Wright). The transformation seems partly produced by analogies like *I am loth beside me is loth*, *I list beside me list*, *I place beside me pleaseth*, and the like, when the infinitive remained standing; partly a more particular reference to the adjective may have been given to the infinitive, such as may belong to the prepositional infinitive. Comp. Anglosax.: His hyldo is *unc betere tō gevinnanne* þonne his viðermædo (CAEDM. 656.). See Prepos. Infinitive.

2. As a predicative determination the pure infinitive is unusual. Comp. II. 1. p. 39.

3. In the adverbial relation the pure infinitive meets us, partly still alone justified, partly to be met with beside the prepositional.

a. We primarily consider the infinitive with transitive verbs, to which we also refer the so-called auxiliary and modal verbs.

will, shall, may, must, can, which are to be regarded as dependent verbs of the predicate, needing a more particular, concrete determination through a predicate, have preserved the pure infinitive from the most ancient times.

Will you never *love* any one but me? (DICKENS, Pickw. 2, 20.) *Shall* I *order* a private room? (2, 19.) *May* his turf *lie* lightly on him (THACKERAY, Engl. Humourists 4.). *I might have been inclined*, myself, to regard a coffin-nail as the dearest piece of ironmongery in the trade (DICKENS, Christm. Car. 1.). First and foremost, you *must know*, that I am descended from the great, O'Brien Borru (MARRYAT, Pet. Simple 1, 12.). If they *can also find* a color for connecting this violence with the inte-

rests of civil government, they can no longer be restrained from giving uncontrolled scope to vengeance and resentment (HUME, H. of E. 37.).

This is common to all periods of the tongue, as to the Anglosaxon: *lc ville faran* (A.-S. HOMIL. II. 372.). And *colde hine fordōn* (DEUTER. 9, 20.). *Nu ic eover sceal frum-cyn witan* (BEOV. 508.). *Ac vite gehva pāt se ne mæg nān fyr of heofenum āsendan, se pe on heofenum silf cuman ne mōt* (JOB in ETTM. 5, 1.). *Mān ne cūðon dōn nē dreogan* (CAEDM. 189.).

The form *willing* does not partake of this construction: *She is very willing to bid you farewell* (SHAKSP., Twelfth Night 2, 3.). Perhaps Samuel Johnson, who spoke slightly of Prior's verses, enjoyed them more than he *was willing to own* (THACKERAY, Engl. Humourists 4). *Willing* is attached to the construction of adjectives, as *unwilling*. These clinging to his cloak *unwilling to be* last (ROGERS, Hum. Life). The older weak verb *wilnen* frequently has *to*. Old-Engl.: And *wilned eft to slepe* (P. PLOTGM., p. 369.). Hallsax.: *Ich wilnie a mine þonke to walden al Rome* (LAJAM. II. 632). In Anglosaxon the infinitive stands with and without *to*. *Gif hwa geuilegied* (sic) *tō geuileane hū gedōn man he wās* (SAX. CHR. 1087.). And *He riðnode hine geseon* (LRC. 23, 8.). But in Old-English we sometimes meet, in the above named verbs, *to* with the infinitive. And *willest* of briddes . . . *to knowe* Why some be a-lough (P. PLOTGM. p. 241.), where however the weak verbal form is to be observed: *To do* yours bidding ay we *wille* (TOWNS. M. p. 38.). *To say* the best for sothe I *shalle* (p. 266.). My sovereyne, that suget I *shulde to be* (DEPOS. or RICH. II. p. 4.). My ded *to se* then *myght* he not (TOWNS. M. p. 329.). — In Shakespeare in the passage: O heaven! that one *might read* the book of fate, And *see* the revolution of the times make mountains level . . . and other times, *to see* The beachy girdle of the ocean Too wide for Neptune's hips (II Henry IV. 3, 1.) the remoteness of the last infinitive explains the similar phenomenon. — In Anglosaxon *tō* is also sometimes found with *cunnan*, to be able, know: *Randviggendra rim ne cunnan . . . tō geseccenne sōðum vordum* (CAEDM. 3863.). — The Old-Engl. *mon, mun, moun*, as well as *thar*, have the pure infinitive. See Vol. I. 323. Comp. Hallsax.: *pu wast wel pāt ne mune itt nobht Ben makedd þurh pāt kinde* (ORM. 14356.). Anglosax.: *Ne þearf he pāt gyldan* (LEGG. ÆLFRED. 28.).

dare, audere, has, besides the pure, also the prepositional infinitive.

I *dare swear* he is no hypocrite (SHAKSP., Much Ado¹, 1.). And, when his work is done, he *dares not sleep* (ROGERS, It. Bandidi). They *dare* not attempt such cruelty (SCOTT, Ivanh. 24.). *Darest thou appeal to it?* (ib.) If the matter were good . . . I *durst swear* it were his (SHAKSP., Lear 1. 2.). Other creature here, Beast, bird, insect, or worm *durst enter* none (MILT. P. L. 4, 703.). No sycophant or slave, that *dar'd oppose* Her sacred cause, but trembl'd when he rose (COWPER p. 10.). Mr. Knapps, who *dared not punish* me, while the Domine was present (MARRYAT, J. Faithf. 1. 3.). I *dared not trust* my own lady love (OXENFORD, Twice Killed 1, 1.). Thou, that *hast wasted* Earth, and *dar'd despise* Alike the wrath and mercy of the skies. Thy pomp is in the grave (COWP. p. 98.). The construction with the pure infinitive is, as we see, also transferred to the forms which have subsequently come in: I *dared, have dared*. On the other hand the prepositional infinitive is combined with all verbal forms

of *dare*, except with *durst*: Ne *dare to weepe* (SPENSER, F. Qu. 1, 3, 20.). You most not *dare*, for shame, *to talk* of mercy (SHAKSP., Henry V. 2, 2.). Ask him, why . . In their so sacred paths he *dares to tread* (Merry W. 4, 4.). Death's gall'ry! (might I *dare to call* it so.) (YOUNG, N. Th. 6, 333.) But when at last I *dared to speak* . . your lips moved not (TENNYNS. p. 90.). Why *have they dar'd to march* So many miles? (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 2, 3.) And what I once *durst do*, *have dar'd to justify* (ROWE, Fair Penit. 2, 2.). No living wight.. *Had dared to cross* the threshold stone (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 1, 1.). In general the use of the pure infinitive predominates.

The ancient language joins the pure infinitive to *dare*. Old-Engl.: Mid wuche bodi *dar y come* in bi siȝt ene? (R. OF GL. I. 35.) Y ne *dar þe yse* (ib.). Ther the poore *dar plede* (P. PLOUGH. p. 280.). We *dar not wel loken* (p. 10.). Yonge children *dorste pleyne* (p. 253.). They *dorste not loken* ou oure Lord (p. 393.). Non ther *durst abyde* hys dent (RICH. C. DE L. 6098.) and so forth. Hallsax.: þat þu *derst of Rome wiðsuggen* æi dome (LAȜAM. II, 619.). Wha hit þe *durre ræden* (ib.). Þurth whatt teȝ himm Ne *durstenn* noht *wippstannenn* (ORM. 16170.). Anglosax.: Gif þu furdur *dearst* tō þam ānhagan aldre *genēðan* (ANDR. 1350.). Ic his *bidan* ne dear (COD. EXON. 397, 6.). Ne *dear* ic hām *faran* (GEN. 44, 34.). Selfa ne *dorste* under yða gevin aldre *genēðan*, drihtscipe *dreðgan* (BEOV. 2941.).

need, from the Anglosax. *nēdan*, compellere, cogere (see Vol. II. 1. p. 172.) mostly takes the pure infinitive, which is related to the verb like a case of the object.

What *need we fear*, who knows it? (SHAKSP., Macb. 5, 1.) You *need but plead* your honorable privilege (All's Well 4, 5.). His death is all I *need relate* (BYR., Bride 2, 13.). Her kindness and her worth to spy, You *need but gaze* on Ellen's eye (SCOTT, Lady of the L. 1, 19.). O *need I tell* that passion's name? (ib.) Thou *need'st not do* that (MARLOWE, Doct. Faust 2, 4.). I *need not add* more fuel to your fire (SHAKSP., John 5, 4.). Valour *need never pray* to Fortune (BULW., Rienzi 2, 4.). Thou *needst say* no more (SCOTT, Ivanh. 24.). — Alongside thereof we also meet with the prepositional infinitive in affirmative and negative sentences: I was as virtuously given as a gentleman *need to be* (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 3, 3.). I *need not to repent* (Rich. II. 3, 4.). You *need not to have pricked* me (II. Henry IV. 3, 2.). Vice is a monster of so frightful mien, As, to be hated, *needs but to be seen* (POPE, Essay on M. 2, 217.).

The construction of *need* with the pure infinitive has not obtained a wider extension till modern times; it is rare in Old-English. Old-Engl.: What *nede ye be abast*? (TOWN. M. p. 143.) along with: Whan the mynstres of that chirche *neden to maken* any reparacyoun (MAUNDEV. p. 174.). Ye *nede not to fle* (TOWN. M. p. 149.). The verb, formerly frequently impersonal, has likewise mostly the infinitive with *to*; Now *needeth him* no longer labour *spend* (SPENSER, F. Qu. 1, 1, 26.). Old-Engl.: Thou art so wys, it *nedeth* nat the *teche* (CHAUC., C. T. 3599.). Which *needith* not *to reherse* (6890.). *Nedith* no more for him *to gon ne ryde* (9489.). What *nedys the to bralle*? (TOWN. M. p. 150.). What *nedith* it *to jere you* (Cov. MYST. p. 388.), where we may regard the infinitive as the logical subject. In Hallsaxon and Anglosaxon this use of *neden* is unknown.

ought, belonging to *owe*, Anglosax. *āgan*, *habere*, which, with postponement of its temporal meaning, remains faithful to its notion in denoting an obligation or a necessity, is met with here and there in Modern-English accompanied by the pure infinitive, although the infinitive with *to* originally belongs to it.

To conceal, and not divulge His secrets to be scann'd by them, who *ought* Rather *admire* (MILT., P. L. 8, 73.). If he break the peace he *ought* to *enter* into a quarrel with fear and trembling (SHAKSP., Much Ado 2, 3.). Men's hearts *ought* not to be set against one another (CARLYLE, Past a. Pres. 1, 3.).

The ancient tongue not rarely uses the pure infinitive. Old-Engl.: Wip here bodies, þat *azte* be so free (R. of GL. I. 12.). This *auhte* make men aferd (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 341.). For him *we ahte* oure honden *wrynge* (p. 246.). I *oughte* ben hyere than she (P. PLOUGHM. p. 29.). Glader *ought* his freend *ben* of his deth (CHAUC., C. T. 3053.). Wel *ought* I of such murmur taken heede (8511.). *We oughen* require it with gret contricioun (ib. p. 164. II.). *Men oughen* eschewe to cursen here oughne children (p. 198. II.). Even in Hallsaxon we meet with the corresponding *aȝen* in the present, and preterite also, with the infinitive without *to*: Swa *pu aȝest* Hengest *don* (LAȜAM. II. 276.). Comp.: So *pu salt* Hengest *don* (ib. modern text). — For æuere *me ahte* wisne mon wurðlice *igreten* (II. 518.). Alongside thereof there certainly stands the prepositional infinitive. Old-Engl.: Wel *oughte we* to *do* al oure entente (CHAUC., C. T. 11934.) also with the present. *To luf* me welle thou *awe* (TOWN. M. p. 24.). *Ye ou* not to be *denyed* (p. 38.). Joseph, wole þe . . . here honour and kepe, as þe *howe* to *do*? (COV. MYST. p. 99.) Hallsax.: Euer ule god mon *ah* his lauerdes heste to *don* (LAȜAM. I. 101.), as in Anglosax.: Micel is and mære þæt *sacerd ah tō dōnne* (LEGG. CYCT. I. A. 4.). And sæde þæt *he hit nāhte tō dōnne* (SAX. CHR. 1070.). That *ought* is also used impersonally in Old-English is observed Vol. II. 1. p. 192.

gin (*begin*) Anglosax. *ginnan*, mostly met with in compounds, sometimes stands in poets with the pure infinitive, whereas the infinitive with *to* is in general given to it.

And *gan* tell Their bootelesse paines (SPENSER, F. Qu. 1, 2. 1.). Then *gan* she *wail* (1, 2, 7. and very frequently). And Phoebus '*gins arise* (SHAKSP., Cymb. 2, 3.). The ladies first '*Gan* murmur, as became the softer sea (COWP. p. 164.). And forms upon its breast the earl '*gan spy*, Cloudy and indistinct (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 6, 18.).

In Old-English with the simple verb *gin* the pure infinitive is very common: Heo *gonne arere* walles (R. of GL. I. 18.). Is honden *gon* he *wrynge* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 193.). Thanne *gan bleiken* here ble (p. 341.). To the palcis they *gonne ride* (ALIS. 1081. cf. 1103, 4221.). Thanne *gan I meten* A marvellous svevene (P. PLOUGHM. p. 2. cf. p. 158. 262. 352. 374.). Hallsax.: Adun heo *gummen lihten* (LAȜAM. III. 46.).

The older language also uses *can*, *con*, like *gan*, *gon*, to periphrase the simple verbal notion: When the lady *can awake*, A dylfulle gronyng *can* sche *make* (M. S. in Halliiv. v.). In a forest *can* they *passe*, Of Brasille, saith the boke, it was (TOBRENT 1452.). The marchand aftyr in a whyle grete sekeneis *can hym take*, Then sende he for Wyllyam (HALLIW. Nugae Poet. p. 35.). That the commun of Bruges ful sore *con a-reire* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 188.). Moni mon of Engeland For to se Symond thideward *con lepe* (p. 221.). Jent al this world is nome *con springe* (p. 246.), also: How euele hem *con spede* (p. 213.). Him *con reire* sore Al is wilde lore,

C. The intermediate Forms of the Verb. The Infinitive. The pure Inf. 7

For *elde him dude so wo* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 119.). Yet the assumption of a corruption of *gan*, *gon* into *can*, *con* is inadmissible, especially since both forms appear alongside of each other in the same authors

Compounds of *ginnen* are moreover also construed with the pure infinitive. Old-Engl.: The mone *bi-gynneth* bi este *a-rise* (WRIGHT, Pop. Tr. p. 134.) This seely carpenter *byggynneth* *quake* (CHAUC., C. T. 3614.). Fast from land *rou* they *began* (TORRENT 1461.). This is frequently the case in Anglosax.: He *ongan* *bodjan* and *vidmærsjan* þá spráce (MARC. 1, 45.). Þá *ongan* se Hælend *secgan* (MATH. 11, 7.). Þá *ongan* he *hyspan* þá *burga* (11, 20.). *Agynt* *beatan* his *efenþeovas* (24, 49.). This is especially the case with *onginnan*. (Comp. CAEDM. 30. 1350. II. 646. BEOV. 439 and often, MARC. 2, 24 4, 1) The simple verb and the compounds early appear with the prepositional infinitive. Old-Engl.: Fome hit *gynneth* to *nyne* (WRIGHT, Pop. Tr. p. 139.). Over the table *gan* to *schippe* (ALIS. 1108.). He *bigan* to *schake* ys *axe* (R. OF GL. I. 25.). Dame Sirith *bigon* to *go* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 9.). The word *bygon* to *springe* (Polit. S. p. 193.). God . . that of thi godnesse *Bi-gonne* the world to *make* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 106.). Hallsax.: Brien *gon* to *farene* (LAJAM. III. 234.). Son summ he þeȝm *bigann* off Godd *To spellenn* *annd* to *fullhtenn* (ORM. 771. cf 1917. and often). Anglosax.: Adrianus se Cæsere *āgan* *tō rixjenne* (SAX. CHR. 116.). Þá *began* he *tō mōdigenne* (A-S HOMIL. I. 10.). And *hegunnon* þá *tō vȳrcenne* (I. 22.) In Goth. *duginnan* takes the pure infinitive: *Dugann* *lesus gipan* (MATH. 11, 7.).

have takes in many relations the pure infinitive.

- a. This happens if *have* is accompanied by *good*, *better*, *best*, *lief* (*lieve*), *rather*, and has a notion of an activity as an objective determination. *Good*, *better*, *best* denote the neuter nature of these latter as such, whereas *lief* and *rather* express the nature of them, as it is for the subject of the sentence according to his view. *Have*, in combination with the former, goes to what is good for the subject of the sentence, with the latter to what is agreeable to it.

Then you *had us good* make a point of first giving away yourself (GOLDSM., G. Nat. M. 2.). You *had better* leave your folly (MARLOWE, Doct. Faust. 2, 4.). You *had better* go home now, and *pack up* what you have got to pack (DICKENS, N. Nickleby 1, 4.). I think Captain Channel *had better* hasten home (DOUGL. JERROLD, Prisoner of W. 1, 1.). You *had better* come up yourself (TROLLOPE, Framl. Parson. 1, 18.). They threaten you daily: you *had best* have an eye upon him (SOUTHERN, Oron. 3, 1.). We *had best* return towards the boat (BULW., Rienzi 1, 1.). I *had as lief* be none as one (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 5, 2.). I *had as lief* have heard the night raven (Much Ado 2, 3.). I *had just as lieve* be shot in an awkward posture as a genteel one (SHERID., Riv. 5, 2.). I *had rather* die than see her thus (MARLOWE, Jew of M. 1, 2.). I *had rather* not be so noble as I am (SHAKSP., Cymb. 2, 1.). But now I see that most through sloth *had rather* serve (MILT., P. L. 6, 165.). I *had much rather* be myself the slave, And wear the bonds, than *fasten* them on him (COWP. p. 185.). In all these cases the preterite only stands in a conditional relation, and in sentences aiming at a comparison. Shakspeare prefers

were to *had* in the first named cases. See above p. 2. With sentences with *rather* a dependent sentence also stands instead of the infinitive: *Had you rather Cæsar were living, and die all slaves, than that Cæsar were dead* etc. (SHAKSP., *Jul. Cæs.* 3, 2.) or an infinitive with an independent subject. *Rather had I a Jew be hated thus* Than pitied in a christian poverty (MARLOWE, *Jew of M.* 1, 1.). The idea that *had* is corrupted from *would*, needs no confutation.

In order to explain the verb *have* in these combinations, compare the Latin *habeo* and *mihi est*. *Good, licj* are to be regarded as neuter adjectives; yet the grammatical relation does not seem to have been so conceived that the adverbial *rather* was put in the place of *lever*. The forms of sentences cited might lean upon the construction of *have* with the last named adjective, in which Romance forms may have co-operated. Old-Engl.: *Fare lever he hadde wende, And bidde ys mete* (R. or Gl. I. 34.). *Thei hadden lever sytten in the erthe* (MAUNDEV. p. 29.). And saide *they hadden*, *sikirliche, Leovere steorve aperteliche, Than thole soche wo and sorwe* (ALIS. 1233.). *I had lever be dede* or she had any dyseasse (TOWN. M. p. 111.). *Serteynly jitt had I levyf ffor sake the countré for evyr, And nevyf come in here company* (Cov. MYST. p. 120.) Besides the pure, the prepositional infinitive is also met with: *Hadden lever to gon by londe* (MAUNDEV. p. 126.). *He hadde lever to ben anhong, Than to be forsworn* (AMIS A. AMIL. 920.). *I had levyf on a day to fyght* Than alle my fathrys lond (TORRENT 320.). The transfer of the construction to *better* seems more modern. *Better he had to have be away* (TORRENT 1:86). The impersonal sentence is remarkable: *Better it hadde hym for to a (= have) be Bothe unborn and unbegete* (Cov. MYST. p. 274.), where *hadde* might be directly interchanged with *were*, as in: *Betere hem were* at home in hure londe, *Then for to seche Flemmysche by the see stronde* (WRIGHT, *Polit. S.* p. 188.). Comp. Old-Fr.: *Que miez li venroit le lessier* (Old-Fr. *Lays* p. 78.). The expressions *lieb haben, lieber haben* are familiar to Middle-Highdutch, as to the Old-French *avoir cher*, which we also find construed with the infinitive: *Pleuve et nif aussi kier ai* Con chans doisiaus a oir (Old-Fr. *Lays* p. 42.). Anglosaxon offers no support for this construction.

- β. Further, *have* stands with an accusative (commonly of the person) and the pure infinitive, if *have* imports as much as to have in the reach of one's perception or experience.

I must not *have you question me* (SHAKSP., *l. Henry IV.* 2, 3.). You snatch some hence for little faults that's love, To *have them fall* no more (Cymb. 5, 1.). I come to *have thee walk* (BEN JONS., *Poetast.* 1, 1.). I'd be loath to *have you break* An ancient custom for a freak (BUTL., *Hud.* 2, 1, 789.). We often *had the traveller or stranger visit us* to taste our gooseberry wine (GOLDSM., *Vic.* 1.). I *shall have some virtuous religious man or other set all my partridges at liberty* (FIELD., *T. Jon.* 4, 4.). I hate to *have thee climb* that wall by night (LONGF. 1. 135.). I'll *have these players Play* something like the murder of my father (SHAKSP., *Hamlet.* 2, 2.). What! *would you have me plead for Gaveston?* (MARLOWE, *Edw. II.* 1, 4.). What *would you have me do?* (SHAKSP., *Rich. II.* 2, 3.). *Would you have him Find* her in this condition? (COLER.,

Wallenst. 1, 3.) *I would not have thee wed a boy* (BYR., Bride 1, 7.). *Would you have me*, indeed, *annihilate* the very memory of the bond between us? (BULW., Caxtons 15, 1.).

The infinitive with *to* is, however, also found here: Do but speak what *thou'lt have me to do* (MARLOWE, Doct. Faust. 2, 4.). As for the Rosy-cross philosophers, whom *you will have to be* but sorcerers (BUTL., Hud. 2, 3, 651.). Your betters every inch of you, *I would have you to know*, would be glad to use me (SOUTHERN, Oroon. 1, 2.). *I would fain have* the Friar *to help* me to deal with him (SCOTT, Ivanh. 32.).

We seldom meet with this manner of expression in the more ancient language, and more rarely with the pure infinitive. Old-Engl.: Chese now . . . *To have* me foul . . . And *be* to yow a trewe humble wyf, And never yow *displease* in al my lyf (CHAUC., C. T. 6801.), often with the prepositional: Cride upward to Crist and to his clene moder *To have grace to go with hem* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 108.). I had lever *to have that knyght*, . . . *To be* here at his bane (TORRENT 1479.). *Have* seems, in the meaning denoted, to have been assimilated to verbs of perception.

bid. in which the Anglosaxon *beddan*, jubere and *biddan*, orare, petere, mingle, which are both represented by *biddan* even in Hallsaxon, has almost exclusively preserved the pure infinitive. Verbs related in sense, as *beg*, *entreat*, *pray*, *persuade*, *command*, *charge*, *force* and some others. are still occasionally treated like this verb in Modern-English.

bid the captains *look* to't (SHAKSP., Cymb. 4, 2.). All the congregation *bade* stone them with stones (NUMB. 14, 10.). And *bade* them in Artornish fort In confidence *remain* (SCOTT, Lord of the Isl. 3, 7.). The Saxon *bade* God *speed* him (Ivanh. 32.). I will *bid* thee *look* around thee (42.). — They . . . squeeze my hand, and *beg* me *come* to-morrow (YOUNG, N. Th. 4, 62.). And so let me *entreat* you *leave* the house (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 2, 4.). And *pray* them *take* their pleasures (Henry VIII. 1, 4.). My question, which I *pray* you *listen* to (BULW., Rienzi 5, 1.). Let me *persuade* you *take* a better course (SHAKSP., I Henry VI. 4, 1.). They *willed* me *say* so (Henry VIII. 3, 1.). *Command* the citizens *make* bonfires (I Henry VI. 1, 6.). *Command* our present numbers *Be muster'd* (Cymb. 4, 2.). *Command* the grave *restore* her taken prey? (YOUNG, N. Th. 7, 916.). Come, I *charge* you both *go* with me (SHAKSP., II Henry IV. 5, 4.). And *forc'd* them *part* (BUTL., Hud. 1, 3, 560.). T'arrest the fleeting images And *force* them *sit*, till he has pencill'd off a faithful likeness of the forms he views (COWP. p. 192.). — *Forbid*, opposed to *bid*. is still found used with the pure infinitive in Modern-English. The treason that my haste *forbids* me show (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 5, 3.).

Bid is sometimes construed in modern times with the prepositional infinitive: That which I would discover, The law of friendship *bids* me *to conceal* (SHAKSP., Two Gentlem. 3, 1.). *To bid* me *not to lore* is to forbid my pulse to move (BUTL., Hud. 2, 1, 343.). He *bade* the chiefs *to lead* by turns (MACPHERSON,

Cath-Loda II.) and often. With the rest of the verbs cited the omission of the particle *to* is unusual.

In Old-English *bidden*, *haten*, *reden*, *prægan*, and other verbs related in sense, are often connected with the pure infinitive: When he *baad* Crist *seye* that the stonys were maad breed (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 41.). He *bad* hire *make* hardy chere (ALIS. 470.). *Bidde* hem *go* swynke (F. PLOUGHM. p. 130.). Hende speche *heet* Pees *Open* the yates (p. 445.). God hymself *hoteth* Thee *be* buxom at his biddynge (p. 59.). He *heote* heom *charge* seone someris (ALIS. 827.). I *hote* hym *go* out off this hoost (RICH. C. DE L. 3245.). For then *radde* a frend me *go* To the mi sereve telle (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 7.). I *pray* you *styte* (SIR CLEGES 129.). Campanus *prayd* him *stand* stille (ИРОМ. 2063.). He *preide* the pope *Have* *pitē* on holy chirche (P. PLOUGHM. p. 80.). And *preide* hire pitously *Preye* for my sinnes (p. 19.), likewise in Hallsax.: *bidden*, *haten*, *clepen* and others. Annd *badd* himm *ben* full milde (ORM. 2487.). He *bad* hine *senden* him alle his dohtren (LAJAM. I. 115.). He *hæhte* heom forð viht *beon* al war (III. 20.). And *hehte* hine sone *comen* to him (II. 524.). In Anglosaxon the pure infinitive stands with *biddan*, *beōdan*, *bebeōdan*, *hātan* also *forbeōdan*. *Bād* him engla veard *geopengean* uncūðe vȳrd (ELENE 1101.). And *bād* hine *faran* intō Cent (SAX. CHR. 1051.). Cyninges vorde *beōdan* Abrahame mid his eaforum tvæm of eorðscrāfe ærest *fremman* (ANDR. 778.). On dæg *bebeād* God his mildheortnesse *cuman* tō me (Ps. 41, 9.). Ðu þe *bebude* hælo *cuman* tō Jacobes cynne (43, 6.). Ðāt he Johannes *bebeād* heafde *biheāvan* (COD. EXON. 260, 7.). Him on mōd *be-arn* *þāt* [he] heal-reced *hātan* volde . . . men *geȳrcean* (BROV. 135.). He *hēt* *fealdan* *þāt* segl (BOETH. 41, 3.). *Hēton* heom *sendan* māre fulltum (SAX. CHR. 449.). Ðā *hēt* he hig *faran* (MATH. 8, 18.). Nelle ge hig *forbeōdan* *cuman* tō me (MATH. 19, 14.).

The infinitive with *to* also early came in with verbs of this class. Old-Engl.: And *bail* Gile *to gyven* Gold (P. PLOUGHM. p. 36.). Fraunceys *bad* his brethern Bar-fot *to vrenden* (p. 468.). Syr Foulk *bad* hym forth *to gone* (RICH. C. DE L. 406.). Envye . . . *heet* freres *to go* to scole And *lerne* logyk (P. PLOUGHM. p. 441.). He *hette* . . . His men *to asale* that citē (ALIS. 1601.). Som men *radde* Reson tho *To hare* ruthe on that shrewe (P. PLOUGHM. p. 71.). And *redde* hem alle *to knele* (p. 106.). And *preide* Hunger *to wende* Hoom (p. 129.) and others. In Hallsaxon the infinitive with *to* is commonly found with *forbeoden*. Till Herode . . . He þeȳm *forbæd* *to turrnenn* (ORM. 6498. cf. 10209, 12021.) *Forbed* heom *to herne* wapmen [leg. wapnen] (LAJAM. II. 590.).

do, Anglosax. *dōn* is, as a periphrastic or auxiliary verb, only combined with the pure infinitive.

Do you not *hear* me *speak*? (SHAKSP., Temp. 2, 1.) All human things *do require* to have an Ideal in them (CARLYLE, Past a. Pres. 3, 10.).

For this employment of *do* see Vol. II. 1. p. 58. Its older use in the meaning of *make* with the infinitive is touched upon at the same place, and will also be considered with the following verb. A peculiar periphrasis is offered in Old-English by the combination of *do* with *let* in Old-Engl.: *Let* hit *dōn synke* Ther hit up swal (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 112.). He *let dōn sle* hem (CHAUC., C. T. 7620.). He *leet* the fest of his nativité *Don cryen* (10359) and *Do lete* this chalys *go* from me (MACNDEV. p. 95.). Solitary instances of this periphrasis really occur in Anglosaxon, as: Svā *dōð* nu þā þeostro pinre gedrefednesse *viðstan-dan* minum leohtum lārum (BOETH. 6.). We are indebted for this know-

ledge to Greins Vocabulary Vol. I. p. 201. By that complete our observation Vol. II. 1. p. 58.

make, Anglosax. *macjan*, which has taken the place of *do*, and to which verbs of cognate meaning, like *cause*, now rarely attach themselves, chiefly take the pure infinitive to the object of the verb.

I'll make him find him (SHAKSP., As You Like It 2, 2.). The strong-based promontory *Have I made shake* (Temp. 5, 1.). *I shall make you laugh anon* (BEN JONS., Cynth. Rev. 5, 2.). *I have made you go upright* (LEV. 26, 13.). I then with difficulty *made* Jobson *understand* that he must enter the coach also (SCOTT, R. Roy 39.). Your deeds *would make* the statues of your ancestors *Blush* on their tombs (LONGF. I. 168.). Our governess used to *make wash* our hands in icy water in winter (OXENFORD, Twice Killed 1, 2.). — I have ordered the lieutenant to *cause* his trumpet *blow* to horse (SCOTT, Ivanh. 34.). Alongside thereof, with *make*, as commonly with *cause*, the prepositional infinitive stands. *I'll . . . make this marriage to be solemnized* (SHAKSP., I Henry VI. 5, 3.). You *would make . . . An agent to be sent* for Lancashire (BEN JONS., The Devil is an Ass. 1, 1.). Henry the Fifth that *made* all France *to quake* (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 4, 8.). Out of the ground *made* the Lord God *to grow* every tree (GEN. 2, 9.). All night *make* I my bed *to swim* (Ps. 6, 6.). The circumstance which, more than any other, *has made* Ireland *to differ* from Scotland (MACAUL., H. of E. I. 66.).

The use of *make* with the accusative and the pure infinitive is old, although not Anglosaxon. Old-Engl.: And *made* heom *fyghte* with battes (ALIS. 295.). There *made* Nabugodonozor the kyng *putte* three children into the forneys of fuyr (MARCHEV. p. 35.). Dombé *speke* he *made* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 403.). These wold by thare wytt *make* a shyp *be drownde* (TOWN. M. p. 87.). Hallsax.: Idelnesse *makeð* mon his monscipe *lose* (LAJAM. II 624.). The similar construction of *do* extends into Anglosaxon. Old-Engl.: He *doth* the wif *sethe* a chapoun (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 334.). He *doth* his bernen *blowe* (ALIS. 1850.). They *do* men *deye* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 133.). Wrathe *dede* hym *chaung* colour (RICH C. DE L. 5938.). And *dede* this carpenter down by him *sitte* (CHARC., C. T. 3500.). Hallsax.: He *dide* himm *etenn* þær (ORM. 12330.). Anglosax.: *Dēð* hi ealle *beoffan* (Ps. 103, 30). In Anglosaxon. where the Gothic *gataujan*, corresponding to *dōn*, is employed for the Greek *ποιεῖν* with the accusative and infinitive, as MARC. I, 17. 7, 37.), a dependent sentence with *pāt* commonly stands. In Old-Highdutch *tuon* like *doen* in the Old-Netherlandish, has the pure infinitive in this case. The verb *garen*, Old-norse *gōra*, *gera* (*gōrva*, *gerva*) moreover shares the same construction in the same meaning. Old-Engl.: *Garte* Hunger *go* slepe (P. PLOUGHM. p. 135.). Amonges burgeises have I be . . . And *gart* bakbiting *be* a brocour (p. 84.). *Gerte* gile *gruwe* there (p. 428.). Thanne he *gert* *berye* hym wirchipfully (MS. in Halliw. v gert and v gare). He *gard* XXX^{ti} prestes that day *syng* (SIR AMADAS 277.). *Gar* *serche* youre land in every stede (TOWN. M. p. 70.). The shynyng of youre bright blayde It *gars* me *quake* for ferd to dee (p. 40.). The Romance *cause* was also assimilated to these verbs. Old-Engl.: Your messyngere ye *cause* forth *go* (TOWN. M. p. 68.). They shuld *couse* hym *dy* (p. 248.).

But the infinitive with *to* is also early combined with these verbs. Old-

Engl.: He *made* þe unbilefulle man *to leven* swilche wigeles (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 131.). He *made* uchon with othir *to fyght* (ALIS. 86.). He *made* *to fette* his tresoure (7967.). He *made* lame *to lepe* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 403.). Swich a meschief Mede *made* Saul the kyng *to have* (59.). The emperour Leoun *made* his bones *to ben broughte* to Venyse (MAUNDEV. p. 56.). He *made* him *to ben delyvered* out of presoun (p. 145.). — He *dude* heom togedre *to gon* (ALIS. 108.). Herode *dos* *to dy* Alle knave chyl dren (TOWN. M. p. 135.). Hallsax.: þurh þatt tu *dosst* þunne bape þær *To gilltenn* Godd onnænness (ORM. 5148.). Þiss hallþhe mahhte maþþ þe *don* . . Lefliþ *to þeowtenn* opre menn (4948.). The infinitive with *to* was in ancient times always used where the case of the object answers to a dative, as in the Modern-Highdutch: ich thue Dir zu wissen. Old-Engl.: Y *do* ou *to wylte*, Here heved wes of smyte (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 219.). I *do* the *to wytene*, that it is made be enchauntement (MAUNDEV. p. 25.). Hallsax.: þatt *dop* uss *tunnderrstannðenn* wel (ORM. 2163. cf. 3879. 3991.). *Do* him wel *to iciten* (LAJAM. II. 182. cf. II. 249. III. 81. I. 284.). Anglosax.: *Gedyde* tō *vitanne* (OROS. 110.). — Old-Engl.: And *garde* the hevene *to stekie* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 22.). And *garde* Wille *to wepe* (p. 80.). Til Gregory *yarte* clerkes *To go* here and preche (p. 321.).

let, Anglosax. *lætan*, with the pure infinitive, which is associated with the accusative of the object, no longer, as formerly, decidedly takes the place of *make* or *do* in the latter meaning, if we except a number of imperatives, which express more than a mere admission, and shares the meaning of admit with the Romance *permit*, *allow*, *suffer*, and the like. Comp. Vol. II. 1. p. 134.

Noble Sebastian, Thou *let'st* thy fortune *sleep* (SHAKSP., Temp. 2. 1.). He not only *lets* me *have* my own way, but every one else too (OXENFORD, Twice Killed 1, 2.). We had better *let* the postboy *take* the portmanteau (SHERID., Trip to Scarb. 1, 1.). And innocence . . It will not *let* itself *be driven* away (COLER., Picc. 5, 2.). And God said, *Let* there *be* light (GEN. 1, 3.). *Let* them wash their *clothes* (EXOD. 19, 10.). *Let* me *see* thee use the dress of thy English ancestry (SCOTT, Ivanh. 42.) *Let* the chamber *be clear'd* (BYR., Bride 1, 3.).

Old-Engl.: *Lat* God *take* the vengeance (P. PLOUGHM. p. 130.). *Wat* is thi wille *let* me *wite* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 3.). It also often stands in affirmative sentences in the meaning of *let*, *bid*, *effect*, in immediate combination with the pure infinitive, to which, on its side, an object is given: þat þis file and komelynges casteles *leteþ* *rere* (R. or GL. I. 18.). He *lette* *calte* a knyght full trow (IROM. 33.). He *let* *dekyveren* Seynt Lowys out of preson (MAUNDEV. p. 36.). Melechemaker, the whiche his brother *leet* *sle* (p. 38.). He *leet* *make* an ymage (p. 41.). This noble Theseus anon *Let* *senden* after gentil Palamon (CHAUC., C. T. 2977.). The . . Soudanesse That at the fest *let* *sleen* both more and lesse (5376.). Hallsax.: Arður *lette* *slæn* au telð (LAJAM. III. 111.). He *lette* *blawen* bemen (III. 220.). Herode king *let* *sekenn* Crist (ORM. 7308.). As in Gothic *lætan*, *leitān*, which receives in Old-norse *lata*, along with *let*, *permit*, the meaning of occasion, effect, belonging, even in Anglosaxon, to the verb *lætan*, all Germanic dialects have with the corresponding verb the pure infinitive, Anglosax.: *Læton* holm *beran* (BEOW. 96.). *Lætað* hilde-bord hēr *onbīdan* (799.). *Lætað* þā lytlingas tō me *cuman* (LUC. 18, 16.). He *lēt* heo þāt land *būan* (CÆDM. 239.). Formerly, therefore other verbs took, with the meaning admit, the pure infinitive Old-

Engl.: Thei *suffre* no Cristene man *entre* in to that place (MAUNDEV. p. 66.). His love, that for to dyen rather ches, Than for to *suffre* his body unburied *be* (CHAUC., C. T. 11752.), as in Anglosaxon the cognate *forlætan*, *alīſfan*. He *forlēt* þā þæt sveord *sticjan* on him (JUD. 3, 22.). *Alīf* me ærest *byrigean* minne fæder (LEC. 9, 59.). Hence the infinitive with to in *late*, *lete* is striking in Old-Engl.: He *let* it to *be born* to Constantynoble (MAUNDEV. p. 107.). His wif so deere Hir selven slough, and *let* hir blood to *glyde* In Habradaces woundes (CHAUC. 11726.). It may be compared with the infinitive with *at*, occurring rarely in Old-norse with *lāta*, admit, permit: Skamt *lēt* visi vigs *at biða* (HELGAKV. HUND. I. 10.).

A series of verbs denoting sensuous or mental perception, as *see*, *behold*, *view*, *espy*, *mark*, *watch*, *hear*, *feel*, *find*, *know*, *perceive*, *discern*, *observe*, and some other cognate verbal notions, mostly have the pure infinitive, although the prepositional infinitive has also come in. They mostly add the infinitive to an accusative, which is seldom absent.

Saw ye none *enter*? (SHAKSP., Henry VIII. 4, 2.) Thus *hast* thou *seen* one world *begin* and *end* (MILT., P. L. 12, 6.). I *saw* him *repress* his tears (LEWES, G. I. 19.). Sometimes I *saw* you *sit* and *spin* (TENNYS. p. 90.). He is forsworn, if e'er those eyes of yours *Behold* another day *break* in the east (SHAKSP., John 5, 4.). *Hadst* thou *beheld* him *overtax* his strength (TALFOURD, John 4, 2.). That divine old man *Beheld* his mystic friend's Whole being *shake* (SHELLEY III. 51.). Thou did'st not *view* thy Selim *fall* (BYR., Bride 2, 27.). A goodly vessel did I then *espy* *Come* like a giant from a haven broad (WORDSWORTH III. 34. ed. 1836.). The Ladye *mark'd* the aids *come* in (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 4, 13.). She *mark'd* his banner boldly *fly* (Lord of the Isl. 6, 11.). Where babbling waters flow And *watch* unfolding roses *blow* (BYR., Bride 1, 4.). In lazy mood I *watched* the little circles *die* (LONGF. I. 88.). I *have watched* thy current *glide* (I. 109.). Do you not *hear* me *speak*? (SHAKSP., Temp. 2, 1.). I *hear* them *come* (MARLOWE, I Tamburl. 1, 2.). Thou never *hearest* me *breathe* a thought (SCOTT, Ivanh. 34.). I *have heard* a noble earl *descant* on park and forest scenery with the science and feeling of a painter (IRVING, Br. H., Forest Trees.). *Have* you not *heard speak* of Mariana? (SHAKSP., Meas. for Meas. 3, 1.) So forcible within my heart I *feel* The bond of Nature *draw* me to my own (MILT., P. L. 9, 955.). I *have felt* my heart *beat* lighter (LONGF. I. 109.). Some, sunk to beasts, *find* pleasure *end* in pain (POPE, Essay on M. 4, 23.). Much she wonder'd to *find* him *lie* (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 3, 22.). I never *knew* a man *take* his death so patiently (MARLOWE, Jew of M. 4, 4.). In other hands, I *have known* money *do* good (DICKENS, M. Chuzzlew. 1, 3.). I *have known* Loungerville *entertain* a fine lady in this very saloon (TAYLOR A. READE, Masks 1, 2.). When he *perceived* me *shrink* (SHAKSP., I Henry VI. 4, 7.). I sung . . And, lost in thought, no more *perceiv'd* The branches *whisper* (PARNELL, Hymns I. 42.). We *perceived* the dogs and horsemen *come* along (GOLDSM., Vic. 5.). Morgan *discerned* something *stir* on the outside of our hangings (SMOLLET). I *observed* tears *come*

into her eyes (MONTAGUE, Lett.). — Hear I or *dream I hear*, their distant strain . . ? (YOUNG, N. Th. 4, 651.)

Germanic and Romance verbs share this construction, following the Germanic and mostly also the Romance mode. The prepositional infinitive is likewise found with most of these verbs, and is decidedly preferred with their passive forms, of which we shall speak hereafter. In Modern-English the infinitive with *to* was formerly employed more frequently than now with the active of many verbs: I *see* his envious hart *to swell* (FERREX A. PORREX 1, 1.). *Seyng* my fleshe and bloode Against it selfe *to leue* threatning armes (GASCOYNE, Jocasta 1, 1.). Either change your mind, Or look *to see* the throne where you should sit, *To float* in blood (MARLOWE, Edw. II. 1, 1.). Myself *have heard* a voice *to call* him so (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 2, 1.). Every one *felt* them (sc. the passages of Chatham) *to be* so natural (BROUGHAM, Hist. Sketches). You *knew* that friar Lodowick *to be* a dishonest person? (SHAKSP., Meas. f. Meas. 5, 1.). That the nations may *know* themselves *to be* but men (Ps. 9, 20.). How do you *know* him *to be* a prince? (SOUTHERN, Oroon. 1, 2.). The monk he instantly *knew* *to be* the prior (SCOTT, Ivanh. 2.). But I *perceive* Thy mortal sight *to fail* (MILT., P. L. 12. 8.), when the avoidance of the pure infinitive *be* is especially to be observed.

In Old-English after similar verbs, as *seen, heren, felen, finden, witen, kennen* etc. the pure infinitive commonly stands: Evele i-clothed I *se* the go (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 10.). As thu *sist* the litinge out of the cloude *wende* (POP. TREAT. p. 134.). He *sygh* a prynce . . To men of Grece *don* mucche wo (ALIS. 3623.). Whatsever thou *heryst* or *syste* hem *do* (HALLIW., Freemas. 281.). Ich *herde* men upo mold *make* mucche mon (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 149.). The lady *herde* hym *make* suche crye (IROM. 1951.). Alisaundre hit *herde* telle (ALIS. 2669.). The deth he *feleth* throrough his herte *smyte* (CHAUC., C. T. 1222.). I *fele* in my body *te* Parfyte God and parfyte man (COV. MYST. p. 115.). He *fond* ther *stonde* Pausanias (ALIS. 1353.). *N'uste* mon never hethen kyng *Have* so riche a buryeng (8012.). Tho he myghte him *kenne* thourh the toun *ryde* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 219.). Halfsax.: þe keiser *isah* þane king *fare* (LAJAM. III. 89.). Þa *isezen* heo nawiht feorren a muchel fur *smokien* (III. 21.). Þa *iherde* he *repen* wunder ane swiðen (III. 24.). A schip *funde* Brennes bi þon brimme *stonden* (I. 202.). Þa *fond* he þer ane quene *quecchen* mid hafde (III. 25.). In Anglosax.: *seon, geseon, heran, hyran, gehyran, gefrignan* (fando accipere, audire), *findan, gemetan, gemittan* (invenire), *fandjan afandjan* (probare) took the pure infinitive: *Geseah* he in recede rinca manige *svefan* (BEOV. 1460.). Þæt við *geseah* for Abrahamae Ismael *plegan* (CAEDM. 2771.). Ic þæt lytle leoht *geseah* *tincian* (BOETH. 35, 3.). Ne *hyrde* ic cymlicor ceol *gegyrvan* hilde-vapnum (BEOV. 75.). Nô ic viht fram þe svylcra searu-niða *secgan hyrde* (1167.). Ic *gehyrde* hine þine dæd and vord *lofjan* (CAEDM. 504.). Þa ic vide *gefrægn* veorc *gebannan* (BEOV. 148. cf. 5539. CAEDM. 2236.). *Fand* þa þær-inne æðelinga gedriht *svefan* æfter symble (BEOV. 236. cf. 2832.). Apollonius sôna *gemette* ôðerne cûðne man ongean hine *gân* (APOLLON. or T. p. 8.). Hig hig *gemetton* on gebede *licgan* (EV. NICOD. 23.). Hie þa æt burhgeate beorn *gemetton* sylfne *sittan* (CAEDM. 2420.). Ic *vât* eard-fæstne anne *standan*. deafne, dumban (COD. EXON. 433, 1.). Ve *viton* þe

bilevitne *vesan* (THORPE, Anal. p. 101.). Ic *hæbbe æfandod þe habban gōde geferan* (p. 112.).

The infinitive with *to* is sometimes found with verbs of this class even in Old-Engl.: þei *herden hym to haue þis signe* (WYCLIFFE, Joh. 12, 18.). He *hird lome to telle* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 197.), especially with *know*, commonly construed in Anglosaxon with a dependent sentence (cnāvan, gecnāvan, oucnāvan). I was fet forth By ensamples *to knowe* . . My creatour *to lovy*e (P. PLOUGHM. p. 221.).

With a few other verbs isolated applications of the pure infinitive have moreover been preserved, as with the transitive *list*, and the transitive *please* assimilated to it, with *wish*, *desire*, *intend* and *deign*, with *teach*, *help*, and a few more.

I *list not prophesy* (SHAKSP., Wint. T. 4. Chor.). What wine *please you have*? (BEN JONS., Ev. Man out of h. Hum. 5, 4.) There's not a crumb left! Will you *please examine*? (PLANCHÉ, Fortunio 2, 1.). I would *wish you reconcile* the lords (MARLOWE, Edw. II. 1, 4.). If you can pace your wisdom In that good path that I would *wish it go* (SHAKSP., Meas. f. Meas. 4, 3.). I persuaded them . . To *wish him wrestle* with affection (Much Ado 3, 1.). *Desire her call* her wisdom to her (Lear 4, 5.). I *desire you, do me right and justice, And to bestow* your pity on me (Henry VIII. 2, 4.). How long within this wood *intend you stay*? (Mids. N. Dr. 2, 1.) Yet not Lord Cranstone *deign'd she greet* (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 5, 25.). — These Christians . . Whose own hard dealings *teaches them suspect* The thoughts of others (SHAKSP., Merch. of V. 1, 3.). That I should wish for thee to *help me curse* That bottle spider (Rich. III. 4, 4.). *Help me scale* Yon balcony (LONGF. I. 184.). Who *helps me lay* the cloth? (TAYLOR A. READE, Masks 2.).

Verbs of desire often take the pure infinitive in Old-Engl.: I *lyst welle ete* (TOWN. M. p. 106.), No longer *lyst I byde* with you (p. 164.). For the impersonal *list* comp. Vol. II. i. p. 184. Al the comune . . That *coveiten lyve* in truthe (P. PLOUGHM. p. 52.). *Desire, intend* remind us of the similar usage in French, as *deign* of that of *daigner*. The verbal notion *teach* is also construed in Old-English in several forms with the pure infinitive: And *taughtte* the kyng an herbe *take* (ALIAS. 5083.). And *larned* men a ladel *bugge* With a long stele (P. PLOUGHM. p. 410.), as in Anglosaxon *læran*: Dryhten, *lær* us us *gebiddan* (LUC. 11, 1.). The Infinitive was certainly also formerly accompanied by *to*. *Help* sometimes occurs with the pure infinitive. Old-Engl.: Tho sent he into cuntré after wise knightes To *helpe delen* his londes (GAMELYN 17.). *Helpeth brynge* Gamelyn out of prisoun (474.). It has been from the most ancient times construed with the prepositional infinitive. Old-Engl.: To *erie* his half acre *Holpen* hym manye (P. PLOUGHM. p. 123.). That he ne *halp* Holynesse *to weze* (p. 418.). These false fisciens that *helpen men to die* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 333.). *Help us to skape* (CHAUC., C. T. 3608.). Halfsax.: Wulle þe me *helpen* . . her to *biwinne* (LAŶAM. I. 403.). Swa þatt itt maþ wel *hælpenn* þe To *winne*nn Godess are (ORM. 1174. 1222. 1256. 1604. comp. also 1342. 4110. 6200.). In the Gothic *hulpan* is not met with the infinitive; in Anglosaxon there is no instance to be pointed out. Yet the Old, as well as the Middle-Highdutch has *helfan* with the pure infinitive.

Other instances of the pure infinitive in ancient times will be incidentally cited in the discussion of the prepositional infinitive.

- b. With intransitive verbs of movement the pure infinitive was usual in ancient times; at present it is still found with *go*, formerly also with *come*. In this case the infinitive denotes partly a second activity, which is combined with the movement, partly one which constitutes its purpose.

Let us *go visit* Faustus (MARLOWE, *Doct. Faust* 5, 4). Let's all *go visit* him (SHAKSP., *Rich. II.* 1, 4). Will you *go muster* men? (2, 2.) You'll *go sour* the citizens' cream 'gainst Sunday (BEN JONS., *The Devil is an Ass* 1. 1.). Obey my voice, and *go fetch* me them (GEN. 27, 13.). *Go*, like the Indian, in another life *Expect* thy dog, thy bottle, and thy wife (POPE, *Essay on M.* 4, 177.). I'll *go write* in my closet (FARQUHAR, *Recruit*. *Offic.* 1, 2.). I will *go seek* her (LONGF. I. 198.). — I sent for you . . . to *come speak* with me (SHAKSP., *II Henry IV.* 1, 2.). See moreover the Prepositional Infinitive.

In Old-English these and other verbs of movement appear with the pure infinitive: He may *go visite* hem (MAUNDEV. p. 39.). I schal at cokkes crowe Ful pryvely *go knokke* at his wyndowe (CHAUC., C. T. 3675.). Shepherdes, that leten her schep wityngely *go renne* to the wolf (ib. p. 201. I.). I shalle *go mete* that Lord (TOWN. M. p. 166.). We wille *go seeke* that kyng (p. 278.). I wyl *go syttyn* in Goddes se (Cov. MYST. p. 20.). Now wyl I *go wende* my way (p. 39.). And *yede ligge* forto amorow (ALIS. 6909.). Saladynes twoo sones *come ryde* (RICH. C. DE L. 7043.). *Come* to countene court *couren* in a cope (WRIGHT, *Polit.* 8. p. 157.). God byd those kynges *com speke* with me (TOWN. M. p. 127.). Ovyr throwyth and on us now *come falle* (Cov. MYST. p. 317.). If thou wolt *falle down worchepe* me (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., *Rel. Ant.* I. 41.). Halfsax.: Ær heo comen *riden* (LAJAM. III. 46.). Ða com þe time *gliden* þa ælc monne abided (I. 102.). As in French with *aller*, *venir*, *courir* and with the same notions in Old-Germanic dialects, there frequently stands in Anglosaxon, with *gangan*, *gevitian*, *cuman*, *faran*, *fēran*, the pure infinitive. Nu we mōton *gangan* . . . Hrōðgār *geseōn* (BEOV. 795.). Hvi eode ge út on vēsten *geseōn*? (MATH. 11, 7.). Ðanon eft *gevāt*, hūfe hrēmig, tō hām *faran*, mid þære vāl-fylle, vica *neōsan* (BEOV. 247.). *Ge-vāt* him þā tō varoðe vige *ridan* þegn Hrōðgāres (473.). Ða *cwom* engel Godes frātvum *blican* (COD. EXON. 276, 9.). Ðā . . . *com* Grendel *gangan* (1424.). Ve . . . sunu Healfdenes *sēcean* *cwōmon* (539.). Ic *com* sōðlice mann *āsyndrian* ongēan his fāder (MATH. 10, 35.). Ic ville *faran fand-jan* þæra (A.-S. HOMIL. II. 372.). *Fērdon* folctogan . . . vunder *sceavjan* (BEOV. 1682.), so too with the notion of haste: Ic *eom* siðes *fūs*, up eard *niman* . . . *geseōu* sigora frēan (COD. EXON. 166, 30.). The pure infinitive stands analogously with *send*. Gregorius papa *sende* . . . Augustinum . . . Godes vord Āngla *peode godspelljan* (SAX. CHR. 596.). Ic *eom* āsend við þe *sprecan*, and þe pis *bodjan* (LRC. 1, 19.). That in the instances cited, partly an activity coinciding in time with the movement, partly an act following the movement, and aimed at thereby, is represented, readily results; but, as both relations often in fact border hard on and even pass into each other, the same form belongs syntactically to both, in which the movement equally appears as the supposition of another act. Where the notion of the purpose is made prominent, *tō* was added to the infinitive even in the most ancient times, which is treated of on the Prepositional Infinitive.

With verbs of rest also, as *lie*, *sit*, the pure infinitive was formerly found similarly employed. Old-Engl.: The fraunchise of holi churchē hii laten *ligge slepe* ful stille (WRIGHT, *Polit.* 8. p. 325.). Halfsax.: Ne

C. *The intermediate Forms of the Verb. The Infinitive. The pure Inf.* 17

purve þa cnihtes . . careles *liggen slæpen* (LAŦAM. II. 359.). Anglosax.: *Sæton* onsundran *bidan* selves gesceapu heofoncyninges (CAEDM. 839.).

- c. The pure infinitive often stands after the particles *as* and *than*, as correlatives to which a positive with *so*, or a comparative, such as *rather*, *sooner*, appears. We must here however disregard those cases in which a preceding infinitive with *to* makes the continued operation of this particle appear natural, or in which a preceding verb with the pure infinitive also admits the reference to a second.

Will you be *so good* a knave *as eat* it? (SHAKSP., Henry V. 5, 1.) Judge you *so poorly* of me *As think* I'll suffer this? (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 4, 2.) And art thou, dearest, changed *so much*, *As meet* my eye, yet *mock* my touch? (BYR., Giaour extr.) Mr. Francis . . will, I dare say, recollect for the moment anything you are *so kind as hint* to him (SCOTT, R. Roy 2.).

The use of *as*, as the correlative of *so* with the infinitive, where the comparison passes into the idea of succession, is not familiar to Old-English. How in Modern-English *to* also appears after *as*, is to be mentioned on the prepositional infinitive: in Old-English a prepositional infinitive without *as*, rarely a pure infinitive is wont to stand: That non *so hardy* were of dede, After him nother *go ne ride* (AMIS A. AMIL. 1048.). See also the Infinitive with *for to*.

He resolv'd, *rather than yield*, To die with honour in the field (BUTL., Hud. 1, 3, 61.). *Sooner than allow* yourself to be killed by those dwarfs, take this sword and put an end to your own existence (HALLIW., ed. Torrent of P. Pref. IX.).

If in this case an infinitive with *to* precedes, its continuous operation upon the following one, which has a like reference with it to the comparative, is the most natural supposition. See Repetition and Omission of the particle *to*. It may also be that the anticipation of the following particle in such cases generally became the occasion for the freer use of the pure infinitive. The combination with *to* is also not wanting to the preceding infinitive: If, *rather than to marry* county Paris, Thou hadst the strength of will to slay thyself (SHAKSP., Rom. a. Jul. 4, 1.). Where the principal verb in the sentence demands the pure infinitive, it is of course with *than* in every position: O bid me *leap, rather than marry* Paris, From off the battlements of yonder tower (SHAKSP., Rom. a. Jul. 4, 1.). The same is the case with *rather than*, of the same operation as *before* and *ere* before the pure infinitive: That which makes others *break* a house, And *hang* and *scorne* ye all, *Before endure* the plague of being poor (BUTL., Hud. 3, 1, 123.). For son of Moslem must *expire Ere dare* to sit before his sire (BYR., Bride 1, 2.). Sometimes another proximate verbal notion is to be taken from the previous finite verb. Old-English also knows forms of this kind: The lyf schuld rather out of my body *stert Or* Makametes law *go out* of myn hert (CHAUC., C. T. 4755) In combination with *rather* standing at the front, a protasis rather stands with *than*: *Rather than I lese* Constance, I wol be cristen douteles (ib. 4645.), while a prepositional infinitive with *than* is readily given to the following member: The is bet'er *holde* thy tonge stille *than to speke* (CHAUC., C. T. p. 156. l.). Ffor mannys love I may do no mo *Than* for love of man *to be ded* (Cov. MYST. p. 276.), instances of which still occur in Modern-English, as: What more may heaven do for earthly man *Than* thus *to pour out* plenty in their laps (MARLOWE, Jew of M. 1, 1.). Comp. Ps. 84, 10.).

A pure infinitive after *but* is to be referred to the verbal notion, which requires such a one: I *cannot but be* sad (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 2, 2.). Comp. Old-Engl.: Ich . . *ne do bute nempnie ham* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 67.). Those sentences are remarkable in which the infinitive following *but* seems to have reference to the verb *choose*, to which belongs an infinitive with *to*: I will work him To an exploit, now ripe in my device, Under the which he *shall not choose but fall* (SHAKSP., Hamlet. 4, 7.). How *should he choose But lend* an oath to all this protestation? (BEN JONS., Every Man in his Hum. 3, 2.) Nay, then indeed, she *cannot choose but have* thee (SHAKSP., Rich. III. 4, 4.). I *cannot choose but like* thy readiness (MARLOWE, Jew of M. 2, 2.). In that hour . . Sang he . . In a voice so sweet and clear That I *could not choose but hear* (LONGF. I. 122.). I *cannot choose but weep* for thee (SHELLEY III. 79.).

The sense of these turns is rendered by more complete forms of expression as: As knaves be such abroad, Who . . *cannot choose But they must blab* (SHAKSP., Oth. 4, 1.). We manifestly cannot in the above instances refer the last infinitive immediately to *shall* or *can* in such a manner, that we think these repeatedly (He shall not choose *but he shall fall*: I cannot choose *but I can* weep), or that we leave *choose* unregarded, and think of the infinitive with *but* as attached immediately to the denied verb (He shall not *but fall*; I cannot *but weep*). A vaguer reference to the preceding sentence of the infinitive attached by *but* rather takes place, when, however, the infinitive is formally attracted by the preceding verb. The Highdutch presents similar: „mir bleibt keine Wahl als fliehen (along with: zu fliehen).“ The English form of expression is of more modern origin. There occur moreover in the contraction of sentences with *but* with the pure infinitive in Old-English many abbreviations which are of a still bolder kind, as: Neyther money ne mede *Ne may hym nought letten But werchen* after Godes word (P. FLOUGHM. p. 471.).

4. Finally, the pure infinitive often stands independently, where the emotion of the speaker chooses the infinitive instead of a limited tense. It may be called elliptical, so far as emotion passes anything over in silence, which the context, or the tone or gesture of the speaker serves to complete. This happens partly in the exclamation of surprise or indignation, which borders on the question and passes into it; partly in the emotional question beginning with an interrogative particle. In the former case a subject may be also given to the infinitive.

Speak of Mortimer! Zounds, I will speak of him (SHAKSP., I Henry VI. 1, 3.). A maid! and *be* so martial! (2, 1.) *Doubt* my sincerity, madam? By your dear self I swear (GOLDSM., G. Nat. M. 2.). How! not *know* the friend, that served you? (4.) What! *grieve* that time has brought so soon The sober age of manhood on! (BRYANT p. 72.) How, how! *we steal* a cup! take heed what you say (MARLOWE, Doct. Faust 3, 3.). *Lewis marry* Blanch! O, boy, then where art thou? (SHAKSP., John 3, 1.). “*She ask* my pardon, poor woman!” cried Charles, “I ask hers with all my heart.” (MACAUL., H. of E. II. 12.) Oh, fie, for shame! *A monarch pledge* his word — and not *stick* to it? (PLANCHÉ, Fortunio 2, 1.)

Why bend thy eyes to earth? (ROWE, J. Shore 2, 1.) Yet *why complain?* or *who complain* for one? (YOUNG, N. Th. 1, 235.) But *why not embark* his lordship in the Lucifer question? (DOUGL. JERROLD, Bubbles 1.) *How* the dear object from the crime *remove?* Or *how distinguish* penitence from love? (POPE, Eloisa.) Yet *she must;* but *when essay?* (BYR., Bride 1, 10.) *Wherefore continue* to conceal it? (COLER., Wallenst. 2, 6.)

In Old-English scanty instances are found of this abridgement of thought, so natural in living speech, and it seems not to have passed till late into the written language: What, harlotys, *forsake* oure lawe? (Cov. Mstr. p. 398.) *Why calle* hym Crist? (P. PLOUGH. p. 397.) Such infinitives are natural in dialogue immediately annexed to a sentence uttered: "That shalle youre force downe felle." — "*Downe felle?* dwylle? what may this be?" (TOWNS. M. p. 67) In the most ancient tongue this abbreviation seems foreign to emotion. Compare moreover the Infinitive with *to*.

The prepositional Infinitive with *to*.

The pure infinitive, limited to a proportionately small field, early yielded to the preposition accompanied by *to*. Even in Gothic the corresponding preposition *du* in Old-Highdutch, Anglosaxon, Old-Saxon and Old-Frieslandish *zi*, *zuo*, *tō*, came before the infinitive. The Gothic joined to *du* the infinitive unchanged; the remaining dialects, the infinitive inflected in the manner of a substantive, and thus the infinitive appears in Anglosaxon in a dative form, *tō tellanne*, *tō beōmne*, *tō dōnne*, when the *a* of the syllable *an* also yields to an *e*: *tō cunnenne*, and the *un* is often simplified, *tō hābbane*, and the like. Upon this reposes the English infinitive with *to*, which early assumed the uninflected form, whereas traces of the older ones are often met with. Halfsax.: *pa heo best wende to fleonne* (LAZAM. I. 78.). Seuerius wende anan *to hæbbene* pisne kinedom (II. 3.). And prattest hine *to slænne* & his cun *to fordonne* (II. 362.). Compare also Old-Engl.: *Strengðe to forletene* pesternesne (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 132.). That is *to seyne* (MAUNDEV. p. 52.); although the mere final *e* might be deemed equal to other unjustified *e*. To this infinitive is attached that introduced with *for to*, of which the next section treats. Old-norse added the preposition *at* to the unchanged infinitive, which also penetrated into Old-English, could not, however, maintain itself beside that accompanied by *to* and *for to*, among which the latter was also subsequently forced to give way.

Gothic used the infinitive with *du*, particularly where it had to express an intention or determination, although even there the pure infinitive has place, whereas the former is proportionately rare. It stands as an objective determination, partly for the Greek pure infinitive, partly for the infinitive accompanied by *τοῦ*, *εἰς τό*, *πρός τό*, *ἐνθεν τοῦ*, as it was also substituted for *ἵνα* with the conjunctive; but, even where the Greek infinitive, with or without *τό* takes the place of a subject, it occurs in Gothic with *du*. It appears even here, that the prepositional infinitive makes the reference expressed by the preposition step into the background, and that the import of the particle is weakened.

We have already seen that, in the use of the pure and of the prepositional infinitive in Anglosaxon and English homogeneous sentences, the modification by *tō*, *to* is often of no weight, now the one and then the other form being chosen by the same author. Hence we sometimes find both forms beside each other in contracted sentences in relation to the same notion, apart from those combinations in which a preceding *to* may be thought as continuously operating with succeeding infinitives, although instances of this sort are partly explained by both being set free.

Whether hadst thou rather *be* a Faulconbridge, And, like thy brother *to enjoy* thy land; etc. (SHAKSP., John 1, 1.). I had rather *be* a door-keeper in the house of my God, than *to dwell* in the tents of wickedness (Ps. 84, 10.).

Old-Engl.: Bettyr is on huntynge *goone*, In the forest, so God me spede, Than thus lightly *to lese* a stede (FROM. 1244.). Halssax; Swa he gon *slomnen* & þær æfter *to slepen* (LAȜAM. I. 52.). Compare the Infinitive with *for to*.

With the exception of the cases cited in the last section the prepositional infinitive now commands the whole extent of this verbal form. Romance infinitives with *d* and *de* have conformed, like pure infinitives, to this form, and essentially augmented the number of those introduced by *to*.

1. A wide field is conceded to it both as the grammatical and as the logical subject of the sentence. As a grammatical subject, it is, in spite of the particle *to*, equal to an abstract subject; as a logical subject, it receives, in leaning on a grammatical one, the appearance of a subordinate determination in the sentence.

To be contents his natural desire (POPE, Essay on M. 1, 109.).

'T is pleasant, sure, *to see* one's name in print (BYR. p. 312.).

This infinitive has been sufficiently dissuaded at Vol. II. 1. p. 13 and 21 reduced to the Anglosaxon. Even Anglosaxon often transforms the grammatical subject of the Gothic into the logical: Nis *hit* nā min inc *tō syl-* lenne pāt ge sitton etc. (MARC. 10, 40.). Goth.: Nist mein *du giban* (ib.).

— A predicative determination of the infinitive, as in: *To be good* is *to be happy* (ROWE, Fair Penit 3, 1), can only be conceived as a nominative, not as an accusative, as in the Lat.: *bonum esse*.

In Old-English this infinitive frequently appears with an object to which the activity denoted by the former is ascribed; this combination answers to an accusative, with the infinitive as subject: It is ful fair *a man to bere him evene* (CHAUC., C. T. 1525.). No wondur is *a lewde man to ruste* (504.). It is not good *to be a man aloone* (ib. p. 153. II.). If that it be a foul thing *a man to waste his catel on wommen* (p. 205. I.). Whanne hit happith *the herte to hente the edder* (DEPOS. OF RICH. II. p. 15.). It is shame *you to bete him* (TOWN. M. p. 198.). *A carpenter to be a knyght* That was ever ageyne ryght (HALLIW., Nugae Poet p. 17.). *A madyn to bere a child*, iwys, Without man's seyde, that were ferly (p. 158.). It is not convenient *a man to be* Ther women gon in travalyng (Cov. MYST. p. 149.). It is a straunge thyng *an old man to take a zonge wyff* (p. 95.). Loo, what it is *a man to have connyng* (SKELT. I. 36.). We must also incidentally mention the infinitive with *for to*: It spedip *one man for to die* for the puple (WICLYFFE, Joh. 18, 14.). In Anglosaxon the accusative with the (pure) infinitive is rarely found as a subject: þā licade þam ār-fāstan foreseonde ure hælo hyre þā hālgan sārle mid longre untrumnesse ðchaman ādæmde and āsodene beon (THORPE, Aul. p. 52.). A dependent sentence with *pāt* commonly stands here, which commonly appears in the

translation of the Bible, where Gothic has the accusative with the infinitive, as *Luc. 16, 17. Joh. 18, 14. Eāðre ys pāt heofon and eorðe geuilon* (*Luc. 16, 17.*). *Pāt hit betere wære pāt an man swulte for folce* (*Joh. 18, 15.*). *Swiðe geuunsum hit bið pāt mon wif hæbbe and bearn* (*Boeth. 31, 1.*). *Hit is swiðe earmlic þing pāt þa dysegan men sint ælces dōmes swā blinde* (*32, 3.*).

2. The infinitive with *to* may also take the place of a predicative complement; it appears as such in explanatory sentences with the verb *be*.

Talking *is* not always *to converse* (*COWP. p. 144.*). Then — *to be good is to be happy* (*ROWE, Fair Penit. 3, 1.*) see Vol. II. 1. p. 38. and comp. the infinitive with *for to*.

Old-Engl.: And that *is to be meke* (*WRIGHT A. HALLIW. Rel. Ant. I. 39.*). Avarice *is to withhold* and *kepe* suche thinges as thou hast, withoute right-ful neede (*CHAUC., C. T. p. 202. l.*). Penitence *is* the pleyning of man . . and no more *to do* any thing for which him oughte to pleigne (*p. 185. II.*). This now universal form of the predicative infinitive is hardly to be pointed out in the earliest times,

Here also may be referred the infinitive after the verbal notion seem, appear, so far as the infinitive has any analogy with a completing nominative of a participle.

We must not *seem to understand him* (*SHAKSP., All's Well 4, 1.*). Some strain, that *seem'd her inmost soul to find* (*SCOTT, L. Minstr. 6, 19.*). King Pepin's title, and Hugh Capet's claim, King Lewis his satisfaction, all *appear To hold in right and title of the female* (*SHAKSP., Henry V. 1, 2.*). Even the blindmen's dogs *appeared to know him* (*DICKENS, Christm. Car. 1.*).

A predicative infinitive does not meet us, with the verbs cited, till modern times. The sentences: Thou *semys welle to sytt* on hight (*TOWR. M. p. 3.*). He *semys* as welle *to sytt* there As God hymself (*p. 4.*), do not seem to belong here, since they interchange with *hit semys* me, decet me, and point to the Halfsax: Preostes heo þer setten ase *þer to mihte semen* (*LAȜAM. I. 435.*). Anglosaxon expressions corresponding in sense might only present the pure infinitive as a predicative determination: *Me ys gepuht Godes þeowdōm betweoh þās crāftas ealdorscipe healdan* (*THORPE, Anal. p. 112.*).

For the Infinitive with other Intransitives and Passives see below.

3. To separate into its varieties the manifold employment of the infinitive with *to* in the objective and adverbial relation, which gains a continually wider extension in the modern tongue, has some difficulty, because this infinitive attaches itself closely in part to a notion in the sentence, to a verb, an adjective or a substantive, partly stands in a loose relation to a sentence or member of a sentence, and both modes of reference often border hard upon or pass into each other.

But this infinitive serves, what may be said in a more limited measure of the pure infinitive also, to represent the abstract activity of the object, which a subject takes possession of or strives to do so, to denote an activity to be effected, which may appear as its purpose and consequence, and even to express the motive of the principal act. Even these meanings pass into each other, since in the context the object of an action itself may shew itself as the purpose or motive.

- a. The prepositional infinitive stands with transitive verbs, where it mostly takes the place of an accusative, but also of a primitive genitive.
- a) We consider first the active in its relation to the mere infinitive as its object.

Here belongs a series of verbs, chiefly denoting the activity of the imagination and of thinking, or its utterance, as, think, mean, hope, expect, confess, maintain, affirm, learn, remember, forget.

I did *think to have beaten* thee (SHAKSP., *Much Ado* 5, 4.). I never *thought to marry* (DOUGL. JERROLD, *Bubbles* 4.). I *meant to take* thy life (TALFOURD, *Ion* 4, 3.). If you lend to them of whom you *hope to receive* (LUKE, 6, 34.). He was talked of for court favour, and *hoped to win* it (THACKERAY, *Engl. Humour* 4.). I *expected to have found* Petersburg a wonderful city (BULW., *Devereux* 5, 2.). You *professed to love* me (MALTRAV. 2, 4.). Glencoe blustered, and *pretended to fortify* his house (MACAUL., *H. of E.* VII. 7.). I *swear to do* this (SHAKSP., *Wint. T.* 2, 3.). I *swore never to divulge* our secret (DOUGL. JERROLD, *Prisoner of W.* 1, 2.). They *learn to be* idle (1 *Timoth.* 5, 13.). We *learn to love* and *to esteem* (ROGERS, *It., For. Trav.*). All these nails, about a dozen of which he *remembered to have seen* . . . inside (DICKENS, *Pickw.* 2, 20.). How dare thy joints *forget to pay*, their awful duty to our presence? (SHAKSP., *Rich.* II. 3, 3.). I had *forgotten to say*, I am your next-door neighbour (DOUGL. JERROLD, *Prison. of W.* 1, 2.).

Old-Engl.: Of maters that I *thenke to meve* (DEPOS. OF RICH. II. p. 7.). He *thenkith to yeilde* him his iniquité (ALIS. 132.). And wollen lene ther thei *leve Lelly to ben paid* (P. FLOUGHM. p. 304.). And yet *wenen* they *to ben* ful wise (CHAUC., C. T. 1806.). And dide hem *sweren* on hir swerdes *To serven* truthe (P. FLOUGHM. p. 21.). Whan he *heetith or assureth* *to do* thinges that he may nought performe (CHAUC., C. T. p. 192 II.). *Lerneth to suffer* (ib 11089.). Til Contricion *hadde clene forgotten* *To crye* and *to wepe* (P. FLOUGHM. p. 447.). Halfsax.: He *pohte to hebben* Delgan to quene of Denemarke (LAJAM. I. 195.). *Wenest* þu mid swulche hærmes *to bizeten* Ygærne (II. 362.). Ich *wende* swiße wel *to don* (I. 146.). Yet the pure infinitive is frequent in ancient times with verbs of thinking. Old-Engl.: And *pouste sle* al þat folk, & *wynne* þis kyndom (R. OF GL. I. 51.). Alisaunder . . . *Thoughte* ther *make* his maister-toun (ALIS. 7806. cf. 7068 TOWN. M. p. 77.). The kyng of Alemaigne *wende do* ful wel (WRIGHT, *Polit. S.* p. 69.). Lutel he *wende so be broht* in honde (p. 218.). He *wende have crope* by his felaw (CHAUC., C. T. 4257. cf. 4304.). Kyng Alisaunder furst *hade y-ment* Him *have forgeve* his maltalent (ALIS. 4570. cf. 5942.). Þe Frankes *hope take* þe toun (LANGT. II. 294.). Halfsax.: *Wende* þe mid ginnen Romen *bi-winnen*? (LAJAM. I. 247.). In Anglosaxon with verbs of thinking the infinitive with *tō* is rarely found: And *pohte tō ofslæanne* Jacob (GEN. 27, 41.). Ge *pencas tō ævendenne* eowerne fræond (JOB in ETTM. 6, 2. cf. BROV. 5278.). Þone rædels *understōdon tō ærædenne* (APOLLON. OF T. p. 3.). The pure infinitive is familiar: Vit be þisse stræte stille *pencas* sæles *bidan* (CARDM. 2430.). Ða andsware . . . þe me se gōða *agifan* *pencas* (BROV. 713.). *Mynte* se mæn-scaða

manne cynnes sumne *besyrvan* (1428). Se þe Gode *myntes bringan* beorhtne vlite (Cod. Exon. 65, 22).

Verbs also containing a determination of the will, and an intention, with which the idea of an emotion is in part mingled, as well as those denoting an emotion directed to an object, may have their object in the infinitive with *to*, as, seek, wish, intend, try, venture, resolve, ask, demand, threaten, promise, refuse, vouchsafe, disdain, love, hate, fear &c.

He *sought to slay* Moses (EXOD. 2, 15.). If e'er again I *sought* my children *to behold* (SHELLEY III. 96.). Was never subject *long'd to be* a king, As I do long and wish to be a subject (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 4, 9.). I never *wished to see* you sorry (SHAKSP., Wint. T. 2, 1.). *Intendest thou to kill* me? (EXOD. 2, 14.). I *purpose to write* the history of England (MACAUL., H. of E. I. 1.). Each hill *attempts to ape* her voice (BOURCAULT, Lond. Assur. 3.). With feeble effort still I *tried To rend* the bonds (BYR., Mazeppa). No living wight . . *Had dared to cross* the threshold-stone (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 1, 1). But at length the queen *took upon herself to grant* patents of monopoly by scores (MACAUL., H. of E. I. 62.). He *resolv'd . . To die* with honour (BUTL., Hud. 1, 3, 61.). I *determined to throw* that wretch's presents out of the window (OXENFORD, Twice Killed 1, 2.). When he *had settled to take* shipping for London (DICKENS, Pickw. 2, 20.). I rather *choose To wrong* the dead (SHAKSP., Jul. Cæs. 3, 2.). What doth the Lord thy God *require of thee, but to fear* the Lord thy God? (DEUTER. 10, 12.) The appellant . . *Craves to kiss* your hand (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 1, 3.). I *want to speak* to you (DICKENS, Pickw. 2, 20.) Her father . . *threatened to turn* her out of doors, if ever she saw him again (MACKENZIE, Man of Feeling). I *promised to eat* all of his killing (SHAKSP., Much Ado 1, 1.). You *denied to fight* with me (Wint. T. 5, 2). Then you *refuse to obey* my orders (TAYLOR A. READE, Masks 2.). *Vouchsafe to speak* my thanks (SHAKSP., Henry VIII. 2, 3.). Sages . . madly join In humble prayer that he would *deign to tread* Upon their necks (TALF., Ion 4, 2.). Where woman's parted soul shall go Her prophet *had disdain'd to show* (BYR., Bride 2, 7.). My master . . little *reckes to find* the way to heaven (SHAKSP., As You Like It. 2, 4.). I only thought I should *like to be* in his place (BOURCAULT, Lond. Assur. 3.). Looking as if he should very much *like to meet* with somebody (DICKENS, Pickw. 2, 20.). I . . *love not to be idle* (BEN JONS., Poetast. 3, 1.). I *love to watch* the first tear, that glistens in the opening eye of morning (BOURCAULT, Lond. Assur. 3.). I *hate not to be banish'd* (SHAKSP., Tim. of Ath. 3, 5.). I would *dread far more To be thought ignorant, than to be known poor* (BEN JONS., Poetast. 1, 1.). I almost *fear to quit* your hand (DOUGL. JERROLD, Prisoner of W. 1, 2.). I *regret to contradict* you (TAYLOR A. READE, Masks 2.). I cannot bear The murmur of this lake *to hear* (SHELLEY, III. 79.). Deviations in single cases are pointed out in the Pure Infinitive.

Old-Engl.: Undur his shadewe y *desyrede to sitte* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 40.). Muche they *desireth to schewe* heore body (ALIS. 163.). I *purpose not . . to werke* by thy counseil (CHAUC., C. T. p. 152. II.). He *ches* in that lond . there *to suffre* his passioun (MACDOVE. p. 2.). What *asken* men *to have* (CHAUC., C. T. 2779.). I *comaunde not to cut* it (TOWN. M. p. 240.). Loke that none other *werne To be* wys and hende (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 109.). If ye *vouchesauf to heere* A tale of me (CHAUC., C. T. 4338.). This emperour *hath graunted gentilly To come* to dyner (513.) I *recche nat to sterve* (1400.). Swiche lessons lordes sholde *Lovye to here* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 178.). *To be slayne* ful sore they *diedde* (RICH. C. DE L. 3444.). Theih *dradden* more here lond *to lese* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 343.). Halfsax.: Swa patt he sholde *zeornenn To wurpen* riche (ORM. 12140.). *prattest hine to slenne* (LAȜAM. II. 362.). In Anglosaxon in a few cases the infinitive with *tō* stands: Seō mǣnigeo *sōhte hine tō āthrinanne* (LUC. 6, 19.). *Þā pe sēcæð mine sǣvle tō forðōne* (PS. 34, 4.). *Ti-hodon hine tō forlætanne* (BOETH. 38, 1.). He *ondred* þyder *tō faranne* (MATH. 2, 22.). *Þā gyrnde* he him his gemæccan *tō nymanne* (S. GUTH-LAC 1.). *Þā girnde* he his sealmas *tō leornjanne* (2.). Alongside thereof there often stands the pure infinitive: Svǣ hvylc svǣ *sēcð* his sǣvle *gedōn hāle* (LUC. 17. 32.). Gode ānum *geteohode þeowjan* (THORPE, Anal. p. 49.). *Þā þu færinga feor geh-godest sǣcce sēcæan* (BEOW. 3980.). The notion to think often, as here, passes into that of intend, on which account instances of the first series of verbs may be referred hither.

Other verbs also, expressing an activity directed to an object, take the prepositional infinitive, as, begin, cease, continue, be wont, give up, omit, miss, observe, and the like. Some of these verbs may also be regarded as intransitives.

All that behold it *begin to mock* him (LUKE 14, 29.). At length the North *ceased to send forth* a constant stream of fresh depredators (MACAUL., H. of E. I. 10.). The civil war in that wild region, after it *had ceased to flame* had continued during some time *to smoulder* (VII. 1.). My uncle *used to say*, that he thought all this at the time (DICKENS, Pickw. 2, 20.). I shall not *fail to improve* the fair conceit, The king hath of you (SHAKSP., Henry VIII. 2, 3.). Should our first champion *fail to crush* the race (TALFOURD, Ion 4, 2.). Being mov'd, he will not *spare to gird* the gods (SHAKSP., Coriol. 1, 1.). To neglect or *omit to afford* aid (WEBST. v. fail). In the great society of the wits, John Gay *deserved to be* a favourite and *to have* a good place (THACKERAY, Engl. Humour. 4.). Among other verbs *offer* with the prepositional infinitive is to be observed, which may appear of the same meaning as begin, undertake, be on the point of &c. James *offered to take* leave of his guide (FIELD., T. Jon. 12, 4.). He again, therefore, *offered to salute* the female part of the family (GOLDSM., Vic. 5.). He did not *offer to speak* to me, till I had walked up close to his bedside (STERNE, Tr. Sh. 6. 6.).

For deviations see the pure infinitive, where compare especially *gin*. Old-Engl.: Dame Sirith *bigon to go* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 9.). The kyng thanne *comseð to telle* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 49.). Of hem that of verray

usage ne cessen nought to swere grete othis (CHAUC., C. T. p. 198. l.). The good that he hath left to doon (ib. p. 188. ll.). Spare not thou to worschepe hym that alle hath wrought (HALLIW., FREEMAS. 660.). To tellen hit the ne wille ich wonde (WRIGHT, ANECD. p. 6.). To preche hem also thou myjt not wonde (MS. in Halliw. v.). For which he hath i-served to be deed (CHAUC., C. T. 1728.). Halfsax.: Al þat heo bi-gin-neth to done (LAJAM. III. 291.). He forrsoc to don þe lape gastess wille (ORM. 11805.). Anglosax.: Agan tō rixjenne (SAX. CHR. 116.). Svā svā oxa ge-vunað tō āvæstenne gārs (NUM. 22, 4.). Ac he ne van-dode nā him metes tō tyljenne (SAX. CHR. 1052.). Alongside thereof stands the pure infinitive: þære hī ge-vunedon tō gebedum-gecigde and āvehte beón (THORPE, ANAL. p. 53.). Þā he spre-can ge-vác (LUC. 5, 4.). The oldest language is in general more sparing in the use of the infinitive.

- β) By far more frequently not merely an infinitive, but also an object of the person or thing is added to the verb of the predicate, which is at the same time to be regarded as the subject of the action denoted by the active or passive infinitive. The number of verbs which can take the infinitive only is very limited; all appearing with such a one make, although not without exception, the activity expressed by the infinitive appear as that of the subject of the verb of the predicate, as is also the case with verbs with the pure infinitive.

Theoretically and historically the case considered here may be reduced partly to a dative, partly to an accusative. As an accusative, it can thought in its more intimate combination with the infinitive, as it were coalescing into a unity of notion with it, or regarded as a member of the sentence representing the substantive sentence, which, like the simple infinitive, may be used as the subject or object of a verb of the predicate. This construction is called that of the accusative with the infinitive. We here return to the pure infinitive, whose relation to the verb of the predicate with a case of the object is the same.

It is in English frequently hard to decide, whether a case of the object is to be thought more closely combined with the infinitive or attaches itself, for the feeling of the language, more closely to the verb of the predicate. The former is decidedly the case, where the case with the infinitive is to be regarded as the subject of a sentence, of which older instances are cited above. The difficulty exists, where the accusative with the infinitive may constitute the object of the verb of the predicate. If, in such cases as: Command *the bridge to be lowered* (SCOTT, IVANH. 39.), it is clear, that *the bridge* is separated from *command*. and is immediately connected with the infinitive, this seems less so in: He commanded *him to yield himself* (ib. 12.). The circumstance that such members may also be transformed into a substantive dependent sentence, in which the case of the object becomes the subject, is not of itself sufficient for us to regard that member as an object complete in itself. The fluctuating reference of the case of the object is also perceived in interrogative sentences, whose accusative with the infinitive is resol-

ved into a dependent sentence, while the predicative case stands in the accusative by virtue of the attraction by the verb of the predicate: *Whom do men say that I am?* (MATTH. 16, 13.), even Anglosax. *Hvāne secgað men, pāt sý mannes sunu?* (ib.), where in Greek it runs: *Τίνα με λέγουσιν οἱ ἄνθρωποι εἶναι;* and from this very attraction of the case of the object by the verb of the predicate is explained that, in English, sentences with a prepositional case occur to which an infinitive with a predicative determination is added, which has its subject in that case: *I look upon foxes to be the most blessed dispensation of a benign Providence* (BOURCIC., Lond. Assur. 3.), The essential in the cases now to be cited is, that the case added to the verb of the predicate is also in fact the logical subject of the infinitive.

Among the series of verbs considered here, we first name the verbs of sensuous and intellectual perception, with which stands the pure infinitive, and also in part the infinitive with *to*. The case of the object with the infinitive answers to the classical accusative with the infinitive. See instances p. 13.

How in these and other cases the infinitive may be transformed into the participle, is to be pointed out in discussing the participle.

The case of the object is related in the same manner to the infinitive with verbs of imagining and thinking as with the expression of them.

Would ye not *think, that cunning to be great?* (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 2, 1.). When the surprised girl saw her *whom she had thought to be sleeping* (COOP., Spy 14.). *Imagine this to be the palace of your pleasure* (BEN JONS., Cynth. Rev. 3, 3.). My friend moreover *conjectures this to have been the founder of that sect of laughing philosophers* (FIELD., J. Andr. 1, 2.). *I supposed such banditti to belong to their bands* (SCOTT, Ivanh. 21.). Your honour . . . *Whom I believe to be most strait in virtue* (SHAKSP., Meas. f. Meas. 2, 1.). *I judged him to be a foreigner* (BULW., Dever. 5, 2.). My aunt really *conceived me to be what her lover . . . called me* (FIELD, T. Jon. 11, 4.). *I hold him to be the same* (SCOTT, Ivanh. 27.). I hope she *takes me to be flesh and blood* (MRS. CENTLIVRE, The Wonder 3, 1.). He could scarcely, in such circumstances, *expect them to defend his cause* (MACAUL., H. of E. VII. 1.). He was of that stubborn crew Of errant saults *Whom all men grant To be the true Church Militant* (BUTL., Hud. 1, 1, 192.). The king promised to *acknowledge himself to be the author of the enterprise* (ROBERTSON, H. of Scotl. II. 11.). He frankly *avowed himself to be Wilfred of Icanhoe* (SCOTT, Ivanh. 28.). I will *couch him to be the brother Ambrose* (27.). The knotted blood . . . With mortal crisis doth portend *My days to appropinque and end* (BUTL., Hud. 1, 3, 578.). Bishop Jewel *pronounced the clerical garb to be a stage dress* (MACAUL., H. of E. I. 50.). He *declared it to be his opinion*, that the king must make up his mind to great sacrifices (III. 322.). An old man, whose yellow cap *proclaimed him to belong to the same nation* (SCOTT, Ivanh. 19.). We *profess Ourselves to be the slaves of chance* (SHAKSP., Wint. T. 4, 3.). I will

prove those serves to be very unlearned (Love's L. L. 4, 2.). He *represented Rizio's credit with the queen to be the chief and only obstacle* to his success in that demand (ROBERTSON, H. of Scotl. II. 10.). She constantly *denied his conspiracy to have been at all known to her* (HUME, H. of E. 42.). These and other verbs allied in sense frequently occur with the infinitive beside the case of the object, especially with *to be* in a predicative determination, which might stand as such, even without the intervention of the verb of existence, where there is at the same time no question of determining the past time.

This construction of verbs of the kind cited has not gained ground till modern times; it was formerly much more rarely met with. Old-Engl.: *Thys same artycul . . . juggythe the prentes to take lasse thenne hys felows* (HALLIW., Freemas. 170.). *Me merveylyth of this, That þe wryte hym to be kyng of Jewys* (Cov. MYST. p. 324.). This treatment of verbs of thinking and representing certainly attaches itself to that of verbs of perception, but seems to have been so widely diffused only through classical and Romance influence. In Anglosaxon we here rarely meet with the accusative with the infinitive, in which case the pure infinitive stands: For *þi gemunde sviðe gedafenlice þæt godcunde gevrit, mannes Sunu standan* at Godes sviðran (A-S. HOMIL. I. 48.). We otherwise frequently find the substantive sentence, where the Gothic, according to the Greek precedent, presents the accusative with the infinitive; for instance: *Hig viston þæt he Crist vās* (LEC. 4, 41. cf. 20, 6.). *Vendon þæt he on heora gefære være* (2, 44.). *Hvāt secge ge þæt ic sý?* (9. 18.), turns, which are moreover known both to the modern and to the more ancient tongue. Old-Engl.: *Which trowestow of the two That is in moost drede?* (P. FLOUGHM. p. 237.). Modern-Engl.: *What think you they portend?* (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 2, 4.).

Verbs expressing an act of the will, a desire, command, an admission, as well as an emotion, often let the object appear in undecided separation from the verb of the predicate. The attraction of the case by the infinitive comes out more decidedly, when a passive infinitive is associated with it. But this attraction is frequently directly excluded, particularly where the verb of the predicate is combined with a personal object, with which the influence of the activity expressed by that verb is immediately present. We specify instances, in which the infinitive of the active is also accustomed to give place to that of the passive, or separation from the infinitive would endanger the sense, and in which we are able to recognise an accusative with the infinitive, in the sense of the ancient tongues.

I will *wish thee never more to dance* (SHAKSP., Love's L. L. 5, 2.). My brother *wishes us to leave him* (COLER., Picc. 1, 9.). Wilt thou, that we *command fire to come down from heaven?* (LUKE 9, 54.) I might *command you to be slain* for this (MARLOWE, I Tamburl. 1, 1.). *Command the bridge to be lowered* (SCOTT, Ivanh. 39.). He *ordered Oswald to keep an eye upon him* (18.). He . . . led the way to the pavilion, loudly *ordering the banquet to be spread* (BULW., Rienzi 3, 2.). *What conscience dictates to be done* (POPE, Univ. Prayer). My lord, we but *ask that lawful heritage to be restored* to us (BULW., Rienzi 1, 8.). We do *require you to send a priest* (SCOTT, Ivanh. 25.). This

letter *requires twenty guineas to be left* at the bar of the Talbot inn (GOLDSM., *G. Nat. M.* 4.). The Grand Master *appointed the appellant to appear* there by her champion (SCOTT, *Ivanh.* 38.). He *appointed the battle to be done* in his presence (ib.). Lord Lufton *wants me to learn to ride* (TROLLOPE, *Framl. Pars.* 1, 13.). He *wants me to go home* (DOUGL. JERROLD, *Bubbles* 4.). Shall we thus *permit A blasting and a scandalous breath to fall* On him so near us? (SHAKSP., *Meas. f. Meas.* 5, 1.) *Permit the stranger to be call'd to be* (COLER., *Wallenst.* 4, 3.). Thou shalt *not suffer a witch to live* (EXOD. 22, 18.). He *suffered the absolution to be pronounced* over him (MACAUL. *H. of E.* II. 7.). They scarce can *bear the morn to break* That melancholy spell (BYRN., *Bride* 2, 28.). I like *Rienzi to harangue* the mob about old Rome and such stuff (BULW., *Rienzi* 2, 1.). Jealousy *dislikes the world to know it* (BYRN., *D. Juan* 1, 65.). I did not *apprehend the thing to be so serious* (COOP., *Spy* 7.) and others. Many verbs of similar meaning are moreover combined with the case of the object and the prepositional infinitive, in which a personal notion attached immediately to the verb of the predicate is chiefly considered, as, *pray, beseech, entreat, charge, advise, counsel, implore*, and the like, and others expressing a determination, a compulsion, a misleading, and the like, on the part of the subject of the verb of the predicate, as, *instigate, compel, constrain, induce, motion, invite, tempt, urge, incline, embolden, encourage, accustom, enable, bring, lead, bind, put, sentence*, with which the infinitive with *to* is employed conformably to its original nature, as it appears, wherever a place would belong to the preposition *to*.

Although thy charms should *instigate some hot headed youth to enter* the lists in thy defence (SCOTT, *Ivanh.* 39.). 'Tis not the first time I *have constrained one to call me knave* (SHAKSP., *Twelfth. N.* 2. 3.). My circumstances . . . Must first *induce you to believe* (*Cymb.* 2, 4.). I *invite his Grace of Castle-Rackrent to reflect* on this (CARLYLE, *Past a Fres.* 3, 10.). The self-conceit, which had *emboldened him to undertake* this dangerous office (SCOTT, *Ivanh.* 26.). An earnest inviting, which many my near occasions did *urge me to put off* (SHAKSP., *Tim. of Ath.* 3, 6.). A higher opinion than the first appearance *had inclined him to adopt* (SCOTT, *Ivanh.* 36.). Trust also in him, and he shall *bring it to pass* (Ps. 37, 5.). Your feelings *lead you to say* something in my defence (COOP., *Spy* 14.). Me, whom their foundation *binds them to pray* for, they suffer to die like a houseless dog (SCOTT, *Ivanh.* 30.). If thou *puttest me to use* the carnal weapon it will be the worse for you (16.) and others.

Instances of the former kind, which seem to answer to an ancient accusative with the infinitive, are presented by the older language. Old-Engl.: *Monkes and moniales, And alle men of religion, Hir ordre and hir reule wole To han a certein noumbre* (P. PLOUGHM., p. 440.). My lord *has ordeynyd the, thowgh red, The thrydde day to be don to ded* (RICH. C. DE L. 1013.). The sentence and juggement *that Me-libe wolde comaunde to be doon* on hem (CHAUC., *C. T.* p. 165. II.).

Suffre thou never *thi sayntes to se* The sorrow of thaim that won in wo (TOWN M. p. 253.). Ny no fals sware *safre* *henn to make* (HAL-LIW., Freemas. 257.). *Sofre me* never to be y-lore (:52.). In Halisaxon *poljan*, answering to *suffer*, which in the meaning *pati* in Anglosaxon has the accusative or the genitive, is used with the dative with the infinitive: *Ædwine* *bisohte . . . þat Cadwalan him polede kine-helm to beberen* (LAJAM. III. 213.). Wel he mihhte *polenn himm To brinn-genn himm o lawe* (ORM. 12093.). With the notion of the activity of surprise the accusative with the infinitive also stands in Old-Engl.: *So zonge a chylde suche clergye to reche, And so sadly to say it, we wondyr sore* (COV. MYST. p. 193.). Yet we may regard the verb as intransitive; in Anglosax. *vundrian* is construed with the genitive. In Anglosaxon we must not regard *biddan* and *hatan* (see p. 10.) as construed with an accusative with the infinitive in the ancient sense; yet we sometimes find after verbs of willing the pure accusative with the infinitive sometimes taken as a total object: *þa bycnodon hig tō his fāder, hvāt he volde hyne genemnedne beōn* (LUC. 1, 62.). Commonly a substantive sentence appears instead: *We nyllaþ þāt þes ofer us riceje* (LUC. 19, 14.). Here the Gothic, like the Greek, has the accusative with the infinitive.

Verbs of the kind cited in the second series, denoting the determination and movement of the object to activity, have, from the most ancient times, besides the accusative, the infinitive with *to*, as they mostly acquire in French the infinitive with *à*. Old-Engl.: *þat man eggeþ his negebure to ofer to speken him harm* (WRIGHT A. HAL-LIW., Rel. Ant. I. 131 sq.). He *stririth him to pappe and pampe* her fleische (I. 41.). Holy chirche by juggement *streyneth him to doon open penaunce* (CHAUC., C. T. p. 185. II.). For to *usen a man to do goode werkes* (p. 189. I.). Halfsax.: He *droh þe folle To lufenn . . . þatt rihhtwisnesses lihht* (ORM. 18156.). Thus even in Anglosax.: *God nænne man ne neiddaþ tō syngigenne* (A.-S. HOMIL. I. 114.), *Ic . . . ge-bigde min mōd tō festænne* (Ps. 34, 12.).

Verbal notions, as, *let*, *make*, *cause* &c., which receive an infinitive beside a primitive accusative, make this substitute for a dependent sentence appear as a notional whole.

Verbs of this kind, like *let*, *make* and the older *do*, and others, which also admit the pure infinitive, are cited at p. 10 ff. Comp. also: *Folly will leave Valour to find out his way* (SCOTT, Ivanh. 40.). His charity would *have left the wounded Christian to be tended* in the house, where he was (28.). The Lord God *had not caused it to rain* (GEN. 2, 5. cf. EXOD. 9, 18.). This story *caused a quantity of blood to rush* into the parson's face (FIELD., T. Jon. 3, 9.). Thou *hast caused printing to be used* (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 4, 7.). Brian de Bois-Guilbert whose renown in all games of chivalry *had occasioned him to be eagerly received* in the company of the challengers (SCOTT, Ivanh. 7.).

See instances of the older language elsewhere. It is to be remarked, that the Anglosaxon with *dōn* often resolves the accusative with the infinitive into the substantive sentence: *Dōþ þāt þas men sitton* (JON. 6, 10.). Old-Engl.: *Make þee men for to sitte* (WYCLIFFE), Gr. ποιῶντες τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἀνασθῆναι. This happens also with the omission of the object and its repetition as the subject of the dependent sentence: *Ic dō inc þāt gyt beðð sǣvla onfōnde* (MARC. 1, 17), Gr. ποιῶν ἐμᾶς γενέσθαι ἀλείψαι ἀνθρώπων. Ic . . . dō me symble, *þāt ic æ pine metige* (Ps. 118, 174. cf. BOETH. 4. Cod. EXON. 174, 4.), similarly to the

Old-Engl.: *That makes me that I ga nought ariht* (CHAUC., C. T. 4252.). *He xal cause the blynde that thei xal se* (COV. MYST. p. 254.); as this occurs with other verbs in Modern-English, as in Old-English and Anglosax.: *The sons of God saw the daughters of men that they were fair* (GEN. 6, 2.). *All men counted John, that he was a prophet indeed* (MARK. 11, 32.). Old-Engl.: *Cleophas ne knew him noght That he Crist were* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 216.). Anglosax.: *pā gesávon Godes bearn . . manna dóthra pāt hig væron vlitige* (GEN. 6, 2.). *Ealle hi hæfdon Jóhannem pāt he være tōðlice vitega* (MARK. 11, 32.). *Nu pec Caldēas gefregen habban pāt pu āna eart ēce drihten* (COD. EXON. 188, 12.).

- γ) The notions of activity have and give are particularly to be mentioned, where they take, beside the accusative, the infinitive of the active of a transitive verb with *to*. In this case the accusative seems to fluctuate between the reference to the verb of the predicate and to the infinitive.

It is first of all to be remarked that, with these notions of activity the mere infinitive (with *give* along with the primitive dative) sometimes occurs.

What wouldst thou with me, A feeble girl, Who *have not long to live*? (LONGF. I. 205.) *Give me but to eat*, Lest I fall down and perish here before thee (ROWE, Jane Sh. 5, 1.). She joined her rosy hands, and, filling them With the pure element, *gave him to drink* (ROGERS, It., The Fountain).

The infinitive, which could be explained by a Latin gerund, is here substituted for the object of the notion of the activity. This mode of expression, in which *to* is added to the infinitive, appears early. Old-Engl.: *Thei hadde to doone* In th' esckeker (P. PLOUGHM. p. 66.). With me ne *hadde* he never to done (SEYEN SAGES 452.). Halfsax.: *þe sculleð habben to drinken* (LAJAM. II. 143.). *Þæ quene bar to drinken* (III. 236.). In allied instances the pure infinitive is also found. Old-Engl.: *Lene us alle so don* here (WRIGHT, Polit. S. 257.). Anglosaxon: *He hēt hire syllan etan* (LUC 8, 55.). Comp. Greek: *αὐτὴ δέειξεν αὐτῇ δοῦναι φαγεῖν* (ib.). With that also agrees the Latin infinitive: *Habeo etiam dicere*, quem . . dejecerit (CIC., ROSC. AM. 35.). *Ut bibere sibi juberet dari* (LIV. 40, 47.). *Ut Jovi bibere ministraret* (CIC., Tusc. 1, 26.).

Wherever an accusative is added, which must at the same time be regarded as the natural object of the infinitive, it may appear doubtful whether that case is originally to be immediately referred to the verb of the predicate or to the infinitive, although the English language, by the collocation of its words, decides predominantly for the former reference.

I *have nothing to do*, and I love not to be idle (BEN JONS., Poetast. 3, 1.). The clear light in her eyes *Hath nought to do* with earthly day (MRS. HEMANS p. 161.). *What have we to fear*? (COWP. p. 42.). *What have I to forgive*? (TALFOURD, Ion 4, 3.) *What have I to do* with fame? (BYR., Giaour.) He *had much to see* (MILT., P. L. 11. 415.). *Age has pains to sooth* (YOUNG, N. Th. 9, 16.). *We have not an instant to lose* here (DICKENS, Pickw. 2, 20.). If God . . will *give me bread to eat* and *raiment to put on* (GEN. 28, 20.). You told me, that they begged you to give them *something to eat* (EDGEW., Plays.).

Something to love He lends us (TENNYS. p. 71.). Our great forefathers *Had left him nought to conquer* but his country (ADDIS., Cato 4, 4.). The conception of the infinitive as a gerund attaching itself closely to the substantive notion, and of which we shall speak further on, (see d) is close at hand. But the double reference of the object manifests itself in repetitions of it: In the land *which I give them to possess it* (DEUTER. 5, 31.).

The closer annexation of the object to the verb of the predicate results from the collocation of the words. Old-Engl.: This poure man *had suyn to selle* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 61). Thou *hast nought here to done* (ALIS. 873.). I wote well, *what I have to do* (RICH. C. DE L. 1769.). They *haveth no wolle to spyne* (ALIS. 6806.). A *drynk fayn* wold I *have and somewhat to dyne* (TOWN. M. p. 101.). We *have a crow to pulle* p. 15.). And *gaff hym the cité to wekle* (RICH. C. DE L. 6234.). Halfsax.: *Nefden we noht to drinken* (LAZAR. II. 143.). And *azef heom sone al pis cerd of him to heoldenne* (III. 167.). And similarly even in Anglosaxon the infinitive with *to* follows the preceding verb with the accusative: *pāt he genoh hābbe tō etanne* (Exod. 16, 16.). *Ic hābbe pone mete tō etanne* (Jon. 4, 32.). *Gif Drihten . . syðð me hlāf tō etenne and reāf tō verigenne* (Gen. 28, 20.). *Hie sealdon Ceolwulfe . . Myrcna rice tō healdanne* (SAX. CHR. 874.). *Geseoh Canaan lond, þe ic forgyfe Israhēla bearnum tō āgenne* (DEUTER. 32, 49.). *Tō æfen ic sende þisum folce fæsc tō etanne* (Exod. 16, 12.) and many more. Yet the reference to the infinitive is also found. Here I also refer the Old-Engl.: þu *give us in his godhed him tō se* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW. I. 22.), and here belongs in Anglosax.: *Ic hābbe þe tō sec-genne sum thing* (LUC. 7, 14.). Hence also perhaps: *Gearvjað tō morgen, pāt ge tō gearvjenne hābbon* (Exod. 16, 23.). *Nim pāt ic þe tō sillenne hābbe* (APOLLON. OF T. p. 12.). In Latin the objects lean primarily upon the verb of the predicate: *Haec fere dicere habeo* (CIC., N. D. 3, 39.). *Quod jussi ei dari bibere* (TERENT., Andr. 3, 2, 4.), as in Greek: *Οὐδὲν ἀρτυντὶν ἔγω* (AESCH., Prom. 51.), although the double reference will be there present.

- δ) If the verbs which, besides a case of the object, have the infinitive, stand in the passive, and the object becomes its subject, the infinitive may also be added. The prepositional infinitive then commonly appears even with verbs, whose active usually appears with the pure infinitive.

Thus the prepositional infinitive is added to the notions of activity of sensuous and intellectual perception, of thought, and of its expression.

How *couldst thou drain the life-blood of the child . . And yet be seen to bear a woman's face?* (SHAKSP., III Henry VI. 1, 4.) Let not a breath *be seen to stir* Around yon grass-grown ruin's height (SHELLEY, Qu. Mab I. 8.). Then down a path . . That speechless page *was seen to glide* (SCOTT, Lord of the Isl. 5, 15.). Some *were heard to curse* the shrine Where others knelt to Heaven (TH. MOORE p. 228). He *had been heard to utter* an ominous growl (MACAUL., H. of E. III. 19.). An irregularity, which *was not also felt to be a grievance* (I. 33.). Yet many different intellects *Are found t'have contrary effects* (BUTL., Hud. 3, 2, 263. cf. ib. 3, 471.). All their objections *will be found to relate* to matters of detail (MACAUL., H. of E. VIII. 5.). He

was observed, after dinner, carefully to *gather up* the remnants left at his table (CH. LAMB, Essays). He *has been known to commit* outrages (SHAKSP., Timon of Ath. 3, 5.). His fiddle . . by your doom *must be allow'd to be*, or *be* no more, a crowd (BUTL., Hud. 1, 2, 999.). My uncle *was judged to have won* etc. (DICKENS, Pickw. 2, 20.). The Somersetshire, or yellow regiment . . *was expected to arrive* on the following day (MACAUL., H. of E. II. 145.). For ends generally *acknowledged to be good* (I. 33.). Some people *have been noted to be able to read* in no book but their own (FIELD, T. Jon. 3, 9.). Ludovic . . is perhaps ignorant, that his attentions *may be taken to mean* more than he intends (TROLLOPE, Framl. Parson. 1, 13.). He *might be said to have thought* of nothing else but poor Le Fevre and his boy (STERNE, Tr. Sh. 6, 6.) and the like. The pure infinitive is sometimes used with verbs of perceiving: Through the gleam *were seen* Ten thousand banners *rise* into the air (MILT., P. L. 1, 544.). That dreadful voice *was heard* by some, Cry, with loud summons "Gylbin, come!" (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 6, 26.).

This mode, answering to the transmutation of the Latin accusative with the infinitive is only rarely to be met with in the more ancient tongue. With verbs of telling the infinitive with *to* is early used in this case. Hallsax.: Nu *wes* þis ilke *iseid* me *ta bi-swiken* (LAJAM. I. 343.). With verbs of perceiving the pure infinitive is added to the passive in Anglosax.: Tō þam Pentecosten *vās geseven* . . *blōd veallan* of eorðan (SAX. CHR. 1100.). Ðā *vās heō geseaven* mid svā micle beorhtnisse leohtes *scīman* (THORPE, Anal. p. 52.).

With verbs denoting an act of the will, as, *bid*, *order*, *determine*, *forbid* &c., also with *bid*, which otherwise gives the preference to the pure infinitive, the prepositional infinitive is ordinarily added to the passive.

Being bid to ask what he would of the king (SHAKSP., Pericl. 1, 3.). But *were he bid to cry*, God save king Richard. Then tell me in what terms he would reply? (ROWE, Jane Sh. 1, 1.) I *was bid to pick up* shells and starfish (DOUGL. JERROLD, Bubbles 3.). Twenty-nine *were ordered to be tied up* without delay (MACAUL., H. of E. II. 211.). So when tyrannical usurpation *Invades* the freedom of a nation, The laws o' th' land, that *were intended to keep* it out, are made defend it (BUTL., Hud. 2, 2, 353.). *May I be permitted to ask*, what the business was that detained you? (COLER., Picc. 2, 13.) Night is the sabbath of mankind, To rest the body and the mind, Which now thou *art deny'd to keep* (BUTL., Hud. 3, 1, 1349.). The key of this infernal pit . . I keep, by him *forbidden to unlock* These adamantin gates (MILT., P. L. 2, 850.). Lauzun *was forbidden to appear* in the royal presence (MACAUL., H. of E. III. 343.). — The pure infinitive is still met with with *bid*: Some say the Sun *was bid turn* reins (MILT., P. L. 10, 671.). Buyers, you know, *are bid beware* (BUTL., Hud. 2, 1, 691.). *Being bid go on*, he proceeded thus (FIELD., T. Jon. 18, 6.).

The infinitive with other passives denoting a determination

or tendency, is readily intelligible. Comp. also the infinitive with adjectives and participles (c).

Rarer instances of this sort present, even in Old-English, the infinitive with *to*: His visage that oughte *be desired to be say* (= seen?) of al mankynde (CHAUC., C. T. p. 190. l.). Out of his owen chaumber He *was y-hote to go* (AMIS A. AMIL. 1577.). As justice to *jugge Enjoyned* is no poore (P. FLOUGHM. p. 290.). In Hallsaxon might belong here: All mannkinn *forbodem iss To fandenn* Godess mahhte (ORM. 12021.), although in *all mannkinn* the dative might also be seen, as in: *pe land off Galileo patt hiwum wass bedenn sekenn* (ORM. 8465.), where the pure infinitive stands. The case of the person stands thus even subsequently: One fatal tree there stands, of knowledge call'd, *Forbiddenn them to taste* (MILT., P. L. 4, 514.). The pure infinitive also stands in Old-English with the passive of similar notions of activity: Over al y-honted, And *y-hote trusse* (P. FLOUGHM. p. 41.). This knight *was bode appiere* (CHAUC., C. T. 6612.). In Anglosaxon we perhaps meet the infinitive with *tô*: although with a changed subject of the infinitive: Hara and svjn *synd forbodene tô æthrinenne* (LEVIT. 11, 6—8.).

With the passive of *let*, *make*, the infinitive likewise stands with regard to the subject of the passive. With *let*, however, we meet only the pure, as with *leave* the prepositional infinitive; with *make* the language fluctuates.

This poor right hand of mine *Is left to tyrannize* upon my breast (SHAKSP., Tit. Andron. 3, 2.). Four of the sufferers *were left to rot* in irons (MACAUL., II. 183.). The reference of this passive to the infinitive may indeed be otherwise apprehended: I *am made to understand*, that you have lent him visitation (SHAKSP., Meas. for Meas. 3, 2.). *Give* also frequently occurs, alongside of *make*, in the passive, especially with the infinitive just touched upon: As I *am truly given to understand* (I Henry IV. 4, 4.). As I *was given to understand* by some inquiries (SCOTT, R. Roy 5.). I *was given to understand* that she abandoned me (BULW., Rienzi 3, 3.). — When *were* the winds *Let slip* with such a warrant to destroy? (COWP. p. 186.) Thou *wert let drop* into obscurity (COLER., Picc. 4, 7.). And when their crimes *were made appear* (BUTL., Hud., The Lady's Answ. 165.).

In the older language *don* and *maken* particularly are met with in the passive with the infinitive. Old-Engl.: I *am done to understand* (TOWN. M. p. 69.). He *was maad* that tyme *To take* the spere in his hond (P. FLOUGHM. p. 374.), when the pure infinitive also occurs: A strong fer (= fire) ther *was don make* (AMIS A. AMIL. 1216.). This maister *was maad sitte* (P. FLOUGHM. p. 248.). We otherwise find also the passive with the case of the person and the infinitive with *to*: *Me it is i-don to wyrt* off frendes (RICH. C. DE L. 1711.). Hallsax.: *purh patt wass uss don þær full wel to seon annd tunnderrstamden* (ORM. 3892.). I have not met with Anglosaxon instances.

- b) With intransitives the prepositional infinitive has, conformably with the nature of these verbs, a less intimate relation to them, and it mostly serves to denote the determination and intention which, in a loose connection in general belongs to it.

- α) The use of the infinitive with *be* is first to be discussed. With

this in itself incomplete verb of the predicate the infinitive with *to* has from the most ancient times stood as a complement, in a certain measure in the sense of a participle of the future. In the modern tongue the subject of the sentence is at the same time predominantly regarded as that of the infinitive, on which account the infinitive of the active receives the meaning of an active; that of the passive, that of a passive participle of the future.

I would *I were to die* with Salisbury (SHAKSP., I Henry VI. 5, 1.). What *is to become* of me (BULW., Maltrav. 2, 5). I'm yet *to thank* you for choosing my little library (GOLDSM., G. Nat. M. 3.). The party in power *was* presently *to provide* for the young poet (THACKERAY, Engl. Humour. 2.). What companion *am I to have* in this cursed resort of antiquarians and Lazzaroni? (BULW., Maltrav. 2, 5.) If brother Peter *was to hear* you (DOUGL. JERROLD, Prison. of W. 1, 1.). — Faith *is not to be held* with hereticks (MARLOWE, Jew of M. 2, 2.). It *is not to be borne* (COLER., Wallenst. 1, 11.). What *is to be done?* (BULW., Rienzi 5, 3.) There *was no time to be left* (Maltrav. 1, 4.). The trick of laughing frivolously *is* by all means *to be avoided* (CHATH., Lett. 5.). My picture *is to be finished* (TAYLOR A. READE, Masks 2.) But to whom *is the bag of gold to be delivered?* (ROGERS, It., The Bag of Gold) The infinitive of the active however often stands where, in relation to the subject, that of the passive would be to be expected, that is, the subject of the infinitive remains undenoted, and the activity is stated abstractedly: *Were I to get* again, Madam, I would not wish a better father (SHAKSP., John 1, 1.). *What's here to do?* (MARLOWE, Jew of M. 1, 2.) There's *nobody else to kill*, is there? (DICKENS, Pickw. 2, 20.) "Didst thou rob no one?" — "There *was no one to rob*, save a party of students." (LONGF. I. 180.) There's *no time to waste* (ADDIS., Cato 1, 3.). *Are there no follies* for his pen *to purge?* (BYR. p. 326.). *Are there no sins* for satire's hand *to greet?* (ib.) Here also belongs the formula: *This is to say* (BUTL., Hud. 1, 2, 47.), which perhaps has not been copied from the French *c'est à dire*.

The infinitive of the passive is an innovation in the cases cited, it does not become usual in Old-English till subsequently: þe bookis *pat ben to be writen* (WYCLIFFE, Joh. 21, 25.). Here *is to be maryde a mayde zynge* (Cov. MYST. p. 96.). The infinitive of the active of transitive verbs is else generally used; the infinitive of intransitive verbs is of course common to all ages. Old-Engl.: To segge soþ of pinges *pat to comene bep* (R. OF GL. I. 145.). Drede of harm *that is to come* (CHAUC., C. T. p. 188. II.). Ich wol þe grante ywis . . . *þef it to grante ys* (R. OF GL. I. 115.). *Nes me not to done Such pyng*, as þou me biddest to graunte þe, so sone (ib.). And asked *what hire was to don* (ALIS. 467.). *That in burghes is to selle* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 135.). In charnel at chirche *Charles ben yvel to knowe* (p. 120.). *Is here ony nesse to do* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 62.). *The dogges wer nothyng to blame* (HUNTYNG OF THE HARE 124.). *The sothe is not to hyde* (TOWN. M. p. 262.). *The latter dede is more to drede* Then was the fyrst (p. 257.). *That nevere weren to truste* (DEPOS. OF RICH. II.

p. 12.) What is this to meene? (P. PLOUGHM. p. 15. cf. 18, 293.) That is to seye (MAUNDEV. p. 2. 18, 29.). That is to undrestonde (p. 63.). The owner therof is a lady of estate Whoes name to tell is dame Saunce-pere (SKELTON l. 32.). Halfsax.: þatt irre þatt to cumenn iss (ORM. 9267.). Rihht att te treowness rote, þatt iss to seggenn opennið, Rihht att tatt folkess ende (10084.). Anglosax.: Se þe to cumenne ys (JOH. 1, 15.) His apostolas tō farene væron geond ealle eorðan (LEGG. ÆLFRED. 49.). Mannes sunu ys tō syllanne on manna handa (MATH. 17, 22.). Būton þām bōcum . . þā synd tō hābbene (A.-S. HOMIL. I. 3.). Hwæt is nu māre ymbe þāt tō sprcenne (l. 92.). Nyston hwet heom tō dōnne være (SAX. CHR. 1083.). Eal swylc is tō leānne, and næfre tō lufjanne (LEGG. ÆTHELR. IV. 22.). Us is eac tō vitenne þāt væron sume gedvolmen (A.-S. HOMIL. I. 110.). þāt is tō þāffjanne (LEGG. ÆLER GUTHL. 5.). 'Ealdor' þāt is tō understandenne ealra ge-lyfendra vifa mōder (A.-S. HOMIL. I. 92.). The Modern-Highdutch uses the infinitive of the active, where English has that of the passive, which, however, was unable to supplant the former.

In the old combination of *be* with *about*, which operates adverbially, the subject of the verb of the predicate always remains formally that of the infinitive also.

Is he about to shew us any play? (GAY, Begg. Op. 2, 1.) As Owen was about to answer etc. (SCOTT, R. Roy 2.). He was not in the frame of mind which befits one who is about to strike a decisive blow (MACAUL., H. of E. II. 175.).

Old-Engl.: Whether the folk me gyle dothe, Be aboute me to anoye (RICH. C DE L. 4682.). Men beth aboute the to spille (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 199.). The adder . . was aboute the child to sting (SECVN SAGES 763.). Us to tray and tyn Ar thay aboute (TOWN. M. p. 298.). Instead of *about* older times present *unbe* (*ymbe*): He is eaver *unben* to reare sum ladde (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 5.). Earlier instances seem wanting.

- β) Verbs of movement, as *go*, *come*, *hasten*, *rise*, *lay down* &c. have, with a few exceptions still occurring, (see pure infin. p. 16.) the infinitive with *to*, which chiefly denotes the tendency of the activity, but appears even where verbs of this kind, especially *come*, denote only becoming in time and, without the notion of tendency, express the falling into something or the progress to something.

And it came to pass etc. (MATTH. 26, 1.); so very frequently in the translation of the Bible. How, indeed, or by what steps, the ancient Celtic tongue came to be banished from the Low Countries in Scotland . . cannot be so well pointed out etc. (BLAIR, Lectures). When I come to think of the matter (DICKENS, Pickw. 2, 20.). When you come to be in my circumstances (WARREN, Diary 1, 18.). Comp. also: This English nation, will it get to know the meaning of its strange new Today? (CARLYLE, Past a. Pres. 1, ?.), where *get* may be likewise taken intransitively. The notion of tendency or intention else always comes out: She finds the boy she went to find (PARNELL, W. I. 25.). And down I went to fetch my bride (TENNYS. p. 91.). We come with joy from our eternal rest, To see th' oppressor in his turn oppress'd (COWP. p. 98.). I nearer drew to gaze (MILT., P. L. 9. 578.). Shall Truth fail to keep her word,

Justice divine not *hasten to be just* (10, 856.). Ingenious Art . . . *Steps forth to fashion and refine* the race (Cowp. p. 98.). Mr. Weller . . . presently *returned to say* that there was only a gentleman with one eye (DICKENS, Pickw. 1, 19.). As we *rose to leave* the study (WARREN, Diary 1, 18.). You *sit down to teach* me chess (BOURCIC., Lond. Assur. 3.) and so on.

How in former and the most ancient times the pure infinitive also denoted the activity aimed at, is pointed out at p. 16. It was gradually supplanted by the prepositional infinitive Old-Engl.: Crist . . . *wente in to desert to be tempted* of the deuele (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 41.). Þat he to hym *wende To helpe* hym (R. of Gl. I. 169.). Whanne men wil *go to kutte* hem (MAUNDEV. p. 50.). I will *go me to hyde* (TOWN. M. p. 19.). He *commys to folfylle* the law (p. 169.). Whider schal thanne the wrecche synful man *flee to hyden* him? (CHAUC., C. T. p. 187. I.). The hound that *torneth to ete* his spewyng (p. 186. II.). Hallsax.: He shall newenn *cumenn forþ To turnenn* and *to wendenn* þe suness etc. (ORM. 183.). Thus even in Anglosaxon similar verbs take the infinitive with *tō*: Ne *com ic riht-vise tō geciganne* (MATH. 9, 13 ff. 10, 34. NUM. 22, 6. LEGG. ÆLF. 49.). Ærþam þe his apostolas *tō farenn* væron geond ealle eorðan *tō læranne* (LEGG. ÆLF. I. 1.). Even Gothic uses, along with the pure infinitive, that with *du* with verbs of motion, for instance MARC. 4, 3. LUC. 8, 5.

- γ) Verbs of rest, of tarrying &c. take in the modern tongue only the infinitive with *to*, whereby the destination, the purpose is denoted.

He *lies in wait to catch* the poor (Ps. 10, 9.). He *stopped* for a minute *to look* at the strange irregular clusters of lights (DICKENS, Pickw. 2, 20.). Fate commands, And *I live but to perform* her bidding (TALFOURD, Ion 4, 2.). The destination may remind us of temporal succession; If *I live to be a man*, My father's death revenged shall be (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 1, 9.).

Old-Engl.: A comoun woman that *dwelled there to resceyve* men to folye (MAUNDEV. p. 24.). For the pure infinitive with verbs of rest see p. 17.). The infinitive with *du* is here known even to Gothic: Blinda *sat faur vig du aithron* (MARC. 10, 46. LUC. 18, 35.).

- δ) With intransitives, which of themselves denote inclination, utility, capacity and tendency, as well as with activities denoted intransitively, whose purpose or result is added, the infinitive with *to* is in general familiar.

If they *incline to think* you dangerous (SOUTHERN, Oroon. 3, 1.). Those harmless delusions that *tend to make* us happy (GOLDSM., Vic. 3.). They only *served to mark* the dirty entrance to some narrow close (DICKENS, Pickw. 2, 20.). As she *prepared to get* into the coach (ib.). The heart on which I *had so longed to rest* my head (TAYLOR A. READE, Masks 2.) and many more. We'll *strive to please* you (SHAKSP., Twelfth N. 5, 1.). *Struggling to be free* (Hamlet 3, 2.). Many a dunce whose fingers *itch to write* (Cowp. p. 4.). In England, *to be a useful or a distinguished man*, you must *labour* (BULW., Maltr. 2, 4.). *All, to flourish, fades* (YOUNG, N. Th. 6, 687.).

Old Engl.: *Fond to don* better (P. PLOTCH. p. 456.). She *gan so*

sore long *To seene* her suster (CHAUC., Leg. of Good Women 2256.). Al be it so that thay *avaylen* not to *have* the lif perdurable, yit avaylen thay to abrigging of the peyne of helle (CHAUC., C. T. p. 189. l.). *Traveillen bysyly to drawen* hire lore fro erthely thinges (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 39.). Halfsax.: *Fundede to farene* (LAJAM. II. 325.). Natanael to *frazzenn* toc (ORM. 13702.). In Anglosaxon we meet the infinitive without *tō* with similar verbs: Hvider *fundast* þu . . siðas *dreogan*? (CAEDM. 2363.); *fundjan* may indeed be reckoned among verbs of movement (*niti properare*).

- ε) A number of intransitive verbs or verbs used intransitively, to which especially notions of the activities of emotions, but others also belong, which else take a preposition with an object, combine with the prepositional infinitive, which here awakens the image of an accompanying activity as of the motive of another. Comp. below 7b.

Why *weep* ye not to *think* upon my wrongs? (MARL., Jew of M. 1, 2.). I *joy* to *meet* thee thus alone (ADDIS., Cato 1, 4.). I *rejoice* to *hear* that you have begun Homer's Iliad (CHATHAM, Lett. 2.). I *blush* and am confounded to *appear* Before thy presence (4, 4.). *Sham'st* thou not to *beg*? (BEN JONS., Ev. Man in his hum. 2, 3.). Polly *suffers*, to *see* thee in this condition (GAY, Begg. Op. 2, 2.). Cæsar will *shrink* to *hear* the words thou utter'st (ADDIS., Cato 2, 2.). Sir Antony will *stare* to *see* the Captain here (SHERID., Riv. 1, 1.). Democritus ne'er *laugh'd* so loud *To see* bawds carted thro' the crowd (BUTL., Hud. 2, 1, 81.). I could not but *smile* to *hear* her talk in this lofty strain (GOLDSM., Vic. 3.).

Here also might be referred *wonder* and *care* with the infinitive, since we have to regard them as original intransitives: A single thing, as I am now, that *wonders* *To hear* thee speak of Naples (SHAKSP., Temp. 1, 2.). I do not greatly *care* to *be deceived* (Ant. a. Cleop. 5, 2.). Yet nothing that my tyrants knew or taught I *cared* to *learn* (SHELLEY I. 157.). The verb *care* certainly deviates apparently from its original meaning, in that it may be explained by *be disposed*, *have regard* to.

In the ancient tongue this combination with intransitives is more rarely found: An hors wold *wepe* to *se* the sorow he maide (HALLIW., Nug. Poet. p. 1.). Ye *have* gretly *erred* to *have cleped* such maner folk to youre counsell (CHAUC., C. T. p. 158a.). See moreover 7b. The influence of the Romance *à* seems here not without importance. In Anglosaxon we find nothing corresponding. The verb *cearjan* there appears with the pure infinitive: Ne *ceara* þu feor heonon fleāme *dælan* somvist incre (CAEDM. 2273.). Otherwise *cearjan* has also the preposition *ymb* with an object.

4. The prepositional infinitive stands in immediate combination with the adjective to denote various references to a notion of the activity. We comprehend the participles of the perfect, which may operate adjectively, although they are at the same time employed to form the passive.
- a. A great number of adjectives and participles are connected with this infinitive, which express readiness, inclination,

capacity, appropriateness, destination, being accustomed to anything, or the striving after anything, as well as the contrary, and which are mostly construed before nouns with the prepositions *to*, *for*, and the like, some also with *of*. It is to be understood that adjectives not in themselves expressing a tendency, serve in this very combination with the infinitive to express it.

They be almost *ready to stone me* (EXOD. 17, 14.). Having forgotten, as we are all too *prone to do*, the inner facts of Nature (CARL., Past a. Pres. 3, 3.). But *apt the mind or fancy is to rove* Uncheck'd (MILT., P. L. 8, 188.). Ne'er was I *able to endure* contempt (COLER., Picc. 5, 5.). I shall not be *fit to be seen* (TAYLOR A. READE, Masks 1, 2.). Even such a sum he was *unable to spare* (MACAUL., H. of E. VII. 1.). A Bacon . . . *Unfit to stand* the civil storm of state (THOMS., Summer). *Intent to gaze* Creation through (ib.). The craven-hearted world Is ever *eager* to accept a master (TALF., Ion. 4, 2.). The boy is *ripe to look* on war (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 4, 13.). *Sagacious* all, *to trace* the smallest game, and *bold to seize* the greatest (YOUNG, N. Th. 5, 976.). *Wise to promote* whatever end he means (COWP. p. 98.). A spirit, *zealous*, as he seem'd, *to know* More of th'Almighty's works (MILT., P. L. 4, 565.). Invention, weak at first, Dull in design, and *clumsy to perform* (COWP. p. 163.). All were *swift to follow* whom all lov'd (p. 191.). *Slow to learn* (p. 178.). Thou wert not *wont to seem* so stubborn (TALF., Ion 4, 3.). *Un-used to bend*, impatient of control (THOMS., Liberty 4.). Being, as he said, very *desirous to see* his young lady (FIELD., T. Jon. 16, 3.). Mine eyes are *hungry to behold* her face (LONGF. II. 139.). Studious of song, And yet *ambitious not to sing* in vain (COWP. p. 139.) and many more. Here also belongs *free*: Ye are *free to be* my foe (BULW., Rienzi 5, 3.), and *like, likely*, with which the notion of equality lies at the root of the further developments of the notion: Have we more sons? or are we *like to have*? (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 5, 2.). A surgeon . . . applied himself to dressing his wounds, which I had the pleasure to hear were not *likely to be mortal* (FIELD., T. Jon. 8, 13.). Participles like *disposed, determined, accustomed, busied, born, made, armed* or, if one will, the passives of *dispose* are analogously treated: She was deeply *busied then To tend* the wounded Deloraine (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 3, 22.). We were not *born to sue*, but *to command* (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 1, 1.). You are not *made to sink* down into a virtuoso (BULW., Maltrav. 2, 4.). Am I not *arm'd by Heaven To execute* its mandate? (TALF., Ion 4, 1.) What strange words Are these which call my senses from the death They were *composed to welcome*? (ib.) and the following.

For the infinitive with *first* and *last* see b.

The relation of the direction to anything is early transferred to adjectives, which meet with another preposition than *to*. Old-Engl.: Up he righted him *redi to deren* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 212.). A noble schyp . . . Into Cyprys *redy to fare* (RICH. C. DE L. 623.). Thou make the *yare To weynde* thi way (TOWN. M. p. 267.). Then were I

bowne craftely to *cutt* it (p. 239.). Ich am *redy* and *i-boen* To *don* al that thou saie (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 13.). Many a beggere for benes *Burum* was to *swynke* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 128.). That everi lording was *bisi* to *sauve* his owen lyf (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 342.). We ar alle *thro* His wille to *do* (TOWNS. M. p. 128.). [*Thro* answers to the Anglosaxon *progen*, *validus*, Old-norse *þrár*.] Be not negligent to *kepe* thy persone etc. (CHAUC., C. T. p. 158. l.). To *fyghte*, the Crystene wer ful *swyfte* (RICH. C. DE L. 4473.). *Hardy* was he evere To *suffren* al that God sente (P. PLOUGHM. p. 413.). Be we nevere *bolde* The belle hym to *schewe* (p. 12.). The mirth that I was *wonte* to *make* (SIR CLEGES 112.). The more is he *enclyned* to *fall*e in deadly synne (CHAUC., C. T. 192. l.). Thou art *i-bounden* as a knight To *helpe* me (CHAUC., C. T. 1151.) and others. — Sometimes the pure infinitive is found: As he was *wonte* done byfore hand (IPOMYDON 418.). That non so *hardy* were of dede After him neither *go* nor *ride* (AMIS A. AMIL. 1048.). — Hallsax.: *Fus* To *folzhenn* heore wille (ORM. 9065. cf. 16997.). Ben *bun* . . To *þeowitenn* i þe temple (523.). He warrþ . . *bun* To *libbenn* i clænnesse (2495.). [*Bun* Old-Engl. *boun*, *iboen*, comp. Hallsax. *ibon*, *ibone* (LAJAM. I. 264. II. 110. has arisen from the Old-norse participle *báinn*, ready, comp. *búa*).] He wes cniht swiðe *ræh* to *ræden* ane kinge (LAJAM. I. 317.). Þe Peohtes weoren ofte *iruned* Vortigerne to *overcumen* (II. 162.). — Even here the pure infinitive sometimes stands: þat heo beon *zarewe* sone mid þe *uaren* to Rome (LAJAM. II. 635.). Þat hii beo *redi* sone mid þe *fare* to Rome (ib. modern text). More remarkable is the combination of *till* to in the meaning of *for to*: Forþþi wass he riht *rædi* *till* To *wissenn* himm (ORM. 16998.). — In Anglosaxon a wide scope is conceded to the infinitive with *tō* with adjectives of this kind: He *bende* his *bogan* se is nu *gearo* *tō* *sceótanne* (Ps. 7, 13.). Ve syndon *gearwe* *tō* *gevinne* *þat* land (Ncm. 14, 40.). Væron *æðelingas* eft *tō* *leodum* *fise* *tō* *farenne* (Beov. 3612.). Væron *hý* *reowe* *tō* *ræsanne* *gífrum* *grāpum* (Cod. Exon. 126, 26.). Þu eart *meahtum* *swið* *niðas* *tō* *nerganne* (185, 10.). Heora fēt beod *swiðe* *hraðe* *blōt* *tō* *ægeótanne* (Ps. 13, 6.). Sum bið *list-hendi* *tō* *ávitanne* *vord-gerýnu* (Cod. Exon. 299, 1.). Yet the pure infinitive also stands: Hú være þu *dýrstig* *ofstikjan* bær? (THORPE, Anal. p. 105.). Comp. Goth. *Mahteigs* . . *ufarassjan* (2 Cor 9, 8).

- c. The idea of a tendency to the activity denoted by the infinitive with *to* is not to be applied to a number of adjectives, as certain, sure, worthy, content, happy, tired, and others, expressing an emotion, although they sometimes border hard on adjectives of the above series. Adjectives and participles denoting emotions are treated analogously to the verbs cited at p. 27. An object with *of* is mostly subjoined to them.

Ere ye come there, be *sure* *ta* *hear* some news (SHAKSP., III Henry VI. 5, 5.). Whose shoes I am not *worthy* to *beur* (MATTH. 3, 11.). As a sacrifice *Glad* to *be offered*, he attends the will Of his great Father (MILT., P. L. 3, 269.). I am not *glad* to see you here (DOUGL. JERROLD, Prison. of W. 1, 1.). I am *happy*, *rejoiced* to see you (1, 2.). I am *merrier* to *die*, than thou art to *live* (SHAKSP., Cymb. 5, 4.). I grow *weary* to *behold* The selfish and the strong still tyrannize (SHELLEY I. 157.). I am very *loath* to be your idol, sir (SHAKSP., Two Gentlem. 4, 2.). As *bashful*, yet *impatient* to be seen (COWP. p. 171.). He was *afraid* to look upon God (EXOD. 3, 6.). To *beg* I am *ashamed* (LUKE 16, 3.). *Hopeless* to *circumvent* us join'd (MILT., P. L. 9,

259.). *Fearless to be overmatch'd* by living might (2, 850.). Here also belong passive forms as: *pleased, delighted, comforted, concerned*: He is *pleased to grant* it (TALF., Ion. 4, 2.). I am *delighted to hear* it (BOURCIC., Lond. Assur. 3.). I am *comforted to find* your strength is not impaired (CHATHAM., Lett. 23.). I am *extremely concerned to hear* that you have been ill (12.). *Grieved to condemn*, the muse must still be just (BYR. p. 316.).

Old-Engl.: I am *sekir* this mayde *to wyne* (IPOM. 1878.). Thou weore *worthy to be honged and drawe* (ALIS. 1723.). Fast and *loth to zeve* his god (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 138.). Therefore icham *aford to fight* (AMIS A. AMIL. 941.). Suche thinges as he nought can, he schal not ben *aschamed to lerne* hem (CHAUC., C. T. p. 153. l.). I was *ashamed so to here* hym prate (SKELTON l. 44.). — The pure infinitive meets us even here: But sayden he was *worthy have* his lif (CHAUC., C. T. 6627.). Richard was *loth withdraue* hys hand, Tyl he hadde wunnen the Holy Land (RICH. C. DE L. 6303.). — In the older period of the language I have found few instances. Hallsax.: þat Uortiger weoren *wurðe to walden* þas þeode (LAŶAM. II. 157.). Þās gescý neom ic *vyrðe tō berenne* (MATH. 3, 11.).

In Modern-English in the cases cited the subject of the infinitive is the same substantive notion to which the adjective belongs; in the older language, as in the case cited under c., the deviation occurs that the infinitive supposes another subject or the activity in an abstract manner, so that the active is also put instead of the passive infinitive now in use. Old-Engl.: And were wele *worth to drawe* (AMIS A. AMIL. 2045.) that is to *quarter* = to be quartered. He was *worthi to prayse* (SEUYN SAGES 2823.). Anglosax.: þeah he his *vyrðe* ne sie *tō ālætenne* þās fela he me lāðes sprāc (CAEDM. 618.). Thus with the Latin *dignus* the supine in -u stands, as with other adjective notions considered under c.

- c. With a number of adjectives, as easy, hard, important, necessary, beautiful, agreeable, disagreeable, new, and others with which an activity is to be added, with regard to or for which the quality takes place, the infinitive of the active with *to* is used in the meaning of the Latin supine, in -u, which may in part interchange with the gerund accompanied by *ad*. The activity taken abstractedly does not have its subject in the object to which the adjective belongs.

He will answer to the purpose *easy things to understand* (TENNYs. p. 272.). In chase of terms Though apt, yet coy, and *difficult to win* (COWP. p. 192.). Comedy seems so *troublesome to write* (TAYLOR A. READE, Masks 2.). I want to speak to you about something that is *important and necessary to mention* (TROLLOPE, Framl. Parson. 1, 13.). Is my apparel *sumptuous to behold*? (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 4, 7.). For wonderful indeed are all his works, *Pleasant to know* (MILT., P. L. 3, 702.). This garden, planted with the trees of God, *Delectable both to behold and taste* (7, 538.). But strange Hath been the cause, and *wonderful to hear* (9, 862.). So pure a strain, So *pure to feel*, so *sweet to hear* (TH. MOORE p. 176.). O sight of terror, *foul and ugly to behold*, *Horrid to think*, how *horrible to feel*! (MILT., P. L. 11, 463.). Conjurations *horrible to hear* (ROWE, Jane Sh. 4, 1.). By word and by spell, *Deadly to hear*, and *deadly to tell* (SCOTT, L.

Minstr. 1, 1.). Elsie! the words that thou hast said Are *strange and new* for us to *hear* (LONGF. II. 37.).

Alongside of this the modern tongue has also given space to the passive infinitive annexed to the substantive notion belonging to the adjective, as subject of the activity undergone: A softer train Of mix'd emotions, *hard to be described*, Her sudden bosom seized (THOMS., Summer). Three qualities *difficult to be found* in princely natures (FIELD.) and others.

As in Latin the supines *auditu*, *cognitu*, *dictu*, *memoratu*, *factu* and some others, are most frequently found after such adjectives as *facilis*, *difficilis*, *jucundus*, *honestus*, *turpis*, *nefas* and others, so even here infinitives corresponding in meaning to those supines frequently return. The ancient tongue selects the infinitive of the active. Old-Engl.: In al that lond n'as ther non y-hold. So *semly on to se* (AMIS A. AMIL. 425.). Wote ye not that I am Pylate, *perles to behold* (TOWN. M. p. 203.). Ful *pitous to beholde* (CHAUC., C. T. 1920.). Of stubbes sharpe and *hidous to byholde* (1980.). His eyen holwe, *grisly to biholde* (1365.). An eddere righte *hidous to see* (MAUNDEV. p. 27.). That it be lore lawefull, and *lusty to here* (DEPOS. OF RICH. II. p. 3.). The grete roches, that ben *stronge and dangerouse to passen by* (MAUNDEV. p. 46.). Fulle *mervelous to neven* (TOWN. M. p. 20.). Halsaax.: Jatt wass Crist full *æp to don* (ORM. 16186.). Ðatt wwre himm *lihht to forpenn* (15181.). Anglosaxon proceeds correspondingly: Heó (sc. seó hurh) *vás sviðe fäger on tō lōc-janne* (OROS. in ETTM. 7, 35.). Ðā sæ þe ær *vás smylte veðere glāsh-lutru on tō seónne* (BOETH 6.). Heó *glādu være on tō lōc-janne* (ib.). He bið þām yflum *egeslic and grimlic tō geseónne* (COD. EXON. 57, 15.). Ðās vord sind *lustbære tō gehýrenne* (A-S. HOMIL. I. 130.). Hit veaŕð siððan *vered tō drincanne* (EXOE. 15, 25.). Ðāt vās þām veorode *veor tō gepoligenne* (ANDR. 1659.). Ðāt vās satane *sār tō gepoligenne* (1689.). Ðāt treov vās *gōd tō etanne* (GEN. 3, 6.). Ælces cynnes treov fāger on gesihðe, and *tō brucenne vynsum* (GEN. 2, 9.). The pure infinitive also occurs: *Seón vrätlic* (BROV. 3304.). In French the infinitive of the active with *à* essentially corresponded.

5. The prepositional infinitive combines with the substantive in various respects.

- a. Its employment in the meaning of a genitive of the Latin gerund is very familiar, which approaches the gerund with *ad*, particularly after abstract substantives, among them also determinations of time.

Some falls are *means the happier to arise* (SHAKSP., Cymb. 4, 2.). I'll give thee *scope to beat* (Rich II. 3, 3.). I have no *ambition To see* a goodlier man (Temp. 1, 2.). I have great *reasons to suspect* All the professions you can make to me (SOUTHERN, Oroon. 2, 1.). He . . sent her far, far off, Far from my *hopes ever to see* her more (ib.). How have you the *conscience to tell* me such a thing to my face? (3, 1.). Give me your *promise to love and to marry* her directly (SHERID., Riv. 2, 1.). The villain has the *impudence to have* views of following his trade as a tailor (GAY, Begg. Op. 1, 1.). Two cities of Assyria had the *presumption to resist* the Roman arms (GIBBON, Decl. 16.). These caitiff nobles have neither the *courage to be great*, nor the *wisdom to be honest* (BULW., Rienzi 2, 1.). To him they owe *Skill to direct*, and *strength to strike* the blow (COWP. p. 10.). I

have the *wish*, but want the *will to act* (LONGF. I. 150.). Yet what avail these vain *attempts to please*? (BYR. p. 321.) I have *need to be alone* awhile (TAYLOR A. READE, *Masks* 2.). "I have the best *right to ask*." — "But the worst *right to be answered*." (ib.) He had some *reluctance to obey* the summons (SCOTT, *Ivanh.* 10.). His trembling hand had lost the ease, Which marks *security to please* (SCOTT, L. Minstr. *Introd.*). I have the *pleasure to acquaint* you with the glad tidings of Hayes (CHATH., *Lett.* 21.). I have the *honour to drink* your health (COOP., *Spy* 1.). She ordered supper to be hastened, that she might have the more *leisure* after it to *finish* the few affairs which remained to her in this world (HUME, H. of E. 42.). This is no *time to bleed* (SHAKSP., *Rich. II.* 1. 1.). Now is the *time . . . To do thy part* (TALF., *Ion.* 4, 2.). This . . . is scarcely the *hour* thus publicly to *confer* with Rienzi (BULW., *Rienzi* 2, 8.). The substantives belonging thither may in general be construed with a case of the object accompanied by *of*, but in part also by other prepositions. The infinitive comprises therefore a multiplicity of internal combinations of a substantive notion with a notion of the activity, so that the former is more closely determined by or immediately referred to the latter.

This construction is founded upon old custom; Romance infinitives have conformed to it. Old-Engl.: The same *to set leve* thu hasse (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., *Rel. Ant.* I. 195.). For *hope To have* me at wille (P. PLOTGHM. p. 55.). He saide that Ammon was of *powere To kepe* here fro com-burment (ALIS. 471.). *To wile* his estre, and his beyng, Grete *wille* had Porus (5468.). *To maken* menis his him *ned* (WRIGHT, *Anecd.* p. 6.). He was in *poyn*t to *for-doun* hymselfe (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., *Rel. Ant.* I. 61.). Thu jyf us *grace . . . to servyn* the (I. 63.). Þat he geve us *mihte and strengþe to forletene* pesternesse, and to *folgie* britcnesse (I. 132.). Everych of us hath *matere and occasioun to be tempted* of the norischyng of synne (CHAUC., C. T. p. 191. II.). With sad *purpos* to *schryve* him (p. 186. I.). *To fyghte* I hove gret *deleyght* (RICH. C. DE L. 3111.). And bad non have the *rage* Theo water to *passe* of Estrage (ALIS. 4336.). But he have good *seuerans to dwelle* seven þer with hym (HALLIW., *Freemas* 121.). That is the *manere to do* reverence to the Soudanne (MACDEV. p. 40.). Apon the holyday þe mowe wel take *leyser y-nowgh* loveday to *make* (HALLIW., *Freemas* 315.). Cryst-þeve yow bothe *wytte and space* wel[s] thys boke to *conne and rede* (789.). Now is theo *tyme hit to done* (ALIS. 7598.). Halfsax.: þe king heom þef *leoue* þenne to *liþe* (LÆMM. II. 286.). Heo ferden mid þan *crafte to lokien* in þan leofte, to *lokien* in þan steorren (II. 598.). God *witt and mahht to spe-kenn* wel (ORM. 16056.). Wipp mikell *lust to lernenn* (16993.). Niss nan *time inn oper lif . . . To takenn* wipp þe wake leod (2707.). Anglosax.: þat ge syððan *leāfe* habbon *tō biegeanne* þat þat ge vyllað (GEN. 32, 34.). Ic hābbe *geveald* micel to *gyrvanne* gōdlēcran stōl (CÆDM. 280.). Ic hābbe *anveald* mine sǣve *tō āletanne* (JOH. 10. 18.). Nis me vihte *pearf* heārran *tō habbanne* (CÆDM. 278.). Eal svā ūs *neōd* is gelōme *tō dōnne* (LEGG. ÆTHELR. IV. 34.). The prepositional infinitive also stands with notions of time: *Mæl* is me *tō fēran* (BEOV. 637.). The Gothic precedes with the infinitive with *du*: *Til du vrohjan*, Opportunity to sue (LUC. 6, 7.) *Mel du bairan*, *χρόνος τοῦ τελεῖν* (LCC 1, 57.) and others. Sometimes the pure infinitive stands: *Valdusni aih ushranjan* þuk jah *valdusni aih fraletan* þuk (JOH. 19, 10.). — In Old-English the infinitive

without *to* is sometimes met with: That ouhte 'be god *skill maken* us alle tame (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 342.).

- b. As the prepositional infinitive leans upon the substantive verb, and becomes with it, as it were, its gerundive complement, it also combines immediately with an abstract or concrete substantive notion. The active or passive infinitive then expresses the activity belonging to the object itself as the subject of the verbal notion, and which is impending or at work, or to which it is adapted or inclined.

What perils past, what *crosses to ensue* (SHAKSP., II Henry IV. 3, 1.). Who hath warned you to flee from the *wrath to come*? (MATTH. 3, 7.) Who of all *ages to succeed* . . will curse My head? (MILT., P. L. 10, 733.) A *nation* from one faithful man *to spring* (12, 113.). Th' effects which thy original crime hath wrought In *some to spring* from thee (11, 423). He's a *man to thrive* in the world (SOUTHERN, Oroon. 1, 2.). Oh! love is not an earthly *Rose to die* (MRS. HEMANS p. 24.). 'Twas a *din to fright* a monster's ear (SHAKSP., Temp. 2, 1.). A *sight to gladden* Heaven! (THOMS., Liberty 4.). Lest he tear my soul . . while there is *none to deliver* (Ps. 7, 2.). Have we not *every thing to alarm* us? (GOLDSM., G. Nat. M. 4.) The building afforded little to *interest* a stranger (SCOTT, R. Roy 5.). Thou art the *star To guide* me to an anchorage (LONGF. I. 142.). Look For *fury not to be resisted* (SHAKSP., Cymb. 3, 1.). Inward *rapture, only to be felt* (THOMS., Summer). Notwithstanding the *punishment* justly *to be inflicted* on her (HUME, H. of E. 42.). In Buchan's *North Country Ballads, to be presently mentioned* (SCOTT, Minstr. I. 67.). He seems to accept the fact as a *thing to be admitted* (LEWES, G. I. 67.). A *bed-room not to be slept in* (DOUGL. JERROLD, Prison. of W. 1, 1.).

Instead of the infinitive of the passive, which has become familiar here, that of the active is also met with, to which the substantive does not yield the active object: Sweet duke of York, our *prop to lean upon* (SHAKSP., III Henry VI. 2, 1.). Moses sent them to the war . . with the holy instruments, and the *trumpets to blow* in his hand (NUMB. 31, 6.). They paid our price for us, and we are now Their property, *a part of their estate, To manage* as they please (SOUTHERN, Oroon. 3, 1.). He wept for *worlds to conquer* (BYR., Age of Bronze). In: Clean straw and fair water are *blessings not always to be with* (MONTAG., Lett.) the subject interchanges with the intransitive infinitive.

I must also remark the connection of the prepositional infinitive with a substantive determined by *first* or *last*, or with *first*, *last*, used substantively, as also where these stand alone as adjectives. The infinitive attaches itself however, according to the Romance fashion, primarily to adjectives: Mine shall be the *first voice to swell* the battle-cry of freedom — mine the *first hand to rear* her banner (BULW., Rienzi 1, 5.). And the *first to arm*, when the foe was nigh, Wert thou (MRS. HEMANS p. 104.). Harper was the *last to appear* (COOP., Spy 3.). He came and

with him Eve, more loath, though *first to offend* (MILT., P. L. 10, 109.). I have an interest in being *first to deliver* this message (GOLDSM., Vic. 8.).

From these combinations, however, those are to be distinguished in which the infinitive is related to the Latin supine in -u, with substantives which are either accompanied by an adjective, to which the infinitive might be added in the like sense, or even stand alone: I know that thou art a *fair woman to look upon* (GEN. 12, 11.). The Earl was a *wrathful man to see* (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 4, 11.). Adam wedded to another Eve Shall live with her enjoying, I extinct; A *death to think* (MILT., P. L. 9, 828.). O voice once heard Delightfully, Increase and multiply, Now *death to hear* (10, 729). Oh *shame to think!* (THOMS., Liberty 5.)

In the language of ancient times the prepositional infinitive of the active prevails with the determination of the substantive notion in all similar relations. The infinitive of intransitive and transitive verbs may then have its subject in the substantive, the transitive also its object, that is, it may appear instead of the more modern infinitive of the passive. Old-Engl.: Thou no schust haue ben a *knight To yon among maidens bright*, Thou schust haue ben a frere (AMIS A. AMIL. 619.). *Mon* thou art ywys *To wynne* yet a kyndom (R. or GL. I. 15.). Yfe thou be a *mon to wedde* a wyfe, Y voche hyr save . . On the (SIR AMAD. 569.). Thei fynde there no *cloudes to letten* hem (MAUNDEV. p. 45.). He was a *piler ariht to holden up* holi church (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 325.). The active instead of the modern passive is offered by passages like: There is no *watre to drynke* (MAUNDEV. p. 47.). Men fynden longe *apples to selle* (p. 49.). Take with the Isaac thi son, As a *beest to sacryfy* (TOWN. M. p. 36.). The combination of the infinitive with *first* and *last* seems not to have been assimilated to the French usage till modern times, although in principle appropriated to the English. The employment of the infinitive in the sense of a supine with substantives with and without an adjective is also in use in ancient times. Old-Engl.: Heo both the *lothlokest men on to seon* (ALIS. 6312.). *Pat ioqe yt ys to sen* (R. or GL. I. 1.). *Great shame* it is *to se* (Cov. MYST. p. 5.). It was *reuthe to se* (CHAUC., C. T. 5472.). He weep that *pite was to here* (2880.). That was a *wonder thyng to se* (TOWN. M. p. 35.). Substantives standing alone are here treated like adjectives of cognate sense.

The instances which are quoted above with *have*, *give*, may also be in part referred here for Anglosaxon (p. 31). Instances of the immediate combination of the active infinitive are also not wanting in the meanings here denoted with a substantive: Se hæfde monecynnes, mine gefræge, heohoste *hond lofes to vyreanne* (THE SCOP 143.). *Bec on to leornjanne* (BROTH. 3, 27.).

6. The prepositional infinitive attaches itself to sentences in which determinations of kind or measure, as *so*, *as*, *such* (commonly followed by *as* before the infinitive), *enough too*, *more than* combine with adjectives, adverbs, substantives or verbs in the predicate. In this case the infinitive, although it might be connected with the predicate without those determinations, is to be referred immediately to them. The infinitive expresses a succession, or a suppositional result, to which a determination set in the predicate is adequate or inadequate.

Now that my father's fortune were *so good As but to be* about this happy place (MARL., Jew of M. 2, 1.). Wherefore dealt you

so ill with me, *as to tell* the man whether ye had yet a brother? (GEN., 43, 6.). The king cannot believe your Eminence *So far* forgets your duty, and his greatness *As to resist* his mandate! (BULW., Richel. 4, 2.). You would have been . . if not dead, at all events *so near it as to have taken* to stopping at home (DICKENS, Pickw. 2, 20.). But we the matter *so shall handle As to remove* that odious scandal (BUTL., Hud. 1, 2, 659.). Not mere rhymes only, but verses and stanzas, have been used as common property, *so as to give* an appearance of sameness and crudity to the whole series of popular poetry (SCOTT, Minstr. I. 16.). Here sat a zealous Calvinist with brows bent just *as much as to indicate* profound attention (R. ROY 20.). You can't be *such a fool as to be jealous* of Polly (GAY, Begg. Op. 2, 2.). — I am *too young to be* your father, Though you are old *enough to be* my heir (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 3, 3.). Though I am not presumptuous *enough to suppose* myself *so important as to warrant* any special interference of Providence on my behalf (WARREN, Diary 1, 18.). I have been wrong'd *enough to arm* my temper Against the smooth delusion (ROWE, Fair Penit. 2, 1.). Heav'n is for thee *too high To know* what passes there (MILT., P. L. 8, 152.). The night is *too dark for us to move in* (COOP., Spy 14.). *Too old to fight* and much *too poor to pay*, Bear arms I can't (PLANCHÉ, Fortunio 1, 1.). Spangled with eyes, more numerous than those Of Argus, and *more wakeful than to drowse* (MILT., P. L. 11, 130.).

With *so, such* the correlative *as* also falls away: Am I *so hateful* then, *so deadly* to thee, *To blast* thy eyes with horror? (ROWE, Jane Sh. 5, 1.). The laws of thy land are not *so vulgar, to permit* a mean fellow to contend with one of your ladyship's fortune (FIELD., Jos. Andr. 4, 3.). I find my letter has run into some length, which you will, I know, be *so good to excuse* (CHATH., Lett. 3.). I am no *such* pill'd Cynick *to believe*, That beggary is the only happiness (BEN JONS., Ev. Man out of his Hum. 1, 1.). — For the pure infinitive occurring after *as* in such cases see above p. 17.

The relation of the infinitive is moreover not always that just touched upon. Comp.: There is nothing on earth *so easy as to forget* (SHERID., Riv. 1, 2.), where the infinitive is the subject of a second sentence to be completed by the preceding one. Thus, especially in Old-English, determinations with *so* and *to* (= too) are especially to be understood absolutely of a high or too high degree, and the infinitive is only to be referred to a member of the sentence determined by the former: *þe be to blame . . that þe be so hard of herte to beleve*, That from dethe to lyve I am resyn ageyn (Cov. MYST. p. 377.). Judas that traytor he was *to lothe* flor golde and syltyr his mayster *to selle* (p. 364.). There also belong here generally not such sentences in which, for instance, *so* has another correlative not touching the infinitive. Comp. Old-Engl.: As in this world right now ne know I non *So worthy to be loved as* Palamon (CHAUC., C. T. 2795.).

In the more ancient tongue the infinitive is used instead of a dependent sentence in relation to the correlative *so*; no *as* is however added to the infinitive: And askyd hym with myld mod *Qwo made hym so wytyles wod That day to done* that dede (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 60.). Beo non of you *so hardye, Ageyns covenaut me to assaile* (ALIS. 7425. cf. 7471.).

A knyghte . . that is *so* hardy to *kisse* hire (MAUNDEV. p. 70.). Was no Sarezyn *so* stoute, Ovyr the walles to *loken oute* (RICH. C. DE L. 5371.). The pure infinitive is remarkable: Thei weren nought *so* hardy Swyche harlotri *usen* (P. PLOUGHM p. 454.). In early times with determinations of kind and measure the infinitive is more rarely substituted for a dependent sentence. Hallsax.: patt he ne wass noht god *inoh* Cristess shopwang *tunbindenn* (ORM. 10386.). Crist wass strang wipp hannd *inoh* To *werppenn* dun þe deofell (3574.). Witt annd wisdom dep *inoh* To *spekenn* etc. (15986.).

7. It results from the preceding considerations that the prepositional infinitive runs through a series of different determinations in regard to the single elements of the sentence, and that it then stands partly in a narrower, partly in a looser combination with the former, as, for instance, with intransitive verbs.

Hence this infinitive may be appended to sentences of every kind, and sometimes in a very loose manner, partly to introduce the result or the purpose, partly the motive of an act.

- a) In the determination of an act by its consequence or its purpose the acting subject commonly appears also as that of the infinitive.

The man is become as one of us, to *know* good and evil (GEN. 3, 22.). I would have broke mine eye-strings, crack'd them, but To *look* upon him (SHAKSP., Cymb. 1, 4.). Now leave we Margaret and her knight, To *tell* you of the approaching fight ((SCOTT, L. Minstr. 5, 13.). To *obtain* a certain good you would sell anything (DOUGL. JERROLD, Bubbles 1.). Destination and intention are in this case often more closely intimated by *on purpose* or *in order* with the infinitive: I cross'd the seas *on purpose*, and on promise To *see* your grace (SHAKSP., Cymb. 1, 7.). As if Divinity had catch'd The itch, *on purpose* to be scratch'd (BUTL. Hud. 1, 1. 165.). I had little doubt that the part he had played was assumed, *on purpose* to lead the English officer into the defile (SCOTT, R. Roy 31.). Bellarmine . . at length took his leave, but not *in order* to return to Leonora (FIELD., J. Andr. 2, 6.). At leisure hours, an abridgment of the History of England to be run through, *in order* to settle in the mind a general chronological order and series of principal events (CATH., Lett. 3.). Has he got rid of my presence *in order* to monopolize all the profit of the enterprize? (BULW., Rienzi 2, 7.).

(Old-Engl.: And the lyoun forsok hym noght With hym to be (OCTOBIAN 639.). He that will pupplische ony thing to *make* it openly knowen (MAUNDEV. p. 2.). A smal web bi-clippeth hit al aboute, to *holde* hit togudere faste (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 139.). In Old-English we meet, in support of the notion of destination and purpose, expressions like: to *that entent*: Sume werkmen . . will not pollische hem, to *that entent*, to *maken* men beleve that thei may not ben pollischt (MAUNDEV. p. 160.). Hallsax.: Uss birrp itt purrhsekenn, To *lokenn* whatt itt læreþþ uss (ORM. 12829.). Thus Anglosaxon, to determine the purpose of the act, readily attaches the infinitive with *tō* to sentences of every sort: And vyrcað fela tãcna and vundra, *tō beþærenne* mancynn (A.-S. HOMIL. I. 4.). Eall þis dide se ealda deofol *tō gremenne* þone godan man (JOB in ETTM. 4, 40.).

- b) The prepositional infinitive often stands in a looser connection, where a causal determination would have its place. So far as

the activity put in combination with another act contains its real cause, the infinitive may be the substitute for a causal sentence, sometimes even for a temporal sentence, and so far as it is regarded as not realized, for a conditional sentence.

My hair doth stand on end *to hear* her curses (SHAKSP., Rich. III. 1, 3.). I have broke your hest *to say* so (TEMP. 3, 1.). *To love* thou blam'st me not (MILT., P. L. 8, 612.). Bane *to my* fortunes! What meant I *to marry*? (BEN JONS., Ev. Man in his Hum 3, 3.) Thou art not holy *to belie* me so (SHAKSP., John 3, 4.). Sir, you're a scurvy fellow, *to talk* at this rate to me (SOUTHERN, Oroon. 1, 2.). O fool! *to think* God hates the worthy mind (POPE, Essay on M. 4, 189.). Fool that I *was to quit her* (DOUGL. JERROLD, Prison. of W. 1, 1.). — Fear and be slain; no worse can come, *to fight* (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 3, 2.). For God's sake, let him have 'em; *to keep* them here, They would but stink and putrefy the air (I Henry VI. 4, 7.). I would not do an ill thing *to be made* a bishop (FIELD., J. Andr. 2, 8.). Here, as in the last instance, the idea of tendency and that of the condition encounter each other. Comp.: What would I give *to see* you capable of sharing in their amusement (GOLDSM., G. Nat. M. 1.).

Old-Engl.: Alas, my hart is alle on flood, *To see* my chyld thus blede (TOWN. M. p 149.). And rebouked his leusdy *To speke* ani woman vilaynie (LAY LE FREINE 75.). Sire, thou art wel nice, *To leue* so mochel thin emperice (SHEVYN SAGES 2543.). Amonges alle ffolys . . I holde that thou be on of the most *To thyte* the best that is most sownd, And *kepe* the worst that is nere lost (COV. MYST. p. 36.). Thyn halyday thou kepyst not clene, In gloteny *to lede* thi lyff (p. 62.). Hii sholde . . awreke Jhesu Crist wil launce and speir *to fihite* and sheld (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 334.). — Fro that hospitalle *to go* toward the est, is a fulle faire chirche (MAUNDEV. p. 81.). In al this world *to seken* up and down Ther nys no man so wys, that couthe thenche So gay a popillot (CHAMC., C. T. 3252.). To the last quoted sentences of Modern-English answer: So strong slepe yede him on, *To win* al this warldes won No ferther he no might (AMIS A. AMIL. 994.). In the most ancient language the infinitive leans more decidedly on single members of the sentence, when it is a question of relations, which can be reduced to the cause and the motive.

8. The prepositional infinitive has become very familiar to the modern language in the abbreviation of interrogative and relative dependent sentences. It is connected with an interrogative or relative pronoun or circumstantial word.

I know not *what to do* (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 2, 2.). The king knows *at what time to promise*, *when to pay* (I Henry IV. 4, 3.). Instruct the planets *in what orbs to run* (POPE, Essay on M. 2, 21.). He sought *where to weep* (GEN. 44, 30.). At a period when the great difficulty was not *how to secure* the very words of old ballads, but *how to arrest* attention upon the subject at all (SCOTT, Minstr. I. 14.). That the spirit . . may know *How soonest to accomplish* the great end For which it hath its being (SHELLEY I. 10.). One hardly knows *whether to term* it a privilege or a penalty annexed to the quality of princes (SCOTT, Qu. Durw. 26.). — Where there is then no good *For which to strive*, no strife can grow up there From faction (MILT., P. L. 2, 30.). And what a fane is this *in*

which to pray! (YOUNG, N. Th. 9, 1353.) The Spanish muleteer has an inexhaustible stock of ballads *with which to beguile* his incessant wayfaring (IRVING, *Alhambra. The Journey*) Nor want we skill or art, *from whence to raise* Magnificence (MILT., P. L. 2, 272.). O fair foundation laid *whereon to build* Their ruin (4, 521.). He had not *wherewithal to buy* a coat (FIELD., J. Andr. 4, 1.). I was constrain'd to fly, To see . . . A pure spot *wherein to feel* my happiness (COLER., *Picc.* 2, 3.). To these sequestered pools of obsolete literature, therefore, do many modern authors repair, and draw buckets full of classic lore, or "pure English, undefiled", *wherewith to swell* their own scanty rills of thought (IRVING, *Sk. B. The Art of Book Making*).

While the interrogative principal sentence, which appears in the form of an independent infinitive (see p. 18 and under 9.) presents predominately the pure infinitive the modern language uses the prepositional infinitive in the abridged dependent sentence of this sort. The near contact of the interrogative with the relative sentence explains the homogeneity of both abbreviations. This usage goes far back, although in Old-English the pure infinitive appears even here. Old-Engl.: *Hie nuste wat to do* (R. OF GL. II. 449.). & *nuste wyder to tee* (I. 40.). And *wyten never widre to go* (MACNDEV. p. 4.). I wot nevyr *wher myn heed to hyde* (COV. MYST. p. 221.). Bot he wist not *how to begyn* (SELYN SAGES 3622.). Thei knowen not *how to ben clothed* (MACNDEV. p. 137.). — Sche nath no wight *to whom to make* hir moon (CHAUC., C. T. 5076.). Never thou deservedest *wherefore To deyen* (13631.). But lifode were schapen, *Wher-of or wher-for* Or *wher-by to libbe* (F. PLOUGHM. p. 275.). Alas, thi holy hede Hase not *wheron to hold* (TOWN. M. p. 224.). Godes son . . . Has not *where apon* his hede to rest (p. 222.). The pure infinitive is not rare in ancient times: *pat hii nuste hou on take, ne wat vor hunger do* (R. OF GL. I. 170.). He nuste *in weper ende turne* (I. 172.). For thoh icholde fle, Y not *wyder te* (WRIGHT A. HAL-LIW., *Rel. Ant.* I. 123.). Of thundre hi beoth so sore agast that hi nute *whoder fleo* (WRIGHT, *Pop. Treat.* p. 136.). Nede *waron truste* for to segge, nay (Polit. S. p. 220.). This elliptic infinitive, familiar the Romance and not unknown to the more ancient Germanic languages, seems, like the infinitive used instead of a principal sentence, wholly unknown to Anglosaxon. We there find in the corresponding place the complete dependent sentence: *pāt ic vite hū ic pe ymbe do* (EXOD. 33, 5.). And *nāfdon hvāt hig æton* (MARC. 8, 1.). In Medieval-Latin, on the other hand those combinations were early in use. See Diez's *Romance Grammar*: 2. Third Edition 3, 222. To assume the dependence of the infinitive from the verb of the predicate, in order, with Diez, to discard the assumption of an ellipse, does not seem admissible, since then the interrogative or relative word cannot well associate with the infinitive as the objective or adverbial determination, if it is not taken indefinitely, as in Modern-Highdutch: „Ich habe was zu essen; ich weiss was zu erzählen; ich habe wohin zu gehen“, that is, something, somewhither. This infinitive might seem quite analogous to that employed instead of a principal sentence, with which emotion sup-presses a modal verb.

9. The prepositional infinitive stands independently, if it attaches itself to no sentence or member of a sentence. It may be denoted as elliptic, since in fact it needs a complement, which is suppressed, although to be guessed from the context or the situation.

- a) It rarely appears, like the pure infinitive, in the emotional exclamation rarely in the question; it may also appear with a subject.

And *he to turn* monster of ingratitude, and *strike* his lawful host (BEN JONS., Ev. Man in his Hum. 3, 3.). Pshaw! this *fel-low here to interrupt* us! (GOLDSM., She Stoops 2.) *A silly girl to play* the prude with me! (LONGF. I. 174.) *O to forget* her! YOUNG, N. Th. 3, 93.) At my age, *to talk* to me of such stuff! — the man is an idiot (BULW., Rienzi 2, 1.). Oh, only *to see* how your house-keepers squabble for a lodger! (DOUGL. JERROLD, Prison. of W. 1, 1.) Well, Basil, only *to think* that we three should meet here prisoners! (1, 2.) — But *how to gain* admission? (ADDIS., Cato 3, 7.)

Instances of this sort are not old: *I to bere* a childe that xal bere alle mannys blyss, And *have* myn hosbonde ageyn; ho mythe have joys more? (Cov. MYST. p. 77.) Otherwise see under 8.

- b) Of another kind are prepositional infinitives, partly of parenthetical nature, which contain a reflection of the speaker, his intention in the representation, according to its substance or its form, a declaration, recollection or assurance over-against the listener or the reader.

Not to be weary with you, he's in prison (SHAKSP., Meas. for Meas. 1, 5). For, *to be short*, amongst you't must be had (MARL., Jew of M. 1, 2.). Yet, *to say truth*, too late I thus contest (MILT., P. L. 10, 755.). During the century and a half which followed the Conquest, there is, *to speak strictly*, no English history (MACAUL., H. of E. I. 13.). Behrisch was, *so to speak*, the precursor of Merck (LEWES, G. I. 60.). I began to wish I had not, *to use my friend Owen's phrase*, been so methodical (SCOTT, R. Roy 2.). A name amongst the most genial, *not to say* enthusiastic of poets (LEWES, G. I. 41.). I think it's very likely that even without the gravel, his top-boots would have puzzled the lady not a little, *to say nothing* of his jolly red face (DICKENS, Pickw. 2, 20.). You must marry Georgina, who, *to believe Lady Franklin*, is sincerely attached to — your Fortune (BULW., Money 3, 4.). Who establish'd their law, — *to wit*, no female Should be inheritrix in Salique land (SHAKSP., Henry V. 1, 2.). The human species are divided into two sorts of people, *to wit*, high people and low people (FIELD., J. Andr. 2, 13.). We are merry, *to be sure!* (DOUGL. JERROLD, Prison. of W. 1, 2.). Sometimes infinitives may be taken as admonitions of the speaker to himself: But, *to return* to my story (FIELD., J. Andr. 2, 6.). But, *to return*: My tears flowed fast (WARREN, Diary 1, 9.). So much for supper: and now *to see* that our beds are aired (GOLDSM., She Stoops 2.). Comp. the prepos. *to* p. 283—8.

These infinitives partly agree with French infinitives in *à*, and may be amplified into various sentences, In Modern-Highdutch infinitives in *zu*, um *zu*: Um kurz zu sein; die Wahrheit zu sagen; nicht zu gedenken; zu geschweigen; um mich eines geläufigen Ausdrucks zu bedienen, and the like, as in Greek sometimes with *ὥς*: *ὥς εἶπας εἰπεῖν, ὥς εἰπεῖν*; whereas Latin uses dependent sentences with *ut* and *ne*: *Ut ad propositum revertar* (CIC., Fin. 2, 32). *Ut ad me revertar* (Coel. 3.). *Ne dicam*, and others. In Old-English independent infinitives of this sort reach far back: *pe date of Criste to neuen þus fele*

were gon, Auht hundreth euen & sixti & on (LANGT. I, 20.). And *schortly to conclude*, such a place Was non in erthe (CHAUC., C. T. 1897.). So at the last, *the soth to say*, All his good was spent awaye (SIR CLEGGES 67.). *The sothe to saye and nought to hele*, The hethenes wer twoo so fele (RICH. C. DE L. 3127.). *To say the sothe*, and *not to ly*, We seke Jesus of Nazarene (TOWNS. M. p. 187.) Than *ferther to oure matere to procede*. Mary with Elizabeth abod ther styлле iij monthes fully (COV. MYST. p. 129.). To the infinitive *to wit* there answers even in *Halfsax*. *to iwiten*: Mid hire comen, *to iwiten*, muchele æhtene scipen (LAȜAM. II. 172.), for which is said more completely: Forð he gon liðen mið his Brutleoden, *pat is to iwitenne* mid twa hundred scipene (III 242.) We sometimes meet with prepositional infinitives in the more ancient language, which remind us of the narrative infinitive of the Latin, of which Modern-French presents instances (with *de*). Old-Engl.: And some murthes *to make* As mynstralles konne, And geten gold with hire glee (P. FLOUGH. p. 3.). *Halfsax*: Ah Arður com sone mid selere strengðe, and Scottes *to fleonne* feor of þan ærðe (LAȜAM. II. 485.). Ac Arthur com sone, and Scottes *to fleonde* (ib. modern text). I have not met with similar independent infinitives in Anglosaxon.

Other abbreviations of dependent sentences by this infinitive, as: *Since to part*, Go heav'nly guest (MILT., P. L. 8, 645.), belong to the individual license of the author. Infinitives to be taken appositively are explained by the apprehension of the infinitive like the case of a substantive notion: *In one thing they were agreed — to reject him* (GOLDEN., She Stoops 3). The infinitive may be taken to be put anacoluthically in: *To throw me Plumply aside*, — I am still too powerful for you *To venture that* (COLER., Picc. 1, 2.) and the like. This usage borders on the reduplication of the subject or object by *it*, *that*, and the like, whereof at II. 1. p. 19. Compare *Halfsax*: *To tellen pat folc of Kairlium*, ne mihte hit no mon idon (LAȜAM. II. 601.).

Repetition and Omission of the Particle *to* with a succession of infinitives.

1. The repetition of the particle *to* with infinitives of like degree, that is, referred to the same relative word or the same sentence, is natural, but has gradually given place to a freer connection of the pure with the prepositional infinitive. The language here proceeds in analogy with the relation of the same preposition to more than one substantive notion.

- a) The repetition of the particle is therefore to be judged from the points of view laid down for the preposition generally.

Come, give me your promise *to love* and *to marry* her directly (SHERID., Riv. 2, 1.). The Act of Incorporation empowered the directors *to take* and *to administer* to their servants an oath of fidelity (MACAUL., H. of E. X. 262.). She threatened *to go* beyond sea, *to throw* herself out of the window, *to drown* herself (X. 2.). With purpose *to explore* or *to disturb* The secrets of your realm (MILT., P. L. 2, 970.) and so forth.

Old-Engl.: *pat heo pider wende, To wonye & to lyue* per (R. or GL. I. 41.) And thei *to have* and *to holde* (P. FLOUGH. p. 34.). Til Contricion hadde clene foryeten *To crye* and *to wepe* (p. 447.). Han yonge men *To renne* and *to ryde* (p. 55.). He comme *to seke* and *to prove*, Yyf ony jouste with hym deir (RICH. C. DE L. 522.). He comanded . .

to all his subgettes, to *lete* men seen alle the places, and to *enforme* me pleyntly alle the mysteries of every place, and to *condyte* me fro citee to citee, if it were nede, and buxomly to *resceyve* me (MAUNDEV. p. 82.), Thanne was I redy *To lye* and to *loure* on my neghebores, And to *lakke* his chaffare (P. PLOUGHM. p. 84 sq.). Beter wille ich habbe *to wepe*, þan to *do* oper dede (R. OF GL. I. 99.). Bettre is it to *dey*, than to *have* such povert (CHAUC., C. T. p. 162. l.). Halfsax.: We beoð alle ȝarwe to *ganne* & to *ride* (LAȜAM. II. 512.). Nan mann noht ne fand on hemm *To taelenn* ne to *wrezen* (ORM. 121.). *To peowtenn* and to *wurpenn* Godd (904.). In Anglosaxon repetition is the rule: Ic . . him tilode *tō licjanne* and *tō cwēmanne* (Ps. 14, 14.). Ðær hȳ leomu ræcað *tō bindenne*, and *tō bānne*, and *tō svingenne* (Cod. Exon. 99, 8.).

- b) The non-repetition of the particle has, however, become common, both when the infinitives stand to one another in the copulative and disjunctive and in the adversative and comparative relation, when even their remoteness from one another is little noticed.

I hardly yet have learn'd *To insinuate, flatter, bow and bend my knee* (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 4, 1.). Fix'd like a plant on his peculiar spot, *To draw* nutrition, *propagate*, and *rot* (POPE, Essay on M. 2, 63.). I've sent our trustiest friend *To see* and *sift* him (BULW., Richel 5, 2.). We learn *to love*, and *esteem*, and *admire* beyond them (ROGERS, It., For. Trav.). Thy lips . . Taught me what path to *shun* and what *pursue* (COWP. p. 102.). Time was necessary wholly to *eradicate* one language and *introduce* another (SCOTT, Minstr. I. 32.). The English student . . goes there simply to *get* his dinner, and perhaps *look* at the Times (LEWES, G. I. 52.). Such a scene could not be expected *to be acted* so near them, and the inmates of the cottage *take* no interest in the result (COOP., Spy 7.).

Awaiting who appear'd *To second*, or *oppose*, or *undertake* The perilous attempt (MILT., P. L. 2, 417. cf. 1, 717. 2, 362.). One wink of your pow'rful eye Must sentence him *to live* or *die* (BUTL., Hud. 1, 2, 997.). I'm really puzzled what *to think* or *say* (BYR., D. Juan 1, 68.). A mind well skill'd *to find* or *forge* a fault (Engl. B. p. 312.).

To know the world not *love* her, is the point (YOUNG, N. Th. 8, 1276.). I come *to save* and not *destroy* (BYR., Manfr. 3, 1.). It was your duty to *check* my extravagance, not *feed* it (DOUGL. JERROLD, Rent. Day 2, 4.). I dare promise you to *bear* A part in your distress, if not *assist* you (SOUTH., Oroon. 2, 1.). Hard lot of man — *to toil* for the reward Of virtue, and yet *lose* it! (COWP. p. 39.). They weep not to *relieve* their grief, but *shew* (YOUNG, N. Th. 5, 536.). So you'll have nothing *to do* but *keep* yourself warm (DICKENS, Nickleby 1, 4.).

As good *to die* and *go*, as *die*, and *stay* (SHAKSP., John 4, 3.). Own man born *to live* as well as *die* (YOUNG, N. Th. 5, 787.). They would dread far more *To be thought* ignorant, than *be known* poor (BEN JONS., Poetaster 1, 1.). I rather chose *to travel* all night, as cold as it is, wrapped up in my furs, than *go* into the common stores (MONT., Lett.). Far better with the dead *to be* Than *live* thus nothing now to thee (BYR., Bride 2, 11.).

A repetition of infinitives with and without repetition of *to* often occurs according to various points of view, where the isolation or opposition of the members or series of members makes repetition appear natural: Who taught the nations of the field and wood *To shun* their poison, and *to chuse* their food? Prescient, the tides or tempests *to withstand*, *Build* on the wave, or *arch* beneath the sand? (POPE, Essay on M. 3, 99.) He . . possessed many lucrative and many formidable rights, which enabled him *to annoy* and *depress* those who thwarted him, and *to enrich* and *aggrandize* . . those who enjoyed his favour (MACAUL., H. of E. I. 29.).

In Old-English non-repetition of the particle in the copulative, then also in the comparative and disjunctive relation, early became usual to a wide extent: And bigan *to brenne & quelle* (R. or GL. I. 38.). There *to jangle* and *jape*, And *jugge* hir even cristen (P. PLOUGHM. p. 33.). Thanne was Conscience called *to come* and *appere* (p. 50.). Into that welle, aungeles were wont *to come* from hevene, and *bathen* hem withinne (MAENDEV. p. 88.). Token Peter Conyng huere kyng *to calle* and *beo* huere cheventeyn (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 188.). In that stede *to duelle* and *be* Ther Goð was ded (OCTOUIAN 1841.). I kam noht *to chide* Ne *deprave* thi persone (P. PLOUGHM. p. 53.). Me wor lever *to be dedh* Than *led* the lif that hic led (WRIGHT & HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 146.). They hadde lever *to don* soo, Than with her vytayles *helpe* her foo (RICH. C. DE L. 6104.). Wel aught a wyf rather hir self *to sle*, Than *be defouled* (CHAUC., C. T. 11709.). Chese rather *to suffre* than *bygygne* (p. 136 I.). To whos wurchipe syngre *je* this songe, *To wurchip* God or *reveren*s me? (COV. MYST. p. 20.) Serys, trewly *je* be *to blame*, Jhesus thus *to bete*, *dyspoyle*, or *bynde* Or *put* hym to se gret schame (p. 311.). The interchange of infinitives with and without *to* is usual with a series of infinitives: Syche bondage shalle I *to theym beyde*, *To dyke* and *delf*, *bere* and *draw*, And *to do* alle unhoneſt deyde (TOWN. M. p. 57.). Even in Halfsaxon one *to* is thought as continuously operating: Heore beot makieð *to cumen* *to ure burghes*, *ure king binden*, and *to Rome hine bringen* (LAȜAM. II. 625.). He þohte *to quellen* þe king on þis peoden, & his folc *ualden* *uolden* *to grunden*, & *setten* al þis kinelond an his agere hond, & *fallen* *to þan grunde* Arður þene junge (II. 418.). *To lutern* himm, *To lofenn* himm annd *wurraenn* (ORM. 206.). He jaff hemm bisne god inoh *To lufenn* Godd annd *dredenn* (851.). One might in part assume, instead of the continuous operation of the preposition, a change of construction, since the reverse phaenomenon, an infinitive with *to* following the pure infinitive, also partly occurs (see p. 18.). In Anglosaxon I have not noticed a *to* continuously operative: in Gothic *du* may operate continuously in: Insandida mik *du ganasjan* þans gamalvidans hairtin, *merjan* frahunþanaim fralet jah blindaim siun, *fraletan* gamaidans in gabraſtein, *merjan* jer frauþins andanem (LUC. 4, 18. 19.), where, however, the pure infinitive may be referred to *insandida*.

2. If infinitives not of like degree require the particle *to*, it must recur with the second infinitive. The English tongue takes no offence at the immediate succession of prepositional infinitives, the last of which is dependent upon the first or upon a determination belonging to it.

This nook, here, of the Friers is not climate For her *to live* obscurely in, *to learn* Physic (BEN JONS., Alchem 4, 1.). *To win* widows *To give* you legacies (3, 2.). Of age the glory is *to wish*

to die (YOUNG, N. Th. 5, 649.). I sought him out, *To press him to accept* another charger (COLER., Picc. 1, 3.) I told him *to open* the door *to surprise* you (MARRYAT, P. Simple 1, 1.). Of schemes and projects, she was too soft *to desire to know* (BULW., Rienzi 3, 3.). Lord Lufton wants me *to learn to ride* (TROLL., Framl. Parson. 1, 13.). Thus too, incidentally, pure infinitives follow each other immediately: I will *go seek* her (LONGF. I. 198.).

A similar succession is not foreign to the ancient tongue. Old-Engl.: And bad hem alle be bown . . . *To wenden* with hem to Westmynstre *To witnesse* this dede (P. PROUGH. p. 37.). Ches rather for to deye, than *to assente To ben oppressed* of hir maydenhede (CHAUC., C. T. 11696.). Halfsax: Fundede *to uarenne* wið Passent *to fehten* (LAȜAM. II. 325.). *To cumenn* inntill ȝerrsalæm *To servenn* i þe temple (ORM. 505.). In Anglosaxon especially I have not met with the immediate succession of such prepositional infinitives; the succession of pure infinitives is not uncommon. Old-Engl.: Go *byd* these kynges *com speke* with me (TOWN. M. p. 127.). Halfsax.: Ne purue þa cnihtes . . . buten [buten] biwiten þat castelȝat & careless *liggen slæpen* (LAȜAM. II. 358. sq.). Anglosax.: He hēt bire *syllan etan* (LCC. 8, 55.). Nu ge mōton *gangan* . . . Hrōȝgār *geseōn* (BEOV. 795.).

The infinitive seldom meets with *till*, instead of *to*, in the ancient language: We wenyd *tille have tene ded* therfor (TOWN. M. p. 322.). The interchange of *to* with *till* is mentioned at p. 313. II. 1. Comp. also the infinitive with *for to*, at the end.

The Prepositional Infinitive with *for to*.

The preposition *for* is early prefixed to the infinitive with *to*, and that too in all its grammatical relations. This juxtaposition of prepositions, which is analogous to the Danish and Swedish *for at* with the infinitive, was originally a strengthening of the infinitive with *to*, after this had been itself weakened, and frequently treated like a pure infinitive. The notion of destination and of purpose manifestly originally belonged to the infinitive with *for to*, so that it is to be compared with the Romance infinitive with Fr. *por*, *pour*, Ital. *per*, Span. *por*; but it exactly agrees with the Old-Provencal and Old-French Infinitive with *por a*, of which Diez (Romance Gr.) gives instances. Comp. *Por luy a vengier* (Serm. de S. Bern. 523.), where the collocation of words also occurs which we often meet with in ancient times. Comp. Halfsax. *Forr þe to ȝifenn* bisne (ORM. 1239.). *Forr uss to clennsenn* (1384.). *Forr swa to winnenn* blisse (896.). And as the *a* is usually absent in Provencal and Old-French, so too here and there in Halfsaxon *for* alone occurs with the infinitive: Corineus was to wode ivare *for hunti* deor wilde (LAȜAM. I. 60. modern text). *For habbe* alle þe heahte (I. 94. modern text). Ich æm icumen þe pus næh for muchelere neode, *for suggen* þe tiðene (II. 131. ancient text). See under 1. But the specific meaning of *for to*, as well as that of *to*, also early stepped into the background, and was treated just like the infinitive with *to*.

In Modern-English its use is disappearing and has fallen to the lot of the vulgar speech. But it is still to be met with in the seventeenth century, especially in the written language, and in its decease mostly appears in its pregnant meaning.

1. We therefore find it the most often where it indicates a purpose.

And all countries came into Egypt to Joseph *for to buy* corn (GEN. 41, 57.). There went out some of the people on the seventh day *for to gather* (EXOD. 16, 27.). He carried away all his cattle . . . *for to go* to Isaac his father (GEN. 31, 18.). And in very deed for this cause have I raised thee up, *for to shew* in thee my power (EXOD. 9, 16.). Set men by it *for to keep* them (JOSH. 10, 18.). In: I will ensure you . . . five hundred pounds *for to save* my life (SCOTT, Heart of Mid Loth. 7.) we may think of the idea of an equivalent.

This employment of the infinitive with *for to*, which extended to all cases in which the notion of a purpose, or a final sentence, was applicable, reaches back to the Anglosaxon. It attaches itself to verbs of motion and to sentences of every kind: Thou most to Jurselem oure mete *for to bugge* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 144.). They went to church, Godes service *for to werch* (SIR CLEGES 163.). Thus he asaid the regions That him cam *for to asaile* (ALIS. 82.). And rideth swithe so foul may fleon, Alisaundes ost *for to y-seon* (1982.). Many fled to Lynday, socour *forto haue* (LANGT. I. 14.). Þoru Englische and Saxones þat hider were ybrought þoru Brutones *forto helpe* hem (R. OF GL. I. 3.). Þe kyng Wyllam, *vorto wyte* þe wurp of lond, Let enquiry streytlyche þoru al Engelond (II. 373.). Pilgrymes and palmeres Plighten hem togedere *For to seken* saint Jame (P. PLOUGHM. p. 4.). Thei þeven the pilgrimes of here vitaylle, *for to passe with* the desertes (MACNDEV. p. 63.). Melechemaker, the whiche his brother let sle prevyly *for to have* the lordschipe (p. 38.). The idea of the equivalent is awakened by: Bihot twenty mark som leuedi O night *for to ligge* me bi (SECTYN SAGES 1589.). Hafsax: Locrin & Camber to þon scipen comen *for to habben* al þa æhte (LAJAM. I. 94.). Þe wes pudere icumen *for to i-seon* þare cnihte gomen (I. 346.). Jede he till Godess aliter, *For þær to þeowwien* Drihhtin Godd (ORM. 138.). *For to wæstnen* þa luuen of leofuen heore uaderen to-somme me heom tæhte, to-somme me heom tuhte (LAJAM. III. 207.). Þe king me bi-tahte þis ard *for to beon* his stiward (II. 138.). Himm wass ec þatt name sett *Forr mikell þing to tacenn* (ORM. 735. cf. 412. 896. 1005. 1080. 1239. 1384. and often). In Anglosaxon *for tō* with the infinitive is only found in this sense, although rarely and in later times: Oc se kyng hit dyde *for tō hauene* sibbe of se eorl of Angeov and *for helpe tō hauene* tōgænes his neve Villelm (SAX. CHR. 1127.). The influence of Old-French seems here undeniable. The wide extension of the usage, even in Orm, is however a striking phaenomenon, reminding one of the Scandinavian tendency to use *for* with the Infinitive with *at*.

2. Furthest removed from the original usage is the application of this infinitive in the grammatical meaning of a subject and object in the sentence, of which Modern-English still presents instances.

Therefore 'tis good and meet *for to be wise* (MARL., I Tamburl. 1, 1.). Shame unto thy stock That dar'st presume thy sovereign *for to mock* (ib.). It is associated with the accusative like any other infinitive: You make me *for to laugh* (GOLDSM., She Stoops 3.).

As against such remnants this infinitive commonly stands in Old-English in the place of the grammatical and logical subject and of a predicative nominative: *For to don* synne is mannysh, but certes *for to persevere* longe in synne is werk of the devyl (CHAUC., C. T. p. 157. l.). He nyste whether hym was moost fayn. *For to fyghte* or turne agayn (RICH. C. DE L. 5299.). Scheome hem thoughte *for to fleon* (ALIS. 3682.). It

com hym thorough a vysyoun . . Into Yngelond *for to goo* (RICH. C. DE L. 118.). It were gret vilani, by Scyn Jon, A liggeand man *for to slon* (AMIS A. AMIL 1336.). It is your fortune *for to haue* that grace (SKELTON I. 26.). — Avarice is *for to purchase* many erthely thinges (CHAUC., C. T. p. 202. l.). In Hallsaxon we meet the infinitive with *for to* in the place of the subject, even interchanged with that accompanied by *to*: Betere þe is freondscipe *to habben* þene *for to fihien* (LAJAM. III. 41.).

It is frequently met with as the object of a verbal notion: Wat þenkestow *for to do?* (R. OF GL. I. 24.) He *willede*, for foul lecheri, þis mayde *forte spouse* (L. 19.). And wold me gladlich *for to spille* (WRIGHT, Polit. 8. p. 199.). Þe kyng and ys conseil *radde* þo stones *forte sette* (R. OF GL. I. 147.). With that ye leve logik, And *lerneth for to love* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 440.). Afre began he *for to weze* wyse and riche (MAUNDEV. p. 139.). Thenne they myght wel *forbere* *For to pleye* and *for to leyghe* (RICH. C. DE L. 3450.). They schul . . *suere* hyt never more *for to use* (HALLIW., Freemas. 459.). When þe *weneth* alrebest *For te have* ro ant rest, The ax ys at the rote (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 116.). Men use yong chyl dren *for to done* In temple *for to lere* (TOWN. M. p. 77.). It also stands with *owe*: Your counsel *ought for to be privé* (RICH. C. DE L. 1834.). Well they *ought . . for to complayne* This noble man (SKELTON I. 13.). — Half-sax.: þer ich lai a sweuete *agan ich for to slepe* (LAJAM. III. 14.).

Thus the infinitive is also added to the verb with a case, where a genuine accusative with the infinitive is to be assumed, or, in general, where the infinitive attaches itself to the verb with a case of the person: þe kyngge hette Merlyn pere *For te segge . . wat þe tokonyng* were (R. OF GL. I. 131.). This prison caused me not *for to crie* (CHAUC., C. T. 1097.). A mayny of rude villains made hym *for to blede* (SKELTON I. 8.). If he wille not suffre then My people *for to pas* in peasse, I shalle send venvyance IX or ten (TOWN. M. p. 59.). Than he comaunded hastily Herodes *for to make cry* (RICH. C. DE L. 427.). And bad his folk . . Noo good off hem *for to neme* (3875.). Prayde hem *for to dwelle* (79.). Some him taughte *for to gon* (ALIS. 658.) and so on.

To complete the picture of the use of this infinitive, its further agreement with the infinitive accompanied by *to* may be pointed out by instances.

- a) It is found in the gerund sense in *be*: Suche þinges ywys Ne *bep for to scheue* noȝt, but wen gret nede ys (R. OF GL. I. 145.). He that is Goddys son *ffor to nevene* (COV. MYST. p. 193.). It is *for to suppose* (SKELTON I. 87.). Wherof was made Lay le Frain, In Ingliche *for to tellen*, y-wis, Of an asche forsothe it is (LAY LE FREINE 23.). Emanuelle . . "God is with us" that is *for to say* (TOWN. M. p. 145.). That is *for to seyne* etc. (MAUNDEV. p. 58.).
- b) It stands with adjectives denoting readiness and the like: They were *redy for to wende* (RICH. C. DE L. 510. cf. 2229.). Ten thousand, ol *prest and yare* Into batail *for to fare* (ALIS. 1187.). Ther they be *stoute and sterne* Bostful wurdus *for to crake* (RICH. C. DE L. 3826.). Every man that may, That *strong* is wepene *for to bere* (4400.). *For to fyght* they wer full *fell* (4479.). This dede *ffor to do* be bothe *blythe and bolde* (COV. MYST. p. 44.). Men werein *wont for to clepe* that place the feld of Damasce (MAUNDEV. p. 67.). — *Ȝe fonnys and slought* of herte *ffor to beleve* in holy Scrypture (COV. MYST. p. 367.); as also with others, especially those denoting an emotion: I am not *worthy for to lause* The leste thwong that longes to hys shoyne (TOWN. M. p. 166.). Thou aght to be fulle *sayn For to fulfyll* my Lordes bydyng (p. 168.). Bot *for to tary* I were fulle *lothe* (p. 213.). Gyle dooth hym to go, *A-gast for to dye* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 40.). I was *lothyst* hens *for to go* (SKELTON I. 2.); as also in the sense of a Latin supine or *ad*

with the gerund: Fair y was ant fre Ant *sembly for to se* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 121.). It is *hard for to expowne* (TOWN. M. p. 229.). Anon the watre was swete and gode *for to drynke* (MAUNDEV. p. 57.). Related is: Thou art *trew for to trist* (TOWN. M. p. 33.).

- c) With substantives it frequently appears, like a genitive of the gerund, where the notion of appropriateness, readiness and the like may naturally come more strongly out: Wat, if he *leve have of ure heven loved for to deren us* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 213.). *Pat hii nadde no poer ajen hym vorto stonde* (R. OF GL. II. 372.). To whom God *ȝaf his pleyn power for to bynde and to assoyle* (MAUNDEV. p. 18.). How xuld I have *wytt a schypp for to make* (COV. MYST. p. 41.). *Stondynge in pointe Cleges for to smyght* (SIR CLEGES 287.). It is light And *time for to go* (AMIS. A. AMIL 1058.). Halſax: *Naffde ȝho nan kinde þa Onn hire forr to tæmenn* (ORM. 455.). So too with other relations: It was *joie for to here* etc. (HALLIW., Nugae Poet. p. 3.).

- d) It attaches itself to determinations of the kind and of measure: None off hem was *so bolde For to breke* the Sarezynes scheltrome (RICH. C. DE L. 5628.). Who made the *so bold For to stroye* my stoor of myn houshold? (GAMELYN 349.).

- e) To express the motive and the cause, wherewith also may be combined the above mentioned idea of an equivalent, the preposition *for* combined with *to* is adapted, whence a conclusion might be drawn as to the conception of the infinitive with *to* in corresponding cases in olden times: A mannes herte mihte blede *for to here* the crie (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 341.). Sir, you must shame sich wordys *for to meyn* Emang men (TOWN. M. p. 202.). The lyoun was hungry and megre, And bit his tayl *for to be egre* (RICH. C. DE L. 1079.). Loke thou come not to churche late, *for to speke* harlotry by the gate (HALLIW., Freemas. 593.). They weren at gret discord, *for to make* a soudan (MAUNDEV. p. 38.). — *For* al this worldes gode *to take*, His lord nold he neuer forsake (AMIS A. AMIL. 1654.). *For to winne* al this warldes gode, His hende lord . . . Schuld he neuer forsake (1942.). Certes, *for to lyf or dy*, I shalle not faylle (TOWN. M. p. 122.). We here think of the ambiguity of the Fr. *pour* with the infinitive, by which both the purpose and the cause is expressed.

- f) It likewise occurs in the abbreviated question: Ffor wo they ne wuste to *whom ffor to pleyne* (DEPOS. OF RICH. II. p. 6.).

Finally this infinitive also stands absolutely: But *shortly for to speken* of this thing, With Creon . . . He faught (CHAUC., C. T. 987. cf. 1342. and others.).

- g) The old and frequent phaenomenon is yet to be mentioned that, with the combination of several infinitives of like degree, the second with *for to* follows the first with or without *to*. This is particularly frequent with their comparative relation to one another after *than*. Old-Engl.: Ye become my londe *to spye*, And sum treson me *for to don* (RICH. C. DE L. 718.). It begynneth *to weze* moyst and *for to swete* (MAUNDEV. p. 160.). Ase god is *swynnden* anon as so *for to swynke* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 152.). It is ful hard for any man On Abraham *bileve*; And wel away worse yit *For to love* a sherewe (P. PLOTCHM. p. 350.). That it is lighter to lewed men O lesson *to knowe* Than *for to techen* hem two (ib.). Betere were *to bue* wis, Than *for to where* feh ant grys (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 109.). Better were *to graunt* hir asking, Than his liif *for to spille* (AMIS A. AMIL. 649.). It is more worth to be pacient than *for to be* right strong (CHAUC., C. T. p. 161. l.). I had lever go to Rome . . . Then *for to greſe* yonde grome (TOWN. M. p. 308.). Thou haddest levyr *be betyn* lame, Than thi defawtys *for to telle* (COV. MYST. p. 306.). This takes place even in the above quoted passage in Half-

sax.: Betere þe is freondscipe to habben þene for to fhten (LAȜAM. III. 41.). The interchange of forms, on the whole equally justified, seems to rest upon euphonic reasons. Compare the interchange of the pure and the prepositional infinitive, touched upon at p. 52.

The infinitive with *for to* is found in Scottish: And hes vs left all foldit into cair Heleuand for to bring vs to despair (SCOT. POEMS OF THE XVI CENTURY. Lond. 1801. II. 109.). But as *to* interchanges with *till*, so *for till* is met with along with *for to*: I thoct it best my pen for till assay This lytill buke in verse for to comyle (ROLLAND, Seven Sages 1578. Prol.). In Old-English the reference of the infinitive with *to* to *till* occurs: To soupy at table they wente tyll (OCTOUIAN 755.).

Not a rare phenomenon in Modern-English is the connection of an infinitive with *to* with an object connected by *for*, which is to be regarded as the subject of this infinitive. *For* in this case mostly discloses no immediate reference to the infinitive. Comp.: The night is too dark for us to move in (COOP., Spy 14.). The wind sits fair for news to go to Ireland (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 2, 2.). Yet in some cases we cannot help finding a closer reference to the preposition, as in: He was too much accustomed to deeds of violence for the agitation he had at first expressed to be of long continuance (SCOTT, R. Roy 34.), in which the interposed subject would not, according to the English fashion, prevent the grammatical reference to *to be*, since the subject might precede the *for* to itself. Comp.: Ostage in this towne know I non, Thin wyff and thou in for to slepe (COV. MYST. p. 147.).

The Prepositional Infinitive with *at*.

This infinitive with *at*, in use in Old-norse, as well as in the modern Scandinavian tongues, is not rarely met with in Old-English. Its coming in is, of course, ascribable to Danish influence.

In Old-English this infinitive is not found in the earliest times, at least in literature: Ful sare him langed to hyr at ga Priuely, withowten ma (SEVERN SAGES 3017.). That es at say, with golde and essence (MS. in Halliw. v. at). We have othere thinges at do (TOWN. M. p. 181.). With that prynce, . Must we have at do (p. 237.). I wille kepe charite for I have at do (p. 26.). See other instances in Halliwell l. c. In Hallsaxon no trace is found of this infinitive, for in *at oferdon* = to excess (see II. 1. p. 387.) the participle, not the infinitive is to be found.

Upon an infinitive of this sort rests *ado* used substantively = bustle, trouble: With much a doo I got unto Braintree by noone (KEMPS, Nine Daies Wonder p. 9.). To make a great *ado* about trifles (WEBST. v.).

In fact the infinitive *at do* interchanges with *ado* in Old-Engl.: I woll that they together go And done all that they han *ado* (ROM. OF THE ROSE 5082.). That every man schalle have 80 wyfes, alle maydenes; and he schalle have *ado* every day with hem (MAUNDEV. p. 132.). The rejection of *t* is nowise remarkable; even in LAȜAMON the forms *at* and *a* interchange before consonants in composition, as *atsechen*, *asechen*; *atsceken*, *asceken*; *atstonde*, *astonde*; *atlaed*, *aloped*; *atwailden*, *awailden*. *To do* is sometimes quite equal, in the modern stricter meaning, to *ado* used substantively: And so with much to doe, at my request They haue forborne unto this onely houre (GASCOIGNE, Jocasta 1, 1.).

Tenses of the Infinitive.

The infinitive appears in two tenses. The one, called the present, the only one in the old Germanic dialects, as well as in Gothic and Anglosaxon, expresses the abstract nature of the activity in the form of a noun, admitting therefore a reference to every time in which the activity denoted by the infinitive is represented as engaged in putting it forth, or as being at work. But the periphrastic forms of the preterite occasioned the formation of periphrastic forms for the infinitive of the past, by which the notion of the activity might be represented as finished or concluded in time, for the time in question.

Upon the whole, the infinitive of the present is most frequently in use; the infinitive of the past has a far narrower sphere, beyond which however it has proceeded, so far as to admit a double reference, in which, partly the objective nature of successive facts, partly subjective points of view of the speaker form the standard.

1. The infinitive of the present may therefore be received into every sphere of time of the verb of the predicate, as the expression of the activity apprehended abstractly.

I *purpose to write* the history of England (MACAUL., H. of E. I. 1.). They perforce *must do or die* (BYR., Siege 29.). My left leg *'gan to have* the cramp (BEN JONS., Fox 5, 1.). He *told* her not *to be frightened* (DICKENS, Pickw. 2, 20.). The story . . . *was*, by tradition, *affirmed to be* truth (SCOTT, Bride 1.). I proceeded, however, *to decipher* the substance of the manuscript (ib.). A wandering poet and parcel-musician, who, after going through various fortunes, *had returned to end* his days as he could in his native islands (Pirate 3.).

We may say that this infinitive predicates nothing of the time of the activity generally, although the context of the speech causes a definite sphere of time to be perceived. But, after an infinitive of the preterite has become opposed to it, removal of the activity backwards from a given point of time is expressed by a specific form, whereas, originally, the representation in this manner of an activity concluded in time by the infinitive of the present was not excluded. The temporal relation was then yielded only by the context. This was a defect, as compared with the ancient tongues. It is to be understood that instances of the kind above quoted are common to all periods of the language. Old-Engl.: *Plente me may* in Engelond of alle gode *yse* (R. or Gl. I. 1.). Here fon heo *durre* þe lasse *doute* (ib.). Wende ajen ouer se, as best *was to done* (II. 498.). He *was wont to holden* a round *appele* in his hond (MACPHER., p. 8.). He *will make it to ben cryed* (p. 2.) and so on. Anglosax.: Nē ve gyt ne *magon* svā miclum eov *secgan* on þam deopan andgite svā svā hit gedafenlic være (BASIL., Hexam. 1.). Dis is mycel eov mannum on mōde *tō smēagenne* (3.). He viste sum ealand synderlice digle, þat oft menige men *eardjan ongunnon* (S. GUTHLAC 3.).

Instances of the removal backward, of the activity denoted by the activity behind the sphere of time denoted by the verb of the predicate do, however, occur: Diogenes; who *is not said . . . To whine. put* finger i' *his eye*, and *sob*, Because he 'ad ne'er another tub (BURL., Hud. 1, 3, 1025.). *what-soe'er he's said to do*, He went the self-same way we go (2, 3, 1025.). In such a case the verb of another sentence, to which the infinitive

attaches itself in the whole context, is the mean for the understanding of the sentence.

2. The infinitive of the preterite expresses the activity in its completion, with reference to another determination of time.

- a) It stands with a verb of the present in a present tense, to denote that the act which the infinitive expresses is finished or past in the time indicated by that tense.

I *must have been* asleep (LONGF. I, 144.). I'm the veriest fool That walks the earth, *to have believed* thee false (I. 210.). In our island the Latin *appears never to have superseded* the old Gaelic speech (MACAUL., H. of E. I. 4.). 'Twill be no crime *to have been* Cato's friend (ADDIS., Cato 4, 4.). If the verb of the predicate stands in the perfect, both notions of activity may denote activities falling in the same time: It *must have been* a lovely child, *To have had* such a lovely hair (KIRKE WHITE, Gondoline).

Instances of the kind above quoted are rare in Old-English. Those which to me seem to occur more frequently are those in which facts coinciding in time are placed together in the perfect: Ye *have greatly erred to have cleped* such maner folk to youre conseil (CHAUC., C. T. p. 158. II.). Moreover the formation of the futurum exactum, mentioned II. 1. p. 97. rests upon the same principle, as well as other combinations of present tenses with the infinitive of the preterite.

In cases, like; You *need not to have pricked* me (SHAKSP., II Henry IV. 3, 2.). I did forget — he, he! — I have such a head — not that I *need have forgotten* it (TAYLOR A. READE, Masks 1, 2.) it is not so much the infinitive as the verb of the predicate. We should here rather expect a preterite instead of the present. The perfect *be gone* in the infinitive, where the present was to be expected, is explained like the corresponding imperative: So speed me my errand, and *let me be gone* (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 2, 6.). "You *must 'be gone*" said Death (TENNYS. p. 52.) See II. 1. p. 136.

- b) With a verb of the predicate in the tenses of the past, where objective facts are in question, the activity denoted by the infinitive, if measured by the verb of the predicate, lies in the rear of the act denoted thereby.

It *was* the misfortune of my friend, however, *to have embarked* his property in large speculations (IRVING, Sk. B. The Wife).

The case is, however, very common in which the completed activity does not lie in the rear of the act denoted by the verb of the predicate, but would rather follow it or be contemporaneous with it, if it were realized. The activity denoted by the infinitive, which had to await its completion, and that sometimes at an indicated moment of the future, seems a subjective supposition, which, however, is to be thought as not realized or transformed into its counterpart.

This train he *laid to have intrapp'd* thy life (MARL. Jew of M. 5, 4.). Thus he *determ'd to have handled* thee (ib.). Before I enter'd here I call'd, and *thought To have begg'd, or bought,* what I have took (SHAKSP., Cymb. 3, 6.). When Orsin first *let fly* a stone . . . big enough, if rightly hurl'd, *T' have sent* him to another world (BUTL., Hud. 1, 3, 491.). The Lord *was* very angry with Aaron *to have destroyed* him: and I prayed for Aaron

also (DEUTER. 9, 20.). *I intended only to have teased him three days and a half, and now I've lost him for ever* (SHERID, Riv. 1, 2.). *I trusted never more to have beheld thee* (COLER., Wallenst. 2, 6.). *We meant to have taken them alive this evening . . . But this makes shorter work* (3, 6.). *After such a victory I had expected to have found in thee A cheerful spirit* (5, 1.). *Dunwoodie! is he then here? I thought to have met him by the side of my brother's bed* (COOP., Spy 12.). *I was much tempted to to have broken the rascal's head* (SCOTT, R. Roy 9.). *He was to have been prætor next year* (BEN JONS., Cynth. Rev. 1, 1.). *Was I to have never parted from thy side!* (MILT., P. L. 9, 1153.) Here *was* enough to have infected the whole city, if it had not been taken in time (BEN JONS., Ev. Man in his Hum. 5, 1.). His attendance at the lectures . . . *was* assiduous enough to have pleased even his father (LEWES, G. I. 48.). *Notwithstanding our wish to have avoided that hackneyed simile of an angel, we cannot avoid saying etc.* (SCOTT, Pirate 3.) (where the prepositional member with *wish* is substituted for a dependent sentence). The conditional nature of the infinitive always comes out in these cases. Hence the future of the past, formed by composition with the infinitive of the past is also used directly as a conditional tense in the sphere of the past, and preterites of modal verbs, like *must*, *could*, *might*, appear beside *should* and *would* with the pure infinitive of the past, as *ought* with the prepositional (see p. 5.), to denote the conditional act: *I could have repeated Homer by heart at once* (FIELD., J. Andr. 1, 14.). *To think I could have merited your faith Shall be my solace even unto death* (TH. CAMPBELL, Theodric). For still they knew, and *ought to have remembered* The high injunction not to taste that fruit (MILT., P. L. 10, 12.). The new government *ought to have made* a choice which was above all suspicion (MACAUL., H. of E. IV. 26.). And thus there is attached to conditional sentences of every kind which go back into the past or are equivalent to those above named an infinitive containing the conditional object, or the consequence, or even the condition of those sentences: If I had found you indifferent, *I would have endeavoured to have been so too* (SOUTHERN, Oroon. 5, 1.). *He would willingly have sent his own wife thither, to have had Fanny in her place* (FIELD., J. Andr. 4, 5.). *Thou shouldst have chosen another To have attended her* (COLER., Wallenst. 1, 4.). *I would have given My life but to have call'd her mine* (BYR., Mazeppa). *You could not have studied to have done me a greater benefit at the instant* (BEN JONS., Ev. Man out of his Hum. Prol.). Which *not to have done*, I think, *had been* in me Both disobedience and ingratitude (SHAKSP., Wint. T. 3, 2.). He was in all things so very particular towards me, that *I must have been blind not to have discovered it* (FIELD., T. Jon. 11, 4.). Quite similar is the relation where the sentence assumes the form of an assertion: *And to have seen the mother's pangs, 'Twas a glorious sight to see* (KIRKE WHITE, Gondoline). On the other hand, if the conditional sentence is referred to the present with the verb of the predicate

in the form of the past, the removal backwards of the activity, although only a suppositious activity, expressed by the infinitive, as of a fact imagined finished, is necessary: I *had* rather *Have skipp'd* from sixteen years of age to sixty, *To have turn'd* my leaping time into a crutch, Than *have seen* this (SHAKSP., Cymb. 4, 2.).

The union of objective facts of the past by a preterite with the infinitive of the past is not familiar to the ancient language. But that connection wherein the finishing of the act expressed by the infinitive shews itself as unrealized is diffused in Old-English. Where this form of the infinitive is connected with a preterite, a sort of attraction by the former seems originally to have determined the infinitive in point of form, so far as the moment of past time was felt in it; for nothing stands in the way of its interchange with the infinitive of the present, especially where the preterite is to be regarded as the expression of an assertion. Old-Engl.: He *wenden han buen* kynges, and saiden so in sawe (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 212.). I That *wende have had* a gret opinioun (CHAUC., C. T. 1270.). This cytee founded Helizeus Damascus, that was zoman and despensor of Abraham, before that Ysaac was born; for he *thoughte for to have ben* Abrahames heir (MAUNDEV. p. 123.). Gamelyn *come therto for to have comen* in (GAMEL. 287.). Kyng Alisaunder furst *hade y-ment* Him *have forgeve* his maltalent; And *wolde* him, with gret honour, *Have y-fonge* in his amour. Now he is strongly with him wroth (ALIS. 4570.). Thoo *had* kyng Alisaunder *y-ment* . . The cee *have y-passed* ayein, And *werren* upon Fraynsche men (5942.). As in the last instance the infinitive of the present interchanges with that of the preterite, this often happens: The Jewes *ladden* him upon on highe roche, *for to make* him lepe down, and *have slayn* him (MAUNDEV. p. 113.). Thus the infinitive of the preterite is frequently added to *wolde*, where this has the pregnant sense of willing, desiring or intending, and that of the present is expected: Upon that roche oure Lord *sette* him, when the Jewes *wolde have stoned* him (MAUNDEV. p. 86.). In that hille *wolde* Abraham *have sacrificed* Isaac (p. 106.). He hette brynge forth that felawe That him *wolde have y-slawe* (ALIS. 3970.). Summe of hem *wolden have taken* hym (WYCLIFFE, Job. 7, 44.). Comp. Anglosaxon Sume hig *voldon hine niman* (ib.). The infinitive of the preterite likewise often stands in connection with *sholde*, where that of the present is not merely sufficient, but also more conformable to subsequent apprehension: Thei trowed that oure Lord Jesu Crist *scholde han honged* on the cros, als longe as the cros myhten laste, And therefore made thei the foot of the cros of cedre. For cedre may not, in erthe ne in watre, rofe. And therefore thei *wolde*, that it *scholde have lasted* longe. For thei trowed, that the body of Crist *scholde have stonken* (MAUNDEV. p. 10.). The more pregnant expression of an act not realized stands in natural connection therewith. This infinitive combines with modal verbs in the ancient language, as well as in Modern-English: For if ye *couthen have holden* you styлле, Ye had not had this brade (TOWN. M. p. 228.). There is no man that is on life, Bot it were Pilate . . That *durst* it there *have put* (p. 229.). Ther ne was raton in al the route, For al the reaume of Fraunce, That *dorste have bounden* the belle About the cattes nekke (P. FLOUGH. p. 11.). Also after conditional Sentences: Than *wolde* other boynardis have ben abaschyd, *To have mewed* you to ony mals (DEPOS. OF RICH. II. p. 8.). I scholp er this han falle down for sleep . . Than *had* your tale *have be told* in vayn (CHAUC., C. T. 16283.). But had his noble men done wel that day, Ye had not bene able *to have sayd* hym nay (SKELTON I. 9.). Conditional Sentences with the preterite, which may also be referred to

the future, let the infinitive be referred both to the past and to a future time; I had lever *have died* als sone, Than that dede to you *have done* (SECTY SAGES 3931). Beter hem were *han y-be* barouns ant *libbe* in Godes lawe (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 212.). Ich had leuer, til domesday, *Have lived* in care and wo (AMIS A. AMIL. 2321.). A few instances from the Anglosaxon may prove how the relation of fact, which demands a removal of the act denoted by the infinitive back to a preterite, brought the infinitive, now denoted that of the present, into use: þā ic *sendan gefrāgn* svegles aldor svell of heofnum and sveartne lig (CÆDM. 2534.). *Gefrāgn* ic Hebrēos eādge *lifgean* in Hierusalem (3519.). And hire *sāgde*, ealra heora mōder Hilde abbudissan þā of veorolde *geleōran*, and . . . tō þam ēcan leōhte heofona rices vuldres, and tō gemānan þāra uplicra ceasterveara *āstigan* (THORPE, Anal. p. 54.),

Interchange of the Infinitive with a Dependent Sentence.

The infinitive has become an essential mean for the abridgment of dependent sentences. Its increased employment responds to the growing endeavour for shortness and compactness of the series of thoughts in writing and in the intercourse of life. In Anglosaxon the developed dependent sentence was far more frequent where the infinitive now finds a place. But, with the equal operation of the infinitive and of a dependent sentence, the interchange of both, where infinitives of like degree were in their proper place, is nowise remarkable, although the uniform flow of thought is thereby destroyed. Such an interchange may be intentional, to avoid uniformity, especially when two homogeneous sentences receive both modes of expression: The learn'd is happy *nature to explore*, The fool is happy *that he knows no more* (POPE, Essay on M. 2, 263.). But even otherwise the forms interchange with an identity of relation: Joseph desired *to alight*, and *that he might have* a bed prepared for him (FIELD., J. Andr. 1, 12.). Square held *human nature to be* the perfection of all virtue, and *that vice was* a deviation of our nature (T. Jon. 3, 3.). It had been better for us *to serve* the Egyptians than *that we should die* in the wilderness (EXOD. 14, 12.). This interchange is most natural, where the dependent sentence has at the same time more abundant adverbial determinations.

In ancient times this interchange is frequently to be met with. Old-Engl.: The sone of a pore man . . . wished *that the myghte cheve wel*, and *to ben* happy to marchandise (MACNDREV. p. 147.). He xal cawse the blynde *that thei xal se*, The def *to here*, the dome *for to speke* (COV. MYST. p. 254.). Beter it is *that we out renne* Thenne as wretches in house *to brienne* (RICH. C. DE L. 4407.). Ich hadde leuere *to ben anhonge*, Than *that I scholde liue so longe* (SECTY SAGES 1209.). Even in Hallsaxon the like is to be pointed out: And hehte hine mid his ferde *faren* aȝein to Rome & *pat he næwere into France his ferde no ladde* (LAȜAM. III. 48.).

Participles.

The Participle of the Present.

The participle in *-ing*, which has taken the place of the Anglo-

saxon in *-ende*, has received a derivative termination by which abstract substantives were also formed in Anglosaxon. By this transmutation of form the English participle has received both an amplified extent of usage and also a variable character. The same form of a word, therefore, appears as a participle annexed to a noun, as a gerund, and as a genuine abstract substantive. The theoretical discrimination of them according to syntactical points of view is frequently rendered difficult, the meaning of the gerund often bordering upon that of the participle, and the distinguishing the gerund from the substantive being essentially hardened, especially where no further determination is attached to the form in *-ing*. For a part of the domain of the English form, the mixture of the Latin forms *-ans*, *-ens* (*-antem*, *-entem*) and *-andum*, *-endum* in the French participle in *-ant*, which has indisputably been of influence upon the English linguistic usage, affords an analogy,

4. We consider this verbal form primarily in the syntactical meaning of the participle, which, when attached to a noun or pronoun, shares the character of the adjective, so that it may become an adjective in the stricter sense of the word, in which the verbal notion steps decidedly into the background.

a) The attachment of this participle, in the predicative and competing manner, to intransitive verbs is frequent.

α) Thus, it is added in the ancient periphrastic verbal form to the verb *be*.

My heart is *breaking* (TENNYS. p. 99.). We *were talking* of you (TAYLOR A. READE, *Masks* 1, 1.).

Comp. II. 1. p. 32.

β) It also often stands with intransitive verbs of motion, of rest and of remaining, although the manner of relation is not always completely homogeneous with that just named. Here especially, with verbs of sensuous movement and rest the participle comes into contact with the use of the infinitive, early more widely diffused (see p. 16.), by which an act or a condition, accompanying the movement or rest, is characterized.

Didst thou *come running*? (BEN JONS., *Ev. Man* in his *Hum.* 3, 3.) They *came crowding* down the avenue (IRVING, *Br. H. Hawking*). The fog *came pouring* in at every chink and key-hole (DICKENS, *Christm. Car.* 1.). How was it possible I should *go on perpetually starving* (TAYLOR A. READE, *Masks* 1, 1.). While idly I *stood looking* on (SHAKSP., *Taming* 1, 1.). The melting Phoebe . . . *stood wringing* her hands (IRVING, *Br. H. Hawking*). His silence will *sit drooping* (SHAKSP., *Hamlet* 5, 1.). The city *lies sleeping* (BYR., *Manfr.* 2, 3.). About thirty corpses *lay wallowing* in blood (MACAUL., *H. of E.* VII. 25.). This heart *had sleeping lain* (TH. MOORE p. 244.). The best thing you can do is, to go to sleep as fast as you can, and *continue sleeping* as soundly as possible (OXENFORD, *Twice Killed* 1, 2.).

The combination of such participles with the verb is closer or looser, according as the verb of the predicate is to be apprehended in a more

general and indeterminate or a more concrete meaning in the sentence. Combinations of both sorts occur from the earliest times. Old Engl.: *Tho com ther goande a man ferlich* (ALIS. 5948.). On in tyr blak *Com prickande ovyr the falwe feld* (RICH. C. DE L. 460 *Lepyng* I wente (P. PLOTGM. p. 387.). Hope *cam hippyng* aft (p. 351.). The thridde kyng *tho cam Knekyng* to Jhesu (p. 401). The child *stood lokyng* in the kynges face (CHAUC., C. T. 5435). Knyghtis *stode wepand* (TORRENT 1927.). I *sitte fastyng* (GAMEL p. 466.). His olde wyf *lay smylyng* (CHAUC.; C. T. 6668.). *Þei lauden axinge* him (WYCLIFFE, Joh. 8, 7.). *Byleste hongyng* (ALIS. 2306). There *felle* David *preying* to oure Lord (MACDEV. p. 87.). Anglosax. þý lās heó āt neāstan *cume* me *behrōpende* (LUC. 18, 5.). Ne *fē* heó *cōrigende* geond land (A.-S. HOMIL. I. 148.). *Þā hig þurhrounede hine ācŕende* (Joh. 8, 7.).

- b) As in the cases last quoted the participle of the present, with intransitive verbs, frequently touches the infinitive, so also it added to transitive verbs with a reference back to the subject of the sentence, where the infinitive might find a place. It touches the gerund so closely that a strict discrimination of the two is impossible, and both are blended in the consciousness of the speaker. This is all the more natural, as the gerund, from its substantive nature, also in fact represents the infinitive. The doubtful territory may be all the more noticed inasmuch as the employment of the participle as a gerund, to be hereafter mentioned, seems thereby to have had the way partly prepared for it. It can therefore not appear a contradiction if the amplified domain of this kind is hereafter assigned to the gerund, whereas here that is quoted, which may find its explanation from ancient forms of the language. We refer to the construction with such verbs as *begin*, *end*, and of verbs of emotion with the participle.

He again seated himself, and began *wearing* them (sc. the flowers) into one of those garlands (BULW., Rienzi 1. 1.). She *ended weeping*; and her lowly plight (MILT., P. L. 10, 937.). Now when he *had left speaking*, he said unto Simon etc. (LUKE 5, 4). With tears that *ceas'd not flowing* (MILT., P. L. 10, 910.). I still sad heart, and *cease repining* (LONGF. I. 108.). I do *enjoy putting down* these irresistibles (TAYLOR A. READE, Masks 1, 1). For more see the Gerund.

That such a conception of the participial form does not contradict the oldest Germanic manner of apprehension is proved by passages from the Anglo-Saxon: *þā se Hælend þys geendude* hys twelf leorning-cnyhtas *beheodende* (MATTH. 11, 1.). Gothic: *Uffullida* Iesus *anabiudands* þa twalif siponjam seinaim (ib.). Ripe Iesus *ganimpida* *rodjans* *gaþ* du S mona (LUC. 5, 4.). answering to the Greek: *ἐπέλασεν ὁ Ἰησοῦς δι' ἑαυτοῦ, καὶ οὗς ἐκράδατο λαλῶν*. Anglo-Saxon: Hi *ondŕea hine ðesigme* (MARC. 9, 32.), where the Greek text runs: *ἐφ' ὃς οὐ ἄλλος ἐπεσφίγγει αὐτόν*. This interchange of the participle with the infinitive, although hardly to be pursued further in the ancient language, may at least serve to have rendered possible the conception of the participial form as such. A similar mode of view may also be approximately made out for other forms of expression in Modern-English, instance, in: And *they not eating* death (MILT., P. L. 9, 791.), compared with the Lat.: *Sensit medius delapsus* in hostes (VIRG. Aen. 2. 377.).

- b) The participle attaches itself both to the subject and to the object of the sentence, and is not only to be regarded as always standing in grammatical congruence with it, although no longer disclosing this by its form, but also in general as the expression of an activity which is contemporaneous with that represented by the verb of the predicate.

She, *dying*, gave it me (SHAKSP., Oth. 3, 4.). Then, *sighing*, she left her lowly shed (TH. MOORE o. 241.). No longer *relieving* the miserable, he sought only to enrich himself by their misery (ROGERS, Marco Griffoni). She . . rose, and, with a silent grace *approaching*, press'd you heart to heart (TENNYS. p. 91.). We returned home to the *expecting* family (GOLDSM., Vic. 4.) and so forth.

It may appear a pleonasm if *being* is added to the participle of the present. I have a kinsman . . To whom *being going*, almost spent with hunger, I am fallen in this offence (SHAKSP., Cymb. 3, 6.). This form arises from the periphrasis of the verbal notion by *am going*.

Thus in general in ancient times. Old-Engl.: Al *bernynge* hit schut forth forte hit beo i-brend to ende (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 134.). And *laughing* he sayde "Leve christen man" etc. (P. PLOUGH. p. 453.). There thei kneled to him and skornede him, *seyenge*, Ave Rex Judæorum (MAUNDEV. p. 14.). On knes she sat adoun, And seid *wepeand* her orisoun (LEY LE FREINE 159.). Thei ledem him *rydyng*e alle abouten the cytee (MACNDEV. p. 197.). Glitoun ros furst, so y fynde, And smot Tauryn *uprisinge* (ALIS. 2269.). Halfsax.: þa Romanisce men fuhten *ridinge* (LAȜAM III. 61.). It may be incidentally observed that the participial form in *-ing* sometimes occurs even in LaȜamon: Heo riden *singing*e (III. 73. *singende* modern text). Anglosax.: On eorðan fornyden, *fæmende* he *tearflode* (MARC. 9, 20.). Maria sôðlice heold eall þas word *arænjende* on hire heortan (A.-S. HOMIL. I. 30.). Ða gecyrdon þa hyrdas ongean *vuldrigende* and *hærigende* God (I. 31.). Ða lufjað þæt hig gebiddon hig *standende* on gesomnuncgum (MATTHE. 6, 5.).

Yet this participle, although received into the general sphere of the verb of the predicate, also becomes the expression of an act which is to be thought as preceding that expressed by the verb of the predicate.

The neighbours, *hearing* what was going forward, *came* flocking about us (GOLDSM., Vic. 9). *Musing* a little, he *withdrew* into one of the obscure streets (BULW., Rienzi 2, 8.).

The participle is thus found from the earliest times. Anglosaxon: Se Hælend *cwæð*, þis *gehýrende* (MATH. 9, 12.). Se Hælend *út-gangende* *færde* on vëste stowe (LUC. 4, 42.). Ðonne hi *feallende* hi tō þam menniscum Gode *gebiddað* (A.-S. HOMIL. I. 38.).

- d) Attached to an objective determination of the Sentence, the participle frequently meets with the infinitive, with which it may interchange.

This is the case with the verbs of sensuous and mental perception, of thinking and narrating, as well as with factitive verbs, with which the participle connects itself in a predicative manner with an object.

The shepherd . . Who you *saw sitting* by me on the turf

(SHAKSP., *As You Like It* 3, 4.). I *see* it *coming* (COLER., *Pico* 1, 12.). The glorious angel *beheld* her *weeping* (TH. MOORE p. 340.). We *perceived* Ready-Money Jack Tibbets *striding* along (IRVING, *Br. H. The Culprit*). I *hear* them *coming* (SHAKSP., *I Henry IV.* 2, 2.). Thus I *found* her *straying* in the park (TIT. *Andron.* 3, 1.). Who *lustith* to *feale* Shall *find* his hart *creping* out at his heele (JACK JUGLER p. 17.). If you know the good it does me to *feel* your heart *beating* close to mine (TAYLOR A. READE, *Masks* 2.). And then *imagine* me *taking* your part (SHAKSP., *II Henry 5.* 2.). He . . . *thinks* no lamp so *cheering* As that light which Heaven sheds (TH. MOORE p. 243.). Can't you *fancy* me *sitting* on that great big horse? (TROLL., *Framl. Parson* 1, 13.). Galvanism *has set* some corpses *grinning* (BYR., *D. Juan* 1, 130.). I am sorry Mr. Vane *keeps* you *waiting* (TAYLOR A. READE, *Masks* 1, 2.) and the like.

Old-Engl.: He *sawh* a mayde *walkyng* him befor (CHAUC., *C. T.* 6468.). *Biddynge* as beggeris *Biheld* I hym **evere* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 308.). In erth I *see* bot syn *reynand* (TOWN. M. p. 22.). Two disciplis *herden* hym *spekyng* (WYCLIFFE, *Joh.* 1, 37.). He *fond* hem *slepyng* (MACNAB. p. 96.). He *fonde* him self *liggyng* at the foot of the mountayne (p. 148.). My dowte dothe *aprevyn* Cryst *levyng* ful bolde (COV. MYST. p. 376.). New tithand That *makes* me ful wele *lykand* (SERFIS SAGES 3195.). A man that is joyous and glad in herte, it him *conserveth* *florisching* in his age (CHAUC., *C. T.* p. 151 l. Anglosax.: þā hine *geseah* sum þinen āt leobte *sittendne* (LUC. 22, 56.). Ðā *gehyrdon* hine tvegen leorning-cnihtas *specende* (JOH. 1, 37.). Heo *gemette* þāt mæden on hyre bedde *licgende* (MARC. 7, 30.). In Anglosaxon this construction is more restricted, and referred more to sensuous perception. The distinction of the participle from the infinitive lies in that the latter represents the subject in activity: the participle, on the other hand, in the condition of the activity inhering in the subject.

Cognate combinations have become familiar to the modern language, in which the participle expresses the action ascribed to the object as the aim of the verb of the predicate.

To *prevent* the ladies *leaving* us, I generally ordered the table to be removed (GOLDSM., *Vic.* 2.). There, sir, *pardon* me *blushing* if it says anything soft (OXENFORD, *Twice Killed* 1, 2.). Here the case of the object would as well become an attributive determination of the notion of an activity used substantively (as a gerund), which then appears as the proper object of the verb of the predicate. Comp.: As friendship will prevent *your pursuing* the other too far (SHERID., *Trip to Scarb.* 1, 1.). Upon this rests the combination of the participle with a prepositional member, which may even be annexed to a substantive notion: Trusting to *the certainty of the old man interrupting him*, before he should utter a word (DICKENS, *M. Chuzzlew.* 1, 3.). You know that arose from *the fear of my cousin, old Guineamore, hearing of these matters* (OXENFORD, *Twice Killed* 1, 2.). I cannot accept *the notion of school-life affecting* the poet to this extent (LEWES, *G. I.* 34.). In such cases the sphere of time itself of the participle of the present is more indifferent, which is to be gathered from other moments contained in the sentence or in

the construction, whereas here the question chiefly is the manifestation of the activity in general.

In the older language this freer employment of the participle is sought for in vain.

- e) The participle, in its attachment to a subject or object of the sentence with a grammatical relation of like kind, may express different logical relations, for which dependent sentences of various kinds may be substituted.

The possibility of its resolution into a relative sentence, to which it is frequently equivalent, and which may itself express various logical relations, is close at hand where the determination inherent in an object is thought as active.

Here are my letters *announcing* my intention to start (TAYLOR A. READE, *Masks* 1, 2.). Or the yellow-banded bees . . Fed thee, a child, *lying* alone (TENNYNS. p. 79.).

Old-Engl.: þere weren putte sixe stonen pottis . . *takyng* eche two or þre mesures (WYCLIFFE, Joh. 2, 6.). He fonde in the temple men *seltyng* scheep and oxen (ib. 2, 14.). Anglosax.: þæt sôðe leôht com þe on-lyht sælne mann, *cumendne* tō þysum middan-earde (WRIGHT, *Pop. Treat.* p. 4.).

In other cases a sentence of time might be substituted for the participle.

He, them *espying*, gan himself prepare (SPENSER, *F. Qu.* 3, 1, 4.). I will grow round him . . Grow, live, die *looking* on his face, Die, *dying* clasp'd in his embrace (TENNYNS. p. 97.). *Lifting* the loculus and body, therefore, they carried it to the altar (CARLYLE, *Past a. Pres.* 2, 16.).

Old-Engl.: And saughe *sleepyng* many hevenly prevytees (MAUNDEV. p. 92.). Whan a man sleth an other him *defendaunt* (CHACC., *C. T.* p. 197. 1.). Anglosax.: He þā *ástigende* on ān scyp . . bād hyne þæt he hit lyt-hvon fram lande tuge (LUC. 5, 3.). He *vāccende* pone apostol on engellīcre fāgernesse geseah (S. GERHL. 4.).

The participle may also indicate a causal relation to the verb of the predicate.

Finding myself suddenly deprived of the company and pleasures of the town, I grew melancholy (SMOLLET, *Rod. Rand.* 22.). She rested from her labours And, *feeding* high and *living* soft, Grew plump and able-bodied (TENNYNS. p. 184.). *Wondering* I blush and weep that thou Shouldst love me still (SHELLEY III. 79.). In which effort, *not being* a man of strong imagination, he failed (DICKENS, *Christm. Car.* 1.).

Old-Engl.: There caste Judas the 30 pens before hem, and seyde, that he hadde synned, *betrayenge* oure Lord (MAUNDEV. p. 93.). We passe ovyr that, breffnes of tyme *consyderynge* (COV. MYST. p. 79.). Anglos.: He is ure sibb, se þe dyde ægðer tō ānum, *tōvurpende* þā ærran feondscipas on him sylfum (A.-S. HOMIL. p. 106.).

The participle may also be related concessively to the main action.

Sleeping or waking must I still prevail (SHAKSP., *I Henry IV.*

2, 1.). Love ye your enemies, and do good, and lend, *hoping* for nothing again (LUKE 6, 35.).

Anglosax.: Ealle niht *svincende* ve náht ne gefêngon (Luc. 5, 5.). Læne syllað, nân þing þanun eft *gehygtende* (6, 35.).

These, and other relations, which moreover cannot be sharply separated from and in part pass into one another, may be easily indicated by the participle of many meanings. They have therefore, in the modern language, admitted the conjunctions expressing the grammatical relation of dependent to principal sentences, and appear in combination with these as definitely expressed abbreviations of sentences, which are distinguished from other abbreviations of sentences, to be mentioned further on, by this; that with them, in fact, without the addition of a conjunction, nothing is wanting to the grammatical completeness of the sentence, which would lack only the complete clearness of the logical relation.

Mac Jan, *while putting* on his clothes and *calling* to his servants to bring some refreshment for his visitors, was shot through the head (MACAUL., H. of E. VII. 24.). *Whilst blessing* your beloved name, I'd waive at once a poet's fame, To prove a prophet here (BYR., p. 309.). I met her, *as returning*, In solemn penance from the public cross (ROWE, J. Shore 5, 1.). Our remaining horse was . . unfit for the road, *as wanting* an eye (GOLDSM., Vic. 14.). Talents angel-bright, *If wanting* worth, are shining instruments In false ambition's hand (YOUNG, N. Th. 6, 273.). I wrote a similar epitaph for my wife, *tho' still living* (GOLDSM., Vic. 2.). Nor ever did I love thee less *Though mourning* o'er thy wickedness (SHELLEY III. 79.).

Only the non-prepositional conjunctions are considered, since we assign to the prepositions which occur with this participial form another relation to it, as a gerund. The participle, as such, certainly here again touches the form, to be taken as a gerund, whose running into each other must always be considered, although the attempt at a theoretical separation of the two cannot be prejudiced thereby. The extension of the use of those particles in combination with the participle belongs essentially to Modern-English, but certainly stands in connection with their employment in other abbreviations of the sentence, which are treated of in the section on the abbreviation and contraction of the dependent sentence with the principal sentence.

- 1) This participle becomes an adjective in the stricter sense, when it serves more to express the quality inherent in an object than its actual activity, when the reference to a determinate sphere of time steps into the background and its verbal government falls away. A fixed limit is not, however, in this case to be drawn.

Any *creeping* venom'd thing (SHAKSP., Rich. III. 1, 2.). Cool with *mortifying* groans (Merch. of Ven. 1, 1.). Amanda is a *charming* creature (SHERID., Trip. to Scarb. 1, 2.). The other would sing some *soothing* ballad (GOLDSM., Vic. 4.). Here are some *hanging* shelves (IRVING, Br. H. The Busy Man). His graceful and *engaging* eloquence (MACAUL., H. of E. X. 2.). Her

voice is truth, told by music; theirs are *jingling* instruments of falsehood (TAYLOR A. READE, *Masks* 1, 1.). He returns them for some *trifling* alterations (ib.). There is kind of *whispering* noise (OXENF., *Twice Killed* 1, 2.). In his *grating* voice (DICKENS, *Christm. Car.* 1.). He was . . a *squeezing, grasping, scraping, clutching, covetous* old sinner (ib.). If you wish that happiness Your *coming* days and years may bless (BYR. p. 309.). To cheer my last *declining* days (ib.). To be your wife might be a *lasting* discredit (TAYLOR A. READE, *Masks* 1, 1.). The adverbial participle then comes into contact, in free composition in such a manner that it sometimes becomes hard to distinguish them. It is a genuine adjective in *falling* sickness, Old-Highdutch *follan-diu suht*; on the other hand in *dying* testimony, *dying* moments, *dying* day, we can hardly admit any other apprehension than in *parting* glass, *loving* month, *marrying* month (IRVING), *writing* materials, *drawing* instruments, *dining* table, *sleeping* apartment, *sleeping* draught, *brewing* tub, *visiting* day, *hunting* trophy, *smuggling* name (MARRYAT) and some others, although the altered mode of apprehension may often not be present to the consciousness of the language, and the explanation of lexicographers, as that of *dying* in *dying* testimony, *dying* moments in Webster, by *manifested just before death* and *pertaining to death*, although correct in matter, discloses an indefiniteness of grammatical opinion. The altered participial form, where it admits no grammatical congruence with the following substantive seems as if it must be regarded as an abstract, with which the exponent of the compound notion admits a multiplicity of relations, although unclearness seems to have early prevailed.

The adjective nature of the participle therefore admits a great number of compound with the negative *un*, as, *unbelieving, unbecoming, unbearing, ungroaning*, (BYRON), *unmolding*, (BRYANT), *unsating, unopening* (POPE), *unalarms, uncharming, unpleasing* (DRYDEN), *unentertaining* (POPE), *unoffending, unpromising, unflattering, unflowering* (MONTGOM.) and many more.

The substantive use of the participle to denote men is therefore allowable: The *sleeping* and the dead Are but as pictures (SHAKSP., *Macb.* 2, 2.). She was the mother of all *living* (GEN. 3, 20.). Things are lost in the glare of day Which I can make the *sleeping* see (SHELLEY III. 55.). And she do make others happy among the poor and the *suffering* (TAYLOR A. READE, *Masks* 1, 2.). This is what the dead will say. I should like to know what the *living* has to answer (DOUGL. JERROLD, *Rent.* Day 1, 1.). The participle, used substantively, seldom occurs as a neuter, or not used of persons: Seats himself in chair, and during the *following*, drinks till he falls asleep (DOUGL. JERROLD, *Rent.* Day 1, 4.). In determinate pronouns, as *something, nothing* with this participle are to be regarded as substantives with an adjective in the same case: I felt *something soothing* in the magnificent scenery (SCOTT, *R. Roy* 36.). The younger, who was yet a boy, had *nothing striking* in his appearance (BULW., *Rienzi* 1, 1.).

The employment of this participle as an adjective is common to all ages. Old-Engl.: *Snyvoeling* nose (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 138.). An heme in an herygoud with *honginde* sleven (Polit. S. p. 156.). And begileth hem her good With *glaverynge* wordes (P. PLOUGHM. p. 454.). With gay *glitering* glass *Glowing* as the sunne (p. 458.). Als as he were a *connyng* clerk (p. 473.). This *flatteryng* freres (p. 499.). So wroothith sche hire beaute in *stynkyng* ordure of synne (CHAUC., C. T. p. 187. I.). Withinne the hertes of folk schal be the *bytyng* conscience (ib.). *Stondand* hous wole he non lete (RICH. C. DE L. 4332.). A child so *hufand* as thou art (TOWN. M. p. 37.). Sore bonys and *warkand* feete (p. 45.). The water to norish the fysh *swymand*, The erth to norish bestes *crepeand* (p. 2.). The grete damages that in tyme *comyng* ben possible to falle (CHAUC., C. T. p. 151. II.). On the Friday *folmyng* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 340.). Even here we find *falling sickness* in the similar expression of Maundeville's: The grete sikenesse, that men callen the *fallynge* evylle (p. 140.). With that we may in some measure compare Anglosaxon participles, as in: Mid þam þe he com of *farendum* wege (S. GUTH. 2.). — The juxtaposition of forms in *-ing* with substantives, where a compound notion appears by its side, is old. If we will give a meaning to the final *e*, we are tempted to assume in many cases the mingling of the abstract notion with a flexible participial form. Comp.: A *kneadyng* trowh (CHAUC., C. T. 3548.). *Spending* silver had he right enough (12946.), In *blowyng* time (P. PLOUGHM. p. 331.) and *Pynyng*-stooles (p. 47.). In *fastyng* dayes to frete (p. 33.). Many gret *duellyng* pleges (MAUNDEV. p. 41.). — Hallsax.: Swa wule þe *liuende* god (LAJAM. III. 84.). Al þat *liggende* lond (I. 17.). Ða *sukende* children heo adrenten (II. 456.). A *berninge* drake (III. 15.). Anglosax.: Spritte seó eorðe *grövende* gärs (GEN. 1, 11.). Hig beoð innane *reäfigende* vulfas (MATH. 7, 15.). Geseah hvistleras and *hlyðende* mänjo (9, 23.). Him stöd *stincende* steäm of þam müðe (A.-S. HOMIL. I. 86.). On gelicnyse *svellendra* manna (ib.).

Compounds with *un* likewise pervade all periods of the language. They are numerous in Anglosax.: *unävendende*, *unäprotende*, *unäseccende*, *unöfervinnende*, *unlifgende*, *unberende*, *unbirrende*, *nufästende*, *unforgitende*, *unvändigende*, *unvillende*, *unvhearffjende*, *untimende*, *undryscende*, *unsvicjende*, *unscotende*, *unscäðvende*, *uncveðende*, *uncvacjende* and so forth. They were common even in Gothic. as: *unagande*, *unliugands*, *unrodjans*, *unbairands*, *unhabands* and so forth.

The substantive use of the participial form in *-ing* of persons is not favoured in Old-English. It seems that, with the decay of the form in *-ende*, the *-ing*, chiefly used for feminine abstract nouns, was not readily attached to verbal stems, if persons were to be denoted, for which other derivative terminations existed in sufficiency. In Anglosaxon, on the contrary, the ancient termination *ende* (*end*) was very frequently employed of persons: Heó is ealra *libbendra* móðor (GEN. 3, 20.). He ongan drifan of þam temple *syllende* and *bicgende* (MARC. 11, 15.). Setl gedafenað dēman. and steall *fylstendum* ödðe *feohtendum* (A.-S. HOMIL. I. 48.). He for þam *stænendum* velvillende gebäd (I. 52.). Hig tódælde þam *sittendum* (JOH. 6, 11.). Cyste hyre fäder and þa *ymsittendan* (APOLLON. OF T. p. 15.). Ure *älsjend* (I. 238.). Comp.: *hælend*, *scyppend*, *dælnimend*, *bebeödend*. Its substantive use as a neuter is likewise not foreign to Anglosax.: þine teoðan sceattes and þine frumripan *gengendes* and *veaxendes* ägyfe þu gode (LEGG. ÆLFRED. 38.). The transformation of a primitive genitive after *nothing*, *something* into an attributive case is to be discussed further on.

- g) A participle which serves to determine neither the subject nor the object, and therefore needs a particular subject, appears in such a combination as a subordinate member, or as equal to a de-

pendent sentence. This participle, in juxtaposition with a particular subject, is called an absolute participle. The case in which at present the participle appears with its subject is the nominative, as appears clearly where the subject is a pronoun whose nominative can be distinguished from the oblique case. The dependent sentences, which can be represented by the absolute participle, are adapted to express the same logical relations as are specified above, and rest upon the nature of the participle, not upon its combination with the particular subject.

She being down, I have the placing of the British crown (SHAKSP., *Cymb.* 3, 5.). And, in their rage, *I having hold of both*, They whirl asunder, and dismember me (*John* 3, 1.). Thou therefore also taste . . . , Lest, *thou not tasting*, different degree Disjoin us (MILT., *P. L.* 9, 881.). Think'st thou this heart could feel a moment's joy, *Thou being absent*? (LONGF. I. 210.) But, *he disdain*ing to embrace So filthy a design and base, You fell to vapouring and huffing (BUTL., *Hud.* 3, 1, 423.). *She fail*ing in her promise, I have been diverting my chagrin (SHERID., *Trip to Scarb.* 1, 1.). *We sitting*, as I said, The cock crew loud (TENNYNS. p. 201.). *All which appear*ing, on she went (BUTL., *Hud.* 2, 1, 99.). I grant that, *men continu*ing what they are, Fierce, avaricious, proud, there must be war (COWP. p. 1.). *His parents dy*ing while yet he lay in the cradle, his wealth had accumulated from the year of his birth (ROGERS, *It. M. Griffoni*). Not many years afterwards the truth revealed itself, *the real criminal in his last moments confess*ing the crime (ib. Marcolini). He howled till he was carried home . . . ; *the whole cause of his grief be*ing the ugliness of the child (LEWES, *G. I.* 18.). Even an impersonal sentence admits the transformation of the verb of the predicate into the participle of the present, and combines the neuter pronoun with it: Nor was Adams himself suffered to go home, *it be*ing a stormy night (FIELD., *J. Andr.* 4, 13.). Three or four vaudevilles, which, *it be*ing then war-time, were not quite so easy of access etc. (TH. Hook, *Gilb. Gurney* 1.).

We sometimes find the participle, which is in fact referred to the subject or object of the sentence, with a particular subject, so that the same notion appears twice in the sentence (once in the form of a pronoun). This reduplication is distinguished from others by the participial member of the sentence being made prominent, which thus is separated in the form of an absolute case, and often does not agree in form with the repeated notion: Why should he then protect *our sovereign*, *He be*ing of age to govern of himself? (SHAKSP., *II Henry IV.* 1, 1.). Neither could he suspect that he missed *his way*, *it be*ing so broad and plain (FIELD., *J. Andr.* 2, 2.). *A fellow presently pass*ing by, Adams asked *him* if he could direct him to an alehouse (ib.). *Our guest offer*ing his assistance, *he* was accepted among the number (GOLDSM., *Vic.* 6.).

The absolute participle of the present is proportionately infrequent in ancient times, whereas it is very often to be met with in Anglosaxon. The use of the nominative instead of the oblique case, which was to be

expected here, is remarkable, which however may be explained by a mingling of the cases, which had, in general, become uniform. The influence of the French might also not be disregarded, as to its more frequent use and its form, Old-Engl.: *Hym spekyng* þis þingis manye bileueden into hym (WYCLIFFE. Joh. 8. 30.). And *wijn saylyng* þe modir of Jhu seyde to hym (2. 3.). Nowe *þe feest day medelyng* Jhē wente up into þe temple (7. 14.). And *þe womman stonyng* in the mydyl, sopely Jhē reysyng hym self, seyde to hire (8. 9.). It is the herte and the myddes of all the world; *wyttenessyng* the *philosphere*, that seythe thus etc. (MACDEV. p. 2.). He sleyghly took it out. this cursed heyne, *Unwityng* this prest of his false craft (CHAUC., C. T. 13247.). Prively took up also The copier tēyne, *nought knowyng* this prest (ib. 13252.). The son wax marke, *alle me seand*, when he died on the tre (TOWS. M. p. 287.). *The hefne synnyng*, the aungel seyth etc. (COV. MSTR. p. 87.). Anglosaxon frequently makes use of an absolute dative of the participle: Rixjendum *Eðdbaldum*, Mellitus forðferde (SAX. CHR. 616.). Þā sōna eft, *Gode fultumjendum*, he meahthe gesiōn and sprecan (797.). Hēr, *Gode forgiendum*, fōr Ådelstæd Myrcna hlæfdige mid ealle Myrcum tō Tama-veordige [= Tamav.] (913.). Þāt hys cnihtas cōmon on nyght and eow *slæpendum* þone lychaman forstælon (EV. NICOD. 17.). Gif he *sunan scinendre* þāt deō (EXOD. 22, 3.). *Hym þā gyt sprecendum*, hig cōmon fram þam beahgesamnungum (MARC. 5, 35.). Even in Gothic the Dative was in use, especially with the participle of the present as an absolute case, corresponding to the Latin absolute ablative or to the Greek absolute genitive. Comp.: MARC. 5, 35. 6, 54. LUC. 2, 42. 43. 3, 1. 7, 6. 42. JOH. 6. 18. 8, 30 and else where. In Anglosaxon the preposition *bi*, *be* often stands alongside, without any essential change of the relation, especially in a few forms: þy lās þāt vundredan veras and idesa and on geað gutan, gieddum mænden *bi me lifjendum* (COD. EXON. 176, 10. cf. 250, 26.). Hi *be him lifjendum* hi gedældun (SAX. CHR. 718.). Vulfvi fēng tō þam biscoprice þe Ulf hæfde *be him libbendum* and ofaðræfdum (1053.), as in Gothic *at* for ex. MATTH. 11, 7. and often.

The phenomenon that the absolute case is used while the subject of the verb of the predicate also remains that of the abridged sentence, occurs even in Anglosax.: *Us ymbfarendum*, *ve* þone Hælend nāhvar ne gemetton (EV. NICOD. 19.). The absolute dative also stands, if the verb of the predicate requires a dative object, which again appears: And *him on scype gangendum*, *him* sōna āgēn arn ān man (MARC. 5, 2.). Se výtēga þā Symeon, *heom eallum geblysigendum*, *heom* tō evað (EV. NICOD. 24.), where manifestly no mere superfluous repetition, but an isolation of the absolute member of the sentence is aimed at.

Although the participle in general, where it stands absolutely, is not without a substantive or pronoun, on which it has to lean, participles standing alone also occur, which lean in part mediately upon a noun, or leave to be supplied a notion already named; but, in part, completely isolated, must leave a subject to be conjectured.

The logical subject of the participle may have to be gathered from a possessive pronoun: And *speaking* so, *Thy* words are but as thoughts (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 2, 1.). Besides, *being rebels*, all their acts are illegal (COOR., Spy 4.). Comp. Apposition.

An object already named exercises a similar effect: Come, come, in wooing sorrow let's be brief, Since, *wedding* it, there is such length in grief (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 5, 1.). *They* joined

in desiring him to speak, and *gathering* round him, he proceeded as follows (FRANKLIN).

Subjects to the participle not expressly denoted may often in the dialogue be the speakers, or one of them: And so, ere answer knows what question would . . . And *talking* of the Alps, and Apennines, The Pyreneans and the river Po, It draws toward supper (SHAKSP., John 1, 1.). "You look as pale as a ghost." "Ghost?" — "Hal hal hal *Talking* about ghosts, I expect my friend Fable." (OXENF., Twice Killed 1, 2.) Let us see it — Subscriptions to a book of poetry! . . . But, *talking* of subscriptions, here is one To which your lordship may affix your name (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 3, 1.). The writer, in the use of the participle absolute, frequently has primarily himself, but also sometimes the reader, or, generally, an indeterminate subject in his eye: But *granting* now we should agree, What is it you expect from me? (BUTL., Hud. 3, 1, 537.) My father had, generally *speaking*, his temper under complete self-command (SCOTT, R. Roy 2.). The other parts of the dress corresponded in colour, not *forgetting* a pair of scarlet stockings, and a scarlet bonnet (Waverl. 9.). *Judging* from the testimony of one of his contemporaries and intimates, he must have been born about the year 1435 or 1436 (IRVING, Columb. 1, 1.). And thus far he had no evil report to make *supposing* him so disposed (SCOTT, R. Roy 1.). *Assuming* this to be true, it will necessarily follow, that such an organic change in the structure of a language must have been very gradual (MADDEN ed. Lazam. Pref. p. 111.). These participles agree in part with absolute infinitives with *to* (p. 48.), and they may on the other hand, serve to explain forms used as particles, like *touching*, *concerning*, *respecting* and others (II. 1. p. 491.). They stand completely severed from the grammatical context in such forms as *and so following*, and the like. I will buy with you, sell with you, talk with you, *and so following* (SHAKSP., Merch. of Ven. 1, 3.).

In olden times instances of this kind are to be pointed out only in a small number: My name is gret and mervelous, treuly you *telland* (Cov. MYST. p. 387.) *To and so following* an older *and so sewing* seems to correspond: He takethe on o nyght, and another another nyght, *and so forthe contynuelle sewing* (MAUNDEV. p. 191.).

2. We regard the forms in *-ing* as a gerund, that is, as the term for the action determined by the verbal notion, with the retention of the government or mode of determination of the verb, where it is unable to attach itself to a substantive according to the nature of an attributive determination. The gerund distinguishes itself essentially from the abstract substantive in *-ing* by its admitting objective and adverbial determinations like the verb. Derived from intransitive verbs, it may even receive predicative completions, which are related to it as to the infinitive. Comp: *being good* = *to be good*. The gerund is treated in general as an infinitive, and uses it as a subject, as a predicative determination and as an object; but, whereas the infinitive is restricted to the combination with the preposition *to*, the gerund admits many prepositions. Like

the substantive of the same form, the gerund may also assume adnominal or attributive determinations, to which the article, the possessive pronoun, and the indeterminate negative pronoun especially belong. The exposition of the individual cases of the use of this gerund may, in conclusion, be followed by citing the restricted usage in Old-English.

a) The gerund is employed as a grammatical and logical subject.

'Tis better *using France*, than *trusting France* (SHAKSP., III Henry VI. 4, 1.). Disbanded legions freely might depart, And *slaying man* would cease to be an art (COWP. p. 112.). *The digging the foundations* and *the constructing the cellars* is weary labour (BULW., Maltrav. 1, 5.). *Your being Sir Anthony's son*, Captain would itself be a sufficient accommodation (SHERID., Riv. 3, 3.). There's *no resisting your fortune*, Blandford, you draw all the prizes (SOUTHERN, Oroon. 1, 2.). There's *no getting rid* of him (SHERID., Trip to Scarb. 1, 1.). There's *no reasoning them out of their dotage* (IRVING, Br. H. Dolph Heyliger.).

b) It stands as a predicative determination.

And is it *faring ill* to be in love? (LONGF. I. 162.) It would be *throwing away words* to prove, what all must admit, the general taste and prosperity of nations in their early state, to cultivate some rude species of poetry (SCOTT, Minstr. I. 5.).

c) Where the gerund, as an objective determination, corresponding to a case, appears, a mixture of the participle with it takes place, so far as the form in *-ing* is not itself accompanied by an adnominal determination. The possibility of an attraction by the subject of the sentence is frequently close at hand. 63.

- My brother Gloster . . May be a precedent and witness good. That thou *respect'st* not *spilling Edward's blood* (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 2, 1.). You know I don't *mind taking liberties* with you (OXENF., Twice Killed 1, 2.). I do not care absolutely to *deny engaging in what my friend Mr. Barnabas recommends* (FIELD., J. Andr. 1, 17.). I carefully *avoided seeing Schiller*, Herder, or the Duchess Amalia in the coffin (LEWES, G. I. 13.). Master Simon could not *help concluding by some observation* about "modest merit." (IRVING, Br. H. A. Bachelor's Confess.) I fancy that she does not even *like seeing Lord Lufton* talking to me (TROLL., Framl. Parson. 1, 13.). And quitting sense *call imitating God* (POPE, Essay on M. 2, 26.). It is not for me to say *what I intend doing* (GOLDSM., G. Nat. M. 4.). The worthy father-in-law elect *proposed accompanying* the youth (TH. HOOK, Sayings a. Doings. Martha). But we *prefer taking a general view* of the subject (SCOTT, Minstr. I. 46.). Who, my dear sir, could have *expected meeting you* here? (GOLDSM., G. Nat. M. 5.). I recollect perfectly well *throwing down my mother's letter* when I came to this passage (HH. HOOK, Gilb. Gurney 1.). Where adnominal determinations are added to the gerund, the abstract notion of the action is of course clearly stated: I will *attempt the doing it* (SHAKSP., Oth. 3, 4.). The other . . make *th'exposing and retailing Their souls, and consciences*, a calling (BUTL., Ep. of Hud. 35.). I forgive *his loving you* (SOUTHERN, Oroon. 3,

- 1.). I do not *doubt* his worth . . nor *his being* deserving of a more happy fate (COOPER, Spy 4.).
- d) The gerund stands by means of prepositions, in combination with all parts of speech or sentences, to which in general, prepositional members of sentences with abstract substantives may be joined. The preposition *to* is of limited use with the gerund, because the infinitive with *to* makes this combination on the whole, superfluous, as it might also stand instead of many other prepositional gerunds.

This, the blest art of *turning all to gold* (YOUNG, N. Th. 2, 85.). I have not the pleasure of *knowing the gentleman* who is your tutor (CHATHAM, Lett. 3.). To Theodosius belongs the glory of *subduing the Arian heresy*, and *abolishing the worship of idols* in the Roman world (GIBBON, Decl. 19.). Great numbers of labourers were impressed for the purpose of *burying the slain* (MACAUL., H. of E. II. 182.). Breadalbane was suspected of *intending to cheat* both the clans and the king (VII. 3.). The malady which made him incapable of *performing his regal functions* (II. 26.). I can't think of *allowing you* (TAYLOR A. READE, Masks 2, 2.). A covetous fellow, like a jackdaw, steals what he was never made to enjoy, *for the sake of hiding it* (GAY, Begg. Op. 2, 1.). She gave a king *instead of receiving one* (MACAUL., H. of E. I. 65.). *By dint of travelling very late*, we arrived at his own house that night (SCOTT, R. Roy 36.). *From seeking praise* . . They courteous congé tooke (SPENS., F. Qu. 3, 1, 1.). Why have we done this, that we have let Israel go *from serving us*? (EXOD. 14, 5) But some solemn sanction was necessary *for transforming Rashleigh's destination from starving as a Catholic priest, to thriving as a wealthy banker* (SCOTT, R. Roy 6.). And that she begged her not to share her watch, as she was well used to *being alone* (DICKENS, M. Chuzzlew. 1, 3.). And that the only object of the prosecution was to frighten him *into ceding his extensive jurisdiction* in the Highlands (MACAUL., H. of E. II. 107.). This gentleman's *about marrying her* (SOUTH., Oron. 5, 1.). They were *about burying* his neighbour (WARREN, Diary 1, 17.). I have taken an oath *against granting favours* (GOLDSM., G. Nat. M. 3.). *In suffering thus thy brother to be slaughter'd*, Thou show'st the naked pathway to thy life (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 1, 2.). There is no advantage in *not knowing him* (SHERID, Sch. for Sc. 1, 1.). Much of her time is past *in reading novels* (IRVING, Br. H. The Widow). Scotland, *in becoming part of the British monarchy*, preserved all her dignity (MACAUL., H. of E. I. 65.). Finally, *on taking leave* the good squire put in his son's hands, as a manual, one of his favourite old volumes (IRVING, Br. H. Gentility). Dolph felt struck with awe *on entering into the presence of this learned man* (ib. Dolph Heyliger). It was thus perhaps . . that my eldest son, *just upon leaving college*, fixed his affections upon the daughter of a neighbouring clergyman (GOLDSM., Vic. 2.). He has as fine a hand *at picking a pocket* as a woman (GAY, Begg. Op. 1, 1.). Dishonour not your eye *By throwing it on any other object* (SHAKSP., Meas. for Meas.

5, 1.). Why will you distress me *by renewing the subject?* (SHERID., Sch. for Sc. 2, 2.) Could you oblige me *by throwing this basket out of the window?* (OXENF., Twice Killed 1, 2.) Warwick is hoarse *with calling thee to arms* (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 5, 2.). I hope your ladyship can't tax me *with ever betraying* the secrets of the family (FIELD., J. Andr. 1, 5.). He . . standeth accurst . . And so art tho *for enter-ruptynge* me (THE PARDONER A. THE FRERE p. 104.). Now will I dam up this thy growing mouth, *For swallowing the treasure of the realm* (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 4, 1.). Heaven forgive me *for raising groundless expectations* (TAYLOR A. READE, Masks 1, 1.). What's Christmas time to you but a time *for paying bills* without money (DICKENS, Christm. Car. 1.). *Before following you*, I must know your name and purpose (SCOTT, R. Roy 21.). *Before quitting such generalities* for the details of biography, it may be well to call attention to one hitherto unnoticed etc. (LEWES, G. I. 17.). The fortunate Constantine, *after vanquishing his rivals*, bequeathed to his family the inheritance of the Roman empire (GIBBON, Decl. 11.). *After considering him attentively*, I recognized in him a diligent getter-up of miscellaneous works (IRVING, Sk. B., The Art of Book Making). *After witnessing the ruin of the party* of which he had been the nominal head, he had retired to Holland (MACAULT., H. of E. II. 100.). His features were handsome, *without being eminently so* (BULW., Maltrav. 1, 1.). I gulp down the devil *without looking at him* (LEWES, G. I. 12.).

Adnominal determinations also stand with the gerund introduced by prepositions: He altered much *upon the hearing it* (SHAKSP., II Henry IV. 4, 4.). Every thing was in the utmost forwardness *to the putting Horatio in possession* of all his wishes (FIELD, J. Andr. 2, 4.). I have since known no pleasure equal *to the reducing others* to the level of my own injured reputation (SHERID., Sch. for Sc. 1, 1.). To prevent the confusion that might arise . . *from our both addressing* the same lady (Riv. 3, 4.). Do you think, my son . . there is no danger *of his betraying you?* (COOP., Spy 4.). There is some confusion inevitably arising . . *from our not taking into account the rarity of genius* as a phenomenon (LEWES, G. I. 6.). He insisted *on my taking pen, ink, and paper*, and *turning amanuensis* (WARREN, Diary 1, 17.). All is ready *against their leaving the dining-room* (TAYLOR A. READE, Masks 1, 2.). Who gave you knowledge *of your wife's being there?* (BEN JONS., Ev. Man in his Hum. 5, 1.) I don't wonder *at people's giving him to me* for a lover (SHERID., Sch. for Sc. 1, 1.). There's not an instance . . *of a man's exerting himself ever with praise and virtue* in the dangers of his country etc. (MIDDLET., Cicero). The transformation of the impersonal sentence into a gerund with the adnominal *its* is particularly to be remarked: Who ever Heard *of its being a state-offence* to kiss The hand of one's own wife? (BULW., Richel. 1, 1.) The clerk . . went down a slide on Cornhill, at the end of a lane of boys, twenty times, in honour *of its being Christmas-eve* (DICKENS, Christm. Car. 1.). This little delusion was greatly assisted by

the circumstance of *its being market-day*, and the thoroughfares about the market-place being filled with carts, horses etc. (M. CHUZZLEW. 1, 5.).

Old-English pursued a slow development of the grammatical combinations cited, which at present are current abbreviations of speech. Doubtless the substantive in *-ing* formed from verbal stems appropriated more and more the grammatical structure of the corresponding verbs, to which the sameness of sound with the participle essentially contributed, which, on its part, amalgamated itself with that substantive through the influence of the Old-French gerund. Since the fourteenth century the abstract term appears more frequently, without giving up decidedly the character of the substantive, in combination with adverbs: In *your here dwellingng* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 282.). After *hir hennes goingng* (p. 283.). This sacrament bitokeneth the *knnytyng togider* of Crist and of holy Chirche (CHAUC., C. T. p. 204. II.). Withouten *castyngne away* of any thing (MAUNDEV. p. 250.). Moche wors is *forsweryng falschly* (CHAUC., C. T. p. 198. I.). *Suveryng sodeynly* without avysement is eek a gret synne (ib.). The decisive conception of the form as a gerund may perhaps be primarily assumed in its combination with prepositions, particularly with *in* (analogous to the Old-Fr. *en amant*): They seye that we synne dedly *in shavyngne oure berdes* (MAUNDEV. p. 19.). In housyngne, in hateryngne, And *in to heigh clergie shewyngne* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 299.). Confession and knowlichyngne *In cravinge thi mercy*, Shulde amenden us (p. 285.). He schal mervelously don to us that is in his power, bothe *in delyberyng us* fro alle perillis and *in zyvyng us graciously* al that us nedith (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 45.). I slowh Sampsoun *in schakyng the piler* (CHAUC., C. T. 2468.). He schop him for to swynke *In caryng the gold out of that place* (14289.). Appaired and aggregated moche of this matiere. *In preasyng gretly Melibe* of might, of power, of riches (ib. p. 151. II.). Ffor fals beleve That I shewyd *in temptyngne this mayde* (COV. MYST. p. 153.). *In doying that treson* my sowle xulde I shende (p. 266.). Whan men passen this desert, *in comyngne toward Jerusalem*, thei comen to Bersabee (MAUNDEV. p. 65.). And undre that chirche *in goenge down bee 22 degrees*, lythe Joachym (p. 88. cf. 97. 99. and often). With this preposition the gerund of transitive and intransitive verbs was most frequently found. Along with it others of course readily naturalize themselves: And *zif he fayle of takyngne his praye* (MAUNDEV. p. 166.). Anp cladde mournyng clothes in purpose of *abydyng dissolvynge* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 191.). Wher he is to go . . and is to *techyngne hethen men?* (WRIGHT CLIFFE, Joh. 7, 35.). The gode werkes . . ben amortised, and astoneyed, and dullid *by ofte synnyngne* (CHAUC., C. T. p. 188. II.). That he ne halp a quantite Holynesse to wexe, Some *thorough bedes biddynge* . . And somme *thorough penyes delyngne* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 418.). And *at his forsaid charter maykyng*, And also *at the possession takyng* Alle good drynkers . . Shuld be (HALLIW., Nugae Poet. p. 6.); although, with collocations of words of the last named kind, we may think of compounds. *For onys haskyng mercy* hefe is his mede (COV. MYST. p. 322.). *Afre goynge be see and be londe, toward this contree* . . I have founden the sterre Antartyk of 33 degrees of heghte (MAUNDEV. p. 181.). And so I wil leve, as for the tyme, *with outen more spekyngne of hem* (p. 122.).

The endeavour of modern grammarians to exclude the verbal government of a following object after the form in *-ing*, where it is accompanied by the article or a possessive pronoun, that is, to preserve in this case the pure character of the substantive, is at least not shared by the usage of the language.

The compound Participle of the Past of the Active.

The participle of the past in the active, compounded with *having*, more rarely with *being*, is treated in Modern-English analogously to the simple participle of the active, only it can never receive the character of a qualitative adjective.

1. a) It attaches itself as a participle, with constant reference to the completion in time of the activity denoted thereby, to the subject or object in the sentence. An action expressed by it, preceding the main action, may, logically considered, stand at the same time in a causal relation to it.

This happy night the Frenchmen are secure, *Having* all day caroused and banqueted (SHAKSP., I Henry VI. 2, 1.). He did returne . . And *being* come into Phocides lande, Toke notice of the cursed oracle (GASCOYNE, Jocasta 1, 1.). My master *having* several times missed large quantities of medicines, of which I could give no account, at last lost all patience (SMOLLET, R. Rand. 21.). Mrs. Robarts got up to take her leave, *having* promised to speak to Lucy (TROLL., Framl. Parson. 1, 13.). *Having*, during many generations, courageously withstood the English arms, she was now joined to her stronger neighbour (MACAUL., H. of E. I. 65.). My Lords, *Having* said this, let me be led to death (SHELLEY, Cenci 5, 2.). — There is no pretence of his grand-mother *ever* *having* been out of this country or of any Mandarin *having* been in it (DICKENS, M. Chuzzlew. 1.). Comp. the Partic. of the Pres. d.

- b) It stands absolutely, with a subject not interwoven into the construction of the sentence.

As a bear encompass'd round with dogs; *Who* *having* pinch'd a few, and made them cry, The rest stand all aloof, and bark at him (SHAKSP., III Henry VI. 2, 1.). What then remains, *we* *being* thus arrived . . But that we enter as into our dukedom? (4, 7.) *The hour of appointment* *being* now come, Jones was forced to take a hasty leave (FIELD., T. Jon. 13, 10.). And *he* *having* been, for half an hour before, the only other man visible above the mahogany, it occurred to my uncle that it was almost time to think about going (DICKENS, Pickw. 2, 20.). *The fair Julia* *having* nearly recovered from the effects of her hawking disaster, it begins to be thought high time to appoint a day for the wedding (IRVING, Br. H. Lover's Troubles). Like the subject of the simple participle, that of the compound one is sometimes to be gathered from the context: My farm consisted of about twenty acres of excellent land, *having* given a hundred pounds for my predecessor's good will (GOLDSM., Vic. 4.). Meanwhile the knight was making water, Before he fell upon the matter; *Which* *having* done, the wizard steps in, To give him suitable reception (BUTL., Hud. 2, 3, 517.).

2. Analogously to the simple gerund, it expresses, like the infinitive of the past, the completed activity. It especially stands in combination with prepositions, and admits adnominal determinations.

Which would be great impeachment to his age *In* *having* known

no travel in his youth (SHAKSP., Two Gentlem. 1, 3.). Are you ashamed of having done a right thing once in your life? (SHERID., Sch. for Sc. 5, 3.) Thy beauty, night and solitude, reproach me, For having talk'd thus long (ROWE, Jane Sh. 2, 1.). My master . . . taxed me with having embezzled them for my own use (SMOLLET, R. Rand. 21.). Mr. Pecksniff, perhaps from having caught it already, said nothing (DICKENS, M. Chuzzlew. 1, 2.). After having married you, I should never pretend to taste again (SHERID., Sch. for Sc. 2, 1.). After having enjoyed her dance, her first thought is to seek him (LEWES, G. I. 59.). — Do you suppose I did not know of his having invited Mrs. Woffington to his house to-day? (TAYLOR A. READE, Masks 1, 2.) He was tempted to express a suspicion of her having broken his confidence (DICKENS, M. Chuzzlew. 1, 3.). He never speculated on her having educated you (1, 2.). I have hinted this little concerning burlesque, because I have often heard that name given to performances which have been truly of the comic kind, from the author's having sometimes admitted it in his diction only (FIELD., J. Andr. Pref.).

The assimilation of this compound participle to the use of the gerund, with a more decided prominence of the relation of time, shews how accustomed we are in modern times to regard the simple gerund in its relation to the participle. But, however familiar the expression of the conclusion of the action in time by the compound participial form may have become, the denoting the action generally by the simple gerund frequently interchanges with the former, as is, for instance, the case even with the preposition *after*: *Amida after long sustaining the united effects of force and stratagem, yielded at length to the more certain operations of a regular siege* (GIBBON, Decl. 13.). Comp. p. 65.

The Participle of the Perfect.

This participle is, in the strong as well as in the weak form (comp. *seen, loved*) in its value, originally of passive nature. Its employment in the formation of periphrastic tenses both of the active and of the passive, extends, in great part, beyond the history of the English tongue. When derived from intransitive verbs it passes into the active meaning. We consider this form especially in the meaning of the simple participle of the passive, with whose employment the employment of the participle derived from the intransitive certainly essentially agrees. The meaning of a completed activity properly belongs to the participle; yet this, conceived in its result, may receive that of a continuing determination, and, on the other hand, that of one present at a given time, when the transition into the meaning of an adjective, in the stricter sense, closely approaches this form.

1. This participle very commonly stands as a predicative determination in the sentence. Thus it not only appears in the periphrasis of passive forms, as well as in the forms of the past of intransitive verbs, but, generally with intransitive verbs capable of a predicative completion, as, *be, become, seem, stand, lie &c.*

Be thou not surpris'd (YOUNG. N. Th. 6, 232.). *I became distin-*

guished (BULW., Money 2, 3.). Why did you *get married*? (DICKENS, Christm. Car. 1.) The cope of heaven *seems rent and cloven* (SHELLEY III 62.). By despairing shalt thou *stand excused* (SHAKSP., Rich. III. 1, 2.). Conscience, her first law broken, *wounded lies* (YOUNG, N. Th. 8, 700.). The nephew *sat buried* in profound contemplation of a black picture (IRVING, Tales of a Trav., The belated Trav.).

Old-Engl.: Cristendom *worþ ycast* adoun (R. of Gl. I. 132.). Hit it so *deakatered* bothe hider and thidere, That halvendel shal ben stole ar hit *come togidres and accounted* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 337.). Of thralles I am ther thrat, That *sitteth swart and for-swat* (p. 158.). And sche *astoned stood* (CHAUC., C. T. 11651.). Hue *leyzen y the stretes y-styked* ase swyn (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 190.). Anglosaxon: Seó eorðe . . . *stôd* mid holtum *âgrôven* (BASIL., Hexam. 6.). Valdend *licgað dreame bidrorene* (Cod. Exon. 291, 8.).

2. This participle also attaches itself, conformably to its attributive character, to a subject or object in the sentence. Its connection with the object in a predicative manner is in particular to be observed. The predicative accusative then stands in analogy to the participle of the present, where this comes into contact with the infinitive, and even the participle of the perfect frequently borders on an infinitive of the present. For, although the becoming activity is not represented as such by the latter participle, the completed action yet only decidedly appears in the participle of the perfect of intransitive verbs, whereas that of the transitive verbs fluctuates between the idea of the activity completed in time and of that attaining its completion at the time of another act. The context determines in each case the character of the passive participle. The verbal notions with which this predicative participle is frequently found are those of sensuous and mental perception, of imagining, thinking and representing, of desiring &c., as well as verbs of factitive nature generally.

I *saw him arrested*; *saw him carried away* (SHAKSP., Meas. for Meas. 1, 2.). I'll *see it done* (Macb. 1, 2.). I might *behold ad-drest* the king (Love's L. L. 5, 2.). To-morrow night shall *see me safe returned* (LONGF., I. 142.). Wouldst *see me hanged*? (DOUGL. JERROLD, Rent. Day 1, 2.) I *have heard it whispered* (I. 137.). I *have often heard it said* he was at the bottom a good man (COOP., Spy 14.). I do *feel it gone* (SHAKSP., Wint. T. 3, 2.). She *found the devil gone out* and her daughter *laid* upon the bed (MARK 7, 30.). I *have formerly known* a hundred guineas *given* for a play (FIELD., J. Andr. 1, 17.). In other hands I *have known it triumphed in*, and *boasted of* with reason (DICKENS, M. Chuzzlew. 1, 3.). I did not *think* the king so *stor'd* with friends (SHAKSP., John 5, 4.). The alchymist *supposed* him, like himself, *absorbed* in the study of alchymy (IRVING, Br. H. She Student of Salam.). Don't *account it lost* (GOLDSM., G. Nat. M. 3.). He *declared* himself *satisfied* (KEIGHTLEY, H. of E. p. 3.). Even when the Count *owned* himself *defeated*, and offered his sword, the king would not do him the honour to take it (DICKENS, A Child's Hist. of Engl. 16.). This eventful day *Hath shown* thy nature's *graces circled round* With

firmness (TALF., Jon 2, 2.). Though I did wish him dead, I hate the murderer, *love* him *murdered* (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 5, 6.). Do you not *wish* him *gone*? (BULW., Richel. 1, 1.). There is a deed *demanding* question *done* (SHELLEY, Cenci 4, 3.). Your favour I do *give* *lost* (SHAKSP., Wint. T. 3, 2.). 'Tis gold Which *makes* the true man *kill'd* (Cymb. 2, 3.). Yet the subject race . . still *made* its sting *felt* (MACAUL., H. of E. I. 13.). Those things I bid you, do *get* them *dispatch'd* (SHAKSP., Cymb. 1, 4.). He had to run into France, to settle with king Richard . . and with great labour *got* it *done* (CARL., Past a. Pres. 2, 16.). My two sisters *got* their fortunes *paid* (TH. HOOK, Gilb. Gurney 3.). — The predicative participle with *have* is particularly to be noticed. The periphrastic tenses formed with *have* are formally distinguished from this verb, combined in Modern-English, in a more pregnant meaning, with a predicative participle, by the participle's being separated by *have* from the object; the distinction in fact, as to which the collocation of the words is in itself less important, consists in this, that, with the predicative participle, the realization of the activity thereby denoted by the subject of the verb *have* is to be absolutely disregarded, another subject ordinarily being assumed for it. The meaning of *have* agrees in this case with that to be assumed with the infinitive (see p. 8.). A foolish suitor to a wedded lady, That *hath* her husband *banish'd* (SHAKSP., Cymb. 1. 7.). It is a matter of small consequence, Which for some reasons I would not *have seen* (Rich. II. 5, 2.). If he shame to *have* his follies *known*, First he should shame to act'em (BEN JONS., Ev. Man out of his Hum. Prol.). It was found necessary to *have* him *strapped* down to the bed (WARREN, Diary 1, 17.). That master died; so did his second master, from *having* his head *cut open* with a hatchet (DICKENS, M. Chuzzlew. 1, 17.). I'll *have* thee *hang'd* to feed the crow (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 3, 19.). I told him I would *have* him *carried* out of the house (OXENF., Twice Killed 1, 2.). He wouldn't *have* a doctor *sent for* (DICKENS, M. Chuzzlew. 1, 3.).

These relations of the predicative participle are essentially found in the earlier language. Old-Engl.: þo he *say* ys felawes *ymorpred* so viliche (R. or GL. I. 127.). I *have* *seen* hem *assayed* (MAUNDEV. p. 160.). Upon the wardeyn bysily they crye, To geve hem leve but a litel stound To go to melle and *see* here corn *i-grounde* (CHAUC., C. T. 4004.). Alle these materys I *have* *herd* *sayd* (COV. MYST. p. 304.). He schalle *fynde* upon the awtier the name *writen* (MAUNDEV. p. 61.). The emperour . . *fond* it *wrapped* in a litille clothe (p. 107.). Who that *holt* him *payd* of his povert (CHAUC., C. T. 6767.). *Hold* me *excusyd* (TOWNS. M. p. 168.). For ay I *cownte* us *shent* (p. 264.). I *telle* us *sheynt* Holly ilkane (ib.). And *made* seli pore men *afingred* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 342.). That *made* me cold and hard *y-froze* as yse (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 40.). The verb *have* frequently occurs with a predicative participle: Some *han* here armes or here lymes alle to *broken* (MAUNDEV. p. 175.). Som the throte, and som the heorte *Hadyn y-perced* (ALIS. 939.). *Have* hem *excused* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 353.). The gyoures loueden the kyng noughth And wolden *have* him *byscouth* (ALIS. 4814.). Alle they gunne knele her twoo (= to), And aske her what she wolde *have* *doo* (RICN. C. DE L. 111.). — Hallsax.: Heo *wusten* heom *ifæied* (LAJAM. II. 467.). Þeos hæðene hundes *tallæð* us al *ibunden* (II. 348.). Þene þe king *demde* *for-lore* (II. 506.). *Habben* is also

used correspondingly: þa com him ufel on, swa god hit wolde *habben idon* (LAWAM. III. 295.). Anglosax.: He *geseah* eall his hūs mid fyre *āfyll* (S. GUTHL. 6.). Svā fela vundra svā ve *gehprdon gedōne* on Cafarnaum (LOC. 4, 23.). Þā *fundon* hig þone man, þe deofol of-eode *gescryðne* and hālum mōde (8, 35.). Ac hit *ongeathis* lāre sviðe *tōtorenne* and sviðe *tōbrocenne* (BOETH 3, 1.). Þin geþyld ve *cunnon unoferswyltō* (S. GUTHLAC 5) [with a negative participle]. *Gedēō* him svā *gevealdene* vorolde dælas (BEOW. 866.). *Habban* is not met with in a similar combination. The use of the verb in later times reminds us of various Latin turns, as *Habeo te ereptum* (CURT.), I find, see thee saved, and: Si qua meis fuerint, ut erunt, vitiosa libellis, *Excusata* suo tempore, lector, *habe* (OVID., Trist. 4, 1, 1), deem, regard as excused. The frequent combination of *have* with *will*, *would*, which is perhaps equal to *wish*, has taken place with the participle of the perfect, as with the infinitive, from ancient times.

In combination with a subject, as well as more frequently with an object connected with a preposition, the participle of the perfect may contain the main notion in such a manner that the object is considered, not in itself, but only so far as the determination assigned to it adheres to it. An abstract substantive of the same stem, with an object standing in the genitive relation, might in this case be substituted for the participle.

A *Deity believ'd*, is *joy begun*; A *Deity ador'd*, is *joy advanc'd*, A *Deity belov'd*, is *joy matur'd* (YOUNG, N. Th. 8, 713.). They set him free, *without his ransom paid* (SHAKSP., I Henry VI. 3, 3.). People often fight *without any mischief done* (SHERID., Riv. 4, 1.). Nor delay'd the winged saint *After his charge receiv'd* (MILT., P. L. 5, 247.). He *after Eve seduc'd*, unminded slunk into the wood fast by (10, 332.). *At that tasted fruit* The sun, as from Thyestean banquet turn'd His course intended (10, 687.). Great conquerors greater glory gain *By foes in triumph led than slain* (BUTL., Hud. 1, 2, 1065.). Fortune is famous *for her numbers slain* (YOUNG, N. Th. 5, 1001.). While Cook is lov'd for savage lives he sav'd, See Cortez odious *for a world enslav'd* (COWP. p. 97.). For, *with my minstrel brethren fled*, My jealousy of song is dead (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 4, 35.).

Modes of expression of a similar kind seem more remote from the ancient times. A few are assimilated to them, as: *Betere* is *appel y-zeve* then *y-ete* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 111.). Prepositional members of this class might rather be partly Latinisms of the modern tongue. Compare: *Thebae et ante Epaminondam natum* et post ejus interitum perpetuo alieno paruerunt imperio (NEP. 15, 10.). Scipio *propter Africam domitam* Africanus appellatus est (EUTROP. 4, 4.). An analogy between this participle and that of the present also takes place in this respect. See p. 74.

3. The logical relations of the participle of the perfect in the Sentence answers to those of the participle of the present. See p. 67.

Regarded as the determination set to an object by a completed activity, it may be thought as represented by an adjective sentence.

I am the sister of one Claudio, *Condemn'd* upon the act of fornication To lose his head (SHAKSP., Meas. for Meas. 5, 1.). Now love begins a love, a love *produc'd* to die (PARNELL, Hesiod 122.).

And now the vestal, Reason, Shall watch the fire *awaked* by Love (TH. MOORE p. 241.).

Old-Engl.: There is an abbeye of monkes, wel *bylded* and wel *closed* with *jates* of iron, for drede of the wilde bestes (MACCDEV. p. 58.). In clothes *black, y-dropped* 'al with teeres (CHAUC., C. T. 2886.). Anglosax.: þā hædon hi mid heom tvā fluxan mid ælaſ gefylde (S. GUTHLAG 15.).

Otherwise, regarding to the relation of time of the activities, a temporal sentence might take the place of the member of the sentence with the participle.

Reluctant now I touch the trembling string, *Bereft* of him, who taught me how to sing (TICKELL, Poems). And they themselves once *ferried* o'er the wave That parts us, are emancipate and loos'd (COWP. p. 185.).

Anglosax.: Drihten nolde *gelaſod* lichamlice siðjan tō þās cyninges untruman bearne (A.-S. HOMIL. I. 128.).

To the idea of the temporal that of a causal connection is readily associated, when the completed activity denoted by the participle may itself stand opposed, conditionally or concessively, to the main action.

Plann'd merely, 'tis a common felony; *Accomplish'd*, an immortal undertaking (COLER., Picc. 4, 7.). *Broken* down in his power and resources by this signal defeat, yet faithful to his ally . . he rejected all overtures of peace (IRVING, Sk. B. Phil. of Pokanoket). Which, *testified* or not, *remembered* by all men, or *forgotten* by all men, does verily remain the fact (CARL., Past a. Pres. 2, 6.).

In former times we rather meet with the expression by the participle of the causal relation in the stricter sense. Old-Engl.: But they, *converted* at hir wise lore, Wepten ful sore (CHAUC., C. T. 12342.). In Anglosaxon we may refer hither: þider þe Stephanus forestóp, mid Saules stānum oftorfod, þider folgodc Paulus *gefultumod* þurh Stephanes gebedu (A.-S. HOMIL. I. 52.).

The unclearness of the logical relations of the participle passing into one another is here, as with the participle of the present, taken away by particles: But experience, *when* dearly *bought*, is seldom thrown away altogether (ROGERS, It, M. Griffoni). I never heard of you *till* *named* of villains (DOUGL. JERROLD, Rent. Day 2^o 3.). But it would be awkward for Georgy, *if* *discovered* (BULW., Money 3, 2.). *If* *deceived*, I have been my own dupe (3, 4.). Ar-tamène, *though* *forbidden* to speak, is therefore not forbidden to love (KAVANAGH, Fr. Women of Lett. 4.).

Comp. p. 68. In Anglosaxon we meet *swilce* as a more particular determination of the participle: Hi væron svā svā upāspringende blōstman on middeveardan cyle ungeleafulnysse, *swilce* mid sumere ehntnisse forste *for-sodene* (A.-S. HOMIL. I. 84.).

4. The participle of the perfect becomes an adjective in the stricter sense, when the mind is not so much engaged with the finished activity as with the adherent quality of an object. There can be here no question of a fixed limit between the adjective and the non-adjective participle, although these participial forms frequently make the recollection of the verbal notion step into the background,

and a few, like *forlorn*, having lost the rest of their verbal forms, now only operate as adjectives.

A foolish suitor to a *wedded lady* (SHAKSP., *Cymb.* 5, 4.). A man triumphant is a monstrous sight, A *man dejected* is a sight as mean (MILT., *P. L.* 8, 758.). Amidst the *broken words* and loud weeping of those grave Senators (MACAUL., *H. of E.* VI. 119.). A tender pair . . . toy'd the *ravish'd hours* away (PARNELL, *Hesiod* 225.). To such benign, *blessed sounds* (TH. MOORE p. 144.). In *civilized life* (IRVING, *Sk. B. Phil. of Pokan.*). Scrooge resumed his labours with an *improved opinion* of himself (DICKENS, *Christm. Car.* 1.). Brutal savages, *degraded Irish* (CARLYLE, *Past a. Pres.* 1, 1.). The town was one of the strongholds of the *Reformed Faith* (MACAUL., *H. of E.* VI. 2.). By the *ruined keeps* of old Norman barons of the pale (7.). Poor *forlorn* Proteus (SHAKSP., *Two Gentlem.* 1, 2.). In a *forlorn* and *dismantled* state (DICKENS, *Pickw.* 2, 20.) and so on.

How near the participle may approach the adjective, properly so-called, is proved by the numerous adjectives which have assumed the form of the participle of weak verbs in *ed*, although no verb lies immediately at the root of them (see Vol. I. p. 447.), as well as the readiness of compounding genuine and imitated participles of this sort with other part of speech: You cannot now do worse Than take this *out-of-fashion'd course* (BUTL., *Hud.* 3, 3, 375.). Worldly wise Is but *half-witted* (YOUNG, *N. Th.* 5, 284.). Were they as vain as *gaudy-minded man* (6, 638.). He was a *tight-fisted hand* at the grindstone (DICKENS, *Christm. Car.* 1.). It were so so blessed, *trice-blessed*, for himself and for us all! (CARL., *Past a. Pres.* 4, 8.) The huge tumultuous life of society is galvanic, *devil-ridden* (2, 6.). This is also shewn by the many participles compounded with the negative *un*, as, *unarmed*, *unacquainted*, *unanswered*, *uneffected*, *unexpected*, *unbathed* (Dryden), *unbent*, *unblamed*, *undaunted*, *unheard*, *unknown*, *unspoken*.

The substantive use of this participle is therefore readily effected in respect to persons: To the unknown *beloved* this, and my good wishes (SHAKSP., *Twelfth N.* 2, 5.). Thou knowest what a thing is poverty Among *the fallen* on evil days (SHELLEY III. 95.). For the purpose of burying *the slain* (MACAUL., *H. of E.* II. 182.). If these are the troubles that are to come upon *the married*, I'm sure a poor girl is better single (DOUGL. JERROLD, *Rent. Day* 2, 1.). The dear *deceased*! (BUTLW., *Money* 1, 1.) Names of things are rare, and most readily recognisable in borrowed forms, as in: Thinking more of the future and less of *the past* (TROLL., *Framl. Parson.* 1, 13.).

This participle has been used adjectively with prepossession from early times Old-Engl.: Jexabel the *cursed queen* (MAUNDEV. p. 111.). The *blessed* *Virgine Marie* (p. 134.). Seint Austyn a *blessed lif* . . . ladde (P. PLOUGH. p. 292.). Worth this Mede y-mariet Unto a *mansed sherewe* (p. 30.). A *schiten schepperd* and a clene schepe (CHAUC., *C. T.* 506.). If any were so *waryd men* (TOWN. M. p. 55.). To my freyndes now wyll I fare, The *chosyn childre* of Israelle (p. 59.). Halfsax.: *pæ king* of Peytouwæ, har mon *ablowen* (LAJAM. III. 76.). *Cnihtes icorene*, *kene-wurð kempen* (I. 367.).

læpnode peines (III. 7.). Anglosax.: *Hvig heart þu hlæfdige svá gedrífedes módes?* (APOLLON. OF T. p. 2.). *Mid gehyvedan móde hine sylfne átývde his ceaster-gevarum* (p. 3.). *Þát beclýsede geat on Godes huse getácnode þone hálgan mæigðhád* (A.-S. HOMIL. I. 194.). *Attor . . of þam tósvolle-mum fótum fleöv* (I. 54.). *Ealra gecorena hálgena deað is deórvurðe on Godes gesihðe* (I. 48.).

Compound participial forms of the kind above denoted were also not wanting formerly. Old-Engl.: *A wal that were whit-lymed* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 301.). Halfsax.: *Heor-lockede wif* (LAJAM. III. 25.). *Moni kineborene mon* (I. 15.). [Anglosax.: *þát he náme scearp-ecgedne flint* (A.-S. HOMIL. I. 92.). And so too compounding with the negative *un* is common Anglosaxon: *unalyfð, unarimed, unbeveddod, ungelæred, unáfunden, unágsfen, unbesmiten, unbrocen, ungeboren, ungebunden*, as even Gothic *unbaurans, undwans, unsæltans, unþrahan, unbeistjops, unqueinps, unkunps, ungasaiwans*.

Forms used substantively correspond. Old-Engl.: *So lerede us bi-ledes* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 155.). *At suche houre schal he dispoyle the world, and lede his chosene to blisse* (MAUNDEV. p. 114.). Halfsax.: *Corineus him cleopede to alle his icorene* (LAJAM. I. 84.). Anglosax.: *Hig gaderjað his gecorenan* (MARC. 13, 27.). *Þá earman forscyldegodan cvylmjað on écum fýre* (A.-S. HOMIL. I. 132.). *Se ávyrgða* (CAEDM. II. 316.) [the devil].

5. The absolute participle of the perfect, both of transitive and intransitive verbs, has, like that of the present, become a frequent mean for abbreviating sentences. A temporal sentence is essentially represented by it, which represents the action ascribed to its subject as finished in the sphere of the verb of the sentence, when its logical relations to the main action may be of different kinds. The absolute case is to be judged as with the participle of the present.

Six frozen winters spent, Return with welcome home from banishment (SHAKSP., II. 1, 3.). *Conscience, her first law broken*, wounded lies (YOUNG, N. Th. 8, 700.). *This said*, he sat (MILT., P. L. 2, 417.). *This done*, find out the councillor (BULW., Rienzi 4, 5.). *This ceremony ended* the Tribune passed into the banquet-hall (5, 1.). *O the tender tyes, Close-twisted with the fibres of the heart! Which broken*, break them (YOUNG, N. Th. 5, 1063.). *To the famed throng now paid the tribute due*, Neglected genius! let me turn to you (BYR., p. 326.). — *But he once past . . Sin and Death . . Pav'd after him a broad and beaten way* (MILT., P. L. 2, 1023.). *The phantom knight, his glory fled*, Mourns o'er the field he heap'd with dead (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 5, 2.). The case, oblique in point of form, is often found: *By whose aid This inaccessible high strength, the seat of Deity supreme, us dispossess'd*, He trusted to have seiz'd (MILT., P. L. 7, 140.).

Old-Engl.: *Ihc came þe zatis schitte* (WYCLIFFE, Joh. 20, 26.). There appered first oure Lord to his disciples, afre his resurrexioun, *the zates enclosed*, and seyde to hem, *Pax vobis* (MAUNDEV. p. 91.). *The prayer stynt of Arcita the strange*, The rynges . . And eek the dores, clatereden ful fast (CHAUC., C. T. 2423.). *Whiche y-se and y-herde*, the forsaid Adam hastied for to torne home to his contree (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. p. 191.). This participle also, in proportion to the usage of modern times as well as of Anglosaxon is not frequently met with in the older English, whereas an absolute case is else not rare (Vol. II. 1. p. 216.). In Anglosaxon the absolute dative stands: *Hie þá raðe stópen, heora andolitan in-becrigenum*, under lofum listum, þát hie lofum men geóce gefremedan

(CAEDM. 1578.). *Forlætenre pære ceastre Nazareth*, he com and eardode on Capharnaum (MATH. 4, 13.). *Þinre dura belocenre* bide þinne Fæder on diglum (6, 6.). *Gefylledum dagum*, þá hig ongeán gevhurfon, beláf se Hælend on Hierusalem (LUC. 2, 43.). *Veard deáð ná læfedum sæde* (MARC. 12, 20.), *þisum eallum þus gedōnum*, eóðe Apollonius . . við þa sæ (APOLLON. OF T. p. 27.); intransitively: *þisum þus gedōne*, se cyng Vilelm cearde ongeán tō Normandige (SAX. CHR. 1078.). *þisum þus gedōne*, se cyng fërde tō Vinceastre (ib.); intransitively: Alle fēng tō Norðanhymbra rice, *Idan forðgefarenum* (560.). Thus too Goth. Comp. MARC. 1, 32. LUC. 8, 4; with *at* MATH. 8, 16. see p. 73.

Like the participle of the present, that of the perfect also sometimes stands without immediately leaning upon a substantive notion. Thus its subject is to be gathered from a possessive pronoun; Thus *repuls'd*, our final hope is flat despair (MILT., P. L. 2, 142.). *Placed* midway the two perilous extremes . . his whole career received a modifying impulse from this position (LEWES, G. I. 17.). Adjectives are also treated thus: Once *free*, 'tis mine our horde again to guide (BYR., Bride 2, 20.), and even other adverbial members of sentences, which have to be referred to a logical subject: *Equally without resentment or humanity*, his virtues and even his vices were artificial (GIBBON, Decl. 2.). The reference to a substantive or pronoun contained in a preceding sentence is rarer: Thus saying, he took up his hat . . When *gone*, we all regarded each other for some minutes with confusion (GOLDSM., Vic. 13.). An indeterminately general subject may also be understood: A certain grandeur of soul which cannot be contemplated *unmoved* (LEWES, G. I. 4.).

6. The circumstance that the participle of the perfect was also formed from intransitive verbs and employed to form their tenses has been the occasion of the participle of transitive verbs sometimes passing into the meaning of the active. Such forms are not explained by being considered as adjectives, since even in the meaning the passive character must remain to them. Here belong the old *drunk*, *drunken*, (well pretty) *spoken*, *drawn*, that is, with drawn, sword.

I am not *drunk* now (SHAKSP., Oth. 2, 3.). A *drunken* monster (Temp. 2, 2.). This consummation of *drunken* folly (SCOTT, R. Roy 12.). Clarence is well *spoken*, and, perhaps, May move your heart to pity (Rich. III. 1, 3.). Methinks, y'are better *spoken* (Lear 4, 6.). A pretty *spoken* fellow (DOUGL. JERROLD, Rent. Day 1, 4.). Why are you *drawn*? (SHAKSP., Temp. 2, 1.) I'm sure you're *mistaken* (WARREN, Diary 1, 18. cf. (SHAKSP., Cymb. 1, 5.) One might even refer hither *sworn*, *forsworn*, *perjured*: A new *sworn* brother (SHAKSP., Much Ado 1, 1.). That they are patient I'll be *sworn* (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 1, 2.). That Angelo's *forsworn*, is it not strange? (SHAKSP., Meas. for Meas. 5, 1.); yet the modern tongue has also combined *swear*, *forswear* and *perjure*, partly transitively, partly reflectively, in the active, with a personal object, so that the participles appear passive. The form *learned* rests upon the ancient confusion of *leren*, whence *lered*, with *lernen* (= teach). Comp. Old-Engl.: Who *lerned* thee on boke? (P. PLOUGHM. p. 146.). Hence Mod-Engl.: Scole to *lerne* chylde in (PALSGR.), as in the modern popular speech. Thg combination of *born* with *days* in the

meaning of *life days, life time* is remarkable: You have bewitched me, I think, I was never so in my *born days* (SOUTHERN. OROON. 2, 1.) often dialectically: I' au my *born days*, I nivver sa' sike a rascad (CRAVEN DIAL. I. 42).

Transfers of the passive participle to the domain of the transitive active remind us of Latin Forms like *potus, coenatus, pransus, juratus*, and the like. To *potus* there has answered from the earliest times a passive participle. Halssax.: Weoren swiðe bliðe and *druncen* of wine (LAJAM. III. 170.). Anglosax.: Man vine *druncen* (Ps. 77, 65.); to *juratus* likewise. Old-Engl.: Alle theih beth *i-sworene* holi churche holde to rihte (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 334.). Halssax.: Kinges heo weoren ihouene and kinges *isworene* (LAJAM. III. 209.); *forsworn* in the meaning of *perjurus*, not of the pass. *pejoratus* is expressed by the Anglosaxon *forsworen*: þā *forsworenan* mid *forsworennum* (A.-S. HOMIL. I. 132.). Interchanges of the passive with the active meaning are not unknown. Old-Engl.: And told him al, as ye han herd me *sayd* (CHAUC., C T. 11851.). Anglosax.: Heom þā þus *gesprece-num*, þær vās geworden seō mycele stefen svylce þunres slege (Ev. NICON. 27.). Symeone þā þus *gesprece-num*. eall þāt verod þæra hālgena þā veaŕð svýðe geblyssigende (24. cf 28.). He is vudlor and bliss ealles *getýfedes* folces (A.-S. HOMIL. I. 144.) that is, of the faithful people. Similarly Gothic: Ufullnoda þata gamelido þata *qipano* (MARC. 15, 28.). Greek: ἐπληρώθη ἡ γρομφή ἡ λέγουσα.

The compound Participle of the Passive.

The modern language forms passive periphrastic participles with the participle of the perfect by the participles *being* and *having been*, as in the active by *having* and *being*, the latter whereof belongs to intransitive verbs (p. 78). The periphrasis answers to the Romance formation with *étant* and *ayant été*, which was as little necessary as the English to the ancient language, and is also frequently easy to be avoided even in Modern-English. The periphrastic forms of the passive are, however, distinguished from the simple participle, apart from the temporal gradation of *being* and *having been*, by their making more prominent the verbal character of the participles, and their reference to a relation to the main action which is otherwise denoted by a dependent sentence and effect the weakening of the participle down to an adjective notion.

The passive participle compounded with *being* is, in contradistinction to the periphrasis with the participle of intransitive verbs, not absolutely referred to the concluded past. By reason of the ductile nature of the participle of the perfect contained in the compound an action may be denoted which is to be thought as contemporaneous with the main action of the sentence also and one which is to be thought as precedent to it. The relation of time is essentially to be made out from the context. Moreover, this participle, like the simple participle, attaches itself to various elements of the sentence.

1. a) It accordingly stands predicatively, as it attaches itself to the subject or to the object of the sentence.

I won't stand *being talked to* by you (OXF., Twice Killed 1, 2.). — His seruant . . Through both the wounds did drawe the slender twigs, Which *being bound* about his feeble limmes, Were

strong inough to holde the litle soule (GASCOYNE, *Jocasta* 1, 1.). Hear me yourself; for that which I must speak, must either punish me, *not being believ'd*, Or wring redress from you (SHAKSP., *Meas.* for *Meas.* 5, 1.). The former fabulous story, *Being now seen* possible enough, got credit (Henry VIII. 1, 1.). I looked upon myself as a princess in some region of rominee. who, *being delivered* from the power of a brutal giant or satyr . . was bound . . yield up my affection to him (SMOLLET, *R. Rand.* 22.). The gentleman *being so bent* on having no assistance must terrify you very much (DICKENS, *M. Chuzzlew.* 1, 3.). Always picturing me to yourself as *being chained up* to the Dragon (1, 7.).

Like the simple participle, this periphrastic form also attaches itself to an object, especially where this is introduced with a preposition, if this object is considered, not by itself, but essentially with respect to the activity put forth in it (see 82.). After so long an absence, during which time all her rents had been drafted to London, *without a shilling being spent among them* (FIELD., *J. Andr.* 4, 1.). He however insisted on the match *being deferred* (4, 16.). My uncle had the goodness to interpose and prevent this consummation of drunken folly, which, I suppose, would have otherwise ended in *my neck being broken* (SCOTT, *R. Roy* 12.). She has been the cause of *six matches being broken off* (SHERID., *Sch. for Sc.* 1, 1.). Mr. — . . explained the necessity of *their communications being closed* (COOPER, *Spy. Intr.*)

- b) It appears as an absolute participle with a particular subject in the sentence

You sleep in peace, *the tyrant being slain* (SHAKSP., *Rich. III.* 5, 3.). *This being resolv'd*, with equal speed And conduct he approach'd his steed (BUTL., *Hud.* 2, 3, 1138.). Is this the obedience Due to my office, *which being thrown aside*, No war can be conducted? (COLER., *Picc.* 1, 12.) *The water-plug being left in solitude*, its overflowings suddenly congealed (DICKENS, *Christm. Car.* 1.). Occasionally, as with other participles, the subject is to be gathered from the context: But on thy side I may not be too forward, Lest, *being seen*, thy brother, tender George, Be executed (SHAKSP., *Rich. III.* 5, 3.).

2. In combination with *being*, the participle of the perfect is capable of being treated as a gerund and becoming the abstract expression of the activity, taken passively. Like the simple gerund, it admits attributive determinations.

Why, you may think there's *no being shot at* without a little risk (SHERID., *Riv.* 5, 2.). I will teach you the trick, to prevent *your being cheated another time* (SOUTH., *Oroon.* 5, 1.). There's no greater luxury in the world than *being read to sleep* (DICKENS, *M. Chuzzlew.* 1, 6.). I must, however, previously entreat *being informed* of the name and residence of my benefactor (GOLDSM., *Vic.* 3.). *By being seldom seen* I could not stir, But like a comet I was wondered at (SHAKSP., *I Henry IV.* 3, 2.). Why blush at *being detected* in your every-day pursuits? (DICKENS, *M. Chuzzlew.* 1, 5.) Put no trust in *being set right* by me (1, 10.). Lucy could listen to the

young lord's voice by the hour together — *without being dazzled in the least* (TROLL., Framl. Parson. 1, 13.). I wish you, Sir, to think upon the danger of *being seen* (ROWE, Fair Penit. 2, 2.). This event, moreover, led to *his being sent* to a friend (LEWES, G, I. 24.).

The juxtaposition of the participle of the perfect with *having been* expresses in a decided manner the completion of the activity, conceived passively at the time of the main action, and therewith a gradation in time of the actions, which the periphrasis with *being* certainly also serves to do, without, however, itself requiring necessarily the transport backwards in time. This periphrastic form has not been multiplied till modern times.

1. a) It likewise leans on a subject or an object.

I, *having been acquainted* with the snell before, knew it was Crab (SHAKSP., Two Gentlem. 4, 4.). He . . met intelligence from Naples, that the French *having been dispersed* in a gale, had put back to Toulon (SOUTH., Nelson.). His name is Lewsome, whom I have mentioned to you as *having been seized with illness* (DICKENS, M. Chuzzlew. 2, 24.). It has been said that there is no instance in modern time of a *Chuzzlewit having been found* on terms of intimacy with the Great (1, 1.).

- b) The periphrastic form stands also of course as a participle absolute.

These injuries having been comforted externally, Mr. P. *having been comforted* internally, they sat down (DICKENS, M. Chuzzlew. 1, 2.).

2. It also occurs in the manner of a gerund.

The docile artist . . was no sooner left to himself, than he struck out one of the teeth, giving to the part the appearance of *its having been lost* by age (ROSCOE, Life of Lorenzo). He rose as he spoke; leaving that good man not quite free from a sense of *having been foiled* in the exercise of his familiar weapons (DICKENS, M. Chuzzlew. 1, 11.).

D. The Adverb.

The adverb, or word of circumstance, whose import and forms are more particularly developed Vol. I. p. 386, serves, in the adverbial relation of the sentence, to determine the notion of the activity, the adjective, as well as another adverb. But it sometimes assumes, apparently or representatively, the place of a predicative or attributive determination.

Both the simple and the compound adverb, although proceeding from inflective forms admitting a variety of relations within the sentence, is to be regarded as a crystallized element of speech, whose syntactical employment hardly allows of shifting points of view. Adverbs combined syntactically with prepositions, (see Vol. II. 1. p. 479.), as well as those partly compounded with prepositions, enter indeed into various relations, which, however, rest solely upon the nature of the prepositions.

1. a) In point of form the adverb often coincides with other parts of speech, especially with the adjective. In such a case the syntactical relation must make the adverb recognisable as such. But the adverb also frequently borders on the adjective, and the employment of the adjective form, which would perhaps have to be interpreted as an adverb with reference to the verb of the sentence, may admit partly a predicative apprehension, partly a leaning upon the subject of the sentence, when the decision upon the syntactical import of the form cannot always be made with certainty. In this respect compare: *Him which stands next* (DONNE, Sat. 2, 12.). And *slow* and *sure* comes up the golden year (TENNYSON, p. 263.). *Clear* shone the skies (THOMSON, Spring). While the billow *mournful* rolls (TH. CAMPBELL, Battle of the Baltic). My wedding-bell rings *merry* in my ear (SHERIDAN KNOWLES, Hunchb. 1, 1.). Whereupon the little dreamer shrieked *desperate* to St. Edmund for help (CARLISLE, Past and Pres. 2, 6.). They weep *impetuous*, as the summer storm, And full as short (YOUNG, N. Th. 5, 562.). An even calm *Perpetual* reign'd (THOMSON, Spring). He *ceaseless* works alone (ib.). Hope springs *eternal* in the human breast (POPE, Essay on M. 1, 95.). *Annual* for me the grape, the rose renew The juice nectareous, and the balmy dew (1, 135.). Which exalts The Brute-Creation to this finer thought And *annual* melts their undesigning hearts Profusely thus in tenderness and joy (THOMSON, Spring). Wherever the manner in which the activity is completed may at the same time be regarded as a determination of the subject putting it forth, the adjective or the adverbial determination is more or less free, particularly to the poet. But a contact of the adverb with the adjective especially takes place where two adjective forms stand beside each other, the former of which contains a determination of the other, when the relation of both appears more additional or as that of a loose compound of adjectives: More *lovely* fair Than woodnymph (MILTON, P. L. 5, 380.). My bosom is cold — *wintery* cold (SHELLEY III. 120.). This is particularly the case when, instead of the first adjective, a participle in *-ing* appears: Ripe strawberries for thee, and peaches, grew Sweet to the taste, and *tempting* red to view (FENTON, Florelia 39.). Less fair, Less *winning* soft, less amiably mild (MILTON, P. L. 4, 478.). The shriek again was heard: it came More deep, more *piercing* loud (SOUTHEY, Lord Will. a. Edm. 53.). Foggier yet, and colder! *Piercing, searching, biting* cold (DICKENS, Christm. Car. 1.).

The instances cited shew that it may not always succeed theoretically to distinguish an adverb, not perceptible by its form, from an adjective of the same sound. The old customary mode of employing Germanic adjectives with the termination *-e* as adverbs has, after the almost universal rejection of the *e*, encouraged unclearness as well as licence in the use of adjective forms as adverbs. Modern grammarians, with a correct perception, take especial offence at Romance adjective forms, where these can only be apprehended as adverbs, and are not warranted by general usage and adoption from the French. Most Germanic words of this class

rest upon ancient tradition. The following instances may serve by way of comparison.

Some will *dear* abide it (SHAKSP., Jul. Cæs. 3, 2.). The infant whose birth had cost him so *dear* (SCOTT, Peveril 1, 1.). Pray you, work not so *hard* (SHAKSP., Temp. 3, 1.). The world, in fact, had tried *hard* to put him, down (CARLYLE, Fred. the Gr. 1, 1.). Where wounds of deadly hate have pierc'd so *deep* (MILT., P. L. 4, 99.). Cato will discern Our frauds, unless they're cover'd *thick* with art (ADDIS., Cato 1, 3.). I speak too *loud* (SHAKSP., Twelfth N. 3, 4.). He that read *loudest*, *distinctest*, and *best*, was to have a halfpenny (GOLDSM., Vic. 4.). Haste — ply *swift* and *strong* the oar (SOUTHEY, Will. a. Edm. 37.). *Soft* sighed the flute (THOMS., Spring). All the day the wind breathes *low* with mellow tone (TENNYS. p. 148.). The magic music in his heart Beats *quick* and *quicker* (p. 318.). Our happiness, our unhappiness, — it is all abolished, vanished, *clean* gone (CARL., Past a. Pres. 3, 4.). Yet there will *still* be bards (BYR., D. Jnan 4, 106.). How *beautiful* she did throw the thingummy-gig out of the window (OXENF., Twice Killed 1, 2.). Most *strange*, but yet most truly will I speak (SHAKSP., Meas. for Meas. 5, 1.). Whence Adam falt'ring *long*, thus answer'd *brief* (MILT., F. L. 10, 115.). By Nature's swift and *secret* working hand (THOMS., Spring). Build me *straight*, O worthy Master! Staunch and strong, a goodly vessel (LONGF., I. 339.). *Previous* to our description of this house, it may be as well to convey to the reader a general notion of the houses of Pompeii (BULW., Last Days of P. 1, 3.). We pass over other naturalized forms, as well as those compounded with *ly*, Anglosaxon *lice*, and coinciding with adjectives in *ly*, Anglosaxon *lic*, as to which compare Vol. I. 393. Those forms of adjectives and participials in combination with adjectives and adverbs are to be regarded more decidedly as adverbs which, with the denoting of the determination of the kind, combine that of a determination of the degree: King John, *sore* sick hath left the field (SHAKSP., John 5, 4.). A whole day's journey high, but *wide* remote From this Assyrian garden (MILT., P. L. 4, 284.). Almighty, thine this universal frame. Thus *wondrous* fair (5, 154.). Every one knew I was *bitter* poor, and I think, perhaps, it was my good mother's fault that I was *bitter* proud too (THACKER., Miscellan. ed. Tauchn. VI. 19). He's *grievous* sick (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 4, 1.). It is *indifferent* cold (Hamlet 5, 2.). He'll fight *indifferent* well (Troil. a. Cress. 1, 2.). Our scheme is *indifferent* well laig (ABBOT, s. Craven Dial. I. 244.); thus moderns still use *indifferent* well, as (THACKERAY. He hath an *excellent* good name (SHAKSP., Much Ado 3, 1.). "I can stand well enough, and speak well enough." — "*Excellent* well." (Oth. 2, 3.). Here especially belong *passing* and *exceeding*. Is she not *passing* fair? (Two Gentl. 4, 4.). Our air shakes them *passing* scornfully (Henry V. 4, 2.). They are *exceeding* poor and base (I Henry IV. 4, 2.). "How doth the king?" — "*Exceeding* ill." (II Henry IV. 4, 4.). I am thy shield, and thy *exceeding* great reward (GEN. 15, 1.). Modern grammarians would have *exceeding* to stand before adjectives and adverbs

in *ly* as *exceeding lovely, exceeding clearly*, and the like, for the sake of euphony.

The ancient termination *-e* of the positive has been long preserved in corresponding Germanic forms, although, on the other hand, instances of its rejection were early not wanting. This *e* is of course not characteristic, where the adjective ends in *e* (comp. Anglosax. *līðe*, placidus, *līðe*, leniter; *deóre* (deór) carus, gravis, *deóre*, care; *eaðe*, facilis, *eaðe*, facilliter and *clæne*, mundus, *clæne*, penitus and others); adverbs have also assumed an *e* not belonging to them originally [comp. Old-Engl.: So that the sonne bifore goth *lute* and *lute* i-wis (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 133.). Halfsax.: porh ydele deade *lute* man mai spede (LAJAM. II. 625. modern text); from the Anglosaxon *lyt*, parum, alongside of which *lytle* occurs; Old-Engl.: In what manere water cometh so *heze* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 136.), Anglos. *heah*, *heá*.] Old-Engl.: In water hit wolde gotheli *loude* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 135.). That ast lowen so *loude* (Polit. S. p. 341.). Pes and love and charité hien hem out of londe so *faste* (p. 344.). Ech on other *faste* hongeth (Pop. Treat. p. 138.). Oppon me, that am *harde* i-bonden (ANECOD. p. 7.). He shal be *foule* afrounted (Polit. S. p. 337.). Ffor veynm on the valeye hadde *ffoule* with hem fare (DEPOS. OF RICH. II. p. 13.). Reweth on þou self, That *lawelesse* leddyn þoure lyf (p. 4.). And ben i-leid so *lowe* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 343.). The ejen i-closed *faire* y-nou... Ech lyme *faire* i-streijt also (Pop. Treat. p. 140.). That cometh in that on half of the Wordle and as *swithe* is at thother ende (p. 134.). He wep on God *vaste* ynou (R. or GL. II. 381.). Þe cyte he barnde al *clene* (II. 380.). That weren... norished fful *ille* (DEPOS. OF RICH. II. p. 17.). [Old-norse *illa*, male.]. Wel *jerne* he him bi-thoute (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 3.). Þat wel *longe* er syk lay (R. or GL. II. 372.). Thei spak Frensche *righte* wel (MAUNDEV. p. 138.). Ful *euele* I fare (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 7.). Thanne fal-leth hit *softe* adoun (Pop. Treat. p. 136.). Of thundre hi beoth so *sore* agast (ib.) and others. Halfsax.: He heo bohte *swiðe* *deore* (LAJAM. I. 204.). *Swiðe* he murnede (II. 361.). Þat vuel hine heold *stronge* (II. 50.). *Harde* biþrunge (I. 376.). Þatt folc þatt swa wass haldenn *harde* (ORM. 14782.). Toc to laþhenn *hlude* (8142.). Don we hit wullet *lude* and *stille* al þes kinges wille (LAJAM. I. 156-). Forðdredde *swiþe* *fasste* (ORM. 3778.). Sprang *wide* annd *sile* o lande (10258.). *Softe* heom beh æfter (LAJAM. I. 237.). Annd hæþherlike ledest to Annd dafflelike annd *fazze* (ORM. 1214.), & *feire* hine gretten (LAJAM. I. 16.). Stinnkeþþ *jule* (ORM. 1201.). Bute he weore swa *fule* biwite (LAJAM. II. 506.). Þatt he swa mihhte trowwenn Swa *swiþe* *rape* (ORM. 1376.). Þu penchest beo *raþe* dead (LAJAM. I. 185.). To sekenn kirrke *zeorne* (ORM. 2718.). He konkede hire *zeorne* (LAJAM. I. 54.). *Vuele* hem igretten (I. 202.). Well *swiþe* *sare* offdredde (ORM. 3809.). *Sare* him gromede (LAJAM. I. 196.). Eoden him *ludere* an hond (III. 256.). Æluric luede *murie* (III. 197.). Anglosax.: Ac him hygeteónan hvtan seolfre *deóre* híte (CAEDM. 2725. GREIN st. deópe). Þá þe in foldan gen *deópe* bedolfen dierne sindon (ELENE 1080.). Oð þat þe to heortan *hearde* gripeð ádl unliðe (CAEDM. 933.). Þás *vráðe* ongeald *hearde* mid hivum hæg-stealdra [hægstealda Gr.] vvn. (CAEDM. 1855.). *Fágere* hi singað (ÆLFR., Gr. 38.). Byman sungon *hlúde* (ELENE 109.). Him *georne* pancodon (APOL. LON. OF T. p. 10.). Þat Apollonius þone rædels *rihte* arædde (p. 5.) Lóca þu nu *georne* þat þu svá *svýðe* ne dvelige (BASIL., Hexam. 3.). *Ricene* veorðe his feonda gehvylc *faste* tóvorpen (Ps. 67, 1.). Cwáð þá eft *raðe* (CAEDM. 2720.). Héht þá gebeóðan burgsittendum þám snoterestum *síde* and *víde* (ELENE 277.). Me þat cynu hafað *sáre* ábolgen (CAEDM. 1252.) and many more. The rejection of the *e*, which only too often crowded in without warrant, was in use with a few adjective adverbs earlier than with others. Old-Engl.: This hille is not *right* gret, ne fulle highe (MAUNDEV. p. 31.). *Right* so reson sheweth (P. PLOUGHM. p. 281.). Thilke lewde ladde

ouste *eyll* to thryve (DEPOT. OF RICH. II. p. 19.). *Syker* he hym adde aslawe (R. OF GL., I. 185.). Halfsax.: þa weoren þer *riht* italde (LAȜAM. III. 6.). Sanct Anndrew wass *Riht* god and hajherr hunnte (ORM. 13470.). So *uel* bi-jete (LAȜAM. II. 506. modern text). Þa þis child was *feir* muche (I. 12.). & he *siker* slepte (I. 171.) [*Sikerliche* he slepte modern text]. This rejection is more remarkable with the adverbs in *liche*, *like*, Anglo-s. *lice*, with which the *e* together with the guttural is often rejected in the adverb, so that *li*, *ly* and *liche* run parallel to each other without one's being able to assume the transition from the adverb into the adjective. Old-Engl.: Fol *bletheli* willi don for the (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 3.). Ze, Nelde, *witerli* (p. 8.) and in the same poem: *Dernelike* and stille Ich wille the love (p. 5.). And *lightly* gan swerie (P. FLOUGHM. p. 275.). Noght dyne *delicately* (p. 288.) and Richesse *rightfulliche* wonne (p. 279.). That *rewfulliche* libbeth (p. 283.) and many more. Similarly, in Orm the adverbial *-ike* frequently passes into *iz*: Forr baþe gilltenn *grimmeli* (4494.). Wass himm þiss Full *openli*z brtacedd (2123.). Forrpi bigrap he *dirr-stih*z; Herode (19915.). Let *lihhtli*z þæroffe (16517.). —

The above cited participial forms *passing* and *exceeding*, the latter of which seems formed upon the former, rest upon the ancient *passynge*, which operates, as it were, prepositionally, like *over*: He that lyvethe 8 þeer, men holden him there righte *passynge* old (MAUNDEV. p. 212.); with which compare: Unethe hath ony man *passynge* 50 heres in his berd (p. 207.), see also *past* II. 1. p. 471.

- b) Adverbs also coincide in form with prepositions. They are recognised where standing absolutely, that is, without syntactical reference to a substantive notion contained in the sentence or in the construction. Various sorts of prepositions are, however, to be distinguished.

A multitude of them consists of primitive adverbs, adverbial cases and compounds, admitting, indeed, the prepositional construction with a case, but which have never abandoned their adverbial character. Here belong *up*, *before*, *behind*, *above*, *beneath*, *about* *within*, *without*, *after*, and Romance forms, the nature of which has been indicated in the prepositions. The compound *between*, standing alone, may also be assigned here.

Among the particles named, *up* enters into the most various combinations with notions of activities. The meanings of this adverb, which has become a preposition may, however, be reduced essentially to two, the root meaning of upwards, with the reference to the direction or movement aloft, and the derivative one of reference to the altitude at which the activity appears as done, finished or concluded. More rarely appears the notion of opening, combining with the idea of bringing aloft and exposing to view.

Beg him to walk *up* (SHERID., Critic 1, 1.). Show him *up* (School for Sc. 1, 1.). *Up* I go To put a light Silk pair of tight Etcæteras below (PLANCHÉ, Fortunio 1, 1.). Hang it *up* at that friendly door (TH. MOORE p. 211.). When the sun was *up* (MATTH. 13, 6.). Her clothes spread wide, And, mermaid-like, a while they bore her *up* (SHAKSP., Hamlet 4, 7.). He rose *up* to depart (JUDGES 19, 5.). *Up*, and let us be going (19, 28. cf. GEN. 44, 4.). There shot *up* against the dark sky, tall, gaunt, straggling houses (DICKENS, Pickw. 2, 20.). They built it all *up* (SCOTT, Tales of a Grandf. 1.). Take

up the irons every now and then (BOURCIC., Lond. Assur. 5.). Where did you pick him *up*? (1.) — I fill'd it *up* — with froth and wind (TH. MOORE p. 57.). Till our own cohorts can be brought *up*, your strengths must be our guard (BEN JONS., Sejan. 5, 5.). To sum *up* all (SHERID., Duenna 1, 3.). Looking at the great carcass muffled *up* in the blankets (MARRYAT, P. Simple 1, 12.). He made *up* his mind to help the lady (DICKENS, Pickw. 2, 20.). He takes *up* with Clara (BULW., Money 3, 1.). I got Clara to touch it *up* (2, 5.). He took advantage of the foray of Donald Bean Lean to solder *up* the dispute (SCOTT, Waverley 1, 19.) and so forth. Many combinations of the verbal notion with *up* are manifold in meaning, according to the various was of apprehending the particle in the context. It may be incidentally mentioned that in *yield up*, *deliver up*, *give up*, and the like, the idea of complete giving uphas awakened that of letting go and that *up* often comes into contact with *over*: Shall I give *up* the friend I have valued and tried? (TH. MOORE p. 215.) — Boyet you can carve; Break *up* this capon (SHAKSP., Love's L. L. 4, 1.). Hence figuratively: They commonly break *up* at midnight (IRVING, Br. H.).

Old-Engl.: Ȝour ryȝht honden holdeþ *up* to God (R. OF GL. II. 455.). Her honden hii hulde *up* all þo (ib.). He was a piler ariht to holden *up* holi church (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 325.). He hupte hym *up* fram þe bord (R. OF GL. I. 277.). Þys grete louerd sturte hym *up* (I. 322.). Þou salle rise *up* and lepe (LANGT. II. 256.). Sit *up* and prophecy (TOWN. M. p. 201.). The deville hang him *up* to dry (p. 8.). It standes *up* lyke a mast (p. 221.). *Up* with the tymbre (ib.). Hys owe honde nome yt *up* (R. OF GL. I. 319.). There he toke *up* seynt Peter, when he began to drenche (MAENDEV. p. 116.). — Fill than the hole *up* all abowte the potte with erthe (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 55.). Temper hit *upp* with haly water (I. 51.). Oifer bihoues vs defend it, or ȝelde *up* our righ[t] (LANGT. I. 2.). — *Up* the winduw dyde he (CHAUC., C. T. 3799.). He brake *upe* an yron dore (TOWERENT 323.). Hallsax.: Ȝede *upp* to patt allterr (ORM. 1083.). To cumenn *upp* till Criste (1281.). Ȝho ras *upp* sone anan, andd for *Upp* inntill heȝhe muntness (2741.). To climbenn *upp* full heȝhe (11860.). *Up* he gon stonden (LAȜAM. II. 129.). — Ille an trev . . Shall bi þe grund beon hæwenn *upp* (ORM. 9963.). — *Up* heo duden heora castles ȝaten (LAȜAM. I. 72.). Þa alles *uppe* abræc hit wes god þet heo spæc (I. 150.). In Anglosaxon, as frequently in the later tongue *up* commonly comes immediately before the verbal notion, and, although often not combined with it in the written tongue, it coalesces with it into a notional unity, which must be regarded as a compound. The separation and postposition of the participle is rare: þæt seo sceadu āstihð *up* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 5.) alongside of: Oð þæt heo eft on oðerne ende *up* āstihð (ib.). Compounds or combinations are frequent, as: *upāhebban*, *upāræran*, *upāstigan*, *upfaran*, *upgevitian*, *uplōcjan*, *upāhōn* and so forth *upātberstan*, (pronmpere) *upādōn* (aperire) (BEDA. Sm. 529, 24.). — The opposition of *up* and *down* is old. Hallsax.: Wharrfeþþ Nu *upp* nu *dun* (ORM. 3641.). He bi-heold pene wal *up* and *dun* ouer al (LAȜAM. II. 173.). Old-English often combines *up so down*: Al the crop of Truthe Torned it *up-so-down* (P. PLOUGH. p. 428.), where the modern language uses *upside down*: This house is turned *upside down* (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 2, 1.). The Sultan's Groom turned *upside-down* by the Genii (DICKENS, Christm. Car. 2.).

Other primitive adverbs have a far narrower sphere, because the ideas lying at their root are more particularly determined.

Close *behind*, and somewhat to the left, stood an elmtree (WARREN, Now a. Then 1.). He is *above*, sir, changing his dress (SHERID., Riv. 2. 1.). Lord Marmion waits *below* (SCOTT, Marm. 1, 4.). With receiving your friends *within*, and amusing them *without*, you lead a good pleasant bustling life of it (GOLDSM., She Stoops 2.). Like apes, that moe and chatter at me, And *after*, bite me (SHAKSP., Temp. 2, 2.). It was about the space of three hours *after* (WEBST., v. after). At length to rest the squire reclines, Broken and short; for still, *between*, would dreams of terror intervene (SCOTT, Marm. 3, 31.). I have had my labour . . gone *between* and *between*, but small thanks for my labour (SHAKSP., Troil. a. Cress. 1, 1.).

Old-Engl.: Died a *þere befor*n (LANGT. I. 6.). He vndude alle luper lawes þat me huld *byuore* (R. OF GL. I. 281.). Þre þer he huld ys rente ac þe verpe was *byhynde* (I. 284.). He must blaw my blak hoille bore, Both *behynd* and *before* (TOWN. M. p. 8.). Þat ȝe abbeþ euer to be *aboue* (R. OF GL. II. 458.). Þat hii and al þot lond *byneþe* ssolde be ydo (I. 288.). Þe kyng byhuld *aboute* (I. 277.). Non dunt byleþþ *wypout* (II. 458.). Son *after* com an erle (LANGT. I. 26.). Com *after* (TOWN. M. p. 201.). Þe Englysse ouer þe brugg droue þe oper at laste. Ac þo þat water was *bytwæne*, hii stode aȝen vaste (R. OF GL. I. 355.). Halfsax.: He patt fra *biþu-jenn* comm (ORM 17970.). Ofte heo weren *buwenne* and ofte *bi-noten* (LAJAM. I. 160.). Al þat smale mon-kun he dude ȝeond þea munes & him self mid his ferde *bi-foren* & *bi-hinden* (I. 19.). Belin & Brenne heo [heom?] bileien al *abeoten* (I. 242.). Þet folc þer *widinnen* heom ehtliche wið fehten (ib.). Þat lond binom heom þat lið þer *bi-twizen* (III. 201.). Anglosaxon; *Ufan* engla sum Abraham hlūðe stefne cȳgde (CAEDM. 2902.). Swa heó on dæg *bufan* up āstūhō (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 2.). Nāglas of nearve *neōðan* scinende leōhte lixton (ELENE 1115.). Þā steorran . . turnjað *onbūtan* mid hyre (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 10.). Seo sunne glit *ābūtan* (p. 11.). Svylee ær nās, *āfter* ne cymð (EXOD. 11, 6.). Cwāð þāt sceaðena mæst eallum heora eaforum *āfter siððan* vurde (CAEDM. 546.). Also: Se cyning hēt ridan *āfter* (SAX. CHR. 901.) *Betveōnan*, *betveōnum*, *betveow*, *betvux* have not occurred tome in Anglosaxon without a case.

The particles *out* and *in*, in their separation, have to be considered as adverbs.

The adverbial *out* is in general equal to the Highdutch *weg*, *fort* (foras), also, to *heraus*, in the sense of becoming manifest as well as of aberration, as well as to *aus*, in the meaning of carrying through to the end; *in* forms the contrary to it, with reference to movement, and with a closer leaning towards the sensuous meaning: The wind was very high, And, ten to one, old Joan had not gone *out* (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 2, 1.). Make haste, or Lady Franklin will be *out* (BULW., Money 2, 3.). Nature her custom holds, Let shame say what it will: When these are gone, The woman will be *out* (SHAKSP., Haml. 4, 7.). When a judicious critic points *out* any defect to me (SHERID., Critic. 1, 1.). I have forgot my part, And I am *out* (SHAKSP., Coriol. 5. 3.); dialectically: To be *out* = not to be on friendly terms (CRAVEN DIAL. II. 24.). If thou my tale, Zuleika, doubt, Call Haroun — he can tell it *out* (BYR., Bride 2, 14.). Do you mean that the story is tediously spun *out*? (SHERID., Critic. 1, 1.) — Come, come, go *in* with me (SHAKSP., II Henry IV. 2, 3.). Half a score of us get him *in*, one night, and make him pawn his wit for a supper (BEN JONS., Cynth.

Rev. 3, 2.). Beg her to walk *in* (SHERID., School for Sc. 1, 1.). Now I'll let them *in* (OXENF., Twice Killed 1. 2.). "His piety, his care, His bounty." — "And his subtilty, I'll put *in*" (BEN JONS., Sejan. 3, 1.). They shall prepare that which they bring *in* EXOD. 16, 5.). He closed his door, and locked himself *in* (DICKENS, Christm. Car. 1.). Their vacation, too, at this time of the year, falls *in* so pat with ours (CH. LAMB, Essays.). I no more trouble my head about who's *in* or who's *out*, than I do about John Nokes or Tom Stiles (GOLDSM., She Stoops 2.). In: Week *in*, week *out*, from morn till night, You can hear his bellows blow (LONGF. I. 103.) we may refer the preceding case to *in* and *out*. For the exclamation *out!* see Vol. I. p. 427.

These adverbial particles often appear as separated from former compounds. Old-Engl.: To wynne it ilk a dele, His heritage pat is *oute*, he wenes fulle wele (LANGT. II. 243.). I drew *out* my swerde (TOWN. M. p. 192.). Al shal ben i-beten *out* or Criste messe day (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 327.). Ne be he ner so stout yet he bith y-soht *out* o brede and o leynthe (p. 216.). Man pat he vond in prison ek ydo, Ofer in warde myd vnryȝt, he boȝte hem out also (R. of GL. I. 323.). And loke wer þe halue may hym myȝte *out* atstonde (I. 285.). And strek *out* hire thes (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 13.). Draw *out* hys lymmes (TOWN. M. p. 219.). And sche was wyckyd *oute* and *oute* (MS. in HALLIW. v.), still popularly *out* and *out* and *out* and *outer* for throughout, completely. — Lof . . com *in*, & byuore hym et (R. of GL. I. 277.). Als Lenten tide com *in* (LANGT. II. 330.). Thus should thou com *in* (TOWN. M. p. 200.). Set *in* youre nalyz On raw (p. 201.). Wynd *in* fellow, I the pray (TORRETT 875.). Wis mon holt is wordes *ynne* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 111.). Halfsax.: Annd tanne comm he sippenn *ut* (ORM. 221.). Sippenn ȝede he þepenn *ut* (1098.). Comm himm sippenn *ut* (1710.). *Vt* ich wullen driuen al pat ich finde on liue (LAȜAM. II. 66.). *Vt* heo droȝen sone amppullen scone (II. 406.): Where *ut* immediately precedes the verb, compounding may be assumed: His sweord he *ut* abraeid (III. 55.). [Comp. Old-Engl.: To þys water, þo yt alles *out* brac (R. of GL. I. 321.)]. Dide recess *inn* inoh (ORM. 1074.). Whann he sholde gann-genn *inn* (1076.). Þe feire Austin þe fulluht broute hider *in* (LAȜAM. I. 2.), also immediately before the verb: pider *in* iwenden (I. 24.). In Anglosaxon *úte*, *út*, as well as *inne*, *inn* is used adverbially: He eode *út* (JON. 13, 30.). Hér ys þin móder, aod þine gebróðra *úte* (MARC. 4, 32.). Hí slépon *úte* on triova sceadam (BOETH. 15.). Leóht *inne* stóð (BEOV. 3140.). Ic gange *inn* (PS. 117, 19.). The *in* standing before the verb is often separated from it, but seems to constitute with it a compound notion, in which, indeed, as with every compound of a particle with verbs, the particle operates adverbially. Middle-Highdutch: Du wilt gewalteclichen gån in minem herzen *úz* und *in* (WALTH. v. D. WOGELW., Lachm. 55, 11.). To the *out* and *in* after substantives is joined the Middle-Highdutch: Alle di wochen *úz* (D. MYSTIKER, Pfeiffer 72, 3). Modern-Highdutch Jahr aus, Jahr ein. A distinction only in form of the Anglosaxon prepositions from the adverbs seems intended in the strengthened *inn*. For the interjection *out* see Vol. I. p. 427. and for the combination of *out* and *in* with other prepositions incidentally in the discussion of the latter.

As prepositions which have become adverbial *off*, *on*, *by*, *over*, *through*, *to* occur more or less frequently, others rarely, as *fro* (from), *for*, *against*, which may in part be regarded as ellipses.

The preposition *of*, at present used adverbially only in the strengthened form *off* (see *off* Vol. II. 1. p. 256.) preserves, like

the Highdutch ab, essentially the notion of removal and separation: As when far *off* at sea a fleet descri'd Hangs in the clouds (MILT., P. L. 2, 636.). *Off* goes his bonnet to an oyster wench (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 1, 2.). It's time for me to be *off* (MARRYAT, P. Simple 1, 12.). I certainly don't fall *off*, I assure you (SHERID., Critic. 1, 1.). Break *off*! My fairy nose a mortal smells (PLANCHÉ, Fortunio 1, 2.). Then 'tis time to dance *off* (THACKERAY, Engl. Humour. 6.). This comes *off* well and excellent (SHAKSP., Tim. of Ath. 1, 1.) [of a painting]. Can you cut *off* a man's head? (SHAKSP., Meas. for Meas. 4, 2.) The edge of my wit is clean taken *off* (BEN JONS., Cynth. Rev. 1, 1.). The stranger immediately pulled *off* his green spectacles (WARREN, Then Thous. a-year 3, 1.). All the gold lace was stripp'd *off* long ago (PLANCHÉ, Fortunio 1, 1.). Are you there to bring him *off*? (BEN JONS., Sejan. 3, 1.) Love seldom goes far in a vessel so frail, But just pilots her *off*, and then bids her good-bye (TH. MOORE p. 213.). I carried *off* the great prizes (BULW., Money 2, 3.). The original idea is somewhat more remote in: His father left him well *off* (BULW., Money 1, 2.). What if we could make this elegant clown pass himself *off* as a foreign prince? (ib.), wherein the particle may denote the finishing or completion of the thing. To *off* must be opposed *on*, in the sense of contact and immediate propinquity and approximation, which passes into that of continuance and progressive movement of the activity: I have boots *on* (BEN JONS., Poet. 1, 1.). Put *on* your bonnet (BULW., Lady of L. 1, 1.). You are to come *on* (BEN JONS., Cynth. Rev. 3, 3.). *On*, toward Calais, ho! (SHAKSP., John 3, 3.) Lord how long wilt thou look *on*? (Ps. 35, 17.) Now must we hasten *on* to action (COLER., Picc. 4, 1.). I'll go *on* with my story (MARRYAT, P. Simple 1, 12.). O sweet hours Of golden joy, ye come! . . Roll *on*! roll *on*! (TALF., Ion 2, 1.) And sitting *on* he seems to say "Fare thee well" (TH. MOORE p. 43.). And vice . . Sinned gaily *on* (BRYANT p. 9.). — By keeping men *off* you keep them *on* (GAY, Begg. Op. 1, 1.). I swam, ere I could recover the shore, five-and-thirty leagues *off* and *on* (SHAKSP., Temp. 3, 2.). The questions no way touch upon puritanism, either *off* or *on* (SAUNDERSON in Williams Dict. p. 208.). To be *off* and *on* = unsteady, irresolute (WEBST. v. *on*). — The preposition *by* as an adverb is referred to rest or movement in the reach or proximity of a person or thing, when the ethical reference of assistance is not excluded; in combination with verbs of movement the particle also admits the meaning of past: Were you *by*, when it began? (SHAKSP., Rom. a. Jul. 1, 1.) A grove hard *by*, sprung up with this their change (MILT., P. L. 10, 547.). Stand *by*, or I shall gall you (SHAKSP., John 4, 3.). The Lord passed *by* before him (EXOD. 34, 6.). But, alas for his country! her pride has gone *by* (TH. MOORE p. 219.). *By* goes to immediate proximity in time in the reduplication *by* and *by*. Look his winding up the watch of his wit; *by* and *by* it will strike (SHAKSP., Temp. 2, 1.). When tribulation or persecution ariseth because of the word, *by* and *by* he is offended (MATTH. 1321.). I suppose *by* and *by* we shall be stripped of our skins (SMOLLET, R. Rand.

15.). — *Over*, as an adverb; has a meaning to which is attached the idea of *going beyond* a measure, as well as, in regard to time, that of going and being past: extension beyond anything in the proper and in the figurative sentence is also expressed by the adverb: We will pass *over* to Gibeah (JUDGES 19, 12.). I'll just walk *over* and see what he is made of (MARRYAT, P. Simple 1. 12.). When Fingal heard that this great chap were coming *over* (ib.). Upon that also rests *deliver over*, *give over*. In *roll over*, *turn over* the movement of going and turning over makes itself perceptible in different senses. — Good measure, pressed down, and shaken together, and running *over*, shall men give into your bosom (LUKE 6, 38.). He that gathered much had nothing *over*, and he that gathered little had no lack (EXOD. 16, 18.). — The feast was *over* in Branksome tower (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 1, 1.). So glory's thrill is *o'er* (TH. MOORE p. 61.). — Tell *o'er* thy tale again (SHAKSP., John 3. 1.). Of things, the vanity; of men, the flaws; Flaws in the best; the many, flaw all *o'er* (YOUNG, N. Th. 4, 27.). I read this joint effusion twice *over* attentively (TH. HOOK, Gilb. Gurney 10.). I'll repeat it *o'er* and *o'er* (TH. MOORE p. 61.). Scrooge . . thought it *over* and *over* and *over* (DICKENS, Christm. Car. 2.). In *over again*, the idea of repetition lies in *again*, as in *over and over* in the reduplication of the particle, which here denotes extension beyond the whole. The adverbial *through* is referred to the activity perverting an object or extending through several objects, as well as to the activity brought to an end: Since the Fiend pass'd *through* (MILT., P. L. 10, 233.). Pass freely *thro'*: the wood is all thine own (TENNYS, p. 153.). While Wit a diamond brought, Which cut his bright way *through* (TH. MOORE p. 218.). The cup went *through* among the rest (SCOTT, Marmion 1, 30.). I am eight times thrust *through* the doublet: four *through* the hose; my buckler cut *through* and *through* (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 2, 4.). — *To* is often found standing alone with verbs, and has reference to the movement towards an object; thus it is used in contradistinction to *fro* (from): Go *to*, away! (SHAKSP., Temp. 5, 1). I pray you, fall *to* (Henry V. 5, 1.). Horses were put *to* (DICKENS, Pickw. 2, 20.). To heave *to*, to bring the ship's head to the wind (WEBST. v. heave). They ferry *over* this Lethæan sound Both *to* and *fro* (MILT., P. L. 2, 604.). Out steps, with cautious foot and slow, And quick, keen glances *to* and *fro*, The hunted outlaw (WHITTIER p. 27.). — We find other prepositions still more isolated: Hast thou ne'er heard of Time's omnipotence? *For* or *against*, what wonders can he do! (YOUNG, N. Th. 2, 195.).

The particles handed down to the English language as prepositions, which operated with the force of adverbs in compounds, have subsequently become naturalized as separate adverbs, supported by transposition with respect to a forgoing case of the object, or to an object occurring earlier in the sentence. But with a few prepositions appearing isolated a suppression of the object is in fact to be assumed, which is readily supplied by the context, although, on the other hand, every particle of this sort supposes of itself in the compound an object to which it must be referred, whether this is at the same time the object of the compound, or whether this lies outside of the sentence. Thus, the separation of the adverbially operative particles borders hard on the ellipsis, in which an object originally named is

habitually understood. The older language gradually isolates prepositions, like the above named *of* (*off*): *Of* he caste dragouns hame (ALIS. 391.). Holde of thy cappe and hod also (HALLIW., FREEMAS. 703.). When his clothes were of in fere (TOWN. M. p. 235.); isolated in Hallsax.: Awei he warp his gode breond & of mid pere burne (LAJAM. I. 216.). *Of* is otherwise placed before the words determined thereby. Old-Engl.: His hede þei of smyten (LANGT. II. 244.). Hii þat of scapede alyue (R. OF GL. I. 274.). The Ynglysche slewe that they off-took (ALIS. 4367.). A lytyll bowe he gan of alyue (SR. CLEGGES 211.). Compounds with *of* (for as such we recognize the notions determined adverbially by a preceding *of*, as well as by other prepositions) are rare, even in Hallsaxon, whereas they are numerous in Anglosaxon. as *offaran*, *ofdrifan*, *ofnman*, *ofhladan*, *ofeniscan*, *ofetan*, *ofscotjan*, *ofsvelgan*, *ofvunderjan*, *ofpyncean*, and many more, the development of whose notions does not belong here. — *On* seems to have been frequently used in the language of common life, particularly in combination with the imperative: Com on, sir, hyderward (TOWN. M. p. 204.). Lay on alle your hende (p. 219.). Step on before. — Come thou on. Put on thou p. 215.). Trott on a pase (p. 190.). We, ryn on, in the devill's nayme, before (p. 11.). Drawes on (p. 8.). Calle on tyte (p. 9.). Cry on, cry, whyles the thyng good (p. 11.). It stands in the passage above cited in contradistinction to *of*: Holde of thy cappe, and hod also, tyl thou have leve hyt on to do (HALLIW., FREEMAS. 703.). Hallsax.: Brutus sette on his flo (LAJAM. I. 14.). Þus tok Samuel on (II. 276.). In Anglosaxon, compounds with *on* were frequent. — *By*: Faste by, is þit the tree of eldre (MAUNDEV. p. 93.). In: þe Cristen stode he by (LANGT. I. 16.) we are reminded of the Anglosaxon: *Bigstamdað* me strange geneátas (CAEDM. 284.). The combination of *by* and *by* is often used of proximity in space: Two yonge knyghtes liggyng by and by (CHAUC., C. T. 1013.). His doughter had a bed al by hirselve, Right in the same chambre by and by (4140); otherwise: These were his wordes by and by (Rom. of the Rose 4581.), perhaps word by (for) word. Comp. *by* and *by*, sigillatim (Prompt. Parvul.). I clappyd his cors by and by (TOWN. M.p. 235.). An isolated *by* without a word of reference hardly occurs in Anglosaxon. — *Over*: He went over to France (LANGT. II. 246.). Aboven it overthwart, lay a tre . . . that men jeden over onne (MAUNDEV. p. 94.), where *that* is to be referred to *onne*, not to *over*: Lordys stond on reugis, Ladyes lay over and beheld (TORRENT 1165.). Early instances seem wanting. — *Through*, which has vanished from the verbal compound to which it formerly belonged, is seldom found isolated as an adverb, yet the adverbial reduplication is early met with. Hallsax.: þa fleh Henges *purh* & *purh* þat he com to Kunigges-burh (LAJAM. II. 264.). Landde [ladde] hine *purh* & *purh* & *purh* ut Cuninges-burh (II. 276.), like *durch unde church* in Middle-Highdutch. Comp. GRIMM Wb. II. 1576. The adverbial *purh* operates only adverbially in composition. — *To*: His noryshe yede never better *to* (TOWN. M. p. 219.). Yei, that was welle gone *to* (p. 201.). Here belong more ancient separations of compound verbs. as in "Te-heel" quod sche, and clapt the wyndow *to* (CHAUC., C. T. 3738.). In: A gret wille hym com *ta* Vorto yse ys þonge broper (R. OF GL. I. 288.), the reference of *to* to *hym* is still proximate. Moreover the Hallsaxon has *to* isolated: Heo wenden to þan walle, *to* heo eoden alle afoten (LAJAM. I. 401 sq.). Comp. Middle-Highdutch Zuo den hunden er dô sprâch "zuo." (REINHART 789. Grimm.) *To* and *fro* is not unknown in the older tongue: Ipomydon drew hym nye tho, And eft he herkenyd *to and fro* (IPOM. 139.). An adverbial *tô*, apart from the preposition occurring in the meaning of the dissimilated *too*, nimis, which we are not here considering, certainly occurs in Anglosaxon in an additional meaning, whence proceeds that of Häfde . . . nigon hund vintra and hund seofontig *tô* (CAEDM. 1217.). with which comp. Old-Engl.: In þe ȝer of grace a þousend & syxty *perto* (R. OF

GL. II. 368.). *Fram, from*, in Anglosaxon frequently put immediately before the verb, otherwise stands adverbially: þā forlēt se here þā burh, and for *fram* (Sax. Chr. 921.). *Fram* ic ne ville (BYRTNOTH 317. Grein). — We also occasionally meet with other prepositions used adverbially in ancient times: For ne povert no for no wondur, Yet wecre we never *undur* (ALIS. 3053.). Men may envirowne alle the erthe of alle the world, as wel *undre* as aboven (MAUNDEV. p. 182.). Al his folk *myð*, y-wis, Therof hadyn gret blys (ALIS. 2637.). Halfsax.: Drihtin badd Noe gan *till* Annd wirren himm an arrke (ORM. 14542.). Annd teþ þedenn *till* Annd didenn patt he seþde (14038.). *Till* stands with the meaning of the abovementioned *to*. — Pine iss sur annd biteþþ *wipþ* (ORM. 15208.). *Wipþ* often stands reduplicated: Ofþer we sendeþ *wið and wið* and þeornen Arþures grið (LAW. II. 447.). And seide auere *wið and wið*, ich wulle makien unfrið (III. 211.). Her icc wile *wipþ annd wipþ* þa seoffne seolþess shawenn (ORM. 5628.), that is again and again. Comp. *by and by*. Anglosaxon: On sund ahóf earce from eorðan, and þa aþelo *mid* (CARDM. 1383.). Þa Seaxan hæfdon sige, and þær wæron Frysan *mid* (Sax. Chr. 894.), thus often the preposition *mid*. Heald þe elne *viþ* (Cod. Exon. 303, 9.) [withstand boldly]. Comp. the Transposition of Prepositions.

2. In point of meaning adverbs fall into different classes (see Vol. I. 386.), which appear as objective or subjective determinations in the Sentence, and in part pass notionally into one another, so that determinations of space may become those of time; qualitative, quantitative ones, and conversely. Forming in number the most extensive class of particles, they are of great import in the language. As to the syntax a few classes present the occasion for a few more particular discussions.

a) *a.* Adverbs of place serve in general to refer an action to a place or a locality where it happens, or whence or whither it takes its movement or direction. Ordinarily, the adverb itself, especially the demonstrative, interrogative, relative and generalizing pronominal adverb, expresses of itself the idea of where, whence or whither, or combines with prepositions (see Vol. II. 1. p. 479.), to keep these determinations of space clear.

Here were usually kept the records of the family (BULW., Last Days of P. 1, 3.). *There* let me sit beneath the shelter'd slopes (THOMS., Autumn.). Could he, whose rules the rapid comet bind, . . . Who saw its fires *here* rise, and *there* descend, Explain his own beginning, or his end? (POPE, Essay on M. 2, 35.). I'll to her lodgings *here* *abouts* she lies (MARL., Jew on M. 3, 5.). *Where* on earth can lightfoot be? (PLANCHÉ, Fortunio 2, 3.) *Where'er* he is, he's fast asleep (ib.). In heaven, or *somewhere* else (SHAKSP., Tit. Andron. 4, 3.). Men are not ashamed to rise in Parliament and *elsewhere*, and speak the things they do not think (CARL., Past a. Pres. p. 203.). He is *above*, sir, changing his dress (SHERID., Riv. 2, 1.). When I saw the void *behind*, I fill'd it up (TH. MOORE p. 57.). *Where* do we start from?¹⁴ — "*Yonder* in the hollow." (PLANCHÉ, Fortunio 2, 3.) *Whence* should I have flesh to give unto all this people? (NUMB. 11, 13.). The good man went into his garden . . . to supply another with something which he wanted *thence* (FIELD., J. Andr. 3, 4.). *Hither* haste, come cordial soul (TH. MOORE p. 31.). For scarce my life with fancy play'd . . . Still *hither thither* idly sway'd (TEN-



NYS. p. 87.). Much better had it been for thee He' ad kept thee *where* th' art us'd to be, Or sent th'on bus'ness *any whither* (BUTL., Hud. 1, 2, 727.). *Forward* I went with my hey-de-gaies (KENP, Nine Daies Wond. p. 4.). Light is gushing *Upward* (WHITTIER p. 219.). Go *down* (EXOD. 19, 21) and so forth. The idea of continuance, of direction or of motion certainly does not attach itself to many more particular determinations of space, as *abroad*, *within*, and is then to be gathered from the context, yet even the confusion of pronominal adverbs, especially *where* and *whither*, by the encroachment of the former, has long been customary: *There* I throw my gage (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 1, 1.). *There* he led him (FARNELL, Moses 521.). I think I sent her *there* (SOUTH., Oroon. 5, 3.). Your horse will carry you *there* in two hours (SCOTT, R. Roy 7.). Thou led'st me *here* perchance to kill (BYR., Bride 2, 11.). But *where* does this tend? (GOLDSM., G. Nat. M. 4.) Go *Where* duty calls you (COLER., Wallenst. 2, 11.). *Where* we turn, Nothing but Richelieu (BULW., Richel. 2, 1.). The converse case hardly ever occurs, as in: For your sake and his own he's welcome *hither* (MARL., Jew of M. 2, 2.), where the idea of movement is operative.

The discrimination of the relations of space, particularly in the pronominal adverbs, goes back to the most ancient times. Old-Engl.: Ryght now *here* I wole abyde (RICH. C. DE L. 1051.). So pat it was *per* yfoundede (R. OF GL. I. 87.). And slow hem faste *her & per* (ib.). And smyte eyþer oper *her & per* (I. 185.). *There* is not, but a lytille village, and houses a brood *here and there* (MAUNDEV. p. 112.). A litel maiden-childe ich founde in the holwe assche *therout* (LAY LE FREYNE 208.). As ye watched *ther owte* (TOWN. M. p. 191.). *There* nyghe is Gabrielles welle, *where* oure Lord was wont to bathe him (MAUNDEV. p. 112.). Costantyn lette also in Jerusalem chirches rere, And wyde aboute *elles wer* (R. OF GL. I. 87.). There ye moven merueill y-fynde, More than o *wer elles* in Ynde (ALIS. 5628.). He wynneth the gres *aye where* (TORRENT 2512.). *Zent* ryd Maximou (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 123.). *Yonder* comyth Antony (TORR. 2070.). And asked hym *whennes* he was, and *whennes* he com (ALIS. 5490.). Wen he sal *henne* wenden (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 175.). *Henne* wole I nought wende (RICH. C. DE L. 1053.). Go *hens* (TOWN. M. p. 130.). *Thennes* to Nekomedie they turneth (ALIS. 2569.). And sent hire leom *hider* to us (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 134.). The wynde you may *theder* blawen (ALIS. 5630.). Hit is so deskatered bothe *hider and thidere* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 337.). Dys ost wende *puderward* (R. OF GL. II. 387.) and so forth. Hallsax.: Hit iwerð *pere* swa hit deð wel *iwere* (LAJAM. I. 12.). Baþe comm uss Jesu Crist To clennsenn *here annd tære* (ORM. 10475.). Mann maꝝ itt *summuher* findenn (6483.). Ðat heo moten wonien *wer swa* heo wolles (LAJAM. I. 21.). Ðet he wolde of Engle þa æðelen tellen, what heo ihoten weoren & *wonene* heo comen (I. 2.). Sone he *ponene* iuatte (I. 11.). Scodðen his cun *hider* com (I. 15.). *pider* in iwenden (I. 24.). *piderward* wes swiðe ræd (II. 89.). Ær dæi amarwen al hit bið *dune* (II. 238.). Comen eft *hider ham* (I. 112.). Anglosax.: Ne vās *hēr* þā giet, nymðe heolster-sceado, viht gevorden (CAEDM. 103.). Adam *hvar* eart þu? (GEN. 3, 9.). Þē vorde frāgn vuldres aldor, *hvar* Abraham eorðan være (CAEDM. 1000.). And hig *nā hvar* ne funde (GEN. 31, 33.). Hit is āvriten on Cristes bēc, and *gehvær* on ðǣrum bōcum (A.-S. HOMIL. I. 136.). Ðu eart Israēla god *æghvær* āt pearfe (Ps. 58, 4.). Hig fōron *panon* (NUM. 11, 35.).

Hwanon synd ge? (GEN. 29, 4.). *Hvider* fundast þu siðas dfeógan? (CAEDM. 2263.). And hi ealle mid him *ponan* . . preatjað *gehvider* ymb-sittenda ððra peóða (GREEN, AGS. POES. II. 328.). Forþam hit unstillle *æghvider* volde vide tóscrifan (II. 318.) and so forth. The confounding of the whither with the where is not modern carelessness, but familiar to the oldest literary language. Old-Engl.: For he ne schuld *no whar* fien (AMIS A. AMIL. 876.). Hallsax.: A þat *her* com liðen ma of heore leoden (LAJAM. I. 257.). Nulle ic nauere mare ajen cumen *here* (II. 25.). In to þan londen we sullen faren, bringen *þer* sorwen & kare (I. 256.). Anglosax.: þa ic *hēr* ærest com (CAEDM. 2705.). Nō *hēr* cūðlicor cuman ongunnon lindhābbende (BEV. 488.). Mynte se mæra, *hvar* he meahste svā vidre gevinðan (1528.). Gā *þær* heo ville (2788.). *Hvar* com engla prym? (CAEDM. II. 36.). *Hvar* com eóver hālig god? (PS. 78, 10.). Gif man ænig lic *elles hvar* lerge (LEGG. ÆTHELE. IV. 16.). More remarkable is the converse confusion: Ne þec mon *hider* mōse fēdeð (COD. EXON. 118, 25.). Þu ēce god eac gemengest þa heofoncundan *hīser* on eorðan sǣva við lice (GREEN, AGS. POES. II. 322.). Where even takes the place of whence. Old-Engl.: *Where* had ye that ilke ryng? (IPOMYD. 2067.) Man, *whar* hastou al thi prute? for ther nis non i-wis (WRIGHT, POP. TREAT. p. 139.).

- β. The demonstrative, interrogative and relative adverbs of space do not properly serve to express an objectively determined and bounded locality, but to denote a space subjectively determinable and to be exhibited. The demonstrative, and relative especially, are also referred to objects notionally determined, primarily to those filling space, then to abstract ones. Simple adverbs of place, and those compounded with prepositions here occur. Yet it is to be observed that most of the words compounded with *here*, *there* and *where* become obsolete, and are considered inelegant in Modern-English. The reference to substantives of every kind gives to adverbs the operation of pronouns, which also admits a reference of them to members of sentences as well as to entire sentences.

Enter *this wild wood* And view the haunts of Nature . . Thou wilt find nothing *here* Of all that pained thee (BRYANT p. 17.). If there be aught of merit in my service, Impute it *there where* most 'tis due, to *love* (ROWE, J. Shore 2, 1.). What makes all *physical or moral ill*? *There* deviates nature, and *here* wanders will (POPE, Essay on M. 4, 111.). Man! *know thyself* All wisdom centres *there* (YOUNG, N. Th. 4, 484.). Give me the *glass*, and *therein* will I read (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 4, 1.). If a man shall open a *pit* . . and an ox or an ass fall *therein* (EXOD. 21, 33.). *Jericho* and the king *thereof* (JOSH. 6, 2.). Thine ox shall be slain before thine eyes, and thou shalt not eat *thereof* (DEUTER. 28, 31.). *It* was not got so easily; Nor will I part so slightly *therewithal* (MARL., Jew of M. 1, 2.). "*To* *morrow*, then, I judge a *happy day*." — "Who knows the lord protector's mind *herein*?" (SHAKSP., Rich. III. 3, 4.). *Hereby* ye shall know that the living God is among you . . *Behold, Behold, the ark of the covenant of the Lord of all the earth passeth over* etc. (JOSH. 3, 10.). They came to *Elim, where* were twelve wells of water (EXOD. 15, 27.). *In the continuous woods Where* rolls the Oregon (BRYANT p. 15.). And, oh! *that pang where* more than madness lies (BYR., Bride

2, 27.). To qualify himself *for a degree, and the distant duties of the office whence* he was to cull the bunches of diplomatic laurels (TH. HOOK, Sayings a. Doings, Martha). Edward's *seven sons, whereof* thyself art one (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 1, 2.). *The days were brief Whereof* the poets talk (TENNYNS. p. 253.). *If one be run through the body with a sword in a house, whereof* he instantly dieth (WARREN, Now a. Then 3.). *The stairs were such as whereon* Jacob saw Angels ascending and descending (MILT., P. L. 3, 510.). But *thou whereon* I carved her name (TENNYNS. p. 249.). *A time to come wherein* she may beg thee (DUNNE, Sat. 6, 32.). Thou *ladder wherewithal* The mounting Bolingbroke ascends the throne (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 5, 1.). *With full assent They vote; Whereat* his speech he thus renews (MILT., P. L. 2, 398.). The interrogative adverb appears in combination with a preposition only, instead of a pronoun: O my lord, *wherewith* shall I save Israel? (JUDG. 6, 15.) *Wherein* do they differ? (BYR., Manfr. 3, 3.) We may in this case conceive *where* as made equal to the neuter *what*: yet we may ask after the person with *where*: "*Where* did the minstrels come from?" — "*Alfred sent the music.*" (DICKENS, Battle of Life 1.).

The employment of the adverb of place instead of the pronoun, in particular with the combination of the former with a preposition, pervades all periods of the language. Old-Engl.: *pe kyng of Kent was po kyng of al po lond of Kent, per* were two bishopes, & *jet nys it noȝt ywent* (R. OF GL. I. 6.), And made *kynges fourme of bras* . . . An *pe syȝte per of pe Saxons aferde* (I. 251.). *Hys gode moder Alfye he tolde al houyt was*. "*Ȝe leue sone*", quap moder, "*pe toknyng herof ys etc.*" (I. 283.). *Myd syx hundred syppuol kynȝtys & al pe atyl per to* (R. OF GL. I. 168.). He was wont to holden a round appelle of gold in his *hond*: but it is fallen out *thereof* (MACNDEV. p. 8.). I a bed he *hit dyght*, . . . And spreynd *theron* of the herbus (ALIS 339 . . . Sche toke a *riche haudekine* . . . And lapped the litel maiden *therin* (LAY LE FREINE 131.). *The spousyng* was i-don that nyght; *Theratte* daunsyd many a knyght (RICH. C. DE L. 185.). His *knife* he drew out of his shethe *Therwith* to do the steward scathe (2137.). The demonstrative *there* long operates retrospectively, like the relative developed from the interrogative *where*, but which we likewise early find: *Ȝit pe chapelles standes, per* he wedded his wife (LANGT. I. 26.). *Bethlem, ther* Jesu Cryst was born (RICH. C. DE L. 1352.). On *feld ther* oure bestis ar (TOWN. M. p. 5.). *The cause therfore* I thedyr wyl wende, Is flor to reyse . . . Lazarus (COV. MYST. p. 130.). — In the *taverne wher* they were (RICH. C. DE L. 655.). An *chyrche* . . . *War yme me ssolde* Gode's seruyse do (R. OF GL. I. 251.). *Wateres* . . . *Ware by pe schippes mowe come fro pe se* (I. 2.). Al he hit hath purf *thulke soule wharthurf* he is man (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 140.). O *partie of the crowne of oure Lord, wherwith* he was crowned (MACNDEV. p. 12.). The interrogative form lets *where* be treated like *what*: *Warto* tarie we so longe, to quelle hym? (R. OF GL. I. 109.). *Wherof* suld I tend? (TOWN. M. p. 10.) Halſax.: He wonede *at Ernleȝe* . . . sel *par* him puhte (LAJAM. I. 1.). Adun he warp *pe dede swin & him seolf sæt per bi* (III 31.). He him *Lundene* ȝæf, & *per mid* he ȝæf him al Kent (I. 306.). Swa *pe king seoc lei* . . . ne mihte he *per of* beon hæl (I. 289.). *Ȝif patt mann wile Cristenndom* . . . dillȝhenn þa birrþ *pe stanndenn par onn-ȝæn* (ORM. 5302.). Here the demonstrative form *par, per, paere* is still substituted for the relative form: Ful neh *than ilke stude par* Rome nou stondeð (LAJAM. I. 6.). He ferde *to pere stowe par* Diane inne stod (I.

50.). The interrogative form is substituted for the pronoun in combination with the preposition: *Whæroff* lss þiss patt tu me cnawesst? (ORM. 13694.) & bad heom . . fondien þat soðe hid heore siġe-craften *whær* on hit weore ilong etc. (LAȜAM. II. 225.); also with respect to a person: He sahh patt ȝho wipp childe wass Annd nisste he nohht *whæroffe* (ORM. 2930.). It may be regarded as a relative in: Telle of pine cunne *war* of þou hart ispronge (LAȜAM. III. 36. modern text). In Anglosaxon *þær* serves, also in combination with prepositions, for demonstrative and relative reference backwards: Gif hwa *pytt* ædelfe . . and *þær* fealle on oxa (EXOD. 21, 33.). Hig fundon *ænne feld* on Sennaar lande, and vunodon *þæron* (GEN. 11, 2.). Hig habbað him gegoten *ân gylden celf*, and habbað him for God, and *gebildað* him *þær tô* (EXOD. 32, 8.). Hig brohton *þâ hira gold* tô me, and ic hêt veorpan on fȳr and vircan *þærof* ânes celfes gelicnysse (32, 24.) — On *uprodor*, *þær* leôht and lif (CAEDM. 3474.). On *ædelland*, *þær* Salem stôð (3557.). To *þam hûse þær* he inne vunode (A-S. HOMIL. I. 108.). The analogous employment of the interrogative form belongs to a later age.

- γ) The adverb *there* often stands pleonastically, not merely where another determination of space is already associated with the notion of the activity, but also where a fact generally is referred to no determinate locality. This weakened *there*, which in the latter case makes a fact more conspicuous by denoting it sensuously, especially stands in sentences with intransitive and passive verbs, and appears most frequently with *be*. It readily comes in the front of the Sentence, when the subject follows the verb. Comp. Vol. II. 1. p. 139.

Now *there* was *there* nigh unto the mountains a great herd of swine feeding (MARK. 5, 11.). What is *there here* so against nature? (COLER., Picc. 4, 7.) But *here there* is no choice (5, 2.). The land Salique lies in Germany . . *Where* Charles the great, having subdued the Saxons, *There* left behind and settled certain French (SHAKSP., Henry V. 1, 2.). The whole land of Havilah *where there* is gold (GEN. 2, 11.). *Where there* is mystery, it is generally supposed that there must also be evil (BYR., Framg.). In *Rama* was *there* a voice heard (MATTH. 2, 18.). *There* lived, in the fourteenth century, *near Bologna*, a widow-lady of the Lambertini family (ROGERS, It., The Bag of Gold). *There* is no virtue like necessity (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 1, 3.). *There* is no God (Ps. 14, 1.). A time *there* is, when, like a thrice-told tale, Long-rifled life of sweet can yield no more (YOUNG, N. Th. 4, 37.). A book's a book, although *there's* nothing in't (BYRON p. 312.). *There* is no other reform conceivable (CARL., Past a. Pres. 1, 6.).

Such a weakening of the particle *there*, which denotes not only a being here or there, but existence generally, even where it appears superfluous, is early to be met with, when it cannot be surprising that the weakened particle still operates strengtheningly. Old-Engl.: Nou is *ther* water *her* an urthe more than of londe (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 137.). Pre wondres *þær* beþ in *Engelond* (R. or GL. I. 7.). *Ther* was a gamen in *Engelond* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 137.). Yles *ther* beþ mony on mony a *boute Engelonde* (R. or GL. I. 2.). *Abouten Grece there* ben many iles (MAUNDEV. p. 15.). At *Trompyngtoun* . . *Ther* goth a brook, and over that a brigge, *Upon the whiche brook ther* stant a melle (CHAC., C. T. 3919.). Threo soules *ther* beoth in ech man (WRIGHT,

Pop. Treat. p. 139.). If *ther* were a post heȝ, and a man above seta (p. 135.). Whilon . . *Ther* was a duk that highte Theseus (CHAUC., C. T. 861.). *Ther* is no trust in wamans saw (TOWN. M. p. 280.). Half-sax.: *þer* wunioð in þan lofte feole cunne wihte (LAȜAM. II. 236.). Annd ec *þær* comm an widdwe forþ þatt wass Drihhtin full cweme (ORM. 7651.), *þær* wærenn fele gode menn Biforenn Cristess come (Intr. 55.). Anglo-sax.: þā vās *þær*, binnan *þære* byrig Hierusalem sum Godes mann (A.-S. HOMIL. I. 134.). *þær* syndon betveonon þām tvām mynstrum preottȳne mila āmetene (THORPE, Anal. p. 54.). Ne sindon him dæda dyrne, ac *þær* bið dryhtne cūð on þam miclan dāge, hū monna gehwylc ær earnode ēces lifes (Cod. Exon. 65, 6.). Þā pingeras pingjað þæm þe *þær* man yfjað (BOETH. 38, 7.). Þāt gelamp on sumere nihte, þæt *þær* com sum man tō þās hālgan veres sprāce (S. GUTHL. 9.). Although *there* frequently occurs from the earliest times, when a more particularly determined locality is contained in the sentence, we must yet not seek therein any emphatic reduplication of the determination of place. With the reduplication of *there* in the same sentence, as well as of *where* in combination with *there*, we may moreover compare the ancient reduplication and even triplication of *þær*. Halfsax.: He bigann . . *þær þær* he wass i wesste To fullhtnenn (ORM. 10261. cf. 1656. 19249 sq.). Anglosax.: Alfvine vās ofslegen, be Trentan, *þær þær* Egferð and Aðelred gefuhton (SAX. CHR. 679.). — Halfsax.: Forr *þær þær* ȝho þurh Drihhtin warrþ Off halȝ Gast wiþþ childe, *þær* toc ȝho blosstme of Godess Gast (ORM. 1391. cf. 5835.). Anglosax.: *þær* bið sōð ærist *þær þær* beoð vepende eāgan and cearcigende tēð (A.-S. HOMIL. I. 132.). The process with *þā* is similar: Nu stōð se sceocca . . *þā þā* se ālmihhtiga hine āxode, hvanon he come (Job in Ettm. 3, 22.). *þā* hī *þā* þāt gebed gefyllen heafdon, *þā* com *þær* sum við . . ȝnān (S. GUTHLAC I.). *þā* þam bearpere *þā* þuhte, þāt hine *þā* nānes pinges ne lyste on pisse vorulde, *þā* þohte he, þāt he volde gesācan helle godu . . *þā* he *þā* hider com, *þā* sceolde cuman *þære* helle hund ongeān hine (BOETH. 35, 6.). If a third *þær* and *þā* stands here with emphasis, the division of two *þær* and *þā* into a demonstrative and a relative particle is not always possible, but is rather to be noted as a pleonasm.

- b. Adverbs of time, the kinds of which are more particularly distinguished, Vol I. p. 387. may, analogously to the where, whence and whither of space, discarding the other distinctions, be divided into the determinations of when? since when? and how long?

- α) The determinations of when, with which may be reckoned those of repetition and of succession in time, as well as other objective and subjective shades of them, are the most abundant. In this field we again find the ancient pronominal adverbs, not, however, without loss, together with other old adverbs, with which many modern forms, particularly in *-ly*, are associated, not, of themselves, belonging to the domain of time.

Thou soon wert fat . . *Then* wanton fulness vain oblivion brought (PARNELL, Moses 551.). Hence arose *first* coldness, *then* jealousy, *then* quarrel (BULW., Caxtons 8, 6.). When a woman loves and marries and settles, why *then* she becomes a one whole, a completed being (ib.). Even if I have grown so much wiser, what *then*? I am not changed towards you (DICKENS, Christm. Car. 2.). Eighty years ago things were very different here: the grounds were *then* a tangled desolation (HOLME LEE, Thorney

Hall 2.). And *now and then* one hung himself for grief (MARL., Jew of M. 2, 2.). Do, sir Lucius, edge in a word or two, every *now and then*, about my honour (SHERID., Riv. 5, 2.). *When*, Harry, *When?* (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 1, 1.). It was past two *when* I went to bed (DICKENS, Christm. Car. 2.). Hate *now* reigns alone (PLANCHÉ, Fortunio 1, 3.). You that way, *just now*, within a stride of taking him and his colleagues by the throat! (SHERID. KNOWLES, Virgin. 2, 4.) *But now* a king, — *now* thus! (SHAKSP., John 5, 7.) Being *now* a thing with one arm, *now* with one leg, *now* with twenty legs, *now* a pair of legs without a head, *now* a head without a body (DICKENS, Christm. Car. 2.). Doth my father *yet* live? (GEN. 45, 3.) Hast thou *yet* drawn o'er young Juba? (ADDIS., Cato 1, 3.) Here am I — Well! who comes *yet* of the others? (COLER., Picc. 5, 4.) No deeper wrinkles *yet*? (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 4, 1.) His lordship not *yet* up? (DOUGL. JERROLD, Bubbles 1.) I'll come to you *anon* (SHAKSP., Macb. 3, 1.). It is decreed, that *forthwith* every man Who has got arms shall bear them if he can (PLANCHÉ, Fortunio 1, 1.). Alas! the last would *soon* be the least in importance (BULW., Maltrav. 5, 8.). My life is spanned *already* (SHAKSP., Henry VIII. 1, 2.). "Where is Wrangel?" — "He is *already* gone." (COLER., Picc. 5, 3.) Your father has *just* left me (BOURCIC., Lond. Assur. 1.). Full *suddenly* he fled (SHAKSP., Lear 2, 1.). In living sculpture were *suddenly* seen the grand, the grotesque, the terrible, the beautiful (WARREN, The Lily a. the Bee 1.). I, the man whose Muse *whylome* did masks . . in lowly shepherds weeds (SPENSER, F. Qu. 1, int.). I am as fair now as I was *erewhile* (SHAKSP., Mids. N. Dr. 3, 2.). Will you troll the catch You taught me but *while-ere*? (Temp. 3, 2.) It was *formerly* better (All's Well 1, 1.). That *erst* him goodly armd, *now* most of all him harmd (SPENSER, F. Qu. 1, 11, 27.). As *erst* we promised thee. For thy desert we make thee governor (MARL., Jew of M. 5, 2.). Roland stared *first* at my father, *next* to me (BULW., Caxtons 5, 3.). Such an answer as was never *before* given under this sun (CARL., Past a. Pres. 4, 6.). *Eftsoones* he tooke that miscreated Faire (SPENS., F. Qu. 1, 2, 3.). Sixteen hundred years *afterwards* . . occurred a great gathering of the selfsame Family, in the plain of Dura (WARREN, The Lily a. the Bee 1.). A poor gentleman . . Who has been taken ill at my house four days ago, and has never held up his head *since* (STERNE, Tr. Shandy 6, 6.). Two thousand four hundred years have *since* rolled on (WARREN, The Lily a. the Bee 1.). The eastern sky is *still* unbroken gloom (TALF., Jon 1, 1.). *Once* upon a time . . a giant and a dwarf were friends (GOLDSM., Vic. 13.). *Once*, like the moon, I made The ever-shifting currents of the blood According to my humour ebb and flow (TENNYS. p. 155.). Marriages with foreigners are *seldom* fortunate experiments (BULW., Maltrav. 5, 8.). Knockers . . *Sometimes* bring on a confinement that lasts for many months (DOUGL. JERROLD, Bubbles 2.). What we *oft* do best, By sick interpreters . . is Not ours, or not allow'd (SHAKSP., Henry VIII. 1, 2.). He went once and he went *often*

(BULW., Caxtons 3, 4.). Go *presently* (SHAKSP., Two Gentlem. 4, 4.). They smile at me who *shortly* shall be dead (Rich. III. 3, 4.). Captain Morbrand Found and secured him yester morning *early* (COLER., Picc. 3, 2.). The marriage will take place almost *immediately* (BULW., Money 3, 2.). I *momentarily* expect him here (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 1, 1.). His dissolution is looked for *hourly* (ib.). I see thy beauty gradually unfold, *Daily* and *hourly* more and more (TENNYNS. p. 81.). Mr. Oxley largely increased, and *finally* doubled, his original offer (WARREN, Now a. Then 1.) &c. The transfer of the adverbs of place *here* and *there*, particularly in the compound *heretofore*, *theretofore*, *hereafter*, *thereafter*, *thereon*, *whereupon* and the like, to the sphere of time is analogous to other transfers of relations of space to time: The prisoner *here* made violent efforts to rise and speak (WARREN, Now a. Then 3.). I'll be wise *hereafter* (SHAKSP., Temp. 5, 1.). Nor can it be exactly said to have contained any wise precept *theretofore* unknown to mankind (DICKENS, Chuzzlew. 1, 3.). Long time he stared upon me like a man Astounded: *thereon* fell upon my neck (COLER., Picc. 1, 3.). This was cast upon the board *whereupon* Rose feud (TENNYNS. p. 101.). Once, slipping the money clandestinely . . he slipt it not into her hand but on the floor, and another had it; *whereupon* the poor monk. coming to know it, looked mere despair for some days (CARL., Past a. Pres. 2, 6.). So far as a few adverbs of time, combining sentences, become conjunctions, they are to be particularly mentioned hereafter.

The determinations of when, with its various modifications, have in time and under the influence of Romance adverbs, been amplified, while a few Germanic ones are becoming obsolete in Modern-English. The pronominal adverbs of time have, with the abandonment of *tho*, long preserved in Old-English, which is also contained in the compound *nuthe*, *nouthe*, become incomplete Old-Engl.: *þeonne* beoð heo over alle oþre leoveast to ure loverde (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel Ant. I. 66.). *Thanne* ne seo we noȝt of hire (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 133.). Next the mone the fur is hext . . Their (= the eir) is *thanne* byneth the next (p. 134.). *When* alle mens corne was fayre in feld *Then* was myne not worthe on eld (TOWN. M. p. 10.). Ac *þo* vel he in sykness (R. or GL. I. 251.). The mysserule þat me *tho* endureð (DEPOS. or RICH. II. p. 2.). That lyved *tho* there and lyve yit (P. FLOUGH. p. 319.). Thus farith al the world *nuthe* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 202.). Myn hond scapith he nought *nouthe* (ALIS. 7747.). And mai beo *nouthe* her and ther (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 134.). That sholde as well as he couth Us have holpe and saved *nouth* (RICH. C. DE L. 2403.). Halssax.: *ponne* he to Trinouant wende *penne* seide he to Wendoleine etc. (LAJAM. I. 101.). *Wonne* þu comest to þon cnihten . . þu heom clepe to (I. 31.). *þa* dude he an offer (I. 288.). *þa* com his broðer sune (I. 292.). *þæ* com þe færliche dæd (I. 191.). *Nuðe* we scullen wepen *þæ* ær richen weoren (III. 216.). Cuð hit is me *noupe* (I. 147.). Anglosax.: *ponne* cveðe ic tō hym etc. (MATH. 7. 23.). Ðā frýnd þe hine ær for þam velan lufað, þā gevitad eft mid þam velan and veordað *ponne* tō feondum (BOETH. 29.). *Hvænne* bið he æcenned? (A.-S. HOMIL. I. 136.) Cvædon, *hvonne* ær he beo deað ðððe *hvænne* his nama onspringe (Ps. 40. 5.). *þa* vās gevorden, *þa* se Hælend þās vord geendode, *þa* vundrode þæt folc his lāre (MATH. 7. 28.). Hlýstað me nu *þa* (EV. NICOD. 22.). Ðās laga . . þe se cyninge hæfd nu

pá eallon mannon forgifen (Lægg. Cnut. I. B. 80.). In Anglosaxon *pá þonne* were to near to each other that the subsequent transfer to one of them of the meanings of both cannot surprise us. Other adverbs of time, still in use in Modern-English, but in part obsolete, were formerly in frequent use. Old-Engl.: *þis lond þe ich nu of speke*, is *þat mennisse þe nu liveð* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 129). *Nou* hath prude the pris in everuche plawe (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 153.). As gode is swynden *anon* as so for to swynke (p. 152.). Ac me ne hureth hit noȝt *anon*, for hit so fur is (Pop. Treat. p. 135.). Theȝ Adam . . hadde bi-gonne *anon*, Tho he was furst y-maked, toward hevene gon . . He nadde noȝt *gut* to hevene i-come (p. 134.). And had nought *yet* y-wedded wiue (LAY LE FREINE 248.). Thei curteisai wes ever god And *zet* shal be (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 5.). Ich wille bringen him *zet* to dai (p. 12.). He may hym change *sone anon* (HALLIW., Freemas. 189.). Sottes bolt is *sone* shote (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 111.). *Sodeynly* ther sourdid selcouthe thingis (DEPOS. OF RICH. II. p. 1.). Al that *whilom* was murthe, is turned to treis and tene (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 340.). Hwo se haveð eni unpeau of þeo ȝet ich *er* nemde (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 67.). *Aȝen* he made kynges, þat kynges *er* were (R. OF GL. I. 272.). Thanne gan bleiken here ble, that *arst* lowen so loude (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 341.). So that child withdraweth is hond From the fur ant the broud, That hath *byfore* bue brend (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 113.). So can God make wane ther *rathere* was won (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 341.) [*rather* stands here in the sense of time]. Let lust overgon, *eft* hit shal the lyke (I. 110.). Drynk *eft* lasse, ant go by lyhte bom (I. 116.). *Eft* from the most ancient times has also the meaning of *again*: To fordon it on o day, And in thre dayes *after* Edifie it *eft* newe (P. PLOUGHM. p. 371.). Al þys byuel *afterward* (R. OF GL. I. 284.). Me were levere then ani fe That he hevede *enes* leien bi me, And *eftsones* bi-gunne (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 11.). Wynter thundre me schal *selde* god iseo (Pop. Treat. p. 135.). Binimeð hem *hwile* oref, *hwile* oðer ahte, and *hwile* her hele (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 128.). Wel oȝt wes Leir wa (R. OF GL. I. 146.). *Ofte* rap reweth (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 115.). One's kunrede pen oper *suppe* slou (R. OF GL. I. 284.). *Seppe* hap Engeland ybe ywerred *ylome* Of þe folk of Denemark (I. 3.). That so manye scholde have entred so *newely*, and so manye *newely* slayn (MARDEY. p. 284.) &c. Halfsax.: Eul neh þan ilke stude par Rome *nou* stondeð (LAJAM. I. 6.). For *nuzzu* iss bulaxe sett Rihht to þe treowwess rote (ORM. 9281. cf. 9935. 9956. 13590. and else where) [*nuzzu* seems to answer to the Anglosax. *nu-giū*, *geō*, *jū*, Goth. *ju*, *iū*, Old-Fr. *iu*, although this compound does not occur in Anglosaxon]. He heo *pa* *zete* nefde noht biwunnen (LAJAM. II. 439.). Heore streon wass Drihhtin leof *zet* ær itt wære streonedd (ORM. 733.). Annd *zet* he seȝde puss till himm (803.). Godess enngell seȝde þær Off Sannt Johan *zet* mare (780.). Þatt tu nart noht *zet* In heoffne (7951.). & *unan forð* rihles somneden heore cnihtes (LAJAM. II. 439.). *Sone anan* se piss wass seȝd (ORM. 3368.). Þa quen þær efter *sone* ænne sune hefde (LAJAM. I. 9.). Seȝde puss Till Zacariȝe *eft sone* (ORM. 203.). Þær þær he seȝde himm self *whilum* þurh piss propheteas tunge (4868.). Þatt word tatt ær wass cwiddedd (282.). Mærlin heom gon ræren also heo stoden ærer (LAJAM. II. 307 sq.). & þus ærest sæide in Ænglene londe (II. 174.). *Ærst* heo lette fleon to . . stanes heo letten seoððen (III. 94.). Swa summ icc habbe shæwedd her *Biforenn* o piss lare (ORM. 10952.). Þus heo *pa* ispcken & *eft* hit to-breken (LAJAM. I. 138.). *Seȝen* heo was leodena puene (I. 7.). *Zet* niss noht lanng *sippenn* (ORM. 12579.). *Selde* he aswint þe to him seolue þenched (II. 328.). Arrchelaw þe king þær munnde cumenn *seldenn* (ORM. 3467.). *Ofte* heo ræsdenn (LAJAM. I. 27.). He *dazzyhamlike* sahh þe laff-

di; Sannte Marje (ORM. 2119.) &c. Anglosax.: Hvæt is eov nu gepuht? (MATH. 26, 65.) Eorðvall þone man nu tō dæg sceávjān mæg (BEDA 1 12.). Ne pearft þu þe ondrædan . . feorh-cvealm nu giet (CAEDM 1033.) *Giſ* he leofað (GEN. 43, 28.). *Gif* þu þæt *giſ* dōn nelt (EXOD. 9, 2.). Þeah þe he *pā gyt* on þære menniscnyſſe unsprecende være (A.-S. HOMIL. I. 142.). His tid ne com nā *gyt* (JOH. 7, 30.). þā geſægdon Rōmāne on *ān* Brittum þæt hī nō mā ne mihton . . svā gevinfullicum fyrdum svencte beon (BEDA 1, 12.) [the conception of *on ān*, properly in *unum*, comp.: þātte brōður on *ān* begen hicgen Ps. 132, 1., as a particle of time, is justified by Hallsaxon]. Hī *sōna* við heora feōndum gefuhton (BEDA 1, 12.). *Sōna* āfter þara daga gedrēfydnisse, seō sunne byð forsvoren (MATH. 24, 29.). Hit *hvilum* punrað, *hvilum* nā ne onginð (BOETH. 39, 3.). Onlice þam micclan fōde þe *giu* on Noes dagum vās (16, 1.). Se ealda man Symeon þe ve ær ymbe spræcon (A.-S. HOMIL. I. 142.). Gelæste hit him georne ær *ōddon āft* (LEGG. ÆTHELR IV. 9.). *Ær* *ōd-*don āfter (V. 16.). þā ic hēr *ærest* com (CAEDM, 2705.). *Siððan eft* gevāt *ōðre siðre* (ANDR. 706.). Vundrað þās þe hit *seldost* gesiðð (BOETH. 39, 3.). Svā hit sviðe *seldan* gevyrð (16, 1.). Cynevulf *oft* miclum gefeohtum gefeaht við Britvealum (SAX. CHR. 755.). God hēt *gelōmlīce* þās fugelas offerjan on his lāce (A.-S. HOMIL. I. 142.). And bād āt Gode *dāghvamlīce* (I. 136.) &c. — The transfer of the particles *here*, *there* to this sphere of time has long been customary. Old-Engl.: We schul *here āftur* in þis boke telle of al þis wo (R. of GL. I. 3.). *Here-to-fore* ye haveth herd Of theο kyngis ost how hit ferd (ALIS. 6018.). It mon us avaylle *Here after* ward som day (TOWN. M. p. 231.) þe kyng lette bryng *per āftur* Hengist bi fore hym sone (R. of GL. I. 141.). þat an old hous was þo Of tuo hondred ȝer and seuentȝ yrerd *per byuore* (I. 280.). Hallsax.: þis word com to Rome *her āfter* ful sone (LAȜAM. II. 19.). Þa ilomp hit seoððe sone *par āfter* (I. 137 sq.). Even in Hallsaxon *hēr* is used of time, with regard to the preceding number of the year: *Anno III Hēr* svealt Herodes (SAX. CHR. 3.). An. XI. *Hēr* onfeng Herodes Antipatres sunu tō rice (11.) &c. *Þær* also approaches to the meaning of *þonne* in sentences like: Ac *þær*, *þær* hī gōde beoð, þonne beoð hī purh þās gōdan mannes gōd gōde (BOETH. 16, 3.), with which comp. Hallsax.: Off whamm I space . . *þær þær* I seȝde þatt an mann *Åfter* me cumenn sholde (ORM. 12578.).

The formation *therewhile* = at the same time, which extends into Modern-English, is remarkable: I wil goe in, and pray the Gods *therwhile* (GASCOYNE, Jocasta 1, 1.). Anglosax. *pā while*, often in the combination *pā hvile þe* = dum, donec. Hallsax.: *patt while* (ORM. 142.). Middle-Highdutch: *der wile*, Modern-Highdutch *derweile*.

To *anon* used of time, seems to belong *anan*, *anon*, particularly popular in the North of England, by which understood questions or assertions are repeated, to express defective understanding: "Poor child, in what a den you have been brought up!" — "*Anan*, Sir?" — "She don't understand me." (BULW., Maltrav. 1, 4.) In the combination *ever and anon*: And *ever and anon* they made a doubt Presence majestic would put him out (SHAKSP., Love's L. L. 5, 2.), may be contained a recollection of the ancient meaning (*continually*), which likewise formerly belonged to *anon*. Comp. Hallsax.: Fowwertri; dāðhess aȝz onnan Bi dāðhess, annd bi nahhtess? (ORM. 11331.).

- β) Since when? or from when? according to the analogy of other tongues, is also denoted by the forms belonging to adverbs of place.

Hence-forward I am ever ruled by you (SHAKSP., Rom. a. Jul. 4, 2.). We will not part *Hence-forth*, if death be not division

(SHELLEY III. 99.). A fortnight *thence* (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 6, 7.). From one point of view *since* is also to be referred hither.

We may refer combinations of *here* and *there* with prepositions to determinations of this sort, since in point of fact the point to reckon from is denoted by these adverbs, although the interest is not so decisively directed to this as the starting point. The reference of the abovenamed particles to time is old. Halfsax.: *Beo heonne uorð also hit mæi* (LAJAM. III. 297.). Anglosax.: *Ænig man heonan forð cyrican ne þeovige* (LEGG, ÆTHELR. IV. 16.). *He ne þrōvað heonan-forð næfre eft* (A.-S. HOMIL. I. 150.).

- γ) The adverbs denoting how long? are as little numerous as those above cited, and touch the idea of the simple when? Where Until when? is considered, the adverb of place also appears.

All *hitherto* goes well (SHAKSP., III Henry VI. 4, 2.).

With respect to the affirmative and negative adverbs referred to a time in its whole extent, it is to be observed that they are still mostly found in the oldest forms, as also that the term *ever* is referred, not merely to the line of time in its whole extent, but also to a point of time within it.

Let this pernicious hour Stand *aye* accursed in the calendar! (SHAKSP., Macb. 4, 1.). I *evermore* did love you, Hermia (Mids. N. Dr. 3, 2.). Like the Spartans, dwelling *evermore* in a camp (BULW., Caxtons 4, 2.). Thou wast *ever* an obstinate heretic (SHAKSP., Much Ado 1, 1.). The Mayor is *ever* preaching morality to the youngsters (COOP., Spy 9.). Shall Banquo's issue *ever* Reign in this kingdom? (SHAKSP., Macb. 4, 1.). Lorenzo! hast thou *ever* weigh'd a sigh? (YOUNG, N. Th. 5, 516.). Did *ever now* one pair of shoulders Carry such waggon-loads of impudence Into a gentleman's drawing-room? (BULW., Richel. 2, 1.). What are all the printers that *ever* lived, and all the books they ever printed, to one wrong to thy fine heart? (Caxtons 3, 4.). The needy shall not *always* be forgotten (Ps. 9, 18.). He *always* takes his first rest before he comes away (DOUGL. JERROLD, Bubbles 1, 1.). That will *never* be (SHAKSP., Macb. 4, 1.). Will the dawn *never* visit us? (TALF., Ion 1, 1.). For the employment of *never* and *no* see the Adverbs of the Sentence.

The application of the local *hither* to time is offered by the Old-Engl.: From that time *hidre* (MAUNDEV. p. 44.).

The old forms for *ever* and *never* are employed correspondingly: Loke also thou make no bere, but *ay* to be yn thy prayere (HALLIW., Freemas. 623.). So that *evere mo* Half the urthe the sonne bi-schyneth, hou so it *evere* go (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 132.). *Ever* the furthe peni mot to the kynge (Polit. S. p. 149.). Scheo weopith, and syngeth weil-a-way, That scheo *ever* abod that day (ALIS. 1051.). Ac, *allegate*, the kynges Losen ten ageyns on in werrynges (6094.). *Algate* by sleighte or by violence Fro yer to yer I wynne my despence (CHAUC., C. T. 7013.). Tell thou *never* thy fo-mon Shome ne teone that the is on (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 111.). Trichen shalt thou *never more* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 69.). I herde *never er* sweche a noyse *now* i-wys (Cov. MIST. p. 392.). Halfsax.: He wulde . . . æ to his liue hire willen idriȝen (LAJAM. I. 54.). Crist shall rixlenn aȝȝ occ aȝȝ (ORM. 2263.). Bi patt all-tarr stodenn a patt folklæss haliȝdomæss (1688.). *Æfer* he heom leide on (LAJAM. I. 24.). Heore cun wunede þære seotðen *æwere mare* (II. 19.).

Þat is muchel un-riht *þif æuere* æi god cniht wule his godliche cun bute gulte aquellen (I. 374.). *Næfre ma* ne shall he ben O nane wise fyledd (Orm. 4206.). Anglosax.: He sæde unc svá hit siððan á eóde (Gen. 41, 13.). He vās æfre God of þam Fāder æcenned (A.-S. HOMIL. I. 150.). Gif þu me æfre álfst, ic þe andette on mycelre gesamnunge and þe þær hērige (Ps. 34, 18.). Ðā eorðe velan þeah hī ealne veg eovre sin ne þincð eov nō þý raðor heora genōh (BORTH. 13.). Ic vāt þāt þu me *synle* gehyrst (Joh. 11, 42.). Ne geseó ge hig *næfre mā* (Exod. 14, 13.).

The employment of *ever* in generalizing and concessive sentences, which rests upon the double relation of that adverb, for which the way was paved in Anglosaxon, is to be illustrated with the Concessive Sentence.

- c) Adverbs of the kind and of manner in the widest sense (see Vol. I. p. 387.) are developed into numerous forms of various kinds. The present occasion for only a few observations as to Syntax.

- a) The interrogative and demonstrative pronouns *how*, *thus* and *so* are of syntactical interest. They not only determine single parts of speech, but also share the nature of the adverbs of place etymologically related to them, by being, like these, adapted to take the place of pronouns. Hence they also represent predicative and objective determinations of the sentence, for which interrogative and demonstrative pronouns might be substituted, and with which they sometimes interchange.

how, originally identical with *why*, Anglosaxon *hvi*, *hvy*, *hú*, answers, as distinguished from it, to the meanings In what manner? In what degree? whereas *why* is mainly reserved for the causal domain. It stands in the direct and indirect question, which assumes in emotion the nature of an exclamation.

How lost you company? (SHAKSP., Oth. 1, 1.) *How* little they, who think aught great below? (YOUNG, N. Th. 6, 815.) *How* many years is't (BYRON, Manfr. 3, 3.). *How* are the mighty fallen! (2. SAM. 1, 8.) *How* art thou call'd? (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 5, 1.) *How* is she call'd? (BEN JONS., Cynth. Rev. 2, 1.) My dear Scrooge, *how* are you? (DICKENS, Christm. Car. 1) *How* is this? (TAYLOR A. READE, Masks 1, 1.) I cannot tell *how* the truth may be (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 2, 22.). *How* say you, Cassio? (SHAKSP., Oth. 1, 1.) *How* say you? we have slept (TENNYNS. p. 319.). *How* does lieutenant Cassio? (SHAKSP., Oth. 4, 1.) *How* d'ye do, sir John? (BULW., Money 2, 5.) It stands elliptically: *How*, sir? (DOUGL. JERROLD, Prison. of W. 1, 2); often in combination with *now*: *How now?* what means death in this rude assault? (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 5, 5.) "*How now then?*" — "A despatch is at the door." (COLER., Picc. 3, 2.) *How how* interchanges with *what*, especially in the predicative relation and elliptically see Vol. II. 1. p. 42. 49. *How*, formerly in use, is confounded with *why* in combination with *so*: "I pray you pause." — "*Why so?*" (BYR., Manfr. 3, 3.) "The Swedish chancellor . . Who says, you've tired him out, and that he'll have No further dealings with you." — "And *why so?*" (COLER., Picc. 1, 10.).

The older English language extends *how* as widely as Modern-English. Old-Engl.: Lo! þauh *huu* he meneð him bi Jeremie (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 65.). *How* thanne may a prist pleyn in entirlodies? (II. 47.). Heris thou not *how* I cry (TOWN. M. p. 9.). *How* long wilt thou

me appech With thy sermonyng? (p. 10.) Sire Jakes de Seint Poul y-herde *how* hit was (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 189.). Loke *how* it is (CHAUC., C. T. 3433.). *How* sayst thou, dame? (OCTOUIAN 786.) *How* says thou that? (TOWN. M. p. 65.) *How* thynk ye by this? (p. 243) It stands elliptically in calling and shouting, also in combination with *what*: *How!* Pike-harnes, *how!* com heder belife! (TOWN. M. p. 9. cf. 17.) What Nicholas! *What how*, man, loke adoun (CHAUC., C. T. p. 3477. cf. 3437.), and otherwise: *How now?* this wold I were told in towne (TOWN. M. p. 250.), for which *what* also occurs: "Gossip," quod the wolf; *wat nou?* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 277.), and in combination with *so*: "I am in poynt for to be shent" — "*How so*, for Mahownes myght?" (p. 136.), comp.: Harrow, dewille, *how swa* gat he away? (p. 264.) *What* is moreover often used with reference to a predicative adjective: *What* I was *wode!* (FROMYD. 877.) Alas! *what* I am *wo?* (TOWN. M. p. 79.) Comp.: *So wo* is me! (Cov. MYST. p. 396.) A, *what* I am *light* as lynde! (TOWN. M. p. 80.) In former times the adverb was of more limited application and did not represent the predicative and objective case. Half-sax.: *Heu* jare wes hit iwurðen etc. (LAȜAM. I. 374.). Iseih his broðer ferden *hu* heo iuaren weren (I. 24.). Heo iherde suggen . . . *hu* ofte Mordred flah (III. 137.). Icc wile shæwenn þu . . . *Hu* mikell god teȝ lærenn þu (ORM. 251.). Anglosax.: *Hú* mæg he? (GEN. 29, 6.) *Hú* lange vylt þu beon me ungehirsum? (Ps. 30, 21.) And æxode hine *hú* eald he være (GEN. 47, 8.). *Hú* micel and *hú* manigfeald is seó mycelnes þinre svæt-nesse! (Ps. 30, 21.) *Hú* sometimes interchanges with *hwy?* *Hvi* ne synt ve müðfreó? *hú* ne móton ve sprecaþ þæt ve villað? (Ps. 11, 4.) and the subsequent *how so?*, for which the modern language presents *why so?*, answers to. *Hvy* svá? (THORPE, Anal. p. 61.) Comp. Modern-Highdutch *Wie so?* Middle-Highdutch *Wiest uns sus* geschehen? (PARZ. 125, 19.), in which the *how?* borders on the *why?*

thus, Anglosax. *pus*, Middle-Highdutch *sus*, Lowdutch *dus* (*sus*) and *so*, Anglosax. *svá*, Old-Fr. Old-Highduth *só*, Old-French *sá*, *só*, Swed. *så*, Danish *saa*, point to a manner of activity sensuously exhibitable or verbally represented, which may also be regarded as a determination of degree. Both may also take the place of a predicative or objective determination, and be so far regarded as the substitute for a demonstrative pronoun.

In the modern language the phonetically stronger *thus*, which has remained genuinely demonstrative, has been more restricted to the sensuously perceptible or more particularly denoted manner of activity, mostly committing to *so* the determination of the adjective and adverb, as well as the reference back to a predicative and objective determination. *Thus* also, though rarely, appears, as the correlative of a modal sentence with *as*.

Thus we lived several years in a state of much happiness (GOLDSM., Vic. 1.). *Thus* Alice was convinced (BULW., Maltrav. 4, 5.). *Thus* was I baffled in every attempt to obtain a permanent source of support (WARREN, Diary 1, 1.). Who that has such a home to return to, as your Honour, would travel *thus* about the country like a vagabond? (FIELD., T. Jon. 12, 3.) It is employed with demonstrative emphasis to determine adjectives and adverbs: When he was a crack not *thus* high (SHAKSP., II Henry IV. 3, 2.). It is his policy To haste *thus* fast, to find us unprovided (III Henry VI. 5, 4.). I cannot see that our affairs Are grown *thus* desperate (ADDIS., Cato 2, 1.). *Thus* far

I'm sure thou 'rt in the right (BUTL., Hud. 3, 1, 1404.). *Suffer ye thus far* (LUKE, 22, 51.). *Thus far*, nor farther (YOUNG, N. Th. 6, 796.). It sometimes takes the place of a predicative complement: I was not always *thus* (BULW., Richel. 1, 2.); it takes that of the object in sentences which seem originally to require such: The subtle Fiend . . . *thus* answer'd smooth (MILT., P. L. 2, 815.). *Thus* saying, from her side the fatal key . . . she took (2, 871.); elliptically: T'whom Satan turning boldly, *thus* (2, 968.). As, not long after *thus* he did; For . . . *thus* he writ (BUTL., Hud. 3, 3, 786.). — The interchange of *thus* and *so* is found in many passages: Your son did *thus* and *thus*, Your brother *thus*; *so* fought the noble Douglas (SHAKSP., II Henry IV. 1, 1.). *Thus* did Noah; according to all that God commanded him, *so* did he (GEN. 6, 22.). They sometimes form an opposition: So spake the godlike Power, and *thus* our Sire (MILT., P. L. 8, 249.). *So* Adam, and *thus* Eve to him reply'd (9, 960.), where *so* points to the preceding, *thus* to the following. The interchange has sometimes another motive: Was there ever *so* prosperous an invention, *thus* unluckily perverted? (BEN JONS., Cynth. Rev. 3, 2.) Why *so* eager for the strife of the sacred Tomb, has he *thus* tarried at Constantinople (BULW., Pilgrims.); in which *thus* points to a relation of fact, whereas *so* expresses the determination of kind and of degree. *Thus* is also met with pleonastically: Thy spirit within thee hath been *so* at war, And *thus* hath *so* bestirr'd thee in thy sleep, That beads of sweat have stood upon thy brow (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 2, 3.). Comp. above *as* . . . *thus* he did. *Thus* and *sea* is dialectical, that is, *so*, *so*, *indifferently* (CRAVEN DIAL. II. 205.). Comp. Middle-Highdutch *Swie er mohte sus* and *sô* (FRAUEND. f. 100, 113.).

Webster explains *thus much* by *this much*, which Wagner Gram. p. 364 points out in passages of Byron, as: *This much*, however, I may add, her years were ripe. Northern dialects do indeed use *thus* as a pronoun and adverb, as *thur* for *thir* in the plural of the pronoun, and the modern literary language sometimes writes *thus* for *this*: *Thus* passeth my braynes (THESSYTES p. 65. sec. XVI.). Yet in *thus much* the determination of *much* by the adverb is, in a syntactical respect, as little remarkable as in *so much*.

Thus is found in all the relations above specified in the more and most ancient times. Old-Engl.: *Thus* me pileth the pore (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 150.), *Thus* wil walketh in lond (ib). *Thus* this folke hem mened (P. PLOUGHM. p. 117.). Sche was *thus* chaunged and transformed, from a fayr damysele, in to lyknesse of a dragoun (MAUNDEV. p. 23.). Betere me were ded, Then *thus* alyve to be (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 122.). *Thus* thynk me (TOWN. M. p. 151.). *Þe þus* said on the holie boc (WRIGHT A. HALLIW. I. 131.). *þus* cveþende (I. 130.). *Thus* Abraham me taughte (P. PLOUGHM. p. 355.). *Thus* we carpeth for the kyng (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 149.). *So* and *thus* often stand pleonastically alongside of each other: A starne *thus*, aboute mydnyght, So bright shynand (TOWN. M. p. 124.). He wolde not ellys for bym *thus* wepe *so* (Cov. MYST. p. 235.). *Thus* also appears as a correlative of *as*: For *as* sche says *thus* have Y wroght (SIR AMADAS 193.). Halfsax.: *þus* Arður heom dihte (LAWAM. III. 1.). *þus* hæfð Modred idon (III. 123.). *Swa* he dude and *þus* hit wes (I. 116.). *þus* dude Elidur þe king bi allen peos

eorlen (I. 288.). *pus* Arður him seide (III. 13.). He seȝðe *pus* till himm (ORM. 803.). It is also strengthened by *al* like *swa*: *Al pus* hit was iwroht *alse* þe king hit hadde idiht (LAȜAM. II. 324. modern text.). *All þuss* iss þatt hallȝe Goddspell . . . Nemnedd Amminadabess wazȝn (ORM. Pr. 73 cf. 93.). Anglosax.: *pus* unc gedafnað ealle rihtvisnesse gefyllan (MATH. 3, 15.). Lætað *pus* (LUC. 22, 51.), Gr. *ἔατε ἕως τοῦτοῦ*. It here often serves to determine adjectives and adverbs: Ic næfre þe, þeoden leofesta, pyslicne ær gemette *pus* mēðne (COD. EXON. 162, 36.). *Ærost vās Alle . . . þe pus* micel rice hæfde (SAX. CHR. 827.). Synd ge *pus* ungleawe? (MARC. 7, 18.). Ðāt ve sceoldon *pus* gerāde mid stānum oftorfjan (JOH. 8, 5.). Lēton ealles þeodscipes gesvinc *pus* leōhtlice forvurðan (SAX. CHR. 1003.); comp. Middle-Highdutch *Sus* grōzen zorn (IWEIN 5, 15.). It also serves instead of a predicative complement: *pus* vās Cristes cneores (MATH. 1, 18.). *pus* hie vāron genemde: Dubstane and Maccebeū etc. (SAX. CHR. 891.). It is often added to verbs of the predicate: And *pus* cvað (LUC. 17, 6, 19. cf. 8, 1. Boeth 23.). Sume . . . *pus* sædon him (MARC. 11, 5.). Hvi spycð þes *pus*? (2, 7.). Comp. Middle-Highdutch: *Sus* antworts (NIBEL. 5024.). Old-English has the compound *thusgates*. Is he *thus-gates* from us went (TOWN. M. p. 264.). Whene he saw his cuntree *thu-gates* be destroyed (MS in Halliw. v.).

So associates itself with all adverbially determinable parts of speech. We have to consider it more particularly as a correlative in the doctrine of the joining of sentences, where we also have to discuss the strengthened form *also* and its weakening down into *as*. We may here particularly mention a few relations which have gained a wide extension in the language.

It is frequently added to the verb *be* in the place of the predicative or adverbial complement: *So* is my will (MILT., P. L. 3, 184.). A messenger! It must be *so* (ADDIS., Rosam. 1, 4.). Say he's dead! Is it not *so*? (LONGF. II. 16.) Hence perhaps elliptically: "Has Cæsar shed more Roman blood?" — "*Not so*" (ADDIS., Cato 4, 4.). "And the last left the scene when Chatham died." — "*Not so* — the virtue still adorns our age." (COWP. p. 10.) "Is that a name thou hast been taught to fear?" said Adrian; "*if so*, I will forswear it" (BULW., Rienzi 1, 6.), although similar ellipses also admit another complement. The references back to adjectives, participles and substantives, which are taken up by *so*, are numerous: My son is either married, or going to be *so* (GOLDSM., G. Nat. M. 5.). "Were you related then to Birch." — "I thought we were as good as *so*" (COOP., Spy 11.). His step was light, for his heart was *so* (ROGERS, It., Marcolini). If life be short, not *so* to many of us are its days and its hours (FOR. Trav.). His right arm is bare, *So* is the blade of his scimitar (BYR., Siege 22.). He is Sir Robert's son; and *so* art thou (SHAKSP., Iohn 1, 1.). The blest to-day is as completely *so*, As who began a thousand years ago (POPE, Essay on M. 1, 75.). While the bailiff (for *so* he was) spoke thus, his followers surrounded the prisoner (SMOLLET, R. Rand 23.). This is likewise the case with adverbial determinations: "You're up very early, Mr. Nickleby." — "*So* are you," replied Nicholas (DICKENS, Nickleby 1, 5.). — The contents, or object of the perceiving, thinking, predicating and doing &c., is often expressed by a *so* referring back: *So* I have heard whispered

(BULW., *Maltrav.* 4, 5.). I told him that I thought *so* (TROLL., *Framl. Parson.* 2, 15.). Whosoever therefore shall break one of these least commands, and shall teach men *so* etc. (MATTH. 5, 19.). Say'st thou me *so*? (SHAKSP., *Henry V.* 4, 4.). How can you say *so*? (BOURCIC., *Lond. Assur.* 1, 1.). *So* spake the grisly Terror, and in shape, *So* speaking and *so* threat'ning, grew ten-fold More dreadful (MILT., *P. L.* 2, 704.). I'll answer with my life for his behaviour; *so* tell the governor (SOUTHERN, *Oroon.* 2, 3.). Away with me in post to Ravensburg; But if you faint as fearing to do *so*, Stay, and be secret (SHAKSP., *Rich. II.* 2, 1.). The captain of the Lord's host said unto Joshua; Loose thy shoe . . . And Joshua did *so* (*Josh.* 5, 15.). This *so* therefore stands near to *it* and interchanges with it: "I thought *so* — I thought *it*," interrupted Templeton (BULW., *Maltrav.* 6, 5.). To please the king I did; to please myself, I cannot do *it* (SHAKSP., *Rich. II.* 2, 2.). *So* therefore points back to a substantive object already named: They know, your grace hath cause, and means, and might; *So* hath your highness (SHAKSP., *Henry V.* 1, 2.). "But she had a large heart!" — "*So* she had." (DICKENS, *Christm. Car.* 2.). He is decemvir, and we made him *so* (SHERID., *Knowles, Virgin* 1, 1.). — In various elliptical forms of expression *so* points to homogeneousness with the objects or determinations previously named; for instance, in *and so forth*: 'Twould make clean shoes, and in the earth Set leeks and onions, *and so forth* (BUTL., *Hud.* 1, 1, 385.). With *or so* the correction of a qualitative or quantitative determination is introduced, and this denoted as an approximate one: I will take occasion of sending one of my suits to the tailor's, to have the pocket repaired, *or so* (BEN JONS., *Ev. Man out of his Hum.* 1, 1.). I am not against toying and trifling with a customer, in the way of business, or to get out a secret *or so* (GAY, *Begg. Op.* 1, 1.). My joints are somewhat stiff *or so* (TENNYS. p. 319.). A week *or so*, will probably reconcile us (GAY, *Begg. Op.* 2, 1.). I can ride out of the way, and never miss a day *or so* for good company (SCOTT, *R. Roy* 4.). Mr. Noggs who had stepped out for a minute *or so* to the public-house (DICKENS, *Nickleby* 1, 4.). The correction is, as it were, fixed by *so*, although this is only an empty sign for what is understood or unknown, with which may be compared the form *so so* = indifferently. With this may finally be connected the determination of degree by *so* with adjectives and adverbs, when the measure, as presupposed, is suppressed, and a measure of arbitrary size is presented to the mind: Hath sorrow struck *So* many blows upon this face of mine, And made no deeper wounds? (SHAKSP., *Rich. II.* 4, 1.). I am *so* very glad you have come (DICKENS, *Chuzzlew.* 1, 3.). I think I remember something of it . . . but not much. It's *so* long ago (*Battle of Life* 2.). Such expressions are distinguished from references backwards like: The song was moral, and *so* far was right (COWP. p. 17.). "It is full four miles" — "*So* far." (BULW., *Maltrav.* 1, 1.).

The individual forms of usage may be pursued far back. The connec-

tion of the adverb with *be* is very common in Old-English, also with immediate reference to an adjective or substantive: It is unsavory . . . *So* is mannes soule (P. PLOUGHM. p. 321.). Sory were the folk Englysch . . . *So* was al the Crystene folk eke (RICH. C. DE L. 3035.). To hardy man wel ofte is foole . . . *So* had the kyng y-ben neigh (ALIS. 5903.). Ye ealle me master, and lord by name, Ye say fulle welle, for *so* I am (TOWN. M. p. 181.). It bese not *so* (p. 16.). Halfsax.: Unwis is þe king, *swa* beoð his cnihtes (LAȜAM. II. 259.). Cristine we beoð . . . and ure elderne *swa* weoren (III. 194.). Ða wes Walwain lute child, *swa* wes þe oðer (II. 509.). Anglosax.: *Svá* bið feonda þeáv. (COD. EXON. 136, 9.). Hit vās *svá* (BOETH. 36, 6.). Ac hit nās nā *svá* (SAX. CHR. 1051.). Hit ne mǣg nā *svá* beón (EXON. 10, 11.). Even here the reference to preceding predicative determinations is not wanting: Se forma dæg bið hālig, and se seofða byð eall *svá* (EXON. 12, 16.). — With transitive as with intransitive verbs we find *so* with a reference backward to substantive objects Old-Engl.: Heo no koupe of no fikelýng, and ne ondsweerde not *so* (R. OF GL. I. 30.). þis world is cleped sǣ, þe floweð and ebbweð *swa* doð ec þis world (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 128.). Love, why dostow *so*? (I. 167.). The word shal springen of him into Coloyne, *So* hit shal to Acres and into Sesoyne (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 191.). "I luf you ay." — "So I do thee." (TOWN. M. p. 40.). "And shall be slayn?" — "So have I het." (p. 39.). It was wont to be clept Collos; and *so* callen hit the Turks ȝit (MACNDEV. p. 26.). Halfsax.: *Swo* hit wolde godd (LAȜAM. I. 7.). Þe king præted Brutun, *swa* he dude Assaracun (I. 22.). Frolle he sloh is iua, *swa* he wulle us alle do (III. 3.). Anglosax.: *Svá* se Hælend unc beað (MARC. 11. 6.). Ðā se Hælend . . . oncnēov, þāt hig *svá* betveox him þohton (2, 8.). Se þe tōvyrpō ān of pysum lāstum bebodum, and þā men *svá* lærð (MATH. 5, 19.). He þā *svá* dyde (SAX. CHR. 853.). — Elliptic sentences with *so* are to be met with here and there. Old-Engl.: "I go to by shepe." — "Nay, not *so*" (TOWN. M. p. 86.), here belongs *how so*; quoted at p. 111. Anglosaxon also: *For hvī svā?* (THORPE, Anal. p. 107.). — With adjectives and adverbs *so* often stands without any specified measure: We that come *so* late after Adam and Eve (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 134.). Of the Freynsshe-men that were *so* proude and bolde (Polit. S. p. 187.). His leman *so* fair and hend (LAY LE FREINE 396.). Gromes overe-growe *so* many grette maistris (DEPOS. OF RICH. II. p. 26.). We that were angels *so* fare, And sat *so* hie (TOWN. M. p. 4.). Even in Anglosaxon *svá* as well as *þus* is often employed with adjectives without any reference backwards: Ne gemette ic *svá* mycelne geleāfan on Israhel (MATH. 8. 10.). Hvī synt *svá* manige mīnra feonda þe me svencað? (Ps. 3, 1.) Hvī forlæte þu me *svá* feor mīnre hælo? (21, 1.).

A pleonastic *so* is peculiar to the older language, especially in narrative: At Mede *so* bigynneth Yude (ALIS 4825.). The quene of her londe *so* is A damoyssel of mychel prys (4920.). The wisest in that *so* was Katoun (SEYNS SAGES 340.). Amideward that gardyn fre *So* wax a pin-note-tre (557.). Crist, y-cleped hevene lomb, *so* com to seynt Jon (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 87.). Now Jhesu Crist *so* be with you (CHACCC., C. T. 4738.). This *so* is assimilated to the Old-French *si*: Car li levriers par verite *Si* as vostre enfant estrangle (ROM. DES SEPT SAGES 1313.). La contesse et le noble conte *Si* ont demande l'espousée (MELLESINE 1118.). Et puis *si* dist à Urins. (1604.).

- β) Among indeterminate adverbs of manner *otherwise* is often put in the place of a predicative determination.

Her forehead was high; her eyebrows arched, and rather full than *otherwise* (FIELD., J. Andr. 2, 12.). How could it be *other-*

wise (DICKENS, *Christm. Car.* 1.). Had their position been *otherwise* (LEWES, *G. I.* 6.). The adverb is treated analogously to the adverbs *how*, *thus*, *so*. The simple *other* was formerly employed instead: If you think *other* Remove your thoughts (SHAKSP., *Oth.* 4, 2.). Who dares receive it *other*? (*Macb.* 1, 7.). "Are you merry, knights?" — "Who can be *other*, in this royal presence? (*Pericles* 2, 3.) *Other*, sometimes opposed to *andens* in modern times, seems assimilated to the case of the indeterminate pronoun *some*, with the supposition of a like reference to *how*, not repeated: Although youngest of the family, he has *somehow* or *other* got the entire management of all the others (SCOTT, *R. Roy* 6.).

The older language uses the forms *other*, *another*, *non other* in such wise that we have to consider them as neuter nominatives or accusatives originally implicated with the construction. Old-Engl.: *Other* I ne kan (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., *Rel. Ant.* l. 102.). þo *anoper* we soolde do (*R. or GL.* II. 447.). Nowther for love, ne dred, ne fere, Sey *non other* than trowthe is (*Cov. Myst.* p. 63.). Tak al in pacience Oure prisoun, for it may *non other* be (CHAUC., *C. T.* 1086.). Thereto he grauntyd sone anon; It woll *non othyr* be (SIR CLEGES 314.). Halssax.: Al heo þuhten *oðer* (LAȜAM. II. 87.) [*an oper* modern text]. Al *oðer* hit itidde (III. 113.). þa þohte he *on oðer* (I. 122.). Ich ou sijje *on oper* (I. 31.). Nou þer is *an oðer* (I. 311.). Al *an oðer* hit iwærð (II. 302.). Ah hit ilomp *an oðer* þa (II. 162.) [*operweies* modern text]. þat he *nan oðer* seolden don (I. 388.). In Anglosaxon I find: þonne beo þær *nān oðre* (?) būton þāt he gange tō þam þryfealdan ordāle (LEGG. *Cnut.* I. B. 27.). The consideration of the case as absolute, that is, as an adverb, is close at hand in some of the cases cited, wherefore *operweies* (LAȜAM. II. 162.) is directly substituted for *an oðer*. It may be incidentally observed that in the modern *somehow*, above touched upon, the *how* is treated as indefinitely as *where* and *whither* in *somewhere*, *somewhither*, *when* in the dialectical *somewhen*, and *what* in the ancient *somewhat*, which occurs adverbially in Ormulum (16881.). Comp Anglosaxon *somhwylc*.

- γ) Among the adverbs of the sentence, the affirmative and the negative particles, whose historical development is stated Vol. I. p. 406, need some further discussion as to their syntactical side.

An affirmative sentence is one in which a predicate is put to a subject. Where an affirmative particle appears, it may appear as the abridged expression for a predicate put into unity with a subject. But, so far as the speaker thereby expresses his subjective agreement with a sentence or member of a sentence, the agreement with a sentence in itself negative may also be expressed thereby.

Assertions by adverbs, appearing inside or outside of the sentence, are essentially distinct from the simple affirmation; yet they more frequently stand inside the sentence, and give, outside of it, a colouring to the expression of agreement with the subject, which reminds us of a judgment further determined. They therefore are syntactically equal to expressions of probability and possibility, so far as these denote the opinion of the speaker about the contents of the sentence, while taking the form of objective determinations.



at all points." (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 1, 3.) They said unto him, *Yea*, Lord (MATTH. 9, 28.) — "Rosalind is your love's name?" "Yes, just." (SHAKSP., As You Like It. 3, 2.) "Have they taken in more wine to that company?" — "Yes, sir." (SHERID. KNOWLES, Love-Chase 1, 1) "Oh, Mark, is there anything the matter?" — "Yes, dearest, yes." (TROLL., Framl. Fars. 2, 9.) The affirmation may moreover, after a negative sentence, cause this to be thought as transformed into the affirmative form: "You are not well yet?" — "Yes" — "I'm sure you are not." (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 5, 1.)

The affirmative *ay*, for which dialectically *a* (in Somersetshire) also occurs, and which *l*, analogously to the negative *nay*, *na*, reduce to the Anglosax. *ā*, semper, Halfsax *a*, *a3*, *a3e*, could not be opposed to the former in an affirmative sense till late. It is not to be pointed out with certainty in ancient times, since it may coincide with the interjection *ay*, *a*. Comp.: "He is kyng of Jues, I weyn" — "A, that is writene wrang." (TOWN. M. p. 229.) Halfsax.: Annd tanne space Natanael, Annd seijde till þe Laferrd; A, Ma3stre, icc wat tatt tu full wiss Arrt Godess Sune (ORN. 12806. cf. 13752.). In Old-English the forms *ȝe*, *ye*, *yee*, *ȝei*, *yai*, *ȝa*, *ya*, *ȝis*, *yis* &c. run alongside of each other in the same meaning: "Maister, shall I telle more?" — "Ȝe," quod the vox. (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., II. 276.) "Love t thou wel dame Margeri?" — "Ȝe, Nelde, witerli." (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 8.) "Is this," quod sche, "the cause of your unrest?" "Ȝe, certeynly," quod ho. (CHAUC., C. T. 6636.) "Art thou my fadir?" — "Ȝe," quoth he. (ALIS. 740.) "Knowyste thou of that man?" — "The harper seyde, "Ȝee, I wysse." (SIR CLEGGES 479) "Sir, shalie I lif?" — "Ȝei" (TOWN. M. p. 42.) "I dar you hyght. To bryng hym by the hand." — "Ȝai, boy" (p. 68.) "Is his leuedi delivered with sounde?" — "Ȝa, sir." (LAY LE FREINE 51.) "Wole ye sech this chace?" — "Ȝa, sir." WRIGHT A. HALLIW., I. 152) "Wouch thou save he dwelle with me." — "Ȝea, Lord, so mut I thee." (TORRENT 2746) "Abid me her til min hom come." — "Ȝus, bi the somer blome." (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 9.) Think ye not he is worthy to deye? (Et clamabunt omnes "ȝys! ȝys! ȝys! alle we seye he is worthy to deye, ȝa! ȝa! ȝa! (Cow. MYST p. 96.) "Hastow nat herd . . ?" "Ȝis," quod this carpenter. (CHAUC., C. T. 3534.) Halfsax.: Ma3 aniz mann slan operr mann Annd cwellenn himm wiþþ herrte? ȝa full wel seijþ patt Latin boc (ORN. 4450). Þa andswerede Merlin.. ȝuse, ȝuse lauerd king (LAFAM, II. 297.). In Anglosaxon the form *ge* is rarely to be met with instead of the fuller *gea*, *ja*, alongside of which stands *gese*, *gyse*: "Hig, hig, micel gedeorf ys hit!" — "Ge, leof, micel gedeorf hit ys." (THORPE, Anal. p. 103. *Ilea* is familiar: "Hāfst þu ænig gedeorf?" — "Gea, leof, ic hābbe." (ib.) "Ȝs þes of pinum gefærum?" "Gea, he ys." (ib.) Lufast þu me svjðor þonne þās? He evāð tō him: Gea. Drihten (JOH. 21, 15. cf. 16). Hivāt vyllað hig hine for gōdum veorce ofslēan? Hig andsavoredon and evādon: Gea, leof (EV. NICOD. 3). Eart þu Esau min sunu? and he crāð, Ja, leof, ic hit eom GEN. 27, 24.). The strengthened form *gese*, *gise*, *gyse* occurs more rarely: Ne sæde ic þe ær þāt sio gesælð gōd være? Gyse. evāð ic (BOETH. 34, 6.). Vinst þu þāt se godcunda anveald ne mihte āfyrran þone anveald þam unrihtvisan Kāsere . . ? Gise lā gese. (16, 4.) *Gea*, *ja* answers to the Goth. *ja*, *jai*, which lives on in the Old-norse, Old-Highdutch, Swed., Dan., Modern-Highdutch *ja*, and in Old-Friesish assumed the form *jē*. *Ge* is directly substituted in Halfsaxon for the Anglosaxon copulative particle *ge*, *et*, which is employed like the Goth. *jah*, Old-Sax. *jac*, Old-Highdutch *joh*, although it is to be distinguished from the affirmative Anglos *gea* (*ge*): Godes eþe . . all cnaweþþ, ȝa patt tatt was, ȝa patt tatt is, ȝa patt tatt

æt shall wurrþenn (ORM. 17693.) Comp Anglosaxon: Eft he h̥t ofslēan ealle þā visestan vitan Romāna, *ge* furðon his āgene mōdor and his āgene brōdor, *ge* furðon his āgen vif he ofslōg mid sveorde (BORTH. 16, 4.).

When the affirmative is not a response to the pronounced thought of another, it is to be regarded as the affirmation of a thought of the speaker. *Yes* chiefly points in this case to a thought already pronounced, whereas *ay* and *yea* are usually referred to a thought just about to be pronounced. This often contains an outbidding, especially introduced by the assertive *yea*, whereas *ay* frequently serves to introduce a reflection called forth by surprise.

O certainly, madam, your understanding should be convinced. — *Yes, yes* — heaven forbid I should persuade you to do anything you thought wrong (SHERID., School for Sc. 4, 3.). So to remunerate me for my troubles — *Yes, yes*, remunerate me (COLLER., Picc. 1, 9.). It's dear old honest Ali Baba! *Yes, yes*, I know (DICKENS, Christm. Car. 2.). — *Joseph Surface*. Give me that book. [Sits down. Entir sir Peter.] *Sir Peter*. *Ay*, ever improving himself — Mr. Surface, Mr. Surface — (SHERID., Sch. for Sc. 4, 3.). *Ay, ay!* more still! Still more new visitors! (COLLER., Picc. 1, 2) Which he offered to swear to amongst a million. *ay*, amongst ten thousand (FIELD., J. Andr. 1, 14.) — The fire and cracks of sulphurous roaring, the most mighty Neptune Seem'd to besiege, and make his bold waves tremble, *Yea*, his dread trident shake (SHAKSP., Temp. 1, 2.). Beneath him with new wonder now he views . . . Nature's whole wealth, *yea* more, A heav'n on earth (MILT., P. L. 4, 205.). Let them rejoice before God; *yea*, let them exceedingly rejoice (Ps. 68, 3.). That heart hath burst — that eye was closed — *yea* — closed before his own (BYR., Bride 2, 26.). Others brought in cups, flagons, bottles, *yea* barrels of liquor (SCOTT, R. Roy 5.).

In Old-English, at the beginning and in the course of the speech *ȝe, ya* &c., is not rarely met with, not where an outbidding, but where a only a more or less emphatic prominence is intended: þo he awok, hym þoȝte wonder of þys cas, Hys gode moder Alfye he tolde al hou yt was. "Ȝe leue sone," quap moder, "þe tokenyng herof ys, þe heye tre, þat þou yseye, bytokneþ þe ywys." (R. OF GL. I 283.). Ther ic slow a motune, ȝe Sir, and fewe gete (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 200.). "Thei beth, as oure bokes telleth, Above Goddes werkes." — "Ȝe, baw for bokes." (P. PLOUGHM. p. 210.) Stynt, brodels, youre dyn: *ges*, every ychon I red that ye harkyn to I begone (TOWN. M. p. 142.). I am the comelyeste kynge clad in gleteringe golde, ȝa, and the semelyeste syre that may bestryde a stede (Cov. MYST. p. 161.). And ȝett many bettyr than I, ȝa, hath ben made cokolde (p. 170.); yet also with a decided outbidding: Swithere schet a manes soule, ȝe swithere than suche sovene (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 134.). Wel mo thider goth, ich wene, ȝe mo than such tene (ib.). I have not hitherto succeeded in pursuing this usage further. In Middle-Highdutch *ja* serves to introduce exclamations: *Jā* hërre, warumbe tet er daȝ (HOFM., Fundgruben I. 128, 10), and to corroborate in affirmative and negative sentences: *Jā* muoz ich trüren iemer mē (WIGAL. 4916.). *Jān* weiz ich wie (PARZIV. 302, 16. Lachm.). In Goth. *ja* often stands for the Gr. *ναί*, where Anglosaxon commonly used *sōðlice*, for instance MATTH. 9, 28. 11, 9.

Affirmation in an answer is moreover expressed by an incomplete sentence, which is to be completed from the question. This often happens by means of the repetition of an auxiliary or modal verb with a subject.

And was the ransom paid? *It was* (YOUNG, N. Th. 4, 243.). And can ambition a fourth proof supply? *It can*, and stronger than the former three (7, 379.). "Do you hear?" — "*I do*." (SHERID. KNOWLES., Love-Chase 1, 3.) "Are you the Spirit?" "*I am*." (DICKENS, Christm. Car. 2.). After a negative sentence, the reply, without taking up the negation, is affirmative: "Have ye not pray'd?" — "*We have*, most fervently." (BYRON, Cain 1, 1.)

The older language also presents similar, as Anglosax.: *Hāfst þu hafoc?* — "*Íc hābbe*." (THORPE, Anal. p. 103.) Compare also the answers above cited with *gea*, in which auxiliary verbs are repeated. Yes and No are else otherwise paraphrased: *Sōðlice sý eówer sprāc, Hyt ys, hyt ys; Hyt āys, hyt āys* (MATH. 5, 37.). It is moreover readily intelligible that the assent of the answerer may be expressed by complete or incomplete sentences of various kinds.

Negative particles either appear within the sentence, or as absolute negations, opposed to yes, apparently no longer as members of a sentence.

The simple negation in a sentence, *ne*, Anglos. *ne*, Goth. *ni*, Old-norse *ne*, has been gradually lost in the English language, and has yielded to the compound *not*. We distinguish it from the conjunctional particle *ne* (see Vol. I. p. 406.), whose use has been treated of in the doctrine of the compound sentence. A few remains of that negation are met with in the sixteenth century, and still later in verbal forms like *nille* (*ne will*), whereas the conjunctional *ne* has been preserved to a much wider extent.

The blasing sunne *ne shineth* halfe so brighte, As it was wont to doe at dawne of daye (GASCOYGNE, Jocasta 1, 1.). The flames which me consume . . . *Ne can* be quencht, within my secret bowelles bee (SPENS., F. Qu. 2, 6, 49.). *Ne can* my ronning sore finde remedee (3, 2, 39.). Yet *n'ote* their hongry vew be satisfide (3, 9, 24.). I *n'll* thine offred grace (2, 7, 33.). Will you *nill* you (SHAKSP., Taming 2, 1.). Hence forth *n'am* I your joy ne yet your sonne (GASCOYGNE, Jocasta 2, 1.). *Nylling* to dwell where syn is wrought (ASHMOLE, Theat. Chem. Brit. 1652. p. 117.). God will that such men should be witnesses with the authority of this book, will they, *nill* they (LATIMER, Sermons I. 195.).

The simple negation, which in Anglosaxon regularly preceded the word to which it belonged, and therefore mostly stood before the verb, was, remarkably early, not considered as in itself sufficient as a negation of the verb; it soon needed to a large extent a second negation, which, on its side, was again compounded with *ne*. The simple particle was for a long while preserved along with such negative pronouns, partly adverbial, partly pronominal, as well as in combination with the conjunctional *ne* (*ny*). In Old-English the simple *ne*, without any other determination, is soon found in principal sentences almost exclusively in combination

with auxiliary and modal verbs: pou *nart* one ypayed oure tresour to nyme (R. OF GL. I. 47.). Per *nys* in pi kyndam so wys mon (I. 145.). Per *nes* in al pe world swerd hym yliche (I. 49.). Hit *nis* upriht fram urthe bote mylen tuo (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 136.). Ich *ne mai* mine limes on wold (ANECD. p. 10.). *Ne mai* it wunen ȝer-inne (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 221.). He *ne mytte* his wille have (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 11.). Ich *ne der* nemmen ȝeo unkundeliche kundless of ȝisse deovel scorpion, attri i-teiled (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 69.). Houncurtes *ne willi* be (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 3.). Whan he wist of ȝe Bretons, of werre *ne wild* he fine (LANOT. I. 2.). Wi *nul* God mi s-sule fecche? (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 10.). Hethen *nulli* ben bi-nomen Til thou be aȝein comen p. 9.). Ther aboute *nul* Y swynke (ALIS. 541.). Hue *ne shule* hit so wende (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 115.). By my gabbyng *ne shal* hit so gon (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 158.). *Ne let* hyne wite al that thine heorte by-wite (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 177. note). Other I *ne kan* (I. 102.). The preterito-present *wot* also belongs here: We *nuste* war bileue (R. OF GL. I. 40.). I *ne wot*, so God me sped (TORRENT 488.). I *ne wyste* what to do was beste (SKELTON I. 31.). Other verbs are to be met with here and there in principal sentences: Whose ȝong lerneth, olt he *ne leseth* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 110.). Gif pu havist sorwe *ne say* pu hit ȝin areȝe (I. 176.), especially if another sentence with the conjunctive *ne* is attached to the negative sentence: Hi *ne bereth* corn ne frut (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 118.). In dependent sentences the sole negation *ne* is preserved with even greater pertinacity, especially in certain constructions, when auxiliary verbs and preterito-presents, but others also are again predominantly considered. This is especially the case in restrictive and consecutive dependent sentences of negative principal sentences: ȝhal no lewedenesse lette The loode that I loveȝe That he *ne worth* first avaunced (P. PLOUGHM. p. 45.). Ther nas king ne prince in al that lond That he *nas* glad if he that grace fond (CHAUC., C. T. 15814.). Ther is no dedly synne, but that it *nas* first in mannes thought (p. 190. I.). Ther durste no wight hand upon him legge That he *ne swor* anon he schuld abegge (3935.). Hue ne shule hit so wende, That hit *ne shal* atte ende Showe himself wythynne (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 115.). He ne sold it leten for pinke livihinde ȝet he *ne solde* ȝe up-breidin (I. 179.). Nennyn hys scheld nom, And dude bytwene, ȝat ȝe strok so depe per inne ne com ȝat ȝe emperour *ne myȝte* yt out drawe (R. OF GL. I. 43.). But yit nere cristen Britouns so exiled That ther *nere* some etc (CHAUC., C. T. 4967.). *Ne* also stands in consecutive sentences: ȝat folk he bett of ȝe town so noble bold ȝer rere ȝat in al Engelond so noble a cite *nere* (R. OF GL. I. 44.). Ys herte was so gret . . . ȝat he *ne myȝt* glad be, ar he awreke were (I. 135.). Of thundre hi beoȝh so sore agast that hi *nule* whoder fleo (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. 136.). His gowne so shorte that it *ne couer* myȝhte His rumpe (SKELTON I. 43.). *Ne* likewise continues longer in use in conditional sentences containing an unrealized supposition, without regard to the form of the principal sentence: The silver, That the poraille of the parische Sholde have, if thei *ne were* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 6.). Sherreves of shires Were shent if she *ne were* (p. 45.). If he *ne hadde* pite of mannes soule, sory songe myȝhte we alle synge (CHAUC. p. 190. II.). And cumeȝ ut al newe, *ne were* his bec untrewre (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 210.). *Ne hadde* Piers with a pese loof Preyed Hunger to cesse They hadde be dolven (P. PLOUGHM. p. 127 sq.). We mees wolde destruye . . . *Nere* the cat (p. 12 sq.). In final sentences tenses of various verbs are often found with *ne*: ȝat we to grete maistres *nere* drive ous out of ȝe londe (R. OF GL. I. 40.). Cave ge haveȝe to crepen in ȝat winter hire *ne derie* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 214.).

Bihoveð us to rennen to Cristes quike welle ðat we *ne gon* to helle (I. 216.). Hither also may be reckoned: Thu loke that ich *ne falle* (I. 102.). Nym god ðeme of þis castel here, Were he move þe luper Vortiger wytye fro þe depe, þat ich in ys inneward my swerd *ne make* a schepe (R. or Gl. I. 135.). We also meet with the simple *ne* in other dependent sentences: Beter þe pere (vere?) child þat þat þu *ne havedest* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 177.). Thu praye Jhesu Crist . . That he me *ne i-misse* (I. 102.). He made gret mone Of hem þat of scapede, þat heo *naðde* be dreyn't echone (R. or Gl. I. 52.). Þenne aȝte yt be ynow; . . Loue & frenschipe aske vs . . Thaw þou *ne askedest* þer vppe þraihed euermo (I. 47.). Jhesu Crist . . So wisely helpe me, as I *ne may* (CHAUC., C. T. 7172.); of course in adjective sentences also: Into that blisse that tunge *ne mai* tellen (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 102.). Monimon wenet þat he wenen *ne þarf* (I. 174.). þe mon þat ti wise *ne can* (I. 176.). Often to penchen don þat he *ne scolde* (I. 180.). Even in Half-saxon the sole *ne* is employed in a limited measure; even here it is chiefly the auxiliary verbs and the preterito-presents with which is usually appears proclitically, without the support of a negative complete word. It need not be mentioned that principal sentences present the negation as it has been preserved for centuries, although we principally find them leaning upon other negations. It is, however, to be observed that its preservation in negative sentences of a certain kind is here prepared, as, for instance, in the subordinate sentence with a negative principal sentence: Nauede Belin nan cnihte þet he *nes* pere god kimppe (LAȜAM. I. 241.), Nefde he neuere nænne coc þat he *nes* keppe swide (swiðe) god, neuær nanes cnihtes swein þat he *nes* bald þein (II. 413.). The simple negation also comes habitually out in conditional sentences containing an unrealized supposition: Annd tanne wære uss ȝahennlæs All Jesu Cristess come, ȝiff þatt he *nære* dæd forr uss (ORM. 2119.). Annd ȝet bilammp himm operr wa . . ȝiff þatt he *nære* wærped wel (4766.). Ȝiff he wolde makenn bræd Annd makenn itt *ne mihhte* þa wære he . . I ȝloterrnesse fallen (11617.) þatt munnde don uss litell god ȝiff þatt he þurh hiss are *Ne come* forr to lesenn uss (13916.). Of alle þingen heo weore god ȝif heo *neore* to wamed (LAȜAM. I. 271.). All comm offerr driȝefot, All alls itt waterr *nære* (10338.); likewise in final sentences: Forrþi wass ȝho till Josæp . . weddedd þatt ȝho *ne wære* shamedd her (ORM. 1989.). Mikell ned wass himm þat Godd þat belless herrde ringenn, þat he *ne felle* þære dæd (906.) and often in other conditional dependent sentences. In the use of this *ne*, and in that of the proclitic *ne* and the enclitic *en* in Middle-Highdutch, some analogy is found, especially so far as the preterito-presents preserve the unaccented negation. The remnants of the *ne* in modern English are explained by what has been quoted. Anglosaxon forms like *neom* (ne eom), *nillan* (ne villan), *nitan* (ne vitan), *nabban* (ne habban) &c have contributed to preserve this negation. In Anglosaxon the negation *ne* needs with no verb any support from another negative notion, although the particle is not usually absent where another negative notion appears: *Næs* him fruma æfre ær geuorden (CAEDM. 5.) *pās gescȝ ne com* ic vȝrðe tō beranne (MATH. 3, 11.). *Ve ne mihton* secȝan svā sviðe embe þāt svā svā ve voldon (BASIL., Hexamer. 1.). *Se þe nele* gelyfan (2.). *Synna ne cūðon*, firena fremman (CAEDM. 18.). *Elles ne ongunnon* ræran on roderum, nȝmðe riht and sōð (20.). *He ætes ne gymde* (BASIL., Hexamer. 1.). *His tēð ne vagodon* (DEUTER. 34, 7.). *Monige hvile bið* þam men full vā, þe hine *ne varnað* (CAEDM. 630.). *Ne cvedað betveox eov*, *Ve habbað Abraham* etc. (MATH. 3, 8.). *Him þær oviht ne derede* (CAEDM. 3792.) &c.

Not, which has taken the place of *ne*, Old-Engl. *naught*, *nought*, *noȝt*, *not*, *nat*, Halfsax. *nawiht*, *naucht*, *no wiht*, *no whiht*, *noht*,

Anglosax. *nāriht, nāuht, nāht, nōriht, nōht*, that is *ne-ā-riht*; Goth. *ni vaiht* and *vaiht ni* ὁὐδὲν μᾶλλον; Old-Highdutch *niwihht, neowihht*; Middle-Highdutch *niwihht, newihht, nihht*; Old-Friesish *naivet, naut*, operates in the modern language only as an adverbial accusative, whereas the substantive meaning remains reserved for the older forms *naught, nought*. It is commonly subjoined to the verb of the sentence, and is often weakened and abbreviated enclitically and in point of form in living speech, especially with auxiliary and modal verbs.

I *not* doubt, He came alive on land (SHAKSP., Temp. 2, 1.). Yet do *not* rise (TENNYS. p. 241.). I may *not* speak of what I know (p. 309.). Are you *not* his nearest relation? (BULW., Money 1, 1.) The enclitical dependance of the abbreviated negation, which may also be combined with the rejection of sounds of the verbal form, is to a certain extent analogous to that of the proclitic *ne* in Anglosaxon: It *isn't* possible (DICKENS, Christm. Car. 2.). You hav'*n't* touch'd'em (DOUGL. JERROLD, Bubbles 1.). There's hardly one of'em that *doesn't* go to the Bank (ib.). Didn't you say it struck you in the same light? (SHERID., Critic. 1.). I'm sure, I didn't — I don't exactly know; but I thought — as — perhaps — I *can't* remember (BOURCIC., Lond. Assur. 3, 1.). *Can't* we understand one another? (DOUGL. JERROLD, Rent. Day 2, 1.) I couldn't well sleep (ib.). I *won't* hear a word (COLMAN, Jeal. Wife 4, 2.). You *won't* refuse the king's health? (FARQUHAR, Recruit. Officer 1, 1.) I *wouldn't* have believed it (DICKENS, Pickw. 2, 19.). You *shan't* want men (FARQUHAR, Recr. Offic 2, 1.). I say you *shan't*! I will be king in my own house (BOURCIC., Lond. Assur. 3, 1.). Oh, sir, but you *musn't* — DOUGL. JERROLD, Bubbles 2.). He *needn't* go away (DICKENS, Pickw. 2, 19.). No, no, we *needn't* say that neither (SHERID. KNOWLES, Virgin. 1, 1.) and others. The combination, of *can* with the unabbreviated *not*, usual in modern times, which, however, is not extended to *canst*, does not take place where the negation or the verb is intended to be made prominent: It *cannot* be but that I shall be saved (TENNYS. p. 241.). *Can not* may be a more civil phrase than *will not*, but the expressions are synonymous where there is no moral possibility (SCOTT, R. Roy 1.). It *can not* be, *can not* be, *can not* be! (COLER., Picc. 3, 1.) My judgment may mistake; my heart *can not* (ib.). *Not* is not employed instead of *nought* as an object of the verb; therefore, in passages like: He added *not*, and from her turn'd (MILT., P. L. 10, 909.), the verb is to be regarded as intransitive.

The use of *not* instead of *ne* rests not so much upon a confusion of the latter with the former, as upon the retention of *not*, with the rejection of *ne*, whence also is explained the position of *not* as a negation of the sentence. *Not* (*naught*) is early in use as an accusative adverb strengthening the negation *ne*; the *ne* is long preserved concurrently in the sentence Old-Engl.: *Ne schal hire nawicht* reowen hire dale (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 2.). *Ancre ne schal naut* for-wurðe scole-meister (II. 4.). *Ne ga noht* ut of tune (ib.). *Me ne durste* with segge it *nozt* (R. or GL. I. 129.). *He ne scholde hire nozt* i-seo (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 132.). The passage, that Sahaladyn *ne myghte not* passen (MAUNDREV.

p. 36.). His hors was good, but he *ne* was *nought* gay (CHAUC., C. T. 74.). *Ne* herest *nought* thou what the carter saith? (7134.). In the fifteenth century this combination of *ne* . . . *not* begins gradually to disappear. In Hallsaxon the corresponding forms of the accusative adverb are frequently added to *ne*, without any great weight's being always ascribed to it: Forr nolde he *nawihht* lejhenn (ORM. 10351.). *Ne* wndre þou *nawihht* þer fore (LAȜAM. I. 21.). *Nis* hit *nowit* jare (I. 145.). *Ne* beo þu, Marje, *nohht* forðredd (ORM. 2205.). Ȝho . . . nolde *nohht* Maȝþhadess læn forlesenn (2277.). *Nass* ȝho *nohht* swa wiȝp childe (3021.). *Mann ne* maȝ *nohht* borrihenn ben (3248.). *patt* tu *ne* file *nohht* ti lif (4436.). *Heo* nesden *noht* ane moder (LAȜAM. I. 10.). *He* nes *noht* iseli (III. 155.). *Nis* me *noht* iqueme (I. 26.). Even in Anglosaxon *nāviht* is sometimes accompanied as an adverb by the verbal negation *ne*: *pāt* þu *nāht* *ne* treoge (BOETH. 5, 3.). *Nāuht* gōde *ne* sint (16.). *Hū* *ne* vāst þu, *pāt* hit *nīs* *nāuht* gecynde etc. (ib.). *Nē* on nānum earde *ne* byð *nāht* eāðe eall fugolcynn (BASIL., Hexamer 8.). — The appearance of the adverb *not* as a sole negation of the sentence long precedes the disappearance of *ne*, so that *ne* . . . *not* and *not* occur beside each other. Old-Engl.: *pāt* me myȝte *not* be ysome (R. OF GL. I. 40.). *Leve* þu þe *nout* to swiȝe up þe se flod (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 175.). *Pley* *not* with me, but *pley* with thi pere (II. 43.). *Werre* withouten hede is *not* wele (LANGT. I. 2.). *I* wol *nat* preve it here (P. PLOUGHM. p. 3.). The kyng called a clerk, *Kan* I *noght* his name (p. 43.). But it is *not* so (MAUNDEV. p. 10.). They anoynte *not* the seke men (p. 19.). He was *not* þe liȝt (WYCLIFFE, Joh. 1, 8.). *Hes* receyueden hym *not* (1, 11.). *I* may *not* ete more than a mayde (CHAUC., C. T. 3707.). It wol *not* be (3709.). Thou schalt therof *nought* beo anoyed (ALIS. 274.). The attendant *ne* is sometimes wanting to the verbal notion, even in Hallsaxon: *Annd* space he *nohht* wiȝp tunge (ORM. 224.). Forr þe wolde *nohht* Onn ane wise gilltenn (3110.): as also in Anglosaxon: þonne vās he *nāviht* hefig (GUTHLAC 2.). *Nose* habbað and *nāviht* gestincað (Ps 134, 17.). From these are to be distinguished those cases in which the negation applies to a single notion, without touching the verb of the predicate: *pāt* mynster vās geuorden and getimbred *nōht* micle ær (THORPE, Anal. p. 50.). *pāt* onginneð fram Grante eā *nāht* feor fram þære cestre (GUTHLAC 3.). Hallsax.: þa iseȝen heo *nāviht* feorren a muchel fur smokien (LAȜAM. III. 21.). Old-Engl.: At Trompyngtoun, *nat* fer fro Cantebrigge, Ther goth a brook (CHAUC., C. T. 3919.).

The substantives *whit*, *jot*, *bit*, *rush*, and the like, again subsequently added to *not*, when weakened by the generality of its use, are to be regarded as accusatives of measure, and frequently appear, even in abbreviated sentences.

"The stone's too hard to come by." — *Not a whit* your lady being so easy." (SHAKSP., Cymb. 2, 4.). "Sir, I make you stay somewhat long." — "*Not a whit*, sir." (BEN JONS., Ev. Man in his Hum. 4, 4.). "But, speaking of green eyes, Are thine green?" — "*Not a whit*. Why so?" (LONGF. I. 165.). "But you are never the nearer dying, I hope, for making your will?" — "*Not a jot*." (SOUTHERN, Oron. 4, 1.). *I* would *not* care a *pin*, if the other three were in (SHAKSP., Love's L. L. 4, 3.). "Every one thinks Sir John Vesey a rich man." — "And are you not, pupa?" — "*Not a bit* of it." (BULW., Money 1, 1.). For me individually, Sir, my relation does *not* care a *rush* (Maltrav. 6, 5.). *I*'m old enough now *not* to care a *fig* for a father-in-law (TH. HOOK, Jack Brag 1.). The article *a* is strengthened by being trans-

formed into the numeral *one*: I woll *not* crye *one whit* more (JACK JUGLER p. 23.). You don't seem *one whit* the happier at this (SHERID., Riv. 4, 3.). Instead of these negations *no whit* is also used, in which *no* appears as a negative pronoun: The waste is *no whit* lesser than thy land (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 2, 1.).

The Forms *a (one) whit*, *no whit* seem to have arisen from the confusion of the Anglosaxon compounds *āwiht*, *nāwiht* with *ān wiht*, *nān wiht*; even in the thirteenth century *non wiht* meets us: *Ne haveð ðat venim non might to deren him siðen non wigt* ((WRIGHT A. HARLIW., Rel. Ant. I, 216.), as *any wight* is chosen instead of *āwiht* (ought, aught): *Yif thou me lovest ani wight* Let me of him han a sight (SECVN SAGES 293.). Earlier separations of *a wiht*, *no whit*, which ancient texts present, are to be judged like many similar separations of the elements of compounds. *Halfsax*: *Ȝif heo wes a wiht hende* (LAȜAM I. 299.). *Me puncheð pat mi fæder nis no whit felle* (I. 139.). In Anglosaxon *wiht* also served, without any adnominal determination, to strengthen the negative sentence: *Ne þearft þu þe wiht ondrædan* (CÆDM. 2162.). The addition of a substantive, denoting a trifling object, to the negative particle, so familiar to the Romance tongues, is also not seldom met with in Old-Engl.: *Not to grucchen a grott aþeine Godis sonde* (DEPOS. OF RICH. II. p. 2.). For to dy now rek I *no dele* (TOWN. M. p. 169.). Such terms for unimportant things often appear in negative sentences, where they can or must be considered as objects of the verb: I count it *nat a flye* (CHAUC., C. T. 4190.). This Absalon ne roughete *nat a bene* Of al his pleye (3770.). To be corsed in consistorie She counteth *noght a bene* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 31.). Therof sette the meller *not a tare* (CHAUC., C. T. 3998. cf. 4054.). I sette *nought an hawe* Of his proverbe (6240.). Bi alle men set I *not a furte* (TOWN. M. p. 16.) and the like.

Nothing, Anglosaxon *nān ping*, has also long appeared as a strengthened negation; like *not*, it is originally an adverbial accusative, which, after the abandonment of the *ne*, standing with the verb of the predicate, now stands alone as a negation of the sentence,

I *nothing* know where she remains (SHAKSP., Cymb. 4, 3.). I *something* fear my father's wrath; but *nothing* . . what His rage can do on me (I, 2.). Goethe's precocity was *nothing* abnormal (LEWES, G. I. 23.).

Old-Engl.: Kyng Richard them *no thing* ne dradde (RICH., C. DE L. 5593.). — *Ping* pat woner & *no ping* wexer, sone it ys ydo (R. OF GL. I. 42.). *No thing* forȝat he the care and wo (CHAUC., C. T. 6309.). It is often found in opposition and mere connection, of course without *ne*, where no verb of the sentence combines immediately with it: Broun they beon, and *nothing* wight (ALIS. 6579.). They were full glad, and *nothinge* lothe (IPOM. 2102.). I am havy and *nothing* fayn (TOWN. M. p. 39.). It is drye and *nothing* fructuous (MAUNDEV. p. 42.). In Halfsaxon *nāðing* often stands instead of *nān ping*, even adverbially: And seiden . . þat *ne* durste Edwine king cumen to-þæines him *nāðing* (LAȜAM. III. 240.). *Þat* no *hið* he for þan watere *nāðing* idracched (II. 502.). Anglosaxon often strengthens the negation *ne* by *nān ping*: *Ne ondræde ge eow nān ping* (GEN. 45, 5.). And nolde *nān ping* Godes vord underfōn on his heortan (EXOD. 7, 23.). *Nās þāt nān ping* vundor (DEUTER. 1, 37.). *Ne fremað hit me nān ping* (A-S. HOMIL. I. 54.). Hugo eac ān (sc. hēt), þe hit *ne* gebette *nān ping* (SAX. CHR. 1088) *Nænig ping* and *nænige pingas* are likewise used: *þāt þāt nænig ping* ne gedæfenade (BEDA 2, 11.), also without *ne*: *þāt þāt nænige pingas* beon mehte (2, 5.).

The negation *no*, Anglosaxon *nā*, agreeing with *never* in its fundamental meaning, was also employed as a negative of the sentence. We still find it partly with comparatives, partly in incomplete or contracted sentences in the second member of a disjunctive relation. We here disregard *no* as an absolute negation of the sentence.

Go in peace, Humphrey, *no less beloved*, Than when thou wert protector of the king (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 2, 3.). 'Tis but a base ignoble mind That mounts *no higher* than a bird can soar (2, 1.). Proceed *no straiter* 'gainst our uncle Gloster (3, 2.). Finding myself every day grow more angry, and the government growing *no better*, I left it to mend itself (GOLDSM., She Stoops 2.). *No more* of that I say (SHERID. KNOWLES, Virgin. 2, 4.). But hope *no longer* Comforts my soul (LONGF. I. 189.). Down sank Excalibar to rise *no more* (. 188.). By and by you discovered that I was *no worse* for all the quartos that have transmigrated into ideas within me (BULW., Caxtons 1, 4.). With the comparatives is connected *otherwise*, allied to them in construction: We do *no otherwise* than we are willed (SHAKSP., I Henry VI. 1, 3.). For *no* with comparatives comp. Vol. I. p. 407. — My prime request . . is, O, you wonder, If you be maid or *no* (SHAKSP., Temp. 1, 2.). 'Tis after in his choice to serve or *no* (BEN JONS., Poetast. 1, 1.). For whether these fell wounds, or *no*, He has receiv'd in fight, are mortal, Is more than all my skill can foretel (BUTL., Hud. 1, 3, 260.). I am perplex'd and doubtful whether or *no* I dare accept this your congratulation (COLER., Picc. 1, 1.). Thou, O God, knowest alone whether this was or *no* (TENNYS. p. 239.). In the cases aforesaid we likewise meet with the particle *not*. *Not* is especially found in immediate combination with a comparative, if the second member of the comparison with *than* comes, complete or abridged, alongside of the first, although *no* is likewise used in this case, and the particle *not* may also appear without *than* following it: They dreaded *not more* th'adventure than his voice forbidding (MILT., P. L. 2, 473.). *Not more* affronted by avow'd neglect, Then by the mere dissembler's feign'd respect (COWP. p. 41.). The victorious emperor . . remained at Rome *not more* than two or three months (GIBBON, Decl. 10.). William was *not less* fortunate in marriage than in friendship (MACAUL., H. of E. III. 11.). A canary, endeared to her *not more* by song than age (BULW., Caxtons 4, 4.). Happy am I, that have a man so bold . . And *not less* happy, having such a song (SHAKSP., II Henry IV. 5, 2.). While this was done in Clydesdale, an act *not less* horrible was perpetrated in Eskdale (MACAUL., H. of E. II. 71.). Notional differences are moreover sometimes attached to the use of *no* and *not*. Thus *no more*, *no longer*, which have become formal, are used in the sense of the Gr. *οὐκέτι*, without reference to a notion to be drawn into the comparison, and are distinguished from the forms of the same sound referred to a notion, expressed or understood, serving as a standard, as in the French *ne . . plus* from *ne-pas plus*. *No* also would not be in its place, where the negation has to attach

itself more closely to be verbal notion than to the comparative, with which compare: Bringest thou *not more* to them than thou receivest? (COLER., *Picc.* 4, 6.), where the centre of gravity of the rhetorical, negative question touches, not the equality of the number, but its superiority, and not so much a member of a sentence as a sentence with its object is called in question. In the disjunctive relation the particle *not* is, along with *no*, in use with *no* less justification: I don't know whether your sister will like me, *or not* (SOUTHERN, *Oroon.* 1, 2.). We may choose whether we will take the hint *or not* (SHERID, *Riv.* 2, 1.). Do you believe in me *or not*? (DICKENS, *Christm. Car.* 1.) He had read all the disputes of schoolmen, whether *or not* the notion of a Supreme Being is innate (BULW., *Maltrav.* 1, 4). But when English grammarians declare *not* in this case to be more correct than *no*, they disregard the historical foundation of the use of *no*.

The adverb *no*, *na*, for which in Old-English as in Hallsaxon *neo* also appears, was widely diffused in ancient times, taking the place of *not* and *ne*, so that it appears completely weakened. The form *na*, Hallsax. *nae* is rarer, save in the absolute negation. It is also employed for the conjunctive *ne* = *nor*. Comp Old-Engl.: Ac n'ys ther non. fool *neo* wys, Kyng, *no* duy. *neo* knyght of pris (ALIS. 13.). Hallsax.: þat þe king nefde nane crihtes *neo* nauere nanne cunes mon (LAJAM. II. 147.). Nulle ic nauere mare . . heren into Rome *nae* nauere mare leom senden gaele (I. 413.). Ne recche ich noht his londes, his seoluer *no* his goldes (II. 290.), for which the way was paved in Anglosaxon. The mingling of the older negative particles seems certain, although it does not always take place in the older literature. The Old-English use of *na*, *no* for the Lat. *nequaquam*, *non*, whose gradual weakening is not surprising, has, however, an historical foundation: þe prowes þat þe Brute dude no tonge *no* telle ne may (R. of GL. I. 12.). Tho were thai wounded so strong, That thai *no* might doure long (ARTHUR A. MERLIN p. 359.). *No* beo the nought loth (ALIS. 303.). That heo *no* scholde the deth thole (7350.). With marchauns to beon weore hende, *No* weore acountis at the bordis eynde! (7361.). Putt thi hande in my side, *no* fres (TOWN. M. p. 291.). For ferd I qwake and can *no* rede (p. 15.). Hallsax.: Nulle ic *na* so don (LAJAM. I. 266.). Swa muchel swa þer neuere ærer *na* mon *no* isumnede (III. 4.). Ðat he nauere mid unfriðe France *no* isohte (III. 47.). Anglosaxon frequently used the particle *nā*, *nō* as a stronger negation, with and without support form *ne* with the verb: Min unriht ic *nā* ne hēlede vtō þe (Ps. 31, 5.). *Ne* eom ic *nā* Crist (JOH. 1, 20.). *Ne* māg ic pās *nā* tveogan (BOETH. 35, 9.). Nis *nā* pāt fyr of þære beorhtnisse, ac seō beorhtnisse of þam fyre (THORPE, *Anal.* p. 61.). — *Nō* hie fāder cunnon (BEOW. 2715.). *Nō* þær āht cvides lāð lyftflōga lāfan volde (4618.). *Nō* mihton godas beōn þa þe manna handum gevorhte væron (BEDA, *Sm.* 544, 31.). Feala gōdra hāma þe ve genemnan *nā* cunnan (SAF. CHR. 1001.). As to the usage of the particle with comparatives, it is not only intelligible in itself, but also regarded with favour. Old-Engl.: Mede the mayde, *Na-mo* dorste abide (P. PLOUGHM. p. 42.) Mede the mayde, And *na-mo* of hem alle (p. 43.). Ich haue o child and *na mo* (LAY LE FREINE 111.). We will *no more* be wroth (TOWN. M. p. 31.). Heo myte *no leng* at stonde (R. of GL. I. 122.). Mai ich *no lengore* lye (WRIGHT, *Polit.* S. p. 149.). The maiden abode *no lengore* (LAY LE FREINE 156.). Thus shalle these folk *no farther* sprede (TOWN. M. p. 57.). My son may be slayn *no nar* (p. 37.). For *nothemo*, *notheless* see the

Adversative Coordination. Hallsax.: þa nolde Brutus *na mare* þat hit swa ihatan weore (LAJAM. I. 82.). Loke þat þu *namare* swulc þing ne iscire (II. 293.). Heo nolden hem *no more* feden (I. 142.). Þat he ne moste libben *na lengere* þeſe seuoen ȝere (I. 294.). To drezhenn helle pine, All afterr þatt tin addlingg iss *Na lesse* ne *na mare* (ORM. 17704.). Nahht ne maȝ he wurſpen full . . . *Na mar* þann helle maȝ beon full (10221.). Icc amm mann . . . Annd *nohht na mare* þann a mann Dæp-shildiȝ (18314.). Þatt Godd ne sholde kepenn *Na mare* to beon þeoww-tedd swa (10089.). Þurh þatt teȝ nolldenn nohht tatt boc Flæshliȝ *na lengre* follȝhenn (13162.). Anglosax.: Ve his *nā māre* ne cunnon (A.-S. HOMIL. I. 154.). Se vuldorfāsta cyning . . . þā nolde þæra deofla gemā-ðeles *nā māre* habban (Ev. Nicod. 29.). Nō on vealle *leng* biðan volde (Beov. 6404.). Þȝ ylcan geāre forveaſð *nā lās* þonne XX scipa (Sax. CHR. 897.). — In a disjunctive member of a sentence this negation is so much the more natural as it seems adapted for oppositions generally. Here also the form *nay* is met with: Whethyr will ye come *or nay?* (IPOMYDON 1844.) Anglosax.: Anra gehvylc vāt gif he besvungcgen vās ðōðe *nā* (THEOPH., Anal. p. 116.). Comp.: Ve visceað þāt ve on Egypta lande væron ær deað *and nā* on pisum vēstene (NUM. 14, 3.). — With comparatives and in the disjunctive member an adverbial *nan*, *non*, *none*, is also met with in ancient times, which points to the Anglosaxon *nān* (ne-ān). Old-Engl.: And nom of hem sykernesse, þat hii ne solde mysdo *nanmore* (R. or GL. I. 178.). Þat heo ne wyllede yt *nanmor* (I. 286.). For no swerd myȝte with ys dunt *none lengur* laste (I. 17.). On smale trees, that ben *non* hyere than a mannes brek girdille (MAUNDEV. p. 50.). Whethir he wolde *or noon* (CHAUC., C. T. p. 191. I.). Wethir it ouȝhte needes be doon *or noon* (ib.). Wheder ye wille *or none* (TOWN. M. p. 248.). *None* also appears as a stronger negative in other combinations: He callȝ hym so bot he is *none* (TOWN. M. p. 229.). Even now many dialects use *non*, *none* for *not at all*. Even Anglosaxon used *nān* (ne-ān) as an adverbial accusative for nequaquam. Beo . . . scyldig, biðan he mid ðe cȝðan durre, þāt he hit *nān* rihtor ne cūðe (LEGG. CMUT. I. B. 14.).

The separation of the pronominal *no*, nullus, from the adverbial *no*, nequaquam, is in many cases to be explained only historically. *Nowhere*, cited Vol. I. p. 407. is found in Hallsaxon as *nauer*, *nohware*, *nowher* LAJAM. I. 32, 358. and often and in Anglosaxon as *nāhvar*, *nāhvār* GEN. 19, 7., Ps. 90, 10., see GREIN, Gloss. II. 273. In *no one*, on the other hand, *no*, as in *no man*, *nobody*, *nothing*, is to be regarded as the pronoun, so that one has not to go back to a *nā ān*, formed after *nān*, *ne-ān*. *No one* has moreover a somewhat different shade of meaning from *not one*: I . . . who ought to love *no one* (BULW., Money 1, 4.). And now that I care for *no one* (ib.). — *Not one* will change his neighbour with himself (POPE, Ess. on M. 2, 261.). In the latter case the denied unity comes out more strongly than in the former, where the individual is expressed by *one* without making its individuality prominent.

Never, as well as *no*, *nunquam*, stands with the meaning of a negative particle in which the idea of time recedes altogether, or gives only a greater decisiveness to the negation.

Hast thou *never* an eye in thy head? (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 2, 1.) I'll be damned for *never* a king's son in Christendom (1, 2.). *Never* fear, *never* fear (SHERID., Riv. 2, 2.). People will say, that miss didn't know her own mind; but *never* mind that (4, 2.). Grey and his cavalry *never* stopped till they were safe at Lyme again (MACAUL., H. of E. II. 146.). Thus *never* is also often found before the comparative accompanied by *the*: As broken laws are *ne'er the worse*, *Nay*, till they're broken have no force

(BUTL., Hud. 2, 2, 279.). But you are *never the nearer* dying, I hope, for making your will (SOUTH., Oroon. 4, 1.). Compare also *nevertheless*, used for the older *natheles*, *notheles*, Anglosaxon *ná þǫ lās*. *Nevertheles* is found in CHAUC., C. T. 5244. TOWN. M. p. 74.

Old-Engl.: Who openyde his yȝen we witen *neuer* (WYCL., Joh. 9, 31.), comp. Anglosax. *ve nyton*. I wist *never* what I meot (TOWN. M. p. 80.). How that I tend rek the *never* a deille (p. 13.). To wylderness I wille for-thi Enfors me for to fare, And *never* longer with hir dele (p. 79.). Combinations like *never-the-lattere*, *never-the-nere* are familiar. See HAL-LIW. vv. Similarly even in Hallsaxon this adverb often makes the regard to time fall into the background: þe king heom for-leas þat nefde he *næfer* enne (LAŶAM. I. 110.). Sannt Johan hemm dide wel To seon and tunnderrstandenn þatt he nass *næfr* an off þe treo (OAM. 10348.). Even in Anglosaxon a mere strengthening of the negation by *næfre* seems sometimes intended: Ne þryhst þu *næfre* mine iét (JON. 13. 8.), in which certainly the Greek text takes the lead: οὐ μὴ νύπης τοὺς πόδας μου εἰς τὸν αἰῶνα, rendered by WYCLIFFE: þou schalt *not* wasche to me þe feet into *wip outen ende*.

Never has also stood from ancient times in a peculiar relation within a complete or abridged concessive dependent sentence (also in the form of an imperative or interrogative sentence) in combination with *so*, *such*, where the negative form may also yield to the affirmative *ever*, and the former is frequently termed incorrect by modern English grammarians. In former times *never* interchanged with *no* and *not*, whereby the negative mode of expression is historically secured against the views of grammarians. The entrance of the negation into the concessive member is also explained by the supposition of the speaker that the determination of degree or kind from which an inference opposed to the principal sentence might be derived is to be thought as absolutely unrealized.

It shall be *so*, disdain they *ne'er* so much (SHAKSP., I Henry VI. 5, 3.). And creep time *ne'er* so slow, Yet it shall come, for me to do thee good (John 3, 3.). No, none can hear him, cry he *ne'er* so loud (MARL., Jew of M. 4, 2.). Ask me *never* so much dowry and gift, and I will give According as ye shall say unto me (GENES. 34, 12.). Which will not hearken to the voice of charmers, charming *never* so wisely (Ps. 58, 5.). If your inside be *never* so beautiful you must preserve a fair outside also (FIELD., T. Jon. 3, 7.). Besides, a slave would not have been admitted into that society, had he had *never* such opportunities (BENTLEY, Dissert. on Phalaris.).

The affirmative *ever* in such a case operates in the same manner as in the generalizing and concessive sentence in general: So tho' he posted *e'er* so fast, His fear was greater than his haste (BUTL., Hud. 3, 3, 63.). No place, tho' *e'er* so holy should protect him (ROWE, Fair Penit. 2, 2.). No school, though *ever* so private, will ever make him good (FIELD., J. Andr. 3, 5.). And all the question (wrangle *e'er* so long) Is only this, if God has placed him wrong (POPE, Essay on M. 1, 49.).

In Old-English *never* appears the most frequently: No beter sped heo, nere þat werk *ner* so strong (R. or Gl. I. 128.). Ne *be* he *ner* so stout, yet he biþ y-soht out (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 218.). Be it in perill *never* so strong, Y schal the help in right and wrong (AMIS A. AMIL. 1450.). Telle ich the ensauple *never* so god, Thou me haldest of wit wod (SEYTON SAGES 1551.). And certis, the riche kyng of Mede, Hadde he *never* suche ferhede, His ost wried see and lond, Yet he crepe undur oure hond (ALLIS. 3059.). If we make *never* siche care His lyfe may we not wyn (TOWN. M. p. 280.). Yit if I be *never* so old, I myn fulle welle that prophetes told (p. 155.). Thof Isaak be *never* so fayre. . . Goddes bydyng shalle I not spare (p. 3719.). I xal hom in hast, be it *never* so late (Cov. MYST. p. 76.). In ancient times *ne . . . no* is used: þat water of Bape . . . þat euer ys yliche hot . . . *ne* be chele *no* so gret (R. or Gl. I. 7.). So þat pys Macolm, nere he *no* so prout, Dyde kyng Wyllam omage (II. 388.). And suor ys more op To be ycrownded wypoute hym, nere hym *no* so lop (I. 242.). Halfsax.: Ne beo he *na* swa leof mon, uorð he scal liſen (LAJAM. II. 155.). Ne mihte *na* mon suggen, nære he *na* swa hende mon, of halue þan blissen þa weoren mid þan Brutten (II. 595.). Here also we meet *ne . . . noht*: Nas næwere þe ilke bern . . . þat he næs sone dæd, neore he *noht* swa dohti (I. 326.). Ne beo he *noht* swa loh iboren, ful wel he beoð iborjen (II. 502.). In Anglosaxon I have met with *ne . . . næfre*: Nān man ne dorste sleān ðærne man, næfde he *næfre* swā mycel yfel gedōn wið þone ðærne (SAX. CHR. 1087.). With that agrees the Middle-Highdutch *ne . . . nie*: Dir *ne* si *nie* sō gāhe, du muost hinne biten (KAISERCHRON. 70. c.), with which compare the negation in the principal sentence: Dune bist *nie* sō riche dune sterbis (ib. 35. a.). — For the use of *ever* see the Concessive Sentence.

The name of the devil is employed in the low manner of speech instead of the negation and, in a certain measure, as a strengthening thereof.

The devil a Puritan that he is, or any thing constantly, but a time pleaser (SHAKSP., Twelfth. N. 2, 3.). I have been out this whole afternoon, and *the devil* a bird have I seen till I came hither (FIELD., J. Audr. 2, 7.). "Captain Absolute and Ensign Beverley are one and the same person." — "*The devil* they are." — "So it is indeed." (SHERID., Riv. 1, 1.)

This employment of the name of the devil, which is familiar enough to the ancient language in the exclamation of indignation and surprise, is not to be pointed out till modern times, where it also appears in High and low Dutch instead of the negation. Highdutch: *Den Teufel* auch! — Ich schor mich *den Teufel* um den Krimskrams (IMMERMANN, Münchh. 4, 29.). Lowdutch: *Den düwel* ôk! He måkt sik *den düwel* út di [nothing out of thee]. He hett *den düwel* geld [no money]. Ik will *den düwel* dōn [will not do it].

A double negation, or several negations by an independent negation within the simple sentence or member of the sentence, admit of a twofold apprehension in Modern-English.

The reduplication may require the taking away of one negation by the other, so that the two are substituted for a strengthened negation: *Nor* did they *not* perceive the evil plight In which they were, or the fierce pains *not* feel (MILT., P. L. 1, 335.). *Nor* doth the moon *no* nourishment exhale (5, 421. cf. 5, 548. 11, 396. and often). *Nothing* in the world we would *not* do for him (BULW., Money 1, 7.). Look without; *No* foe *not* humbled

(Richel. 4, 1.). The Past . . cannot even be *not* seen: it is misseen (CARL., Past a. Pres. 4, 1.). *No* egress where *no* sentry (BULW., Richel. 3, 2.). This taking away has on the whole the same effect as if one of the negations is not expressed by an independent word, but is contained in a word, either notionally or by reason of composition with a negative particle: It must *not* be *denied* (SHAKSP., Much Ado 1, 3.). *Don't* be *uneasy* (COLM., Jeal. Wife 1, 1.). It must then be acknowledged to be *not improbable* that the enemy might land (MACAUL., H. of E. IX. 15.).

Or, the accumulation of negations serves merely to strengthen the negation. This is especially the case after the conjunction *nor*, but also in popular and emphatic speech: Grace me *no* grace, *nor* uncle me *no* uncle (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 2, 3.). Madam, I know not, *nor* I greatly care *not* (5, 2.). *Nor* damned ghoste In flaming Phlegeton does *not* so felly roste (SPENS., F. Qu. 2, 6, 50.). We may not, *nor* we will *not* suffer this (MARL., Edw. II. 1, 2.). Did need *no* license *nor* *no* priest (BUTL., Ep. of Hud. 247.). I *never* . . said *nothing* (DICKENS, Chuzzlew. 1, 5.). I go and sit down comfortably for life, and *no* man *never* finds me out (ib.). Here also belongs the pleonastic *neither*, to be discussed further on: "I care not for his thrust." — "No, *nor* I *neither*." (SHAKSP., Henry IV. 2, 1.) No, no, we needn't say that *neither* (SHERID. KNOWLES, Virgin. 1, 1.).

The taking away of the negations by doubling the negation within a sentence is not familiar to the ancient language. It has become more usual in modern times, perhaps not without influence from the Latin. The taking away by other negations of the negation contained in the negation or in the composition of a form is always a matter of course. Old-Engl.; He knowlecheide and *denyede not* (WYCL., Joh. 1, 20.). *Houn-curteis ne* willi be (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 3.). *Nis ther non goed unforzorde*, *Ne non* evil *nis ther unboust* (p. 91.). Two successive sentences of a construction may also afford an affirmative result. Hallsax.: *patt uppønn all piss boc ne be . . Nan worrd tatt swiþe wel ne be To trowwenn* (ORM., Ded. 69.). A negation of a negation is perhaps presented by the Anglosax.: *Ne* bid seó synfulle sávl *ná* mid ealle tó náhte ávend (A.-S. HOMIL. I. 160.).

But the accumulation of negations as a mere strengthening of the negation is so deeply rooted in the Germanic languages and in English that the proscription of the remains of it by modern English grammarians from a mistaken logical interest does not effect its extirpation. Apart from the combination of the ancient *ne* with the verbal notion, where the sentence has another negative determination (comp. Vol. I. p. 407.), we find accumulated negative notions from the earliest times. Old-Engl.: *No* more schrewe, þan he bicom, ych wene *non* nas (R. of GL. I. 97.). For þou naddest *ner* *no* fader (I. 128.). *Ne* saugh I *never*, such as sche, *nono* (CHAUC., C. T. 5445.). *Sich was never none* Seyn with oure ee (TOWN. M. p. 93.). Hallsax.: *patt þu nauere wið þene scucke feht no bi-ginne* (LAJAM. III. 23.). *Ne icneow hine nauere na* man (I. 282.). Anglosax.: *Ne geseah næfre nán* man God (JOH. 1, 18.). *Nē nán* lim *ne* deó *nán* þing (A.-S. HOMIL. I. 160.).

The absolute negatives *no* and *nay*, two forms proceeding from the same Anglosaxon *ná*, form the abbreviation of the answer, which takes up the interrogative sentence in such a manner

that it is declined or determined by a negative judgment. Thus both form the contrary to the various affirmations, yet the modern usage gives them somewhat different shades of meaning, attaching also, in their further employment, slight distinctions to them.

No is opposed to all affirmations: Wilt thou accept of ransom, *yea* or *no*? (SHAKSP., 1 Henry VI. 5, 3.) It you say *ay*, the king will not say *no* (John 3, 4.). He . . answered *Ay* and *No* at random to whatever question was asked at him (SCOTT, Gay Mannering 20.). It was a game called *Yes* and *No* (DICKENS, Christm. Car. 3.). *No! No!* but I say *yes! yes!* (BULW., Money 1, 5.). The speaker may answer *no* to the question of another or to the question called in question by him, as well as to his own question or his own thought: "Shall I be your play-fellow?" — "*No*, I'll none of you." (SHAKSP., Wint. T. 2, 1.) "Perhaps, madam, You will rest here, and try to sleep awhile?" — "*No*, Fiordilisa." (LEIGH HUNT, Legend of Florence 2.) "Good Heav'n, . . grant that time may bring her some relief." — "Oh, *no!* time gives increase to my afflictions." (CONGREVE, Mourning Bride 1, 1.) "Sir — the parish ought to give." — "*No! No! No!* Certainly not!" (BULW., Money 1, 5.) Thou wilt not do this! *No!* I pray thee, *no!* (COLER., Picc. 5, 3.) Thus *no* often serves as a preliminary or supplementary intensive negation, where in thought a negative sentence is anticipated or repeated: *No*, I'll not go (SHAKSP., Coriol. 5, 1.). *No* — speak not! (BULW., Money 1, 4.) *No*, I cannot praise the fire in your eye (TENNYS. p. 373.). There is none that doeth good, *no*, not one (Ps. 53, 3.). Indeed, whatever horse they had provided, they would have prevailed with him to mount none, *no* not even to ride before his beloved Fanny, till the parson was supplied (FIELD., J. Andr. 3, 12.).

The negation *nay* is particularly opposed to *yea*: Let your communication be *Yea*, *yea*, *Nay*, *nay* (MATTH. 5, 37.). "Would you credit, girl, I was a scarecrow before marriage?" — "*Nay!*" — "Girl, but I tell thee *yea!*" (SHERID. KNOWLES, Love-Chase 2, 2.) Although *nay* answers to direct question, it is more frequent as an objection to a sentence uttered in another form: "You will not chide me?" — "*Nay*, Lydia, I am pleased to hear thy thoughts." (SHERID. KNOWLES, Love-Chase 2, 2.) "Has this husband . . no corner in his heart, for some small household grace to sneak in?" — "*Nay*, what he has of grace in him is not sneaking." (LEIGH HUNT, Legend of Florence 1, 1.) "I have sat too long." — "*Nay*, go not from us thus." (SHAKSP., Coriol. 5, 3.) "Ho away!" — "*Nay*, Count." (BULW., Richel. 3, 4.) "Let me come at them." — "*Nay*, *nay*, brother." (DOUGL. JERROLD, Rent. Day 1, 5.) "Good even, gentlemen." — "*Nay*, if you go, We all break up." (SHERID. KNOWLES, Love-Chase 1, 2.) My slave, Zuleika! — *nay*, I'm thine (BYR., Bride 2, 12.). It is also combined with *no*: "He goes to Frauenberg. ." — "*No! Nay*, Heaven forbid!" (COLER., Picc. 5, 3.) It sometimes precedes a negative sentence or determination of a sentence:

Nay, that shall not serve your turn; that shall it not in truth, la! *Nay*, I care not for such words; no, no (SHAKSP., Troil. a. Cress. 3, 1.). "What says he now?" — "*Nay*, nothing; all is said," (Rich. II. 2, 1.) But are you not ashamed? *nay*, are you not, All three of you, to be thus much o'ershot? (Love's L. L. 4, 3.) "The man who knows our secrets." — "*Nay*, not Sesina? — Say, No!" (COLER., Picc. 4, 2.) The negation, by taking away what precedes, may introduce what follows as an outbidding, so that it might here interchange with *yea*, which makes what succeeds prominent for the same purpose. The outbidding may contain both a more and a less important moment: A storm or robbery . . . Shook down my mellow hangings, *nay*, my leaves, And left me bare to weather (SHAKSP., Cymb. 3, 3.). Were he my brother, *nay*, my kingdom's heir (Rich. II. 1, 1.). The world — *nay*, Heaven itself was mine (BYR., Bride 2, 18.). The practical man will see the progress of divinity, medicine, *nay*, even law (BULW., Cuxtons 8, 2.). He's too weak to question. *Nay*, scarce to speak (Richel. 5, 2.). But the turning away generally from a thought is also introduced by *nay*, by which the particle may receive the character of an exhortation and such like: "He . . . sick of home went overseas for change — And whither?" — "*Nay*, who knows?" (TENNYS. p. 226.) "Ay; what's the matter?" — "*Nay*, look upon him." (SHAKSP., Troil. a. Cress. 2, 1.) Comp. Vol. I. p. 407.

In olden times the use of *nay* decidedly predominates over that of *no*, *na*, all which occur, both in answers to direct questions and in the negation and parrying of the assertions of others and of ones own thoughts.

Nay appears as opposed to *ye*: Wole ye wende? says ye or *nay*? (RICH. C. DE L. 1867.) He answard never withe *ye* no *nay*? (TOWNS. M. p. 271.) — Wolton nou mi shrift i(here. And al mi liif I shal the telle? *Nay*, quod the vox, I nelle (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 276.). "Is here any messe to do?" The clerk seyde, "*Nay*, i-wys, Of a messe thu myth well mys." (I. 62.) And there he askede me, how the Cristene men governed hem in oure contree. And I seyde him, Righte wel: thonked be God. And he seyde me, Treulyche *nay* (MAUNDEV. p. 137.). "Who shal juste with Jhesus?" quod I, "Jewes or scrybes?" — "*Nay*," quod he; "The foule fend, And fals doom and deeth." (P. PLOUGHM. p. 371.) "I warant it a theef." — "Why *nay* . . . I am thyn Absolon." (CHAUC., C. T. 3789.) Summe seyden for he is gods; forsope oþer seyden *naye* (WYCL., Joh. 7, 12.). Art pou a prophete? and he answeride *nay* (I, 21). "Quik tak thy wed for thy deth." — Alisaundre *nay*! onswerith (ALIS. 882.). "Dere master, is it oght I?" — "*Nay*, thou Peter, certanly." (TOWNS. M. p. 180.) Shuld I that gaustand? we, *nay*, ma fay (p. 38.). "Wraththen the for ani dede Were me loth." — "*Nai* i-wis, Wilekin, For nothing that ever is min Thau thou hit jirne, Houncurteis ne willi be." (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 3.) Hallsax.: "Sore we adredeþ pat heo him mis-ræden." þa answered þe abbed, "*Næi*. ac heo him radeþ god." (LAFAM. II. 124.) & he andsware jaf . . . *Næi*, swa me helpe drihte . . . nulle ich nauere aþein cumen (II. 356.). Seþ uss, arrt þu profete? Annd he þa seþde þuss till hemm *Naʒʒ*, namm I nohht profete (ORM. 10288.). Crist tær wollede fullhtnedd beon . . . Annd nolde he Crist nohht fullhtnenn Annd seþde: *naʒʒ*, lef Laferrd, *naʒʒ*, Ne darr i þe nohht fullhtnenn (10654 sq.). This *naʒʒ* is, of course, the negation of *aʒʒ*, Anglosax. *a* = *ava*.

The forms *na*, *no*, frequently enough employed in other respects, are

remarkably rarely met with in former times along with *na* in the meaning of *no*. Old-Engl.: "I leve noht he be blessed." — "*No*," quod Pacience (P. PLOUGH. p. 275.). "Bot, fader, shallc I not be slayn?" — "*No*, certes, son." (TOWN. M. p. 42.) My friend? *na*, bot if he wille (p. 14.).

In Anglosaxon *nā* is used, along with other negations, for *no*: Ne forðēnde þe nān man? And heō cvað: *Nā*, Dryhten (JON. 8, 10 sq.). Lā-reov, ne ofþincð hit þe gif ic þus ver geceose? Apollonius cvað: *Nā* ac ic blissige sviðor etc. (APOLLON or T. p. 20.). Therewith the compound *nāteshvon*, which, like *nā*, also appears within the sentence; Hig cvaðon: *Nāteshvon* (GEN. 19, 12.). *Nese*, standing opposed to *gese*, is moreover often used, of which even Halfsaxon seems to offer no trace: Vēnst þu pāt þā dýsajende vēnað . . ? *Nese*, *nese* (BORTH. 24, 4.). Hū mæg hit yfel beon . . ? *Nese* nis hit nā yfel (ib.). Hveðer nu micel feoh . . mæge ænigne mon dōn svā gesæline . . ? *Nese*, *nese* (26, 1.). Ðā andsvarode Boetius and cvað: *Nese* lā *nese* (ib.). Sume cvaðon; He ys gōd; ðære cvaðon: *Nese*, ac he besvicð þis folc (JON. 7, 12.). And nemdon hine hys fāder naman Zachariam. Ðā andsvarode hys mōder: *Nese* sōðes; ac he byð Johannes genemned (LUC. 1, 59.). With the reception of this form a *nes* would be opposed to *yes*.

The absolute negation may of course be rendered superfluous in complete sentences by various references back to a question. Compare: Art thou also one of his disciples? He denied it, and said, *I am not* (JOHN 18, 25.) and others. We incidentally mention the form: *I dare say not*, by which, however, only agreement with a negative sentence is usually expressed: "Though he was not the indulgent father that I am, Jack?" — "*I dare say not*." (SHERID. Riv. 3, 1.). "I don't recollect you," rejoined Mr. Pickwick. — "*I dare say not*." (DICKENS, Pickw. 2, 19.) "I don't think that Lucy has any idea in her head upon the subject" said Mrs. Roberts. — "*I dare say not*." (TROLLOPE, Framl. Pars. 1, 13.) The reference back to an interrogative sentence, or an assertion and a command, by *not* with the personal pronoun is older: "For shame put up." — "*Not I*." (SHAKSP., Tit. Andr. 2, 1.). "Welcome: sit down." — "*Not I*." (BEN JON., Poetast. 1, 1.). "Thou dost not mean to menace me?" — "*Not I*." (BYR., Manfr. 3, 4.). "Will you stay . . ?" — "*Not I*! stay you." (SHERID. KNOWLES, Virgin. 1, 1.); with which compare You never heard their names before, *not you* (SHERID., Riv. 4, 2.). The elliptical *not so* in a similar relation may finally be mentioned: They called him Zacharias . . And his mother answered and said, *Not so* (LUKE, 1, 59.). "Has Cæsar shed more Roman blood?" — "*Not so*." (ADDIS., Cato 4, 4.). What was my art? Genius, some say, — some, Fortune, — Witchcraft some. *Not so*, my art was Justice (BULW., Richel. 1, 2.) see p. 125.

Complete sentences in answers, particularly with the reference backwards of an auxiliary or modal verb, extend into Anglosaxon: Være þu tō dæg besvungen? *Ic nās* (THORPE, Anal. p. 116.). Cvyrt þu eart þu of his leorning-cnihtum? He viðsóc, and cvað: *Ic ne eom* (JON. 18, 25.). Vilt þu syllan þincg þine . . ? — *Ic nelle* (p. 110.). Comp.: Sōðlice sƿ eover sprac, *Hyt ys, hyt ys; Hyt nys, hyt nys* (MATH. 5, 37.). Even to *not I* there corresponds the Anglosax. *nic* (*ne-ic*): Eart þu vitega? and he andvurde and cvað: *Nic* (JON. 1, 21.). Vilt þu fōn sumne hvāl? — *Nic* (THORPE, Anal. p. 107.). Cvyrt þu eart þu of pysses leorning cnihtum? *Nicc, ne eom ic* (JON. 18, 17.). Thus the Gothic presents the Sen-

tences *Ni ïm* (l. c.) and *Né, ni ïm* 18, 25.). — In Old-English *nay* used substantively is often taken up into the sentence: This world is not so strong, *it is no nay* (CHAUC., C. T. 9015. cf. 8892.). *This is no nay*, on cros I must dede dre (TOWN. M. p. 212.). It shalle be so *with outten nay* (p. 232.), and also interwoven into other constructions: Of hire love *hoe saith me nay* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 3.). Wright's text of Chaucer presents a verb *nayte*: Ne he schal not *nayte* or denye his synne (p. 209. II.), for which Tyrwhitt has read: Ne he shal not *nay*, ne deny his sinne (p. 170. II.). The former reminds us of the Old-norse *neita*, negare.

- d) The causal adverbs are mostly forms transferred from the domain of the adverbs of place, among them compounds of *there* and *where* with prepositions, in which the adverbs take the place of neuter pronouns. The demonstrative and relative adverbs of this sort serve to connect sentences, and therefore come under consideration in the causal combination of sentences. In this place we particularly touch upon *why*, used in the direct and indirect question, and which interchanges with *wherefore*, and asks for the cause. See above upon *how* p. 111.

Why art thou wroth? (GEN. 4, 6.). "And have you never thought about it yourself?" — "*Why* should I?" (BULW., Maltrav. 1, 4.) Preposterous ass, that never read so far To know the cause *why* music was ordain'd (SHAKSP., Taming 3, 1.). We can not cross the cause *why* we are born (Love's L. L. 4, 3.). The reference to a substantive like *cause* makes the primitive interrogative pronoun appear in the syntactical relation of a relative. *Wherefore*, not so frequent in the question, is hardly distinguished notionally from *why*, although it seems to refer more to an objective cause: *Wherefore* hast thou afflicted thy servant? and *wherefore* have I not found favour in thy sight? (NUMB. 11, 11.). O *wherefore* is the deity so kind? (YOUNG, N. Th. 7, 324.). The contact of *why* with *how* has been already pointed out. In questions going properly to the motive, so far as they disclose the expression of astonishment, the latter particle stands: *How* durst thou, daughter, lend an ear To such deceitful stuff? (SHERID., Duenna 1, 1.)

But the particle *why* frequently appears as an interjection, and is denoted by grammarians by the name of an emphatic or, less clearly, of an expletive particle. The various shades of meaning, of which they are capable in this elliptical usage, are explained by its interrogative nature, in which the *why?* is still mixed with the *how?*, which are adapted to accompany alternating emotions. Comp. Vol. I. p. 430. It belongs particularly to the vivacity of common parlance: „Ay me! I am forsworn.” — "*Why*, he comes in like a perjure, wearing papers.” (SHAKSP., Love's L. L. 4, 3.) A fever in your blood? *why*, then incision Would let her out in saucers (ib.). Hast thou in thy heart one touch Of human kindness? if thou hast, *why*, kill me (BULW., Lady of L. 3, 2.). "Have you good shooting?" — "Shooting! *Why* there's no shooting at this time of the year." (BOURCIC., Lond. Assur. 1, 1.) "Who do you think this was?" — "Patience me — I can't guess!" — "*Why*, our saintly banker." (BULW., Maltrav. 4, 5.)

In the older language the interrogative *why*, alongside of which *for why*

stands, is in use along with *wherefore*. *Where-to*, now become rare, is also employed, which originally calls the purpose in question, but also, as the Latin *cur*, essentially of the same meaning, approximates to *quare*, interchanges with the former. The causal *why* and *for why* extend back into Anglosaxon. Old-Engl.: *Why* is me so wo? (WRIGHT A. HALLIW. I. 122.) *Wi* nul Goed mi soule fecche? (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 10.) *Sely* man, *Whi* syghest thou so harde? (P. PLOUGHM. p. 477.) When she is mery, than am I sad; and *cause whi* (A. GODWHEN in Wright a. Halliw., Rel. Ant. I. 25.). *Halfsax.*: *Whi* fullhtnesst þu piss leode, þiff patt iss patt tu narrt nohht Crist? (ORM. 10319.). *þiff* mann wile witemn *whi* Icc hafe don piss dede (ib. Ded. 111.). *Anglosax.*: *Hwi* forbeað Gød eov þās treoves vāstm, þe stent on middan neorxna vange? (A.-S. HOMIL. I. 16.) The interchange of *hwi* with the form *hū* is here not remarkable: *Hwi* ne synt ve mūðfreo? *hū* ne mōton ve sprecaþ þāt ve villað? (Ps. 11, 4.) The old *for why*, still surviving in some dialects, and in the inversion *whyvore* (Devon), used like *wherefore*, and is analogous to *for thy*, *for thi*, hereafter to be mentioned, remained long native to literature. Old-Engl.: A trew tokyn ist we shalle be savyd alle, *For whi*? The water . . Is fallen a fathom (TOWN. M. p. 33.). This wile ever endure, therof am I paide; *For why*? It is better wrought Then I coude haif thought (p. 27.). Sir, Y schall yow telle *for why*? (SRA AMAD. 116.) I rede that thou come not there, *Fore why* I wylle the seye (TORRENT 917.). *Halfsax.*: *Forr whi* wass patt tatt Sannt Johan Amang þe leode seȝde etc.? (ORM. 12690.) Þuhhte mikell wunnder *Forrwhi* þe preost swa lange wass . . att Godeess allterr (218.). *Anglosax.*: *For hwi* ne māgon hi? (BOETH. 29.) *For hwi* svā? (THORPE, Anal. p. 107.) Þu, Jordanen, *for hwi* gengdest on bæcling? (Ps. 113, 5.) The dative, here interchanging with the instrumental, is also found later. *Halfsax.*: Seoððen heo wes inætten Kair-Lion, ich wullen seggen þe *for wan* (LAJAM. I. 256. cf. I. 425. II. 629.). *Anglosax.*: *Forhvan* fluge þu svā? (Ps. 113, 5.), where it interchanges with *for hwi*. The interrogative *wherefore* does not seem to come into use till later. Old-Engl.: Ye men of Galilee, *Wherfor* mervelle ye? (TOWN. M. p. 300.) On the other hand *whereto* is found early: *Warto* tarie we so longe, to quelle hym? (R. or GL. I. 109.) *War-to* liveth selke a wrecche? (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 10.) "Ich hedde so i-bade for the, That thou sholdest comen to me." — "Mid the?" quod the wolf, "*war-to*?" (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 275.) *Wherto* were I a crowne? (TOWN. M. p. 130.) In Anglosaxon *tō hwi* is used analogously, wherein the idea of destination likewise passes into that of the motive: *Tō hwi* synd ge ymbhydige be reafe? (MATH. 6, 28.) *Tō hwi* gesyhst þu þāt mot on pines broðer eagan? (7, 2.)

The so-called expletive *why* likewise early appears, and might be prepared in Anglosaxon. Old-Engl.: "I warrant it a theef." — "*Why* nay" quod he (CHAUC., C. T. 3789.). "Is ther no remedy in this caas?" — "*Why* yis, for Gode." (3526.) *Whi*, syr, what alis you? (TOWN. M. p. 27.) *Why*, how have thay syche gawdes begun? (p. 56.) In Anglosaxon we mean *hwi* like *hū*, before questions, where the idea of causality is not to be taken up into the sentence: *Hwi* ne cveðe ve vel, þāt þu eart Samaritanisc? (JOH. 8, 48.) Gr. οὐ καλῶς λέγομεν. *Hū* nys seo savi sære þonne mete? (MATH. 6, 25.) Gr. οὐχ ἡ ψυχὴ πλείον ἐστὶ τῆς τροφῆς; *Hū* ne synd ge sēlan þonne hig? (6, 26.) Gr. οὐχ ὑμεῖς μᾶλλον διαφέρετε αὐτῶν; Wycliffe commonly renders this particle by *wher*, that is, Anglosaxon *hwāðer*, num, numquid.

3. The adverb may take, on the one hand, the place of a predicative, on the other, that of an attributive determination.

- a) Predicative completions are represented by a few adverbs of kind and manner. Adverbs like *so*, *thus*, *how*, *otherwise* have been already discussed in this respect, see p. 111. With this *well* is also associated.

Are you *well*? (SHAKSP., *Cymb.* 1, 7.) This may be *well* (MILT., P. L. 9, 826.) It could not but be *well* (TENNYS. p. 260.).

Old-Engl.: Thanked be fortune, and hire false wheel, That noon estat assureth to ben *weel* (CHAUC., C. T. 927). Haylle, Mary, and *welle* thou be (TOWN. M. p. 74.) along with: Lord *welle* is us (p. 32.). Comp. Middle-Highdutch: Daz ist *wol* (VRIDANK, Grimm 95, 11.) and: Da uns noch mit ir mære sô rehte *wol* wesen sol (IWEIN 11.). In Anglosaxon I have only met the construction with the dative: *Vel* lā *velis* ūrum mōdum (Ps. 34, 23.). *Vel* is þam, þe þāt mōt (CARDM. II. 367.). Comp. II. 1. p. 215. It is there mentioned how *woe*, opposed to *well*, and properly a substantive, shares both constructions. With the combination of both with the substantive verb we may think of the Latin precedent of *bene* and *male*, which is repeated in the corresponding forms in the Romance languages, and is analogous to that of *sic* and *ita* with *so*. The employment of adverbs instead of predicative nominatives, rests upon a closer connection with the verb, taken concretely, so that here the manner of being rather than the constitution of the subject comes into the foreground.

- b) If adverbs, to which those of place and of time especially belong, are joined to substantives, as it were as representatives of attributive determinations, the cause of this phaenomenon is partly an abbreviation of speech, which is to be reduced to a dependent sentence with the verb of existence, partly the verbal force imputed to a substantive with regard to a readily recognisable derivation. So far as adverbs precede the substantive in such a case, they remind one of that loose compounding to which the English tongue is so prone.

The *wills above* be done! (SHAKSP., *Temp.* 1, 1.) I pray thee by the *gods above* (TH. MOORE p. 5.). Say first, of *God above*, or *Man below*, What can we reason, but from what we know (POPE, *Essay on M.* 1, 17.). Mr. Jarvie took the advantage of his stopping after quoting the *above proverb*, to give him the requisite instructions (SCOTT, R. Roy 27.). James's assertion that this volume was commonly known under the *above title* (HALLIW., *Lud. Coventriae*, Introd. p. VII.). In the *pool below* I see a ghastly, headless phantom mirror'd (BULW., *Richel.* 1, 1.). The cause of *his arrival here* (SHAKSP., *Rich.* II. 1, 3.). I have just seized the happy opportunity of my friend's *visit here*, to get admittance into the family (GOLDSM., *She Stoops* 2.). Popularly: Bill you must take *this here young gem'man* and *that ere parcel to this here direction* (MARRYAT, P. Simple 1, 1.). — It is the signal of *our friends within* (BULW., *Rienzi* 5, 3.). *His education abroad* . . had given him but imperfect ideas of the grandeur of a Court (SCOTT, *Fort. of Nigel* 9.). During the whole period of *my life abroad* . . (BYR., *Lett.*) He . . unminded slunk Into the *wood fast by* (MILT., P. L. 10, 332.). From the *far-off isles* (LONGF. I. 252.). A Mr. Nevil, a sort of *far-away cousin* of the Randal's (HOLME LEE, *Thorney Hall* 3.). In *my way hither* . . I observed your niece's maid coming forth from a circulating library (SEERID., *Riv.* 1, 2.). In this *your pilgrimage nowhither* (CARL., *Past a. Pres.* 3, 1.). Of the *hither side* (MILT., P. L. 11, 574. cf. 3, 722.). Tarry till *his return home* (FIELD., *J. Andr.* 2, 16.). *My chief inducement down*, was to be instrumental

in forwarding your happiness (GOLDSM., *She Stoops* 2.). — So that here men are punished, for *before-breach* of the king's law in *now the king's quarrel* (SHAKSP., *Henry V.* 4, 1.). The seed of *the then world* (BYR., *Cain* 1, 1.). Not knowing thy name, nor being able, in *thy then state*, to learn it from thy lips (BULW., *Rienzi* 1, 6.). Good, *sometime queen* (SHAKSP., *Rich.* II. 5, 1.). Thy *sometime brother's wife* (1, 2.). Thither came, in *times afar*, Stern Lochlin's sons (SCOTT, *L. Minstr.* 6, 22.). Other determinations than those of place and time are more rarely employed in the same manner: Call fire, and sword, and desolation, A godly, *thorough Reformation* (BUTL., *Hud.* 1, 1, 201.). A clear and *thorough* notion of what is called the solar system (CHATHAM, *Lett.* 6.). My tongue can not impart My *almost drunkenness* of heart (BYR., *Bride* 2, 18.). If English lexicographers cite a few adverbs like *hither* and *thorough*, which arises from the corresponding preposition, the grammatically historical consideration retains its right unimpaired, although the obliteration of the parts of speech for the present consciousness of the language is, from that conception, sufficiently clear.

What is permitted to the adverb with the substantive, is also shewn with the substantive pronoun: *Him here* I keep with me (COLER., *Picc.* 5, 1.). Slipping away to house with *them beneath*, His old companions (ROGERS, *It, Banditti*). This is equally a matter of course with a demonstrative pronoun, which takes up a preceding substantive notion: For had it hit, The upper part of him the blow Had slit, as sure as *that below* (BUTL., *Hud.* 1, 2, 822.).

Compound adverbial determinations as prepositional members of sentences, preceding a substantive, render prominent a unity of notion, such as may present itself with simple prepositional adverbs: I am not much a friend to *out-of-doors reading* (CH. LAMB., *Essays*). How can heaven see an honest man and his family in such an *out-of-the-way place* as this (TAYLOR A. READE, *Masks* 2.).

The older language makes hardly less use of compounds of the adverb with the substantive. The want of corresponding adverbs of place and time must early have favoured the abbreviation of a developed determination of this sort into an adverb. Old-Engl.: A morwe *Bruth with inne* with ys ost out drowe (R. or Gl. I. 19.). *De ost withoute* of France biseyede hem anon (ib.). Out of a *wode pere* (ib.). Hii gonne to fle vaste In to a *wode per by syde* (I. 170.). To a *cité there besyde* (TORRENT 2301.). *The branches above* boren grett charge (DEPOS. OF RICH. II. p. 5.). My saulle lufes my lord *abuf* (TOWN. M. p. 82.). That we mowe keepe *these artyculus here* (HALLIW., *Freemas.* 499.). And to the *awngel an heigh* Answerede after (P. PLOUGHM. p. 9.). — For *hys er dedes wys* and wyght (OCTOBIAN 1807.). Thou woldest haue undoing Of *thi to-nights meting* (SECVN SAGES 2405.). Adverbs also stand with substantive pronouns: And blewe *wylde-fyr* in trumpees of gynne, To mekyl sorwe to *hem with inne* (RICH. C. DE L. 5229.). — Hafsax.: He welde *pat riche hæp* (LAJAM. L. 165.). *Þreatoþ* pene castel & *pat folc per inne* (I. 28.). *pet folc per wið innen* heom ohtliche wið fehten (I. 28.). Anglos.: Se munt . . ealle *pā neðstowa pær ywōðtan* forbārnoð (BOETH. 15.). Him *pāt*

þonne geleānað lifes valdend heofona hyrde āfter heonan sīðe (Cod. Exon. 450, 9.), where GRAM offers the compound *heonansīðe*.

The combination of substantives with forms compounded of prepositions and adverbs of place has been touched upon at p. 92.

III. Attributive Determinations.

As adverbial determinations attach themselves to the notion of the activity, and thereafter to words preserving more or less the character of the notion of the activity, so too the attributive determinations, which, by reason of their reference to the noun, may be called the adnominal, attach themselves to the substantive, as the subject, predicative completion, or object.

The object is determinable in various modes. Externally, it is determined by the article, the numeral and the pronoun in a demonstrative and quantitative regard, or, with regard to the subject viewing it. The parts of speech coming under consideration we name determinatives. But it can be more particularly characterized by the quality inhering in it. This is done by qualitative determinations, which the attributive adjective, as the denoting the object by a mark, accomplishes. But the language moreover makes use of adverbial determinations, in order to denote the object more particularly. These may be in part regarded as the substitute for the adjective; in part they make the substantive encroach into the sphere of the verb. The attributive determination, in the narrower sense, accordingly rests upon the predicative and the objective relation, in which the act of reference to a subject is contained, an act which is here supposed to be already completed.

The unity of the attribute with its object, where a predicative relation cannot be thought as fundamental, is originally expressed by the concord of it (that is, of the article, of the numeral, of the pronoun, of the adjective) with the substantive in gender, number and case. With the crystallization of the originally inflective forms, which is in part ancient, this congruence in the form of the words only becomes in a small measure apparent in English.

The attributive relation appears as attributive in the stricter sense, and as the appositive relation. In the former the attribute stands in the closest relation to the substantive, and, in a unity of accent, makes the nature of an abbreviated sentence appear more decidedly, although in a few cases the distinction of both relations becomes effaced.

A. The attributive Relation in the narrower Sense.

1. Determinatives.

A determinative contains no objective mark of the object. Where a non-determinative is added to it, the relation of the inordination, not that of the coordination of determinations arises; that is to say, both attributives determine the substantive, though not in the same

A. The attributive Relation. 1. Determinatives. The definite Article. 141

manner, and the determinative serves to determine the substantive along with its other attribute. Comp.: *These young men* were wild and unsteady (MACAUL., Essays II. 36.). If more than one determinative is added to a subject, the relation of inordination also takes place among them: This task, which almost *any other writer* would have found impracticable, was easy to him (ib. I. 23.), whereas adjectives appearing beside each other may stand in the relation both of coordination and of inordination.

a) The Article.

The weakened demonstrative pronoun and the numeral for unity, likewise become unaccented, appear, under the names of the definite and the indefinite article, in a wider range than this, their original meaning, brings with it. Their syntactical employment rests upon the enlarged use of Anglosaxon in the modern language. The French article, frequently coinciding in usage with Anglosaxon, seems, in its deviations from the latter, to have had little influence upon the further development of the English linguistic usage. The greatest deviation from the Anglosaxon usage has gradually fallen to the lot of the so-called indefinite article.

The Definite Article.

The definite article has dwindled down to the form *the*, which may be regarded as the original masculine form (Anglosaxon *se* [pe], *sē* [peó], *pāt*, Goth. *sa*, *só*, *pata*), the fuller neuter whereof, *that*, survives at present as a genuine demonstrative pronoun for all genders, and which, in its reference backwards, assumes at the same time the nature of a relative pronoun.

The Gothic *sa* referred properly to the object before or near to the speaker. The Gothic used it for the Greek *ὁ* and *αὐτός* substantively and adjectively, but at the same time as an article, answering to the Greek *ὁ*, *ἡ*, *τό*, with a perceptible recollection, however, of its demonstrative nature. The English article also remains so far faithful to this nature of the notion, that it refers the object, which, by itself, is denoted by the substantive, to the view of the speaker according to the sphere of its existence.

a. The definite article serves in general:

aa) to denote individual objects present to the view or familiar to the general consciousness.

The wolf beholds *the moon* (SHAKSP., Mids. N. Dr. 5, 2.).
The skies stoop down in their desire (TENNYS. p. 97.).
The wind sounds like a silver wire (ib.).
The time grows stringent (CARL., Past a. Pres. 1, 2.).
Who is it in *the press* that calls on me? (SHAKSP., Jul. Cæs. 1, 2.).
She spent a few minutes in looking earnestly towards *the north* (COOP., Spy 13.).
And frighten foolish babes *the Lord* knows why (BYR. p. 414.).
How then shall *the scriptures* be fulfilled? (MATTH. 26, 54.).
Early in 1628 *the Parliament* met (MACAUL., Essays II. 33.).
Lords of *the Treasury* have in all times their impassable limits (CARL.,

Past. a. Pres. 2, 13.). Here too belongs the denoting the parts of a whole, especially of organic bodies, as well as of objects jointly conditioned by anything, and which, with reference to the totality to which they belong, may be supposed to be known: Our heroine appeared in *the drawing-room* (COOP., Spy 13.). All day within the dreamy house, *The doors* upon their hinges creak'd; The blue fly sung in *the pane*; the mouse Behind *the mouldering wainscot* shriek'd (TENNY'S. p. 11.). The latter animals have *the tail* only tipped with long hair, *the mane* erect, and *the legs* smooth and naked (CHAMBERS, Informat. I. 557. I.).

Apart from the separate classes of substantives and exceptional cases, the principle of the usage only is to be indicated, as extending through all periods of the language. Old-Engl.: *The mone and the sterren* with hire bereth *the sonne* bryt (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 132.). Engeland . . Yset in *pe ende of þe world* (R. OF GL. I. 1.). I siȝe *þe spirit* comynge as a culuer (WYCL., Joh. 1, 32.). The leste sterre i-wis In hevene, as *the boc* ous saith, more than *the wrthe* is (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 132.). On hire cheken *the teres* meten (Anecd. p. 11.). Have here *the coppe* with *the drinke* (p. 10.). His blames rehersed at *the parliament* (DEPOSIT. OF RICH. II. p. 14.). And bare a-bouȝte the barge, and blamed *the maister* . . Thanne *the maste* in the myddis . . Bowid flor brestynge . . They had be throwe overe *the borde* (p. 29 sq.). Folk, that han *the face* all platt, alle pleyȝn (MAUNDEV. p. 204.). Folk . . that han *the lippe* above the mouthe so gret (p. 205.). Halfsax.: To reste eode *þa sunne* (LAȜAM. III. 132.). Feole craftes he cuȝe, *þa he isah* in *þan lufte* (III. 224.). To lokien in *þan leofte*, to lokien i *þan steorren* (II. 598.). Swa muchel heom bi-hæhte þat heo gædereden in *þan ærde* mucle scip-ferde (II. 7 sq.). He bigann . . To fullhtenn baldeliȝ *þe folc* (Orm. 10261.). Te lesenn mannkinn . . Ut off *þe deofless* walde (641.). Swa summ *þe Goddspellworihhte* sæȝp (759.). Þatt stanndepp o *þe Goddspellhoc* (315.). Bi *þone toppe* he hine nom (LAȜAM. I. 30.). Anglosax.: *Seo heofon* belȝcȝ on hyre bosme ealne middan-earð (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 1.). *Seo sunne* is sviȝe mycel (p. 3.). Ælc sæ . . hæfȝ grund on *þree eorðan* (p. 10.). And vrāt mid his fingre on *þære eorðan* (Joh. 8, 6, 8.). *Se Hælend* eode on sum castel (LCC. 10, 38.). Þā ofslīhȝ *se deðfol* *þe him viȝstandaȝ* (A.-S. HOMIL. I. 6.). *Se þe* ne gæȝ āt *þam geate* in tō sceāpa folde (Joh. 10, 1.). Hig gefyldon þā (sc. fatu) oȝ *þone brerd* (2, 7.). Him feollon teāras of *þam eāȝum* (APOLLON. OF T. p. 15.).

ββ) Or it serves to point back to an object already named or precisely denoted. An abstract term may also have for its support the activity denoted by a sentence.

A lofty island was descried to the west . . Columbus gave to *the island* the name of Dominica (IRVING, Life of Columb. 6, 1.). And the earth did quake . . Now when the centurion . . saw *the earthquake* (MATTH. 27, 51—54.).

Old-Engl.: Wher Moses gaue not a lawe; and no man of þou doip *þe lawe*? (WYCL., Joh. 7, 19.). Halfsax.: þis iherde Seuarus *þe inne* Rome wes kaisere . . *þe kaisere* sende his seonde (LAȜAM. II. 6.). He uerde riht to Eouerwicke . . *þa burh* he anan bilæi (II. 8.). Anglos.: Hū ne sealde Moyses eov æ, and eover nān ne healt *þā æ*? (Joh. 7, 19.). And vorhte fenn of his spatle, and smyrede mid *þam fenne* ofer

his eágan (9, 6.). And he svör . . þá veard se cyning geunrét, for þam áðe (MARC. 6, 23, 26).

- γ) It is likewise added to substantives, which are only limited to determinate persons or things by other attributive determinations or by succeeding sentences, especially relative sentences.

When went there by an age since *the great flood*.? (SHAKSP., Jul. Cæs. 1, 2.) Lord Coningsby, Mr. Stanhope, and Mr. Lechmere, were *the principal interrogators* (JOHNS., Lives 2. Prior.). Being *the third son of the family*, and not bred to any trade, my head began to be filled very early with rambling thoughts (DE FOE, Robins. p. 1.). Let *the fourth part of your declared yearly revenue*, for this once only, be paid down (CARL., French Revol. 1, 7, 1.). I was born in *the year 1632*, in *the city of York* (DE FOE, Robins. p. 1.). God in *the nature of each being* founds its proper bliss (POPE, Essay on M. 3, 109.). *The place, which the wisdom or policy of antiquity had destined for the residence of the Abyssinian princes*, was a spacious valley (JOHNS., Rassell, 1.). *The cloaked embodied Justice that sits in Westminster-Hall* (CARL., Past a. Pres. 1, 2.). Let it sleep in *the shade Where . . his relics are laid* (TH. MOORE p. 204.). *The grand question still remains, Was the judgment just?* (ib.)

Old-Engl.: *Te kyng of Alemaigne gederede ys host* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 70.). *Al the righte way to Doevere ward* (p. 71.). *Hast þou forþete þe gret wo, and þe mony barde wonde, þat ich hadde yþoled for þi fader?* (R. of GL. I. 24.) He wente him to *then inne Ther hee wrode inne* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 3.). *Al the sinne ich wolde for-give The mon that smite off min heved* (p. 10.). Halssax.: *þat heom tæhte þe hezhe mon, þe gode biscop Dunian* (LAJAM. II. 1.). Let itt sippenn streonenn forþ þe laffdi; *Sannite Marze* (ORM. 334.). *3iff patt itt ohht færlike seþ þe wlite off emnglekinde* (665.). *Þat wes þat bridde mæste uihþ þe auere wes here idiht* (LAJAM. III. 95.). Anglosax.: *He sealde þæt betste hors* (BEDA, 3, 14.). Ic hine ærære on *þam ytemestan dæge* (JOH. 6, 44.). He æbræc intó *þam búre þær heo inne lág* (APOLLON. or T. p. 1 sq.). *Seó tíð cymð, þæt mannes Sunu bið gesevutelod* (JOH. 12, 23.).

- δ) But the definite article may also denote the substantive without a more particular determination, or as a notion of the kind or of the sort, with such a more particular determination; that is to say, as a whole, as it were exhibited to view, or the notion, in its whole extent. When in this case the singular of concrete substantives appears, the individual may be considered the representative of the kind, or of the sort.

Thy prejudices, Syphax, won't discern . . how *the hero* differs from *the brute* (ADDIS., Cato 1, 4.). Woe for *the pilgrim* then in *the wild deer's forest far!* (MRS. HEMANS p. 77.) He has planted bowers by the way side, for the refreshment of *the pilgrim* and *the sojourner* (IRVING, Sk. B. Roscoe.). Time was when *the mere handworker* needed not announce his claim to the world by Manchester Insurrections (CARL., Past a. Pres. 1, 3.). *The rivers* run not back (BULW., Richel. 4, 1.). Go, from *the creatures* thy instruction take: Learn from *the birds* what food the thickets yield; Learn from *the beasts* the physic of *the field*

(POPE, *Essay on M.* 3, 172.). Friedrich is by no means one of the perfect demi-gods (CARL., *Freder. the Gr.* 1, 1.).

Old-Engl.: Thulke soule nymeth his in and bileveth i-wis In the *chil-des* brayn an beȝ (WRIGHT, *Pop. Treat.* p. 140.). Men might his bridel beere Gyngle . . . as lowde as doth the *chapel belle* (CHAUC., *C. T.* 169.). Ever the *levest* we leoseth a-last (Polit. S. p. 149.). Rith as the *hous hennes* upon londe hacchen (DEPOS. or RICH. II. p. 13.). Halfsax.: þe bridde seolpe dop þe mann Wepenn . . . forr hiss aþenn sinne (Orm. 5652.). Anglosax.: Māy se blinda pone blindan lædan? (LCC. 6, 39.) þam seócan men byð mete lāf (ETTM. 42, 2.). Eádige synd þá clæn-heortan (MATTH. 5, 8.). Cweðe ge gelyfde ænig þara ealdra oððe þara Pharisæa on hýne? (JOH. 7, 48)

It results from the instances cited that the pronoun was in use as an article in the earliest ages, in the whole sphere which can belong to the article in all languages. But how far the necessity for its employment has been enhanced in the course of time, and how far in ancient and modern times the substantive without an article may run parallel with it, may appear from the subsequent discussion.

β. But, along with the general determination of the use of the definite article, its combination with separate classes of substantives is to be considered more closely.

αα) It is particularly concrete names of kinds before which the definite article appears, partly to denote one or several individuals of the kind, partly the whole kind.

a) Those names of things which, for the general manner of thinking, are limited to an individual, commonly take the article. Here belong *the world, the universe, the earth, the sun, the moon, the ocean, the sea, the sky, the equator*, and the like, as well as words serving eminently to denote one thing, *the bible, the gospel, the scripture*, when they are to be denoted as known only with regard to this substantial unity.

God created *the heaven* and *the earth* (GEN. 1, 1. cf. 9, 14, 17, etc.). That Adam that kept *the paradise* (SHAKSP., *Com. of Ess.* 4, 3.). Come o'er *the sea*, Maiden, with me (TH. MOORE p. 243.). — "If a layman read *the Bible*." (SCOTT, *Tales of a Grandf.* 28.). It is in *the Scripture* (STERNE, *Tristr.* Sh. 6, 6.). *The Gospel* gives no ground of hope (MARRIOTT, *Serm.* p. 104.) Comp. above α, αα.

But so far as appellatives are usually referred to one individual, they readily receive the character of proper names, and, as such, may forego the article. Thus, we often meet with *heaven, hell, purgatory, paradise*, and also *earth* and others, without it.

Earth smiles around, with boundless bounty blest, And *Heav'n* beholds its image in his breast (POPE, *Essay on M.* 4, 371.). As I hate *hell* (SHAKSP., *Rom. a.* Jul. 1, 1.). I should venture *purgatory* for it (Oth. 4, 4.). The souls who were in *Purgatory* (SCOTT, *Tales of a Grandf.* 13.). By Him that . . . sent thee forth . . . One of his Holy streams to lave the mounts Of *Paradise* (MILMAN, *Belshazzar*). With a further attributive determination the article may again be added. Comp.: Vengeance, from *the hollow hell!* (SHAKSP., *Oth.* 3, 3.); but it is also not

put in this case: To find out practices of *unning hell* (1, 3.). Say, then, did *puting Heaven* condemn the deed? (CRABBE, Love a. Madness.) — With other names of things also they act analogously: The worship also of saints, for which *Scripture* gives us no warrant whatever (SCOTT, Tales of a. Grandf. 28.). It is plain from reason as well as from *Holy Scripture* (MARRIOTT, Sermon Lond. 1820. p. 3.) [thus commonly in the singular]. To Nature and to *Holy Writ* Alone did God the boy commit (COLER., Tell's Birth-Place).

In the ancient language the article is also found in similar cases. Old-Engl.: In *pe ende of þe world* (R. or Gl. I. 1. cf. WYCL., Joh. 3, 16.). *Urthe* is a-midde *the hevene* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 132.). He *pat* is of *the erpe*, *spekith of þe erpe* (WYCL., Joh. 3, 31.). *Ones goth the sonne* aboute (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 132.). *The mone* is next the grounde (ib.). To *the see* hi wendeth aȝe (p. 137.). — *Thei han . . the Byble*, written in here langage (MAUNDEV. p. 136.). The preceptes of *the gospelle* (p. 137.). As David seith in *the Sauter* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 281.). Halſax.: *þurh þe werelld* (ORM. 17546.). *þe sune riseþþ* (7095.). Off *þe lift* (17553.). *Swa summ þe Goddspell kipeþþ* (6489.). Itt iss o *þe Goddspellhoc* (6478.). Anglosax.: *Väterjende ealre þære eorðan brádnisse* (GEN. 2, 6.). *Svá picce* is *þeð heofon* mid steorrum áfýlled (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 5.). *Séð sunne* is sviðe mycel (ib.). *Se mōna* and ealle steorran (ib.). *Þæt fýr on þære helle* (BORTH. 15.). On *þá sveartan helle* (CAEDM. 311. cf. 361. 526. 789.). — On ealle þeóða ærest gebyræð beón *þæt godspel* gebodod (MARC. 11. 3.). Yet the omission of the article with Heaven, Earth, Hell &c. is very familiar. Old-Engl.: Her on *worolde* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 172.). *Hevene* was y-closed (P. PLOUGHM. p. 277.). Thorough *purgatorie* (p. 138.). *Urthe* is a lutel hurfte aȝen *hevene* i-wis (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 132.). I herde men upo *mold* make mucche mon (Polit. S. p. 149.). The righte put of *helle* (Pop. Treat. p. 132.). Forst . . in May That *sonne* from the southward wyppeth away (Polit. S. p. 214.). — Seythe *Holy Writ* (MAUNDEV. p. 110.). Halſax.: *Heofne* wass oppnidd (ORM. 10880.), *Swa summ erpe* wattered iss (13864.). Na mar þann *helle* maȝ beon full (10223.). *Hellepitt* iss næfre full (10218.). Inn *helleground* (10508.). This is still more frequent in Anglosax.: A penden standeð *voruld* under volcnum (CAEDM. 912.). God lufode *middan-eard* (JOH. 3, 16.). Se *þe of eorðan* ys, se sprycð be eorðan (3, 31.). *Þá he* gevorhte *heofonan* and *eorðan* (ETTM. 39, 10.). *Heofon* and *hel* (Cod. EXON. 97, 17.). Bið him *hel* bilocen, *heofonrice* ágiefen (77, 21.). On middan *neorzen-avanges* (GEN. 3, 8.). God hi þá gebrohte binnan *Paradisum* *þæt ve* hātað on Engliſc *neorzena-vang* (BASIL., Hexam. 16.). Gescōp as ālmihtiga God *se* and *eorðan* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 2.). *Sāge me þære burge* naman, *þær sunne* up gæð? (ETTM. 41, 9.). *Tvā miccle* leóht, *þæt* is *sunne* and *mōna* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 2.). — Hig gelyfdon *hālgum* *gevrte* (JOH. 2, 22.).

- b) Names of kinds used for persons, which are usually referred to one known individual, of course take the definite article. Here, for instance, belong: *the Father, the Son, the Holy Ghost, the Lord, the Saviour, the Creator, the devil, the fiend, the Spirit*, and others, as well as all names of persons going to an individual determined in place or time, as, *the emperor, the king, the duke, the pope, the bishop, the mayor, the sheriff, the bailiff*,

that is, the present (our) emperor &c., which are singled out of the kind through the article. Since *Messiah*, *Messias*, used substantively, from a hebrew adjective, as well as the translation *Christ*, may be treated as the name of a kind, the article may be given to them, even in the limitation to the determinate person: We have found *the Messias*, which is, being interpreted, *the Crist* (JOHN 1, 41.), which *Christ* does not ordinarily have. The article is conferred upon the name *God* when more particularly determined: *The God of my mercy* (Ps. 59, 10.). In the word of *the most high God* (MARRIOTT, Serm. p. 78.), although not always: By the free grace and mercy of *Almighty God* (p. 73.), as also in *God Almighty*. The article is also omitted in a few cases with the names of persons in question: Now, *Lord* be thanked for my good amends (SHAKSP., Taming, 2. Induct.). And skip at every step, *Lord* knows how high (BYR. p. 414.). A mighty, free and easy, *devil-may-care* sort of person (DICKENS, Pickw. 2, 20.).

If the name of the person is individualized by the addition of a proper name, the addition of the definite article is equally warrantable: Hath *the prince* John a full commission? (SHAKSP., II Henry IV. 4, 1.) Diocletian imitated *the emperor Probus* (GIBBON, Decl. 9.). *The consul* Appius Claudius (TYTLER, Anc. Hist. Edinb. 1848. p. 145.). *The centurion* Lucius Virginius (ib.). *The archduke* Charles (SCOTT, Tales of a Grandf. 30.). It is *the Count* Melun (SHAKSP., John 5, 4.). The heir of *the Lord* Hungerford (III Henry VI. 4, 1.). There's *the Lord* Petty Bag (TROLL., Framl. Pars. 1, 18.). Northumberland and *the prelate* Scroop (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 5, 5.). *The cardinal* Pandulph is within at rest (John 5, 7.). *The cardinal* Balue is politic and liberal (SCOTT, Qu. Durw. 13.). When *the Syndic* Pavillon was announced (22.). I . . went to deliver my letters of introduction. I had one in particular to *the Admiral* Apraxin (BULW., Dever. 5, 2.). *The goddess* Leto (TYTLER, Anc. Hist. p. 79.). About the marriage of *the Lady* Bona (SHAKSP., III Henry VI. 4, 1.). John Lisle's widow was therefore commonly known as *the Lady* Alice (MACAUL., Hist. of E. II. 206.). *The Duchess* Amalia corresponded with her (LEWES, G. I. 12.). *The Countess* Isabelle . . suffered the conversation to drop (SCOTT, Qu. Durw. 14.).

The article is, however, uncommonly frequently omitted with the familiar terms of dignity, office, occupation &c. of persons, as well as with terms of courtesy: The Christian prince, *king* Henry (SHAKSP., I Henry VI. 5, 3.). And answer made *king* Arthur (TENNYS. p. 197.). *Queen* Hecuba and Helen (SHAKSP., Troil. a. Cress. 1, 2.). In a castle in the north *Queen* Mary is confined? (SCOTT, Abbot 12.) *Prince* John . . occupied his castle (Ivanh. 14.). *Prince* Harry (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 1, 1.). I'll send *duke* Edmund to the Tower (4, 9.). *Lord* Hamlet is a prince etc. (Hamlet. 2, 2.). He found *Lord* Sussex dressed (SCOTT. Kenilw. 14.). His brother, *earl* James (Minstrelsy I. 100.). To meet *Baron* Henry, her own

true knight (L. Minstr. 2, 27.). *Counts* Altringer and Galas have maintain'd Their little army faithful to its duty (COLER., Picc. 1, 3.). *Bishop* Hooper, *Bishop* Ridley (MACAUL., H. of E. I. 49.). *Archbishop* Grindal (I. 50.). *Cardinal* Fisher or *Cardinal* Pole (I. 51.). *Pope* Alexander began the cruel persecution of the Albigenes (HORT, Univ. Hist. p. 168.). *Arch-deacon* Grantly will be there (TROLL., Framl. Pars. 1, 4.). *Abbot* Hugo assembles us in Chapter (CARL., Past a. Pres. 2, 4.). The original of *Father* Dominic, the best comic character of Dryden (MACAUL., Essays I. 88.). *General* Gates is an Englishman (COOP., Spy 1.). *Colonel* Birch took the same side (MACAUL., Hist of E. IV. 31.). *Major* Bridgenorth himself felt this (SCOTT, Peveril 2.). *Captain* Foley led the way (SOUTHEY, Nelson). *Admiral* Barrington . . beat off the Comte d'Estaing in three several attacks (ib.). Is there not *doctor* Titus Oates (SCOTT, Peveril 21.). *Lawyer* Clippurse found his patron involved in a deep study (SCOTT, Waverley 2.). *Astronomer* Bailly notices that the *Sieur* Reveillon is not at his post (CARL., French Revol. I. 4, 3.). When sister Livy is married to *farmer* Williams (GOLDSM., Vic. 17.). A visit to *neighbour* Flamborough's (16.). *Sir* Walter Scott gives us a novel; *Mr.* Hallam a critical and argumentative history (MACAUL., Essays I. 113.). We owe *master* Bridgenorth some deference (SCOTT, Peveril 6.). *Lady* Lufton had but two children (TROLL., Framl. Pars. 1, 1.). *Mrs.* Heakbane was a tall woman (Antiqu. 15.). *Dame* Magdalen Græme thus addressed her grandson (Abbot 12.). Didst thou ever read the history of *Sister* Margaret? (Antiqu. 6.) — The article may be omitted even with a few attributive determinations which precede the name of the kind: *Old* *sir* Charles is arrived (GOLDSM., She Stoops 5.). *Old* *Mr.* Wilmot drinking to Moses (Vic. 32.). The paroxism of rage into which *poor* *old* *Lord* Strutt fell (MACAUL., Essays II. 128.).

The signaling of names of persons, attributed in an eminent sense to a determinate personality, by the definite article, extends into Anglosaxon. Comp.: *se Fæder, se Sunu, se Hælend, se Gást, se feōnd, se costnigend* and the like: Svā *se Fæder* āvecð þā deādan, and geliffast, svā eac *se Sunu* geliffast þā þe he vyle (JOH. 5, 21.). Þā gyt nās *se Gást* geseald (7, 39.). Hig genāmon *þone Hælend* (MATH. 26, 57.). Þā forlēt *se deōfol* hine (4, 11.). Þā geneālæhte *se costnigend* (4, 2.). Even with *God* the article sometimes stands: *Se God* ys cūð on þære byrig (Ps. 47, 3.) as with the article preceding: *Se lifigenda God* (BASIL., Hexam. 2.). *Se ālmihtiga fæder* (ib.). *þas almihtigan Godes sunu* (ib.), beside *Almihtig God* (3.). The article is indeed often absent with similar expressions: *Metod* āfter sceaf scirum sciman . . æfen ærest (CARDM. 136.). *Se þe com on dryhtnes naman* (MARC. 11, 9.). *Fæder* lufað *þone Sunu* (JOH. 3, 35. cf. 6, 27.). *Gást* is *se þe liffaste* 6, 63.). *Scofastnes* ys geworden *þurh Hælend Crist* (1, 17.). *Þurh deōfol* besvican (BASIL., Hexam. 2.). Comp. Old-Engl.: *Thanne* flawmeth he as fir On *Fader* and on *Filius* (P. PROGHM. p. 361.). Halfsax.: *Deofell* iss . . Off . . nipfull herrte (ORM. 671.) and the like. Thus *Drihtin* is used without the article in the Halfsaxon of Orm: *Drihtin* hæfde þanne sett (491.), as *Lord* often is

in Old-Engl.: Hayl Marie of thonke vol, *Lord* by mid *pe* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 42.). The *Messias* commonly occurs without the article. Old-Engl.: *Moyses* or *Messie* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 61.). We have founden *Messias* (WYCLIFFE, Joh. 1, 41.). Halfsax.: þær *Messyass* soþ Crist, seþ Godd To manne cumenn solde (ORM. 7238, cf. 12753. 13239.). Anglosax.: Ve gemetton *Messiam* (JOH. 1, 41.).

Other substantives which, with the article, point to definite personalities, named at a time and place, also occur with the article in ancient times. Old-Engl.: Tãou art welcomere then *the king* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 12.), yet it is sometimes absent: Berip to *architriclyn* . . and þei token, and as *architriclyn* tastide etc. (WYCL., Joh. 2, 8 sq.) whereas in Anglosaxon: þã *se ærlyhte*-ealdor þãs vînes onbyrgde (ib.) stands.

If a generic name is referred to a person by a proper name following it, the definite article is not unusual with the generic name which precedes. Old-English: *pe kyng* Arture (R. OF GL. I. 168.). *The king* Nabugodonosore (CHAUC., C. T. 15631.). Thenne seide *the kyng* Philip (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 190.). *pe duc* Wyllam (R. OF GL. I. 359.). *The duyk* Antoyne of Cartage (ALIS. 3558.). *Of the erl* Hugilin of Pise (CHAUC., C. T. 15893.). *The admiral* Salomé (ALIS. 3557.). Upon *the tyraunt* Creom hem to wreke (CHAUC., C. T. 963.). This tree saugh *the prophete* Daniel in spirit (p. 186. L.). *The apostel* Poule unto the Romayns writeth p. 151. I.). *The quene* Candace (ALIS. 6686.). *The queen* Ipolita (CHAUC., C. T. 870.). Ageynes *theo lady* Olimpias (ALIS. 190.). In the temple of the goddesse Clemence (930.). Halfsax.: þa seide *pe king* Basian (LAJAM. II. 19. cf. 23.). *pe king* Latin (I. 8). For *þan duke* Gaulun (I. 90.). Of Spaine *pe kaisere* Meodras (III. 5.). *pe eorl* Aruiragus (I. 395.). Icure *pe eorl* Canaan (II. 57.). *pe bissop* Basan (II. 1. modern text). Ladde *þa quene* Delgan toward Denemarke (I. 194.). Off *pe Laferrd* Crist (ORM. 5810.). *pe laffadiz* Sannte Marþe (2335.). Anglosax.: *Se cýning* Álfred (877.). *Se cýning* Eádmund (SAX. CHR. 943.). *Se cýning* Áðel-ræd (984.). He vrãc *þone ealdorman* Cumbran (755.). But we early meet a name of dignity or a title without the article, which is early widely diffused. Old-Engl.: *Kyng* Macolm spousesde Margarete so (R. OF GL. II. 368.). *Kyng* Wyllam bypozte him (ib.). So dude *kyng* Porus (ALIS. 5552.). After *kyng* Harry (RICH. C. DE L. 1.). *Kyng* David (MAUNDV. p. 73.). Faste by, is *kyng* Heroudes hows (p. 88.). *Duc* Wyllam (R. OF GL. I. 359.). *Duk* Perotheus loved wel Arcite (CHAUC., C. T. 1204.). In the lond of *Prestre* John (MAUNDV. p. 398. cf. p. 42.). *Sire* Simond de Montford has suore bi ys cop (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 71.). *Sir* Cleges knelyd on his kne (SIR CLBOES 166.). *Sire* Do-weles doughter (P. PLOUGHM. p. 159.). Ffor to queme *sir* Pride (DEPOS. OF RICH. II. p. 20.). The wise astrologe *daun* Ptholomé (CHAUC., C. T. 5906.). *Daun* Pharao (16619.). Than com riden *maister* Catoun (SEUYN SAGES 2172.). Than seide *master* Bancillas (371.). Of *chylde* Ipomydon here is a space (IPOMYDON 528.). *Schild* Florentin was lered in boke (SEUYN SAGES 355.). To *dame* Siriz the hende (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 6.). Lovest thou wel *dame* Margeri? (p. 8.) So dude *dame* Olimpias (ALIS. 167.). These marchauntz him told of *dame* Constaunce (CHAUC., C. T. 4604.). This practise points to the influence of the Old-French: *Rois* Eneas le toli Elinant (GERH. V. VIANE 2092.). Ce dist *dus* Naines (1755.). Se *Dans* Gerars ne le vent (1798.). *Sire* Ernouz, ses mariz vint (RUTEBEORF I. 297.). De *maître* Jehan de Paris (I. 46.). *Sire* Gombert, dist *Dame* Guile (BARBAZAN, Fabl. et C. III. 244.) and so on. The inversion of the substantives, running parallel with it, without an article's being necessary to the name of

the kind, is conformable to the Old-Germanic usage. Old-Engl.: *Unto Herode kyng* Hast with alle youre myght (TOWN. M. p. 146.). My moder was Awnntt unto *Mary madyn mylde* (p. 165.). Halſax.: *Euan-der king* hine aqualde (LAſAM. III. 75.). To *Seguine duc* (I. 208.). Anglosax.: Se cyning Eádmund onfeng þá *Anlāfe cyninge* át fulvihte (Sax. Chr. 943.). Þá sende se cyning áfter *Anlāfe cyninge Álfedā biſcop* and *Áðelweard ealdorman* (994.). *Columba mássepreóſt* com tō Pihum (560.). Hér sende Gregorius se papa *Augustine Arcebiſcope pallium* (601.). Under *Álförýðe abbodýſſan* (S. GUTHLAG 2.).

- c) Names of things follow in general the principal rule with regard to the construction with the article. The following may be observed in detail.

The names of the quarters of the heavens, *north, south, east, west, north-east*, which may be regarded as local determinations, denoting partly the point of direction, partly a superficial space, have, as substantives, the definite article.

Even from *the east* to *the west* (SHAKSP., Oth. 4, 2.). The beds i' *the east* are soft (Ant. a. Cleop. 2, 6.). In the painted oriel of *the west* (LONGF. I. 264.). Columbus held his course to *the south-west* (IRVING, Columb. 6, 1.). From Crowhead on *the south-west* to Fairhead on *the north-east* (CHAMBERS, Informat. II. 241. I.). In a metaphorical meaning: The *North* blew cold (ROGERS, It., The Gr. St. Bern.). These stand adverbially without the article: Norway extends from lat. 58° to 71° 10' *north*, and from long 5° to 30° *east* (ib. p. 206. II.). Comp. Vol. I. p. 390. They also occur without the article in combination with: It standeth north-north-east and *by east* (SHAKSP., Love's L. L. 1, 1.).

The article is found early. Old-Engl.: In þe ende of the world, as al in *pe West* (R. or GL. I. 1.). From *pe Est* in to *pe West* (I. 7.). As I biheeld into *the east* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 2.). Toward *the northe* (MACDEV. p. 262.). From the contrees of *the West* (p. 53.). It commonly stands without the article in combination with *bi, by*: The mone bi-gynneth *hi-este* a-rise (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 134.). Homber brynggeþ *by Norþ* mucche god and wyde, Seuerne *by West Soup*, Temese *by þe Est syde* (R. or GL. I. 2.). The article was early absent altogether. Halſax.: *Bi norðe* pere Humbre (LAſAM. III. 162. cf. 205.). *Þe king* we *bi súðen* (III. 212.). O fowwre daless dæledd, *Onn Æst, o Weast, o Sup, o Norrþ* (ORM, 11258. cf. 11490. 12125.). We meet *norðende, súðende, norðdæle* and the like, with the article. In Anglosaxon the prepositional combinations *be norð, be eástan* are familiar: Ymbſæton án geveorc . . *be norð* þære sæ (Sax. Chr. 894.). *Be eástan* Pedredan, ge *be vestan* Sealvuda, ge *be eástan* ge eác *be norðan* Temese (ib.). Otherwise *norð, súð, eást, vest* stand adverbially from the most ancient times; LAſamon has the comparative *norður*: þá ferde þe king *norður ma* (I. 113.), as the Anglosax.: Se vinterlica mōna gæð *norðor* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 9.).

Substantives denoting spaces of time, as, seasons, months, days of the week and festivals, are treated in a certain measure like proper names, although, as recurrent spaces of time, they do not wholly lose the character of names of kinds. They therefore very commonly occur without the article, even

with an attributive adjective preceding it, or with another more particular determination.

Shadow will serve for *summer* (SHAKSP., II Henry IV. 3, 2.). After *summer*, evermore succeeds *Barren winter* (II Henry VI. 2, 4.). Thinking on *fantastie summer's* heat (Rich. II. 1, 3.). Swift as a shooting star In *autumn* thwarts the night (MILT., P. L. 4, 556.). *Last summer* the commons had sent up to the peers an impeachment against her (HUME, Hist. of E. 57.). Very good meat in *Lent* (SHAKSP., Rom. a. Jul. 2, 4.). He smells *April* and *May* (Merry W. 3, 2.). The sun of *March* was shining brightly (LONGF. I. 377.). It was towards the evening of a day in *early April* (BULW., Alice 1, 1.). On an evening in *April* 1347 (Rienzi 1, 3.). Seckendorf assists at the Grand Review, 13th *May* 1726 (CARL., Freder. the Gr. 5, 6.). In *October of the same year* (LEWES, G. I. 55.).

Sunday comes apace (SHAKSP., Taming 2, 1.). "The king of Prussia sets out for Anspach on *Saturday next*" — 11th July is *Tuesday*, *Saturday next* will be 15th July (CARL., Freder. the Gr. 7, 4.). He might have called together his Council on *Saturday morning* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. III. 171.). On *Good Friday* (DICKENS, Pict. fr. It., Rome). At *Christmas* (Christm. Car. 1.) and the like.

The article, however, comes here more frequently under consideration according to the general points of view specified above.

Now 'tis the *spring* (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 3, 1.). At Pentecost, which brings *The Spring* (LONGF. I. 2.). In the early part of the *winter* (TROLL., Framl. Pars. 1, 24.). In the *summer of that year* in which Dendermond was taken (STERNE, Tristr. Sh. 6, 6.). *The autumn of* 1685 (MACAUL., Hist. of E. II. 235.). *The Lent* shall be as long again as it is (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 4, 3.). Lofty rocks, then covered by the prodigal verdure, and the countless flowers, of the *closing May* (BULW., Rienzi 3, 1.).

Why such impress of shipwrights, whose sore task Does not divide the *Sunday* from the week? (SHAKSP., Haml. 1, 1.) They hoped to see all our family at church the *Sunday following* (GOLDSM., Vic. 10.). On Easter Sunday as well as on the *preceding Thursday* the Pope bestows his benediction on the people (DICKENS, Pict. fr. It., Rome). On the *Thursday*, we went to see the Pope convey the Sacrament, from the Sistine chapel (ib.). The *Saturday*, however, passed over without any sign of relenting on the part of the government, and the *Sunday* arrived, a day long remembered (MACAUL., Hist. of E. III. 471.). The *Christmas preceding his murder* (SCOTT, Tales of a Grandf. 19.).

Time supposed to be known, or more particularly determined, or taken in its generality, is a sufficient motive for the use of the article, so that its absence might surprise us in many instances. But this licence or indecisiveness, with a preponderance of the employment of substantives without the article, is derived from ancient times.

Old-Engl.: For *wynter* is per long, whan *somer* is here in pride (LANGT II. 240). Bituene *somer* and *wynter* . . . Thanne is thundre cunde y-nouȝ (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 136.). Ne in pur *wynter* nothe mo (p. 135.). Aboute *Midsomer* Bred-lees thei slepe (P. PLOUGHM. p. 283.). Hasteth hem in *heruest* (DEPOS. OF RICH. II. p. 13.). Ligen at Londone In *Lenten* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 6.). Halfsax.: Anan swa *seomer* come þa ferdan heo to Rome (LAȜAM. I. 422.). Per after com *lenten* (III. 230.). O *sumerr*, annd onn *herrfesstid*, O *winniterr*, annd o *lennenn* (ORM. 11254.). Anglosax.: *Ver* is *lenten-tid æstas* is *sumor* . . . *autumnus* is *hærfest* , . . *hiems* is *vinter* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 8.). Ge viton þæt *sumer* ye gehende (MATH. 24, 32.). Vās þā *lenten* āgān būtan six nihtum ær *sumeres* cyme on maias kalendas (ELENE 1227.). Þonne on *sumera* sunne scīneð (CAEDM. 3793.). Biddað þæt þis on *vintra* ne goveorðe (MARC. 13, 18.). On þære priddan vucan ær *myddan-vintra* (MATH. 3, 1. rubr.). Ðu þe þā treōva . . . on *hærfest tid* heora leāfa bereāfast (BOETH. 4.). Svā nu *lenten* and *hærfest*; on *lenten* hit grēvð, and on *hærfest* hit fealvað (21.).

Old-Engl.: Our leuede day in *Decembre* (R. OF GL. II. 441.). *Marche* was the firste, and *Decembre* was the laste (MAUNDEV. p. 77.). Bituene *Aceryl* and *May* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 136.). Whan that *Aprille* with his showres swoote The drought of *Marche* hath perced to the roote (CHAUC., C. T. 1. cf. 4426, 6128.). In tyme of *May* hot is the boure (ALIS. 2049.). Halfsax.: þatt wass i *Marrch*, acc *Marcech* wass þa Neh all gan ut till ende (ORM. 1891. cf. 1901 sq.). Anglosaxon names of the months early gave way to the Roman. In Halfsaxon we still find: Wiþþinnenn *zoleas monep* (ORM. 1910.). Even Anglosaxon presents Anglosaxon and Latin names mostly without the article: þas þe *eāsternōnað* tō ūs cymeð (MENOLOG. 72.) *Januarius* (10.). *Februarius* (18.). *Aprēlis mōnað* (56.) and so on. *Martius* rēðe, *Hlyda* heālic (36.). On *Augustus mōnðe* (BOETH. 5, 2), like other Latin terms: Fram XII kl. *April* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 6.).

Old-Engl.: Sove dayes of the wyke ther-after i-cleped beoth; Of Saturnus, *Saterday*, and *Soneday* of the sonne; Of the mone, *Moneday* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 133 cf. R. OF GL. I. 112.). On *Wytsunday* (MACNDEV. p. 92.). On *Good-Fryday* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 106.). A lute biuore *Candelmasse* (R. OF GL. II. 495.). Halfsax.: *Saterdayz* wass haliȝ daȝ (ORM. 4350.). O þatt daȝ þatt . . . Iss *Halhþe þurrsdaȝ* nemmedd (5989.). Þe þrittennde daȝ Fra *Zoldaz* (11062.). A *White sunedai* his fole þer isomnie (LAȜAM. II. 596.). Þa *æstre* was aȝeonge with (ib.). Anglosax.: þys sceal on *Vōdnes-dæg* (MATH. 3, 1. rubr.). On *Frige-dæg* (4, 12. rubr.). Nē eāc man ne mōt eñeovjan on *sunnan dagum* (BEDA p. 228. Wheloc.). On þære þryddan vucan ofer *Pentecosten* (MATH. 5, 25. rubr.). Þys gebyrað on *punres-dæg* ær *Eāstron* (JOH. 13, 1. rubr.). To *midfestene* (SAX. CHR. 1047.).

The definite article likewise frequently appears from early times.

Old-Engl.: Whan it reynethe ones in the *somer* (MACNDEV. p. 49.). Fro chele of the *wynter* (DEPOS. OF RICH. II p. 13.). Halfsax.: þa þe *winter* wes agan (LAȜAM. II 511.). Anglosax.: þās *sumeres* (SAX. CHR. 1047.) [hac æstate]. Ofer þone *midne* *sumer* (1006.). Tō þam *middan vintre* (1013.).

The originally Latin names of months do not seem to favour the definite article. Old-Engl.: Betwene *Aprile* and the *May* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 195.). It is rare even in Anglosaxon with the old names: *Se sōlmonað* siged tō tūne (MENOLOG. 16.).

Forms for days are not seldom found with the article. Old-Engl.: The morwe as the *Monenday* (R. OF GL. II. 495.). Therefore me scho-neth moche *thane Saterday* bigynne, And the *Tuesdai*, eni work

(WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 133.). It was the *Saterdag* in Wyttsen woke (MAUNDEV. p. 299.). Erliche upon the *Monenday* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 340.). On the *Friday folrynge* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 340.). Befor the *Mycheal-masse* (WRIGHTA. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 195.). Hallsax.: All alls he comm till *Ʒerrsolæm þe Passkeday* to frellsenn (ORM. 15858.). Att te *Passkemesseday* (8893.). Anglosax.: Ve etað on þá *sunnan sagum* on undern and on æfen (BEDA p. 228. Wheloc.). þon *Vôdnesdäge* nehst *Eástron* (S. GUTHL. 20); thus commonly with a more particular determination: On *þone ôðerne Vodnes-däg* ofer Pentecosten (MATH. 5, 17. rubr.). On *þone feorðan Sunnan-däg* (7, 1. rubr.).

Among the substantives which are individualized by a proper name coming after it in the same case, some geographical determinations, like *mount*, *lake*, the Scottish *loch*, as well as *cape*, if they are not otherwise determined, are put without the article, as it were integrant parts of a proper name.

Under *mount* Pelion (SHAKSP., Merry W. 2, 1.). Upon *mount* Sinai (Exod. 19, 11.). *Mount* Casius old (MILT., P. L. 2, 593.). Near the foot of *Mount* Hæmus (GIBBON, Decl. 6.). The existence of *lakes* Tohad and Dibbie in Soudan (CHAMBERS, Informat. II. 274. II.). *Lake* Huron, *Lake* Iroquois, *Lake* Erie (II. 290. II.). The names of Scottish lakes are numerous, as: *Loch* Katrine, *Loch* Lomond, *Loch* Awe, *Loch* Creran, *Loch* Leven. *Loch* Ness. *Cape*, not, in a similar case, accompanied by the article, has, in modern times some into use mostly for foreign names, as: *Cape* Breton, *Cape* Palmas, *Cape* Vincent; *Capes* Bon. Verde, Good Hope (CHAMBERS, Informat. II. 273. I.). *Cape* Wrath [in Scotland], whereas British headlands are mostly denoted by *head* and *ness* or *point* (Anglos. *näs*, *näsä*, Old-norse *nes*, promontorium, and Anglos. *heáfudland* and headland) which follow the proper name: Flamborough *Head*, Spurn *Head*, Duncansby *Head*; Buchan *Ness*, Fife *Ness*; Hartland *Point*, Corsill *Point*.

That the article accompanies when of follows is natural: *The lake* of Gennesaret (LUKE 5, 1.). *The Cape* of Good Hope, along with At *Cape* Good Hope (CHAMBERS, Inform. II. 275. II.), or with an attributive adjective: *The celebrated Cape* Clear (II. 242. II.). *The great lakes* Wener, Wetter etc. (II. 206. I.).

With *mount* also the article is found: About the *mount* Misenum (SHAKSP., Ant. a. Cleop. 2, 2.). By the *mount* Horeb (Exod. 33, 6.).

The prefixed article is appropriate to the Germanic mode, and is still frequently found in ancient times with the collocation above mentioned. Old-Engl.: At the entree of the *mount* Syon (MAUNDEV. p. 90 sq.). At the *mount* Modeyn (p. 126.). Bitwixe this and the *mount* *Caukasous* (CHAUC., C. T. 6722.). Sum men clepen that see, the *Lake* Dalfetidee (MAUNDEV. p. 101.), beside: On the *mount* of Parnaso (CHAUC., C. T. 11033.). By the see of Tyberye (MAUNDEV. p. 103.), wherewith compare Hallsax.: Uppen þan munte of Reir (LAJAM. II. 222.). Ouer þen lac of Siluius & ouer þen lac of Philisteus (I. 54.). The prefixed article is usual in Anglosax.: þás muntēs Syon (Ps. 47, 2.). He stôð við þone mere Genesareth (Luc. 5, 1.); yet the name of a kind put after the proper name without the article is certainly very common: Uppan Sinai munt (Exod. 19, 11.). On Oreb dune (33, 6.).

Stigan on Seone beorh (CAEDM. 3315) also: pveh pe on Syloes mere (JON. 9, 7.). The rejection of the article, early occurring with *mount* prefixed, agrees with the Old-French usage. Old-Engl.: Unto *mount* Joye (MAUNDEV. p. 126.). Unto *mount* Modeyn (ib.). *Mount* Syon (p. 92.). Of *mount* Vesulus (CHAUC., C. T. 7923); also with *hill*: In *hill* Pernaso (TROIL. a. Cress. 3, 1810.). Halfsax.: Nu hit hatte *Munt Seint Michel* (LAJAM. III. 18.). Toward *Munt-giu* heo ferdan (I. 240.). Old-French: Quant le chastel fu fait, que *Mont Essor* ot nom (GERH. v. VIANE 358.). Comp. Anglosax.: Se vās abbot on *Monte-cassino* (SAX. CHR. 1057.).

- d) Generic names of persons and things, both in the singular and in the plural are generalized, or referred to the totality of individuals, by the definite article. See p. 144.

But this chiefly happens in the singular; in the plural, on the other hand, so far as the notion of the kind is more concerned than its numerical extent, the article is often not put. Even in the singular this is sometimes the case, and habitually with the substantive *man*.

What is *man* that thou art mindful of him? (PS. 8, 4.) *Man* loves to conquer (LEWES, G. I. 57.). *Man* superior walks Amid the glad Creation (THOMS., Spring). *Man* delights not me, nor *woman* neither (SHAKSP., Haml. 2, 2.). *Man* is destined to be a prey to *woman* (THACKER., Vanity Fair 1, 4.). All that *servant* ought to be (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 2, 3.). See also under Omission of the Article. — *Creditors* have better memories than *debtors* (PROVERB.). *Vipers* kill, though dead (SHELLEY IV. 1.). *English travellers* are the best and the worst in the world (IRVING, Sk. B. Engl. Writers on Amer.). Music that gentlier on the spirit lies, Than *tir'd eyelids* upon *tir'd eyes* (TENNYS. p. 144.). What is predicated of a plurality is readily transferred to the whole class.

The collective *man* in the singular is old. Old-Engl.: Now make we *man* to our liknes (TOWN. M. p. 5.). Al is *man* so is tis ern (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 210.). Halfsax.: Godd ræw off *mann* (ORM., Pref. 65.). Anglosax.: "Hvær byð *mannes* môð?" — "Ic þe secge: on þam heafde." (ETTM. 40, 33. cf. 41, 40. 45.) But the citing individuals as representatives of the sort extends much further in the ancient language: *Wimon* is word wot (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 179.). *Wis child* is *fadiris* blisse (I. 177.). *Luf child* lore byhoveth (I. 110.). *Wis mon* holt is wordes ynne (I. 111.). The indefinite article might as well stand here. Whatever of this sort has been preserved in the language is discussed further on. See Omission of the Article. The plural frequently serves to denote the class. Old-Engl.: For *cristene* and *uncristene* Crist seide to *prechours*: Its vos in vineam meam (P. PLOUGHM. p. 324.). Nabbeth ner *budeles* boded ar sulle [comp. Old-Fr. sool, saoul, Mod.-Fr. soull] (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 152.). Anglosax.: þæt bið *blindra* þeáv (S. GUTHL., Prol.).

- aa) Proper names, so far as they denote a single individual, either a person or a thing, by the conventional name belonging only to this object, do not need the definite article. They receive it under certain conditions.
- a) Names of persons may assume it with another attributive determination.

See, what a rent *the envious Casca* made (SHAKSP., *Jul. Cæs.* 3, 2.). These were the merits which induced *the classical Addison* to write an elaborate commentary upon the ballad of *Chevy Chase* (SCOTT, *Minstr.* I. 15.). *The high-spirited and accomplished Devonshire* was named Lord Steward (MACAUL., *Hist. of E.* IV. 23.). *The youthful Berwick, the small, fair-haired Lauzun* (VI. 13.). The mark, which cannot here pass as a distinctive one within a class, is nevertheless rendered prominent as a specific one.

This indication by the article is however often disregarded; in common life this particularly happens with such adjectives as *young, old, little, poor* and the like, attributes frequently recurring, yet also, in the nobler speech, without limit: *Great Juno* comes (SHAKSP., *Temp.* 4, 1.). *Young Ferdinand* (3, 3.). What shall *good old York* there see? (*Rich.* II. 1, 2.) The last of *noble Edward's* sons (2, 1.). The rights of *banish'd Hereford* (ib.). Sicily, Where *Syracusan Dionysius* reign'd (MARL., *Jew of M.* 5, 3.). By *younger Saturn* (MILT., *P. L.* I, 510.). From *mightier Jove* (1, 511.). O'er the realm of *impious Pharaoh* (1, 342.). The last remaining male of *princely York* (ROWE, *Jane Sh.* 1, 1.). See *god-like Turenne* prostrate on the dust (POPE, *Essay on M.* 4, 100.). On such a stool *immortal Alfred* sat (COWPER p. 163.). Such still to guilt *just Alba* sends (BYR., *Bride* 2, 16.). O'er his lost works let *classic Sheffield* weep (*Engl. Bards* p. 319.). *Smug Sidney* too thy bitter page shall seek, And *classic Hallam* (p. 320.). For *outlaw'd Sherwood's* tales of Robin Hood (p. 329.). Here we are at Lyons with *gallant old Damas* (BULW., *Lady of L.* 5, 1.). The words of *sweet Shakspeare* (IRVING, *Sk. B. Stratford on Av.*). *Jesting Pilate* had not the smallest chance to ascertain what was truth (CARL., *Past a. Pres.* 1, 2.). Proper names combined with *saint* do not receive the article at all.

The use of the article may be pursued into *Anglosaxon*. Old-Engl.: And had hire fader graut hym *pe gode Cordeille* (R. or GL. I. 31.). *The blissed Noe* (P. PLOUGH. I. 197.). Of *the worthy Ciprioun* (CHAUC., C. T. 16610.). Unto *the blissful Cithera* (2217.). *The riche Cresus* (1948.). Halfsax.: *pe feire Austin* (LAJAM. I. 2.). In LAJAMON the adjective with the article is ordinarily treated as an apposition, which certainly always occurs. In *Anglosaxon* we read: *pāt se visa Plato cwaðe* (BOETH. 3, 4.). *Se hālgā Gūthlāc* (S. GUTHL. 4.). *Se eādiga Gūthlāc* (5). *Seo eāðrhrēðige Elene* (ELENE 267.).

Its omission is familiar to Old-English poetry, yet, as it seems, not early diffused: This is *yonye Gamelyn* that taughte the this pleye (GAMELYN 253.). *Yonge Octouian* . . Was banerrere of that batayle (OCTOUIAN 1603.). This clerk was cleped *heende Nicholas* (CHAUC., C. T. 3199. cf. 3401. 3462. 3487.). *To fyry Mars* (2371.). *Cruel Martz* hath slayn this marriage (4791.). *Irous Cambises* was eek dronkelewe (7627.). Of *faire freissche Venus* (2388.). Weddede . . *Fayr Florence* (OCTOUIAN 869.). In the mauger of *doughte Doglas* (PERCY, *Rel.* p. 2. I.). The granser of *great Mahowne* (TOWNS. M. p. 172.). Now by *myghty Mahowne* (p. 151. cf. 130. 140.). Here the knyth goth to *blynde Longeys* (COW. MYST. p. 334.). *Seynt*, without the article, comes from the most ancient times: As *Seynt Cristyne* &

Seynt Fey, & also *Seynt Vincent* (R. OF GL. I. 82.). Halfsaxon: A *seinte Marie* nomen (LAJAM. III. 38.). *Tho wass Samte Marye sibb* (OAM. 307.). In Anglosaxon *sanctus* is often retained: *Se aþela lareov ealra peoda Scs. Paulus* (S. GUTH. 3.). The omission of the article before the adjective is otherwise usual in Anglosaxon: *Him þa gleðhydig Judas oncwāð* (ELENB 934.).

Names of persons sometimes also assume the article, without any further determination, especially in order to render well-known personalities knowable as such; partly with respect to the generic name out of which the proper name arose.

The Douglas and *the Hotspur* both together Are confident against the world in arms (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 5, 1.). To leave *the Talbot*, and to follow us (I Henry VI. 3, 3.). Hereupon *the Douglas* told him this story (SCOTT, Tales of a Grandf. 11.). They brought back the heart of *the Bruce* (ib.). Laws were the most sure When like *the Draco's* they were writ in blood (MARL., Jew. of M. Prol.). I hope we may find *the Preciosa* among them (LONGF. I. 201.). Stout Choiseul would discern in *the Dubarry* nothing but a wonderfully dizened Scarletwoman (CARL., Fr. Revol. I. 1.). From this is to be distinguished the previous regard to a following determination: A fourth, *the Tancred whose name lives in the great poem of Tasso*, was celebrated etc. (MACAUL., Hist of E. I. 12.).

Old-Engl.: *Ascayn biget Silui*, of whom *pe Brut* com (R. OF GL. I. 10.). *Þat þe folk was . . of þe Brut ycome* (I. 45.). William *the Longespei* (II. 522.). Sir Hue *the Despencer* (II. 559.). To dam Maud *pe Mortimer* (II. 560.). *The Waleis* wes to-drawe (WRIGHT, Polit. S. 213.). Sire Robert *the Bruyte* (p. 215.). *The Longespay* was a noble knyght (RICH. C. DE L. 6983.). *The Duglas* and *the Perse* met (PERCY, Rel. p. 3. II.). Thei take Jhesu and lede hym in gret hast to *the Herowde* (COV. MYST. p. 303.). To lerne gramer that wyll dyscyrue *The Donet* (OCTOUIAN 629.). Vor *pe pyte þat of þe Magdaleyn* God odde, vorþyf yt me (R. OF GL. I. 339.). *The Mawdlyn* (TOWN. M. p. 288.). I saw *the Daphene* closed under rinde (COMPLAINT OF THE BLACK KNIGHT 64.). Anglosax.: *þa he gehyrede þat Archelaus rixode on Judæa peode, for þāne Herodem* (MATH. 2, 22.). *Ðar se Columba getimbrade mynster* (SAX. CHR. 560.). Hie væron Hloðviges suna. *Se Hloðvrig* vās þās ealdan Carles sunu, *se Carl* vās Pippenes sunu (885.). The Anglosaxon translation of the Bible avoids employing the article where the Gothic, after the Greek fashion, gives it: MARC. 15, 15. JOH. 5, 36.

Names of Persons are treated like names of kinds, when the members of a family, or persons of the same name in general, are considered as a class of individuals.

A boy . . the grandson of *the elder*, and nephew of *the younger Gordian*, was produced to the people (GIBBON, Decl. 5.). Their John the elder was *the John Divine* (CRABBE, The Borough 4.). Now let *the treach'rous Mortimers* conspire (MARL., Edw. II. 1, 1.). In the days of *the Plantagenets* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. II. 142.). Dr. Johnson was not acquainted with *the Thrales* till 1765 (Essays I. 355.). In the reign of *the Henries* (LONF.

I. 277.). The heiress of *the Grahames* of Dalkeith (SCOTT, *Tales of a Grandf.* 13.).

The plural may be used where in fact only one individual of the name is to be called to mind: A dumb nation . . who cannot speak, and have never yet spoken, — spite of *the Shakespeares* and *Miltons* who shew us what possibilities there are (CARL., *Past a. Pres.* 3, 5.). This generalization, which makes the individual appear as belonging to a generic notion, therefore causes one to think less of his name than of his nature and character, is peculiar to the modern Romance and Germanic languages.

The distinction of persons of the same name by determinations with the article is a matter of course. Old-Engl.: By *the Marie of hevene!* (P. PLOUGHM., p. 75.) Who fedde *the Egipcien Marie?* (CHAUC., C. T. 4920.). Anglosax.: *Seo Magdalenisce Maria* and *Maria Jacobes módor* (MATH. 27, 56. MARC. 16, 40. cf. 16, 1, 9.). *pam Pontiscan Pilate* (MATH. 27, 2.). The comprehension of persons of the same name by the plural does not seem favoured in the most ancient language.

If names of persons denote metaphorically persons of the character and qualities of the person named, or pictures and other concrete objects, perhaps also literary productions, whose title is the name of a person, they may, with regard to the article, be treated quite like names of kinds.

Thou art *the Mars* of malcontents (SHAKSP., *Merry W.* 1, 3.). The beautiful and guilty queen of Naples — *the Marie Stuart* of Italy (BULW., *Rienzi* 3, 1.). A third, *the Ulysses* of the first crusade, was invested . . with the sovereignty of Antioch (MACAUL., *Hist. of E. I.* 12.). I would I were the only Englishman here — yes, *the Robinson Crusoe* among the savages (DOUGL. JERROLD, *Prison. of W.* 1, 2.). When I saw *the Venus* I was wrapt in wonder (MONTAGUE, *Lett.*). *The George* with which many years before, king Charles the Second had decorated his favourite son (MACAUL., *Hist. of E. II.* 185.). In *the Acis and Galatea* of Ovid (GOLDSM., *Vic.* 8.). Milton attended in *the Comus* to the distinction he afterwards neglected in *the Samson* (*Essays* I. 16.). The titles of literary works often stand without the article: What is the nature and value of that correctness, the praise of which is denied to *Macbeth*, to *Lear*, and to *Othello*, and given to Hoole's translations etc.? (*Essays* I. 322.). In the year 1718 "*Cato*" came out (THACKER., *Engl. Hum.* 2.).

It is clear that the ancient language might proceed in like manner with this transformation of the proper name into the name of a kind. Comp. the Indefinite Article. The condition of our sources is perhaps the cause that instances are hardly to be noted. We often read *the mawmet* (Mahomet) for *the idol* and the like, and even Half-sax.; Heo nom *pene mahum* (LAZAM. I. 11.). Titles of books moreover occur without the article: *Phisiologus* seith sicurly (CHAUC., C. T. 16757.). In Anglosaxon that metaphor seems rare. Where the name of the author is named instead of his works, there is no reason whatever for using the article. Old-Engl.: In *Stace* of Thebes and the

bokes olde (CHAUC., C. T. 2296.). Redith *Senek*, and redith eek *Boece* 6750.).

- b) Names of peoples, parties, sects &c. are to be regarded as names of kinds. They receive the definite article, when they are referred to determinate individuals or totalities. Totalities denoted by the plural with the article comprise partly all the individuals of the kind, partly the individuals in their mass coming by anticipation under consideration.

The pristine wars of *the Romans* (SHAKSP., Henry V. 3, 2.). This wall defended *the Britons* for a time, and *the Scots* and *Picts* were shut out from the fine rich land (SCOTT, Tales of a Grandf. 1.). He was a foreigner, ignorant of the laws and careless of the feelings of *the English* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. II. 182.). *The Lyonese* ought to be very proud of stout general Damas (BULW., Lady of L. 5, 1.). *The Pharisees* . . except they wash their hands oft eat not (MARK. 7, 3.). Never . . had the condition of *the Puritans* been so deplorable (MACAUL., Hist. of E. II. 233.). *The Whigs* did not utter a murmur (II. 152.). The sincere conformists were far more numerous than *the Papists* and *the Protestant Dissenters* taken together (II. 345.). Even here however cases occur where the totality is indicated by the plural without the article: A particular sort of devotional worship practised by *Catholics* (SCOTT, Tales of a Grandf. 28.). With adjectives used substantively, as *English*, *French*, alongside of which stand substantive forms, like *Englishman*, *Frenchman*, this case no longer appears.

Old-Engl.: *pe Picardes* bede *pe Scottes* an ende of herde lond To seue hem (R. OF GL. I. 41.). *The Flemmysshe* y-herden telle the cas (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 189.). Þer was a man of *pe Pharisees* (WYCL., Joh. 3, 1.). Names of peoples compounded with *man*, which with the generalizing of the name of the people give way in Modern-English to adjectives used substantively, stand in Old-English like the latter: Lustneth . . Of *the Freynashe-men* . . Hou *the Flemmysshe-men* bohten hem and solde (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 187.). But very often the article is omitted: *pe kyng* . . awreke hym þoȝte Of *Scottes* and of *Pigars* (R. OF GL. I. 171.). Þoru *Englische* and *Saxones* (I. 3.). For to seche *Flemmysshe* by the see stronde (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 188.). *Jewis* soughten for to slee hym (WYCL., Joh. 7, 1.). When *Jues* so wonderly wrought (TOWN. M. p. 210.). What thyng is done . . Thrughe wykyd *Jues* (p. 273.). Divided is thy regne, and it schal be To *Medes* and to *Perses* geven (CHAUC., C. T. 15720.). He of *Centaures* layde the bost adoun (15585.). As Jhū knewe that *Pharisees* herden etc. (WYCL., Joh. 4, 1.). *Seribis* and *Pharisees* (8, 3.). In former times the substantives with and without the article likewise alternate. Halfsax.: *pa Grickes* hefden Troye mid teone bi-woné (LAȜAM. I. 4.). Heo comen to *pan Peohtes* (II. 5.). *pa Rom-leoden* (II. 72.). — þis iseoȝen *Bruttes* (II. 3.). Wes *Francene* lond Gualle ihatan (II. 561.). Wrekeð eow . . of *Sexisce monnen* (II. 206.). *Rom-leoden* ræsden to (III. 73.). Iherden hit *Troynisce* (I. 35.). Anglosax.; For *þara Judæa* ege (JON. 7, 13.). *þa Judæas* hine sohton (7, 1. cf. 11.). Þær veaerð *þara Deniscra* miccle mā ofsegenra (SAX. CHR. 1001. cf. 894. 905.). Man þære ofslōh swiðe feola Englisca gōdra manna, and eac of *þam Franciscum* (1052.). *þa Phariſei* seodon heora þēnas (JON. 7, 32.).

— Ðā ferdon *Peohtas* in Breotone (BEDA 1, 1.). Vās Breotone eālonð *Rōmānum* uncūð (1, 2.). *Norðhymbre* and *Eāstengle* hæfdon Alfrēde cýninge āðas geseald (SAX. CHR. 894.). *Rōmāne* cumað. and nimað ūre land (JOH. 11, 48.). With this also the Old-French agrees: *Francois m'enchaussent* (GERH. v. VIANE 1480. 1486.). A *Sarrasins* chalangier la contree (AGOLANT 3.).

- e) Proper names, which are attributed to impersonal objects, have regularly the definite article, in which the Romance influence seems to make itself felt. The article points to the omitted name of the kind.

Names of rivers in general take the article: The flow o' the Nile (SHAKSP., Ant. a. Cleop. 2, 7.). The Danube and the Euphrates alternately attested his triumphs (GIBBON, Decl. 1.). The Ouse, dividing the well water'd land (COWPER p. 171.). The Seine navigable to Rouen (CHAMBERS, Informat. II. 194. I.). Many a dark and subterranean street Under the Nile (SHELLEY IV. 25.). This is the mode familiar to prose, unless the generic name *the river* precedes: The river Some (SHAKSP., Henry V. 3, 5.). The river Po (JOHN 1, 1.). The river Usk (ENGLAND, Lond. 1788 p. 105.). The river Lycus (GIBBON, Decl. 11.).

Poetry, which does not disdain the article, uses at present names of rivers without the article, which might also formerly be absent in Modern-English prose, even with the adjective preceding it: The flies and gnats of Nile (SHAKSP., Ant. a. Cleop. 3, 11.). The floods of Sala and of Elbe (HENRY V. 1, 2.). Jordan overfloweth all his banks (JOSH. 3, 15. cf. NUMB. 13, 29.). To pass Rhene or the Danaw (MILT., P. L. 1, 352.). Here, Ouse . . Conducts the eye along his sinuous course (COWP. p. 167.). By Thames at home, or by Potowmac here (TH. MOORE p. 162.). Of old Nile (SHAKSP., Ant. a. Cleop. 1, 3.). Fierce Phlegeton (MILT., P. L. 2, 480.). From reedy Simois (TENNYS. p. 100.).

The ancient language rarely offers the article, although it occurs in Halfsaxon. Old-Engl.: *The Poo* (CHAUC., C. T. 7924.). Halfsax.: I pere Temese at Lundene Hengest com to londe (LAJAM. II. 208.). I pere Tyure he eode alond (I. 6.). Sometimes *floṃ*, *fūm* precedes with the article. Old-Engl.: The floṃ Jordan (MAUNDEV. p. 102.). Halfsax.: I wesste bi þe flumm Jorrdann (ORM. 8299. cf. 9247.); also: þet watre Desse (LAJAM. III. 200.). The simple name is the most familiar. Old-Engl.: *Homber* bringeþ by Norþ mucho god and wyde, *Seuerne* by West Soup, *Temese* by þe Est syde (R. OF GL. I. 2.). In *Temse* (I. 51.). An ile in *Nyle* (MAUNDEV. p. 46.). In Bethanye ouer Jordan (WIGL., JOH. 1, 28.). To fishe in *Tyber* (CHAUC., C. T. 15962.). Be *Seyne* water (OCTOIAN 1359.). Besyde Jordan streme (TOWN. M. p. 44.). Halfsax.: Fluwen ouer *Hunbre* (LAJAM. II. 5.). Ouere *Tambre* (III. 200.). Anecuste *Seuarne* (III. 201.). Þurh Jorrdan (ORM. 10793.); also with the preceding substantive *floṃ* without the article with the Jordan: Into *floṃ Jordan* (MAUNDEV. p. 99.). Toward *floṃ Jordan* (ib.). 2 myle fro Jerico is *floṃ Jordan* (ib.). In *flume Jordan* (TOWN. M. p. 166.). In the water of *floṃ Jordone* (Cov. MÆT. p. 9.). The Anglosaxon contents itself with the name of the rive without the article: þridða is *Tigris* (CÆDM. 231.). Oð *Eufraten* (2200.). Begeon-

dan *Jordanen* (JOH. 1, 28. 3, 26.). Ðā com se Hælend . . tō *Jordane* (MATH. 3, 13.). Be sūðan *Temese* (SAX. CHR. 871.). Hī flugon ofer *Temese* (894.). Ondlong *Mæse* (882.). On *Stufe* mūðan (886.); or it is followed by a substantive like *ea*, *seó ea*: Fram *Grante ea* (S. GUTH-LAC 3.). Be *Tinan pære ea* (SAX. CHR. 875.) Comp. Halfsaxon: Up-pan *Uske þan wætere* (LAŶAM. I. 256.).

The names of seas, in part originally adjectives, to which a generic name like *sea*, *ocean* may also be added, in part names coming down from antiquity, require the definite article: *The Atlantic, the Pacific, the Baltic, the Euxine, the Mediterranean, the Aegean, the Bosphorus, the Hellespont, the Archipelago*. The personified *Ocean* has of course, no article: *Calm as a slumbering babe, Tremendous Ocean lay* (SHELLEY I. 12.).

The ancient language mostly offers other terms for seas. Old-Engl. *The grete see of occian* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 137.). [Comp. Mod-Engl.: Who never saw the sea of ocean (BYR., D. Juan I, 70.).] From *Occian the grete se* (SKELTON I. 60.). In the *Greete see* (CHAUC., C. T. 59.). By the *oceane see* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 272.). *Fordane*, and *Champaine Beth alle by the suth est see* (I. 273.). An arm of the *See Hellespont* (MAUNDEV. p. 15.). To the *Grekyssh see* (OCTOUIAN 1837.). Halfsax.: *Ʒeond þa sæ wide* (LAŶAM. III. 12.). The sea is often not denoted more particularly. In Anglosaxon the article stands: On *pære Vendelsæ* (BOETH. 33, 1.), but is absent in: Fram *eastsæ oð vestsæ* (BEDA 1, 12.). Comp. Omission of the Article 6. Terms like the Old-Engl.: *The Rede See* (MAUNDEV. p. 85.). *The Dede See* (p. 99.) are common to modern times Anglosax.: Be *pam reiddan sæ* (CAEDM. 3063. cf. 105, 9. 135, 13. 15.) and On *sæ reddre* (Ps. 105, 21.).

The names of the quarters of the globe, countries, provinces, localities of all sorts ordinarily have no article: *Europe, America, Spain, England, Russia, Turkey, Egypt, Marocco, Senegambia, Caffraria, China, Java, Rhodes, Malia, Middlesex, Cheshire, Mid-Lothian, London, Paris, Kendal, Kirkby-Lonsdale*. Exceptionally, geographical names, particularly those taken from other languages, take the article, as: *the Levant, the Deccan, the Carnatic* (MACAUL., Essays 4, 29.), *the Tyrol, the Morea, the Peloponnesus, the Crimea, the Ukraine, the Palatinate, the Limousin* in Auvergne; *the Trosachs* is simply a concluding portion of the vale (CHAMBERS, Informat. II. 228. I.); *the Hague* (la Haye). Here belong plural terms like: *the East Indies, the West Indies, the Two Sicilies, the Netherlands, the Low Countries*, as well as the terms for groups of islands, like: *the Canaries, the Cape Verdes, the Azores, the Bahamas, the Bermudas, the Orkneys*, self-evident: *the Farøe Isles, the Shetland Islands* and the like. Among deserts *the Sahara* occurs (CHAMBERS, Informat. II. 273. I.),

When more particularly determined, names of countries and places generally take the article: Like to the senators of *the antique Rome* (SHAKSP., Henry V. 5, chor.). They had institutions derived . . partly from *the old Germany* (MACAUL., H. of E. I. 28.). There was, indeed, scarcely any thing in common between *the England to which John had been chased by*

Philip Augustus, and the England from which the armies of Edward the Third went forth to conquer France (I. 17.). This also happens, as with proper names, if names of places denote places of like constitution: He had lived in the opulent Towns of Flanders, the *Manchesters and Liverpools of the fifteenth century* (I. 36.).

Yet, as with other proper names, the article is frequently omitted before an adjective determination: The nine sybils of *old Rome* (SHAKSP., I Henry VI. 1, 2.). In *ancient Greece* (MILT., P. L. 1, 739.). *Fanatic Egypt* and her priests (I. 480.). You have persuaded me to leave *dear England, and dearer London* (SOUTHERN, Oroon. 1, 1.). *Hurrah for fair France and bold Germany* (BULW., Rienzi 3, 1.). *Farthest Maine* shall hear of thee, And *cold New Brunswick* gladden at thy name (BRYANT p. 96.). And away with his horses, into *sleeping Naples* (DICKENS, Pict. fr. It., A rapid diorama). They had institutions derived partly from *imperial Rome*, partly from *papal Rome* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 28.). To say nothing of *incomparable Paris City past or present* (CARL., Past a. Pres. 1, 3.). This is particularly the case with other geographical determinations, as in *European Turkey, European Russia, Southern Italy, Upper and Lower Guinea, Middle Hungary, Venetian Lombardy, Prussian Poland, Rhenish Prussia* and others. Comp. CHAMBERS, Informat. II. p. 201 sqq. The determination coalesces with the proper name in a similar manner to *North America* and the like.

Geographical determinations of the above kinds appear without the article from the earliest times. Old-Engl.: This world ys deyld al on thre, *Asie, Affrike, and Europe* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 271.). *Girtlonde, Russie, Hungrie, and Slavonie, Pullane, Pugie, Lingi, Hungrie and Geptrie, Bucedonie, Nodes, Cesilie, Saragunce, Puille, Calabre, Romanie, Tharce, Garum, Aquile, Tuscane, and Lombardie*, These ben londes swithe fre (I. 273.). Comp. MAUNDEV. p. 4. (CHAUC., C. T. 51 sqq. ALIS. 1441 sq. (TOWN. M. p. 141. *Soupees and Soperei, Kent and Estsex, Barkschire* etc. (R. OF GL. I. 3 sq.). *Gumyas, kyng of Orcadas* (I. 180.) *Halfsax.*: Bi-fore *Affrike* (LAȜAM. I. 54.). Inne *Griclonde* (I. 17.). In to *Puille londe* (II. 84.). To *Brutlonde* (II. 15.). I *Mauritane* (I. 55.). Of *Gutlonde* (II. 91.), Of *Neorewæi & of Denemarke* (ib.). To *France* (II. 14.). In *Hungrie* (II. 76.). *Rome burh* heo nomen (II. 85.). Of *Burguine . . of France* and *Peitow* (I. 236.). At *Troye* (I. 314.). Bi þan ende of *Orcanai* (I. 263.). *Anglosax.*: Of *Egipta* eðelmarce (CARDM. 1762.). Se vās *Babylōnes* brego (1627.). To *Bethlem* (1870.). Þām mæstum dælum *Europe* (BEDA 1, 1.). Betyh norðdæle and vestdæle *Germanie* and *Gallie, and Hispanie* (ib.). *Breoton* is gārsecges eāland (ib.). Of *Ybernian* (SAX. CHR. Intr.). Of *Egiptan* (3.). In *Judæa* (11.). In *Hierusalem* (71.). Flūgon to *Lunden byrig* (452.). At *Vinburnan* (718.). On *Evervic* (189.). Eardað on *Viht* (449.). *Orcadas* þā eāland (BEDA 1, 3.).

A few denominations, reminding one of the name of the kind from which the proper name proceeded, occur with the article. Old-Engl.: þe kyng of *pe March* (R. or GL. I. 5.); also the early adoption of an foreign article. *Halfsax.*: Of *þan Maine & of þan Turuine* (LAȜAM. I. 236.). Of *pe Mans* (II. 603.).

More particular determinations preceding likewise call for the article. Old-Engl.: To *pe lasse Brutayne* (R. or GL. I. 169.). Toward *the highe Inde* (MAUNDEV. p. 263.). To *the grete Armenye* (p. 259.). Of *the litille Armenye* (p. 261.). That is y-cleped . . . *the upper Inde* (ALIS. 5690.) It is not *the grete Babiloyne* (MAUNDEV. p. 42.). The *newe Danyete* (p. 46.); perhaps also succeeding determinations: In *pe Chane* of cuntre of Galilee (WYCL., Joh. 2, 1.). With a distinctive mark this sometimes occurs even in Anglosax.: Se *väs of þære Galleiscan Bethsairla* (JOH. 12, 21.) beside: In *Chanua* Galileæ (2, 1. 11.).

Alongside of this there occurs the determination without the article. Old-Engl.: Of *lasse Brytayne* (R. or GL. I. 169.). He seyde he was of *Greet-Breteyne* (OCTOBIAN 1382.). He shold have *halfe Aragon* (TOKRENT 1259. cf. 1379.). The Soudanys heed they gonne sende To *grete Rome* (OCTOBIAN 1769. cf. ALIS. 1476.). The postposition of an adjective with the article is certainly very familiar: *Asie* the lesse (MAUNDEV. p. 8.). To *Ynde* the lesse (p. 258.). *Libye* the highe and *Lybye* the lowe (p. 263.). *Asye* the stronge (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 271.). *Egypte* the lasse (I. 272.). Older instances may have escaped me, yet the adjective without the article seems not to have been usual before geographical names. Determinations like Halfsax.: *Beþþlerem* Jude (ORM. 6981.). I *Cana* Galile (14192) are to be met with without the article in Modern-English as in Anglosaxon (see above): In *Cana* of Galilee (JOH. 2, 1, 11.).

Names of mountains in the plural take the definite article; in the singular, unless accompanied by *mount*, (see p. 152.), the usage fluctuates: *the Alps*, *the Apennines*, *the Pyrenees*, *the Vosges*, *the Ardennes*, *the Kölen*, *the Alleghanies*, *the Camerouns*, *the Dongas*, *the Lupatas* &c. *The Cheviots* rose before me (SCOTT, R. Roy 5.). The singular with the article is particularly in use if a chain of mountains, rather than a mountain, is denoted: Talking of the Alps, and Apennines, *The Pyrenean*, and the river Po (SHAKSP., John I, 1.). *The Oural* (CHAMB., Informat. II. 258. II.). *The Jura* (II. 197. I.). *The Parnassus* (II. 200. II.). Beside these: *The Oural mountains*, *the Jura mountains*, *the Cheviot hills*, and foreign names, as *the Fichtel Gebirge* (CHAMB., I. I. p. 202.).

Otherwise, with the names of single mountains, or of masses mountains denoted by the singular, there often stands no article with a preceding adjective: A vulture on *Imaus* bred (MILT., P. L. 3, 431.). Behind the valley topmost *Gargarus* Stands up (TENNYS. p. 98.). A smoke ascends . . . as erst from *Ararat* (ROGERS, It., Naples.). Numerous Volcans — of which *Hecla* is best known (CHAMB., Informat. II. 205. II.). The still active ones (sc. craters) of *Vesuvius* (II. 198. II.). Of *cold Olympus* (MILT., P. L. 1, 515.). Shall *burning Æna*, if a sage requires, Forget to thunder? (POPE, Essay on M. 4, 123.)

We miss in the older language the denoting of mountains by the mere proper name. Comp. Old-Engl.: *The mountaynes of Caspye*, that men clepen *Uher* (MAUNDEV. p. 265.). *The mountaynes of Sythy* (ib.). And spekith of *Appenyne* the *hulles hye* (CHACC., C. T. 7921.). On *Malverne hilles* Me bifel a ferly (P. PLOUGH. p. 1.). Halfsax.: Bi *pe montaine of Azare* (LAȜAM. I. 54.). Names of a few hills are also found without the article. Old-Engl.: Crist, that on *Calvarie*

Upon the cros deidest (P. PLOUGHM. p. 105.). By *Helicone* In hill Fernaso (CHAUC., Troil. a. Cress. 3, 1809.). Anglosax.: On *dūnum* . . þe *Armenia* hātene syndon (CAEDM. 1416.). At *pam beorge* þe man *Atlans* nemnað (OROS. 1, 1.). Compare moreover instances with *mount* p. 161.

Names of Ships, even when borrowed, not from names of kinds, but from proper names of all sorts, receive the definite article, according to modern usage.

One of the vessels, named *the Pinta* (IRVING, Columb. 1, 9.). The largest . . was called *the Santa Maria* (ib.). "Of what ship, sir?" — "What ship? Of *the London*, sir." (DOUGL. JERROLD, Prison. of W. 1, 1.); with which compare the names without the article in the figurative mode of expression: The bark *Expedition* . . the hoy *Delay* (SHAKSP., Com. of Err. 4, 3.).

It is difficult to find ancient proper names of ships. Old-Engl.: His barge y-clepuð was *the Magdelayne* (CHAUC., C. T. 412.). The naming of ships is primeval with the maritime Scandinavians, for which can be compared the names of mythical ships in the Edda, as the ship of the dead *Naglfar* (VÖLUSP. 49.), Frey's ship *Skíðbládnir* (GRIMMISM. 43, 44.). The article is also found in other languages, as in French.

- γγ) Collective names follow the general rule, so far as they are to be considered as total individuals, which exist also in great part multiplied, as: *the public, the multitude, the army, the fleet, the nobility, the gentry, the ministry, the forest*. A few, however, denoting determinate narrower totalities, are also used exceptionally without the article, as *parliament, government*, and the like; others, having a more universal, or less close import with regard to the totality of the individuals, as *mankind, society, posterity*, likewise appear without the article; finally, collectives, when referred generally to an indeterminate number of the class, as may be the case with the originally collective *people*, with *cattle* and the like, are used without the article.

I am in *parliament* pledge etc. (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 5, 2.). *Parliament* and the Courts of Westminster are venerable to me (CARL., Past a. Pres. 1, 2.). Under pretence of getting them confidential appointments under *government* (THACKER., Vanity Fair 3, 3.). I am misanthropos and hate *mankind* (SHAKSP., Timon 4, 3.). He disliked and was unfitted for *society* (SCOTT, Waverley 4.). The eyes of his contemporaries and of *posterity* . . were fixed upon him (MACAUL., Hist. of E. VI. 22.). — *People* declared that she got money from various simply disposed persons (THACKER., Vanity Fair 3, 3.). *Cattle* depart and enter (CARL., Past a. Pres. 2, 5.).

Formerly also, partly well known bodies, partly other collective notions were thus treated. Old-Engl.: That ich were to *chapitre* i-brout (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 8.). As he sat in his doom in *consistory* (CHAUC., C. T. 13672.). The flood That *folk* and beestes dronken (P. PLOUGHM. p. 227.). Amonges cristen *peple* (p. 278.). Hallsax.: *Mannkinn* sholde lesedd beon (ORM. 11573.). Anglosax.: þonne bið gefrægd and geednivad *moncyn* (CYNEVULF,

Crist 1040. Grein). Engla hláf æton *manucynn* (Ps. 77, 25.). *Folc vās ānmōd rōfe rincas* (CAEDM. 1644.). *Verod vās gefȳsed* (3150.). *Fȳrd vās on ōfste* (3152.) and many more.

dd) Names of materials and terms for substances, comprising discrete portions under one name, but not, like the so-called collective names, conceived at the same time as total individuals, like *corn*, *money* and the like, stand without the definite article, wherever it is a question of denoting the thing in general, as well an indeterminate quantity, Only where they are distinguished by kinds or otherwise, do they assume it.

When my heart is sweetly taught How little *gold* deserves a thought (TH. MOORE p. 34.). *Naphtha, petroleum, mineral pitch*, and *asphalte*, may in a great measure be regarded as one and the same substance etc. (CHAMB., Informat. I. 356. I.). *Money* is for youth (THACKER., Engl. Humour. 2.). Midas longed for *gold* (CARL., Past a. Pres. 1, 1.). Want ye *corn* for *bread*? (SHAKSP., I Henry VI. 3, 2.) The people live a good deal upon cakes made of *oatmeal*, instead of *wheaten bread* (SCOTT, Tales of a Grandf. 1.). The best art of curing and smoking *tobacco* (IRVING, Hist. of N. Y. 2, 3.). The article certainly occasionally stands with the simple substantive taken generally, and the object named is then treated like any other name of a kind: Tread on *the sand*; why there you quickly sink: Bestride the rock; the tide will wash you off (SHAKSP., III Henry VI. 5, 4.). After being sufficiently steeped, *the flax* is spread out on the grass (CHAMB., Informat. I. 337. I.). In the reference backwards to the thing already named this is a matter of course. This may also be the case with the suppositious knowledge of a specific notion: A letter written by the first prince of *the Blood* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. IV. 29.).

The Romance mode of expression favours the article with names of materials, even where considered in their generality. This has remained essentially foreign to English. Old-Engl.; Wad is *gold* bute ston, bute id habbe wis mon (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 173.). Gode ȳeres and *corn* bothe beth a-gon (Polit. S. p. 149.). The feld where *bawme* growethe (MAENDEV. p. 50.). Engeland ys ful ynow . . Of *seluer* or and of *gold*, of *tyn* and of *lede*, Of *stel*, of *yrn* and of *bras*, of *god corn* gret won (R. OF GL. I. 1 sq.). Ȝef thou havest *bred* ant *ale* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 111.). Ȝef the lacketh *mete* other *clotht* (ib.). Half-sax.: Auer ælcne cniht ȝet ȝu ȝer bi-ȝeten min for *seluere* and for *gold* (LAȜAM. I. 187.). ȝer he ut draȝen lette *win* of his tunne (III. 232.). ȝre dæȝes hit rinde *blod* (I. 166.). The article stands in. Old-Engl.: Al hem to-dryven ase ston doth *the glas* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 189.). Half-sax.: Ȝerst aswond *ȝat corn* here (LAȜAM. III. 279.). Anglosax.: Oðer dæl sceal beon geclænsod . . svā hēr bið *sylfor* (BOETH. 38, 4.). Eāla hvāt se forma ġitsere vāre ȝe ærest ȝā eorðan ongan delfan āfter *golde* (15.). Nalles *scir vin* hī ne druncan nē nānne vætān hī ne cūðon við *hunige* mēgan (ib.). Where the article stands with the substantive not otherwise determined, a collateral relation enters: ȝā *ȝāt vin* ġeteorode, ȝā cvāð ȝās Hælendes mōder tō him: Hīȝ nabbað *vin* (JON. 2, 3.), where *ȝāt vin* denotes the wine supposed to have been drunk at the meal. In other cases a reference backwards is the rule: Hvāðer ys mære? ȝe *ȝāt gold*, ȝe *ȝāt* templ ȝe *ȝāt gold* ġehālgæð (MATH. 23, 17.). Comp. V. 16, where the gold is mentioned.

- ss) Abstract substantives without a specific determination or reference backwards ordinarily take no article. The notion of abstract quality, disposition, activity, science &c., needs no further determination; as an expression for a substance taken universally the abstract substantive is therefore in the same case as the name of a material.

Thus *wisdom* wishes to appear most bright, When it doth tax itself (SHAKSP., *Meas.* for *Meas.* 2, 4.). They which do hunger and thirst after *righteousness* (MATTH. 5, 6.). Come veil'd in those shadows, deep, awful but tender, which *Mercy* flings over thy features of fire (TH. MOORE p. 273.). When *History's* Muse the memorial was keeping Of all that the dark hand of *Destiny* weaves (p. 246.). They seem intended to diffuse *error* rather than *knowledge* (IRVING, *Sk. B. Engl. Writers on Amer.*). *Industry* is human exertion of any kind employed for the creation of value (CHAMB., *Informat.* II. 482. II.), Thus *trade* flourishes, *civilisation* advances, *peace* is kept (THACKER., *Vanity Fair* 3, 3.). The abstract term also tolerates adjective determinations without the article, unless their distinctive character is to be made prominent: So from the first, *eternal order* ran (POPE, *Essay on M.* 2, 112.). As the head of a class known in *English literary history* by the appellation of the Metaphysical poets (CHAMB., *Engl. Liter.* p. 35.). The definite article is, however, given to the simple substantive, where the abstract term reminds us rather of a concrete context: I speak *the truth* (SHAKSP., II *Henry IV.* 5. 3.). The difference is too nice, Where ends *the Virtue*, or begins *the Vice* (POPE, *Essay on M.* 2, 209.).

The easy transition of the abstract term, on the one hand into personification; on the other, into the generic notion, when it even becomes susceptible of the plural formation, has been stated in another place. In the latter case it of course obeys the general rules. But in its most general meaning it formerly disdained the article, which has become usual in the Romance languages, whereas Old-French often did not employ it. Old-Engl.: *Idilscipe* and *orgul prude*, þat lerit gung wif leþere þewes (WRIGHT A. HALLIW. *Rel. Ant.* I. 180.). *Wyt* and *wysdom* is god warysoun (p. 190.). To *þite* he seith, Blessyd ben alle meke p. 39.). Half-sax.: *Umluost* annd *forraunndennleccg* lss Drihhtin swiþe unneweme (ORM. 2623.). *3iff þu clennesse* follþhesst riht (4598.). *Wipþ lufe* off Drihhtin annd off mann (2593.). *Sapfusst lufe* bærneþþ aþ (1572.). Austin þe *fulluht* broute hider in (LAJAM. I. 2.). Anglosax.: Vās him *gylp* forod, *beot* forborsten and forbiged *þrym*, *vlite* gewemmed (CAEDM. 69.). *Vrōht* vās āsprungen, *ōht* mid englum and *orlegnið* (83.). Lufa þu . . *vellvylendnyssæ* (BARIL., *Advice* 5.). Se man þe *sibbe* lufað (6.). Yet even here we meet with the rendering prominent through the article: Adræf fram þinre sāvle ælce yfelnyssæ, and *seō hatung* ne ontende þine heortan nātes hvon (5.). As opposed to the frequent modern personification of the abstract substantive without the article, the article is found in Anglosaxon: þā *se Viðdōm* þā and *seō Gesceādvisness* þis leoð āsungen hæfdon (BORTH. 3, 3.). And vëndest þāt *seō veord* þās voruld vende (5, 1.), beside: Me þāt *l'gyrd* gevāf (ETTM. p. 223, v. 70.).

- 7) The definite article is further employed to turn other parts of speech into substantives, when it of course remains faithful to the general conditions of its use.

aa) It turns adjectives and participles into substantives, partly to form names of persons: *The brave*, 'tis true, do never shun the light (ROWE, Fair Penit. 2, 2.). Small pity had he for *the young and fair* (BYR., D. J. 1, 160.). The constant succession of *the idle or the busy*, who passed in constant review before them (MARRYAT, P. Simple 1, 1.). The *Wiser* and the *Braver* are properly but one class (CARL., Past a. Pres. 4, 1.). *The wisest* listen'd to her lips (TH. CAMPBELL, Theodric); partly to form neuter or abstract notions: He wants wit that wants resolved will To learn his wit to exchange *the bad for better* (SHAKSP., Two Gentlem. 2, 6.). *The crooked* shall be made straight (LUKE 3, 5.). There is no hymn Where *the sublime* soars forth on wings more ample (BYR., D. J. 1, 42.). This pining after *the unreal* in a world so full of glorious realities (KAVANAGH, Fr. Women of Lett. Introd.). *The Bottomless* of Scepticism. (CARL., Past a. Pres. 3, 1.). He keeps up the mournfullest ghastly memorial of *the Highest, Blessedest* which once was (ib.). That's *the utmost* of his pilgrimage (SHAKSP., Meas. for Meas. 2, 1.). A still more fatal error, which seems indeed to have carried James's imprudence to *the uttermost* (SCOTT, Tales of a Grandf. 54.). Here also belong notions of time: *The future* shall obliterate *the past* (COWP. p. 47.), as well as terms for languages: She knew *the Latin* (BYR., D. J. 1, 14.). A romance from *the German* (SCOTT, Waverley 1.), and in elliptical terms for the side: Put that rose a little more to *the left* (BULW., Lady of L. 1, 1.).

The adjective may be used substantively without the article, partly in an abstract, but also in a concrete neuter meaning. It appears more rarely as a personal substantive, whose import is to be kept clear by the context: *Aged or young*, the living or the dead No mercy find (BYR. p. 319.). Here comes to-day, Pallas and Aphrodite claiming each This meed of *fairest* (TENNYS. p. 101.). The neuter notion complies more readily: *Great or bright* infers not excellence (MILT., P. L. 8, 91.). *Burlesque* itself may be sometimes admitted (FIELD., J. Andr. Pref.). From *Infinite* to thee, from thee to Nothing (POPE, Essay on M. 1, 240.). Form'd by thy converse, happily to steer From *grave* to *gay*, from *lively* to *severe* (4, 379.). And rhyme and *blank* maintain an equal race (BYR. p. 313.). Several little girls of the village dressed in *white* (IRVING, Br. H. The Wedding). You spake in *Latin* then (SHAKSP., Marry W. 1, 1.). He understood *Latin, Italian, French* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. III, 3.). For *native Spanish* she had no great care (BYR., D. J. 1, 14.). In *ambitious, rhetorical Latin* (CARL., Past a. Pres. 2, 14.). We here disregard the adjectives which have passed into inflective substantives.

The article was used substantively in a similar manner from the earliest times. Comp. Names of Persons. Old-Engl.: Ther *the poore* dar plede (P. PLOUGH. p. 280.). *The halt* rynes, *the blynd* sees (TOWN. M. p. 192.). Alle pat longen to that lordshipe, *The lasse* and *the moore* (P. PLOUGH. p. 31.). Lovely layk was it nevere Bitwene *the longe* and *the shorte* (p. 287.). Ther nadde morder ne mysscheff be amonge *the grette* (DANROS. or RICH. II. p. 7.). Halfsax.: Forþi let be cwellenn þa *pe miccle*

annd ec *pe little* (ORM. 8001.). Inne deope seaden setten *pa deade* (LAJAM. I. 36.). Anglosax.: *Se dumba sprac* (MATH. 10, 33.). *Mag se blinda pone blindan lædan?* (LUC. 6, 39.). Eadige synd *pa liðan* (MATH. 5, 5.). Ne lête ic nō *pa yfelan derjan þam gōdum* (BOETH. 38, 11.). He bið *þam gōdum* glādmōd on gesihðe (CYNEVULF, Crist 911. Grein). Thus also arise neuter substantives. Old-Engl.: *The qued* comuth nowher alone (ALIS. 1282.). In truthe, that is *the beste* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 22.). Soupeu to *the fulle* (p. 284.). As seyð *the Latin* (OCTOUIAN 935.). At *pe laste* (R. or GL. I. 34.). At *the firste* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 40.) (see ββ). Heore wes *pat wurse* (LAJAM. III. 75.) and so on. The neuter used substantively, however familiar it may be in Anglosaxon, is proportionately seldom met with with the article; in this case, however, in the plural also: He *þa tōveardan* mannum cȳðe svā cūðlice svā *þa andveardan* (S. GUTHLAC 13.). The denoting the side by a decidedly elliptic adjective is Anglosaxon: *Tō svīdran* (Ps. 15, 18.).

Names of persons stand without the article. Old-Engl.: Among *olde* and *zyngē* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 193.). Amonges *povere* and *riche* (P. PLOUGHM. 274.). Hallsax.: Sohhtenn himm Bitwenenn sibbe annd *cupe* (ORM. 8921.). Anglosax.: *Blinde geseoð, healte gāð, hreoðe synd* geclēnsode, *deðfe gehȳrað, deaðe ārisað* (MATH. 11, 5.). Ne fȳljað hig *uncūðum* (JOH. 10, 5.); and neuter names of things. Old-Engl.: Flieð fram ivele to *werse* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 130.). The feld of snow with thegle of *blak* ther inne (CHAUC., C. T. 15869.). And there nyghe . . . is this writen in *Grew*, *ὁ θεὸς xrl.* that is to seyne, in *Latyn*, Deus etc. (MAUNDEV. p. 76.). *Frensch* sche spak ful fayre and fetysly (CHAUC., C. T. 124.). *God Engeliſh* he speketh (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 328.). Hallsax.: He scal *wurs* vnderfon (LAJAM. I. 406.). Walwain cuðe *Romānisc*, Walwain cuðe *Bruttisc* (III. 43.). Anglosax.: Gif ge on *fremedum* næron getrȳve (LUC. 16, 12.). Ālfrēd . . . hie of bēc Lēdene on *Engliſc* vende (BOETH. Pref.). Se nama is on *Romānisc*, Belli munus (S. GUTHLAC 2.). On *Bryttisc* sprecende (6.). The neuter plural also occurs: *preovu* beoð on gerihthe, and *ungeryðu* on smēðe vegas (LUC. 3, 5.).

Comp. also Participles.

- ββ) Numerals may also be turned into substantives by the definite article. Individuals named may then be referred to, retrospectively or prospectively, but these may also be supposed to be known: One of *the two* which heard John speak (JOHN 1, 40.). They that were about him with *the twelve* (MARK. 4, 10.). Know you not Venice? know you not *the Forty*? (BYR., Mar. Faliero 1, 2.) "Are all here?" — "All with you: except *the three* on duty." (3, 2.), apart from numbers used substantively, which are also susceptible of the plural. Ordinal numbers agree with adjectives: *The first*, that there did greet my stranger soul (SHAKSP., Rich. III. 1, 4.). They indicate names of things, especially in conventionally denoting the days of the month, and the like: J. W. Goethe was born on *the 28th August* (LEWES, G. I. 15.). On *the 17th of August* (CARL., Fr. Revol. 1, 7, 1.). But the article is then also neglected: Monday, *fourth* of the month, is to be a still greater day (1, 4, 4.). It was on the morning of Friday, 12th of October, 1492 (IRVING, Columb. 4, 1.).

Old-Engl.: He was one of *the twelue* (WYCL., Joh. 6, 71.). Ihc seyde to *pe twelue* (6, 67.). Hallsax.: After þan preom cnihten þritti per comen; after þan þrittie heo isejen þreo þusende (LAJAM. III. 59.). Brutus . . . & *pa twelfe* mid him (I. 50.). Anglosax.: An of *þam twelfum* (MARO.

14, 10, 43.). *pā twelfe* he mid him væron (4, 1). The twelve disciples are also denoted by *hig* (*hi*) *twelfe*, as MARC. 9, 35. 10, 32. LUC. 8, 1. 9, 12. &c. Hvāðer *pæra tvegra* dyde *pās fāder villan?* (MATH. 21. 31.) In sentences like: *Gyf ge pāt ān dōð* etc. (MATH. 5, 47.), *ān* rather answers to the Latin *solus*. Ordinal numbers, mostly intelligible by a reference backwards, are not rarely combined with the definite article. Old-Engl.: "Now," quod *the first*, . . And thus acorded ben these schrewes twayn, To sle *the thridde* (CHAUC., C. T. 14239–51.). I am *the first* and last also (TOWN. M. p. 1.). Halſax.: *pe aldest hehte* Gorboinan . . *pe pridde* hehte Elidur, *pe feorðe* Jugenes, *pe fife* Peredur (LAJAM. I. 278.). The properly elliptical terms for the days of the months proceeds from the complete one. Old-Engl.: *The verse day* of Octobre this conseil bigan (R. OF GL. II. 504.). A Sein Suithine's eue, of Jun *the verse day* (II. 526.). *The xij day* of December ys the shortest day of the yere (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 318.). *The vi. day* of October, the son aryseth iij. quarteres aftere V (I. 319.). Halſax.: *O pe fife daz* Att tweniti dajhess ende Off Marrch (ORM. 1893.). In Anglosaxon the Roman terms for days of the months are commonly used, mostly without the article before the ordinal members; On *duodecima* Kalendas Aprilis (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 4.). On *octava* kl. April (p. 10.). On *duodecima* kl. April. (p. 11.). On VI. idus Januar. (SAX. CHR. 793.). On III. Non. Apr. (1043.); yet also: *Ær pan octava* kl. (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 11.). *Pā vās se eahtoða dæg pās kalendes* Septembres (S. GUTHLAC. 3.).

Pronouns standing alone are more rarely attended by the article.

He will hate *the one*, and love *the other* (MATTH. 24.). Each *the other* viewing (MILT., P. L. 9, 1052.). "It's the fact!" said *the other* (WARREN, Ten Tous. a-year 1, 1.). He . . was doing *the one* or *the other* all day (1, 9.). *The one* fill With profitable industry the purse, *The others* are well skill'd to empty it (COLER., Picc. 1, 2.). I count a priest and a woman all *the same* (THACKER., Hist. of E. Esmond 3, 2.).

For *the same* comp. below, the Demonstrative Pron. Old-Engl.; And dide hem to dethe 1100000; and *the othere* he putte in presoun (MAUNDEV. p. 83.). With the rendering prominent of *one* and *other* the more expressive *that* is familiar to Old-Engl.: Selde leved *pe broðer pāt oðer* [fratrumque gratia rara est] (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 130.). *That one* of hem the cut brought in his fest (CHAUC., C. T. 14217.). *That oon* of hem spak thus unto *that other* (14222). *That other* answered (14231.). Comp. Vol. I. p. 415. Halſax.: *pe an sloh þene oðren* (LAJAM. I. 165.). Euelin hehte *pe gume*, *pe oðer* Herigal (I. 359.). Lasse while þenne *pe oðer* (I. 300.). Anglosax.: *pā cvāð* he ea/svā tō *pam oðrum* (MATH. 21, 30.). *pā oðre* cvædon (27, 49.). Its support by the article is not favoured especially with *ān*: He sōflice *ænne* hatað, and *oðerne* lufað; *oððe* he byð *ānum* gehýrsum, and *oðrum* ungehýrsum (MATH. 6, 24.).

- ð) As the definite article combines with substantives, which are determined qualitatively, and may be itself conditioned by it, so nothing stands in the way of its combination with determinative substantives, in which numerals or pronouns like *same*, *other* appear, according to the general rule, when the article takes the lead.

We must observe the combination of *other* with *the* (or *i'* proceeding from *that*) with notions of time like *day*, *evening*, *night*, whereby a time just passed is denoted. The time not in fact de-

terminated, is expressed as present to the speaker in its definiteness.

I saw him yesterday, or *t'other day* (SHAKSP., Haml. 2, 1.). I saw *t'other day* the gala for count Altheim (MONTAGUE, Lett.). You gave good words *the other day* of a bay courser I rode (SHAKSP., Tim. 1. 2.). I saw him *the other day* (HARRISON, Engl. Lang. Lond. 1848. p. 206.). You told me yourself, *the other evening*, . . . that you never had a brief in your life (MARRYAT in HERRIG Br. Auth. p. 535. I.)

The expression is of Romance origin, and agrees with the French *l'autre jour* = un des jours précédens. Old-Provencal: *L'autre dia* per un mati Trespassava sus pel cimelh (PARN OCCIT. p. 45.). Gaia pastorella Trobei *l'autre dia* (p. 334.). *L'autre jorn* per aventura M'anava sols cavalcan (p. 260.). *L'autre jorn* m'en pogei al cel (p. 296.), for which otherwise *l'autrier* (p. 113, 127, 175.), the Old-Fr.: *l'autr'ier* (MONMERQUÉ, Théâtre Fr. p. 32, 33, 34, 36, 37, 41.), that is, the day before yesterday, in the meaning of the Latin *nuper*, usually occurs Comp also: *L'autr'ier* par un matinet, Un jor de *l'autre semaine* Chevauchai joste un boschet (MONMERQUÉ, l. c. p. 34.). In Old-English *this enderdai* is found similarly employed: *This enderdai* com a clarc me to, And bed me love on his manere (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 11.). As I me went *this andyrs day* Fast on my way makyng my mone (MS. in Halliw. v. andyrs.).

- ε) The relative *which* was formerly frequently accompanied by *the* preceding it.

The better part of valour is discretion; in *the which* better part, I have saved my life (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 5, 4.). Over the brook Cedron, where was a garden, into *the which* he entered (JOHN 18, 1.). This combination is now obsolete.

The which is used for centuries along with the simple *which*. Old-Engl.: In *the whiche* lond it lykede him to take flesche and blood (MAUNDEV. p. 2.). Of Moyses jerde, with *the whiche* he made the Rede See departen (p. 85.). Wikkede men it hadde, *The whiche* arn preestes inparfite (P. PLOUGHM. p. 303.). In love of brynnynge charité, to *the whiche* alle thing is lijt (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel Ant. II. 43.). To hem þat bileueden in his name, *þe whiche* not of bloodis, neþer of wille of fleysche, neþer of wille of man, but ben borne of god (WYCL., Joh. 1, 12.). Fals infortune and poysoun . . . *The whiche* two of al this wo I wyte (CHAUC., C. T. 16155.). An husband must ye take you tylle, *The whiche* may of this land be kyng (IPOMYDON 604.). This combination coincides with the tentative use of *which* as a relative in the fourteenth century. The originally interrogative, Anglosaxon *hwylc*, qualis, quis, also used indefinitely, was assimilated to the Old-French *li quels*, *la quele*. In this form the article *the* (*li*) repeats the notion of the substantive (*ille*, qualis, qui), to which the relative is referred. Such a reference is also not foreign to the Anglosaxon mode, so far as the demonstrative *se*, *seó*, *pát* is frequently added to the relative *þe*: *Se Hengest, se þe vās lādeov* and *heretoga* (BUDA 2, 5.). *Pát he sceolde* . . . his treove for feogitsunge and lufan forleosan, *seó þe dýrvurðe være and máre eallum mǽðmum* (2, 11.).

- η) The definite article may be added to a few quantitative determinations, if they precede the substantive; they do not however tolerate the article before, but only after them. Here belong:

all. Act well your part, there *all the honour* lies (POPE, Essay on M. 4, 194.). Jesus went about *all the cities and villages* (MATTH.

9, 35.). In *all the virtues* which conduce to success in life (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 64.).

Old-Engl.: So blac is *al the mone* of him silve (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 133.). Thei keveren *alle the face* with that lippe (MAUNDEV. p. 205.). Til he have eten *al the barn* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 354.). Whan he had scomfyted *alle the Jewes* (p. 85.). Among *alle the planetes* the sonne amidde is (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 133.). Halfsax: *All pat blisse* patt uss comm (ORM. 719.). *plle pe prestess* (482.). *Alle pon oðere vnliche* (LAȜAM. I. 300.). Anglosax.: On *eallum þam fyrste* (BASIL., Hexam. 1.). *Ealle pāt flāsc* pāt vilddeor læfan, ne etan ge pāt (LEGG. ÆLFRED. 39.). *Ofer eall pāt land* (MATH. 9, 26.). *Ealra þāra gōdra* mægen he vās begangende (S. GUTHLAG 2.). The article was not, from the most ancient times, necessary; it depends upon the conditions otherwise requisite for the article. The process of the Romance languages with the Fr. *tout*, It. *tutto*, Span. *todo*, as with the Gr. *nās*, Goth. *alls*: *Alla so hairða* (MATH. 8. 32.), Old-Highdutch *al*, is analogous. The quantitative determination is regarded as the essential, whereas the article only gives an external determination to the substantive notion, which under certain circumstances, must or may be omitted.

both (see Vol. I. p. 285.), which may likewise appear without the article. That could swear in *both the scales* (SHAKSP., Macb. 2, 3.). To bid defiance to *both the extreme parties* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 49.). *Both the nations* which now became connected with England (I. 64.).

Halfsax.: Belen & Brenne *beizene þa ibroðere* (LAȜAM. III. 50.). Þe king heo louede more þanne *ða tueie þe oðre* (I. 128.). *Ba tua þa ferden* (II. 380.). Anglosax.: *Begen þā beornas* (GREIN, Aeg. Poes. I. 348.). *Begen ofslegene væron þā ealdormen* (SAX. CHR. 799.). *Gefyldon butu þā scyppu* (LUC. 5, 7.). Comp. Goth.: *Gafullidedun þa þo skipa* (ib.). The Romance languages act similarly with the form developed from the Latin *ambo* (Diez, Romance Gr. III. 39.).

half. No metal can . . . bear *half the keenness* Of thy sharp envy (SHAKSP., Merch. of V. 4, 1.). *Half the heart* of Cæsar (Ant. a. Cleop. 2, 2.). He would often lie in bed *half the day* (WARREN, Ten Taus. a-year 3, 2.). Fox beat *half the lawyers* in the House at their own weapons (MACAUL., Essays IV. 31.).

Old-Engl.: *Half the urthe* the sonne bi-schyneth (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 132.). Anglosax.: Heo *healfne* forcearf *þone sveoran* him (JUDITH, 106, Grein.).

double. We have hands sufficient *Double the number* of our master's force (SOUTHERN, Oroon. 3, 1.). Give her another glass, sir; my mamma drinks *double the quantity*, whenever she is in this way (GAY, Begg. Op. 1, 1.).

Quantitative determinations like *double*, *treble* seem assimilated to *half*. See the Numeral.

With other notions of quantity the following substantive is found with *the*, as well as often with *every* *Every the least variation* (LOCKE). Of extending my knowledge of *every the minutest point* which could add to the reputation I enjoyed (BULW. in Wagner Gr. p. 244.).

Similar positions of the superlative with the article are often found in

early times. Old-Engl.: *pre þe beste gyles these beþ* (R. or GL. I. 2.). This beoth *threo the hexte lymes* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 133.). Anglos.: *Mid feðrum þām getryvestum mannum* (APOLLON. or T. p. 6.). The cause is the close relation in which the article is put to the superlative.

The most ancient language might also associate the postpositive article to the possessive pronoun, although the article could not come to the front. Anglosax.: *Ne sceolon ge mine þā hālgan hrinan nē grētan* (Ps. 104, 13.). *Ic þonne hopjende tō þinre pære myclan wildheortnesse* (Ps. 5, 7.). *Eðver se heofenlica Fāder* (MATTH. 6, 14.); so too with *his*: *He his þā rerigan lima reste* (S. GUTHLAC 2.). Apollonius forlēt *his pone vurstfullan cyne-dōm* (APOLLON. or T. p. 10.). The inverse position, as in *Se min vine* (COD. EXON. 444, 21.) is in the ancient Dutch and the Old-French languages: *Die mine froide* (WALTH. v. d. V. 72, 20.). *Li mienz fils* and the like. Gothic likes to place the substantive next after the article: *Nim pana ligr þeinana* (MATTH. 9, 6.) [Anglosax.: *Nym þin bedd*] *Svasve jah veis aſtetam þaim skulam unsaraim* (6, 12.).

For the Article with the Vocative see Vol. II. p. 157.

- 7) The article is added to an adjective, in particular if this is added appositively to a proper name, more rarely to a name of kind.

Of *Araby the Blest* (MILT., P. L. 4, 163.). This is particularly usual with names of persons: Their *John the elder* (CRABBE, The Borough 4.). *Charles the Bald*. *Constantine Pogonatus or the Bearded* (HORT. Univ. Hist. p. 147.). *Charles the Second*. *Innocent the Third*. Thus, commonly with ordinal numbers, by which reigning princes are distinguished, and with which the distinctive determination in the narrower sense seldom appears attributively: But when the *Second Charles* assum'd the sway (COWP. p. 17.).

This occurs with names of kinds, although they have other determinations, especially if the adjective stands in the superlative.

Come to me gentle sleep! I pine, I pine for thee, Come with *thy spells, the soft, the deep* (MRS. HEMANS p. 176.). There lay my poor epistle, written on *the subject the nearest to my heart at the time* (SCOTT, R. Roy 1.). From day-break to *that hour, the last and best*, When one by one, the fishing boats come forth (ROGERS, It., Naples). Thus the superlative may also stand after a substantive with the indefinite article: After *a victory, the most splendid and ruinous* in her annals (ib. Marco Griffoni).

Distinctive adjective determinations with the article readily attached themselves to proper names in ancient times. Old-Engl.: *Salamon þe wyse* (R. or GL. I. 28.). Of *Caton the wise* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 413.). *Salomon the sage* (p. 48.). *Jerom the goode* (p. 412.). *James the gentile* (p. 26.). *Jamys the gent* (TOWN M. p. 303.). *Bartilmew the bold* (ib.) *Richarde the firste* (MAUNDEV. p. 36.). *Virago thou Semyram the secounde* (CHAUC., C. T. 4779.). By mighty *Mars the reede* (1749.). Ne *Narcisus the fayr* (1943.). The fresshe *Emelye the scheene* (1078.). *Libye the hyc, and Libye the lowe* (MAUNDEV. p. 263.). To *Ynde the lease* (p. 258.). In *Aye the depe* (p. 255.). Halfsax.: To *Locrine þon stronge* (LAȜAM. I. 92.). *Coriveus þe stronge* (I. 103.). *Claudian þe heȝe* (I. 409.). Bi *Claudine þan bolde* (I. 410.). *Ebrauc þon gode* (I. 112.). Anglosax.: *Basilius se eadiga* (BASIL., Admon. Prol.). *Theodosius se gingra feng tō rice* (SAX. CHR. 423.). Þār veard *Sydrop eorl ofslegen se ealda, and Sydrop eorl se geōnga* (871.). *Aðelmæres sunu þās grētan* (= grētan) (1017.). Comp. Middle-Highduteh: *Iwein der arme* (I. 160.). *Kriemhilt diu schene* (NIBEL. 224, 2.) and others.

A. The attributive Relation. 1. Determinatives. The definite Article. 171

The adjective with the article also follows names of kinds, most frequently in ancient times. Old-Engl.: That was Candaces *sone theo yonger Alis.* 7737.). With *pelre* *The fyneste* upon erthe (P. FLOUGHM. p. 28.). Treuthe is *tresor The trieste* on erthe (p. 23.). Halfsax.: I *blode pan rede* (LAJAM. III 45.). Mid *hærmæn pan mæsten* (III 252.). *Boc* he nam *pe bridde* (I. 3.). Anglosax.: Tô botme helle *pære hātan* (CAEDM. 360.). On þam grimman dāge *dōmes pās micclan* (Cod. EXON. 74, 12.). On *seāþe þam neoðeran* (Ps 88, 6.). Åt *cā pære hālgan* (SAX. CHR. 1025.). Sethes *cafora se yldesta vps* Enos haten (CAEDM. 1128.). Comp. Middle-Highdutch: *Golt das swære* (GUÐRUM 29, 2.). *Tier diu wilden* (NIBEL. 1700, 1.). *Win der aller beste* (38, 3.). The appositive form of the adjective determination gives it greater weight.

3) The *the* appearing before the comparative of adjectives and adverbs needs a discrimination of the original Anglosaxon instrumental *pé, py*, from the article agreeing in case and member with the adjective. The syntactical relation is in part obscured for the present language.

the, Anglosax. *pá, py*, Goth. *pe*, Old-Highdutch *thiu*, Middle-Highdutch *diu*; Halfsaxon, Old-Highdutch, Middle-Highdutch also in the combination *pess te, thes thiu, des diu, desto*, Mod.-Highdutch *desto*, answers to the Lat. *quo* — *eo*, Gr. ὅσω τούτων.

So much *the rather* thou, celestial light, Shine inward (MILT., P. L. 3, 51.). Are they *the worse* to me because you hate them? (COLER., Picc. 5, 3.) Every Orsini slain is a robber *the less* (BULW., Rienzi 1, 1.). *The more fair* and crystal is the sky, *The uglier* seem the clouds that in it fly (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 1, 1.). *The greater* the new power they create. *the greater* seems their revenge against the old (BULW., Rienzi 2, 8.). Comp. Comparative Sentences.

The answers to the instrumental, where a measure set up by way of comparison, or one supposed, although not expressed, is considered, by which something is exceeded. It is clear that *the* appears else as a determinative: You are *the happier woman* (SHAKSP., Merry W. 2, 1.). Is Christ *the abler teacher* or the schools? (COWP. p. 198.). Comp. Old-Engl.: I not which was *the fyner* of hem two (CHAUC., C. T. 1041.).

Old-Engl.: The mone thingth *the more*, for heo so neȝ ous is (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 134.). Giftes willi give the, That thou maiȝt ever *the betere* be (Anecd p. 11.). *The bet* the be, *the bet* the byse (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 113.). The sonne is heȝere . . *the lasse* heo is to seo (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 134.). Thin enemy schal *the lenger* lyve in drede (CHAUC., C. T. p. 152. II.). The *pe* strengthened by the causal genitive *pess* is still found in Old Engl.: panne sal *pe* child *pas pe bet* worþen (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 177.). Halfsax.: *pe* scal beon *pe bet* (LAJAM. I. 30.). He nefde nenne sune, *pe sarure* was his heorte (I. 7.). Hire cheap wes *pe worse* (I. 17.); *al* also precedes in combination with *pess*; To sen annd tunn-derstanddenn All *pess te bettere* (ORM., Ded. 48.). Þatt hise frænd mihhtenn off himm All *pess te mare* blissenn Annd tatt te folc all *pess te bett* Hiss lare sholde folljhenn (ORM. 443.). Annd tatt ȝho sholde *pess te bett* Wipp fulle trowwpe lefenn (2301.). Anglosax.: *pe* veorð on þinum breostum rûm, væstm *py vlittegra* (CAEDM. 516.). Symle bið *py heardra*, *pé* hit hreoh vāter svearte sæstreāmas sviðor beātað (1320.). Hvāt is þāt *pé mǫ* þāt ænig man mǫge ôðrum dôn, þāt he ne mǫge him dôn þāt ylce? (BOKM: 16.). Hvi forlæte vit hi ā *py mǫ*? (40, 2.). Comp. Middle-Highdutch: *diu dicker*

(IWEIN 111.). As *diu* and *deste* are strengthened in Hallsaxon by *al* as well as by *vil*: *Ll deste* (WALTH 82, 15). *Vil diu baz* (IWEIN 166.). *Ez ist vil deste lihter* (PARZ. 213, 13.).

The juxtaposition of superlatives *the best, the soonest, the latest* as in: I like this *the better* and I like this *the best*, with the comparatives just touched upon, rests upon an error of grammarians, superlatives used substantively being also employed as accusative adverbs.

Repetition and Non-repetition of the definite Article.

- a) One and the same person or thing, even when different qualities are attributed to it, ordinarily takes only once the article, which more particularly determines this one object.

The lofty, melodious and flexible *language* (SCOTT, Minstr. I. 13.). She is *the* sweetest-tempered, honestest, worthiest, young *creature* (FIFLD., J. Andr. 4, 2.). *The* first, last *purpose* of the human soul (POPE, Essay on M. 4. 338.). *The* noble and bright *career* open to you (BULW., Money 3, 3.). *The* fairest and most loving *wife* in Greece (TENNYS. p. 105.). *The* mild sad *smile* (WARREN, Diary 1, 17.). *The* soft, stealing expansive *twilight* (ib.). This is also the case with adjectives used substantively or referred to a substantive notion following it, which denote the same object: Think how Bacon shin'd *The wisest, brightest, meanest* of mankind (POPE, Essay on M. 4, 281.). His life has been told by *the kindest and most good natured* of men (THACKER., Engl. Humour. 1.).

Nevertheless, with a few words of quality, mostly in the higher style, and especially in the asyndetic connection, the article is repeated. The reason is the emphatic prominence given to the object according to its different determinations.

The great, the good Sciolto dies this moment (ROWE, Fair Penit. 5, 1.). *The* morning lours, And heavily brings on the day, *The great, th'important* day (ADDIS., Cato 1, 1.). *Fakland* dies, *the virtuous* and *the just* (POPE, Essay on M. 4, 99.). *Ronald*, from many a hero sprung, *The fair, the valiant and the young* (SCOTT, Lord of the Isl. 1, 8.). Dare any soul on earth breathe a word against *the sweetest, the purest, the tenderest, the most angelical* of young women? (THACKER., Vanity Fair 1, 18.).

The non-repetition, with the accumulation of adjectives before or after a substantive, does not seem to have become usual till subsequently. Old-Engl.: *The* seyð blessed and gloriouse *virgine* Marie (MAUNDEV. p. 1.). That lond he chees . . . as *the beste* and most worthy *lond* (ib.). He may not bygynne *the newe clene lif* (CHAUC., C. T. p. 185. II.). Whider schal thanne *the wrecche synful man* flee? (p. 187. I.). In ancient times this juxtaposition of adjectives with an article was not favoured, except where the adjectives stood in the relation of inordination. Comp.: *Se angrislca súð-vesterna vind* (APOLLON. OF T. p. 11.). Þurh þone smyltan súðan vesternan *vind* (BOETH. 4.).

The repetition of the definite article is especially familiar to the most ancient language. Old-Engl.: *The* most delectable, and *the* most plentiful of alle godes (MAUNDEV. p. 207.). There schal be *the sterne* and *the wroth jage* sitte above (CHAUC., C. T. p. 187. I.) [Ther shal be *the sterne* and wroth jage sitting above (TIERNH. p. 149. II.)] Hallsax.: Of þan kaiserere Childeriche, þan wode & þan richen, þan strongen & þan balden (LAJAM

II. 431.). Anglosax.: *Se almihtiga and se gihtvisa god* (A-S. HOMIL. I. 114.). *He vās pās yldestan and pās āfelstan cynnes* (S. GUTHLAG 1.). *Betvux pære drygan and pære scealdan eorðan, and pam hātan fyre* (BOETH. 33, 4.). Thus we also find the article with adjectives comprehending the substantive, although not always: *Ve poljað þone heardestan hungor and þone rêðestan* (APOLLON. OF T. p. 9.). *Afyr fram þe þá yfelan sælða and þá unnettan* (BOETH. 6.).

- β) If the same substantive is determined by more than one adjective, and referred, in combination with each of them, to a different object, then, if the substantive stands in the singular, the repetition of the definite article is a matter of course. She liked *the English* and *the Hebrew tongue* (BYR., D. J. 1, 15.). Even here, however, non-repetition is very usual, the difference of the objects being kept sufficiently visible by the adjectives.

Revenge as spacious, as between *The youngest and oldest thing* (SHAKSP., Coriol. 4, 6.). *The elder and younger son* . . were, like the gentleman and lady in the weather-box, never at home together (THACKER., Van. Fair 1, 10.). *The civil and ecclesiastical administration* had, through a period of near twelve years, been so oppressive (MACAUL., Hist. of F. I. 95.). Like a constitution of *the eighteenth or nineteenth century* (I. 29.).

In the copulative relation the objects distinguished are in this case often comprehended by the plural: In *the thirteenth and fourteenth Iliads* (FIELD., J. Andr. 3, 2.). *The Danish and Saxon tongues* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 10.). *The Æmilian and Flaminian highways* (GIBBON, Decl. 10.). During *the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries* (ROBERTSON, Hist. of Scotl. II. 18.). The non-repetition of the article is then rarer: She possessed in equal perfection *the Greek, the Syriac, and the Egyptian languages* (GIBBON, Decl. 7.).

The older language here prefers the appositive junction of the article with the article repeated, or repeats the substantive at the same time: *Inde the lasse and the more* (MAUNDEV. p. 4.). *Ermonide the lasse and the more* (p. 79.). *Egypt the highe and the lowe* (ib.). Of alle manere of men, *The meene and the riche* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 2.). On *the righte syde* and on *the left syde* (MAUNDEV. p. 85.). Anglosax.: *Se sumerlica sunnstede and se vinterlica* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 11.). Otherwise we also meet with the plural the repetition of the article with adjectives preceding: *þá Easternnan* and *þá Græciscean munacas* libbað hyra lif (BASIL., Admonit. Prol.).

- γ) If different substantives follow one another, to every one of which the definite article belongs in the syntactical relation, the article standing at the head of the series is not repeated with each individual. Neither the unlikeness of the natural gender or number is then considered. The uniformity of the article *the* manifestly favours partly the comprehension of different notions in a plural form, partly their repetition in the mind. The comprehension of different substantives under one article in the copulative relation mostly takes place with the syndetic connection, most readily, if the substantives disclose a closer affinity; yet also otherwise, even in the disjunctive and adversative relation of the members.

Upon *the right and party* of her son (SHAKSP., John 1, 1.). While the Cæsars defended *the Danube and Rhine* (GIBBON, Decl. 9.). He bent over *the child and mother* (THACKER., Vanity Fair 2, 10.).

The Prince and Princess of Orange (MACAUL., Hist. of E. II. 100.). *The bed and chamber* were so funereal and gloomy (THACKER., Vanity Fair 1. 7.). *Over the tea and toast* (3, 1.). *The tired cabman and more tired horse* . . seeking the stable and repose (MARRYAT, Valerie 6.). The study . . must . . possess considerable interest for the moral philosopher and general historian (SCOTT, Minstr. I. 14.). Shall the Commons . . have as many members as the Noblesse and Clergy united? (CARL., Fr. Revol. 1, 4, 1.). When he was accused of the chief priests and elders (MATTH. 27, 11.). *The guilty and not guilty* both alike (COWP. p. 4.). He commandeth even the winds and water (LUKE 8, 25.). *The cigars and coffee* . . keep the company together (LEWES, G. I. 53.). These licentious contentions, in the very shrines and city of St. Peter (BULW., Rienzi 1, 5.). *The good looks, gallant bearing, and gentlemanlike appearance* won the grandsire's heart for him (THACKER., Vanity Fair 3, 8.). This unsubstantial diet will support for many days the life and even spirits of the patient Tartar (GIBBON, Decl. 18.). The small faction which had been held together by the influence and promises of Prince Frederic (MACAUL., Essays IV. 30.). The inner sphere of Fact . . differs infinitely from the outer sphere and spheres of Semblance (CARL., Past a. Pres. 1, 2.). Even the accession of prepositional members to the substantive does not hinder the suppression of the article: Be thou the trumpet of our wrath, And sudden presage of your own decay (SHAKSP., John 1, 1.). The remains of Minstrel poetry, composed originally for the courts of princes and halls of nobles (SCOTT, Minstr. I. 24.). *The beginning* of some, and end of others have been supplied (I. 65.).

Other than purely copulative relations of substantives are not excluded, although in part more remarkable: *The person as well as mind* of Constantine, had been enriched by nature (GIBBON, Decl. 12.). "Under king Harry." — "Harry the fourth? or fifth?" (SHAKSP., II Henry IV. 5, 3.). *The studious head or gen'rous mind* (POPE, Essay on M. 3, 283.). What if the foot, ordain'd the dust to tread, Or hand to toil, aspir'd to be the head? (1, 259.) I like to be particular in dates, Not only of the age, and year, but moon (BYR., D. J. 1, 103.).

If two substantives characterize the same individual by different generic names, the non-repetition of the article is the closest to hand: *The son and heir* to that same Faulconbridge (SHAKSP., John 1, 1.). *The huntress, and queen* of these groves, Diana (BEN JONS., Cynth. Rev. 1, 1.).

The repetition of the article is more restricted in the copulative relation in modern times, and appears of necessity only where the members of the series cannot be aptly represented as a coherent totality, yet free play is given to individual freedom. Comp.: And the scribes and the Pharisees began to reason (LUKE 5, 21.). [*The scribes and Pharisees* (ib. 6, 7.)]. His lordship appeared among the ladies and the children (THACKER., Vanity Fair 3, 1.). He arose, and rebuked the winds and the sea (MATTH. 8, 26.). [*The winds and water* (LUKE 8, 25.)]. Prose also repeats the article if determinations containing an opposition are given to the substantives:

The rights of the people and the title of the reigning dynasty (MACAUL., Hist. of. E. I. 1.). In the asyndetic and polysyndetic connection the repetition of the article is not rare, when the repetition may mingle with the omission as to single members: *Your tenderness, for the weak, the poor, the oppressed, the unhappy* (THACKER., Engl. Hum. 1.). *I am the way, and the truth, and the life* (JOHN 14, 6.). *The flowers, and the presents, and the trunks and bonnet-boxes . . . having been arranged, the hour of parting came* (THACKER., Vanity Fair 1, 1.). She became interested in every thing appertaining to the estate, to the farm, the park, the gardens, and the stables (1, 10.). There in the rich, the honour'd, fam'd, and great, See the false scale of happiness complete (POPE, Essay on M. 4, 287.). See the blind beggar dance, the cripple sing, The sot, a hero, lunatic a king (2, 267.).

The non-repetition of the definite article is met with much more rarely in the old and oldest language, and primarily only in the superlative relation, as especially with the reference to plurals. Old-Engl.: *pe old tilen ware* *pe holie lorðewes, prophetes, apostles, popes, archebiscopes, bissopes, prestes*, *pe holie lif ladden* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 129.). *The myracilis and werkis* that Crist so ernystfully wrouȝte (II. 42.). *pe bischopis and pharisees* hadden ȝouen a maundement (WYCL., Joh. 11, 57.). Whanne *pe bischopis and mynystris* hadden seen hym (ib. 19, 6.). Of the fyue barly loves and two fischis (ib. 1, 45.). Alle the townes and cytees and castelles (MAUNDEV. p. 6.). We often meet with substantives without the article, which are followed by others with the article: *Ther gromes and the goodmen* beth all eliche grette (DEPOS. OF RICH. II. p. 6.). To boyle *chickens and the mary bones* (CHAUC., C. T. 382.). And alle they cryde *lesse and the moore* (1758), also generalized in the singular: *Baroun and bonde, the clerik and the knyght* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 150.). Halfsax.: *Æðes and þa treuþen* (LAJAM. I. 235.). In regard to substantives in the singular the older language is still more reserved in the non-repetition of the article: *pe fayre balle, & oper bold*, þat hys fader let rere (R. OF GL. II. 383.). For the everlastyng *lif and joye* that men moste loven and desiren (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 42.). Trewth to the unknowyng and doutyng (ib.). For the grette *penaunce and suffraunce* (ib.). Of the precious *body and blood* of oure Lord (MAUNDEV. p. 1.). Bycause of the grete *richesse and power* of the partes bothe (CHAUC., C. T. p. 151. II.). After the *bataille and discomfiture* (C. T. 1010.). The *kyng and knyghthood* And *clergie bothe* (P. PLOTGHM. p. 8.). In Anglosaxon a common article in the plural is not unfamiliar, when even the unlikeness of the substantive is not considered: *þa heah-sacerdas, and bōceras, and ealdras* (MARC. 12, 27.). *þa bōceras and Farisei* (LUC. 5, 21. cf. 6, 7.). *þara vorda and sanga* þe heō gehȳrde (APOLLON. OF T. p. 19.). Gemunde *þa ærran synna and leahtras* (S. GUTHLAC 4.). Be *þām godcundum fremsumnessum and dōmum* (BEDA 4, 24.). Singulars are even comprehended under an article in the singular: *þa þa seō gōde cven* Margarita þis gehȳrde, hire *þa leofstan hlāford and sunu* þus beswicene (SAX. CHR. 1093.). The article once in the singular is rare: *Seō heofen and sæ and eorðe* synd gehātene middan-eard (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 10.). On þam dāge þe *seō suenne, and mōna, and ealle tunglan*, and gearlice tida gesette væron (p. 51.). The succession of a substantive with an adjective of the strong form to a substantive with the article is to be formally distinguished from this combination: *þa fixas and wilde deor* þas vēsternes ealle hī hym hȳrdon (S. GUTHLAC 9.). Hēr ge magon gehȳran *þa hālgan prynnyse and sōðe ānnysse* [add. on] ānre god-

cundnyse (BASIL., Hexam. 11.). *Se rica and se heāna, se gelæreda and se ungelæreda, and geþing and ealil* (S. GUTHLAG 19.).

The repeated article is always found most frequently in ancient times. Old-Engl.: *Hwonne þe schil and the heorte ne wiðsiggeð nout* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 68.). *þe herl and þe hepeling þo ben under þe king* (I. 172.). *The teil and þe attri ende is ðe eche pine of helle* (I. 69.). *Preche and teche the feythe and the lawe of Cristene men* (MAUNDEV. p. 1.). It is *the herte and the myddes of all the world* (p. 2.). *The crybbe of the ox and the asse* (p. 70.). *The kyng and the commune . . Shopen lawe* (P. FLOUGHM. p. 8.). *He madethe persoun and the poeple his apes* (CHAUC., C. T. 708.). *To deme the quike and the dyade* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 42. cf. 38, 57. (P. FLOUGHM. p. 499)). *The chambres and the stables weren wyde* (CHAUC., C. T. 28.). *The sones and the daughters schuln rebelln agayns the fader and the moder* (p. 88. I.). Halſax.: *þe bodiz annd te sawle* (ORM. p. 11520, 11730.). *þa zeonge and þa alde alle he aqualde* (LAJAN. III. 137.). *Turne to heðenesse þa hæze & þa læsse* (II. 107.). Anglosax.: *And grætton pone cyng and þa cwēne* (APOLLON. OF T. p. 18.). *þāt vāter and seð eorðe væron gemengede* (BASIL., Hexam. 4.). *Eealne pone sumor and pone hārfeæt* (SAX. CHR. 1051.). *Yearð bliðe gebeorscipe gegearvod betwux þam cyng and þaw folce* (APOLLON. OF T. p. 25.). He beheold *þāt gold and þāt seolfor*, and *þa deorvurðan reaf and þa heaðas*, and *þa cymelican pēnunga* (p. 14.). *þa caldras and þa Pharisei sendon heora pēnas* (JOH. 7, 32.). *þa gelærdestan men and þa leorneras* (BEDA 4. 24.).

The indefinite Article.

The indefinite article, the numeral *one*, which has the accent, in the forms *on*, *a*, Anglosax. *ān*, Goth. *ains*, Old-norse *einn*, Old-Frieslandish *en*, *an*, Old- and Modern-Highdutch *ein*, serves to denote an individual, which is only numerically distinguished from the rest of the individuals of the kind or sort, and is not singled out to be regarded.

a. aa) The indefinite article, denoting one among several, is therefore added originally to names of kinds. If found with substantives, which are not this at first sight, they are in fact treated as names of kinds or are elevated to as to such.

There was *a man* in the land of Uz (JOB 1, 1.). There stood, quite by itself, in *a parish* called Milverstoke, *a cottage* of the better sort (WARREN, Now a. Then 1.). Thou hast *a Roman soul* (ADDIS., Cato 4, 4.). Beggare, for whom he had *a singular aversion* (SMOLLET, R. Rand. 1.).

The weakening of the pregnant notion of unity, which, in its proclitic combination with a substantive, whether otherwise determined or not determined, denotes the individual in its separate existence, but not the number in opposition to another numerical determination, extends far back in the Germanic tongues, and we may always, even when the forms of the article and the numeral are the same, assume a weakening of accent for the former. The shrinking of *ān* to *a* is moreover met with in Halſaxon, along with the retention of *an*, without any visible principle of usage. Comp. Vol. I. p. 317.

Old-Engl.: As I com by *an waie* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 1.). To lovien he begon *On wedded wimmon* (p. 2.). *An wirm* is o werlde, wel man it knoweð (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 211.). *ðanne geð he to a ston* (p. 210.). *Engelond ys a wel god lond* (R. OF GL. I 1.). *A man* was sente fro God (WYCL., Joh. 1, 1.), I shal don *a juperti*, And *a ferli maistri* (WRIGHT,

Anecd. p. 9.). Hallsax.: *An preost* wes on leoden, *Lazamon* wes ihoten (*LAZAM.* I. 1.). He wonede at Ernleje, at æfelen *are chirechen* (ib.). Þa mile wæs of *are wite hinde* (I. 50.). Wið Eneam he nom *an feiht* (I. 8.). He lette makien *enne dic* (I. 28.). Þær comm *an widdwe* forþ (*ORM.* 7651.). Þatt widdwe wass *an haliȝ wif* (7659.). Ȝho wass handfesst *an god man* (2389.). He wass cumenn inn Inn *aness wecess hewe* (2171.). Itt iss inn *a cribbe leȝd* (3366.). *A litill* off þe fell (4086.). Þa makede a *Frenchis clerc* (*LAZAM.* I. 3.). Þa luuede he a *maide* (I. 12.). Hire sune nom a *wif* (I. 107.). Inne Griclonde was a *ȝung mon* (I. 17.). *A lut, a lute* (I. 211. II. 65.). Anglosax.: *An man* hæfde tvegen suna (*MATH.* 21, 8.). Þa com *an man* þas dama wæs Jairus (*LUC.* 8, 41.). Oð þæt hine *an swin* ofstang (*SAX. CHR.* 755.). Se Hælend gemette *anne assan* (*JOH.* 10, 14.). Cerdic and Cynric ofslogon *enne Bryttiscne cyning* (*SAX. CHR.* 508.). In these passages of prose writers *an* is decidedly used correspondingly to the modern article; in poetry, with a change in the position of the words, the numeral may, however, be already reduced to the meaning of the Gr. *τις*: Ymb vucan þridan *vilde culufan ane sende* (*CAEDM.* 1472.). Hær is fæmne . . *ides Egyptisc an* on geualde (2220.), by which the use of *one* as a pronoun is prepared. See Pronouns. Even in Old-norse *einn* assumes the proclitic nature of the article: *Eins karls* synnir (*KORMAKI SAGA* ed A. Magn. Hafn. 1832. 5, 3.) [the Sons of a peasant]. In Goth. *ains* serves as a substitute for the Gr. *τις*., whereas *sums* is employed for *τις*..

an, a touches the indefinite pronoun *some*, which in modern times is restricted to a narrower sphere, whereas in the earliest times it also took the place of the indefinite article. The modern language often replaces it by *an*, *a* or *a certain*. See *some*.

Comp. Old-Engl.: *Sum man* was pere (*WYCL.*, *Joh.* 5, 5.). Þer was *sum siȝk man* Lazarus (11, 1.). Hallsax.: Ȝiff ȝho wass *summ wædle wif* (*ORM.* 7889.). Off all þatt iss *summ shaftte* (18750.). Anglosax.: þær wæs *sum man* (*JOH.* 5, 5.). *Sum seoc man* wæs genemned (*Lazarus* (11, 1.). *Sum ȝungling* hym fyligde, mid ðære scȝtan bewæfed (*MARC.* 14, 51.). In Antiochia . . wæs *sum cyninge* Antiochus gehāten (*APOLLON OF T.* p. 1.). On þām dagum wæs *sum ædel man* (*S. GUTHLAC* I.). Þa com þær *sum wif* mid miccle rādlicnyssse ȝrnan (ib.).

The boundary between this article and the numeral is not always to be drawn with distinctness till the time when the form *one* stands opposed to it. That, however, even here, contacts of both are found, is clear from the instances cited in Vol. I. p. 317. The employment of the abbreviated form in such cases of contact is, moreover, ancient. The accent then falls in general upon the substantive, and the opposition of unity to a plurality is essentially undertaken by the substantive standing in the singular.

My talk with him was About the borrowing of *a book* or two (*MARLOWE*, *Jew of M.* 2, 2.). Now mark *a spot* or two (*COWP.* p. 182.), with which compare: I won't hear *a word*, not *a word*; not *one word* (*SHERID.*, *Riv.* 2, 1.). "Ah! my Lord!" cried two or three citizens in *a breath* (*BULW.*, *Rienzi* 1, 3.). Not *a cloud* obscured Present or future (*ROGERS*, I., *Bologna*).

Whether the accentual relation was the same in Old-English is not always to be decidedly made out: *A leef* other tweyne (*DEPOS. OF RICH.* II. p. 2.). I wol go slepe *an hour* or tweye (*CHAUC.*, C. T. 3685.). *A day* or tuo (3668.). And have therin vitaille suffisant But for *a day*; fy on the remenant (3551.). But of *oo thing* I warne the ful right (3583.). That none of us ne speke not *a word* (3586.). Here the rhythm of the verse seems to yield the unac-

cented *a, o, oo, an* This appears otherwise in other passages, as: And alle is but *o God* (P. PLOUGH. p. 344.). Thre persones . . And alle thre but *o god* (p. 349.), also in: Where men fynden watre at *a tyme* in a place, it faylethe another tyme (MAUNDEV. p. 64.), with which the Modern-English may be compared: She thought him and Olivia extremely of *a size* (GOLDSM., Vic 16.).

ββ) The indefinite article *can*, from its nature, stand with singular notions only. But it is found with plural forms also. They are partly such as pass as singulars for the consciousness of the language in general; in part such as are usually considered as plurals, but are also regarded as terms for a whole, or a totality, and gain thereby a singular character. But whereas grammarians or lexicographers fluctuate with substantive forms in *s* as to terming them singulars or plurals, and allow, for instance, *a means*, but are of diverse opinions about the admissibility of such expressions as: *an assizes* (FIELD.); *a tettered colours* (ADDIS.); *a bellows* (IRVING); *a metaphysics* (BULW.) and mostly blame them, the conception of such collective notions as singulars has been naturalized for centuries.

If *a gallows* were on land (SHAKSP., Temp. 5, 1. cf. Cymb. 5, 4.). The workers . . maintain *a gallows* to provent it (CARL., Fr. Revol. 1, 1, 2.). To make *a shambles* of the parliament (SHAKSP., III Henry VI. 1, 1.). You may win a cup by him, or else *a sweepstakes* (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 3, 1.). If it came within the scope of reasonable probability that further proofs were required, they might be heaped upon each other until they formed *an Alps* of testimony (DICKENS, M. Chuzzlew. 1.). Comp.: The valleys, whose low vassal seat The Alps *doth* spit and void *his* rheum upon (SHAKSP., Henry V. 3, 5.).

In analogy with this comprehension of a plurality under a simple idea stands the comprehension, by means of *an, a* of the multitude of objects expressed by a numeral: I have not past *a two shillings* or so (BEN JONS., Every Man in his Hum. 1, 4.). From his birth . . to this death-stroke on the field of Jena, what *a seventy-one years!* (CARL., Fred. the Gr. 9, 11.) A fine eueptic loyal young fellow who, in *a twenty years* more, will be Chatham's Generalissimo (10, 5.); used substantively: As quaint *a four-in-hand* As you shall see — three pyebalds and a roan (TENNYNS. p. 229.). This treatment of fundamental numbers may be compared with that of collective substantives, such as *hundred, thousand*. See Numerals. The combination of *a* with the indeterminate numeral *few* may also be conceived, from the present position of the language, as of the same kind, although it was not so originally: Shall *a few sprays* of us . . Spirt up so suddenly . . ? (SHAKSP., Henry V. 3, 5.). *A few cases* deserve special mention (MACAUL., Hist. of E. II. 24.). The poor mean wretch lingered yet for *a few minutes* (THACKER., Hist. of H. Esm. 2, 15.). *A few short days*, and we Shall see thy palace (BULW., Lady of L. 3, 1.). It is also used substantively: I am solicited not by *a few*, And those of true condition (SHAKSP., Henry VIII. 1, 2.). But as some hands applaud, *a venal few!* Rather than sleep, why John applauds it too (BYR. p. 322.). *A*

many may be regarded as opposed in meaning to *a few*, yet *many* has so much the character of a singular substantive, that it seems to separate in form from *a few*: *A great many* other things besides (DICKENS, *Pickw.* 2, 20.). This was chiefly of the Catholic gentry of whom there were a *pretty many* in the country (THACKER., *Hist. of H. Esm.* 1, 3.). Comp.: *O thou fond many!* With what loud applause *Didst thou* beat heaven with blessing Bolingbroke (SHAKSP., *II Henry IV.* 1, 3.).

Plural forms to denote a single whole occur earlier: As a *þese þan slawen*, on *galwes* hanged hie (LANGT. II. 247.). But whereas in the ancient language plural forms are hardly found in combination with the indefinite article, fundamental numbers are frequent with it. Old-Engl.: *Alle bute a fyue men one* (R. or GL. I. 33.). Bysyde Oxenford . . *an sene myle* (II. 247.). *Al an tuclif zer* (II. 251.). *About an tuo zer* (II. 368.). That is a *5 myle* on this half Damasce (MAUNDEV. p. 124.). Thens a *4 myle* (p. 110.). *A tuo furlong* or thre (CHAUC., C. T. 11484.). Up they risen a *ten* other a *twelve* (10697.). With oo Sarezyn I may wel fede Wel a *nyme*, or a *ten* Off my good Crystene men (RICH., C. DE L. 3520.). Even in Anglosaxon adjective numerals are here and there accompanied by *an*: *Man singe ylce frigdage at ylcum mynstre an fiftig sealmas for pone cyng* (LEGG. *ÆTHELST.* III. 3.). — The *a* seeming the singular in *a few*, proceeds from the plural form *āne*, but has been long in use. Old-Engl.: *Manye ferlies han fallen in a fewe yeres* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 5.). *A fewe besans* to his dispençe (ALIS. 3026.). The ancient plural form also takes in the earliest times the place after the indeterminate numeral: *Ane fewe fullarið* (WRIGHT, *Polit. S.* p. 194.). *Halfsax.*: *Ane fewe wifmen* (LAJAM. II. 65. mod. text) [*a lute wifmen*. old text. *One feuze winter* (I. 86. mod. text). *Crist . . hafde off Judewisshe folc Himm chosenn ane fæwe* (ORM. 19761.). *Anglosax.*: *þæt þu læte me sprecan ane feawa vorda* (EV. NICOD. 11.) *Ealle nemne feadum ānum* (BEOV. 2162.). *Eaforan . . nimðe fea āne* (CABDM, 2128.). *Āne* here answers to the Lat. *solī* rather than *nonnulli*. The prominence of the triviality of the multitude is natural in this combination, whether *a* be taken as the abbreviated *āne* or as the singular article. Comp. also *some*. — The substantive *many* answers essentially to Anglosax.: *mengu*, *menigo*, *mānegu*, *mānjo*; Goth.: *managē*, *πληθος*, *ὄχλος*, *λαος*. *Ongan . . eorla mengu tō flote fȳsan* (ELENÉ 225.). *Þā he þā mānjo útadrāf* (MATH. 9, 25.), *Seð mengio þinra monna* (BORTH. 14, 1.). *Mycel mānigeo* þæra Judæa gecneov þæt he vās þār (JOH. 12, 9.). But it will not succeed to attempt to point out the historical connection of the form. In Orm and Laſamon the so frequent Anglosaxon substantive seems abandoned. The *many* occurring in Robert of Gloucester in the meaning of *might*, *forces* (see GLOSS. II. 670.) might not be distinguished from the forms *meyne* (CHAUC., C. T. 17160. (WRIGHT, *Polit. S.* p. 330.), *menye* (TOWN. M. p. 20, 62.), *meneye* (ib. p. 62, 209.), *meigne* (CHAUC. C. T. 7627.), *meiny* (HALLIW. v.), that it, Old-Fr.: *maisnee*, *maisnee*, *maignee*, *meignee*, *suite*, *troupe*. Where the Anglosaxon translation of the Bible presents *mānigo*, Wycliffe commonly chuses *companye*, *puþle* and the like. Might the sound of a Romance form in some measure allied in sense have, as it were, restored a Germanic *many*? Or has *many* been used substantively, analogously to a misunderstood *a few*?

γγ) So far as the substantive, not otherwise determined, denotes, with the indefinite article, any individual one may chuse, its generalization is rendered in various modes possible.

The singular individual may be made the representative of the kind or sort: What is not visible to a *Poet's* eye? (ROGERS It., Bologna.) *A wise son makes a glad father* (PROV. 10, 1.).

Old-Engl.: *Thei maken a manner of hissynge, as a neddre dothe* (MAUNDV. p. 205.). He is slow as *an asse* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 138.). Though *thei* be derklich endited for *a dull nolle* (DEPOS. or RICH. II. p. 5.). That the generalized notion, which may also be introduced by the definite article, is denoted in the older language by the mere substantive also, has been observed at p. 153. In Anglosaxon the article is commonly wanting, unless the definite one is chosen.

But the generalization may also be of a distributive nature; the frequent union of the unaccented *a* with the succeeding substantive by a hyphen belongs to modern times: Holland of eight shillings *an ell* (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 3, 3.). Three or four bonds of forty pound *a-piece* (ib.). At the rate of broken silver, five shillings *an ounce* (GOLDSM., Vic. 12.). Why, he's a hundred thousand *a-year* (WARREN, Ten Thous. a-year. 2. 12.).

The ancient usage proceeds from what has been cited Vol. II. 1. p. 162. An Anglosaxon distributive *an* might perhaps be to be found only in its reduplication. H̃ his hand b̃arndon, *anne finger and anne* (OROS. 2, 3.).

β) As regards the connection of the indefinite article with other substantives, as names of kinds, we first observe:

aa. Proper names. They take the article when an individual of a race or of persons of the same name is denoted generally: My father was *a Mortimer* — My mother *a Plantagenet* (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 4, 2.). The elliptical battle cry with the indefinite article is to be reduced to that: *A Clifford! a Clifford!* We 'll follow the king and Clifford (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 4, 8.). *A Lancaster! a Lancaster!* (III Henry VI. 4, 8.). *A Home! a Gordon!* was the cry (SCOTT, Marm. 6, 27.). "*A Colonna! a Colonna!*" "*An Orsini! an Orsini!*" were shouts loudly and fiercely interchanged (BULW., Rienzi 1, 1.). With men running to and fro, and shouting "*A Monmouth! a Monmouth!* the protestant religion!" (MACAUL., Hist. of E. II. 142.). A determinate person may also be distinguished by the indefinite article, in a good as well as a bad sense, as an individual of a class characterized by his name: Not quite so rich as *a Cræsus* or *an Attalus* (FIELD., J. Andr. 2, 4.). To all beside as much an empty shade *An Eugene* living, as *a Cæsar* dead (POPE, Essay on M. 4, 243.). Then in this happy isle, *a Pope's* pure strain Sought the rapt soul to charm, nor sought in vain (BYR. p. 313.). It is complained, that they have no artists; one Shakespeare indeed, but for Raphael only *a Reynolds*; for Mozart nothing but *a Mr. Bishop* (CARL., Past a. Pres. 3, 5.). Nearly allied thereto is the making use of the proper name to denote an individual of the kind characterized thereby: O, plead . . not with man! Cruel, cold formal man; righteous in words, lu deeds *a Cain* (SHELLEY, Cenci 5, 4.). As if he were no Hercules; but *an Omphale* (CARL., Fr. Revol. 2, 3, 1.). A literary or artistic work may also be denoted by a name of a person: *A Shakespeare*, or *a Milton* (unless the first editions), it were mere foppery to trick out in gay apparel (CH. LAMB, Essays on Elia).

Proper names of localities may also be treated figuratively in a similar manner to names of kinds: *A Thebes*, *a Babylon* . .

for owls and adders, As congruous, as for man this lofty dome (YOUNG, N. Th. 7, 805.). Of that great throne, these hands have raised aloft On an *Olympus* (BULW., Richel. 4, 1.). An *Alps* of testimony (DICKENS, Chuzzlew. 1.) see p. 178.

The denominations of recurrent times, as of months, days, festivals, may finally be mentioned, which may be imagined as names of kinds in indefinite isolation or generality, especially with a more particular determination: A cold and windy *May* is, however, accounted favourable to the corn (AIKIS, Nat. Hist.). The charm of a merry *Christmas* (IRVING, Sk. B. Christmas). I . . am tempted to illustrate them by some anecdotes of a *Christmas* passed in the country (The Stage Coach). A *Sunday*, too, in the country is so holy in its repose (The Widow and her Son). In the course of a *Sunday* or two after (ib.).

In former times the indefinite article is rarely used with proper names, especially with names of persons, as individuals of the same family name. In a metaphorical meaning they often take it. Old-Engl.: A *Christofre* on his brest of silver schene (CHAUC., C. T. 115.) = a figure of St. Christopher. — An ydolaster peradventure hadde but a *mauement* (mawmet = idol, even Hallsaxon, see p. 156.) or tuo (p. 211. l.). Here also seems to belong: *Many a Jakk of Dover* hastow sold (C. T. 4345.) [some article sold by the cook]. The making use of the proper name to denote a class of persons does not usually import the indefinite article: *Seynt Julian* he was in his countré (CHAUC., C. T. 342.). I have not found the generalization of proper names in ancient times at all. On the other hand the names of days are often combined with *a*, to denote a week-day not more particularly determined: How the Flemmysshe-men bohten hem and solde upon a *Wednesday* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 187 sq.). Hii come in a *Fridai* (R. or Gl. II. 549.). It bifel on a *Friday* (P. PLOTCHM. p. 338.). For fastynge of a *Frydaye* (p. 443.). So bifelle it on a *Satyrday* (CHAUC., C. T. 3399.). The form *an* with the names of days in Robert of Gloucester does not, however, belong altogether here, but also stands for *on*: Hii martreden Sein Thomas an *Tiuesday* at niȝt (R. or Gl. II. 475.). The article is foreign to the most ancient language.

ββ) With abstract substantives, even when they are not transferred to a concrete notion, the indefinite article stands, when the abstract notion of an activity, an emotion &c. is referred to a single expression of it, or to a single case in which they appear. Abstract terms are then treated like names of kinds.

Were 't not a *shame* (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 4, 8.). My conscience first received a *tenderness* (Henry VIII. 2, 4.). I have a *compassion* for your youth (FIELD., J. Andr. 1, 8.). „You impudent villain!” cries the lady in a *rage* (ib.). This . . confirmed in a *resolution* of parting with him (1, 9.). He has a *fancy* for a glass of sack (STERNE, Fr. Sh. 6, 6.). This poor man for whom I know you professed a *friendship* (GOLDSM., Vic. 31.). Friend! have a *care*, Your next step may be fatal (BYR., Manfr. 1, 2.). I have a *love* to freedom to (BRIDE 2, 20.). With the determination by an adjective arises the name of a sort: It is only to inspire you with a *proper ambition* (BULW., Lady of L. 1, 1.). The more or less usual employment of abstract terms in the plural facilitates the combination with the indefinite article.

So far as an abstract notion is usually imagined as a single act, the plural formation is sometimes, at others its connection with the indefinite article is a matter of course. But whereas the plural form of many abstract terms extends far back, the use of the indefinite article with the singular was formerly restricted, especially with words which are not very familiar in the plural. Old-English has a few expressions similar to those above cited: He felle in a *rage* (MAUNDEV. p. 89.). Now a *vengeance* Com on hym (TOWN. M. p. 198.). Ye had a *gret cherté* Toward mankinde (CHAUC., C. T. 11193.). *Some* seems to have been preferred: This man is falle with his astronomye In *som woodnesse* or in *som agonye* (CHAUC., C. T. 3451.). Upon my dedly herte have *some pité* (11352.). On my payne have *some compassioun* (11391.). The shade of expression is somewhat changed thereby, and is besides in part comparable with the use of the Modern-English: I am informed for a truth, that you have *some intention* of bringing two young ladies to town (GOLDSM., Vic. 15.). In the most ancient times neither *an* nor *some* seems in use in a similar combination with abstract terms, although the negative *nán* often occurs. Hallsax.: Ne deodest þu me *nane scome* (LAJAM. I. 97.). Anglosax.: Is þe *nán caru* þæt min svuster lét me ánylicpe þēnjan? (MARC. 10, 40.) Nis me þæs *nán þearf* (GEN. 33, 15.).

- γ. The transmutation of an adjective into an uninflective substantive, as a name of a person, is not favoured in Modern-English in combination with the indefinite article. Adjectives and participles, otherwise capable of being used substantively with the definite article, support themselves, when referred to an indeterminate individual, by the pronominal *one*, which is to be regarded as the substantive bearer of the adjective: There cometh *one mightier* than I after me (MARK. 1, 7. cf. LUKE 3, 16.). Strange that *one so vile* Should from his den strike terror thro' the world (ROGERS, It., Naples). As *one disarm'd*, his anger all he lost (MILT., P. L. 10, 945.). He . . . looks like *one transported* (ADDIS., Cato 1, 6.). Thou appear'st Like *one amazed and terrified* (3, 3.).

With the relation backwards to names both of persons and things, on the other hand, the adjective is also found with the mere article, although one is reminded of the substantive by an appended *one* (see below). O excellent *device!* was there ever heard a *better?* (SHAKSP., Two Gentlem. 2, 1.) Two *principles* . . . Nor this a *good*, nor that a *bad* we call (POPE, Essay on M. 2, 53.). Reach me the *decanter of wine* from the shelf, that's a *dear* (OXENF., Twice Killed 1, 2.).

An adjective used substantively, as a name of a thing, and which is to be regarded as an original neuter, is rarely accompanied by this article: Thus I made my home In the soft palace of a *fair Future* (BULW., Lady of L. 3, 2.). From olden times, however, *little*, used substantively, which often occurs as an adverbial accusative, is combined with *a*: A great part of your title, which is within a *very little* of nothing (SHAKSP., All's Well 2, 4.). We 'll hear a *little* more (III Henry VI. 3, 1.). "Which will you have, Mr. Titmouse?" . . . "A *little* of both, Sir, if you please." (WARREN, Ten Thous. a-y. 1, 6.) Put that rose a *little* more to the left (BULW., Lady of L. 1, 1.). In other adverbial expressions too *a* stands, as, on a sudden.

In Old-English also this article is added to names of persons used substantively: I oughte ben hyere than she, I kam of a *better* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 29). In Anglosaxon the article might of course be absent from similar, even inflective substantives: *Strengra cymð æfter me* (MARC. 1, 7.). *Sōðlice cymð strengra þonne ic* (LUC. 3, 16.); yet the numeral also occurs there as an indefinite article: *Hig brohton him þā ænne blindne* (MARC. 8, 22.).

The article also often stands with the neuter adjective used substantively. Old-Engl.: It is *an impossible* That any clerk schal speke good of wyves (CHAUC., C. T. 6270.). Here also we meet with the substantive *lite*, Anglosax. *lyt*, parum, with the article: And said but a *lite* (DEPOSIT. OF RICH. II. p. 29). Cold water schal nat grave us but a *lite* (CHAUC., C. T. 4772.), which likewise occurs in Hallsaxon with and without the article, and is still combined with the plural, which is to be thought as standing in the genitive: *A lute wifmen* (LAȜAM. II. 65.). *A lute zeren* (I. 24.), along with: *Inne lut zeren* (I. 85). *Ðar bið to lute gumen* (II. 133.). In Anglosaxon the article is always wanting: *Lyt frēonda* (CARDM. 2620.). The combination of *litel*, Anglosax. *lytel*, parvus, with the article is, however, likewise peculiar to the Hallsax.: *Her uferr mar a litell* (ORM. 1715.). *Itt flet Biforenn himm a litell* (3466. cf. 8123.). A neuter *lytel* used substantively seems foreign to Anglosaxon.

δ. The indefinite article may be associated with a few pronouns in the singular.

aa. Here belong *what such* (formerly also *each*) and *many*, after which the article stands. *What* has it after it, if the qualitative or quantitative importance of the object to which the pronoun belongs is at the same time emphasized in the direct or indirect question. The direct question passes into the exclamation.

Ah, *what a shame!* ah, *what a fault* were this! (SHAKSP., III Henry VI. 5. 4.) O *what a riddle* of absurdity! (YOUNG, N. Th. 2, 124.). Oh, Amos Cottle! — Phoebus! *what a name*, To fill the speaking trump of future fame! (BYR. p. 318.) *What a pity* the carriage should break down in such a spot! (BULW., Lady of L. 3, 1.) *What a precious puppy* of a chap the fellow was (WARREN, Ten Thous. a-y. 1, 1.). — Let them know Of *what a monarchy* you are the head (SHAKSP., Henry V. 2, 4.). Now you see yourself Of *what a perilous* kind the office is (COLER., Picc. 1, 3.).

In Old-English *which* a long appears instead of *what a*: Lo, *which a wif* was Alceste? (CHAUC., C. T. 11754.) Lo, *which a great thing* is affecioun (3611.). But herkneth me . . . *which a miracle* bifel anon (2677. cf. 6877.). This is also found in the question almost without any particular emphasis: Either asked oother . . . *which a light and a leme* Lay bifore helle (P. PLOUGHM. p. 376.). Comp. Middle-Highdutch: *Welch ein poulin* (PARZIV. 62, 19.). *Wil ein barmunge, wil ein gābe* (LEYSER, Pred. d. XIII u XIV Jahrh. 8, 38 MÜLLER, Mhd. Wb. 1, 576.). This combination is foreign to the older language, as well as to Anglosax. *Which*, Anglosax. *hrylc, hwile*, was formerly treated analogously to *such*, Anglosax. *swyle, swile*; that construction likewise gradually passed into *what*, early interchanged with *which*. See the Interrogative Pronoun.

Such is frequently accompanied by this article, especially before a substantive not otherwise attributively determined, although also otherwise.

Such a man will win any woman (SHAKSP., Much Ado 5, 1.). For *such a cause* the poet seeks the shade (COWP. p. 144.). I

would do anything for *such a man* (THACKER., Hist. of H. Esm. 3, 7). You are *such a treasure* (2, 15.). There is no sin in *such a love* as mine (2, 6.). *Such a handful* of fuel (DICKENS, Christm. Car. 1.). Thou com'st in *such a questionable shape*, That I will speak to thee (SHAKSP., Hamlet. I, 4.). On *such a tranquil night* as this (LONGF. I. 105.). It was a very low fire indeed in *such a bitter night* (DICKENS, Christm. Car. 1.).

This usage, which does not root in Anglosaxon is, however, very old. Old-Engl.: War-to liveth *selke a wrecche?* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 10.). I shal kenne hire *sulke a lore* That hoe shal lovien the (p. 9.). That *swich a lord and light* Sholde leden hem alle hennes (P. PLOUGHM. p. 385.). Herdistow ever *slik a sang* er now? (CHAUC., C. T. 4168.) To here *siche a fray* (TOWNS. M. p. 135.). Wha herkned ever *swilk a ferly thing?* (4171.) *Such a joustynde gyn* uch wrecche wol weren (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 154.). This extends into Hallsax.: *Swille an mann* Alls Adam haffde stenedd (ORM. 12392. cf. 12681.). *Purh swille an drunckennesse* (14127.). It also meets the inverted collocation of the determinatives. Old-Engl.: Er we a *such kyng* han y-founde (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 249.). Hallsax.: Oswy is a *sicule mon*, pine scome he wulle don (LAJAM. III. 270.). Thus in Modern-Highdutch *ein solcher* stands along with *solch ein*. Compare below *such* on the Indeterminate Pronouns.

The Old-English *ilk, ylk, ech, ich, uch*, proceeding from the Anglosax. *ælc*, Mod.-Engl. *each*, to which *which* and *such* are so far allied, as they are likewise compounds with *lic*, took the indefinite article as frequently and as early as *such*: *Ilk a schrewe* oper greues (LANGT. II. 238.). The messengers by *ylk a side* (RICH. C. DE L. 147.). *Ech a wis wright* I warne (P. PLOUGHM. p. 13.). At *ich a mel* ones (p. 457.). Lord that lenest us lyf, ant lokest *uch an lede* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 153.). *Uch a strumpet* (ib.). *Uch a screwe* (ib.). Also in composition with ever (= every): *Everuch a parosse* heo polketh in pyne (p. 157.). This usage is widely diffused even in Hallsaxon. where the forms *ælean, alc an, elc an, ilc an* occur: Of *alc an vfele* he wes war (LAJAM. II. 156.). Of *alc an uucl* he wes wær (II. 186.). *Ilc un hird* (ORM. 520. 525. 609. 613.). *Ilc an unnc-lene lust* Annd *ilc an ifell wille* (5726). The absolute *each one* has also remained to Modern-English, of which further on. In Anglosaxon *ælc an* is not in use.

Many, whose analogy with *each* is to be borne in mind, so far as an individual in the singular is to be thought as multiplied, has in modern times appropriated throughout this more particular indication of the individual by the article. See *many* with the Indeterminate Pronoun.

Full *many a lady* I have ey'd with best regard; and *many a time* The harmony of their tongues hath into bondage Brought my too diligent ear (SHAKSP., Temp. 3, 1.). Even innocence itself has *many a wile* (BYR., D. J. I, 72.). This self-denial caused him *many a pang* (THACKER., Hist. of H. Esm. I, 11.). I have sat invisible beside you *many and many a day* (DICKENS, Christm. Car. 1.). *Many a carol*, old and saintly, Sang the minstrels (LONGF. I. 234.).

Along with *many* without the article, the latter are also early found. Old-Engl.: About *mony a mile* (R. or GL. II, 243.). Ich wille geve the . . . *Mony a pound* and *mony a marke* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 8.). *Many a time* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 103.). Hym solowyd *many an Inglysche knyght*

(RICH. C. DE L. 5063.). He siketh, with ful *many a sory swough* (CHAUC., C. T. 3619.). Halfsax.: Of *moni ane eerde* (LAJAM. I. 218.). *Moni ane wonde* (I. 97.). On *moni are wisen* (I. 24.). Vnimete folc *monianes cunnes* (II. 39.) and frequently in *Laȝamon*; in *Ormulum montz* is found without the article, as in Anglosaxon. Comp. also *one* with the Indeterminate Pronouns.

ββ. The indefinite article precedes, under certain circumstances, the indeterminate pronouns *one* and *other*.

One with *an*, *a* preceding it, presents the peculiarity of the repetition of the same word in the weakened and the full form. In this combination *one* has no substantive after it; it rather stands partly substantively, partly with a movement backwards or leaning against a preceding substantive notion.

One, used substantively of persons, not rarely occurs after *such* and *many* in combination with *a*, *an*: Francis! Martin! ne'er *a one* to be found now? (BEN JONS., Every M. in his Hum. 3, 2.) Thou thoughtest that I was altogether *such an one* as thyself (Ps. 50, 21.). No other but *such a one* as he can serve the army (COLER., Picc. 1, 4.). That the Britons have raz'd out, though with the loss Of *many a bold one* (SHAKSP., Cymb. 5, 5.). *Many a one* of them owes his establishment in life to Mr. Dudley (WARREN, Diary 1, 22.).

With a reference to a preceding personal or neuter substantive it frequently stands in combination with an attributive determination: When Orsin first let fly a stone At Ralpho; not *so huge a one* As that etc. (BUTL., Hud. 1, 3, 491.). As my story is not *a very short one*, I must not dwell too long in its commencement (MARRYAT, P. Simple 1, 1.). His original collection of songs . . appeared in 1769; *an enlarged one* . . came out in 1776 (SCOTT, Minstrelsy I. 72.). The fire-place was *an old one* (DICKENS, Christm. Car. 1.). The morning comes, cold for *a July one* (CARL., Fr. Revol. 2, 1, 12.). "What a defiance!" — "Not *so bad a one* as it appears, may be." (Battle of Life 1.) "A pretty spoken fellow." — "And *a rich one*." (DOUGL. JERROLI, Rent Day 1, 4.)

One is also sometimes added to a substantive with *a*, *an*, and which is not to be referred to another substantive notion which is to be repeated: This demi-devil (For he's *a bastard one*) (SHAKSP., Temp. 6, 1.). In this passage the repetition of *demi-devil* by *one* is not warranted logically, that of the mere *devil* nowise necessary. Different from this is *a one* succeeding, which refers to a substantive within the sentence: *Letter nor line know I never a one* (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 1, 24.). With *Ares many a one* (Lord of the Isl. 2, 21.).

The combination of *a . . one*, when *one* represents the notion of *person*, is met with in the fourteenth century: I was *a lusty oon*, And faire and riche, and yonge, and well begon (CHAUC., C. T. 6187.), are the words of a lady. A pleonastic *one* was formerly in use, which is in the same case as that cited out of Shaspeares Temp. 5, 1.: *A wonder maister he was on* (R. of GL. I. 17.). *A sory woman was she one* (IPOMYDON 872.). For in my time *a servant was I on* (CHAUC., C. T. 1816.). Here may we see *a merveil one* (Cov. Myst. p. 28.). — Comp. also: *pat he yt*

wan of on so hey a *kyng* (R. or GL. I. 50.). Where *one*, as in the instances first cited, is used of persons without an attributive adjective, preceding *a*, *an* is unusual in olden times: He . . . *bicam siththe suche* (that he moste needis deye) (CHAUC., C. T. p. 191. I.). Iwounded the was *mani on* (R. or GL. II. 541.). Hafsax: *Monianne* he dude scon (LAJAM. I. 322.). The subjunction of *one*, referred to a substantive without an article in the sentence, is old, especially in combination with *never* and *many*, but unaccompanied by *a*, *an*. This supplemental *on* is, as in the Modern-English instances, added appositively not merely to a singular, but also to the plural: *Theves* he schal berberon *never wo* (HALLIW., FREEMAS. 181.). *Mon fonde heo non Bute faire contre & wylh bestes mony on* (R. or GL. I. 14.) *pat þe scolle tobreke in peses mon on* (I. 16.). Ther been ful *goode wyves many oon* (CHAUC., C. T. 3156. Comp. Opposition).

Other, both in combination with a substantive notion, and when standing absolutely, is combined with the indefinite article, grammatically attached to it in modern times, if it is question of single other object solely as such, without reference to another determination of it for the subject. Comp. *other* under the Indeterminate Pronouns.

It combines with *an*, where it brings to recollection its root meaning as an ordinal number for *two*, with the meaning of the next member in the series: Stay yet, *another day* (SHAKSP., *Rich.* II. 2, 4.) I'll fill *another pipe* (STERNE, *Tr.* Sh. 6, 6.).

Likewise where *other* denotes an object between two persons or things, or two totalities, present to the mind, and as it were immediately attached and assimilated thereto: *Thais . . . lik another Helen*, fir'd *another Troy* (DRYDEN, *Ode on J. Cecil D.* Here was a Cæsar: when comes *such another* (SHAKSP., *Jul. Cæ.* 3, 2.). *Such another chance* may not present itself for months again (THACKERAY, *Hist. of H. Esm.* 3, 10.). There's not *an other two such women* to be found in the whole world (WARREN, *Ten Thous. a-y.* 1, 9.), where *another* with the plural is explained by what is cited at p. 178.

In the opposition of *one . . . another*, *alter . . . alterum*, *alter* etc. one individual is put in reciprocal movement with another: thought as multiplied, each one enters into such a relation to another, that the total number coming under consideration exceeds duality. By this Part I. p. 313. is to be more particularly determined. He slunk away, when our host presented us round to *one another* (THACKERAY, *Hist. of H. Esm.* 2, 5.) But the combination *another* remains remarkable, whereas no article to be met with with *each-other*.

When *other*, in the meaning of *alius*, goes to another indeterminate object, its combination with *an* is a matter of course. And I say to this man . . . and to *another* . . . (MATTH. 8, 9. Who . . . hath . . . not worshipped some idol or *another*? (THACKERAY, *Hist. of H. Esm.* 3, 6.). In the reference back to a substantive the article is often omitted, especially after *or*: Most of our young fellows here, display some character or *other* by their dress (CHESTERF., *Lett.*). He . . . may one day or *other*, revisit you (FIELD., *J. Andr.* 3, 4.). The most ancient usage is also disclosed

by the forms *otherwise*, *otherwise* and the like, appearing in composition.

The indefinite article, originally foreign to *other*, is however early found with the pronoun used in the meaning of *alter* and *alius*. Old-Engl.: *Anothr lettre* he sent heom tho (ALIS. 2976.). "Have ye keypyd me none other Blyssyng . . ?" — "*Sich an other* have I none." (TOWNS. M. p. 43.) For slayn is man right as *another beste* (CHAUC., C. T. 1311.). Virgil kest an *ynage other* (SEVYN SAGES 2001.). He wole . . the parsonn have a wyf, and the prest *another* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 326.). Though we kille the cat Yet sholde ther come *another* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 12.). In *another language* it is cleped harme (MACNDEV. p. 71.). Toward the southe is *another chapelle* (p. 96.). Hallsax.: piss iss an *operr neow Adam* (ORM. 11030.). De Sune iss all an had, þe Faderr all an *operr* (18647.). Twestenn burghess . . An i þe land off Galile . . An *operr* i Juda (6982.). He bigon ana stræte . . An *oðer stret* he makede swiðe hendi (LAJAM. II. 205.). Wipp himm wass *an operr mann* (ORM. 5198.). Bisschopess off dep lare Annd yet an *operr læredd folle* (7205.). Þa com þer an *oðer sorje* (LAJAM. III. 279.). Alls iff itt wære an *operr child* (ORM. 1811. cf. 3164.). — But the pronoun without the article is also used. Old-Engl.: That mot with worse be wet for lat of *other lese* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 154.). Rat on the rouwe bible and on *other bok* no mo (p. 327.). *Outher while* thei arn elliswhere (P. PLOUGHM. p. 11.). *Other wise* than he was Warned (p. 59.). And wan land after *other* (R. of GL. I. 44.). Amonges the Sarazines, o part and *other*, duellen many Cristene men (MACNDEV. p. 118.). I man occupied eche day, Haly-day and *oother* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 101.). Whedir your chaunce oon or *othir* he (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 83.). Noon mener than *oother* (p. 283.). In Hallsaxon this is likewise usual: Nom him *oðerne cure* (LAJAM. II. 45.). Cullfre . . fedeþþ *operr cullfress* bridd (ORM. 1260.). Himm reoweþþ . . ec off *operr manness* woh (5566.). Treo vppen *oðer* (LAJAM. II. 446.). — In the opposition of *either*, *one*, *each*, *every* and *other* in use in Old-English, *an* is not commonly subjoined to the latter: *Either* despiseth *other* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 85.). Thus renneþe *on to other* (MACNDEV. p. 244.). I-swore ful deepe, and *ech* of us to *other* (CHAUC., C. T. 1134.). *Everich* biwreied *other* (WRIGHT, Pol. S. p. 325.). *Everich* of hem schal hate *other* (CHAUC., C. T. p. 188. 1.). Thus Hallsaxon opposes *eiper* — *oðer*. *eyperr* — *operr*: *Eiper* hateden *oðer* (LAJAM. I. 167. cf. 80.). Let þu þa hundes . . *eioer* freten *oðer* (III. 274.). 3iff *eyperr* lufaðþ *operr* (ORM. 6261.). — The Anglosaxon, which tolerates other determinatives, does not add *an*: Hvæðer þe ve *oðres* sculon onbidan? (LCC. 7, 19.) Þæt *an* god ys; and nys *oðer* būton him (MARC. 12, 32.). Ic cweðe tō þysum . . and ic cweðe tō oðrum (MATH. 8, 9.). Þā geseah hine *oðer vlyn* (27, 71.). Of stāðe on *oðre* (SENAT. CONS. DE MONTIC. VALLIAE 1.). þurh *oðre dura* in, þurh *oðre* út gevite (BEDA 2, 13.). *Egðer* hyra *oðrum* yfeles hogode (BYRHYS 133. GREIN I. 347.). *Eghvæðer oðerne* oft rāðlice útdræfde (SAX. CHR. 887.). If the definite article appears appropriate in the opposition of determinate persons or things, it is to be observed that in Anglosaxon with *oðer*, and generally in the meanings *alter*, *secundus* the article is needless: *Se forma* nam vif . . þā nam *oðer* hig . . þā nam *se þridda* hig (LCC. 20, 29. sq.). On *oðran Eāstren-dāge* sāt he med þam cynninge āt gereorde (SAX. CHR. 1053.), that is, on the second Easter-day. Comp. Old-Engl.: Day, and *other*, and *third* upon Mighten hy fynde water non (ALIS. 5052.).

ry. It may also be observed that with, the determination of quantity by the adjective *half*, the indefinite article, where it is requisite with a generic name in the singular, is partly applied, partly omitted.

When *half* precedes a substantive, the article *a*, *an* follows it, which, however, may also precede *half*, when this is mostly to be regarded as standing in composition with the substantive. If *half* is referred back additionally to a preceding substantive, the article is sometimes wanting, which is usually put before it: Not *half an hour* before (SHAKSP., Tw. Night 3, 4.). With *half a smile* and *half a tear* she slipped into his hand . . a little sprig of heart's ease (WARREN, Ten Thous. a-y. 2, 6.), beside: Who gladly extended his ride *a half mile* further (COOPER, Spy 1.). — Within this mile and *half* (SHAKSP., Coriol. 1, 4.), beside: You have not been a lodger of mine this year and *a half* (GAY, Begg. Op. 2, 2.). An hour and *a half* earlier than usual (WARREN, Ten Thous. a-y. 1, 2.). In: From *half past* nine o' clock in the morning (1, 1.) and the like, we meet an ellipsis which has become popular. Comp. above *half* p. 169.

The immediate combination of the article with the substantive, instead of with the preceding adjective, is an ancient usage. Old-Engl.: *Half a sheaf* of arwes (P. PLOUGHM p. 62.). That tabernacle is made in maner of *half a compus* (MAUNDEV. p. 75.). Of *half a bushel* flour (CHAUC., C. T. 4310.) along with: *An half myle* more nyghe (MAUNDEV. p. 99.). Comp. Hallsax.: *Alf an hundred* cnihtes (LAJAM. II. 372. modern text) [*Half hundred* cnihten older text], whereas in Anglosaxon the article sometimes stands before *healf*: Lytle mære þonne *āne healfre tide* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 12.). — *an* is in Old-English put before *half* connected additionally: *A fote* and *an half* long (MAUNDEV. p. 10.). Three *cubytes* and *an half* (p. 12.). *A myle* and *an half* from Nyke (p. 21.). The ancient mode of denoting a number $x + \frac{1}{2}$ by the next following ordinal number with *half*, *healf* subjoined before the substantive in the singular, was a long time in use concurrently. Old-Engl.: It wantys . . *Othere half span* and more (TOWN. M. p. 219.). Hallsax.: Ne wunode þe king þer bute *niſte half zere* (LAJAM. III. 295.). Anglosax.: *Oðer healf hund* (GEN. 8, 3.). Nān rēn com ofer eorðan *feorðan healfan geara* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 18.). Comp. Middle-Highdutch *anderhalb vünſtehalb, siebenthalp*. The Modern-Highdutch combines the plural of the substantive.

We shall come to speak hereafter of the transposition of the article with adjectives.

Repetition and Non-repetition of the indefinite Article.

- a) In general, with a substantive, even when it is accompanied by several attributive determinations, yet is referred to one and the same individual, the indefinite article stands only once.

To inspire us with *a free and quiet mind* (BEN JONS., Sejanus 1, 2.). *A pleasant and refreshing scene* (DICKENS, Pict. from It., Lyons). With here and there *a desolate and uninhabited house* (Rome.). He, who in *an enlightened and literary society*, aspires to be a great poet (MACAUL., Essays I. 9.). James was declared *a mortal and bloody enemy* (Hist. of E. II. 143.). His rise . . seems to prove that he was *a bold and able leader* (GIBBON, Decl. 7.). It is *a serious, grave time* (CARL., Past a. Pres. 3, 13.).

Yet the emphasizing both of homogeneous and heterogeneous qualities of the same object may condition the repetition of the article.

A *mighty* and a *fearful* head they are (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 3, 2.). Versification in a dead language is an *exotic*, a *far-fetched*, costly, sickly imitation (MACAUL., Essays I. 10.). Man has ever been a *striving*, struggling, and, in spite of wide-spread calumnies, a *veracious creature* (CARL., Past a. Pres. 2, 1.). The repetition often combines itself with a second adjective following the substantive: This was my master, A *very valiant Briton*, and a *good* (SHAKSP., Cymb. 4, 2). Unto a *good land* and a *large* (EXOD. 3, 8.). This is a *strange spectacle* and a *sacred* (BULW., Rienzi 3, 2.).

The succession of several adjectives after the indefinite article and before the substantive is not unknown to the older tongue. Old-Engl.: A *gret thikke clowde* (MACNDEV. p. 260.). Halfsax.; Warrþ an *unnorne annd wrecche man* (ORM. 4884. cf. 5800.). Yet this position of the adjectives is not generally so common, and with the frequent separation of the adjectives, which usually surround the substantive, the indefinite article is often repeated with the adjective following. Old-Engl.: A *fulle fayr cytee*, and a *gode* and a *well walled* (MACNDEV. p. 15.). A *gode ile* and a *fayr* and a *gret* (p. 27.). A *fayre castelle* and a *strong* (p. 92.). A *ful gret lord* and o *myghty* (p. 202.). Gloton was a *gret cherl* And a *grym* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 98.). A *wyde dyke* and a *depe* (RICH. C. DE L. 2685.). A monk, a *fair man* and a *bold* (CHAUC., C. T. 14436.). With this collocation of words formerly very familiar, I have not met with the repetition of the indefinite article in Halfsaxon. In Anglosaxon, where this article is in general rare, the repetition of it is wholly wanting.

β. With the succession of substantives the repetition of the indefinite article with each of the distinct persons or things is the general rule. Even where the substantives are referred predicatively to the same individual, the article is usually repeated.

James was declared a *mortal* and *bloody enemy*, a *tyrant*, a *murderer* and a *usurper* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. II. 143.). My son, thou hast spoken as a *patriot* and a *Christian* (BULW., Rienzi 2, 3.). Her place as companion was a *sinecure* and a *derision* (THACKER., Vanity Fair 1, 14.). He saw him in his mind's eye, a *collegian*, a *parliament-man* — a *Baronet perhaps* (3, 8.).

Nevertheless, in the copulative as well as the disjunctive connection, with the syndetic juxtaposition of distinct members, the article is often not repeated.

You must be kept a *year* and *day* (BUTL., Hud. 2, 1, 700.). A *feeble senate* and *enervated people* (GIBBON, Decl. 3.). The errors which, in a few months, alienated a *loyal gentry* and *priesthood* from the House of Stuart (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 1.). Miss Sharp only folded her own hands with a *very frigid smile* and *bow* (THACKER., Vanity Fair 1, 1.). The warders stout Saw a *terrier* and *lurcher* passing out (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 3, 12.). Mrs. Facile, with a *pestle* and *mortar* (OXENF., Twice Killed 1, 2.). In this case the substantive notions, from different points of view in the copulative relation are considered, as it were from the outset, as forming a whole belonging together. Elsewhere the identity of the individual after *and* is the occasion for the non-repetition of the article: A magistrate, a member of Parliament, a county magnate, and *representative* of an ancient family, he made it his duty to show himself (THACKER., Vanity Fair 2, 20.). In the disjunctive relation

the non-repetition of the article is a matter of course, when not different objects, but different names of the same object are placed beside each other: On the white corner square marked 64 place a *rook or castle* (CHAMBERS, Informat. II. 657. II.). Yet the language inclines to it: I hardly know whether I'm a *boy or girl* (SOUTHERN, Oron. 4, 1.). He was a man . . who never had a *taste, or emotion, or enjoyment*, but what was sordid and foul (THACKER, Vanity Fair 1. 9.). Not a vestige of a *town or even cottage* was within sight (BYR., Fragg.) On account of the affinity of form there is connected herewith the common negation of the members without the repetition of the article: Yet better had he neither known *A bigot's shrine, nor despot's throne* (BYR., Ode to N. B. p. 347.). The same omission also meets us in comparisons with *as*; As full as perfect, in a *hair as heart* (POPE, Essay on M. 1, 276.).

Expressions with the article not omitted, like many of those cited, are blamed by grammarians. See Harrison, Engl. Langu. 1848. p. 222. We have to do with the exposition of the actual usage, more or less diffused, and with its explanation. The awkwardness of the usage in single cases may nevertheless be acknowledged. Moreover the freer treatment of this article only arose with its more extended use. In Old-English its repetition with several substantives is common, as also in Modern-English, even with the determination of the same subject by different predicative substantives: He is a *japere and a gabhere* (CHAUC., C. T. p. 185. II.). He was . . A *theef, a sompnour, and eek a baude* (ib. 6935.). Where the modern language might take occasion to omit the repetition, it regularly occurs: A *bolle and a bagge* He bar by his syde (P. PLOUGHM. p. 109.). Till Gloton hadde y-glubbed A *galon and a gille* (p. 97.). Yet a few non-repetitions are met with: In the likynge lith a *pride, And licames coveitise* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 298.). Wher as sche many a *schip and barge* sihe (CHAUC., C. T. 11162.). Ful many a *tame lyoun and lepart* (2188). Similar combinations are hardly to be found in the most ancient times.

Of the Omission of the Definite and Indefinite Article in particular.

The substantive denotes the object according to its notion; the definite as well as the indefinite article assigns to it the sphere of its existence. But both articles, which originally individualize, if it is permitted to comprise under this category the definite article in the plural, as referred to determinate individuals, are again referred to the sort and the kind, and their character is to be gathered each time from the context, so that the sensuous or numerical determination of the notion, striven after by the article, is again in part lost.

But, in general, where no article is added to the substantive, the substantive notion is to be taken in its essence and generality, or it is referred to an indefinite quantity or multitude, or, finally, the object which remains to be more particularly determined for intuition, becomes intelligible by its immediate presence or by another reference. Therewith must be considered that the personification of a notion, especially in poetry, may render the article superfluous.

The use of the articles has never been determined by a rigid law. Language often uses or omits them without the objective value of speech being changed thereby; but that the use of the one or of the other article may also condition essential differences is to be readily understood after the preceding explanations.

It is not always decidedly the definite or the indefinite article which could be added to a substantive without the article; occasionally, both might be equally applied, although this is not in general the case.

We here consider the omission of articles in particular cases and in different members of the sentence.

- a. Ordinarily, no article is added to the substantive, which is preceded by a genitive (the so-called Saxon Genitive). An article preceding the genitive is, in general, like other determinatives, to be referred to the latter, not to the substantive following it.

Tell me her father's *name* (SHAKSP., Taming 1, 2.). The ant's *republic*, and the realm of bee's (POPE, Essay on M. 3, 184.). The commission decided in Clide's *favour* (MACAUL., Essays IV. 31.). A check in frantic war's *unfinished game* (TH. CAMPBELL, Theod.). Udolph left his chief As with a son's or younger brother's *grief* (ib.). Has this night's *walk* shown more than common sorrow? (TALFOURD, John 1, 1.). These substantives without an article are in general in the same case as those in Greek introduced by the definite article, for instance: ἡ τῆς ἀρετῆς κτῆσις, τὰ τῶν ἀνθρώπων πράγματα. But the article may also belong to the substantive determined by the genitive: Sweno, *the Norway's king* (SHAKSP., Macb. 1, 2.). *The same flaw*, or *St.-Vitus' tic* (CARL., Past a. Pres. 2, 14.). That would be *a ten day's wonder* (SHAKSP., III Henry VI. 3, 2.). The lady Essex was *a Potiphar's wife* (CARL., Past a. Pres. 2, 14.). In this case the genitive enters into a closer combination with the succeeding substantive, approaching composition. (chores Sancti Viti.)

The construction first touched upon goes back to the earliest times. Old-Engl.: Right as the sonne is the worldys *eye* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 85.). To-morwe worth ymaked The maydenes *bridale* (P. FLOUGH. p. 30.). Under a brood bank By a bournes *syde* (p. 1.). The croune . . He set on his fadir *heved* (ALIS. 1070.). Ther they dwellyd fourty dawes, For to lerne londres *laures* (RICH. C. DE L. 629.). Halfsax : He wes pisse londres *king* (LAFAM. I. 292.). Ða þes daies *ende bicom* (II. 345.). Anglosax.: Ic Ine, mid godes *gife* Vest seaxna *cynig* (LEGG. INÆ init.). Ða sacerdas of Le-vies *cynne* (DRETER. 27, 14.). Betvux þam dagræde and þære sunnan *up-gange* ÆQUIN. VERN. 5.). Ðises *cyninges cven* veaŕð of life geviton (APOL-LON. OF T. p. 1.). With this collocation the article is thought as replaced by the preceding genitive determination. Moreover the genitive sometimes occurs put between the article and the substantive belonging to it; Innan *þære Godes lufan* (GUTHLAG 2.).

- β. The definite or indefinite article is still sometimes suppressed in a complete or incomplete comparative sentence.

As fair *as day* (SHAKSP., Love's L. L. 4, 3.). Think not . . I'll Keep the house *as owl* does her tower (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 2, 2.). — So then — the Vandals . . Have burnt to dust a nobler pile *Than ever Roman* saw (COWP. p. 342.). For the support of the generalized sentence by *ever* comp. γ.

Thus, the generic name stands in Old-English particularly frequently after *as*: That me us honteth *as hound* doth the hare (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 152.). Than satte summe *as siphre* doth in awgrym (DEFOS. OF RICH. II. p. 29.). The erthe . . . Quaked *as quyk thyng* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 384.). Gamelyn . . . stond *as stille* *as stoon* (GAMELYN 262.). I shalle make ye stille *as stowe* (TOWNS. M. p. 30.). Hote *as glovinde glede* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 96.). A dawghttyr feyer *as floury* (TORRENS 31.). *Any* is frequently added to the substantive. See *any*. Comp. Old-Fr.: *Blanche come Aur* (CHASS. DE ROL. ed. Michel p. 136.). Mod.-Fr.: *Blanc comme cygne, lait* (ACAD.). Yet an imitation of the Old-French is not to be sought for here, Hallsax.: He prafto to þan fihte *sua þode* doð on felde (LAJAM. III. 102.). Anglosax.: Ic geseah Satanan *sæ sæ lig-ræsc* of heofne feallende (MARC 8, 24.). With names of materials in the singular, as with the generalizing of the object by the plural, the article might be at all times absent. In comparative sentences with *than* the article is also wanting. Old-Engl.: Mo diwelis than *herte* may thynke (CHAUC. C. T. p. 187. l.). Anglosax.: Ic eom on stence strengre . . . *þonne ricels* *ôððe rose* sý (GREIN, Aes. Poes. II. 388.). Ic mæg fromlicor fleogan *þonne perner* . . . *æfre* meahthe (II. 389.).

- γ. As in the usage just cited the generic name in the singular represents the notion in its universality, this is also especially the case in negative and interrogative sentences, particularly where the particles *never* and *ever* have place.

Never *master* had a page so kind (SHAKSP., Cymb 5, 5.). Never *master* So well deserved the love of him that served him (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 2, 3.). Never *was husband* so fond, nor *wife* so devoted (KAVANAGH, Fr. Wom. of Lett. 21.). As never *sow* was higher in this world (TENNYNS. p. 228.). *Finger* cannot touch them, save thine own (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 3, 2.). *Cheerfuller form* of inventive stupidity than Commandant Santerre's dwells in no human soul (CARL., Fr. Revol. 3, 2, 2.). Was ever *king* that joy'd an earthly throne, And could command no more content than I? (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 4, 9.). Was ever *passion* cross'd like mine? (ADDIS., Rosam. 1, 4.). When did *knight* of Provence avoid his foe, or forsake his love? (BULW., Rienzi 3, 1.).

The questions cited are so far nearly allied to negative sentences as they contain indirectly the negation which is supposed in the answer. Although the older language in affirmative sentences still to a wide extent introduces without the article the generic name which is to be taken generally, it is predominantly preserved in negative sentences. Old-Engl.: Shal never *man* of this molde Meynprise the leeste (P. PLOUGHM. p. 39.). Ther ne lyvede never *man* . . . that som tyme he ne deyde (CHAUC. C. T. 2847). Ther was never *man* neghyd byr nere (TOWNS. M. p. 108.). Þer nes in al þe world *suerd* hym yliche (R. OF GL. I. 49.). Ther ne was *raton* in all the route (P. PLOUGHM. p. 11.). For no thing ne shuld I take *mon* on erthe to ben mi make (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 5.). *Treuer womon* ne mai no mon cnowe (ib.). *Freour mon* mihte no mon fonde (p. 10). Within thy bowndes nys ther *creature* So fortunat (p. 83.). Hallsax.: Ne scalt þu næwer halden *dæle* of mine lande (LAJAM. I. 131.). Þurh nanes cunnes ginne no mihten heo *deor* iwinne (III 227.). Næs þa in al þan ende *burh* al swa hende (II. 61.). Anglosax.: þæt ic on middangeard næfre *egorhere* eft gelaede (CAEDM. 1531.). Ic æfre ne geseah . . . on sæ lædan *sillicran cræft* (ASDR. 499.). *Deof* ne *cymð* būton þæt he stele (JOH. 10, 10.). It is readily understood that a restriction of the Anglosaxon to these cases is not to be thought of. With

regard to the particles *never*, *ever* in such sentences we may be reminded that in Old-French *oncques*, as in Modern-French *jamais*, in Italian *mai* usually take the substantive without an article after them, wherewith may be compared *nie* in Modern-Highdutch: *Nie keiser wart sô riche* (NIBEL. 50, 3.), *In behagte nie rîter alsô wol* (LWEIN 95.).

- ð. The superlative of the adjective, in combination with a substantive, or used substantively (especially *most*) not merely in the predicative and appositive relation, but also otherwise, is without the definite article, which is else mostly added to it.

So *longest way* shall have the longest moans (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 5, 1.). Fit to bear the weight of *mightiest monarchies* (MILT., P. L. 2, 306.). But grace abus'd brings forth the foulest deeds, As *richest soil* the most luxuriant weeds (COWP. p. 60.). But 'tis the way with joy! With *richest heart*, it has the poorest tongue (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 3, 2.). What place will you choose For *first interviews*? (ADDIS., Rosam. 1, 6.) How was the girl smitten? As they kill partridges at *first sight*? (DOUGL. JERROLD, Prison of W. 2.) *Most epic poets* plunge in "medias res" (BYR., D. Juan 1, 6). So easy it seem'd Once found, which yet *most* would have thought Impossible (MILT., P. L. 6, 499.). *Most* of the auxiliaries . . . had stipulated that they should not be obliged to pass the Alps (GIBRON, Decl. 15.). *Most* of these poems have been long before the public (SCOTT, Minstrelsy I. 1.). *Next morn*, ere the ninth hour (SHAKSP., Ant. a. Cleop. 2, 3.). That moment shall come *next week* (DOUGL. JERROLD, Prison of W. 2.). *Last night* she enjoin'd me to write some lines (SHAKSP., Two Gentlem 2, 1.). Have you seen the debate of *last night*? (DOUGL. JERROLD, Bubbles 1.) Thus *first*, *next*, *last*, *most* have become fixed, especially in definite combinations.

We have spoken as p. 147. and 149. about the combination of adjectives in general without the article with different classes of substantives. The superlative is found proportionally rarely in former times, where it agrees the with substantive in number and case; without the article, more frequently, where it has the genitive of the plural. Old-Engl.: He was *firste kyng* of the world (MAUNDEV. p. 41.). Who that *most maistries* kan (P. PLOUGHM. p. 411.). He so haveth of fur *most*, he schal beo smal and red (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat p. 138.). The superlative with the genitive and without the article is very familiar in Hallsax.: þa wes aboljen *baldest* alre kingen (LAȜAM. III. 40.). He funde i þan buren *feirest* alre bruden (III. 27.). þa rad forð a þan felde *falsest* alre kinge (III. 263.). Anglosax.: þar ic hæfde *mæstne hiht* (Ps. 76, 3.). — þær is *ealra frēcna mæste* (CAEDM. 485.). þær *manna vese mæst* ætgædere (Ps. 78, 10.). Þa gieng to Adame *idesa scēnost*, *vifa elitegost* (CAEDM. 622.). Comp. η.

- ε. With the enumeration or compression and opposition of substantives in the same grammatical relation, where, partly the definite, partly the indefinite article, or a pronoun, might have a place, or where a multitude is indicated by the singular, the mere substantive suffices with the copulative and disjunctive connection: also the adjective used substantively, in affirmative and negative sentences.

Ending with — *brother*, *son*, and all are dead (SHAKSP., II Henry IV. 1, 1.). *Hill* and *valley* rings (MILT., P. L. 2, 495.). *Baron*

and *chief* stood near (MR. HEMANS p. 20.). Some one had told her that learning was better than *house* and *land* (BULW., Money 2, 3.). He search'd, they search'd, and rummaged every where, *Closet*, and *clothes'-press*, *chest* and *window-seat* (BYR., D. Juan 1, 143.). Him God beholding from his prospect high, Wherein *past*, *present*, *future* he beholds (MILT., P. L. 3, 77.). Where *small* and *great* . . Draw to one point, and to one centre bring *Beast*, *man*, or *angel*, *servant*, *lord*, or *king* (POPE, Essay on M. 3, 297.). I can't say much for *friend* or yet *relation* (BYR., D. Juan 1, 32.). He that curseth *father* or *mother*, let him die the death (MATT. 15, 4.). Bliss is the same in *subject* or in *king* (POPE, Essay on M. 4, 58.). He will spare neither *man*, *woman*, nor *child* (SHAKSP., II Henry IV. 2, 1.). *Sigh*, nor *word*, nor *struggling breath* Heralded his way to death (BYR., Siege 27.).

Old-Engl: Thenne mot ych habbe hennen a-rost Feyr on fyhshe day *launprcy* ant *laz* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 151.). Meni of religioun me halt hem ful hene, *Baroun* and *bonde*, the clerik and the knyht (p. 150.). Me siȝth ofte liȝtnige berne *hous* and *schrenche* (Pop. Treat. p. 136.). Be lost *life* and *soule* (P. PLOGHM. p. 384.). Of *hous*, of *hom*, of *child*, of *wife*, Seli mon tak therof *koop* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 90.). So ich evere brouke *hous* other *flet* (p. 9.). I woot no better leche Than *person* or *parische-preest*, *Penitauncer* or *bisshope* (P. PLOGHM. p. 444.). With outen *henne*, *goos*, or *doke* (MAUNDEV. p. 49.). Ther nas *kȳte* ne *krȳwe* (DEPOS. or RICH. II. p. 14.). Nother in *werk* ne in *word* (p. 10.). Halfsax.: patt follkes *lac* wass *shep* annd *gat*, Annd *oze*, annd *cullfre*, annd *turtte*, Annd *teȳre* *lac* wass *bule* annd *lamb* (ORM. 988.). To þe folc, To *heredd* annd to *le-wedd* (966.). Sannt Johan wass streonedd ta þurh *fader* annd þurh *moderr* (743.). No mihten heo deor iwinne, nouþer *heort* no *hinde* (LAJAM. III. 227.). Ne bi-læfde he her neouþer *suster* ne *broþe[r]* (II. 2.). Anglo-sax.: Berað *bord* and *ord* (ELENE 1187.). Þonne *rond* and *hand* on here-felda helm ealgodon (ANDR. 9). Þone þe *grund* and *sund*, *heofon* and *eorðan* and *hræo wegas*, *salte sæstreamas* and *svegl* uppe æmeacode mundum sinum (747.). Gescöp . . *sæ* and *eorðan* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 2.). Ne veorðjað *fæder* and *móðor* (MATH. 15, 6.). Þara þe *vif* ðýðe *ver* on voruld cendon (ELENE 508.). Nô hafað hió *fôð* nè *fôlm* GREIN, Ags. Poes. II. 387.). Ne hafað hió *sæte* nè *feorh* (ib.). Þær naðor ðm nè *modde* hit ne fornymð (MATH. 6, 20.).

There is no need to cite plurals following one another, or names of materials and abstract terms in the singular, since they commonly appear without the article, where they are not limited more particularly.

- ζ. The repetition of the same substantive with the opposition of the same objects, which frequently appear combined by prepositions, usually excludes the article or other determinatives.

Fire answers *fire* . . *Steed* threatens *steed* (SHAKSP., Henry V Chor.). So help me God, as I have watch'd the night, *Ay*, *night* by *night*. — in studying good for England (II Henry VI. 3, 1.). The two works are lying *side* by *side* before us (MACAUL., Essays V. 3.). Faster than spring-time showers comes *thought* on *thought* (SHAKSP., Henry VI. 3, 1.). Then stand *front* to *front* (MILT., P. L. 2, 716.). With him will I speak *mouth* to *mouth* (NUMB. 12, 8.). Let me but meet him *foot* to *foot* (BULW., Richel. 4, 1.). She . . press'd you *heart* to *heart* (TENNYS. p. 91.). So from the first, eternal *Order* ran, And *creature* link'd to *creature*, *man* to *man*

(POPE, Essay on M. 3, 113.). So *hand* in *hand* they pass'd (MILT., P. L. 4, 321.). When, *arm* in *arm*, we went along (TENNYNS. p. 92.). *Light* after *light* well us'd they shall attain (MILT., P. L. 3, 196.). The long brook falling thro' the clov'n ravine In *cataract* after *cataract* (TENNYNS. p. 98.). Its noble garden, *terrace* above *terrace* (ROGERS, It., Ginevra). The combination of opposed substantives in prepositional members is in some measure allied: From *head* to *heel* (SHAKSP., Wint. T. 4, 3.). Audacity, from *head* to *foot*! (Cymb. 1, 7.) It would not be fair From *sire* to *son* to augur good or ill (BYR., D. Juan 1, 51.).

Old-Engl.: *Soule* shall *soule* quyte (P. PLOUGHM. p. 389.). From *yeir* to *yeir* (ALIS. 2937.). *Word* for *word* thus they spake (2922.). *Man* for *man*, *tre* for *tre*, *Madyn* for *madyn* (TOWN. M. p. 72.). For to be stwardus alle o rowe *Weke* after *weke* (HALLIW., Freemas. 348.). — Fro *fo* to *croun* (ALIS. 1888.). Hallsax.: *Spredd wra* to *wazhe* (ORM. 1670.). *Side* bi *side* beiene heo þer liggeð (LAWAM. II. 408.). *Zurweden* heom seoluan, *breoste* wid *breoste* (I. 79.). From *dæize* to *dæize* (III. 221.). Anglosax.: *Vas áðæled . . vāter* of *vātrum* (CAEDM. 150.). Ne *ansyne* tō *ansyne* (DEUTER. 34, 10.). Ic sperce tō him *mūðe* tō *mūðe* (NUM. 12, 8.). Hālige men gangeð of *māgene* on *māgen* (S. GUTHL. 5.). *peoð* viñð ongeān *peoðe* (MATH. 24, 6.). Þā þær folc mægen fōr āfter ðōrum . . *folc* āfter *fulcum*, *cynn* āfter *cynne* (CAEDM. 2376.). *Tōð* for *tōð*, *hand*a for *hand*a, *fēt* for *fēt*, *bārning* for *bārning*, *vund* við *vund*, *læl* við *læle* (LEGG, ÆLFR. 19.). — He þe mæg sōð gecýðan . . æriht from *orde* ðð *ende* forð (ELENE 587.).

7. *aa.* In the predicative relation the subject of the sentence may be denoted in a general way by a substantive in the nominative of the singular without the article. Another determination may even be added to the predicative generic name.

Were I *king* (SHAKSP., Macb. 4, 3.). If you be *maid* or no (Temp. 1, 2.). Is he *soldier* or *Civilian*? — *lord* or *gentleman*? (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 1, 2.). Is he *bachelor* or *husband*? (ib.) Thy father was *duke* of *Milan* (SHAKSP., Temp. 1, 2.). It had been *prentice* to a brewer (BUTL., Hud. 1, 1, 387.). Your man was *porter* to some merchant's door (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 3, 1.). 'Tis *phrase* absurd to call a villain great (POPE, Essay on M. 4, 230.). Each to each is *dearest brother* (TENNYNS. p. 15.). I'd turn *boy* again (DOUGL. JERROLD, Rent Day 2, 4.). The bill . . did not become *law* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. II. 152.). He was elected *sensor* (GIBBON, Decl. 2.). In a sentence with a plural subject the predicative plural without the article is a matter of course, if only the general character of the subject is to be expressed: Since these sailor bull-dogs have been *prisoners* here (DOUGL. JERROLD, Prison. of W. 1, 1.).

Whereas in the cases cited the predicative completion is essentially felt as the term for a quality belonging to the subject, the predicative generic name in the singular, accompanied by the indefinite article, serves to predicate the subject as an individual of a kind.

Live, and be a *king* (SHAKSP., Rich. III. 2, 1.). I'm a *Numidian* (ADDIS., Cato 4, 4.). I'm a *major* (COOP., Spy 5.). He'll be an *admiral* (DOUGL. JERROLD, Prison. of W. 1, 2.). She lived to be a *classic* (MACAUL., Essays V. 2.). I was an *ass* — a *gull*

— a *greenhorn* (DOUGL. JERROLD, *Prison. of W.* 1, 2.). Man's a *phenomenon* (BYR., *D. Juan* 1, 132.). It's a *sham* too (DOUGL. JERROLD, *Rent Day* 2. 1.). That is, indeed, a *privilege most gracious* (PLANCHÉ, *Fortunio* 1, 4.). I say the sun is a *most gracious sight* (BYR., *D. Juan* 2, 140.). Is our poor English existence wholly becoming a *night-mare*? (CARL., *Past a. Pres.* 3, 1.) He was knighted and made a *judge* (JOHNS., *Lives* 1.).

Sometimes the definite article is added to the predicative name of a kind, where no other determination, which would in general require this article, seems to belong to the name. O hear your father, noble youth! hear him, Who is at once *the hero* and *the man* (COLER., *Picc.* 1, 4.). In this case the predicative notion does not serve to denote the single specimen of the kind, but of the individual, which exhausts the notion as to its substantial value and therefore, as it were, in its whole extent. With that compare such expressions as: Dost thou play *the miner*? (BULW., *Lady of L.* 3, 1.) What sage is so resolved to play *the orator* That he would die for't (TALFOURD, *Jon* 2, 1.).

Not every substantive is adapted to be employed predicatively in like manner with and without the article. It is chiefly names of persons, which also appear among generic names without the article, whereas the feeling of the language resists the use without the article of names of beasts and things, unless a more abstract side is to be gained from the latter. This has extended with the more extended use of the indefinite article. In Old-English therefore, among names of kinds, names of persons chiefly are used predicatively without the article: Guyder . . *kyng* was of pis lond (R. OF GL. I. 62.). Eleuthere . . was *po pope of Rome* (I. 72.). Mi loverd is *curteis mon and hende* (WRIGHT, *Anecd.* p. 5.). Ic am *wif bothe god and trewe* (ib.). I shal be *foul chert* (Polit. S. p. 151.). He is *nyzt peef and day peef* (WYCL., *Joh.* 10, 1.). He was *lord spirituelle and temporelle* (MAUNDEV. p. 43.). Thou art *angelles fayr and bright* (TOWN. M. p. 73.). Ymad he was *emperour* (R. OF GL. I. 62.). In Hallsaxon we often meet with neuter substantives without the article: He was *swiðe kene mon* (LAȜAM. III. 5.). Eært þu *angel?* (III. 26.). Heo was *swiðe aȝel burh* (I. 124.). Þat wes a þan tide *tun swiðe hende* (II. 313.). Icc amm *sop mann* (ORM. 14382.). Whanne he *zung mann* wass (3594.). Þatt child . . Shall ben . . *Full mahhtig mann annd mære* (804.). Summ aȝell mann . . þatt i þatt hird was *hæfedd* (611.). Ȝho beep æfre, annd wass, annd iss *Sæsteorrne* (2133.). Itt iss *Resstedazȝ Off olle þeowwlike dede* (4176.). In Anglosaxon the indefinite article hardly occurs here: He was . . *man slaga* (JOH. 8, 44.). Swilce he *ærfæst fæder* wære (APOLL. OF T. p. 3.). Væs *cal-dorman* in Tiro (ib.). Ic com *vunderlicu viht* (GREIN, *Ags. Poes.* II. p. 378, 381.). Ic com rices æht . . *stið and steap vong* (II. 399.). Þæt bið *frēcne vund* (CRIST. 770. Grein.). Þæt is *dreadleas hūs* (1628.). The superlative in combination with the substantive may suppose a determinate individual, which might be denoted by the definite article. Old-Engl.: *First lord* he was in Engelond (R. OF GL. I. 11.). Engelond is *lond best* (J. 8.). Anglosax.: þu . . *hēhsta bist heofonrices veard* (Ps. 91, 7.). Comp. p. 196.

But the use of the indefinite article is also early familiar even with predicative names of persons. Old-Engl.: Alfred he was in Enkelonde a *king* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., *Rel. Ant. Prov. of Alfr.*). She is a *bastarde* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 29.). He was a *wicche* (p. 373.). As he a *preest* were (p. 5.). Ase hit were a *brude* (WRIGHT, *Polit. S.* p. 239.). Art þou a *prophete?* (WYCL., *Joh.* 1. 21.) He was a *begger* (9, 8.). She wende that he had

ben a gardener (MAURDEV. p. 79.). He . . . becam a renegade (p. 84.). — Urthe is a *lutel hurfte* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 132.). Engelsond ys a *wel god lond* (R. OF GL. I. 1.). Halfsax.: He wes a *zenge king* (LAZAM. I. 132.). Icc amm an *wurrrn* (ORM. 4878.). Godess Sune . . . Warrp an *unmorne annod wrecche mann* (4882.).

The adjective, as a predicative completion, in general takes no article, whereas it may when supported by *one*: As my story is not a *short one* (MARRYAT, Pet. Simple 1, 1.), see p. 181. and 185. The superlative may also be employed predicatively without the article.

This life is *best*, if quiet life be (SHAKSP., Cymb. 4, 3.). Good words, I think, were *best* (John 4, 3.). The narrow path of duty is *securest* (COLER., Wallenst. 3, 2.). In every earthly thing *First* and *most principal* is place and time (Picc. 1, 6.). Where the citron and olive are *fairest* of fruit (BYR., Bride 1.). Men, in power Only, are *liket* Gods (TENNYS. p. 103.). There are *last* which shall be *first*, and there are *first* which shall be *last* (LUKE 13, 30.). She's *fairest* of the fair (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 3, 1.). The employment of the article, and that the definite, whereby, either with a reference backward to the preceding substantive, or with the substantive use of the adjective, one or more objects are stated more decidedly than the only ones to which, among objects of the same kind, a quality belongs in the highest degree, is also a matter of course in the predicative relation: This course was much *the best* (BYR., D. Juan 1, 67.). I 've finished my errand there; 'twas not *the pleasantest* (DOUGL. JERROLD, Rent Day 2, 3.). What's *the best*? (SHAKSP., Oth. 5, 2.) But the superlative without the article has also been preserved with the substantive, see p. 139.

The predicative superlative without the article, which is not to be taken for an original adverb, answers to the most ancient usage. Old-Engl.: Wan water is *mest* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 138.). What is *best*? (TOWN. M. p. 45.) David was *doghtiest* of dedes in his tyme (P. PLOUGHM. p. 403.). Yrlond ys aler yle *best* (R. OF GL. I. 43.). Of alle venymes *Foulest* is the scorpion (P. PLOUGHM. p. 378.). Was thou not *fairist* of angels alle? (TOWN. M. p. 4.) Halfsax.: þu art *hæxt* ouer us (LAZAM. III. 2.). Hengest þe cnihten wes *fazereast* (II. 476.). Þatt stannt wiþp hire sune i stall þatt *hezheast* iss inn heoffne (ORM. 2145.). Þatt lott iss *hezheast* (15270.). Þiss folc ias *lazheast* (15276.). Wiþp þatt þatt himm iss *lefeast* off þin ahhte (14700.). Itt iss *mast* Annd *hezheast* off hemm alie (10734.). Anglosax.: Hira år is *mæst* (OROS. 1, 1.). Se þe ys *læst* betveox eov ealle, se ys *måra* (LUC. 9, 48.). Hvyte heora *yldest* være (9, 46.). þæt me is sorga *mæst* (CÆDM. 363.). Se bið gefeana *fågrast* (CRIST. 1666. Grein). Synd *yltemeste* þå þe beoð *fyrmeeste*, and synd *fyrmeeste* þå þe beoð *yltemeste* (LUC. 13, 30.). We shall speak of the different conception of the superlative in speech generally on the adjective.

ββ. The predicative accusative is syntactically closely allied to the nominative. It may, therefore, under a restriction similar to that of the nominative, without the article, characterize the person in a general manner.

He creates Lucius *pro-consul* (SHAKSP., Cymb. 3, 7.). To make you *emperor* (MARLOWE, I Tamburl. 1, 1.). I will invest your highness *emperor* (ib.). Why not re-elect him *decemvir*? (SHERID. KNOW-

LES, Virgin. 1, 1.) For that end we named Ourselves *decemvir* (ib.). I dub thee *knight* (SCOTT, *Marm.* 6, 12.). Wouldst thou have me *traitor* also? (BULW., *Rienzi* 5, 4.) Keep him *prisoner* (TALE., *Ion* 3, 3.) and the like; beside: I made you *a duke* (SHAKSP., *Meas. f.* *Meas.* 5, 1.). I 've made the man . . think me *a miser* (DOUGL. JERROLD, *Bubbles* 3.). Many combinations of verbs with the substantive without the article have been habitually retained. The superlative is also found as a predicative accusative without the article: Of many good I think him *best* (SHAKSP., *Two Gentlem.* 1, 2.). Occasionally, no article is added to the prepositional member with *to* or *for*, which formerly served in a wider extent to periphrase the predicative case generally: To crave the French king's sister *To wife* for Edward (SHAKSP., *III Henry VI.* 3, 1.). He took Rebekkah *to wife* (GEN. 25, 20.). Whom late you have named *for consul* (SHAKSP., *Coriol.* 3, 1.)! I choose Clarence only *for protector* (*III Henry VI.* 4, 6.). While ivory skin . . Her . . comrade told *For daughter* of Almaine (SCOTT, *Bridal* 3, 35.). Comp. on the other hand: D'ye take me *for a butcher*? (PLANCHÉ, *Fortunio* 1, 2.) All your neighbours praise you *for an honest upright man* (DOUGL. JERROLD, *Rent Day* 2, 4.).

Old-Engl.: Made hym *kyng of Engelond* (R. OF GL. II. 420.). Made him *soudan* (MAUNDEV. p. 37.). Þys noble duc Wyllam hym let crouning *kyng* (R. OF GL. II. 367.). To slo hym thus I thynk *grete syn* (TOWNS. M. p. 40.), Hallsax.: Ich wulle þe makien *riche mon* (LAJAM. II. 82.). Al Sikelines quiden *sotscipe* heo holden (II. 551.). Anglosax.: Tōcneōvon Crist *sōðne mann* (A-S. HOMIL. I. 106.). The frequent substitution of the case with *to* and *for* readily dispenses with a determinative. Old-Engl.: To crowne þe *to kyng* (R. OF GL. I. 105.). He wyllede hire *to wyue* (LANGT. II. 422.). Hallsax.: Makeden hine *to duke* (LAJAM. I. 18. cf. II. 177 400.). Nom Ygærne *to quene* (II. 384.). His moder ich hadde *to wife* (II. 521.). *To crihte* hine dubben (ih.). Ich wulle . . halden þe *for lauerd* (II. 83 cf. I. 59.). Anglosax.: Se here . . hine geceās synderlice him *tō hlāforde* (SAX. CHR. 921.). Dubbade his sunu Henric *to riddere* (1085.). Eall peodscipe hine . . heold þā *for fulne cyning* (1013.). Comp. II. 1. p. 202.

J. In the adverbial relation of the sentence, names of kinds appear most frequently without the article, and are here mostly assimilated to abstract terms and names of materials conceived partitively.

aa. The case of the object of transitive verbs is less considered. The names of kinds belonging here are mostly taken out of the domain of immediate intuition or of objects of continuous intercourse, and belong in part to the language of common life, in part to poetic license, and are often employed for figurative expressions.

Compare for instance: hold up *head* (SHAKSP., *II Henry IV.* 1, 3.); turn *head*; make *head* against; give *ear*; keep *eyes* (upon her. SHAKSP., *Macb.* 5, 1.); set *eyes* (on it again. THACKER., *Vanity Fair* 1, 2.); set *foot* (under thy table. SHAKSP., *Taming* 2, 1.); show *legs* (I . . will show legs with her for twenty pound. PLANCHÉ, *Fortunio* 1, 1.); hold *hand* (with SHAKSP., *John* 2, 2.); shake *hands*; clap *hands* (SCOTT, *Harold* 1, 11.); put *finger* (i' th' eye. BUTL., *Hud* 1, 3, 1027.); give *fingers* (you gave them fingers. (SHERID. KNOWLES, *Hunchb.* 3, 1.); take *heart* (BUTL.,

Hud. 1, 3, 35.); leave *town, school, college*; keep *house*; shut up *shop* (BYR., Don Juan 1, 12.); take *ship* (shipping). *horse*; set, make, crowd, shorten, strike *sail*; cast, drop, weigh *anchor*; hold *plow* (steer a plow); take, strike *root*, and others. Hither also may be referred the terms for place, as in *give way, place*; *make room*; *take place*, and the like, as well as for utterances of thought, which, as single actual phenomena, constitute a kind, as in: *bring, send word*; *take oath*, and the like.

A few of these expressions may be considered as combinations of a verb with a concrete substantive, so as to form a unity of notion, by which a verbal notion is paraphrased, as is more frequently the case with the combination of abstract terms, names of materials and of kinds in the plural with verbs. Combinations of the latter sort have more interest for the history of the English vocabulary than for syntax, and only give occasion to the remark that with them not the single act is considered, which might often be denoted as such in the substantive by an article, but the object of the activity in general. Comp.: have *sorrow, pain, pleasure, mercy, effect, power*, give *leave, thanks, attention, permission, battle, answer*, do *homage, honour, justice, service, penance, mischief*, make *haste, boast, choice, account, peace, love, suit, shipwreck, vintage*, bear *witness, evidence, company, envy, take care, heed*; *warning, hold, occasion, notice, delight, umbrage, revenge, patience, effect, leave, lay hold, wait, siege*. — take *fire, breath, make water, bear, yield fruit, interest, catch fish* and many more. Incidentally remarked, these forms of expression go back more to Romance than to Germanic terms, although not to those alone. Compare Old-Engl.: *Hadde reurpe* (R. or GL. I. 43. cf. WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 10). *Haddde doel* (R. or GL. I. 144.) *Leste thou mesaventure have* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 7.). *To have mercy* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 71. cf. ALIS 4623.). *Have pite* (p. 80.) *Hir peyne moot have ende* (p. 381.). Halfsax.: *Habben care* (LAJAM. I. 16.). *Ich habbe to þe soh-faste loue* (I. 129.). *Habben hule* [hide] II. 213.). Old-French: *avoir merci, pite, paour, damage, doutance, congie, alegement*. In Anglosaxon similar combinations have hardly become formal: *þonne hic geveald hafað* (CAEDM. 631.). — Old-Engl.: *Gaf . . . leve* (CHAUC. C. T. 4010.). Halfsax.: *zaff answere* (ORM. 16679.). *zæfen sware* (12733.). Anglos.: *Ageaff andsware* (ELENE 455. 661.). Mod.-Fr.: *donner permission, congé, attention, réponse, carrière*. — For the Anglosaxon *dōn* and Old-French *faire* in combination with abstract terms the Old-English presents *don* and *make*: *I do mercy* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 392.). Halfsax.: *Willeð þe freond-scipe don* (LAJAM. I. 21.). *He dið freomu* (I. 29.). Old-Engl.: *Mude off-ryng* to oure Lord (MAUNDEV. p. 36.). *Mayde great mone* (TOWNS. M. p. 185.). *Mad þe kyng homage* (LANGT. I. 15.). Halfsax.: *Feie-sið makede* (LAJAM. I. 14.). *Flæm makeden* (I. 25.). *Stal fihit heo makeden* (I. 27.). *Dune makien* (II. 250.). *Þer he sceaðe makede* (II. 77.). Old-Fr.: *faire homage, vasselaje, chevalerie, perte, faillance, cruauté, folaje, penitance*. Mod.-Fr.: *faire honneur, justice, choix, diligence, choix, naufrage*. Anglos.: *þu ondsāc dydest* (ANDR. 927.). *Hyrrif dōn* (CAEDM. 1912.). *Ge roh dōð* (Ps. 61, 9.) and the like. Old-Engl.: *I wol here witnesse* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 283.). Halfsax.: *To berenn wittness* (ORM. 4482.). *Ziff þu bereast hete annð nip* (4454.). Mod.-Fr.: *porter témoignage, envie, amitié*. — Old-Engl.: *Had leyð sege* (MAUNDEV. p. 83.). — *Tak therof koep* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 90.). *Take good hede* (TOWNS. M. p. 78.). Halfsax.: *Takenn ende* (ORM. 8108.). Old-Fr.: *prendre cure, deduit, vengeance, espoir*. Mod.-Fr.: *prendre patience, plaisir, courage, soin, pitié, congé, vengeance*. Old-norse: *taka flötta* (HAYAM. 30.) and the like.

The instances above cited of concrete substantives in a mostly formal

combination with transitive verbs cannot be absolutely regarded as remains of the most ancient usage of the language, although they may be in part reduced to it. They have rather arisen in part through the rejection of the article in the more hasty speech of common life. Some remind us of a foreign origin. Compare about the employment of the limbs of the body in. Old-Engl.: To *legen hond* upon him (P. PLOUGHM. p. 374.). The other *setten feet* on erthe, and *bygonne fle* (GAMELYN 590.). Half-sax.: *Warrp ezhe upponn* *Symon (ORM. 12758. cf. 13284.). Mod-Fr.: *tenir, faire tête; tenir pied à boulev; mettre pied à terre; prendre pied*. Modern-Highdutch: *Fuss. Herz fassen*. Expressions of the language of sailors seem old, yet the plural of *sail* is frequently found. Half-sax.: *Seil heo droten* to hune (LAJAM. III. 160.). Heo *wunden up seiles* to coppe (III. 229. cf. I. 47.). *Seiles* per *tuhten*, *rapes* per *rehhten* (III. 13.). Comp. Provençal: *Las naus fezeron velas* (RAYNOUARD, Lex. Rom. V. 477.). Modern-Fr.: *faire voile*. Mod.-Highdutch: *Anker verfen*. On the other hand compare Anglosax.: *Hæt fealdan þæt segl* (BOETH. 41, 3.). To *take, strike root* answers the Modern-French: *prendre racine*, Mod.-Highdutch: *Wurzel fassen, schlagen; make room* to Mod.-French: *faire place*. The combination of *word* without the article with verbs like *bring, send*. Half-sax.: *Bi us he sende word þe* (LAJAM. III. 3. cf. 128.). Comp. Anglosax.: *þa vord æcvað* (CAEDM. 1106.). *Drihten . . cvað vord* to Noe (1500.). That in Anglosaxon concrete substantives of the sort described are also employed as objects without the article, is readily understood; here however we have to do with definite modes of expression, which we frequently cannot reduce to the Anglosaxon.

ββ. But the article is also frequently not employed in prepositional members, even with names of kinds, where it is not usually absent with the subject or object of the sentence. Many combinations belonging here extend into the most ancient period of the language. Instances are presented by the prepositional adverbs quoted Vol. I. p. 401., which express relations of space, time and manner, and have in part led to the fusion of the preposition with the substantive. They give those relations in a general way, and even with the extension in the use of the article they have not yielded place to it. In these and other prepositional members, which connect themselves in part to a few verbs, and are in part free from such combination, ancient usage and analogy have remained predominant only to a certain degree, so that the ancient language goes further in keeping aloof from the article. A few series of instances may serve as comparisons.

- a. With local determinations like earth, land, ground, shore and sea, there is often no article used: Then is there no such thing *On earth* as reverence (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 1, 3.). If a gallows were *on land* (SHAKSP., Temp. 5, 1.). Hast thou no mouth *by land*? (ib.) I welcome you *to land* (ADDIS., Rosam. 1, 6.). Spirits from *under ground* (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 2, 1.). I scratch you these few lines like a mole *under ground* (DOUGL. JERROLD, Prison. of W. 2, 2.). — He sent the boats *on shore* (IRVING, Columb. 10, 2.). If the wind blew any way *from shore* (SHAKSP., Com. of Err. 3, 2.). In about two hours I was . . well *in shore* (MARRYAT, Jac. Faithf.). I'll never *to sea* again (SHAKSP., Merry W. 2, 1.).

Then back *to sea* (CRABBE, The Borough 1.). When others were afloat and out *at sea* (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 1, 1.).

Old-Engl.: Whan a man is *an urthe* ded (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 134.). Heo lette here men, þat were yslawe, faire *on erpe* bryng (R. OF GL. I 20.). Ne mai no lewed libben *in londe* (Polit. S. p. 155.). As I am kyng *in land* (TOWNS. M. p. 142.). Whoso wille go *be londe* (MAUNDEV. p. 34.). Þo he *to lond* com (R. OF GL. I 16.). Brouȝte hem *to lond* (DEPOS. OF RICH. II. p. 30.). Afre it smytt *unto londe* (MAUNDEV. p. 45.). We woll *off lande* flee (RICH. C. DE L. 1020.). And carieth *over contre* (DEPOS. OF RICH. II. p. 25.). *Out of contry* must thou fle (TOWNS. M. p. 44.). To passen *be desert* (MAUNDEV. p. 42.). Forclef al þat hed, & þe body anon *to gronde* (R. OF GL. I. 17.). *To gronde* caste I. 18.). He smot *to gronde* (I. 126.). To holde the more righte weye *be see* (MAUNDEV. p. 55.). Halssax.: To kípenn itt *oun eorpe* (ORM. 632.). To roten *bufenn eorpe* (8074.). þe deofell eggeþþ menn . . . *towarrd eorpe* (11894.). Whær summ he wære *o lande* (3289.). On Italiȝe com *on londo* LAȜAM. I. 6.). Idreuen *out of londe* (I. 13.). Wunede *an londe* (III. 11.). Ueollen *to grunde* (III 107.). Feol *uppen uolde* (II. 279.). þa kempen þe *wið inne sæ* wuneden (I. 212.). Stighenn *upp o strande* (ORM. 11155.). Since in Anglosaxon in general, the article is usually wanting with kindred substantive notions, prepositional members of this sort are uncommonly frequent: Hit nis wuhte gelic elles *on eorðan* (CAEDM. 679.). Sie þe . . . *in eorðan* lof (CRIST. 410. Grein). Ic ádreáh feala yrmða *ofer eorðan* (ANDR. 969.). Fugelaz cyrrað . . . eft *tô earde* (PHOENIX 352 Gr.). Þa gesundrad vās lago *wið lande* (CAEDM. 162.). Ær þon ve *tô londe* geliden hæfdon (CRIST 858. Grein). He seal segljan *be lande* (OROS. 1, 1.). Sȝ hit *innan lande*, sȝ hit *of lande* (LEGG. CNUT. I B. 75.). Ve men cvedað *on grunde* (HYMN. 9. 38. Gr.). Me tō grunde teah (BEOV. 1106.). *On vēstene* he fāste (S. GUTHL. 5.). Stōd his handgeveore somod *on sande* (CAEDM. 241.) Eōde he *be strande* (APOLLON. OF T. p. 7.). þa hi *on sund* stigon (CAEDM. 324.). Ceolaz lēton *at sæfearoðe* . . . *on brime* bidan (ELENE 250.). Svā hvat svā þu *on sæ* forlure (APOLLON. OF T. p. 19.).

Substantives denoting dwelling places and buildings, such as town, court, school, church, person &c. are likewise used without the article in narrower limits than formerly in prepositional members: When we lived *in town* (GOLDSM., She Stoops 1.). He ne'er takes me *to town* (SHERID. KNOWLER, Hunchb. 1. 2.). What brings you here *to court* so hastily? (SHAKSP., John 1, 1.) He comes *from court* (COLER., Picc. 1, 4.). Richard Talbot . . . arrived *at court* (MACAUL., Hist of E. II. 282.). After he had been seven years *at school* (FIELD., J. Andr. 2, 17.). His being sent *to school* (LEWES, G. I. 24.). I'd send him out betimes *to college* (BYR., D. Juan 1, 52.). While the family is *at church* (LEWES, G. I. 18.). I shall hie *to church* with thee (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 1, 2.). Bear me *to prison* (SHAKSP., Meas. for Meas. 1, 3.). The act of putting and confining *in prison* (WEBST., V. imprisonnent). Let her *out of prison* (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 5, 1.). Fast *in dungeon* shut (BUTL., Hud. 1, 3, 295.).

Old-Engl.: While thi lovedr is *in toune* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 4.). *Into toun* his doughter sende (CHAC., C. T. 4134.). Come *to countene court* couren (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 157.). *To court* went (ALIS.

774.). Men durre selde Here orf in *house* awynter brynge (R. or Gl. I. 43.). Broute me to *house* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 5.). Sche wol not dwelle in *house* (CHAUC., C. T. 5930.). Tho went Adam out of *halle* (GAMELYN 804.). Comen into *halle* (ALIR. 1783.). *Yn halle, yn bowre* (HALLIW., Freemas. 696.). *Yn chamber* (765.). I sette hym to *scole* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 183.). I have had in *scole* such honour (CHAUC., C. T. 7768.). Dide me to *chirche* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 396.). To *churche* when thou dost fare (HALLIW., Freemas. 595.). Chylder shuld be brought to *kyrk* (TOWN. M. p. 167.). To *chirche* . . ye hey (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 84.). Put him in *prisoun* (MAUNDEV. p. 37.). He shalle out of *presoun* pas (TOWN. M. p. 72.). To *schippe* faste drowe (R. or Gl. I. 18.). To *schippe* is brought this . . mayde (CHAUC., C. T. 4736.). Come into *ship* fast (TOWN. M. p. 29.). Halfsax.: Heo wuneden in *burzen* [Sing.] (LAJAM. II. 34.). Fleu . . off *tune* (ORM. 19664.). Cumenn . . to *tune* (9160.). So ben . . inn *huse* (2111.). þa seiden heo in *halle* (LAJAM. I. 228.). Heo iseijen Belin king buzen ut of *telde* (I. 229.). To leornien in *scole* (I. 422.). Brohht to *kirrke* (ORM. 7790.). Of *chirccchen* heo ðrunge (LAJAM. II. 609.) þa letten bringen þene king vt of *quarcerne-* (I. 43.). Heo duden heo in *quarterne* (I. 160.). Weren on *archen* (I. 2.). Into *scipe lædde* (I. 47.). Anglosax.: Beo þu gebletsod on *byrig* (DEUTER. 28, 3.). þa wæs on *healle* heard eeg togen (BEOV. 2580.). Gevæt . . út of *healle* (1328.). He wæs on *húse* (MARC. 2, 1.). Vela vunað át *húse* (PS. 111, 3.). Leogað innon *búre* (APOLLON. OF T. p. 18.). Beo feóvertig nihta on *carcerne* (LEGG. ÆLFR. B 1.). He hine þá on *cwerterne* beheáfðode (MARC. 6, 28.). On *scip* ástáð (APOLL. OF T. p. 5.). To *scipe* gevānde (p. 6.).

Terms for objects within the house, like stairs, door, floor, table, beds &c. are mostly formally remaining as adverbs, as *up-stairs, in-doors; out of doors*, and the like. Who knocks so loud *at door*? (SHAKSP., II Henry IV. 2, 4.). Thou daily Knockest *at doors* (BYR., D. Juan 15, 8.). The . . mouse that creeps on *floor* (SHAKSP., Mids; N. Dr. 5, 1.). Their talk *at table* (CORIOL. 4, 7.). To *bedt* (MACB. 5, 1.). I'll never go to *bed* (DOUGL. JERROLD, Prison. of W. 1, 3.). I doubt if she is in *bed* yet (2, 1.).

Old-Engl.; Tuo goode staves *at halle dore* he brought (GAMELYN 492.). To *bed* he goth (CHAUC., C. T. 4151.). On *bedde* ne on *flōre* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 5.). Halfsax.: Att *kirrkedure* to brinnenn (ORM. 1327.). Þat never ne ferde heo wið *uten dore* (LAJAM. I. 101.). Heo seten to *borde* (II. 201.). Þær þeȝ o *bedde* slepþenn (ORM. 6495.). Aras of *bedde* (LAJAM. I. 286.). Þe king heo hafde to *bedde* (I. 408.). Anglosax.: Se þe bið on *þecene* (LUC. 17, 31.). Bodjað uppan *hrōjum* (MATH. 10, 27.). Gang þá āfter *flōre* (BEOV. 2631.). Hvæt me drihten god dēman ville fāgum on *flōra* (CAEDM. II. 109. Grein). *Bejoran dura* (MARC. 11, 4.). On *bedd* gān (CAEDM. 2228.). Or *bedde* licgende (MATH. 9, 2.). In *ealobence* (BEOV. 2062.) and others.

Substantives denoting members of the body have likewise been preserved in a more limited measure in prepositional members in the proper or in a figurative sense: We will proclaim you *out of hand* (SHAKSP., III Henry VI. 4, 7.). Satan was now *at hand* (MILT., P. L. 2, 674.). That the tremendous Judgment was *at hand* (WARREN, Diary 2, 1.). How she will read *off hand* (SHERID., Riv. 2, 2.). With hat *in hand* (AD-

DIS., Rosam. 1, 5). Who . . Dagger *in hand*, steals close to your bed-side (Cowp. p. 101.). Action may *on foot* be brought (SHAKSP., Henry V. 1, 2.). That tyrant . . boasted that his numerous cavalry would trample *under foot* the troops of his adversary (GIBBON, Decl. 20.); popular: You will find it *at foot* of his letter, and the like. I am almost *out at heels* (SHAKSP., Merry W. 1, 3.). Leaning *on shoulder* like a mace (BUTL., Hud. 1, 2, 1122.). As she walked *over head* (Love's L. L. 4, 3.). Why should you take his ignorance so much *at heart*? (DOUGL. JERROLD, Bubbles 1.) Know, get *by heart* and others.

Old-Engl.: He tok *on honde* this message (ALIS. 3125.). Wit a mikel cheigne *in hand* (ANTICRIST, publ. Morris 78.). Had I that lad *in hand* (TOWNS. M. p. 142.). Esau is here *at hand* (p. 47.). A strong leour, þat hym acom *at honde* (R. OF GL. I. 126.). þar sal he . . yeild *up of hand* His corun (ANTICR. 281.). Thus *in armes* he hem hent (TORRENT 2666.). Fil the knight *upon knees* (P. PLOUGH. p. 374.). Crepe to the cros *on knees* (395.). Sche set hir down *on knees* (CHAUC., C. T. 5058.). A kne to þe kyng hee seyde (R. OF GL. I. 117.). He rolleth *under foot* (CHAUC., C. T. 2616.). That we seoth *mid eye* (WRIGHT Pop. Treat. p. 136.). Spake *with mouthe* (TOWNS. M. p. 280.). Halfsax.: Nom *an honden* (LAJAM. III. 239.). Hefde *on hond* (I. 11.). Wind heom stod *an honde* (II. 513.). Alle heo eoþen *an honde* (III. 159.). Toc . . *onn hannd* (ORM. 135.). Feþeren he nom *mid fingren* (LAJAM. I. 3.). Himm toc *bitwenenn arrmess* (ORM. 7616.). Tredenn himm *wipp fote* (11946.). Moni heaued, moni houd, fallen to *foten* (LAJAM. I. 25.). An horsen & *an foten* forð heo ifusten (I. 22.). Heo letten heom drajen vt oþer *bi hondes* oþer *bi fot* (I. 434.). We beoð *under fote* (II. 497.). Fullen a *cnowe* (I. 229. modern text). Fellenn dun o *cnowess* (ORM. 6467.). To lakenn Crist a *cnewess* (7053.). þe sceld weiden *on sculdre* (LAJAM. II. 379.). Ælc weiede *an sculdre* sceld swiðe stronge (III. 44.). Ga, wiperr gast, o *bacch* fra me (ORM. 11389.). þa heng heo hire hæfued & heolde *touward bresten* (II. 233.). Breid *biforen breosten* godne scele brade (II. 584.). Burne he warp *on rigge* (I. 286.). Sette he *an hefde* ænne helm (II. 576.). Hafde his kine-helm . . *on hæfde* (I. 345.). All þatt teþ; hæfdenn . . sejhenn wel *wipp eþne* (ORM. 3414.). þat ich [ic] *mid ægen* iseo (LAJAM. I. 309.). Hco leiteþen *mid eþan* (I. 80.). *Mid muþen* heo seiden (I. 244.). Reosede *on heorte* (II. 105.). Cwellenn himm *wipp herrte* (ORM. 4451.). Lufesst Godd *wipp herrte* (14687.). Anglosax.: Nāmon hira hearpan *on hand* (Exod. 15, 20.). *On hand* āgān [in ditionem] (OROS. 3, 11.). Leot Ceolrēd . . Vulfrēde *tō handa* þāt land (SAX. CHR. 852.). Hī sylfa god ālȳsde . . lāðum *of handa* (Ps. 106, 2.). Gelæddon . . *under hand* hāleð hæðenum dēman (CAEDM. 3586.). *Mid handum* geræcan (II. 170.). Við *earm* gesāt, hleōnaðe við *handa* (II. 433.). þāt hī *mid earmum* þe . . heoldan (Ps. 90, 11.). *At fōtum* sāt frēan Scyldinga (Rev. 1002.). *Tō fōtum* hnigon (CAEDM. II. 535.). *On cneō-vum* sæton (CAEDM. 3698.). Hāfde feōvere fēt *under vombe* (GRÆIN, Aps. Poes. II. 386.). þær me heord siteð hruse *on hrycge* (II. 370.). Berað linde forð, bord *for breostum* (JEDITH 191. Grēin). Him drihtnes vās bām *on breostum* byrnende lufu (CAEDM. 190.). Ne hafu ic *in hæfde*, hviite loccas . . me vrātlice veaxað *on hæfde*, þāt me on ge-scyldrum scinan mōton ful vrātlice vundne loccas (Cod. Exon. 427, 28.). Him *fore eāgum* onsȳne veařð āfeling oðȳved (ANDR. 910.). Synna gehvær selfum *at eāgan* . . standeð (Ps. 50. Cotton 43.). *Mid eārum* onfōh . . min āgen gebed (Ps. 85, 5.). Hrān *āt heortan* (CAEDM.

721. cf. 823.). *pe tō heortan hearde gripeð ædl unliðe* (933.). *Hvonne of heortan hunger ððfe vulf sǣvle . . . æbredge* (2270). *Cvædan on heortan* (Ps. 73. 8.).

We must abandon any further enumeration of the categories of generic names which are added to verbal notions in prepositional members. How the language is pervaded by them is proved by numerous instances cited with the various prepositions.

- b. With an adjective for the more particular determination of which a prepositional member is given, the article is absent from every substantive denoting, in a general way, the object in relation to which the quality is expressed. With abstract terms, as with names of materials, this is also readily intelligible. With names of kinds the prepositions *of* and *in* come particularly under consideration: *Studious of home* (YOUNG, N. Th. 5, 461.). *Sick of home* (TENNYS, p. 226.). *Bold of cheer* (SCOTT, Rokeby 2, 31.). *Iron of limb* (BYR., Siege 25.). *Fleet of foot* and *tall of size* (SCOTT, Hunt. Song). *Poor of spirit* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. IV. 21.). *Genteel in figure* (COWP. p. 44.). *Rough in form* (BYR., Bride 2, 20.). *Short in stature* (DICKENS, M. Chuzzlew. 1, 3.). *Highest in rank* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. VII. 46.). *Free in reality as in name* (BULW., Rienzi 4, 2.). *Sick at heart* (ROGERS, It., For. Trav.).

Old-Engl.: *Stedefast of mod* (WRIGAT, Pop. Treat. p. 138.). *So strong . . . of honde* (R. OF GL. I. 15.). *Reed of heme* (CHARRC., C. T. 460.). *Ful big he was of braun* (548.). *Gentyll of blode* (ALIS. 60.). *Off body . . . styffe and stronge* (FROM. 9.). *Renable of tonge* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 10.). *Poore of herte* (285.). *So hende of mouthe* (LAY LE EREIN 259.). *Mery . . . on sighte* (SIR CLEGES 27.). Hallsax.: *Swa hende of specche & of dede* (LAJAM. II. 510.). *A wlieten alre vairest* (I. 124.). *On vestme . . . fæir* (II. 233.). *Strang wipp hannd* (ORM. 3584.). Anglosax.: *Vlitig on hive* (GEN. 12, 1.). *On bodige heah* (BEDA 3, 14.).

- c. If the prepositional member serves as the notional determination of a substantive with regard to its qualities, its contents, material, and so forth, the article is likewise omitted. Forasmuch as abstract substantives, names of materials, plurals of concrete substantives or substantives in combination with adjectives (of which we shall speak under *a. αα*) come here particularly under consideration, this case needs in general no further discussion. It may be here called to mind that, where a substantive with *of* represents an appositive determination, the article may be absent, so far only as the notional or nominal predicate belonging to the preceding substantive is to be named: *The name of king* (SHAKSP., Temp. 1, 1.). *The title of prince of the senate* (GIBBON, Decl. 2.).

See further on the Predicative Substantive.

1. In the attributive relation the following cases are still to be particularly mentioned:

- αα.* An attributive adjective may support the omission of an article which would not otherwise be readily absent from the substantive. Poetry especially avails itself of this license.

Her mantle . . . Which lion vile with bloody mouth did stain

(SHAKSP., Mids. N. Dr. 5, 1.). Answerd . . with *brandish'd* tail (BUTL., Hud. 1, 924.). Setting *conqu'ring* foot upon His trunk (1, 2, 954.). His pirates had foray'd on *Scottish hill* (SCOTT, Harold 1, 2.). In *kirtle green* array'd . . the maiden stray'd (2, 5.). In *fair field* Myself for such a face had boldly died (TENNYS. p. 154.). Brands of *foreign blade* and *hilt* (BYR., Bride 2, 8.). With *gentle thumb* Knock'd on his breast (1, 2, 974.). With *naked foot*, and sackcloth vest (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 6, 29.). Oh! dome displeasing unto *British eye!* (BYR., Ch. Har. 1, 24.) Oh valiant man! with *sword drawn* and *cock'd trigger* (BYRON, D. Juan 1, 150.). Expressions like: A cliff of *immense height* (SCOTT, Pirate 1.). A building of *rough stone* (ib.) and the like, are familiar to prose. Compare also the omission of the article before proper names with an adjective (p. 148.), as well as with predicative substantives (p. 149.). A prepositional determination operates similarly with the substantive: Sweetest maid with *vest of gold* (TH. MOORE p. 43.).

In the ancient language this construction is also readily intelligible. Old-Engl.: Ich willic geve the *gift ful stark* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 8.). He was to *senful man* not despitous (CHAUC., C. T. 518.). To drawe folk to heven . . Be *good ensample* (521.). So cruel . . for *jelous hert* (2630.). Yarmed with *haubert noble & riche* (R. OF GL. I. 174.). The colde deth with *mouth gapyng upright* (CHAUC., C. T. 2010.). With *flotery berd* (2885.). Starf with *dedly wounde* (ALIS. 1627.). Comp. also: With *helm of gold* on ys heued (R. OF GL. I. 174.). Halfsax.: Ich habbe eow to suggen soð *word of Rome* (LAJAM. II. 95.). Dis word wes isend bi *wite swiðe deore* [leg. *deorne*] (II. 92.). Oxe gap o *clofenn fot* (ORM. 1224.). Gast iss all unnnsejhennlic Biforenn *flæshlic* [leg. *flæshlic*] *eðhe* (17296.). That the substantive accompanied by the adjective also often appears in Anglosaxon without that article, hardly needs a remark: þonne onfêhd he *êcum beage* (S. GUTHL. 1.). Hæfdon . . *langne sveoran* (5.). Me forseoh þu *cyrlicne man* (APOLLON OF T. p. 7.). Gæð seð sunne . . âbûtan þas eorðan mid *brâdum ymbhyrft* (BASIL., Hexam. 7.) and so on.

ββ. A genitive serving to determine a substantive following it, from which, as a generic name, the article is not usually wanting, often occurs without the article: From mortal eye, or *angel's* purer ken (THOMS., Seas. 1, 15.). My only books Were *woman's* looks (TH. MOORE p. 247.). With *dagger's* hilt, on the wicket strong, He struck full loud (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 2, 2.). Such expressions as: 'Twas *morning's* winged dream (TH. MOORE p. 226.). *Evening's* matron hour (p. 103.) are in the same case as: *Time's* ungentle tide (BYR., Ch. Har. 1, 23.) *Life's* cup of pleasure (TH. MOORE p. 124.). *Rapture's* thrill (ib.) and the like, where the abstract or even personified notion does not require the article.

In ancient times the genitive without the article, even of concrete generic names, is nowise surprising, so much the less, if the indefinite article could be given to it. Old-Engl.: Cristendam of *prestes* handes fonge (CHAUC., C. T. 4797.); yet also: Ther they dwellyd fourty dawes, For to lerne *londes lawes* (RICH. C. DE L. 629.). Halfsax.: Heore moder is *kinge's* istreon (LAJAM. II. 526.). Iff He *prestes* sune wære (ORM. 493.). Wollde himm . . Wipp *sweðess* egge cwellenn (6638.). Anglosax.: Hvâ vâs æfre svâ dristiges môdes pât dorste *cynges* dôhtor gevâmman? (APOLLON OF T.

p. 2.). Gif hrá gefeohte on *cyniges* huse . . si on *cyniges* dōme (LEGG. ISAC 10.). Svytce eac nāddrena hiv. and *seynes* grymetunge (S. GUTH-LAC 8.).

γγ. In apposition the substantive not rarely stands without the article, partly when it contains the notion of the kind to which one or more individuals belong. but partly also if the apposition does not merely denote the general character of the subject or object. In the former case, with the singular preceding, *an. a*; in the latter, *the* fills the place: yet both cases are not always to be decisively known. The appositive substantive without the article stands more rarely alone, more frequently in combination with other determinations.

Pedro Crespo, *alcalde* (LONGF., Span. Stud.: Dram. Pers.). Bal-tasar, *innkeeper* (ib.). Hirtius and Pansa, *consuls* (SHAKSP., Ant. a. Cleop. 1, 4.). This is one Lucianus, *nephew to the king* (Hamlet. 3. 2.). Æmilianus, *governor of Pannonia* (GIBBON, Decl. 6.). The countess of Salisbury, *daughter of George, Duke of Clarence* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 37.). Eldest Night and Chaos, *ancestors of Nature* (MILT., P. L. 2. 894.). Next him Moloch, *scepter'd king* (2. 43. cf. 1. 392.). Sable-vested Night, *eldest of things*, The consort of his reign (2. 961.). The Sieur Réveillon, *extensive paper manufacturer* of the Rue Saint-Antoine (CARL., Fr. Revol. 1. 4. 3.). Sir Henry Osbaldistone, *fifth baron of the name* (SCOTT, R. Roy 4.). Thomas, *fourth Duke of Norfolk*, and Philip, *eleventh Earl of Arundel* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. II. 196.). *Sagest of women*, even of widows, she Resolved that Juan should be quite a paragon (BYRN., D. Juan 1. 38.). Allied to apposition is the exclamation, which is subjoined without the article to a noun, so far as an originally predicative determination is thereby added to it: Now we'll turn to Juan, *Poor little fellow!* (BYRN., D. Juan 1. 86.) Well, it is a thousand pounds out of Mr. Rich's pocket, *poor man!* (TAYLOR A. READE, Masks 1.) These adjuncts are of course not to be regarded as vocatives, rather as elliptic judgments, as they present themselves at the front of sentences: *Poor soul!* His eyes are red as fire with weeping (SHAKSP., Jul. Cæs. 3. 2.). *Horrid man!* How inconvenient (OXFORD, Twice Killed 1, 2.).

The employment of the article in apposition, instances whereof are to be found in the section upon apposition, rests upon the general principles. The appositive determination of a proper name by a generic name without the article, and not otherwise determined, was formerly widely diffused. Old-Engl.: Leir *kyng* (R. OF GL. I. 28.). Mid Humber (I. 24.). This Alla *kyng* (CHAUC., C. T. 5079.). I John *knicht* (MACDEV. p. 4.). Thurgh Rome *toun* (CHAUC., C. Seyne water (OCTOBIAN 1359.). Beside Jordan *streme* (44.). Hallsax.: Priames *kinges* dohter (LAZAR. I. 10.). Ælu- (39.). Of Cadwane *kinge* (III. 203.). Upponn Herodess *kin-* (6992.). Herode *king* (7122. 7144. 7308.). Davipp *kingess* (Anglosax.: Alfréd *cyning* (SAX. CHR. 871.). Ða sende se Anlāfe *cynige* Alfeah *biscop* and Aðelweard *ealdorman* (994.). *Abbeoprost* (560.). Under Alfrýðe *abbdoyssan* (S. GUTHL. 2.). *ste ad* (3.). Uppan Sinai *munt* (Exod. 19, 11.). On Oreb *dine*

A. The attributive Relation. b. The Numeral. The Cardinal Numbers. 207

(33, 6). For instances with the article see Apposition. With the further development of the appositional members the article may likewise be absent. Old-Engl.: *Kay ys felawe . . kyng of Aungeo* (R. or Gl. I. 216.). *Homber, kyng of Hungri* (I. 24.). *Androge, erl of Kent* (I. 54.). *Tytus, Vespasianes sone. Emperor of Rome* (MACNDEV. p. 83.). *To Odenake, prince of that citee* (CHAUC., C. T. 15738.). *Gurguont was kyng, Stalworpe mon and hardy* (R. or Gl. I. 39.). *po hii seye her kyng as-lawe, flour of chyualerye* (I. 216.). *Awnnt unto Mary. madyn mylde* (TOWN. M. p. 165.). Halfsax.: *An leodisc king, Humber was ibaten, king of Hunuze* (LAȜAM. I. 91.). Anglosax.: *pāra vās sum Sviðulf biscep on Hrōresceatre, and Ceōlmund ealdorman on Cent . . and Beornvulf vic-gefēra on Vintecastre, and Ecgulf cyninges horspegn* (SAX. CHR. 897.). The apposition without the article shews itself essentially with proper names.

- x. It may in conclusion be mentioned that, in independent or elliptical members, the article is abandoned.

The ruffian, who with ghostly glide, *Dagger* in hand, steals close to your bed-side (COWPER p. 101.). If you would take me through yon door . . it must be *heels foremost* (DOUGL. JERROLD, *Rent Day* I, 5.). Comp. II. I. p. 215. Titlepages or superscriptions, inscriptions, short statements of objects of all kinds, and the like, often occur as ellipses of the article: *Poetical Works; Sixth Edition; Preface; Introduction; Song; Sonnet; Epitaph* on a friend; *Translation from Catullus; Edinburgh Review; Philosophical Magazine. — Printing-Office; Royal Exchange.*

Elliptic terms of this sort will have been more or less common to all ages. Superscriptions without the article are to be found in manuscripts. Old-Engl.: *Prologe* to *Sire Thopas* (CHAUC., C. T. 15102.). *Prologe* to *Melibæus* (p. 15. II.), although they are frequently more detailed in ancient times. They are often composed in Latin. Much, belonging to the usage of common life, has not been noted in literature.

b. The Numeral.

The English numeral has been discussed, as to its origin and sorts P. I. p. 283. The cardinal and the ordinal number come here under consideration as determinatives.

The Cardinal Number.

The Cardinal number, denoting the unity or the multitude of individuals or totalities, stands determinatively in combination with names of kinds, or with substantive notions which pass into the category of generic names. The numeral may be put to the numeral additionally or multiplicatively.

- α. All cardinal numbers, even those originally substantive, unless a prepositional member with *of* is given to it, must be thought in congruence with the substantive in regard to the case. The combination of the original substantives *hundred, thousand* &c. with *one, an (a), the* or pronouns (see Vol. I. p. 285.) is indifferent to this agreement.

p. 2.). Gif hvá gefeohte on *cyninges* huse . . si on *cyninges* dōme (LEOC. [NAC 10.]). Svylice eac nāddrena hiv, and *svyges* grymetunge (S. GUTH-LAC 8.).

- γγ. In apposition the substantive not rarely stands without the article, partly when it contains the notion of the kind to which one or more individuals belong, but partly also if the apposition does not merely denote the general character of the subject or object. In the former case, with the singular preceding, *an*, *a*; in the latter, *the* fills the place; yet both cases are not always to be decisively known. The appositive substantive without the article stands more rarely alone, more frequently in combination with other determinations.

Pedro Crespo, *alcalde* (LONGF., Span. Stud.; Dram. Pers.). Baltasar, *innkeeper* (ib.). Hirtius and Pansa, *consuls* (SHAKSP., Ant. a. Cleop. 1, 4.). This is one Lucianus, *nephew to the king* (Hamlet. 3, 2.). Æmilianus, *governor of Pannonia* (GIBBON, Decl. 6.). The countess of Salisbury, *daughter of George, Duke of Clarence* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 37.). Eldest Night and Chaos, *ancestors of Nature* (MILT., P. L. 2, 894.). Next him Moloch, *scepter'd king* (2, 43. cf. 1, 392.). Sable-vested Night, *eldest of things*, The consort of his reign (2, 961.). The Sieur Réveillon, *extensive paper manufacturer of the Rue Saint-Antoine* (CARL., Fr. Revol. 1, 4, 3.). Sir Henry Osbaldistone, *fifth baron of the name* (SCOTT, R. Roy 4.). Thomas, *fourth Duke of Norfolk*, and Philip, *eleventh Earl of Arundel* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. II. 196.). *Sagest of women*, even of widows, she Resolved that Juan should be quite a paragon (BYR., D. Juan 1, 38.). Allied to apposition is the exclamation, which is subjoined without the article to a noun, so far as an originally predicative determination is thereby added to it: Now we'll turn to Juan, *Poor little fellow!* (BYR., D. Juan 1, 86.). Well, it is a thousand pounds out of Mr. Rich's pocket, *poor man!* (TAYLOR A. READE, Masks 1.) These adjuncts are of course not to be regarded as vocatives, rather as elliptic judgments, as they present themselves at the front of sentences: *Poor soul!* His eyes are red as fire with weeping (SHAKSP., Jul. Cæs. 3, 2.). *Horrid man!* How inconvenient (OXENF. Twice Killed 1, 2.).

The employment of the article in apposition, instances whereof are to be found in the section upon apposition, rests upon the general principles. The appositive determination of a proper name by a generic name without the article, and not otherwise determined, was formerly widely diffused. Old-Engl.: Leir *kyng* (R. OF GL. I. 28.). Mid Humber *kynges* god (I. 24.). This Alla *kyng* (CHAUC., C. T. 5079.). I John Maundeville, *knyght* (MAUNDEV. p. 4.). Thurgh Rome *toun* (CHAUC., C. T. 5414.). Be Seyne *water* (OCTOBIAN 1359.). Besyde Jordan *streame* (TOWN. M. p. 44.). Hallsax.: Priames *kinges* dohter (LAFAM. I. 10.). Ælured *king* (I. 269.). Of Cadwane *kinge* (III. 203.). Upponn Herodess *kingess* daj; (ORM. 6992.). Herode *king* (7122. 7144. 7308.). Daviþþ *kingess* burrh (7262.). Anglosax.: Alfréd *cyning* (SAX. CHR. 871.). Ða sende se *cyning* after Anlāfe *cyninge* Alfeah *biscop* and Aðelheard *ealdorman* (994.). Columba *māssepredost* (560.). Under Alfrýrþe *abbdoyssan* (S. GUTHL. 2.). Fram Grante *ea* (3.). Uppan Sinai *munt* (EXOD. 19, 11.). On Oreb *dūne*

A. The attributive Relation. b. The Numeral. The Cardinal Numbers. 207

(33. 6). For instances with the article see Apposition. With the further development of the appositional members the article may likewise be absent. Old-Engl.: *Kay ys felawe . . kyng of Aungeo* (R. or GL. I. 216.). *Homber, kyng of Hungri* (I. 24.). *Androge, erl of Kent* (I. 54.). *Tytus, Vespasianes sone, Emperor of Rome* (MAUNDEV. p. 83). *To Odenake, prince of that citee* (CHAUC., C. T. 15758.). *Gurguont was kyng, Stalworpe mon and hardy* (R. or GL. I. 39.). *po hii seye her kyng aslawe, flour of chqualerye* (I. 216.). *Awntt unto Mary. madym mylde* (TOWN. M. p. 165.). Halssax.: *An leodisc king, Humber was ihaten, king of Hunuze* (LAJAM. I. 91.). Anglosax.: *pāra vās sum Sviðulf biscop on Hrōfesceatre, and Ceōlmund ealdorman on Cent . . and Beornvulf vīc-gefēra on Vīntecestre, and Ecgulf cyninges horspegn* (SAX. CHR. 897.). The apposition without the article shews itself essentially with proper names.

- x. It may in conclusion be mentioned that, in independent or elliptical members, the article is abandoned.

The ruffian, who with ghostly glide, *Dagger* in hand, steals close to your bed-side (COWPER p. 101.). If you would take me through yon door . . it must be *heels foremost* (DOUGL. JERROLD, *Rent Day* I, 5.). Comp. II. I. p. 215. Titlepages or superscriptions, inscriptions, short statements of objects of all kinds, and the like, often occur as ellipses of the article: *Poetical Works; Sixth Edition; Preface; Introduction; Song; Sonnet; Epitaph* on a friend; *Translation from Catullus; Edinburgh Review; Philosophical Magazine. — Printing-Office; Royal Exchange.*

Elliptic terms of this sort will have been more or less common to all ages. Superscriptions without the article are to be found in manuscripts. Old-Engl.: *Prologe* to Sire Thopas (CHAUC., C. T. 15102.). *Prologe* to *Melibens* (p. 15. II. , although they are frequently more detailed in ancient times. They are often composed in Latin. Much, belonging to the usage of common life, has not been noted in literature.

b. The Numeral.

The English numeral has been discussed, as to its origin and sorts P. I. p. 283. The cardinal and the ordinal number come here under consideration as determinatives.

The Cardinal Number.

The Cardinal number, denoting the unity or the multitude of individuals or totalities, stands determinatively in combination with names of kinds, or with substantive notions which pass into the category of generic names. The numeral may be put to the numeral additionally or multiplicatively.

- a. All cardinal numbers, even those originally substantive, unless a prepositional member with *of* is given to it, must be thought in congruence with the substantive in regard to the case. The combination of the original substantives *hundred, thousand* &c. with *one, an (a), the* or pronouns (see Vol. I. p. 285.) is indifferent to this agreement.

A furious plague, which commenced in the year *two hundred and fifty* (GIBBON, Decl. 6.). In the year of grace, *one thousand seven hundred and* — blank — for I do not remember the precise date (IRVING, Tales, Wolf. Webber). The second consulship of Spurius Cassius (year of Rome 261 or B. C. 493) (CHAMB., Informat II. 99. II.). In the year of the city 359 (ib.). The name of the year often stands elliptically, especially with *in*: Columbus arrived at Cordova early in 1486 (IRVING, Columb. 2, 3.). This was in 1687 (LEWES, G. I. 7.). His lodging secured — No. 80, on the south side of the Fishmarket (II. 83.), and the like. In cases of the latter sort one may see the substantive denomination of the cardinal number.

The denoting of the number of the year by cardinal numbers is ancient. Old-Engl.: In the *ƿer* of grace a *pousend & syxti ƿerto* (R. OF GL. II. 368.). *ƿe* date was *nien hundreth sexti & sextene* (LANGT. I. 37.). In the date of oure Drihte. In a drye Aprille, *A thousand and thre hundred Twies twenty and ten* (P. PLOUGH. p. 262.). The *ƿer* of grace 1289 (MAUNDEV. p. 37. cf. p. 315.). More remarkable is: As in *ƿe ƿer* of grace a *pousend ƿer yt* was And *four score & eyte* (R. OF GL. II. 385.). Anglosaxon, which counts the years chiefly by winters, has other terms for the number of the year before and after the birth of Christ: *Sixtigum vintra ær Cristes cyme* (BEDA 1, 2.). *Ymb ƿeover hund vintra and nigon and feovertig fram ures drihtnes menniscnisse* (1, 15.). *Æfter ures Drihtnes Hælendes Cristes gebyrtide an pūsend vintra* (SAX CHR. 1086.). Otherwise the Anglosaxon Chronicle places the number of the year with *An* and Roman numerals at the heads of the sections, and refers to them by *hēr*, *hēr on þisum geāre*, *þy geāre* and the like.

- a. The cardinal number frequently stands elliptically, or, if you will, partly used substantively. Thus the number stands with the presupposed notion of persons: There are *two* lodg'd together (SHAKSP., Macb. 2, 2. cf. MATH. 24, 40.). *Twenty* are sitting as in judgment there (ROGERS, It., Foscari). Our present *five and twenty thousand* (SHAKSP., II Henry IV. 1, 3.), also with the definite article: Thy country's voice, the voice of all *the nine* Demand a hallow'd harp — that harp is thine (BYR. p. 329.), see above p. 166. With the mention of carriages and horses the substantive horse is absent: He ordered a post-chaise and *four* (WARREN, Ten Thous. a-year 1, 13.). A coach and *six* (POPE, Essay on M. 4, 170. FIELD., J. Andr. 1, 16.). With the indication of age the years may be wanting, with which another ellipsis is often associated: I was but *twenty* (GOLDSM., She Stoops 1.). Your daughter's *twenty*. Come, you at least were *twenty* when you married; That makes you *forty* (SHERID., KNOWLES, Love Chase 3, 1.). A little fat fellow about *twenty* (MARRYAT, J. Faithf. 2, 1.). A man *Of fifty* (BYR., D. Juan 1, 62.). I was . . . green as a leek at *sixty* (DOUGL. JERROLI, Prison. of W. 1, 2.). A venerable man, *fourscore and five* (ROGERS, It., Foscari). In the statement of the hours of the day the strokes of the bell are not denoted: By *four* of the clock (SHAKSP., Meas. for Meas. 4, 3.). By *four* o' the clock (CYMB. 2, 2.). Their regular hours stupefy me; not a fiddle or a card after *eleven* (SHERID., Riv. 1, 1.). Before *ten* his senses were gone (MACAUL., Hist. of E. II. 12.). The house did not adjourn till

three (DOUGL. JERROLD, Bubbles 1.). Slaving from half past *nine* o' clock in the morning till *nine* at night (WARREN, Ten Thous. a-year 1, 1.). The clock struck *nine* (SHAKSP., Rom. a. Jul. 2, 5.). *Nine* o' clock struck, and *ten* o' clock struck, and nothing happened (DICKENS, PICT. fr. It., Rome). The city clocks had only just gone *three* (CHRISTM., Car. 1.). *Seven* soon will chime (PLANCHÉ, Fortunio 1, 2.). With sums of money the pounds occasionally, or, after the pounds, the shillings are not expressed by a substantive: I shall soon be worth *fifteen hundred* a-year (GOLDSM., She Stoops 1.). He's a *hundred thousand* a-year (WARREN, Ten Thous. a-year 2, 13.). Comp.: I buy a *thousand pound* a year (SHAKSP., Com. of Err. 4, 1. cf. John 1, 1. Henry VIII 2, 3.). — In money, sundry times, twelve pounds *twelve* (SHERID., Riv. 1, 2.). The inches are likewise left out after mentioning the feet in measuring: He is five feet *ten* (DOUGL. JERROLD, RENT Day 1, 2.). In parts also into which anything is divided are sometimes, according to old custom, not expressed by the substantive with the number: An apple cleft *in two* (SHAKSP., Twelfth N. 5, 1.), comp. the adv. *atwo*.

Many of these elliptical expressions belong to modern times and to the more negligent or habitual language. The denoting of persons by the mere cardinal number early occurs. Old-Engl.: *Sevene* slepe . . *Sevene* hundred wynter (P. PLOUGHM. p. 277.). At night was come into that *hostelrie Wel nyne and twenty* in a companye (CHAUC., C. T. 23.). Anglosax.: *ponne beoð twegen on æcere . . Twā beoð āt cweorne grindende* (MATH. 24, 40.). Comp.: *pā gebletsode bliftheort cyning . . pā forman twā, fāder and mōder* (CÆDM. 192.). Elliptical terms for the hours of the day are found from the fourteenth century: It was ten of the clokke (CHAUC., C. T. 4434.). When the clock stroke *twelf* (TOWN M. p. 115.). With verbal notions like *part*, *tear*, the substantive parts or pieces has from the earliest times been left out, particularly with *two*, *three*. Old-Engl.: *Darknes from light we parte on two* (TOWN M. p. 1.). *pis lond wās deled o pre* (R. OF GL. I. 23.). *Ye gett not this gowne Bot in iij as it fallys* (TOWN M. p. 239.). Halfsax.: *pas weorlde wise men per a twa wenden* (LAJAM. II. 225.). *He hine for-smat-a-midden a twa* (I 68.). *Itt iss dæledd all o pre* (ORM. 15242.). Anglosax.: *Tōdælan tō twā* (GEN. 15, 10.). *Tōslāt his wāfels on twā* (APOL-LON. OF T. p. 11.).

The older language uses the cardinal number with *so moche*, *suche* (when *such* stands, not in a qualitative, but in a quantitative meaning) in the multiplicative sense. Old-Engl.: It is wel a 15 journeyes of lengthe, and more than *two so moche* of desert (MAUNDEV. p. 48.). The sonne is hejere than the mone more than *suche threo* Than hit beo hunne to the mone (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 134.). As thu sixt the litinge out of the cloude wende . . Swithere schet a manes soule, 3e swithere than *suche sovene* . . thanne wey to the blisse of hevene (ib.). Here ferd wax . . For heo hadde *suche pritti* men, as were on þe oþer (R. OF GL. I. 19.). Anglosax.: *þegnes vergild is six swā micel* (ADDITAM. AD LEGG. ANGLOS. ETTM. 60, 2.). Comp. Mod.-Engl.: *Twenty times so much* (SHAKSP., All's Well 5, 2.). *Twice as much* (Love's L. L. 4, 3.). *Twice so many* (Lear 2, 1.).

The Ordinal Number.

The Ordinal number (see Vol. I. p. 288.) is treated like adjectives generally.

- α. It not only tolerates another determinative along with it, but in general requires the definite article, when another is wanting.

My second joy . . . from his presence I am barr'd . . . My third comfort . . . is from my breast . . . Haled out to murder (SHAKSP., Wint. T. 3, 2.). He entered his name in St. John's College, at Cambridge, in 1682, in his *eighteenth* year (JOHNS., Lives, Prior.). *Every third* word a lie (SHAKSP., II Henry IV. 3, 2.). In *this final third* volume of our History (CARL., Fr. Revol. 3, 1, 1.). At the *sixth* hour of morn (Cymb. 1, 4.). The Plantagenets of the *twelfth* century (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 18.). The definite article is, however, often absent, especially if the ordinal number is placed after the substantive: From Nature's chain whatever link you strike, *Tenth* or *ten thousandth*, breaks the chain alike (POPE, Essay on M. I. 245.). In canto *twelfth* (BYR., D. Juan 1, 207.). Chapter *twenty-fifth* (SCOTT, R. Roy 9.). Comp. upon the appositive ordinal number p. 166.

Where no other determinative of the numeral denoting the succession exists, the definite article seems appropriate, since the generic notion, more particularly denoted by its place in the series of enumerated objects, receives thereby the character which the definite article is particularly accustomed to make prominent. English therefore has for a long time proceeded equally in this respect. Old-Engl.: *My fourthe* housbond was a revelour (CHAUC., C. T. 6035.). Now of *my fife* housbond wol I telle (6085.) and so on; with the definite article: *pe pridde* wonder ys Up *pe hul* of *pe pek* (R. OF GL. I. 7.). *The secunde* seed . . . *The thridde* seed . . . *The ferthe* seed (P. PLOUGHM. p. 412. sq.). *The secunde* artycul . . . *The thrydde* artycul (HALLIW., Freemas. 105, 119.). That is the *secunde* partye of penitence (CHAUC., C. T. p. 210. 1.). *The thridde* night (1465.). *Forthe thon and tunteothe* day (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 139.). Hafsax.: *pat wes pat pridde* mæste fih̄t (LAȜAM. III. 95.). Heo swor a *pane ferpe* dæi (I. 146.). We also meet with the definite article in Anglosaxon: On *p̄j eahteoðan* dæg (MENOLOG. 3.). *Pā vās se eahtoða* dæg *pās kalendes* Septembres (S. GUTHLAG 3.). Yet the numeral adjective without the article often stands: *priddan* dāge (LUC. 9, 22. cf. 18, 33.). *priddan* siðe . . . *feorðan* siðe . . . *fiftan* siðe . . . *sixtan* siðe &c. (GREIN, Ags. Poes. II. 348. sq.). Nu tō geāre . . . on ærne mæren . . . *oðre* geāre on mid-dāge, *priddan* geāre on æfen, *feorðan* geāre on middre nihte, on *pam fiftan* geāre eft on ærne mærgen (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 13.); as also with reference backwards to a substantive: Hvat sindon *pā* feover ping . . . ? . . . An is eorðe, *oðer* is fyr, *pridde* is hell, *feorðe* is gitsjende man vorulde velena (SAT. A. SALOM. Ettm. 42, 36.), placed after it: Ymb vucan *priddan* (CARDM. 1472.). Compare on the other hand Hafsax.: Boc he nam *pan pridde* (LAȜAM. I. 2. modern text) Dohter ich habbe *pa pridda* (I. 134.). Dunt he him *sef pane pridde* (I. 349.). The popular names *Twelfth Day*, *Twelfth Night* (*Twelfth-Day*, *Twelfth-Night*, *Twelfth-Tide*) belong, in form and import to the Anglosax.: *pās embe fif* niht, *pātte fulviht-tid* ēces drihtnes tō *ūs cymeð*, *pāne twelfta dæg* tireeādige hāleo heaðurōfe hātað (MENOLOG. 11.). On midne vinter ofer *twelftan niht* (SAX. CHR. 878.).

- β. The ordinal number may also be combined with the indefinite article, if the object determined as to its succession is regarded as a notion of a kind, to which an individual belongs, or, what comes essentially to the same thing, if the object determined by itself, as to its succession, is at the same time denoted as an in-

dividual. With the mention of a plurality of objects of the same order every article is omitted.

She wept for the death of *a third* husband (SHAKSP., Merch. of V. 3, 1.). In 1784, *a second* edition appeared, extending the work to four volumes (SCOTT, Minstr. I. 68.). In 1833, all the custom-house acts were *a second* time consolidated (CHAMBERS, Informat. II. 60. I.). He sent a servant . . he sent *another* servant . . he sent *a third* (LUKE 20, 10—12.). — On *second* thoughts, gentlemen, I don't wish you had known him (DICKENS, Pickw. 2, 20.).

The Romance *second*, early naturalized instead of and along with the Anglosaxon *ōðer*, is also used, precisely like the latter, with the indefinite article of an object of like kind and a counterpart between two: She will prove *a second* Grissel (SHAKSP., Taming 2, 1.). Blazing London seem'd *a second* Troy (COWP. p. 9.). I thought Italy had been *a second* Mexico to you soldiers (BULW., Lady of L. 5, 1.). Comp. *another* of the same meaning p. 186.

In ancient times the denoting of the substantive notion accompanied by the ordinal number, as an individual otherwise undetermined, is missed. Only *another* is often met with to denote a second in the succession. Old-Engl.: The spices of penitence ben thre. That oon of hem is solemne, *another* is comune, and *the thridde* is pryvé (CHAUC., C. T. p. 185. II. cf. 195. I.). The first member is however here denoted by *one*, to which *another* in the first instance stands opposed. Hallsax.: An off þa fowwre . . An operr . . þe bridde . . þe ferrþe (ORM. 5776.). Comp. Anglosax: He sende his þeov . . þa sende he ððerne þeov . . þa sende he þridan (LUC. 10, 20sq.). An þære dæla is *crepusculum* . . ððer is *vesperum* . . þridde is *conticinium* . . feorða is *intempestum* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 6.). — *Second* is combined in the denoting of an object of like kind with the definite article in the following instance: Virago thou Semyram *the secounde* (CHAUC., C. T. 4779.).

- γ. After ordinal numbers the periphrasis of a partitive genitive, by *of* with a substantive notion in the plural, or with a collective notion, may appear.

The third of the five vowels (SHAKSP., Love's L. L. 5, 1.). If this farce be produced and succeeds, it will only be *the first of a lengthened race* (TH. HOOK, Gilb. Gurney 1.).

Old-Engl.: *Of his 3 wyfes the firste* . . hadde to name Serioche Chan (MACNEV. p. 248.). In olden times the periphrasis does not seem to have been familiar with ordinal numbers, although it occurs with *ōðer*, ἑτερος: þa cvāð tō him *ōðer of his leorning-cnihtum* (MATH. 8, 21.).

- δ. Sometimes the ordinal number is used elliptically, to denote days of the month or years of the reign.

By *the ninth* of the next month (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 2, 3.). On the night of *that same twenty-eighth* of August (CARL., French Rev. 3, 1, 3.). Such was the destructive rage of these Aristocrats on *the ever memorable Tenth* (3, 1, 1.). Monday *fourth* of the month (1, 4, 4.). — There's *third* and *fourth* Edward VI of antiphoners, missals . . and there are popish recusant convicts under *the first* of his present Majesty — ay, and there are penalties for hearing mass — See *twenty-third* of Queen Elizabeth, and *third* James First, chapter twenty-fifth (SCOTT, R. Roy 9.).

For the elliptical statement of days of the month see p. 166. The statutes, or acts of parliament are designated and cited by the years of the reigns of rulers; often in figures, as: act 5 and 6 William IV.; or, stated more completely: an act of the fifth and sixth years of the reign of his late Majesty William IV., and the like.

The remaining Numeral Adjectives.

- α. Fractions, so far as they are used substantively, do not belong here. *Half*, which has been discussed under the articles at p. 169. and 188., is added as an adjective without an article to substantives which generally tolerate no article, as *With half Windsor* at his heels (SHAKSP., *Merry W.* 3, 2.). It also stands immediately before the substantive, if a numeral, a demonstrative or an indeterminate pronoun is added to it: *The one half world* (SHAKSP., *Macb.* 2, 1.). *This half hour* (*Twelfth N.* 2, 5.). Some *half dozen* family pictures (WARREN, *Ten Thous. a-y.* 2, 7.). *Every half minute* (1, 12.). As with the article, it precedes the genitive and possessives: *Half signior Benedick's tongue* (SHAKSP., *Taming* 1, 1.). One may know another *half his life*, without being able to estimate his skill in hydrostatics or astronomy (JOHNS., *Lives.* Milton). *Half* without the article also appears as an adjective before relative sentences which are to be regarded as periphrases of a substantive notion: If he dares *half what he says*, he'll be of use to us (SOUTHERN, *Oroon.* 3, 1.). Ah! how unlike the man of times to come! *Of half that live* the butcher and the tomb (POPE, *Essay on M.* 3, 161.); the same as in the reference to a determination of quantity connected by *as* and used substantively: *Many a lord has n't got more — some not half as much* (WARREN, *Ten Thous. a-y.* 1, 5.). In other cases *half* is to be regarded as either used substantively, as in: *More than half of his land* (WARREN, *Now a. Then* 1.) or as an adverbial case: *I did n't half like it, I can tell you* (*Ten Thous. a-year* 1, 9.).

The fractional parts, which are usually expressed by the ordinal numbers used substantively, (along with which *a quarter* occurs divergently) may also be stated, by way of a more complete indication, by the ordinal number with the substantive *part*: What is the difference between *the thousandth part* of a million and *the 25th part* of 20,000? (CROSSLEY A. MARTIN, *Arithm.* p. 17.) Were they to do only *a hundredth part* of what it is thus in their power to do, our courts of justice would be doubled (WARREN, *Ten Thous. a-year* 1, 4.).

The adjective *half*, Anglosax. *healf*, Goth. *halbs*, Old-norse *halfs*, is found in the more ancient, and especially in the most ancient times, proportionately more rarely than the substantive of the same sound. But certain positions of it early became habitual (see p. 169.). In Old-Engl.: *An half myle* more nyghe (MAUNDK. p. 99.). Anglosax.: *Lytle mære þonne āne healfs tīde* (WRIGHT, *Pop. Treat.* p. 12.) we may compare the position of *an* with that of *one*. The combination of *half* with a possessive after it is also ancient. Old-Engl.: *Half his rent* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 463.). Anglosax.: *peāh þu ville healf min rice* (MARC. 6, 23.). *Half* is perhaps to be regarded as an adjective in combinations like the Halfsax.: *Hit is half mon & half fisc* (LA-

JAM. I. 57.), as afterwards in: *They are half fish, half flesh* (SHAKSP., Pericl. 2, 1.) and Halssax.: He wepnede his cnihtes . . . *Ær heo weoren half þaru þer com Androgeus faren* (Lajam. I. 369.), where *half* has a relation to the subject. In Old-English we find *halfendele*, where the adjective *half* might have been expected: He schased the erle in a while Mare [then] *halfendele* a myle (Ms. in HALLIW. v.).

The ancient language also expresses fractional parts by the combination of ordinal numbers with *part, dele*; *half* is also joined to those Old-Engl.: Ych wol þe marie wel with þe *bridde part* of my londe (R. of Gl. I. 30.). Schropshire nap *haluendel* to þilke bischopriche (I. 5.). Halssax.: Ale þa *feorðe dale* lete we for[ð] fuse (Lajam. II. 140.). Al þa *haluen dale* of golde (II. 519.). *Ʒerrsalæmess kinedom Wass . . . Todæledd . . . O fowwre feorþenn daleas* (ORM. 9177. cf. 9470.). *Þe tende dale* (6125. cf. 2715.). Anglosax.: *Sealde Apollonige þone healfan dæl* (APOLLON OF T. p. 12.). *Herodes se feorðan dæles rica* (LTC., 3, 19. cf. 9, 7.). *Sele þone teoðfan dæl* (DEUTER. 14, 22.). Comp.: *þas hereteames ealles teoðfan sceat Abraham sealde godes biscope* (CÆDM. 2115.). The substantive use of ordinal numbers to denote fractional parts, corresponding to the Latin *tertia, quarta, quinta*, for *tertia, quarta, pars*, and whose commencement in English I have not made out, seems to belong to later times.

β. The multiplicative numerals *twofold, threefold*, Anglosaxon *tofseald, þrifeald*, are treated like other adjectives Romance forms like *double, treble* are however assimilated to the adjective *half*. For their combination with the definite article see p. 169. and compare: *Surrounded by treble their number* (SCOTT, R. Roy 30.). *You are worth double what I give* (WARREN, Ten Thous. a-y. 1, 4.). It was, in fact, a fair sized house, at least *treble that of Satin Lodge* (1, 10.). *Double, treble*, without the article and with the possessive and especially with the indefinite article *a double*, are moreover employed like *twofold*.

All these adjectives stand also as adverbial cases, as in: *Be double damned* (SHAKSP., Oth. 4, 2.). Somerset, *threefold* renowned (III Henry VI. 5, 7.). His anxiety had been recently increased *a thousand-fold* (WARREN, Ten Thous. a-year 2, 4.).

The Romance forms were early diffused. Comp. (P. PLOUGHM. p. 283. I have not observed instances of their construction like *half*. The analogy of the fractional with the multiplicative number is self-evident.

c. Pronominal Adjectives.

The Possessive Pronoun.

The possessive pronoun, which, as proceeding from the genitive of the personal pronoun, still oscillates between the nature of an adjective and that of a genitive, has been discussed in Vol. I. p. 295. as to its double form.

α. It often interchanges with the personal pronoun accompanied by *of*, which answers to a genitive. The modern language annexes thereto in part the distinction between an objective and a subjective genitive relation, which may be represented by the possessive pronoun. This distinction comes under consideration

with substantives in which a notion of an activity proves itself to be still operative, for ex: *my defence*, whereby the defence of myself or of another, set in motion by me, or the defence of my person by another might be expressed. This latter objective relation is therefore denoted more decidedly by *the defence of me*. The language does not however distribute the subjective and objective relation constantly between both forms of expression.

The possessive therefore expresses at once what pertains to a person or thing, what it has or what it utters: For *my part*, she is *my kinswoman* (SHAKSP., Troil. a. Cress. 1, 1.). Both are *my friends* (TENNY'S. p. 173.). She threw *her arms* round *my neck* (IRVING, Sk. B. The Wife). Has God, thou fool, work'd solely for *thy good, Thy joy, thy pastime, thy attire, thy food?* (POPE, Essay on M. 3, 27.) The sun that walks *his airy way* (PARNELL, Hymn to Contentm. 63.). Can you think of *his faults* now? (BULW., Money 5, 2.) I will carry to the altar a soul resolute to deserve *her affection* and fulfil *its vows* (5, 3.). When love shall love *its soul* (TH. MOORE p. 78.) and so on. But it also denotes what belongs or happens to or is effected in the person or thing to which it is referred. The substantives coming under consideration are verbal names of persons or abstract terms: They speak *their Maker* as they can (PARNELL, H. to Contentm. 73.). As his host, Who should against *his murderer* shut the door (SHAKSP., Macb. 1, 7.). *Our wrongs* in Richard's bosom will conquer him (Rich. III. 5, 3.). Linger not *our sure destructions* on (Troil. a. Cress. 5, 11.). Then we will be quit of *thine oath* which thou hast made us to swear (JOSH. 2, 20.). *Your terror* is fallen upon us (2, 9.). *His memory* long will live alone In all our hearts (TENNY'S. p. 173.). The person who told me *her story* had seen her at a masquerade (IRVING, Sk. B. The broken heart). To the cottage, where his wife had been all day superintending *its arrangement* (The Wife). The boundary between the latter objective relation of the possessive pronoun and the denoting the having or active subject by that pronoun is not always to be sharply drawn, since, for instance, in *its arrangement*, the substantive may denote both the objective arrangement and the subjective act of arranging.

But *of* is often used in the objective relation with the personal pronoun: The *fear of you* and the *dread of you* shall be upon every beast (GEN. 9, 2.). He betrayed not the least symptom of recognition at the *sight of me* (SMOLLET, Rod. Rand. 21.). The grand morality is *love of thee* (YOUNG, N. Th. 4, 783.). If not for *love of me* be given Thus much, then, for the love of heaven (BYR., Siege 21.). It is the *thought of her* that drives me almost to madness (IRVING, Sk. B., The Wife). — Your happy fortune ill you greet — . . . greeting thus The *herald of it* (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 1, 1.). Where the subject and the object of an activity expressed by a substantive is stated at the same time, the discrimination of them by a possessive and a personal pronoun is commanded: *His contempt of thee* (MILT., P. L. 10, 763.). *His bold defence of me* (ROWE, Jane Sh. 3, 1.). I'll change *my treatment of him* (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 4, 1.).

The substitution of the pronoun accompanied by *of* for the possessive pronoun was formerly more frequent in Modern-English, and is still in use in cases where no objective relation is present: The native *mightiness* and *fall of him* (SHAKSP., Henry V. 2, 4.). The lamentable *fall of me* (Rich. II. 5, 1.). It was the *death of him* (I Henry IV. 2, 1.). To break the *pate of thee* (ib.). It lies as sightly on the *back of him* (John 2, 1.). I can hold ne'er a *bone of me* still (B. JONS., Ev. Man in his hum. 4, 1.). As I put thy mildness on, *Image of thee* in all things (MILT., P. L. 6, 735.). When thou shalt make ready thine arrows upon thy strings against the *face of them* (Ps. 22, 12.). A chain Was thrown as't were about the *neck of you* (BYR., D. Juan 5, 110.). I believe the *heart of thee* is full of sorrow (CARL, Past. a. Pres. 3, 5.). Nature alone knows thee, acknowledges the *bulk and strength of thee* (ib.). You'll be the *death of me* (WARREN, Ten Thous. a-year 1, 6.). Mr. Tagrag . . could not for the *life of him* abstain from dropping something etc. (1, 10.). For the *life and soul of me* (3, 3.). For the *life of me* (TH. HOOK, Gilb. Gurney 1.).

The employment of possessive pronouns, among which we may regard the original genitives *his, hir, their*, treated early in part as pronominal adjectives, (see Vol. I. p. 297.) in the meaning of a subjective genitive has been predominant from ancient times. We observe that the abbreviation of *min, pin* into *mi, pi*, primarily in the nom. and accus. of the singular, reaches back to the Anglosaxon, and the plural form *hise* from *his* even into the Anglosaxon. Old-Engl.: At *my nede* now with me behoues þow go (LANGT. II. 291.). I bicom *pi man* (II. 250.). *Mi childeren* . . beþ *myne meste fon* (R. of GL. I. 35.). Go and wyn *pi kynde lond* and *pyn eritage* (I. 85.). Under *thi fet* evene hit is (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 132.). The kyng a-midde *his men* (p. 133.). Godes herte and *hise nayles* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 438.). Ha loveth ful luitel *hire lif* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 11.). Þei com vnto þat may, & sauh *hir contenance* (LANGT. II. 253.). Vortiger, *oure feble kyng* (R. of GL. I. 127.). For *zoure coming* ich am glad (I. 113.). Thei ben fals in *her faith* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 456.). He ouer-toke *per schip*, & asked wherþen þei ware? (LANGT. II. 236.). Halſax: *Min child* tatt i *min wambe* lip (ORM. 2807.). Mid alle *mire mihten* (LAZAM. I. 30.). Þe wes *mi deore wine* (I. 97.). Þu *mi muchele swinc* mid sare forȝeldest (ib.). Nes he neuer *pi fader* (ib.). Swa þu miht *pi kinelond* werien (II. 133.). *pi sune* patt tu childenn shallt (ORM. 13514.). To biddenn for *hiss aȝhenn folle* (363.). To ȝarrkenn *hise wiȝness* (176.). *Hise tweȝenn dohtress* (6386. cf. 14389. 15075. 17741.). Feier wes þe wimmon & wunsum *hire monnen* (LAZAM. I. 7.). Ȝif ȝe hine mawen bringen bi-foren *ure kinge* (I. 32.). Heo nomen *here uerden* (II. 11.). In Anglosaxon pronominal adjectives, as well as genitives in the subjective sense, are very familiar: Svá hvílc man svá minne rædels riht æræde, onfó se mýnre dóhtor tó vife (APOLLON. OF T. p. 3.). *pinum vordum* and *bebodum* ic hýrsumode (S. GUTHLAC, Prol.). Ic *eóvrum cýnne* Khananêa land . . gesýlle (Ps. 104, 10.). Of Marthan *hys svustra* (JOH. 11, 1.). Se Hælend lufodo Marthan and *hyre svustor* Marian, and Lazarum *heora bróðer* (11, 5.). The Form *hise* appears later; Mid ealle *hise Frencisce menn* (SAX. CHR. 1070.). Veax þá micel unfríð betvux him and *hise peignas* (1123.).

The use of the objective possessive pronoun is not excluded. Old-Engl.: God almiȝten be *thin help* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 11.). *Mi jugement* were sone i-given (p. 8.). In Anglosaxon the concurrent periphrasis with *of* is omitted: He ys *ure fríðigend* and *ure gescýldend* (Ps. 32, 17.). Bêto *mine*

oferhyrnisse mid CXX scill (Læge. Edw. II. 4.) [that is, disobedience towards me]. cf. ib. 9. *Beó éover ege* and *ôga ofer ealle nitenu* and *fugelas* (GEN. 9, 2.)

The periphrasis of the possessive generally by *of* is pretty ancient, not merely where it would stand in the objective sense, as in: In *remembrance of the* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 458.). I byseke you, knightes, for the *love of me* (GAMELYN 35.). Yt wase for the *lowe of the* (TORRENT 453.), but also otherwise: We hane seen *pe glorie of hym* (WYCL., Joh. 1, 14.). *pe modir of hym* seith (Joh. 2, 5.). By the *fruyt of hem* schul ye knowe hem (CHAUC., C. T. p. 186 l.). That I may feylle the *smelle of the* (TOWNS. M. p. 43.). The *kynd of the* shalle sprede wide (p. 45.). Within the *wombe of the* (p. 81.). The *myght of me* may no man mene (p. 120.). It is the *lamb of me* (p. 170.). If thou will do by the *counsel of me* (Cov. M. p. 147.). I am redy . . The *vyl of the* for to fulfille (p. 281.)

- β. Another contact of the possessive with the personal pronoun appears in the reference of a relative to the person indicated by the possessive pronoun.

It will break *my* heart, Mr. Francis, *that* have been toiling more like a dog than a man (SCOTT, R. Roy 2.). How hard is *our* fate Who serve in the state (ADDIS, Rosam. 1, 3.). They shall strike *Your* children yet unborn and unbegot, That lift your vassal hands against *my* head (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 3, 3.). The possessive pronoun of the third person in the singular and plural seems by its origin to preserve a more particular claim to this construction: Bear *his* name *whose* form thou bear'st (SHAKSP., John 1, 1.). Let grief and sorrow still embrace *his* heart, *That* doth not wish thee joy (Temp 5, 1.). The tents Of wickedness, wherein shall dwell *his* race *Who* slew his brother (MILT., P. L. 11, 607.). Praise is not thine, But *his who* gave thee, and preserves thee mine (COWP. p. 103.). *Hts* life *who* gave thee thine (BYRN, Bride 2, 21.). The peace of heaven is *theirs*, *that* lift their swords etc. (SHAKSP., John 2, 1.). Fickle *their* state *whom* God Most favours (MILT., P. L. 9, 948.). Those arts be *theirs*, *who* hate his gentle reign (COWPER p. 3.). Nor better was *their* lot *who* fled (SCOTT, Lord of the Isl. 5, 29.).

Old-Engl.: *Our* redempcyon for to make *That* slayn were thrugh sin (TOWNS. M. p. 155.). Of *his* passion *that* prince was of Walis (DEPOS. OF RICH. II. p. 2.). Unthank com on *his* heed *that* band him so (CHAUC., C. T. 4080.). Prest we ben for the to deye, And for *his* love *that* deyed on rood (RICH. C. DE L. 4468.). Vor *her* soules, *pat* per aslawe were (R. OF GL. II. 369.). The reference of a relative pronoun to the adjective pronoun or the possessive pronoun standing in the genitive, and preceding a substantive, seems foreign to the older language. This is especially true of the Anglosaxon *pe*, the common relative form, whereas *who* and *which* do not occur in the adjective sentence generally.

- γ. The possessive pronoun is added to adjectives, particularly comparative forms, which are used substantively as personal names, to denote the person to whom another is equal, superior or inferior. Here belong: like, equal, better, younger, elder, weaker, wiser &c., second, superior, inferior, junior.

For one *his like* (SHAKSP., Cymb. 1, 1.). By conversation with *his like* (MILT., P. L. 8, 418. cf. 424.). The world in vain Must hope to look upon *their like* again (COWP. p. 18.), With *their likes*

(SHAKSP., Jul. Cæs. 1, 2.). Contempt nor bitterness Were in his pride, or sharpness; if they were, *His equal* had awak'd them (All's Well 1, 2). "Let *thy betters* speak." — "The cardinal's not *my better* in the field." (II Henry VI. 1, 3.). The hand he spurn'd *His betters* take (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 3, 2.). He was *your better*, sir, And is! (ib.) I scarce can meet a monument but holds *My younger* (YOUNG, N. Th. 4, 21.). He was a few years *my elder* (BYR., Fragm.). O if thou really art *my Senior*, Seigneur, *my Elder*, Presbyter or Priest, — if thou art in very deed *my Wiser* etc. (CARL., Past. a. Pres. 3, 13.). But listen not to his temptations, warn *Thy weaker* (MILT., P. L. 6, 908.). An angel's second; nor *his second*, long (YOUNG, N. Th. 6, 327.). I should commit offence to *my inferiors* (SHAKSP., Cymb. 2, 1.). I can only love *my superior* (TAYLOR A. READE, Masks 1, 1.). Without seeming to think it necessary . . to consult *his superiors* (COOP., Spy 1.). As the genitive interchanges with the possessive in *an angel's second*, so does the substantive with *of* in: The host was by several years *the senior of the traveller* (COOP., Spy 1.).

This manner of expression answers on the one hand to Germanic, on the other to Romance usage. The positive *like* is frequently represented in Old-English by the Romance *per pere*. Me ne ssal *your per ysey* (R. or Gr. I. 214.). Alas! pat a kyng es fals ageyn *his pere!* (LANGT. II. 295.) Play thou not but with *they peres* (HALLIW., Freemas 769. cf. (CHAUC., C. T. 10990. 15151. TORRENT 222. 2520.). Halfsax.: Ne nat ich a wærlude riche cniht *his iliche* (LAJAM. II. 109.). Nes per na kyng *his ilike* (III. 6.) also of things: Nis nan weore *his iliche* [= its like] (II 296.). Anglos.: Drihten, hvā is *pin gelica*? (Ps. 34, 11.) Vēndon ge pāt ge mihton bedidrjan *minne gelican*? (GEN. 44, 15.). Ic visce pāt ic . . *pinne gelican* ett ne gemēte (APOLLON. OF T. p. 12.). pāt nān man nis *his gelica* on eorðan (JOB in ETTM. 3, 16. cf. GEN. 2, 20.). Nis nān . . *efnlica pin* (ÆLFRED. METRA 20, 18. Grein). Middle-Highdutch: Uf der erden lebet niht *sin gelich* (LANZ. 3021.). Comp.: Müller Mhd Wb. I. 972.). For the Comparative compare Old Engl.; In al Yngelond was non *hys beter* (RICH. C. DE L. 1650.). As thilke holy Jew *oure eldres* taught (CHAUC., C. T. 13779.). Halfsax.: Heora sunen . . pa weren *hire betren* (LAJAM. I. 159.). Abufenn *pine lahþhre* (ORM. 10719.). Anglosax.: pā *his betera* lāg (BYRHTNOTH 276. Grein). pā me *yldra min* āgeaf andsvare (ELENE 462.). Secgað *svylc vundru eovrum gingrum* (Ps. 47, 11. Engl. Ps. 48, 13.). The Superlative is likewise met with used substantively with reference to persons. Halfsax.: pe is *ure heste* (LAJAM. III. 64.). Anglosax.: Lufa *pinne nehstan* (MATH. 19, 19.), for which English has preferred *neighbour*.

Superlatives with a neuter meaning used substantively do not, in combination with possessives, comport themselves in the same manner as the positives and comparatives above cited.

If each man do *his best* (SHAKSP., Henry V. 2, 2.). Foul old Rome screamed execratively *her loudest* (CARL., Fr. Revol. 3, 1, 1.).

Here we have the simple substantive use of the adjective, without any abbreviation of another government of the original adjective with the person indicated by the possessive. In former times *best* was especially used substantively in this manner. Old-Engl.: And bad him don *his best* (GAMBLYN 237. cf. 823.). Now do *thy best* (RICH. C. DE L. 4703.). I have no instances to cite from the most ancient times.

δ. That the possessive pronouns are in part added to addresses has

been already observed on the Vocative (comp. Vol. II, 1. p. 157.). As *my* may then be taken as an expression of kindness, respect or courtesy, the possessives of the second and third person are often used with scorn or disparagement.

Thy Holland's banquets shall each toil repay (BYRON p. 321.). *Your fat king* and *your lean beggar*, is but variable service; two dishes, but to one table (SHAKSP., Haml. 4, 3.). I would teach these nineteen the special rules, as *your punto*, *your reservo*, *your stoccata*, *your imbroccato*, *your passada*, *your montanto* (BEN JONS., Ev. Man in h. hum. 4, 5.). A smile — not one of *your unmeaning wooden grins*, but a real, merry, hearty, good-tempered smile (DICKENS, Pickw. 2, 20.). Have *your town-palaces* a hall like this? (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 1, 2.). Tom roared . . having been chastised by my father for breaking *his fourth window* in that week (MARRYAT, P. Simple 1, 1.). Though Murray with *his Miller* may combine etc. (BYR. p. 314.).

The relation to a person, which the substantive notions here receive, makes the objects, (person or things) as it were, his own, represents them as current with him and acknowledged and esteemed by him, when the nature of the irony is to be explained by the context. This ironical mode of expression, which will have been peculiar to the language of common life in all ages, does not appear frequently in the literary language till modern times.

- e. The possessive has been strengthened from ancient times by the addition of the adjective *own*, Anglosaxon *āgen*, proprius, whereby the exclusive peculiar appurtenance is made prominent.

They may jest, Till *their own scorn* return to them unnoted (SHAKSP., All's Well 1, 2.). His blood on *his own head* (SHERID. KNOWLES., Hunchb. 1, 1.). When every night my weary head Sunk on *its own* unthorned bed (TH. MOORE p. 103.). Who bid the stork, Columbus like, explore *Heav'n's not his own*, and worlds unknown before? (POPE, Ess. on Man 3, 105.). *Own* with the possessive pronoun especially gives to addresses the expression of intimacy: And now, *my own Catharine*, I must tell you a secret (GRACE KENNEDY, Dunallan 9.). You'll kiss me, *my own mother* (TENNYS. p. 136.).

Old-Engl : And bare ham up *myn owen rigge* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 199.). Ok del hit with *þure owen fist* (p. 205.). I am *thin owen clerk*, so have I seel! (CHAUC., C. T. 4237.). Pray hym to comforth me of care, As *myn awne* dere *cosyn* (TOWNS. M. p. p. 68.). *Min owne* trewe wif (6401.). *Myn owne* deere brother (7149.). *Myn oughne* lord so deere (8757.). *Myn owne maister* deere (13716.). Halfsax.: Onn himm sellfenn wass inoh *His aghenn sinne* sene (ORM. 8067.). Anglosax.: Ic selle *min āgen lif* (JOH. 10, 15.). Hvé mihte me fordēman, *minre āgenre* *peōde* ealdorman? (APOLLON. OF T. p. 8.). Gevilnode *his āgenre dōhtor* him tō gemāccan (p. 1.). Cirde tō *his āgenum hāme* (GEN. 31, 55.). There are substituted for this mode of expression combinations like: *Mines sylfes lic* (COP. EXON. 452, 22.). *Mines sylfes gebed* (PS. 140, 2.). *Min sylfes gāst* (76, 4. cf. 94, 9.). Compare mein eigen, *suus et proprius*, *suus proprius*, *noster proprius*.

- ζ. The possessive pronoun tolerates determinatives like *this*, sometimes *which*, frequently *both*, *all*, *half*, *double*, *treble*, before it, and *every*, as well as other numerals and adjectives, after it.

This my long suff'rance (MILT., P. L. 3, 198.). Let *this our friendship live between our children* (ADDIS., Cato 5, 4.). I like not, Julia, *this your country life* (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 1, 2.). The least of *these my brethren* (MATH. 25, 40.). Till time shall alter *this our brutish shapes* (MARLOWE, D. Faust 4, 4.). Let *these their heads* Preach upon poles (EDW. II. 1, 1.). Not according to the covenant that I made with their fathers . . . *which my covenant* they brake (JEREM. 31, 32.). Before the eyes of *both our armies* (SHAKSP., Jul. Cæs. 4, 2.). Mr. Quirk opened *both his eyes* (WARREN, Ten Tous. a-year 1, 12.). By *all my hopes!* (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 1, 1.). His memory long will live alone In *all our hearts* (TENNYNS. p. 173.). For *half thy wealth* (SHAKSP., Merch. of V. 4, 1.). Her eye . . . suppressing *half its fire* (BYR., D. Juan 1, 60.). *Treble their number* (SCOTT, R. Roy 30.).

I profane . . . my heart on *thy every part* (SHAKSP., Love's L. L. 4, 1.). Is not our *every walk*, as Goethe says, a series of falls? (LEWES, G. II. 4.) *Her every word* a wasp (COWP. p. 43.). The birds put off *their ev'ry hue* (p. 334.). *Other*, else placed after the possessive, is occasionally found before it: With Poins and *other* his continual followers (SHAKSP., II Henry IV. 4, 4.).

The ancient language mostly takes the lead with this combination and collocation of words. Old-Engl.: *Bothe his eris* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 5.). *Bothe his eighen* (p. 127.). On *bothen his chekes* (p. 464.). *Sche bothe hire yonge children* to hir callith (CHAUC., C. T. 8957.). *Brek bothe her legges* (GAMMELYN 520.). *All myn hole herte* was his (DEPOS. or RICH. II. p. 2.). With *alle my ffyve wyttis* (p. 3.). *Al my bed* was ful of verray blood (CHAUC., C. T. 6161.). Opon *alle our fee* (R. or GL. I. 60.). Whan a child hath *alle his lymes* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 139.). That may onethe paye *Half his rent* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 463.): on the other hand *Maugree his manye teeth* (p. 374.). Hallsax.: *Bigann all ure blisse* (ORM. 708.). Anglosax.: *Ælc þara þe þas mine word gehýrð* (MATH. 7, 24. cf. 26.). Anum of *pysum minum lástum gebróðrum* (25, 40.). *Eall þin lichoma byð beorht* (MATH. 6, 22.). *Eallum úrum dagum* (LUC. 2, 75.). Gangende on *eallum his bebodum* (I. 6.). Mid *ealle hise Freneisce menn* (SAX. CHR. 1070.). *Healf min rice* (MARC. 6, 23.). The position of the possessive is moreover freer. See Collocation of Words.

In the cases cited the combined pronouns are to be thought in the same case as their substantive, so far as we may consider the original genitives as used substantively. But cases occur in which *both* and *all* do not agree in case with the substantive, but are to be considered remains of a genitive, which rather agreed with the original possessive genitive. The position of the determinatives changes.

But I have sworn to frustrate *both their hopes* (MARLOWE, Jew of M. 2, 2.) [that is, the hopes of both, not both the hopes]. To prevent the confusion that might arise . . . from *our both* addressing the same lady (SHERID., Riv. 3, 4.). Comp. also: But clay and clay differs in dignity *Whose dust is both alike* (SHAKSP., Cymb. 4, 2.). — Have I not *all their* letters to meet me in arms? (I Henry IV. 2, 3.) Tell her 'tis *all our ways* — it runs in the family (SHERID. 4, 2.).

The ancient language long discriminated these cases, the correct under-

standing whereof is now remitted to the feeling of the language, by the inflection of the determinatives *both* and *all*, from the above expressions, where an unwarranted *s* is even appended to *both*, *bothers*. Old-Engl.: And after, by *her bother rede*, A ladder they set the hall to (ELLIS, Metric. Rom. III. 65.). Crist . . Destroyed *hir=botheres* myghtes (P. PLOUGHM. p. 340.). And deme *hir botheres* right (p. 371.). The rejection of inflection is likewise found: Or over-haste *both our* labour shend (CHAUC., Troil. a. Cress. 1, 971.). Halſax.: *purh peſſre bapre bisne* (ORM 2794. cf. 3301. 9762.). To *ſunſker bapre gode* (6183.). Heo ſomneden *heore beire uole anon* (LAſAM. III. 107. cf. I. 225.) Anglosax.: He *ſoſlice is heora begra lufu* (BASIL, Hexam. 2.). *Heora begra eagan vurdon geopenode* (GEN. 3, 7.). — Old-Engl.: Adam was *oure aller fader* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 342.). I am *yourre aller heed* (p. 424.). I . . bere *oure aller purs* (GAMELYN 317.). Than *thai it closed and gun hyng Thaire aller ſeles* thareby (MS. in HALLIW. v. aller). A ſouper at *your alther coſt* (CHAUC., C. T. 802.). Up roos *oure oſt*, and was *oure althur cok* (825.). Than doth he dye *for oure allether good* (Cov. MYST. p. 14.). Halſax.: *purh heore alre dome* (LAſAM. I. 223. cf. 264. II. 136.). Anglosax.: Eva *ure ealra modor* (BASIL., Hexam. 11.).

7. Instead of the combination of the pronoun with its substantive, the modern language often prefers to subjoin the uncombined possessive with *of*. A periphrasis thus arises, in which originally the preceding substantive in the plural was to be imagined added to the possessive pronoun, by which the totality of objects was comprehended, to which one or more individuals pertained. But the original view has been so far obscured by usage, that the pronoun subjoined by *of* no longer indicates absolutely a plurality, but appears even where the possessive belongs to a single object only. The substantive coming under consideration, when it stands in the singular, is commonly accompanied by a determinative, especially a demonstrative word like *this*, *that*, by the article *an*, *a*, an indeterminate pronoun or a numeral.

This toil of ours should be *a work of thine* (SHAKSP., John 2, 1.). What means that hand upon *that breast of thine*? (3. 1.). Will not a calf's-skin stop *that mouth of thine*? (ib.) I will bring thence *that honour of hers* (Cymb. 1, 5.). So in *this mongrel state of ours*, The rabble are the supreme powers (BUTL., Hud. 3, 2, 1611.). In *this naughty world of ours* (BYR., D. Juan 1, 18.). *This rural life of mine* (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 1, 2.). Whosoever heareth *these sayings of mine* (MATTH. 7, 24.). Dim are *those heads of theirs* (CARL., Fr. Revol. 1, 1, 1.). He's *a friend of yours* (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 3, 1.). Balaam chapel, that *a friend of his* was building (DOUGL. JERROLD, Bubbles 3, 1.). *What business of yours*, if I choose to die? (KINGSLEY, Two years ago 2, 7.). *Many a dream of hers* (1, 9.). It was *no act of mine* (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 5, 2.). *Ours* may be added to the possessive: You had *land enough of your own* (SHAKSP., Cymb. 1, 3.). Laws . . that have *no passion of their own* (BUTL., Ep. of Hud. 131.). Every room above, and every cask . . appeared to have *a separate peal of echoes of its own* (DICKENS, Cristm. Car. 1.).

The modern language has to a wide extent favoured this form of expression, which is rendered superfluous, partly by the possibility of the immediate combination of the possessive pronoun with the substantive, as in *this my friend*, partly by transformations like *one*, *none of my friends*.

In Old-English it was far rarer: *That lad of thyne shalle dy* (TOWN, M. p. 148.). Now I have i-proved *many tornes of thyne* (GAMELYN 240.). Ye *kyghtys of oures* Shalle have castels and towres (TOWN, M. p. 151.). The hayward heteth us *harm to habben of his* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 149.). Is *every knight of his* thus daungerous (CHAUC., C. T. 6672.). He was pardy, *an old felaw of yourres* (14087.). And kyssyd the kyng . . And aftyr *other lordes of hys* (TORRENT 394.). The combination with *owen* is moreover not wanting: *Mightestou amenden us With moneye of thyn owen* (P. PLOUGH, p. 458.). The origin of this form of speech seems lost in popular language; the most ancient period of the language presents no support for it.

2. The combination of a substantive with the possessive pronoun *his*, as a substitute for the simple genitive, has been discussed with examples Vol. I. p. 295. It is to be observed historically that it only occurs solitarily since Shakespeare's time. Comp. also: *Master Colts his foole* would needs daunce with me (KEMPS, Nine Daies Wonder p. 11.). A little about *Saint Giles his gate* (p. 15.). Of *Hudibras his hurt* (BUTL., Hud. 1, 3, 547. cf. 1, 1, 437.). We have compared the frequent inversion in Byron: *Patroclus' spirit less was pleased Than his, Minotti's son* (Siege 25.), and sought to explain the periphrasis generally by the use of pleonastic pronouns. The question remains, however, to be settled as to the case of the substantive, wherefore we pursue this syntactical combination further historically.

From olden times the use of *his, ys* following the substantive is mostly restricted to names of persons of the masculine gender, in the most recent times particularly to proper names of persons. Old-Engl.: *Corineus ys swert sone brac* (R. or GL. I. 17.). *Ipomydon his messyngere herde Of this tithyngis* (ALLIS. 5894.). That thou wilt believe on *Christ his laye* (PERCY, Rel. p. 12. II.). For *Jeshu is love* (TORRENT 1902.). *Torrant bryngythe a devylle ys hed* (380.). *Dethe ys dynt shalt thou not have* (461.). In Hallsaxon *his* frequently stands in the modern text of *Lafamon*, rarely in the older, where, however, we read: *Argal his broðer* (I. 279) and *To Cornwale his eærðe* (I. 175.), where the name of the country, as in the modern text in the words: *Al Leogris his lond* (I. 174.) may stand for the name of the prince. Comp. Mod.-Engl.: *France his sword* (SHAKSP., I Henry VI. 4, 6). The modern text frequently combines other names of persons with it: *Min hem his mochele mod* [= mine uncle's] (I. 375.). *Urne þe teares uppe þe king his leores* (III. 214.). *þe bisshop his broþer* (II. 276.), and names of things even of the feminine gender: *At þare dich his grunde* (II. 241.) [the Anglosaxon *dīc* is of the masc. gender; yet comp. *Lafamon* II. 244.]. In *Jerusalem his cheping* (II. 275.). In *seinte . . nete his name* (III. 184.), which is readily completed by the words of the old text: *a seinte trinettēs nome*. No passage, save perhaps the words *þare dich his*, gives the key to the case of the substantive, in which one may see the dative, but also the genitive. In Anglosaxon traces of this periphrasis of the genitive appear: *þær ve gesávon Enac his cynryñ* (NUM. 13, 29.). *Ve þær gesávon of þam entcynne Enac his bearna micelra vástma* (ib. 33.), where *Enachis* stands, but, considering the former passage, perhaps erroneously. In Caedmon the forms *Enoc* and *Enoch* interchange: but *Enachis* would not at least be an Anglosaxon genitive form. The case of the substantive must be here the accusative or nominative, unless we think of an abbreviation. Another passage presents a dative of the substantive, in analogy to other Germanic tongues: *Moyse and Aaron . . Samuהל pridda, þá gode his naman neode cigda* (Ps. 98, 6), with which compare the inversion in Old-Engl.: *Confesse me, and crye his grace, God that al made*

(P. PLOUGH, p. 365.). But in later times the image of a definite case has manifestly been lost. The transfer of *his* to the feminine gender remains indeed hard to explain.

- a. If one and the same substantive is determined by various possessives, the substantive may either denote the same object common to several persons, or may be referred, in connection with the single possessives, to various objects. In the former case several pronouns (those not immediately preceding the substantive commonly in the uncombined pronominal forms) often go before the substantive, in the other case, rarely. Instead of a second possessive pronoun a Saxon genitive may also stand in the possessive sense.

In *yours* and *my* discharge (SHAKSP., Temp. 2, 1.). The lady is dead upon *mine* and *my* master's false accusation (Much Ado 5, 1.). What, know'st thou not *Thine* and *our* Sovereign? (BYRON, Manfr. 2, 4.) And *his* and *my* united power Will laugh to scorn the death-firman (Bride 1, 7.). And this must be *my* and *their* excuse (BULW., Rienzi 1, 7.). — Between thee and the woman I will put Enmity, and between *thine* and *her* seed (MILT., P. L. 10, 179.). Comp.: I will put enmity . . between *thy* seed and *her* seed (Gen. 3, 15.). I ascend unto *my* Father and *your* Father (JOHN 20, 17.). — The separation of possessives in reference to the same object is presented, for instance: *Your* fairest daughter and *mine*, my god-daughter Ellen (SHAKSP., II Henry IV. 3, 2.).

In the reference to various objects the pronouns are in general separated, so that a second one is placed after the substantive, (and, with distinguishable forms, in the uncombined form) as, generally in the return or reference backwards of a possessive in another sentence, or member of a sentence, the substantive is not usually repeated, but the possessive appears alone, or in combination with *own*.

In wars that may our loves disjoin, And end at once *his* life and *mine* (ADDIS., Rosam. 1, 4.), *His* father and *mine* thought the best way to couple their guineas was to couple us (DOUGL. JERROLD, Bubbles 3.). I was bold — Forgetful of *your* station and *my* own (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 4, 2.). Instead of a pronoun a genitive may also precede the substantive: *His* master's int'rest and *his* own combin'd Prompt ev'ry movement of his heart and mind (COWPER p. 44.). — Sadly you lean *your* head to *mine* (TH. MOORE p. 118.). *My* father gave me honour, *yours* gave land (SHAKSP., John 1, 1.). If she will know *her* duty, we know *ours* (GAY, Begg. Op. 1, 1.). *Antonio's* love, you know, is old as *his* (LEIGH HUNT, Legend of Flor. 1, 1.).

The non-repetition of the substantive, which constitutes the same object common to several persons, is, like the juxtaposition of possessive pronouns in this case, always the most natural, when, in the earliest times it was not imperative to place it first. Anglosax.: On godes huse gangan svylce mid *gepeahtunge* pine and *mine* (Ps. 54, 13.).

Even where a reference of distinct objects to different grammatical persons takes place, the omission of the substantive has long been familiar with every reference backwards of a possessive. The fuller forms of the pronoun were of course readily preserved here when proclitic forms had

procured themselves admission beside them, as fuller-toned forms established themselves in such a postposition, or separation and isolation from the substantive. We therefore always find in this place pronominal forms at least unabridged, and some even amplified ones. Comp. Old-Engl.: Ne see *þe þat her hors bep suyftore þan þoure be* (R. or GL. II. 397). — Lay down *thi swerd*, and I sal *myn* alswa (CHAUC., C. T. 4083.). Hom to *myn hous*, or ellis unto *youres* (14200.). That *oure prayeres* . . Ben to the hihe god mor acceptable Than *youres* (7493.). For to colyn *thy blood*, as I dide *myn* (GAMELYN 536.). When alle mens *corne* was fayre in feld, Then mas *myne* not worthe an eld (TOWN. M. p. 10.). Halfsax.: *þa helpes his freondene swa ich wille mine* (LAJAM. I. 29.). In Anglosaxon moreover the nonrepetition of the substantive after a second possessive is usual: Forgielð me *þin lif*, *þas be ic iu be min* . . gesealde (CYNEVULF, Crist 1477. Grein). Earm ic *vās on eðle þinum*, *þāt pu vurde eadig on minum* (1497.), also: *þā sint eovre hlāfordas and eovre valdandas, nās ge heora* (BOETH. 16, 2.), beside: *Nis nā svā on his ācennednisse svā svā byð on ūre ācennednisse* (HOMIL. in EITM. 71, 30.).

- α. As in addresses a transition is sometimes made from *thou* into *you*, so, *thy*, *thine* and *your*, *yours* are often referred to the personal form not agreeing grammatically.

Kate, Kate, art *thou* not ashamed to deceive *your* father so? (GOLDSM., She Stoops 3.) A willing pupil kneels to *thee*, and lays His title and his fortune at *your* feet (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 1, 3.).

Old-Engl.: They pluckud *thy* power away, And reden with realte *zoure* rewme thorn-oute (DEPOS. or RICH. II. p. 6.). I moot do with *thy* daughter for the best . . But natheles withoute *your* witynge Wol I not doon (CHAUC., C. T. 8365.).

- λ. The possessives of persons and things are used substantively, or elliptically.

- αα. Of persons we only find the pronoun referred to a plurality, unless we would refer predicative determinations of the sentence here.

Modern- and Old-English instances see Vol. I. p. 296. Anglosaxon is not fond of the substantive uses, frequent in Rob. of Gloucester. Comp. To *þinum hivum* (MARC. 5, 19.) overagainst the Gr. *πρὸς τοὺς οὐούς*, where Gothic also presents du *þeinaim*.

- ββ. The possessive in the neuter is applied to what belongs to a person, or, to his property. The addition of *own* makes this appear as the substantive.

He shall receive *of mine* (JOHN 16, 14.). He shall take *of mine* (16, 15.). He speaketh *of his own* (8, 44.). Let no man seek *his own* (1 Cor. 10, 24.). Charity . . seeketh not *her own* (ib. 13, 5.). In the business epistolary style the omission of *letter* has been naturalized: *Yours* received, and duly honoured the bills inclosed, as per margin (SCOTI, R. Roy 1.). I received "*yours*" is vulgar and mercantile (CHATHAM, Lett. 11.).

Old-Engl.: *Of myn* he schal take (WYCL., Joh. 16, 14.). That ech man ne shal have *his* (P. PROLOG. p. 104.). Ane lete hem gon, ech lord to *his owne* (MACPHER. p. 89.). Halfsax.: France is *min aȝen* (LAJAM. III. 43.). In Anglosaxon the possessive pronoun stands in a neuter sense even in the plural: He nimð *of minum* (JOH. 16, 14. cf. 15.). Ealle *mine*

synd þine, and þine synd mine (17, 10.). Comp. Goth.: *Meina alla*. Gr.: *τὰ ἐμὰ πάντα*, else Anglosax.: *Ealle mine þing* (Luc. 16, 31.).

- μ. Sometimes, especially in conversational language, the possessive is omitted, where it seems self-intelligible. This mostly happens with names of persons, whose kindred reference to the person speaking or spoken to is usually denoted by the possessive pronoun.

What! *mother* dead? (SHAKSP., John 4, 2.) *Father-in-law* has been calling me whelp, and hound, this half year (GOLDSM., *She Stoops* 1.). I shall never go back to *father* (BULW., *Maltrav.* 1, 3.) He was formally named Captain by *Papa* in War-Council (CARL., *Fred. the Gr.* 5, 5.). I have seen her and *sister* cry over a book (GOLDSM., *She Stoops* 2.). The old gentleman . . calmly asked, how he proposed to maintain himself and *spouse*? (SMOLLET, *Rod. Rand.* 1.) With a desire that you will this night seek out another habitation for yourself and *wife* (ib.).

The conversational language of older times is less known to us. Comp. Old-Engl.: Brother, as *elders* have us kend, First shuld we tend with oure hend (TOWN. M. p. 10.). In many cases, with the comparison of several substantive, the definite article may be conceived to be omitted: A clerk . . bigan, to telle þat þe (he?) schulde first *fader* and *moder* quelle (R. or GL. I. 10.) And wiste þat heo ne schulde . . Ne se *fader*, ny oþer kyn (p. 13.). Anglosax.: Ne veorðjað *fäder* and *móðor* (MATH. 15, 6.). Comp. p. 197.

- ν. If the same possessive pronoun is to be referred to more than one substantive notion in the same case, the repetition of the pronoun in the syndetic and asyndetic connection in the modern language often serves to make the single members prominent, or to separate them more distinctly, if they are not to be readily united into a total image, although it also appears without any particular design.

Ye partners of *my fault* and *my decline* (YOUNG, N. Th. 5, 726.). It bade me rove — my sole support, *My cymbals* and *my saraband* (KIRKE WHITE, *Savoyard's Ret.*). How *her opulence* and *her martial glory* grew together (MACAUL., *Hist. of E. I.* 1.). Is there not *my father*, *my uncle*, and myself? (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 2, 3.) Go, like the Indian, in another life Expect *thy dog*, *thy bottle* and *thy wife* (POPE, *Essay on M.* 4, 177.).

The non-repetition is, however, widely diffused with syndetic members of sentences in the copulative disjunctive and adversative relation, and even with the abbreviation of comparative sentences, when the difference of the gender and number of the substantives does not come under consideration.

And laid *his love* and *life* under my foot (SHAKSP., II Henry IV. 3, 1.). I offer you *my hand* and *heart* (BULW., *Lady of L.* 1, 1.). That scanty pittance Which *my poor hand* and *humble roof* can give (ROWE, *Jane Sh.* 1, 2.). And you *my dearest sisters* and *aunt!* — have I at last met you again (COOPER, *Spy* 1.). In various passages of *his letters* and *conversation* (LEWES, G. I. 59.). Having *my country's peace*, and *brother's loves* (SHAKSP., III Henry VI. 5, 7.). Nor are *thy lips* ungrateful, Sire of men, Nor *tongue* inelo-

quent (MILT., P. L. 8, 218.). Whate'er might be *his worthlessness* or *worth* (BYR., D. Juan 1, 36), I, like the rest, must use *my skill* or *strength* (Bride 2, 20.). As she laugh'd out, until *her back*, As well as *sides*, was like to crack (BUTL., Hud. 2, 1, 85.). That cousin's nearer to *thy heart* than *blood* (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 1, 2.).

In the asyndetic connection the repetition is more familiar, yet even here the pronoun may remain unpeated.

My coffers, lands, all are at thy command! (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 2, 2.). *His eye, nose, cravat* have, in such work and fortune, got such a character (CARL., Past a. Pres. 2, 17.). The repetition also interchanges with the omission: He leaves *his goods*, *his friends*, and *native soil* (MILT., P. L. 12, 129.). *My morning dress*, *my noon dress*, *dinner dress*, and *evening dress* (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 2, 2.).

In olden times the repetition of the pronoun seems in general to preponderate. Old-Engl.: I love more . . . *þi leue bodi one, þan myn soule and my lyf* (R. of GL. I. 30. sq.). Thoru *thine crafstes and thine dedes* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 7.). And bidde *mi pater noster and mi crede* (ib.). *His lif and his soule* worthe i-schend (ib.). *My laue and my beleve* (MAUNDEV. p. 35.). Of *his poverté*, and *his pacience* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 286.). Do on *thyn hosen and thy schoon* (GAMELYN 267.). And asketh wher *his wyf and his child ys* (CHAUC., C. T. 5298.). *His gloir and his renoun* (14040.). Halfsaxon: Binimen *þe pine rihte & pine kineriche* (LAJAM. I. 157.). Ða wes Oswy ofslajen . . . & *his sune & his æm* (III. 276.). He nom *his mæðmes alle and his mon* [men?] deore (III. 281.). In Anglosaxon the repetition, especially where different forms of pronominal adjectives are required, as well as the repetition of the pronominal genitives is the general rule: Hēr ys *þin mōder*, and *þine gebrōdra ūte* (MARC. 3, 52.). Hvylic ys *min mōder*, and *mine gebrōdra* (3, 33.). Ve sceolon mearcjan *ūre forwearde heafod and ūrne lichaman* (HOMIL. in ETTM. 64, 31.). Ðis is *min lichama and min blōd* (ib. 67, 8.). Ðāt hālige hūsel, þe gāstlice is *his lichama and his blōd* (ib. 67, 25.). And befaston *hiora viſ and hiora scipu and hiora feoh* on Eāstenglum (SAX. CHR. 894.). — Where the preposition is repeated in prepositional members, the pronoun also recurs. But this recurrence of both is peculiar to the older periods of the language. Old-Engl.: Of *his ryalle estate and of his myghte* I schalle speke more plenerly (MAUNDEV. p. 42.). Sith I stond in *your love and in your grace* (CHAUC., C. T. 8967.). Wold thay . . . blyn Of *thare pride and of thare syn* (TOWN. M. p. 36.). Halfsax.: þurh *his spell* Annd þurh *his hallzhe bisne* (ORM. 767.). Anglosax.: Heo fōr mid *hire vere and mid hire ādume and mid hire dohtor* (APOLLON OF T. p. 25.).

The non-repetition of the possessive particularly occurs with synonymous or kindred notions, as well as with those which are regarded as a coherent totality. Old-Engl.: Al *here atyl and tresour* was also aseynt (R. of GL. I. 51.). *My rightwisenesse and right* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 393.). Of *my corn and catel* (p. 122.). If that God almighty hold *my lyf and witt* (GAMMELYN 759.). *Yours gyrrhe and peasse* to cry (TOWN. M. p. 67.). *Thi wife and childe* (p. 48.). Even in Anglosaxon the pronoun does not recur in similar cases: its omission is facilitated where the pronominal form is joined to the different substantives, although not of like gender, as well as when the genitives of the personal pronouns appear: For *þinum synnum and gyltum helle duru* þe ongean openað (S. GUTHLAC 5.). *Þinum vordum and bebodum* ic hyrsumode (ib. Prol.). *Eōver ege and ēga* (GEN. 9, 2.). *Min fāder and mōder and mine gebrōdra* (JOS. 2, 13.). Se ys *min mōðer*, and *mān brōðer*, and *swuster* (MARC. 3, 35.). Ofslitō *þine hors*, and *þine assan*, and

olfendas, and *azen*, and *scép* (Exod. 9, 3.). *Ve sind þurh his provinge and áriste álysede* (Homil. in Etm. 64, 40.). *On heora gedyrum and ofer-segum* (ib. 63, 30.); also. *Heorte min and fæsc* (Ps. 83, 2.), and in the bolder construction: *Ussum fäder and mæder* (CARDM. 1569.). *þines cynnes and cneðomaga randviggendra rim* (3363.). *Ice . . þin vord and villan hãbbe gefyllid* (S. GUTHLAC Prol.).

If several substantives characterize the same individual or individuals by their various qualities, one application of the possessive is a matter of course.

My author and disposer, what thou bidst Unargued I obey (MILT., P. L. 4, 634.). *My countrymen and fellow-citizens*, We shall deserve your favour (SHERID. KNOWLES, Virgin. 1, 1.).

Yet the pronoun recurs with the emphatic prominence of the different determinations, particularly in the predicative nominative.

My Lord and my God (JOHN 20, 28.). He is *our help and our shield* (Ps. 33, 20.).

Anglosax.: *þæt þu ðre cyng and fäder være* (APOLLON. of T. p. 26.). — *þu eart min God and min Dryhten* (JOH. 20, 28.). He *ys ðre fristigend and ðre gescyldend* (Ps. 23, 17.).

The Demonstrative Pronoun.

The demonstrative pronouns of Modern-English are, in the narrower sense, *this*, *that* and *yon*, *yond*, *yonder* see Vol. I p. 301. They point to an object present and to be exhibited. By themselves, *that* is, so far as founded in the demonstrative nature of the words, the regard to the greater or less proximity of the object does not come under consideration, although the reference to remoter objects chiefly attaches itself to the last named.

α. The now familiar opposition of *this* and *that*, whose original inflective forms blend, in the attributive relation, as elsewhere, belongs in English to modern times. In their opposition the substantive may remain unrepeatd with the one last appearing, as *this* and *that* generally may be referred back to a previous substantive without its being repeated. In this opposition *that* readily refers to the remoter object, although the mere variety of the objects, (that is, one and another) may come under consideration. It is transferred from space to time.

You, *that way*: we *this way* (SHAKSP., Love's L. L. 5, 2.). Wherefore stand you looking then, *This way* and *that*? (LEIGH HUNT, Legend of Flor. 1, 1.) On *this side* now — now on *that* (Love Chase 1, 3.). These two reverences, *this reverence* for death, and *that reverence* for life (CARL., Past. a. Pres. 2, 16.). Taking his tea with *gossip this* or *master that* (BULW., E. Aram 1, 1.). *This dress* and *that* by turns you tried (TENNYS. p. 91.). And from *that time* to *this* I am alone (p. 105.).

This opposition answers to that of the Old-Highdutch *dexer*, *dexiu*, *dis* — *der*, *diu*, *daz*, and of the Middle-Highdutch *diser* (*dirre*), *disiu*, *dis* — *der*, *diu*, *das*. See Grimm's Gr. IV. 447. Müller's Dict. I. 3146.). It does not appear in Old-English till later: For *that*, and *this* that lyyes here, Have cost me fulle dere (TOWN. M. p. 13.). In the older language the com-

bination of *that other* often suffices, in which *that*, as an article, appears unaccented, as in *the other*, which in the modern language is often adapted to render a Gr. *ἄλλος* as opposed to *οὗτος*. Modern-Engl.: *This man* went down to his house justified rather than *the other* (LUKE 18, 14.). Gr.: *Κατέβη οὗτος δειδυσμένος . . παρ' ἑτέρου*. [In the Anglosaxon text the last words are wanting. I have not found in Old-English the opposition of the Modern-Highdutch *dieser* — *jener*, Middle-Highdutch *dieser* — *jener*; it belongs, however, to Hallsax.: *patt an wass o zonnnd half pe flumm. Annd o piss half patt operr* (ORM. 10588.). *O piss half . . O zonnnd half* (10611. cf. 10580.) see *yon*. This opposition, not met with in Anglosaxon, also unknown to Laŷamon, is expressed in Gothic *sa . . jains*: *Atiddja sa garaitoza gataihans . . pau raihtis jains* (LCC. 18, 14.).

This is also opposed to a second *this*.

Thy crimes to their full period tend, Or soon by *this* or *this* will end (ADDIS., Rosam. 2, 6.).

Old-Engl.; Thou wold I gaf hym *this shefe* or *this shefe* (TOWN. M. p. 14.). *der* — *der* is similarly repeated in German. Old-Highdutch: In *dia* int in *dia* stat (DICT. I. 5086.).

β. αα. *This* from olden times chiefly points to the object situate near to the speaker in space or in time, in reality or in imagination, hence to the object just named or immediately to be named.

This way the king will come (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 5, 1.). But then thine heart, and *this warm hand* to match (LEIGH HUNT, Legend of Flor. 1, 1.). "Is he gone?" — "He is *this moment*." (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 4, 2.) The same, doubtless, I saw *this morning* (LEIGH HUNT, Leg. of Fl. 1, 2.). You could just perceive . . a small, solitary and miserable hovel. Within *this lone abode* . . were seated two persons (BULW., Maltrav. 1, 1.). *These* are the names of his daughters, Mahlah, and Noah etc. (JOSH. 17, 3.). See Vol. I. p. 302. Vol. II. p. 11.

Old-Engl.: The mooste partie of *this peple* That passeth on *this erthe*, Have thei worship in *this world*, The wilne no better (P. PLOUGH. p. 15.). Þou shalt se more þan *pes pingis* (WYCL., Joh. 1, 50.). As browke I *thise two shankys* (TOWN. M. p. 12.). *Thes gold rynges* I shalle geve the (TORRENT 1398.). That han laboured Al *this lenten time* (P. PLOUGH. p. 419.). Better groved me no *this yere* (TOWN. M. p. 12.). And faste by, is Kyng Heroudes hows . . *This Heroude* was over moche cursed (MAUNDEV. p. 89.). *pesch chef townes* heo lette in Englonde rere, London and Euerwik etc. (R. or GL. I. 2.). Even in Anglosaxon *pes, peos, pis* was thus employed, and therefore also the form of the Nom. and Accus. Plur. *pás* (those), which is now attracted to *that*. A new plural form *pis* (beside *pes, peos* and *pas*) and *pise* was early used for these cases, and which extend for centuries into Modern-English. Hallsax.: For to bi-holde *pis* preo cnihtes bolde (LAŷAM. III. 46. modern text). Whas itt iss patt . . fillepp *pise mahhtess* (ORM. 4572.). Comp. Anglosax.: Hvät is *pes junga man*? (APOLLON. of T. p. 15.). Hvät cunnon *pás pine gefe-ran*? (THORPE, Anal. p. 102.) Geornfulnes *pyse veorulde*, and leásung *pyssa veoruld-velena* (MATH. 13, 22.). Svá he ys geháten ód *pisne dæg* (MATH. 27, 8.). Väs sum cyninge . . *pises cyninges* cvén veard of life gevitén (APOLLON. of T. p. 1.). Þicgað hit on *pás visan*: begyrdað eóvere lendenn etc. (HOMIL. in Ettm. 63, 35.).

The expression *this other day* (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 3, 3.) seems analogous to the combinations of *this morning*, *this night*, and the like.

The finest player . . between *this* and the Pyramide (BULW., Money 2, 5). — For references of time like *ere this*, *by this* see Vol. II. 1, p. 445. 392 and 480.

The denoting of the standing place of the speaker by *this* seems not to have been formerly familiar. *This* referred to the present, is also contained in Anglosaxon in the form *ðs þis* = *ðs nu*: Svå svå heo stent *ðs þis* (BASIL., Hexam. 6.).

That, which also appears beside *the*, whose neuter it originally was (Anglosaxon [*pe*], *seó* [*peó*], *pāu*), in the weakened meaning of the article, has in the course of time received, as a demonstrative pronoun, a more pregnant meaning than *this*, whose original plural it lays claim to. Partly interchanging with *this*, partly coming into opposition with it, it has besides preserved or adopted syntactical peculiarities, which are wanting to the former.

ca. That, like *this*, goes to the object immediately and sensuously present, likewise to the object named and one to be further determined. In the last case it is distinguished from *this*, by being able to be referred to a dependent sentence and to stand as the correlative of a relative, without absolutely presupposing the object as one already sensuously exhibited or present to the imagination.

"Why tender'st thou *that paper* to me with A look untender?" — [Pisanio offers a letter.] (SHAKSP., Cymb. 3, 4.) *That paper* within thy vest — Is that the words? (LEIGH HUNT, Leg. of Flor. 1, 2.) For *those hairs* of thine I ought to call thee father (1, 1.). Pray, who was he, *That fellow* yonder (ib.). "A scandalous lie, Evelyn!" — "On the strength of *that lie* I was put to school." (BULW., Money 2, 3.) Almost every historian of England has expatiated with a sentiment of exultation on the power and splendour of her foreign masters, and has lamented the decay of *that power and splendour* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I, 14.). *That sun* that warms you here, shall shine on me (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 1, 3.). The icy casing of *that thick despair* Which day by day gather'd o'er my heart (TALFOURD, Ion 1, 1.). With the last sentences compare the following: And *these two Mortimers*, That cross me thus, shall know I am displeas'd (MARLOWE, Edw. II. 1, 1.). I chide *these sinews* that are framed so tough Grief cannot palsy them (TALFOURD, Ion 1, 1.), in which the objects already determined for the imagination or intuition do not point to the dependent sentences as its integrant determinations.

The older language, which long preserves for *that*, formerly in use as a demonstrative for all genders, its ancient plural *tho*, frequently leaves us in doubt whether these forms appear with a weaker or a stronger accent. Old-Engl.: Sant Michel sal him quelle, In Papilon, *that mikel felle*, In *pat stede* in his aun stal (ASTICRIST 416.). Who is *that Hob over the walle*? (TOWNS. M. p. 15.) Above the vale, is the mount Olivete . . *That mount* is more highe than the cite of Jerusalem is (MAUNDEV. p. 96.). Godes man stant ther oute; sory is *that lawe* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 329.). Men seyn, that this croune is of thornes . . And I have on of *tho pre-cyouse* thornes (MAUNDEV. p. 13.). Evele mote he the! *that clerk*, That so geteth the silver (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 334.). Imparfit is *that pope* That al the world sholde helpe (P. PLOUGH. p. 421.). Conforte *tho crea-*

tures That muche care suffren (p. 284.). The transition of the demonstrative neuter into the other grammatical genders happens in Halfsax.: All o *patt wise* patt juw iss Bitacnedd purrh þa lakess (ORM. 1124. and often). Anglosaxon had also weakened the pronoun *se*, *seð*, *pāt* down into an article: in its full demonstrative emphasis it will have been rendered prominent by the accent: þā sæde he hire: For *pære spræce* gā (MARC. 7, 29.). Þonne hig eov ehtað on þysse byrig, fleoð on oðre, and þonne hig on *pære* eov ehtað, fleoð on þā þridan (MATH. 10, 23.). Þā gemetton hie sixtýne scipu vicinga and við þā gefuhton (SAX. CHR. 885.). Ær hine *þā men* onfundon. þe mid þam cyninge værun (755.). *þā þing* þe of þam men gāð (MARC. 7, 20.). — *This* appears not to have been formerly used as a mere correlative of a relative, although a relative sentence follows it. Old-Engl.: And *thise ersedekenes* that ben set to visite holi church, Everich fondeth hu he may shrewedelichest worche (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 326.). That ben *thise false fisciens* that helpen men to die (p. 333.). *þir clerkes* telles þat er wise, þat he o Juus king sal rise (ANTICRIST 35.). Thei ben folke of alle eyvle condiciouns. *Theise folk*, that I speke of, thei tylen not the lond (MAUNDEV. p. 64.). In that tyme there weren 3 Heroudes . . . *This Heroude*, of whiche I have spoken offe, was Heroude Ascalonite (p. 89.). Anglosax.: Ac sepe me nu, hvāt eover deórvyrðesta-vela and anveald sie . . ? Ic vāt þeah, þāt hit is *þis and-vearda lif* and *þes brosnjenda vela*, þe ve ær ymbe spræcon (BCEHT. 16, 1.).

- ββ. The reference backwards to a preceding substantive in combination with a more particular determination, when the object more particularly determined may or may not be opposed to another, is peculiar to *that*. The determination itself is mostly expressed by a prepositional member, but also by an adjective or an adverb.

The Huns who in the reign of Valens threatened the Roman empire, had, in a more early period, been formidable to *that of China* (GIBBON, Decl. 18.). The early fame of Gratian was equal to *that of the most celebrated princes* (19.). The name of these officers was *that of Tribune* (BULW., Rienzi 2, 8.). Shall . . The fundamental law of Nature Be over-rul'd by *those made after?* (BUTL., Ep. of Hud. 95.) For had it hit, The upper part of him the blow Had slit as sure as *that below* (Hud. 1, 2, 822.).

Old-Engl.: Ȝe schulle undirstonde that it (sc. this croune) was of jonkes of thee see . . For I have seen and beholden many tymes *that of Paris* and *that of Costantynoble* (MAUNDEV. p. 13.). The emperor of Costantynoble seythe that he hathe the spere heed: and I have often tyme seen it; but it is grettere than *that at Parys* (p. 14.). Compare the Middle-Highdutch: Die Gunthéres man unde ouch *die Dietriches* (NIBEL. 2236, 2.) One might regard *that* as assimilated to the Fr. *celui*, yet its use, at least with the pronoun used substantively, extends deep into Germanic antiquity. For the pronoun used substantively see further on, the Substantive with Prepositions at the end. Anglosaxon is certainly not fond of the abbreviation lying in this combination. Compare: Agyfað þam Cásere þā þing þe þās Cáseres synd, and Gode *þā þe Godes synd* (MARC. 13, 17.).

- γγ. *That*, like *this*, may also be used with the emphatic reference to an object neither sensuous nor named.

My husband's hand! *That drug-damn'd-Italy* hath out-craftied him (SHAKSP., Cymb. 3, 4.). Have they forgiven you in *that*

affair of young Melnotte? You had some hand in that notable device — eh? (BULW., *Lady of L.* 5, 1.).

I have not met with a similar employment of *that*, *tho* in ancient times, where *that* could not be regarded as an article. In sentences like: Why hast thou done me *that shame* and *vilonye*, For to late endite me, and wolves-heed me crye? (GAMLYN 715.) one may find something similar.

- δ. The forms of the singular *this* and *that* are met with in Modern-English, where those of the plural seem to be regarded by the substantive notion subjoined. To explain this phenomenon two points of view may be taken. On the one hand *this* and *that* are archaic plural forms, although not justified by original Anglosaxon formations; on the other, the plurals accompanying them may be treated as collective notions.

Till time shall alter *this our brutish shapes* (MARLOWE, *Doct. Faust* 4, 4.). I have maintained that salamander of yours, any time *this two and thirty years* (SHAKSP., *I Henry IV.* 3, 3.). He cannot draw his power *this fourteen days* (4, 1.). I have paid scot and lot there any time *this eighteen years* (BEN JONS., *Ev. Man* in *h. hum.* 3, 3.). *This twenty years* have I been with thee (GEN. 31, 38.). The very stones of their glens shall sing woe for it *this hundred years* to come (SCOTT, *R. Roy* 32.). I have not laughed *this two years* (TAYLOR A. READE, *Masks* 2, 1.). — Most of *that hundred and fifty* have been leaders of a legion (BEN JONS., *Poetast.* 3, 1.). Dauncing *that tenne mile* in three hours (KEMP, *Nine Daies Wonder* p. 12.). There's *that ten guineas* you were sending to the poor gentleman and his children in the Fleet (GOLDSM., *G. Nat. Man.* 1.). She had hardly said a word to him as to *that five thousand pounds* (TROLLOPE, *Framl. Parson.* 1, 13.). Neither do I see it as any crime, farther than ill manners, to differ in opinion from the majority of either or both houses; and *that ill manners* I have often been guilty of SWIFT, *Wagner's Gr.* p. 288.). To the modern apprehension of *a few* answers *that few*: M. possessed but very few friends . . and none of *that few* were a Bath (BULW., *likewise* p. 244.). Also in mentioning persons whose names we do not know or whom we will not name, we leave the postpositive *this* and *that*: She had been very successful in her guests on the occasion, having engaged the attendance of *my Lords This*, and *my Ladies That*, innumerable (WARREN, *Diary* 1, 22.) see p. 232.

With regard to the form *this* no further proofs are needed for Old-Engl. (see p. 230.); *that*, which as a relative pronoun, early referred to all genders and numerals (see Adjective sentence), is subsequently and more rarely combined, as a determinative demonstrative, with the plural: I one grave thei were leyde, *That hende knyghtes both two* (AMIS. A. AMIL. 2491.). In the modern language *this* and *that* appear most frequently before numerals, and may in this case be in a similar combination to a. Compare p. 208. In a few cases the more ancient usage may still glimmer through.

Conversely the plurals *these* and *those* may be here and there combined with a singular of the substantive, which, either by itself or in combination with a determination following it, awakens the idea of a plurality of individuals.

These kind of sufferings (SHERLOCK, Harrison Engl. Langu. p. 227.). When you, and *those poor number* saved with you, Hung on our driving boat (SHAKSP., Twelfth. N. 1, 2.). With the name of Whitefield or Westley, or some other such great man as a bishop, or *those sort of people* (FIELD., J. Andr. 1, 27.).

The habit of using the verb of the predicative in the plural with collective notions has occasioned the employment of the determinative. See Vol. II. 1. p. 140.

- ε. The demonstratives *yon, yond, yonder*, compare Goth. *jains*, Old-Highdutch *jener, ener*, Middle-Highdutch *jener, gener, ener* Old-Fri. *iene, gene*, Netherlandish *ghone*; see Vol. I. p. 302., answers to the Gr. *ἐξείνος* and chiefly denotes the remoter object. It is of slight synthetical interest.

From *yon blue heavens* above us (TENNYS. p. 128.). Can the false-hearted boy have chosen such a tool as *yonder fellow* who has just gone out? (DICKENS, M. Chuzzlew. 1, 1.) The form *yond* is lost in modern times, even Shakspeare rarely offers it as a pronoun in relation to *yon* and *yonder*.

Old-Engl. Inst. Vol. I. p. 302. We have above, p. 229. quoted *zond* from Ormulum, as opposed to *pis*, where this pronoun appears for the first time in our domain.

- ζ. *Same* sometimes appears as a strengthening of *this* and *that*, and even of *yon*; and it otherwise stands with the article *the* in the meaning of *idem*, ὁ αὐτός and, with the accent, renders prominent the same object, excluding the idea of another. See Vol. I. p. 302. In combination with the demonstrative pronouns, *same*, on the other hand, frequently recedes. *Self* and *selfsame* also occur beside the demonstratives.

Grey of Northumberland *this same* is yours (SHAKSP., Henry V. 2, 2.). She sate, but not alone; I know not well How *this same* interview had taken place (BYR., D. Juan 1, 105.). Yet many of the nobles fear *that same* Rienzi (BULW., Rienzi 2, 1.). Your witness must be *that same* despatch (Richel. 4, 2.). Last night of all, When *yon same* star, that's westward from the pole Had made his course (SHAKSP., Haml. 1, 1.). Get thee to *yon same* sovereign cruelty (Twelfth N. 2, 4.). *That self* bill is urged Which . . Was like, and had indeed against us pass'd etc. (Henry V. 1, 1.). For behold *this selfsame* thing, that ye sorrowed after a godly sort, what carefulness it wrought in you (2 Cor. 7, 11.) [= αὐτὸ τὸ αὐτὸ]. Compare also Vol. I. p. 303.

Same, like *self* and *selfsame*, formerly similarly employed, answer moreover to the notion of identity in the double meaning of numerical indiscriminateness as well as qualitative homogeneity: He and Beatrix are sleeping under *the same* roof (WARREN, Ten Thous. a-y. 3, 9.). Though the man Mirabeau is *one and the same* (CARL., Fr. Revol. 2, 1, 2.). They are all *the same*, whether they're bishops, or bonzes, or Indian fakirs (WARREN, Ten Thous. a-y. 3, 2.). As many fresh streams run in *one self* sea (SHAKSP., Henry V. 1, 2.). *One and the self-same* thing (Love's L. L. 1, 2.). Letters of the *self-same* tenor (Jul. Cæs. 4.

3.); often without the article: Birds of *self-same* feather (III Henry VI. 3, 3.).

Determinations like *same*, *selue*, *ilke* [idem] were also formerly added to *this* and *that*, when the weight of *that* is not to be always precisely measured. Old-Engl.: I sloghe my brother *this same day* (TOWNS. M. p. 17.). In *that same place*. seynt Peter forsoke oure Lord thries (MAUNDEV. p. 91.). And *jit* is the vesselle, where the watre was And there besyde *that same vescelle*, was seynt Stevenes buryed (ib.). Þorȝ treson *pis selue lond* first ȝef truage (R. OF GL. I. 59.). And in *that selue moment* Palamon is . . estward in that place (CHAUC., C. T. 2586.). *This ilke worthi knight* hadde ben also Somtyme with the lord of Palatye (64.) *Thilke, thulke* (see Vol. I. p. 500.) like *this, that ilke*, is also strengthened by *selue*: Anon in *pulke selue ȝer* . . þe kyng Wyllam Let enquiry etc. (R. OF GL. II. 373.). Of *thulke silve drie breth* whan hit es i-drawe an heȝ (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 135.). With *that ilke lance selve*, Kyng Richard slowgh kynges twelve (RICH. C. DE L. 5049.). In Hallsax.: *pis peos, þat* combines with *ilke*: *peos ilke corles* (LAJAM. I. 225.). *patt ilke mann* iss stijhenn wel Upp (ORM. 2783.). *The ilke, the selue, the same*, the last of which has now supplanted the others, early appear beside one another. Hallsax.: I *þon ilka ȝeære* (LAJAM. I. 225.). Habben *þa ilke læzen* þe stoden bi heore ældre dæwen (I. 254.). Anglosex.: Hyrdas væron on *þam ylcan rice* (LUC. 2, 8.). The Anglosaxon commonly presents *se ylca*, where the Gothic translation of the Bible puts *sama*. Old-Engl.: *þat pis lond neuer ywonne nere*, Bute yt þorȝ treson of the folk of *þe selue lond were* (R. OF GL. I. 56.). Til sche was slayn right in *the selge place* (CHAUC., C. T. 11706.). Hallsax.: I þe shafte iss sinne annd who All purrh *þe selfe shafte* (ORM. 18759.). Anglosex.: *þam sylfan gemete* þe ge metað eov bið gemeten (LUC. 6, 38.). — Old-Engl.: He toke him three greynes of *the same tree*, that his fadre eet the appelle offe (MAUNDEV. p. 11.). Ich be a wyoman . . *The self and the same*, sond from a greatt lordyng, And siche (TOWNS. M. p. 103.). It meets us first in Hallsax.: He mihhte makenn ewike menn þær off *þa same stanes* patt stodenn þær (ORM. 9913.). It seems that in Old-English *thilke* was identified with *the (that) ilke*. Comp.: All goth *that ilke way* (CHAUC. 3035. Tyrwh.). Al goth *thilke weye* (ib. WRIGHT),

7. The repetition of *this* and *that* before several substantives is particularly usual in their asyndetic connection, but they may also appear where asyndetically connected adjectives precede one and the same substantive. With the syndetic succession, on the contrary, nonrepetition is frequent, particularly where kindred or allied substantive notions occur.

This blessed spot, *this* earth, *this* realm, *this* England, *This* nurse, *this* teeming womb of royal kings . . *This* land of such dear souls, *this* dear, dear land (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 2, 1.). See, thro' *this* air, *this* ocean, and *this* earth, All matter quick (POPE, Essay on M. 1, 233.). — *This* kind, *this* due degree Of blindness, Heav'n bestows on thee (1, 283.). When languishing with lovesick eyes *That* great, *that* charming man you see (ADDIS., Rosam. 2, 6.).

Then shall *this hand and seal* Witness against us (SHAKSP., John 4, 2.). *This house and waters* of this new made nunnery Will much delight you (MARLOWE, Jew of M. 1, 2.). During *this winter and spring*, other parts of the kingdom had also been invested with war (HUME, Hist. of E. 57.). These are *that Aaron and Moses*, to whom the Lord said etc. (EXOD. 6, 26.). The decay of *that power and splendour* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 14.).

In Old-English repetition might be still more familiar: *These wormes, these moughtes, ne these mytes* Upon my perel fretith hem never a deel (CHAUC., C. T. 6142.). Bothe *this lord* and *this light* is longe ago I knew hym (P. PLOUGHM. p. 385.). Different substantives are, however taken as one whole: *This contree and lond* of Jerusalem (MACPHEE, p. 74.). *That shame and vilonye* (GAMELYN 715.) Nonrepetition is natural to Anglosax.: Nu þe is openlice gecƿæd þæt *þis* andvearde rice, and *þas* voruldgeseaða, and *þes* anveald of heora ægenum gecynde and heora ægnes gevealdes nāht gōde ne sint (BOETH. 16, 3.); but also: *þis is se Moises and Aaron* þam god bebēad etc. (EXOD. 6, 26.), comp. the Article.

The Interrogative Pronoun.

Which and *what* occur in an attributive connection with the substantive, and the latter has also in part supplanted the former.

a. *Which*, Anglosax. *hwylc*, *hwilc*, *hvelc*, Goth. *wileiks*, *welēiks*, πῶς, ποταπός and πηλίκος in the New Text, Old-Highdutch *hwelīh*, *hwioīh*, Middle Highdutch and Modern-Highdutch *welch*, is originally an adjective determination, which, even when standing alone, takes up a substantive notion. It asks about the quality of an object, which may also be apprehended as the summary of its distinctive marks. It has been particularly preserved in the last sense in the modern English tongue. It stands in direct and indirect questions. See Vol. I. p. 306.

Which man is it? (WEBST., V.) And send him word by me *which way* you go? (SHAKSP., John 5, 3.) We had better wait, and see on *which act* of the tragedy the curtain falls (TAYLOR A. READE, Masks 2.), so too with the anticipation of the substantive notion: *Which* is the first commandment of all? (MARK. 12, 28.) The reference of *which* may also go neutrally to other members than substantives: We live and die, But *which* is best, you know no more than I (BYR., D. Juan 7, 4.). The reference to the distinctive quality brings about the frequent connection of the pronoun with a member accompanied by *of*, by which the totality to which the single object belongs is denoted: Mr. Rich did me the honour to ask *which of the three* [sc. tragedies] we should accept — I told him, the shortest (TAYLOR A. READE, Masks 2.).

Old-English makes still more frequent use of *whilk*, *which*, *wuch* in the more general meaning of, how constituted: Mid *wuche* bodi dar Y come in þi siȝt ene? (R. or GL. I. 35.) To schip wende, Heo nuste toward *wuche* lond (I. 13.). *Which gift* of God had he for alle hy wyvys? (CHAUC., C. T. 5621.). Halfsax.: þu nast of *whulche* londe heo com heder liȝen ne *whulc* king is hire fader, ne *whulc* quen hire moder (LAȜAM. I. 97. sq.), To ræden . . . *wulche* weis heo mihten don (II 118.). Þatt Latin boc . . . uss kipepp *Whille* lac wass offredd forr þe preost, *Whille* forr þe bisscop offredd (ORM. 1130.). But the inquiry after the distinct individuals of a totality by *whilk* etc. was always close at hand. Old Engl.: Among hem . . . stryfe me myȝte se, *Wuche* mest maistres were (R. or GL. I. 40.). Halfsax.: To ræden . . . *wulc an of pissen children* heo mihten habben to kinge (LAȜAM. II. 118.). — Anglosax.: *Hwylce* vildeor gefehst þu? (THORPE, Anal. p. 104.) *Hwylce* cræft caust þu? (p. 105.) *Hwile* oðer peod is swā mære? (DECTER, 4, 7.) *Hwylcum* bigspelle wiȝmete we hit? (MARC. 4, 30.). On *hwylcum* anvealde dōst þu þas þing? (12, 28. cf. 33.). Lōca *hwylce* stānas hēr sint

(13, 1.). Þátt ic sylf mōste cēosan *hvilcne* ver ic vōlde (APOLLON. OF T. p. 21.). A partitive genitive, which the later language periphrases by *of*, occurs even here: Frignan ongan, on *hvilcūm* þāra beama bearn vealdendes . . hangen vāre? (ELEN 849.) The notion of *qualis* passes into *quis* and further into *aliquis*.

For the connection of *which* with *an*, *a* in the older language see p. 183.

- β. *What*, Anglosax. *hwāt*, *quid*, neuter in form, has penetrated into the domain of *which*, *qualis*, and been assigned in common to the different genders and members; it seems to have been transferred from the predicative sphere, in which it is referred to substantive notions of all sorts, to the attributive sphere, and not to have received the semblance of attributive congruence with substantives through the transformation of original genitives in its train. See Vol. I. p. 304. and Vol. II. 1. p. 42.

What manner of man is he? (SHAKSP., Twelfth N. 1, 5.) *What bloody man* is that? (Macb. 1, 2.) *What right* have you to be merry? (DICKENS, Christm. Car. 1.) *What hope*, or *joy* or *fear* is thine? (TENNYS. p. 34.) Why, *what old beldame* have we here? (PLANCHÉ, Fortunio 1, 2.) *What soldiers* were those that just now parted from you? (SHERID. KNOWLES, Virgin. 2, 1.) *What courtly gallants* Charm ladies most? (BULW., Richel. 1, 2.). The question may at the same time render emphatic the importance of the object: Behold . . *what carefulness* it wrought in you, yea, *what clearing* of yourselves, yea, *what indignation*, yea, *what fear* etc. (2 COR. 7, 11.). The notion is heightened by combination with the indefinite article, in which surprise especially makes itself known: O *what a rent* thou makest in my heart! (COLER., Picc. 5, 2.) *What a cold-blooded rascal* it is! (BULW., Money 3, 6.) Sentences of this sort assume the form of indirect interrogative sentences; see p. 183. In the reference to plurals, the enquiry after the variety, which assumes the form of the exclamation, may border on that after the fullness of the object: *What wits!* *What poets* dost thou daily raise! How frequent is thy use, how small thy praise! (BYR. p. 311.) Yet still from change to change we run. *What varied wonders* tempt us as they pass! (p. 313.).

Old-Engl.: He askede, *wat lond* yt were, & *wat folk* þer inne was? (B. OF GL. I. 45.) Fayn he wolde ywyte *What mon* þat child schulde be (I. 10.). *What forward* was that? (SEUYN SAGES 1547.) *What man* is your master? (GAMBYN 652.) Ye callen hym Crist, For *what cause* calleth me? (P. PLOUGHM. p. 397.). I ne wiste wher to ete Ne at *what place* (p. 425.). Signyfyinge by *what dep* he was to die (WYCL., Joh. 12, 33). Now listeneth . . *What best* is the cokadrille (ALIS. 6596.). *What* here very frequently takes the place of the Anglosaxon *hwylc*, as it is combined even in Hallsaxon, with substantives which disclose no trace of a genitive inflection: Nu ȝeo habbeþ ihord . . *wat word* hii hider sendeþ (LAȜAM. II. 628. modern text [*wuic word* old text]). Witen he wolde . . *wat ping* hit were þat ȝeo wimon hefde on wombe (LAȜAM. I. 12. old text) [*wat pinges* hit were modern text]. Þu shæwesst hemm *whatt len* Iss garrkedd hemm (ORM. 1518.). Godess enngell seȝde himm þær *Whatt name* he sholdde settenn Upponn þatt illke child (721.). In the ancient Germanic tongues, in Goth., Old-norse, Old-Highdutch and Middle-Highdutch, a genitive added to the interrogative is frequent; so too in Anglosaxon: þā geseah selfa si-gora valdend *hwāt* vās monna *mānes* on eorðan (CAEDM. 1265.). Ic þāt sec-

gan mæg, *hwæt* ic *gymða* gebād, siþpan ic upweōx, *nives* ððwe *ealdes*, nō mā þoune nu (GREIN, Aes. Poes. I. 245.). *Hwæt godes* magan ve secgan? (BOETH. 31, 1.) That in the expression *What news?* (SHAKSP., John 5, 5.) an Anglosaxon *hwæt* *nives* has been preserved is hardly to be assumed. Moreover, where in the Gothic translation of the Bible, the interrogative *was*, *wo*, *wa*, in the gender of the substantive in the singular, has the partitive genitive after it, *hwylc* often stands in the Anglosaxon translation, as MATH. 5 46. LUC. 20, 2. JOH. 18, 29.

We sometimes find *what* before *much*: *What much* can the place signify in the affair? (COLER, Picc. 1, 6.) It seems assimilated to *this much*: *This much* however I may add — her years were ripe (BYRON, Don Juan 5, 98.), for which see p. 113. *What much* might certainly answer to a naïve interrogative *how much* [comp. Anglosax.: *Hū mycel* scealt þu minum hlāforde? (LUC. 16, 5.)], as *what* in fact sometimes appears in Old-English as the adverbial determination of a succeeding adjective notion: *What done* man was Jhesus? (P. PLOUGHM. p. 387). whereby we are reminded of the interrogative *com fait*, opposed to the Old-French *si fait*, It. *si fatto*, Old-Highdutch *susketan*.

The Relative Pronoun.

The immediate combination of the relative pronoun *which* with a substantive notion, from which we discriminate the mere reference of the pronoun to such a notion, as also the attraction of the substantive by the dependent sentence, reserving these for the doctrine of the dependent sentence, always contains at the same time a reference backwards to a sentence or member of a sentence. That sentence or that member is represented, in form or substance, by the substantive added to the pronoun. In this combination *the which* still sometimes appears. See Vol. I. p. 306. and II. 2. p. 169.

a. A substantive notion is repeated alone or with an attributive determination.

The better part of *valour* is discretion; in *the which better part*, I have saved my life (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 5, 4.). By *the inward Sense* . . *which inward sense*, moreover is not permanent, like the outward ones (CARL., Fr. Revol. 1, 1, 2.). A mere adjective, serving to point to a preceding substantive, may also be introduced with *which*: *The train of* Martino Orsini was much more numerous than *that of* Adrian, *which last* consisted but of ten servitors (BULW., Rienzi 2, 3.).

This repetition of the substantive is not mere prolixity, but as occasioned in part by the striving after perspicuity, where *which* might be referred to a nearer substantive or, with the remoteness from its substantive, to the whole preceding sentence, and is to be regarded in part as a rhetorical rendering prominent of the substantive Old-Engl.: I hadde *letters* of the soudan . . In *the whiche letters* he commanded etc. (MAUNDEV. p. 82.). He had a *book* . . At *which book* he lough alway ful fast (CHAUC., C. T. 6251. cf. 6258.). He saugh a *mayde* walkyng him befor, of *which mayden* anon . . byraht hir maydenhed (6468.). Many ben *the weyes* espirituels . . of *whiche weyes*, ther is a ful noble way (p. 185. II.). In Old-English, where this attachment of the relative sentence recurs more frequently, it often serves agreeably to amplify the narrative. As *the which* points to the Old-Fr. *liquel* (see p. 169.), the recurrence of the substantive with the relative is to be reduced to an Old-French origin, supported by a similar repetition

of the Latin usage. Old-Fr.: *Liquez Poncat* li demandoit la maitie de une vigne (CHEVALIER, Mém. histor. sur la ville et la seigneurie de Poligny II. 562.). . . , *Lesqueux chastiaus et lesqueux apandises* nos volons et otroyons que nostre enfant . . . ayent et tiegnent por lor partie (Hist. de Bourgogne Dijon 1739. II. 27.). Latin: *Erant omnino duo itinera, quibus itineribus domo exire possent* (CAES. B. G. 1, 6.). Anglosaxon would here use a demonstrative pronoun.

- β. Or, one substantive is substituted for another, when a generic name usually takes the place of a proper name, or a more general notion than that of a narrower one

My brother's daughter's queen of *Tunis*; So is she heir of *Naples*; 'twixt *which regions* There is some space (SHAKSP., Temp. 2, 1.). The longest time that has been allowed to the forms of mourning . . . has been that of *a year*, in *which space* the body is commonly supposed to be mouldered to earth (W. TEMPLE, Lett.). — But the substitution may also occur in the shape of a metonymy: A Jew who smiles how full his *bags* are eramm'd, *Which money* was not got without my means (MARLOWE, Jew of M. Prol.).

Latin: *Amanus* Syriam a Cilicia dividit; *qui mons* erat hostium plenus sempiternorum (Cic., Att. 5, 20.).

- γ. To that is attached the reference of the substantive cited by *which* to non-substantive members of sentences and to entire sentences.

Communicating male and female light, *Which two great sexes* animate the world (MILT., P, L. 8, 150.). The Salle de Manège is still useful as a place of proclamation. For *which use*, indeed, it now chiefly serves (CARL., Fr. Revol. 3, 1, 1.). When thou fall'st . . . Must Edward fall, *which peril* heaven forbend (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 2, 1.). A strong built citadel Commands much more than letters can import: *Which maxim* had Phalaris observ'd, He had never bellow'd in a brazen bull (MARLOWE, Jew of M. Prol.). The clerk . . . tried to warm himself at the candle; in *which effort*, not being a man of a strong imagination, he failed (DICKENS, Christm. Car. 1.). "One, a Roman gentleman, Came from his Holiness's court." — "The same, doubtless, I saw this morning; by *which token* The other is the sneering amorist, Da Riva." (LEIGH HUNT, Leg. of Flor. 1, 3.) Henry . . . may be nothing more than a prisoner of war; in *which case*, I can liberate him on parole (COOPER, Spy 6.). In such cases the substantive contains the comprehension or the predicative determination of an action. But a substantive expressing a notion of time may also be referred back to an action, which is then regarded as a determination of time: Down they fell . . . down Into this deep, and in the general fall I also; at *which time* this powerful key Into my hand was given (MILT., P. L. 2, 771.).

In the reference to a series of sentences or members of sentences, which is comprehended by the neuter *all which*, the syntactical relation of both cannot be regarded as if *all*, used substantively and appositionally, comprised what preceded: . . . *All which*, as a method of proclamation, is very convenient (CARL., Fr. Revol. 3, 1, 1.). . . . *To all which* our poor Legislative . . . can oppose nothing,

by way of remedy, but mere bursts of parliamentary eloquence (2, 5, 7. init.). *All* is rather related adjectively to *which*, as the collocation of the words indicates, so that *all which* agrees syntactically with *the which*.

Old-Engl.: Now wolden som men say peradventure . . . *To which thing* shortly answeren I schal (CHAUC., C. T. 6655.). Yit wol thay sayn harm and murmure prively for verray despit; *whiche wordes* men clepe the de-veles Pater noster (p. 195. II.) Old-Fr. . . En tesmognage *des queils choses* nous avons ces presentes lettres saellees (WILLEMS, Chron. de J. van Heilu 1836. Preuves. p. 454.). Latin: Ac verbis quoque dilucidis utendum est: *quo de genere* dicendum est in praeceptis elocutionis (CIC., Invent. 1, 20.).

The Indeterminate Pronoun.

Those words which are comprehended under the name of indeterminate pronouns, with the exception of a few substantive forms like *aught*, *ought*, *naught*, which are to be referred thither, are, in themselves, of adjective nature. Their substantive use, which must be distinguished syntactically from their so-called absolute use with reference to an object already named, gives in general only names of persons; neuter substantives afford few, as *all*, *enough*, *much*.

one must be considered an indeterminate pronoun, where it has the nature neither of the unaccented article nor of the numeral, which expresses the opposite to plurality. But it rarely appears as an adjective pronoun in immediate combination with a substantive, with the meaning of the Latin *quidam*, *aliquis*, and then borders in part on the meaning of *some* or on that of the article *an*, *a*, as this borders on the definite numeral. See p. 177.

a. Thus *one* is found with substantives of time: Affliction may *one day* smile again (SHAKSP., Love's L. L. 1, 1.). *One day* a young lord insulted me (BULW., Money 2, 3.). Schiller, it appears, at *one time* thought of writing an Epic Poem upon Friedrich the Great (CARL., Freder. the Gr. 1, 1.). He woke *one morning* (WARREN, Now a. Then 1.). Poor Ayliffe was horrified *one evening* by being called upon (ib.). As an indefinite time is here indicated by *one*; so a person named, who cannot be or is not to be otherwise characterized by the speaker, is often introduced with *one*, which especially happens by reason of the unimportance of the person: I am the sister of *one Claudio* (SHAKSP., Meas. for Meas. 5, 1.). There dwells *one mistress* Quickly (Merry W. 1, 2.). There is *one Sidrophel* Whom I have cudgell'd (BUTL., Hud. 3, 3, 633.). To compel *one Simon* (MARK. 15, 21.). *One Master Jones* hath ask'd to see your lordship (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 3, 1.). Was there not *One Quentin Halworth* there? (4, 1.). A young man — *one Tittlebat Titmouse* (WARREN, Ten Thous a-y. 1, 1.).

In Old-English both sorts of combinations are found with the fuller form of the numeral, which is not indeed to be always distinguished from the unaccented form, although *a* is also current with determinations of time: That befel on *an day* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 3.). Byfel . . . in that sesoun on *a day* (CHAUC., C. T. 19.). Halfsax.: Ænes an *ane tide* an cuiht per com

ride (LAZAM. III. 175.). Even Anglosaxon uses *án* with the indefinite statement of time: *pá vās ánum dāge* geworden etc. (LUC. 20, 1.). Comp.: *On one of those days*. *One* has become established in modern times, especially with determinations of time in the accusative. *oon* was favoured in Old-English before proper names: *Oon Makometh*, a man, In mysbileve broughte Sarzens of Surree (P. PLOUGHM. p. 318.). *Oon Spek-yvel* bihynde (p. 416.). And wedded *oon Wanhope* (p. 434.). *Oon Ihesus* a justices sone (p. 335.). *Oon Latumys* Compleigned unto his felaw (CHAUC., C. T. 6339.). Thus the Romance languages also use the ancient numeral, It. Span. *un*, Port. *hum*, before names of persons. In olden times I miss similar English instances. Anglosaxon seems to avoid not merely the immediate combination of *án*, but also that of *sum*, which would here correspond, with a proper name: *Hig gefengon sumne Cyreniscne Simonem* (LUC. 23, 26. [ἐπιλαβόμενοι Σίμωνος τινος Κυρηναίου]). *Genýddon sumne veg-ferendne Simonem Cyrenneum* (MARC. 15, 21.) [ἀγαγέουσιν παράγοντά τινα Σίμωνα Κυρηναίον]. Comp.: *Gemétton hig ænne Cyreniscne man*... *pās nama vās Symon* (MATH. 27, 32.).

β. *One*, standing alone, which refers to a substantive, and appears in the singular and plural as the substitute for the substantive in the predicative, appositive or adverbial relation, is very familiar.

A man in all the world-new fashions flaunted . . *One*, whom the music of his own vain tongue Doth ravish (SHAKSP., *Love's L. L.* 1, 1.). Most like *a noble lord* in love, and *one* That had a royal lover (CYMB. 5, 5.). Her marriage was not *one* of love (HOOK, *Jack Brag* 1.). If my absence takes *A friend* from thee, it leaves *one* with thee — Hope! (SHERID. KNOWLES, *Virgin*. 5, 3.) “You must be a close observer, Sir.” — “Necessity has made me *one*.” (COOPER, *Spy* 4.) “Now for *a horse*.” — “Behold *one* in a trice.” (PLANCHÉ, *Fortunio* 1, 2.) “Canst match me her Amongst our *city maids*?” — “Nor court *ones*.” (SHERID. KNOWLES, *Hunchb.* 2, 2.)

One frequently appears, accompanied by an adjective, as the representative of a preceding substantive: Our contract is *an old one* (DICKENS, *Christm. Car.* 2.). The moral of the Jesuits' story I think as *wholesome a one* as ever was writ (THACKERAY, *Hist. of H. Esm.* 2, 4.). As her natural *face* decays, her skill improves in making the *artificial one* (GOLDSM., *G. Nat. M.* 1.). Of all my friends . . you are the *only one* I esteem (BULW., *Money* 2, 3.). A castle after all is but *a house* — The *dullest one* when lacking company (SHERID. KNOWLES, *Hunchb.* 4, 1.). You gave the first *blow* and the *hardest one* (1, 1.). Will his vouchers vouch him no more of his *purchases*, and *double ones* too, than the length and breadth of a pair of indentures? (SHAKSP., *Hamlet*. 5, 1.) Thou must take *measures*, *speedy ones* — must act (COLER., *Picc.* 3, 1.). A change Of *dresses* will suffice. She must have *new ones* (SHERID. KNOWLES, *Hunchb.* 3, 2.).

One is also found, with a few indeterminate pronouns, in the reference of them to a substantive: He was conscious of a thousand and odours floating in the air, *each one* connected with a thousand thoughts (DICKENS, *Christm. Car.* 2.). If each smooth *tile* had been a blank at first . . there would have been a copy of old Marley's head on *every one* (1.). The sempstress had done nothing to the

gown; yet raves and storms my mistress at her . . . and orders her, straight, to make *another one* (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 2, 1.). Pray heaven it be not so that you have *such a man* here; but 'tis most certain your husband's coming . . . to search for *such a one* (SHAKSP., Merry W. 3, 3.). See γ .

The language in part does not need the filling up of the gap, which would leave a substantive to be repeated in thought; and has other means of keeping the reference clear. The insertion of *one*, *ones* is least requisite, where an article with an adjective renders the reference distinct. Comp.: O excellent device! *was there ever heard a better?* (SHAKSP., Two Gentlem. 2, 1.) Her favourite *science was the mathematical* (BYR., D. Juan 1, 13.). *The languages, especially the dead* (1, 40.). I loved my black *regions*, nor panted for *new* (Hours of Idlen. p. 305.). Stern rites and *sad* (BRYANT p. 38.). Indeterminate pronouns also of themselves need no such support.

The substitution of *one* for a preceding substantive has been habitual from the fourteenth century, but has become by far more frequent in modern times: 3ef thou sytte by a worthy *mon*, Then thy selven thou art *won* (HALLIW., Freemas. 737.). Have ye a *figure* . . . ? Ther have we non, But whan us liketh we can take us *on* (CHAUC., C. T. 7041). We women may ~~wax~~ alle *ille husbondes*. I have *oone*, bi Mary! that lowsyd me of my bandes (TOWNS. M. p. 25.). It also stands accompanied by an adjective which determines the preceding substantive: That I have the moste stedefast *wyf*. And ek the *meekest oon* that berith lyf (CHAUC., C. T. 9425.). The combination of *one* with an adjective and the preceding article *an* is the more remarkable phenomenon, little remarked in Old-English (see p. 189.), whereas *a* is often conjoined with *one* (see p. 185.). Of combinations with indeterminate pronouns in a reference backward, *swylk on* is to be remarked: *The chayer was charbocle ston, Swylk on ne saw they never non* (RICH. C. DE L. 89.). Others, as those from *each one*, are especially frequent in apposition. See Apposition. The most ancient language hardly affords support for the usage touched upon. The employment of the plural form in such a reference is decidedly modern.

- γ . *One*, used substantively, appears partly alone, partly accompanied by attributive determinations.

When standing alone it denotes, as a pronoun, a single individual not denoted more particularly, when the speaker nevertheless may have a definite person in his eye, or the individual is to be thought as generalized: I have heard a sonnet begin so to *one's* mistress (SHAKSP., Henry V. 3, 7.). "I know who loves him." — " . . . I warrant, *one* that knows him not " (Much Ado 3, 2.) To put *one* in mind of faults in the truest sign of friendship (FIELD., The Temple Beau 1, 1.), Is *one* well Because *one's* better? (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 5, 1.) A quiet conscience makes *one* so serene (BYRON, D. Juan 1, 83.). For at best, cried he, it is but divulging *one's* own infamy (GOLDSM., Vic. 24.). To see with *one's* own eyes men and countries is better than reading all the books of travel in the world (THACKER., Hist. of H. Esm. 2, 5.). The opposition of *one* to a plurality may then be readily made prominent: It was well remarked by *one* (or perhaps by *more*) that misfortunes do not come single (FIELD., T. Jones 6, 7.).

A accompanied by an adjective or participle, *one* becomes the bearer of the substantive notion: As *one* *disarmed* (MILT., P. L. 10, 945.). To *one* *so dear* . . as Sir Proteus (SHAKSP., Two Gentlem. 2, 7.). The story of *one* *so true and tender* (IRVING, Sk. B. The Broken Heart). See p. 182. An adverbial determination may also be substituted for the attributive one: How happy is my friend, to be the favourite of *one* *with such sense* to distinguish merit (GOLDSM., G. Nat. M. 4). As *one* precedes an attributive determination, so it also follows one, and then takes the plural form: Neither wilt thou suffer thine *Holy One* to see destruction (Ps. 16, 10.). The *Holy One* (MILT., P. L. 6, 359.). The *Evil One* (9, 463.). Lady Lufton, who regarded them as children of the *Lost one* (TROLLOPE, Framl. Parson. 1, 2.). Thou art one of the *false ones* (SHAKSP., Cymb. 3, 6.). That the poor may fall by his *strong ones* (Ps. 10, 10.). The *knowing ones* (DICKENS, Christm. Car. 1.). I was not one of the *lucky ones* (BULW., Lady of L. 5, 1.). The addition of *one*, *ones* to the vocative is not uncommon: *Young one*, Inform us of thy fortunes (SHAKSP., Cymb. 4, 2.). Why dost thou tremble, my *pretty one*? (BULW., Rienzi. 1, 4.). Come *little ones* (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 5, 5.). *Mighty ones*! Love and Death! Ye are the strong in this world of ours (MRS. HEMANS p. 220.).

As in the latter cases the pronoun is mostly added pleonastically, so in the substantive use of indeterminate pronouns in the singular it mostly appears pleonastically, although some take it by preference, and some even receive *a one*, as *many* and *such*. Here belong *no one*, *some one*, *any one*, *each one*, *every one* (an, the) *other one*, *many a one*, *such a one*. Attributive determinations may also be added to these combined pronouns: My part of death *no one* so true Did share it (SHAKSP., Twelfth N. 2, 4.). *No one* can insult her now (BULW., Money 2, 3.). *Some one* intent on mischief (MILT., P. L. 6, 502.). Last night when *some one* spoke his name (TENNYS. p. 96.). She thought *some one* else might be locked in (OXENF., Twice Killed 2.). I am enjoin'd by oath t'observe three things; First never to unfold to *any one* Which casket 'twas I chose (SHAKSP., Merch. of V. 2, 9.). There was one portly person, who bowed lower than *any one* (THACKER., Hist. of H. Esq. 1, 4.). Or hath *any one* living attempted to explain what the modern judges . . mean by that word *low*? (FIELD., T. Jon. 5, 1.) Thanks to all at once, and to *each one* (SHAKSP., Macb. 5, 7.). *Every one* doth call me by my name (Com. of Err. 4, 3.). Let *every one* please themselves (KINGSLEY, Two Years ago 1 Introd.). The one will swim, where drowns *the other one* (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 2, 2.). *Many a one* of them owes his establishment in life to Mr. Dudleigh (WARREN, Diary 1, 22.). When *such a one* as she, such is her neighbour (SHAKSP., As You Like It. 2, 7.). No other but *such a one* as he (COLER., Picc. 1, 4.).

One, used substantively, is not found in the older language in all the cases cited, yet *one* standing alone, in the meaning of *aliquis*, *quidam*, without generalization, is to be pursued into Anglosaxon Old-Engl.: Hof on ich herde saie, Ful modi mon and proud (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 2.). Right sua sal he pe folk bigile Als he did wit sli craft til an (ARTICORIST 178.).

Oon that *much* *we* wroughte, *Sleuthe* *was* his name (P. PLOUGHM. p. 434.). And so befelle. that *on* wratthed him, and with his owne propre swerd he was slayn (MAUNDEV. p. 37.). Halſax.: Seotſſen com *an* þe leouede wel (LAJAM. I. 300.). Ða com *an* of his cunne, Carre wes iſaten (III. 155.). The idea of unity, as opposed to that of plurality, here decidedly recedes, and *an* may be thus explained in some passages even in Anglosaxon: þær þā ænne betæhton giddum gearu snottorne. þam vās Judas nama, cenned for cneómāgum (ELENE 584.).

Although a pleonastic *one* is not unfamiliar to the ancient language, (see p. 185.), the substantive use of an adjective by a prepositive or a following *one* is in general to be deemed more modern. No one would assume a postpositive *an* would be found here. Comp.: Ic vāt eardfāstne ænne standan deāfne dumban (GREIN, Ags. Poes. II. 393.).

Indeterminate pronouns used substantively with *one* after them have been early naturalized in a few forms. Old-Engl.: *Uchon* sculle calle other fellows by cuthe (HALLIW., Freemas. 51.), For my love . . Love hem *echone* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 48.). Halſax.: He nimeþþ mikell gom Whatt gate *illc an* himm ledeþþ (ORM. 15856.). Old-Engl.: *Muche* moore is to love Of hym that *swich oon* taketh (P. PLOUGHM. p. 289.). With *suche one* as yow (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 85.). Halſax.: þatt *swille an* sholde muþhenn beon Shippennd off alle shaftte (ORM. 11595.). Old-Engl.: And nu þar es wel *man an* (ANTICHRIST 24.). Ful *many oon* at that tyme felth in his herte ful wikkedly (CHAUC., C. T. p. 197. l.). See Apposition.

For *no one* no analogy is found in early times; analogy seems in *no* to demand *none* unaccented, not *no*, Anglosax. *nā* = *never*. Thus two *no one* would answer to *a one*.

no, *none*, Anglosax. *nān*, comp. Old-Highdutch *nihein*, *nehein*, *nohein*, Middle-Highdutch *nehein*, *nechein*, Modern-Highdutch *kein*, also early occurs in the abbreviated form, which may be compared with *a*, *o*, arising from *an*, and which, analogously to the latter, only appears supported by a following substantive notion, with or without a more particular determination, although not unaccented. In the singular it is not far removed from the combination of *not an* (*a*), although *not* is able to lean more closely on the verb of the sentence, whereas *no* touches the substantive with the absolute weight of the negation.

α. In general the adjective negation attached to the subject, to the predicative substantive or to the object, is chosen, if the exclusion of the substantive notion in its whole extent by the notion of the activity more occupies the mind than the negation of the notion of the activity in reference to the former. We may also often see, in the interchange of *not* with *no* before a substantive notion, an attraction of the negation by it, having no further logical reason. The use of the determinative in the plural belongs to the earliest times.

This is *no answer* . . To excuse the current of thy cruelty (SHAKSP., Merch. of V. 4, 1.). Here is a mourning Rome, . . *No Rome* of safety for Octavius yet (Jul. Cæs. 3, 1.). They have *no wine* (JOHN 2, 3.). *No eye* at all is better than an evil eye (DICKENS, Christm. Car. 1.). It is *no sin* in kings to seek amusement (BULW., Richel. 4, 1.). You are *no soldier* (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 4, 1.). I am *no base intriguer* (BULW., Richel. 5, 2.). Have you *no ears*? (SHAKSP., Ant. a. Cleop. 3. 11.) We are

no spies (GEN. 42. 31.). *No Æsculapian drugs* . . E'er bore the healing which that scrap of parchment Will medicine to Ambition's flagging heart (BULW., Richel. 5, 1.). He translated or versified two Psalms . . , but they raise *no great expectations* (JOHNSON, Lives 1.).

As *no* is attached immediately to an attributive adjective, so is it also to kindred determinatives, like *such* and *other*, but also to determinate and indeterminate numerals, like *one*, *two*, *few*, even where used substantively: There's *no such thing* (SHAKSP., Macb. 2, 1.). If you have formed *no other and inseparable attachment*, I could wish to suggest your choice (BULW., Money 2, 3.). *No other* but such a one as he can serve the army (COLER., Piccol. 1, 4.). *No one* so true (SHAKSP., Twelfth N. 2, 4.). In short *no three persons* could be more kindly received (FIELD., J. Andr. 4, 1.). Where all deserve And stand expos'd by common peccancy To what *no few* have felt (COWPER p. 186.).

The interchange of *no* with *not an (a)* in the singular is manifested by instances like the following: *Not a man depart* (SHAKSP., Jul. Cæs. 3, 2.). Every offence is *not a hate* at first (Merch. of V. 4, 1.). I . . had *not an ear* to hear my true time broke (Rich. II. 5, 5.). Lose *not a moment* (BULW., Lady of L. 1, 3.). My friend this is *not a legal condition* (Money 2, 3.). The mere *not*, where *no* might combine with a following substantive, is attached to the verbal notion: How dull is he that *hath not sense* to see What lies before him (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 4, 1.).

The weight of the negative *no* is moreover different: ordinarily strongest with the subject, or, generally at the beginning of the sentence, but also in other members, so that it may be explained partly by *not one*, partly by *not any*, like as the Anglosaxon *nân* and *nænig* touch each other closely and interchange. Old-English makes no sensible difference between the forms *no (na)* and *none (noon, non)*, frequently accompanied by the negation *ne (no)* before the substantive notion; a succeeding vowel or an initial *h* retains the final *n (ne)* of the pronoun longer. Old-Engl.: Whan *no defeaute* nys (R. or Gl. I. 36.), Heo *no koupe of no fikelyng* (I. 30.). Such *qualité nath no man* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 133.). *Ȝif his wif have no child*, thei brenne hire with him (MAUNDEV. p. 171.). Mighte *no deeth* hym for-do (P. PLOUGH. p. 399.). I kan *no Frenssche* (p. 91.). *No wyn* ne drank sche (16328.). Es *na mete* þai sal yern mare (ANTICRIST 356.). It es *na lands* þat man can neven (185.). *Non mercy* per nys (R. or Gl. II. 370.) Hic nadde *non poer* (II. 372.). *Noon deynteth morsel* passid thorough hir throte (CHAUC., C. T. 16321.). He nath of hire *non hevynisse* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 134.). Shal *noon ale* after mete Holde me thennes (P. PLOUGH. p. 104.). Myghte *noon armure* it lette, Ne *none heighe walles* (p. 24.). I have *non Englisch* digne Unto thy malice (CHAUC., C. T. 5298.). Halfsaxon, which frequently presents inflective forms of *nân*, especially in the singular, shews a few traces of its abbreviation: þu . . nært *nunes monnes* sune (LAȜAM. III. 228.). Ne mihte heo of þan walle ænne stan falle *no mid nare strengþe* (II. 393.). Annd tatt he noht ne fell, ne laȝ; I *nane depe sinness* (ORM. 12838.). The abbreviation into *na* stands isolated: purh *nane* cunnes spelle ne cuðe heom *na mon* telle (LAȜAM. III. 9.). Nes næwere *na mon* iboren (II. 75.). Null ich aȝen *na lond* (II. 370.). *Na god* heo ne bi-ȝeteð (I. 144.). *Na* before a comparative is doubtful: þu ne miht noht ledenn her *Na bettre lif* onn eorþe (ORM. 1624.). In Anglosaxon the employment of *nân* is frequent: Assan . . ofer þāne *nân man* gyt ne sāt

(MARC. 11, 2.). *Þæt nān mærra man . . betvux wife and vere wurde æonenod* (MENOLOG. 161.). *Ne mæg nān þeoṽ tvām hlāfordum þeoṽjan* (LUC. 16, 13.). *Þæt ic ne funde nenne gylt on hym* (JOH. 19, 4.). *God næf̃ nān angin* (HOMIL. in ETTM. 72, 49.). *Ne vorhte Johannes nān tād̃n* (10, 41.). *He ne andvyrde mid nānum vordē* (MATTH. 27, 14.). *Nābbe ve nāne hlāfas?* (MARC. 8, 16.).

The combination of *no*, *none* with the adjective and substantive *such* and *other* is ancient. Old-Engl.: *Speke no siche wordes* (TOWN. M. p. 40.). *Ne woldi nout That ich were to chapitre i-brout, For none selke werkes* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 8.). By kynde, and by noon other lore (CHAUC., C. T. 16682.). *Ther is noon other name under heven* (p. 190. I). *For wille ich the love, ne non other* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 6.). Hallsax.: *þe king hefde ænne broðer, næfde he nenne oðer* (LAȜAM. II. 24.). *Ne toc ȝho wiþþ nan oðer* (ORM. 7668.). Anglosax.: *Nan sȳlc ne cȳom ænig oðer . . bryð* (CYNEVULF, Crist 290. Grein). *Of nānum oðrum riadōme* (HOMIL. in ETTM. 72, 35.). *Gif ic nāne veorc ne vorhte on him, þe nān oðer ne vorhte* (JOH. 15, 24.).

The interchange of *no*, *not an* (*a*) or of the simple negation, without prejudice to the sense, is shewn, for instance, in: Anglos.: *ic hæbbe nenne man þæt me dō on þone mere* (JOH. 5, 7.). Old-Engl.: *I haue not a man etc.* (WYCL. ib.). Mod-Engl.: *I have no man etc.* (ib.). Anglosax.: *Hig nabbað vin* (JOH. 2 3.). Old-Engl.: *þei haue not wijn* (WYCL. ib.). Mod-Engl.: *They have no wine* (ib.).

- β. The form *none* has been preserved where the pronoun rests upon no substantive following it, but supposes its repetition either isolated or combined with another, attributive determination. Yet it also stands, where it unites attributively with its preceding substantive. The latter case occurs more rarely in the modern language, as in: *To call that thing an art, Which art is none* (SHERRID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 4, 1.); the former is frequent: *He walked through dry places, seeking rest, and findeth none* (MATTH. 12, 43.). *Seek out his wickedness till thou find none* (PS. 10, 15.). *God keep me from false friends! but they were none* (SHAKSP., Rich. III. 3, 1.). "Speak comfort to me . ." — "I have none to give." (DICKENS, Christm. Car. 1.) *Vicars of the Pope have high spiritual authority, none temporal* (BULW., Rienzi 2, 8.).

The preservation of the full form in these cases rests upon the sharper accenting of the word, which its position occasions, partly from grammatical, partly from rhetorical necessity. With the syntactically immediate attachment to the previous substantive, the position of *none* at the end of the sentence, with greater emphasis, is familiar to Old-English: *Mon fonde heo non* (R. OF GL. I. 14.). *Frendes had he noon* (GAMELYN 344.). *Metc had he noon* (392.). *Ne ued hath noon to legge* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 426.). *Same ne vilani* *Ne bede I thi non* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 6.). *Colours ne know I non* (CHAUC., C. T. 11035.). The postposition of the pronoun in general, which cannot be without emphasis, is early met with. Hallsax.: *Nusten heo godne ræd nenne* (LAȜAM. III. 75.). *Næuede he care nenne* (II. 12.). *Næs næuere king nan þa etc.* (II. 563.). Anglosax.: *Nis þær . . veatācen nān* (GREIN., Ags. Poes. I 217.).

It likewise stands with a reference backward. Old-Engl.: *Ne con ich saien non falsdom Ne non I ne shal* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 4.). *Thei wenen, that thei han barwe; and thei have non* (MAUNDKV. p. 51.). *And forbad hem alle debat, That noon were among hem* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 410.). *Swich a conquerour That gretter was ther non* (CHAUC., C. T. 864.). *A corouse, the kyng hath noon better* (p. 28.). Hither belong cases such as are above cited. Hallsax.: *He is his broðer, for næf̃ he nenne oðer* (LAȜAM. I. 32.).

A *nān* referring back is in many cases needless in Anglosaxon, the negative sentence, without more, in many cases supplying a preceding substantive: He gæð . . . sēcende *reste*, and he ne gemēt (MATTHE. 12, 43.).

- γ. *None*, used substantively, is frequently used of persons, sometimes too in the plural, it hardly occurs as a neuter, save before a partitive member with *of*.

Then *none* have I offended (SHAKSP., Jul. Cæs. 3, 2.) *None*, but those who have experienced it can form an idea of the delicious throng of sensations etc. (IRVING, Sk. B. The Voyage). To fear each other, fearing *none* beside (COWP. p. 123.). *None* want an excuse (ROGERS, It. For Trav.) See below, the Indeterminate Pronouns in the Partitive Relation.

Old-Engl. *none* stands of persons: That hem *noon* ne faille (P. PLOUGH. p. 36.). Halfsax.: *Nan* neoren swa kene þat heom neh comen (LAJAM. III. 33.). Anglosax.: Ne cymð *nān* tō Fāder būton purh me (JOH. 14, 6). Nys *nān* þe on minum namau māgen vyrce (MARC. 9, 39. cf. 9, 9.). I have not found the plural used substantively in Anglosaxon. The neuter *none* is not foreign to the older tongue. Old-Engl.: Some bowes ben leved, And some bereth *none* (P. PLOUGH. p. 300.). Anglosax.: þam . . . vās *nān* to gedāle (CAEDM. 1395).

Some, Anglosax. *sum*, Goth. *sums*, Old-norse *sumr*, Old-Highd., Old-Fr. *sum*, quidam, aliquis, nonnullus, which in the singular, in its adjective use, has shared its ancient domain with the article *an*, *a* (see p. 177.), as it gives place to *one* in its employment as a substantive, agrees in a syntactical regard with the Gr. τις, by being adopted to denote qualitative as well as quantitative indefiniteness. See Vol. I. p. 310.

- α. It appears adjectively, immediately attached to a substantive notion, with names of persons and things, when the person or thing appears, partly as not further known, or as designedly not more particularly denoted, partly as unimportant or trifling in kind, measure or number.

Every day, *some sailor's wife*, The master of *some merchant* . . . Have just our theme of woe (SHAKSP., Temp. 2, 1.). The fire-place was an old one, built by *some Dutch merchant* long ago (DICKENS, Christm. Car. 1.). It had been built by a mercantile bachelor for *some fair Rosamond* (BULW., Maltrav. 1, 4.). We must all die *some day* (TROLLOPE, Framl. Parson. 1, 18.). Unless thou couldst put on *some other shape* And not be Richard (SHAKSP., Rich. III. 4, 4.). *Some serene* blast me! (BEN JONS., Fox 3, 5.) He had perhaps given *some offence* by visiting Galileo (JOHNSON, Lives 1.). He became presently a person of *some little importance* (THACKER., Hist. of H. Esm. 1, 10.). In *some such a way* now the depth of this pure devotion . . . smote upon him (2, 6.). You had *some hand* in that notable device — eh? (BULW., Lady of L. 5, 1.) A second who stood at *some distance* (GOLDSM., Vic. 27.). Quiet enough he was for *some time* (THACKER., Hist. of H. Esm. 2, 15.). *Some hunger* too . . . the people feels (BYRON, Don Juan 9, 6). Give me *some wine* (SHAKSP., Ant. a. Cleop. 4, 13.). To buy thee Poor *some meat and drink* (DICKENS, Christm. Car. 1.). We see how the qualitative and the quantitative determination pass into each other

in the singular, and are distinguished only by the nature of the substantives, how far also substantives denoting extension in space and time, as well as names of materials and notions admitting determinations of degree, are thereby determined. As opposed to *other*, *some* goes to the distinction, both in kind and in number, of an object which has been left undetermined: By *some device* or *other* (SHAKSP., Com. of Err. 1, 1.). From *some quarter* or *other* (THACKER., Hist. of H. Esm. 1, 6.). Who . . hath . . not worshipped *some idol* or *another*? (3, 6.).

With the plural the indefinite multitude of objects occupies the mind, when the restriction of number comes more or less to the front: *Some women* bear farther than this (THACKER., Hist. of H. Esm. 1, 9.). She was related to many respectable, and to *some noble families* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. II. 206.). A trifling multitude is rendered emphatic by the combination with *few*: *Some few* were of my mistress' side (THACKER., Hist. of H. Esm. 1, 7.), see *few*. In the opposition to *other*, the unimportance of the multitude does not come out in the plural.

But before substantives determined or to be conceived quantitatively *some* appears in the singular or plural, not so much to mark the fraction of a quantum, as the quantum itself, as indefinite, inexact, or approximate: My father had the full view of your flourishing style *some hour* before I saw it (BEN JONS., Ev. Man in his Hum. 3, 1.). About *some half hour* hence (SHAKSP., Cymb. 1, 2.). If I may counsel you, *some day*, or two, Your highness shall repose you at the Tower (Rich. III. 3, 1.). I would detain you here *some month* or two (Merch. of V. 3, 2.). *Some dozen* Romans of us (Cymb. 1, 7.). Bastards, *some dozen*, or more (BEN JONS., Fox 1, 1.). *Some five and twenty years* (SHAKSP., Rom. a. Jul. 1, 5.). *Some six years* ago or more (CARL., Fred. the Gr. 5, 5.). *Some four miles* distant from one of our northern manufacturing towns . . was a wide and desolate common (BULW., Maltrav. 1, 1.). Surrounded by *some fifty or sixty fathoms* of iron cable (DICKENS, Christm. Car. 1.). All the ladies save *some twenty score* (BYRON, D. Juan 8, 130.). If here *an*, *a* should appear instead of *some* in most cases, no essential difference, will arise. *Some* and *an* are distinguished syntactically by the formers answering, except with collective numbers, to an original plural form.

Some in its use answers in general to that of the most ancient times, although in the singular, in denoting a single person or thing, as such, especially before the substantive not otherwise determined, it has given place to the indefinite article. Old-Engl.: Til that sche fynde *som man* hire to chepe (CHAUC., C. T. 5850). Y-spilt that myghte be spared And spended on *som hungry* (P. PLOTCHM p. 99.). Aungeles . . Hadden joye *som tyme* (p. 281). *Som del* of Engelond ysey (R. or GL I. 44.). Nou is ther water her an urthe more than of londe, For *sum* see with-oute mo is more (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 137.). Halfsax.: pis is *sum riche king* . . þe wolde . . uaren to *summe londe* (LAFAM. II. 78.). Ræd me *sumne ræd* (II. 361.). Icc wile shæwenn þuw *Summ ping* (ORM. 3363). Do me *summ god* (5217.). Anglosax.: Hym ægæn arn *sum man* (LEC. 8, 27.). *Sum dēma* vās on *sumere ceastre* (18, 2.). *Sume dāge* eode he be strande (APOLLON. OF T. p. 7.). *Sum man* vās *sun fāc* deād, and eft tō life lichoman ārās (BEDA 5, 13.).

The plural is similar. Old-Engl.: Right so fareth God by *some riche* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 281.). The bacoun . . That *som men* fecche in Essex (CHAUC. D. T. 5799.). Hallsax.: *Sume wise menn* (ORM. 11214.). Anglos.: þā cōmon . . *sume boceras* (MARC. 7, 1.). Compare the Indeterminate Pronoun in the Partitive Relation.

Some, as the expression of an approximate determination, certainly remains true to the radical meaning, yet similar instances from olden times have escaped us. With numbers it operates like the French adverbial *quelque*: Il y a *quelque soizante ans* (ACAD.), with which however it has nothing common in its origin. Expressions like: "How far be it to the town?" "Five mile or *some* . . ." — Two or *some*, twentie or *some* are dialectical, in statements of numbers, in Northamptonshire and elsewhere, in which indeed we may at present believe *some* to be an adverb, as in the popular expressions: It is *some* late; it war *some* wet. *Some* has manifestly been preserved from Anglosaxon, where the adjective *sum* is attached with the same effect to quantitative determinations: Gegaderodon . . *sum hund* scipa, and fōron sūð ymb ūtan, and *sum fēdvertig* scipa norð ymb ūtan (SAX. CHR. 894.). Þā væron hi *sume tēn gear* on þam gevinne (BOETH. 38, 1.). Compare Gr.: Ἐς διακοσίους τινας αὐτῶν ἀπέτειναν (THUCYD. 3, 111.).

- β. In relation to a preceding substantive, *some* may stand in the singular and plural.

A sower went out to sow his *seed*: and as he sowed, *some* fell by the way-side; and it was trodden down (LUKE 8, 5.). *Some seeds* fell by the way-side . . *Some* fell upon strong places (MATTH. 13, 4. sq.). "I thought the boy was to carry off all the prizes at Oxford." — "I carried off *some*." (BULW., Maltraw. 1, 12.).

Old-Engl.: *Some maner* of homicidie is spirituel and *some* bodily (CHAUC., C. T. p. 197. l.) *Sume men* taken the see at Gene, *some* at Venyce (MAENDEV. p. 54.). He nath not every *vessel* ful of gold; *Som* ben of tre (CHAUC., C. T. 5682.). Hallsax.: Itt hafeþþ fele boþhess, Acc *sume* geþmenn to þe fir (ORM. 9974.). Anglosax.: And eft he him sende ðerne *peðv* . . And eft he him *sumne* sende (MARC. 12, 4. sq.). Þā *flugelas* sōðlice þe on fīodum vunjað syndon flaxfōte . . *Sume* beoð langseorede.

- γ. *Some* is used substantively with regard to persons in the plural, the modern tongue commonly gives the singular *one* as its support, see p. 243. It often forms the contrary to *others*, more rarely to *some* repeated, as is the case with the adjective form.

It was said of *some*, that John was risen from the dead (LUKE 9, 7.). *Some* have considered the larger part of mankind in the light of actors (FIELD., T. Jon. 7, 1.). *Some* never seem so wide of their intent, As when returning to the theme they meant (COWP. p. 136.). While *some* are . . ready to allow, that the same thing which is impossible may be yet probable, *others* have so little historic or poetic faith etc. (FIELD., T. Jon. 8, 1.). *Some* say, he is with the emperor of Russia; *other some*, he is in Rome (SHAKSP., Com. of Err. 3, 2.).

As to how far a neuter substantive may occur see the Indeterminate Pronoun in the Partitive Relation.

For a long time, the plural has been substantively used chiefly, though not alone, of persons, frequently opposed to *some* repeated. Old-English: Every hath of God a propre gifte, *Som* this, *som* that, as him liketh to schifte (CHAUC., C. T. 5685.). *Somme* serven the kyng . . And *somme* serven as servauntz (P. PLOUGHM. p. 6.). I seigh *somme* that seiden Thei hadde

y-sought seintes (p. 4). Halſsax.: *Sume* folliſhenn i þiss lif All þwerret ut gode dedes (ORM. 7899.). *Summen* he ƿæf lond, *summen* seoluer and gold, *summen* he ƿæf castles, *summen* he ƿæf clæſes (LAȜAM. II. 590.). In Angloſaxon the singular is also frequent: *Sum* me æthræn (Luc. 9, 46.). *Sumne* we geſævon (MARC. 9. 38.). Manega heora reáf on þone weg strehton: *sume* þā bōgas of þām treovum heovon (11. 8.). *Sume* cƿædon: He ys Elias; *sume* cƿædon: He ys vitoga (6, 15.).

enough (enow), Angloſax. *genōg*, *genōh*, Goth. *ganōhs*, Old-Highdutch *ganōg*, Middle-Highdutch *genuoc*, Modern-Highdutch *genug*, Old-norse *nōgr* without a prefix, is, by its meaning, attached to adjective indeterminate pronouns, and answers, as in Goth. to the Gr. *ἰκανός* and *πολύς*, so in Old-norse to the Latin *sufficiens* and *multus*, and it is not only modern irony which uses enough for abundant and superfluous. See Vol. I. p. 310.

a. When immediately attached to a substantive *enough*, as distinguished from other pronouns and adjectives, takes its place almost exclusively after the substantive, so that the contrary position is declared by grammarians to be inelegant and vulgar.

I'll give you *gold enough* (SHAKSP., Tim. 5, 1.). We were *Christians enough* before (Merch. of V. 3, 5.). He had *sense enough* to judge there was no danger (JOHNS., Lives 1.). Is there not *poetry enough*, *beauty* and *glory enough* in that sky, those fields — ay, in every fallen leaf? (KINGSLEY, Two Years ago 1, 1.) — There is not *enough leek* to swear by (SHAKSP., Henry V. 5, 1.). I have done quite *enough harm* already (KINGSLEY, Two Years ago 2, 6.). He had *enough comprehension* of, *enough admiration* for the noble principles of American Constitution (1, 9.).

Enough has been employed from the earliest times with a decided preference for postposition. Old-Engl.: Heo cryede and wep with *some ynow* (R OF GL. I. 13) Thanne is *thundre cunde y-nouz* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 136.). Lo here *lifode y-nogh* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 275.). Ye shal have breed and clothes And *othere necessities y-nowe* (p. 439.). Halſsax.: Dude þer *sewe inoh* (LAȜAM. I 108.). Dude þer inue muchel col & *clæſes inowe* (I 100.). Þatt witenn *menn inozhe* (ORM. 7932.). Full gode *treos inozhe* (Intr. 15.). The inverse position of the adjective *enough* is rare: Hu þer wes fæiſer lond, *inoh seoluer and gold* (LAȜAM. III 283.). The former is frequent even in Angloſax.: Hvat druge þu *dugeða genōhra* . . ? (CÆDM. 885.) Māgon . . geſeon on him ſelfum *synne genōge* (COD. EXON. 77, 30.), although the other is not wanting: þær vās ælcum *genōg* . . *drync sōna gearu* (ANDR 1534.). Comp. Goth.: Mip . . *managein ganohai* (MARC 10, 46. cf. Luc. 7, 14.) [Angloſax mycel mænigeo]. Jera *ganohai* (Luc 20, 9.) [Angloſax manegum tidum]. The adverbial *inough* after adjectives and adverbs has also retained the postposition in the modern language: *Sharp enough*; *long enough*; *big enough*; *good enough*; an *honest fellow enough*; *well enough* (SHAKSP.). A *poor enough* match; *miserable enough*; *agreeable enough*; a *quaint errand enough*; the cloth — a *coarse one enough*; *sulkily enough*; *bitterly enough* &c. (KINGSLEY) Comp Halſsax.: Bisne god *inoh* (ORM. 851.) Itt maſſ *wel inoh* Ben seſſd (1044.). *Lihhtlike* . . and *wel inoh* (DEB. 283.)

β. It also appears adjectively where a substantive contained in the course of the speech is to be supplied.

Spare not for *faggots*, let there be *enough* (SHAKSP., I Henry VI 5, 4.).

γ. *enough* is rarely used substantively with regard to persons often in the singular as a neuter substantive

Within our files there are, Of those that serv'd Mark Antony but late, *Enough* to fetch him in (SHAKSP., Ant. a. Cleop. 4, 1.). — I will show you *enough* (Much Ado 3, 2.). I have *enough*, my brother; keep that thou hast unto thyself (GEN. 33, 9.). They cost *enough* (DICKENS, Christm. Car. 1.). He had *enough* to do to hold his own (KINGSLEY, Two Years ago 2, 14.).

Halfsax.: Mann ma; findenn . . *inozhe* þatt lædenn hemm swa dærneli; (ORM. 383.). — Old-Engl.: Woot no wight, as I wene, What *y-nogh* is to mene (P. PLOUGHM. p. 382.). That *y-nogh* shall noon faille Of thyng that hem nedeth (p. 275.). Anglosax.: Æghvylc dæg hæfð *genôh* (MATH. 6, 34.).

few, Anglosax. *fed*, *fedva*, pauci. Goth. *favs*, ὀλίγος, Old-norse *fár*, paucus, rarus, Old-Sax. *fah*, Old-Highdutch *foh*, Old-Fr. *fe*, appears in English in the singular only, like the Swed. *få*, Dan. *faa*, but forms a comparative and superlative *fewer*, *fewest*, as the Gothic did the comparative *faviza*, and Old-norse both the graduated forms *færri* and *fæstr*, comp. Dan. *færre*, *færrest*.

a. It is attached to the substantive notion, even where it is accompanied by *a*, see p. 178.

These *few* precepts in thy memory Look to character (SHAKSP., Haml. 1, 3.). *Few* Frenchmen of this evil have complain'd (COWP. p. 123.). The *fewer* men, the greater share (SHAKSP., Henry V. 4, 3.). He upon whose side The *fewest* roses are cropp'd from the tree (I Henry VI. 2, 4.). He wanted for nothing — less now than ever before, as there were *fewer* mouths to feed (THACKER., Hist. of H. Esm. 1, 9.). Cannot we delude the eyes Of a *few* poor household spies? (BEN JONS., Fox 3, 5.). He paused a *few* minutes (BULW., Maltrav. 1, 2.).

The comparative and superlative can hardly have been current formerly. I have not met with ancient instances. Old-Engl.: Ther ic slow a motune . . and *fewe* gete (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 200.). *Fewe robes* I fonge (P. PLOUGHM. p. 259.). I cowde it descryve in a *fewe wordis* (DEPOS. OF RICH. II. p. 5.). Halfsax.: Hit bi-falle . . ine *fewe* zere (LAJAM. I. 17. modern text). Shorttli; with *fewe wordess* (ORM. 13021 cf. 13033.). Bi one *fewe* winter hit iwarp suppe (LAJAM. I. 86. modern text). Anglosax.: *Fēva untrume* . . he gehælde (MARC. 6, 5.). Binnon *feāvum mōndum* (APOLLON OF T. p. 10.). Eustatius ātbārst mid *feāvum mannum* (SAX. CHR. 1051.).

β. *Few*, referred backwards, allows a preceding substantive to be supplied.

Three score and ten is the age of *men*, and *few* get beyond it (THACKER., Hist. of H. Esm. 1, 9.). Very *few* people are good economists of their fortune, and still *fewer* of their time (CHESTERFIELD, Lett.). "Upon whose side The *fewest* roses are cropp'd . . " "If I have the *fewest*, I subscribe in silence." (SHAKSP., VI. 2, 4.)

Halfsax.: Leope to þan *Bruttus*, and *fewe* hii þar nomen (LAJAM. III. 61. modern text). Anglosax.: *Eaforan* syndon deāde, *folgesitas*, nymðe *feā āne* (CAEDM. 2127.).

γ. *Few* is also used substantively, when accompanied by *a*, *no*, of persons.

Few in millions can speak like us (SHAKSP., Temp. 2, 1.). *Few* believe the wonders thou hast wrought (COWPER p. 93.). Everyone abused him, *few* had read him (LEWES. G. II. 89.). A *few* for-

sake the throng (COWPER p. 143.). To what *no few* have (p. 186.).

Old-Engl.: *Fewe* goon that ylke way (MAUNDEV. p. 128.). Halfsax.: . . himm chosenn ane *fæwe* (ORM. 19764.). Anglosax.: Svýðe *feawa* þe pone veg finden (MATH. 7, 14.).

any, Anglosax. *ænig*, Old-Highdutch *einic*, ullus, beside unicus, Middle-Highdutch *einec*, unicus, Holl. *eenig* and Middle-dutch *einig*, Plur. *einige*, has, from its ambiguity, received various meanings in modern idioms, so that *any* and *einig* touch each but little. *Any* has partly remained close to *an (one)*, Anglosax. the generalization denoted in German by *irgend ein*, Pl. *ir welche* does not however quite answer to *any*. The indeterminate may denote both the object subjectively arbitrary, which may be taken iteratively (*quavis, quilibet*), and the object objective definite (*ullus = unulus*).

a. Both meanings run parallel to each other, particularly in affirmative, assertory and imperative sentences; the latter is to be used with in interrogative, conditional and negative sentences, as well as in dependent sentences which are referred to a principal sentence is negative in form or sense.

I am as honest as *any man* living (SHAKSP., *Much Ado* 1. 4.). His mouth is wider than *any church door* (PLANCHE, *Fortunio* 4.). And then let *any man* explain to me, if he can, how it opened etc. (DICKENS, *Christm. Car.* 1.). There's many a lad 'ill woo me *any summer day* (TENNYS. p. 131.). "A gentleman born . . Who writes himself armigero; in *any bill, warrant, tance, or obligation, armigero.*" — "Ay that I do, and have *any time* these three hundred years." (SHAKSP., *Merry W.* 1.). *Any girl*, however inexperienced, knows how to accept an answer (BULW., *Lady of L.* 1, 1.). *Any suspicions* regarding his life were entirely done away (THACKERAY, *Hist. of H. Esm.* 1, 1.).

Hath *any man* seen him at the barber's (SHAKSP., *Much Ado* 1. 2.). *Any commands*, general? (BULW., *Lady of L.* 5, 1.). I have *any pity* on me, don't mention my wife (IRVING, *Sk. B. Wife*). If *any exceptions* can be made, they are very few (JOHNSON, *Lives* 1.). I will not allow *any appeal* to Mr. Osbaldistone (SCOTT, *R. Roy* 8.). And now, without *any further preface*, we proceed to our next chapter (FIELD., *T. Jon.* 4, 1.). It is not likely that the daughter could learn it (JOHNSON, *Lives* 1.). As that young man never hesitated at taking the readiest means to gratify *any* desire of the moment (SCOTT, *R. Roy* 7.).

We find in former times about the same compass in the use of *an* in Old-English, among affirmative sentences, comparative sentences very frequently present *any*; where it is in part superfluous, in part replaced by the indefinite article: So litht as y wes tho, And wilde as a (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., *Rel. Ant.* I. 121.). Myn neb that wes so bryght *eny sterre* lyht (I. 124.). As bryght as *any scarlet* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 1.). As rede as *any gleede* (p. 28.). Now ar we waxen blak as *any* (TOWN. M. p. 4.). My hart is hevy as *any lede* (p. 162.). This Niht sat stille as *eny ston* (CHAUC., *C. T.* 3472. cf. (TORRENT 1589.), see p.

Me made þis descriuing in þis lond, as wel As in *any oþer lond* (R. OF GL. I. 60.). He lovede Cristene men more than *any other* nacioun (MAUNDEV. p. 84.). That hoe shal lovien the mikel more Then *ani mon* in londe (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 9.). Me were levere then *ani fe* etc. (p. 11.). Mede is y-mariad Moore for hire goodes Than for *any vertue* or fairnesse, Or *any free kynde* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 32.). Were moost pryvee with Mede Of *any men* (ib.). Er they forther *any foote went* CHAUC., C. T. 11489.). For *any wyf or warde* Wide opned the gates (p. 388.). Selde is *any poure riche* But of rightful heritage (p. 291.). Siked ful ofte, That evere he hadde . . maistrie over *any man* Mo than of hymselfe (p. 293.). Whan *ony man* dyethe in the contree, thei brennen his body (MAUNDEV. p. 170.). Wrath-then the for *ani dede* Were me loth (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 3.). Halfsaxon: Unnsejennndlice mære inoh þann *aniz wiht* maȝ pennkenn (ORM. 1760.). Þe firrste mann þatt æfre Bigann to fullhtnenn *aniz folc* Forr *aniz sawle bote* (18229.). Sende sonde jeond al þan londen þer he æine [*eny* modern text] *freond* hæfde (LAȜAM. II. 64.). Whær swa heo funden æine [*eni* modern text] *mon* at-wunden . . þa quenen lude loȝen (II. 113.); in LAȜamon we frequently find the forms *æine*, *æie*, *æie* instead of *eny*, *eni*. In Anglosaxon *ænig* more rarely stands in affirmative sentences, except in comparative sentences: Sôð þæt gecȳðeð mænig . . þæt þæt geveorðeð. þæt þeôs vlitige gesceaft . . hreôsað tō gadore, ær ȳwæged sie vorda *ænig* (c. gen.) þe ic purh minne mûð meðlan onginne (ANDR. 1435.). Heô æfre tȳrnô on bôtan ȳs, ȳsftre þonne *ænig myltn-hveôl* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 1.). Þæt . . ȳs mærrer þonne *ænig ôðer þing* (JOH. 10, 29). Tō Babilônja, þe þa veligre vās þonne *ænig ôðer burh* (OROS. in Ettm. 7, 16.). The modern language has manifestly exceeded the narrower domain in affirmative sentences.

In interrogative, conditional and negative sentences, however, as well as in dependent sentences referred to them, *any* has obtained a wide extension from the earliest times. Old-Engl.: Gaf ye the chyld *any thing*? (TOWN. M. p. 114.). If I may don *any thing* That the is lef, Thou miȝtt finden me ful fre (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 3.). And if ich mac other cone In *eni wise* for the do, I shall strengthen me ther to (p. 6.). Ha loveth ful luitel hire lif. An *eni* clerc of love hire bede, Bote hoe graunte (p. 11.). If I bidde *any bedes* . . That I telle with my tonge Is two myle fro myn herte (P. PLOUGHM. p. 101.). Mighte we with *any wit* His wille withstonde, We mighte be lordes o lofte (p. 10.). Ne rede a lettre in *any langage* But in Latyn (p. 317.). I were noght worthy . . To werien *any clothes* (p. 293.). Halfsax.: What [who mod. text] iherden æuere suggest . . þæt æuere *æni broder* dude þus for ôðer? (LAȜAM. I. 284.). Ðu ne miht nohht borȝhenn ben . . iȝf þatt tu currsesst *aniz mann* (ORM. 5048. cf. 11288. 13599.). Nan ne beoþ . . þatt muȝhe wurȝpenn hire lic In *aniz haliznesse* (2567. cf. 2349.). Anglosax.: Hæfst þu *ænig gedeorf*? (THORPE, Anal. p. 103.). Hvanon mæg *ænig man* þās mid hlāfum on þysum vēstene gefyllan? (MARO. 8, 4.). He frāgn, hvāðer hi *ænig hūsel* þær inne hæfdon? (BEDA 4, 24.). Gif þu sunu āge . . ôððe on þissum folcum *freond ænigne* . . ālæde of þysse leodbyrig etc. (CAEDM. 2492.). Ðu ne recst be *ænegum men* (MARC. 12, 14.). Ne ondræt þu þe *æniges þinges* (APOLL. or T. p. 22.). He ne gepafode þæt hig *ænig þing* spræcon (LCC. 4, 41.).

β. *Any*, standing alone, may take up a substantive notion retrospectively.

I'll kick his *brains* out if he has *any* (DICKENS, Pickw. 2, 20.). The *evil* is done, if *any* (THACKER., Hist. of H. Esm. 1, 8.).

Anglosax.: þeah hit við ealla sie eft gemenged *veoruldgesceafta*, þeah valdan ne môt, þæt hit *ænige eallunga* fordô (GREIN, Ags. Poes. II. 319.).

γ. Used substantively, it is frequently referred to persons.

If *any*, born at Ephesus, Be seen at Syracusan marts (SHAKSP., Com. of Err. 1, 1.). And that you slipp'd not With *any*, but with us (Wint. T. 1, 2.). When ye stand praying, forgive, if ye have aught against *any* (MARK 11, 25.).

Old-Engl.: Ȝyf *eny* aȝen him was, hyld hym þo stille (R. OF GL. II. 367.). Halfsax.: He nolde noht þatt *aniz* sholde dwellenn (ORM. 9937.). Ȝif þu miht *eni* finde þat þe wole wið-stonde . . leie heom to grunde (LAȜAM. I. 157. mod. text [sine old text]. Anglosax.: Gif ic *ænige* bereafode (LUC. 19, 8.). Hit is sviðe earfoðe *ænigum* tō þeovjenne tvām hlāfordum (BASIL., Advice 2.). Gif ge hvāt āgen *ænige* habbað (MARC. 11, 25.).

The negative *nenig*, opposed to *ænig*, still to be found in Halfsaxon as *naniz* (ORM.), was early abandoned, and has entirely given place to *none*, *no*.

many, Anglosax. *mānig*, *manig*, *monig*, *māneg*, Goth. *manags*, Old-Sax. *manag*, *maneg*, Old-Fr. *menie*, *monich*, Old-Highdutch *manag*, Modern-Highdutch *manch*, Dan. *mangen*, Swed. *māngen*, yet not answering to the Old-norse *mangi*, *nemo*, *nullus*, that is, *maðr* [mann] and the negat. *gi*, appears in the singular as a collective pronoun, or as a notion to be taken distributively to denote an indefinite, but not unimportant plurality, whereas in the plural it comprehends the single individuals as such.

α. It stands with the singular with the indefinite article *an*, *a* immediately accompanied by a substantive; a combination not of itself necessary, the age of which has been pointed out at p. 184. *Many* tolerates a strengthening determination, such as *full* and *very* before it; the combination with *too* is vulgar. Comp. Lat. *bene multi*, *parum multi*, *minime multi*. Anglosax. *sviðe mānaga*. Old-Engl. *ful many* (CHAUC., C. T. 3619. 16420.). Comparisons by *as*, *so many* are self intelligible. Anglosax. *svā*, *pus manige*. The combination with *tō* is also in use: Sindan *tō monige* þāt (GREIN, Ags. Poes. I. 211.). Gothic also had a comparative *managiza*.

Many a tract of palm and rice (TENNYSON p. 117.). The plain song cuckoo gray, Whose note *full many a man* doth mark (SHAKSP., Mids. N. Dr. 3, 1.). He hath brought *many captives* home to Rome (Jul. Cæs. 3, 2.). There *many minstrels* maken melody (SPENSER, F. Qu. 1, 5, 3.). *Many centuries* have been numbered Since in death the baron slumbered (LONGF. I. 235.). 'Twas well known that *very many officers* . . were well affected towards the young king (THACKER., Hist. of H. Esm. 2, 13.). In combination with *people*, oscillating between a collective and a plural, we likewise find *many* as a plural: To the prejudice of the characters of *many worthy and honest people* (FIELD., T. Jon. 9, 1.). For the combination with *too* there is quoted: They are *too many* for us (L'ESTRANGE in Webst. v.).

Older proofs for *many a* are given elsewhere; *many* in the singular is long used without an article after it. Old-Engl.: Ich habbe i-loved the *monizer* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 4.). Ich have i-loved hire *moni day* (p. 7.). *Moni mon* syngeth When he hom bringeth Is þonge wyf (WRIGHT A. HALLOW., Rel. Ant. I. 112.). To gyve *mani man* his mede (P. PLOUGHMAN. p. 281.). That wollen by-molen it *many time* (p. 273.). Sweriere, of *meni word* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 138.). — I pisse wildernesses beoð *monie uwele*

bestes (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 66.). Setin *kinhis monie* (I. 170.). *Mang wintres men lyveden* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 277.). Halfsax.: *Maniz mann* piss merke shall wippstandenn (ORM. 7654.). Forr *maniz daz3* (3075.). Off *maniz pinz* (3435.). *Mani mann* Wass off hiss come blipe (795.). I þon castle weoren *monie men* (LAJAM. I. 28.). Anglosax.: Geond folc *monig* (CAEDM. 233.). Þā gyrnde hyre *mānig mære man* (APOLLON. OF T. p. 1.). He *menig ping* mid his mōde þohte (S. GUTHLAC 2.). *Manige hālige licha-man* . . arison (MATH. 27, 52.). Hig brohton him *manige deofol-seoce* (8, 16.). Þær væron *manega viſ* (27, 55.). Vās āteōvod *manegum mannum* (S. GUTHLAC 1.).

- β. The substantive use of *many* in the plural with reference to persons goes back to the most ancient times.

Straightway *many* were gathered together (MARK 2, 2.). A dragon coming! . . How pleasant! Has he eaten *many* up? (PLANCHÉ, Fortunio I, 4.) A perilous practice *many* deem it (THACKER., Hist. of H. Esm. I. 8.). Hence . . it will be concluded by *many* that he lived like an honest man (FIELD., T. Jon. I. 2.). I've fill'd those cells — with *many* — traitors all (BULW., Richel. 4, 2.).

Old-Engl.: But by a fraynnyng for than failleth ther *manye* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 452.). Halfsax.: Heo heom æfter foren and *monie* per fullun, & *swiðe monie* per fluwen (LAJAM. I. 237.). Anglosax.: *Manega* tō gādere cōmon (MARC. 2, 2.). *Manega* he gehælde (3, 10.). Þæt *manigum* sceal geond middangeard mære veorðan (ELENÉ 1176.).

The Anglosaxon negative *unmaneg*, paucus, early disappears: Ymbe *unmanige dagas* (S. GUTHLAC 2.).

On the other hand *fela*, multos, standing alongside of *maneg*, Goth. *filu*, Old-norse *fiöl* in compounds *perquam*, *fiöld*, multitudo, Old-Highdutch *filu*, Mod.-Highdutch *viel*, and occurring in Anglosaxon as an adjective, substantive and adverb. was long preserved in Old-Engl.: In wel *fele theode* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 109.). For te teche *fele shrewes* (ib.). Ase *fele thede*, ase *fele thewes* (ib.). Mor of age By *dayes fele* (CHAUC., C. T. 8792.). By *yeres long and fele* (COURT OF L. 191.). Þis antierist has had ful *fele* þat has til his servis ben lele (ANTICRIST 21.). In Halfsaxon this word was of very frequent use: *Fele zer* (LAJAM. I. 6.). Þer weore *feondes te fele* (I. 55.). Oferr *fele kingess* (ORM. 8330.). This indeterminate numeral was likewise often employed in Anglosaxon: Mīn heort gebād *hearm-edvīt feala* (Ps. 68, 21.). Svā *fela* svā untrumnessa and unclæne gāstas hāfdon (MARC. 3, 10.). The distinction between *fela* and *maneg* would be hard to specify. Both answer to the Gr. πολλοί.

much, formerly *mickle*, Anglosax. *micel*, *mycel*, *mucel*, Goth. *mikils*, Old-norse *mikill*, Old-Engl. *mickle*, *mychel*, *muchel*, *miche*, *much*, Old-Highdutch *mihil*, Scottish *mickle*, *muckle*, *mekyl*. Comp. *more*. Anglosax. *māra*, *mæra* (*mā*), Goth. *maiza*, Old-norse *meiri*, Old-Highdutch *mēra*, *mēro*, *mēr*, Middle-Highdutch *mēre*, *mēr*, *mē*, Modern-Highdutch *mehr*, whence *mehrere*, Old-Highdutch *mēriro*, *mēroro*, Middle-Highdutch *mērer*, *mērre*, *merre*. Superl. *most*, Goth. *maists*, Old-norse *mestr*, Old-, Middle- and Modern-Highdutch *meist*, answers in Gothic to the Greek μέγας, Latin *magnus*, and πολύς, and denotes the extensive or intensive fullness or strength.

In the positive it is only met with in the singular, and it may nevertheless in many cases stand opposed to the plural *many*, with which it has of itself nothing in common.

An oath of *mickle might* (SHAKSP., Henry V. 2, 1.). Other *mickle*

blame (Com. of Err. 3, 1.). There was *much grass* in the place (JOHN 6, 10.). It bringeth forth *much fruit* (12, 24.). He had shut himself out from that world, till he had quite forgotten how *much good* there was in it (KINGSLEY, Two Y. ago 1, 10.). On this subject there is, we think, *much misapprehension* (MACAUL., Essays III. 13.).

It seems that the plural of *much* (*mickle*) was early abandoned by Old-Engl.: *Mikel wa sal were* (ANTICRIST 74.). A *mikel cheigne* (78.). *De mikel pitt* (79.). And leven al his *michele kare* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 6.). For ful *michele nede* (ib.). Her havest thou, sone, *mikel senné* (p. 7.). Shal *mychel folk* lawghe (P. PLOUGHM p. 456.). And that by *muchel sleighte* (p. 401.). To delve, And make a *muché moot* (p. 401.). *Muche murthe* is amonges riche (p. 283.). Alle the *myche tresour* (MORTHE ARTHURE in Halli. v. miche). In Rob. of Gloucester we find plurals as in: *muchel men* = great men (II. 685, Gloss.). Hallsax.: I *mikell elde* (ORM. 754.). Heo hefden *mucheledrede* (LAȜAM. I. 88.). in the abbreviated form: *Muche lond* he him ȝef (I. 7.) and in the plural: *Mucheled treowen læiden on* (III. 31.). *Ȝiden* he gon rere *mucle* (III. 287.). Mid *mucle wiaxen*, mid longe saxon (III. 8.). Off þa *miccle tacness* (ORM. 9100.). In Anglosaxon, where the translation of the Bible often substitutes *micel* for the Gothic *manags*, both the plural and the singular are of course in use: Fylgdon him *micle mænjo* (MATH. 8, 1, cf. 8, 18. MARC. 4, 1, 9, 25. LUC. 5, 15.). *Micel rip ys* (MATH. 9, 37. LUC. 10, 2.). On þære stove vās *mycel gārs* (JOH. 1, 10.). Hyt bringȝ *mycelne vāstm* (12, 24.). *Myccle gestreōn* hāfde (S. GUTHLAC 1.). — Þā *myccelan hvalas* (BASIL., Hexam. 7.). Hig hāfdon *mycele heāfda* (S. GUTHLAC 5.). In general the notion of μέγας, magnus here suffices; yet the Anglosaxon renders the Gr. πολλοί by the same word, even in the plural; Ve vorhton *mycle myhta* (MATH. 7, 22.), as the Goth. *Mahtins mikilos* gatavidedun, Gr. δυνάμεις πολλὰς ἐποίησαν.

Much was sometimes used for *many* in former times in Mod.-Engl.: Thou hast *much goods* laid up for many years (LUKE 12, 19.). The Modern language, however, permits neither this nor the union with *people*: And Edom came out against him with *much people* (NUMB. 20, 20.), although we may here think of a collective notion.

The comparative and superlative, whose root *mah* is contained in the positive *micel*, *mikils*, *mihil*, are used in the singular and plural, and preserve in the singular the notion of extensive or intensive fullness, although hardly with regard to a concrete individual or an individualized abstract term, as they are referred in the plural only to a numerical plurality in excess, not to the plurality of individuals extensively or intensively important.

He's worth *more sorrow* (SHAKSP., Macb. 5, 7.). Has Cæsar shed *more Roman blood?* (ADDIS., Cato 4, 4.). There is *more imagination* and *more honest work* in that picture than in any one in the room (KINGSLEY, Two Y. ago 1, 9.). The *more part* knew not why they were come together (ACTS 19, 22.). — I want *more uncles* here to welcome me (SHAKSP., Rich. III. 3, 1.). *More guests* arrive (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 5, 2.).

It is hard for the modern linguistic consciousness in many cases to decide whether *more* is to be regarded as an adverb or as an adjective. English lexicographers take *more*, in union with determinate and indeterminate numerals, for an adjective with the meaning of *additional*. Comp.: Then, well *one more* (sc. suitor) may fair Bianca have (SHAKSP., Taming 1, 2.). Charles desired the attendants to pull aside the curtains, that he might have *one more look* at the day

(MACAUL., Hist. of E. II. 12.). There might be *one more motive* (BYRON, Don Juan 1, 177.). You must write *twelve more tragedies* (TAYLOR A. READE, Masks 1, 1.). If he had *a thousand more good qualities* (FIELD., J. Andr. 4, 6.). The idle man lives not to himself, with *any more advantage* than he lives to the world (2, 17.). She avoided carefully *any more tête-à-tête walks* with him (KINGSLEY, Two Y. ago 2, 5.). I could tell you *many more stories* (FIELD., J. Andr. 2, 17.). You must save *a few more poor creatures* ere you die (KINGSLEY, Two Y. ago 1, 14.). With these combinations is connected *other more*: From me and *other more* Suitors (SHAKSP., Taming 1, 2.). These combined determinations are not distinguished syntactically from their separation, as in: *One thing more* rests (SHAKSP., Taming 1, 1.). Not that I have not *several merits more* (BYRON, D. Juan 1, 102.), or from the combination of the comparative with a pronoun without any substantive immediately added, when the adjective *more* may mostly appear as the substitute for, or as the bearer of the substantive notion: Hath she had *any more* than one husband? (SHAKSP., Meas. for Meas. 2, 1.) The leader and *one more* of the gang (COOP., Spy 22.). We'll see however, what they say to this . . And, if their approbation we experience, Perhaps they 'll have *some more* about a year hence (BYRON, D. Juan 1, 199.). Tell me *what more* he says (TAYLOR A. READE, Masks 1, 1.). *What more* wouldst have me say? (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 4, 1.) I resolved to see *somewhat more* of my new friend (KINGSLEY, Two Y. ago 2, 6.). The apprehension of *more* as an adjective might be assumed, even where a reference backward to a preceding substantive quantitatively determined takes place: Some *six years ago or more* (CARL., Fred. the Gr. 5, 5.). For *three hours and more* (KINGSLEY, Two Y. ago 1, 7.). But with notions of number, as well as with pronouns, *more* is perhaps to be regarded as originally an adverb (that is *insuper, amplius*), Compare for instance, the modern English expressions of like meaning: *one word more* (SHAKSP., Temp. 1, 2.) and *one word further* (3, 2.). The way for the obscuration of the syntactical relation of *more*, and for the close contact of the real adjective with the adverb, is already paved by the mixture of the adjective form with the adverbial forms, which is already remote. See below.

The adjective superlative is found more frequently in the plural than in the singular: I had *most need* of blessing (SHAKSP., Macb. 2, 2.). The *most part* of the land or the mountain (WEBST. v.). Men's happiness or misery is *most part* of their own making (LOCKE in Five Centuries. Tauchn. p. 279.). *Most epic poets* plunge in "medias res" (BYR., Don Juan 1, 6.). This subject is to *most readers*, not only insipid but positively distasteful (MACAUL., Essays IV. 2.).

The adjective comparative appears in Old-English in the forms *more* and *mo*, the latter whereof answers to the old adverbial form Anglosaxon *mā*, alongside whereof the neuter *māre* stands as an adverb, as *mē* runs parallel to *mēre*, *mēr*, as an adverb in Middle-Highdutch. In the singular we find the comparatives in the meanings of *μείζων* and *πλείων*, which touch one another so closely that they are not always to be separated, in the plural the meaning of *πλείονες*, in which the original adverbial form *mo* is especially found. Old-Engl.: *pat Stonhyngel ys yclepud, no more wonder nys* (R. or Gt. I. 7.). Now is ther *water* her on urthe *more* than of lond (WRIGHT, Pop.

Treat. p. 137.). The *more partye* of the hed of Seynt Stevens (MACNDEV. p. 90). *Inde* the lasse and the *more* (p. 4.). Let us go forth withouten *more speche* (CHACC., C. T. 6602.). The man that is of pris He haveth *frendes mo* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 171.). *Deyntees mo* than ben in my knowing (10615.). *Mo divelis* than herte may thynke (p. 187. I.). Ever the *more fleschly kynredes* that ben in helle, the *more cursynge*, the *more chydynge*s, and the *more deedly hate* ther is among hem (p. 188. I.). Halfsax.: *Mare* inoh Annd werse *pin* (ORM. 7394.). Off *mare mahht* (10724.). Haueden heo þa *mere cie* (LAJAM. I. 235.). Annd get he hafde *suness ma*. Even in Anglosaxon the adverbial *mā* is occasionally made equal to *māra*: þāt *māre leoht*, þāt is seō sunne (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 2.). Se hæfō *māran synne* (JOH. 19. 11.). Svā hātra sumor svā *māra punor and liget* on geāre (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 19.). Þāt vās *mā crājt*, þonne hit eorðbūenð ealle cūðan (CYNEVLIF, Crist 421. Grein). Synd svā þeah *mā heofonan* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 2.), where *heofonan* may certainly be the genitive. We hardly meet with the plural in the sense of *μελλορες* from the most ancient times.

more and *mo* stand in combination with numerals and pronouns, when the observation presents itself that *mo* is added chiefly to plural forms, so that *more* and *mo* seem to have been distinguished, in such a combination, as inflective forms of the adjective. Withouten *one more* rehercyng (MACNDEV. p. 314.). And *many mo* othere (P. PLOUGHM. p. 34.). *Monie mo* wheelpes (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 66.). — Not oo word spak he *more* than was neede (CHACC., C. T. 306.). *mo* frequently stands in combination with *other*: My wele is went to wo, And so beth *other mo* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 120.). He yaf Adam and Eve And *other mo* blisse (P. PLOUGHM. p. 399.), even separated by the substantive: And *other* murthes *mo* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 119.). Her father and *other knyghtes mo* (TORRENT 43.). In Anglosaxon the form *mā*, which is perhaps to be regarded as a genuine adverb, stands after numerals: Æfre byð *ān* dæg and *ān* niht *mā* on þam feorðan geāre (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 12.). If one compare the Middle-Highdutch *mêre*, *mêr*, *mê* in similar combinations, the conception of the corresponding English forms as adverbs, even with such pronouns as *what*, gains one more support: Nune haben wir *niemen mêre*, der uns türre raten (IWEIN 149.). Durch zwei herze und durch *dekeinez mê* (WALTH. v. d. Voogelw. 51, 12.). Ir geliche was *deheiniu mê* (NIBELUNG. 325, 2.). *Swer mêr* dar mite si, der *mære* ich niene weiz (1441, 2.). *Wes* si dā *mêre* pfāgen, deon kan ich niht gesagen (1261, 1.). In English the frequent attachment of this comparative to the determinative preceding a substantive has favoured the conception of the adverb as such. The Old-English *mo* has moreover extended into Modern-English: Being perhaps . . two and thirty, — a pip *mo* (SHAKSP., Taming 1, 2. cf. Much Ado 2, 3.).

More, referred back to a substantive quantitatively determined is found in Old-English both in this and in the other form *mo*: penne þer beþ in Wallis þre [sc. bischopriches] wifoute *more* (R. of GL. I. 4.). 500 myle and *more* (MACNDEV. p. 27.). Fourti myle upriht and eke *mo* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 134.). Bi a thousand þer and *mo* (ib.). Sexti knyhtes and þit *mo* (MS. in HALLIW. v. *mo*). Here, however, the substantive or adverbial *mære*, *mā*, Middle-Highdutch *mêre*, *mê* is likewise in its place. Anglosax.: Is nu vorn sceacen tvā hund oððe *mā* geteled rime (ELENE 632.). Middle-Highdutch: Si reit dri mile oder *mê* (IWEIN 115.). How, moreover, from the oldest times the employment of the substantive, of the adjective and of the adverb run parallel, is shewn by the following passage. Modern-Engl.: What went ye out for to see? A prophet? Yea, I say unto you, and much *more* than a prophet (LUKE 7, 26.). Gr.: Πρεσβύτερον προφήτου. Anglosax.: He ys *māra* þonne vitega. Goth.: Jah *mais* praufetu.

The adjective superlative *most* answered to the Gr. *μελλιστος* and *πλειστος*, yet the modern language has abandoned the reference of it. in the former

meaning, to concrete individual existences, so far as they excel in their class. The older language does not know this restriction for a long time.

Old-Engl.: *þe strengest mon & þe meste þat hym þotte in eny lond* (R. OF GL. I. 15.). *þa mast king of alle* (ANTICRIST 274.). The *moste fynger of myn hande* (Ms. in HALLIW. v.). — In *þe contre of Canterbury mest plente of fyssh ys* (R. OF GL. I. 6.). They sleepen . . . The *moste part* (CHAUC., C. T. 10674.). In al his wele and his *moste pride* (897.). Of studie tooke he *most cure and heede* (305.). *Mest chase* aboute Salesbury of wyldre bestes *ywys*, At London *schippes mest* (R. OF GL. I. 6.). Who that *moost maistries kan* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 411.). Halfsax.: *þatt wass . . þe maste þing* (ORM. 2866.). *þe maste lufe* he shæweþþ *pær* (5328.). Ich hatte Mauric þe *mæste* of his children (LAȜAM. II. 57.) [the eldest?]. *þat wes þat þridde mæste uiht* (III. 95.). Cloten hæfde *mest riht* to aȝen þas riche (I. 173.). Mid *harmen þan mesten* (I. 175.). Anglosax.: Drihten is on Sion, *dēma se mæsta* (Ps. 98, 2.). *þonne we us gemittað on þam mæstan dāge* (GÆRIN, Aḡs. Poes. I. 198. cf. 195.). Se *mæsta dæl* þas heriges lāg hilde gesæged on þam sigevonge (JUDITH 293. Grein). *þā heo āhte mæste pearfe* hylde þas hēhstan dēman (3.). *Mæst gestreōn* hāfde (S. GUTHLAC 1.). Nales fore lytlum . . ac fore þam *mæstan mægearfeðum* (CYNEVULF, Crist. 953. Grein). In the plural *πλείστοι* is here commonly expressed by the subst. *mæst* with the genitive.

much, more, most, as original neuter forms of the adjective, frequently occur used substantively.

Unto whomsoever *much* is given, of him shall be *much* required (LUKE 12, 48.). The children of Israel . . gathered some *more*, some less (EXOD. 16, 17). Old Jacob Marley, tell me *more* (DICKENS, Christm. Car. 1.). But *more* of this in a subsequent chapter (SCOTT, Waverl. 2.). They ask no *more* than simple Nature gives (THOMSON, Wint.). He to whom he forgave *most* (LUKE 7, 43.). A covetous man makes the *most* of what he has, and can get (L'ESTRANGE in Webst. v. *most*).

The comparative or superlative is more rarely used of persons, without a reference backwards or a support by a following partitive substantive notion.

Look, sir! here are *more* of us (SHAKSP., Temp. 5, 1.). The *most* may err as greatly as the few (DRYDEN).

We may assume a substantive use of these forms where they are to be thought as subjects or objects of a verbal notion, although, even here, a different conception may in individual cases take place.

The neuter *more* is customary in the meaning *πλείον*. Old-Engl.: Ic mot þu telle *more* (WRIGHT., Pop. Treat. p. 134.). Of some hath *more* other lasse [p. 138.]. Halfsax.: Itt iss *mare* þann inoh (ORM. 10722.). Anglosax.: Se þe he *mære* forgeaf (Luc. 7, 43.). Seō lyft . . þonne *mære* āberan ne mæg, þonne feaþ hit ādūne tō rēne ālysed (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 18.). Thus also *mā* stands as a substantive: Ve *mā* sprecað (Ps. 125, 2.). The neuter substantive *most* is equally old. Old-Engl.: Ho so haveth of urthe *mest* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 138.). Halfsax.: þatt Goddspellwrihte þatt *most* wrat onn hiss Goddspellboc Off Cristess Goddcundnesse (ORM. 5881.). Anglo-saxon commonly in the meaning of *plurimum* with the genitive: Se pissum herige *mæst* hearma gefremede (ANDR. 1199.).

mo, πλείονες, is often used of persons in Old-Engl.: Wel *mo* thider goth, ic wene, þe *mo* than such tene (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 134.). I may say, and so may *MO* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 197.). In Anglosaxon it seems rather to be regarded as the neuter substantive, which is usually followed by a genitive: *Mā vifa* þonne ān (LEGG. ÆTHELR. IV. 12.). The superlative is often found in the meaning of *μέγιστοι*, of persons. Old-Engl.:

The grete giftes to the most and leste (CHAUC., C. T. 2200.). A kynges feste Hath plenty, to the leste and to the meste (10614.). *meste* is not used substantively in Anglosaxon in the meaning of *plurimi*.

euch, Anglosax. *ælc*, [or *alc*? see GREIN Gloss. I. 56.], Old-Highdutch *ebgalih*, Middle-Highdutch *jegelich*, *jeglich*, Old-Fries. *ellik*, *elk*, Holl. *elk*, Old-Engl. *ylk*, *ech*, *uch*, Hallsax. *ilc*, *ælc*, *alch*, *elche*, *æche* and *every*, which representing *each* generalized by *ever*, Anglosaxon *æfre*, Hallsax. *æuer*, *ælc*, *euereche*, Scottish *everilk*, *everich* are discussed Vol. I. p. 311.

The generalization by *ever* gives to the notion not so much an energetic reference to the totality to be thought at the same time, belonging in itself to *each*, but it renders prominent the idea of the individual of the totality, which is met with with always or everywhere. Hence with *each* the idea of each individual, as such, comes to the front, whereas with *every* that of the frequentative, indistinguishable individual comes under consideration. The Anglosaxon *ælc* contains in its element [*av*, *α*, *ά*, *semper*] the notion of *ever*, and *ever*, which has recently been added, might have rendered more sensuous that idea when it had fallen into the background. *Each* and *ever* in the modern language may be in some measure compared with the Latin *quisque* and *quis*, *quicunque*. They touch each other and separate in a similar manner. In Anglosaxon *ælc* serves both for *quisque* and *quis*.

α. As to the adjective combinations of both compare also: Take *each man's* censure (SHAKSP., Hamlet 1, 3). Swear his thought over By *each particular star* in heaven (Wint. Tale 1, 2.). In all the blooming prime Of vernal genius, where disclosing fast *Each active worth*, *each manly virtue* lay (THOMSON, Winter). Let *each rapture*, dear to Nature, flee (TH. CAMPBELL, Pleas. of Hope 2.). Over which amusement he spent many hours in *each day and night* (THACKER., Hist. of H. Esm. 3, 9.).

Every godfather can give a name (SHAKSP., Love's L. L. 1, 1.). *Every gentleman* goes to the army (THACKER., Hist. of H. Esm. 2, 7.). *Every thing* good comes from France (3, 5.). A plaything for *every profligate* (TAYLOR A. READE, Masks 2, 1.). The prayers of priests and people were *every moment* interrupted by their sobs (CARL.. Fr. Revol. 1, 1, 1.). He had lost *every vestige* of self-control (WARREN, Diary 1, 9.). He has *every great and generous quality* (THACKER., Hist. of H. Esm. 3, 12.). Cease, *every joy*, to glimmer on my mind (TH. CAMPBELL, Pleas. of Hope 2.). *Every* is even not far removed from *any*: The weakness of their wall, which *every earthquake* might overthrow (GOLDSM., Citizen of the world, Lett. 25.).

Every, like the Lat. *quisque*, is often combined with the substantive determined by an ordinal numeral: *Every third word* a lie (SHAKSP., II Henry IV, 3, 2.). To my Milan, where *Every third thought* shall be my grave (Temp. 5, 1.). He was at her bedside *every other day* (WARREN, Diary). For its combination with a substantive determined by a possessive pronoun see p. 221.

Every is also added to cardinal numbers denoting a sum of units: These same whoreson devils do the gods great harm in their women, for in *every ten* that they make, the devils mar nine

(SHAKSP., Ant. a. Cleop. 5. 2.). *Every twenty paces* gives you the prospect of some villa, and *every four hours* that of a large town (MONTAGUE, Lett.). *Every* is here like *an, a, this, that*, when added to plurals, which may be regarded as collective notions. In the passage: Single I'll resolve you . . of *every These happen'd accidents* (SHAKSP., Temp. 5, 1.) a blending of *every accident* and *these accidents* takes place.

In the older language *each* and *every*, the latter more rarely, also combine with the article *an, a*, without any observable difference from the simple pronouns. See p. 184.

Old-Engl.: *Elch man* haveð to fere on engel of hevene (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 131.). *Ilke man* knowes hit welle and fyne (Ms. in HALLIW. v. ilk). Engeland ys a wel god lond, ich wene of *eche lond* best (R. of Gl. I. 1.). Of those four elementz *ech quik best* y-maked is (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat p. 135.). That he dronke at *ech dyck* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 426.). *Uch gigelot* wol loure (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 154.). Thah *uch mon* byswyke me (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 114.). Halfsax.: *Ilc mann* sholde cumenn ham (ORM. 3538.). *Elche monne* heo dude riht (LAJAM. I. 106.). *Elche untulle* heo talden vnrwðe (II. 614.), *Eche barunes* sone (I. 227.) [ælches b, sune older text].

Old-Engl.: *Everiches monnes* dom to his oge dure cherried (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 172.) [*Everuyches monnes* dom to his owere dure churreth. Ms. Coll. Jes. Oxon. I, 29. f. 262. sq.]. Nou hath prude the pris in *everuche plawe* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 153.). Peasse I bid *everyeich wight* (TOWN. M. p. 216.). *Every poore* that pacient is (P. PLOUGHM. p. 288.). Ye schulde nought ete of *every tree* in Parady (CHAUC., C. T. p. 191. I.). — *Every* is found combined with an ordinal numeral: At *every thridde pas*, that thei gon fro here hows, thei knelen (MAUNDEV. p. 174.). Halfsax.: *Æuer alene godne mon* he afelede mid gode (LAJAM. I. 119.). *Æuer ælc god cniht* slæn *æuere* adun riht (III. 64.) [Everech g. cn. slea *euere* adun riht modern text]. Wenden to þen walle on *æter alchere halue* (I. 251.) [on *euereche halue* modern text]. The frequentative meaning of *ever* results from these instances; in Anglosaxon I have not observed the combination with *æfre*: Nu he eov *ælce dæg* onet tðveard (ÆLFR. METRA 27, 8. Grein). *Ælce geðre* byð orf æcenned (BASIL., Hexam. 12.). On *alcum lichaman* synd þas feover þing (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat, p. 17.), *Ælc gôð treô* birð gôðe vâstmas (МАТН. 7, 17.) [Modern-English *every good tree*]. *Ælc vis mon* scyle âvinnan etc. (BOETH. 40, 3.). *Ælc þing* hæfð anginn (BASIL., Hexam. 13.). Hæleude *ælce âdle*, and *ælce* untrumnyse (MARC. 9, 35. cf. Luc. 3, 5.).

A subsequent form *iwihilc*, often found in Orm, answers to the Anglosaxon *æghwîlc*, in general of the same meaning, from which *ælce* could not have proceeded: All wass itt filledd *iwihilc dæl* (1722.). *Iwihilc mann* (3288.). Inn *iwihille unncleennesse* (3983.). Anglosax.: þeah . . him mon erigan scyle *æghwelce dæg* âcera þusend (ÆLFR. METRA 14, 5. Grein). Comp. Anglosaxon *æghwær* = everywhere, Halfsaxon *e3hwær* (ORM.), *æwer, eower, ihwær, iwhær, iwære* (LAJAM.) The form *everiuchar* is ancient (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 67.).

β. *each* is familiar, referred back to a substantive, whereas *every* cannot dispense with support from *one*, also occurring with *each*. See one p. 240.

The love of change . . Genius and temper, and desire of rest, Discordant motives, in one centre meet, And *each* inclines its votr'y to retreat (COWP. p. 143.). *Boys* are at best but pretty buds unblown . . *Each* dreams that *each* is just what he appears, But learns

his error in maturer years (p. 317.). Miss Herbert lost both her father and mother . . . and was solemnly committed by *each* to the care of her uncle (WARREN, Diary 1, 9.). The two ladies went down on their knees before the Prince, who graciously gave a hand to *each* (THACKER., Hist. of H. Esm. 3, 9.). Such a reference backwards lies also in *each other*: The armies were in presence of *each other* (2, 14.). The shrine and its divinity, were worthy of *each other* (WARREN, Diary 1, 9.); see p. 186.

Old-Engl.: *Thre leodes* . . . That oon dooth, alle dooth, And *ech* dooth bi his one (P. PLOUGHM. p. 341.). Al det mon oper *wummon* wilneð more þen heo mei gnedeliche leden hire lif bi, *everich* efter det heo is, al is giscunge (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 68.). Anglosax.: Vās þās Jōbes fāder gog eac svā he: *Saturnus* þone sundbūende hēton hāleða bearn. Hāfdon þā mægða *ælene* āfter ððrum for ēcne god (ÆLF. METRA 26, 47. Grein.).

- γ. Without support by a preceding substantive notion or the appositive relation to a pronoun, as well as when it is not referred to a following partitive notion, *each*, where it stands absolutely, comes but little under consideration as an independent notion used substantively. The reference to a totality, at least indicated, is almost always present; where *each* appears, *every* is not adapted in modern times.

All join to guard what *each* desires to gain (POPE, Essay on M. 3, 278.). The whole house becomes hypocritical, and *each* lies to his neighbour (THACKER., Hist. of H. Esm. 1, 11.). Did you mark the shot I fired into *each* as he sheered off? (TAYLOR A. READE, Masks 2, 1.).

In ancient times *everich* seems chiefly to appear isolated in the meaning of every generalized; comp. Flem. Holl. *elk*: þet is riht religiun, þet *everich* efter his stat, boruwe et tisse vrakele worlde so lutel so heo ever mai (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 68.): else the more general notion is periphrased by *eehe man*, *wight*, *echone*, Halfsax.: *illke mann*, *illc an* and the like. But compare also: Old-Engl.: Crist seith, that *uche* that doth his fadur wille is his brother, suster, and modur (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 38.). Halfsax.: Weox þet folk & wel ipaih: for *ælc* hefde his iwillen (LAJAM. I. 84. sq.). Anglosax.: þær vās *ælcum* genôg fram dāges orde drync sōna gearu (ANDREAS 1534.).

either, Anglosax. *æghvāðer*, *ægðer*, *āðer*, compare Old-Highdutch *eogahuedar*, *iogahuedar*, Modern-Highdutch *iuweder* and *iedeweder*, *ietweder*, whose element *hwāðer* Goth. *wapar*, answers to the Lat. *uter*, Old-Engl. *aither*, *ather*. *either*, Halfsax. *ezher*, *owper*, is opposed to *neither*, Anglosax. *nāvðer*, *nāðer*, *nōvðer*, *nōðer*, that is *ne āvðer* = *ā-hvāðer*, Halfsax. *nouper*, *neoder*, *nouðer*, *noðer*, Old-English and dialect. also *nawder*, like the Lat. *uterque* to *neuter*; see Vol. I. p. 312. The transition of the meaning of *either*, *uterque*, into that of *alteruter*, one of two, is prepared by the isolated idea of the individual in the duality, so that the latter meaning, or even that of each of a multitude, is erroneously regarded by grammarians and lexicographers as that originally justified. On the other hand the interchange of *either* with *each* is rendered possible, although in *each* the reference to duality is absent, as in *on either side* and *on each side*. In the latter duality is only the supposition occasioned by the substantive.

α. Instances of the combination of both with a substantive are: I . . will, to save the blood on *either side*, Try fortune with him in a single fight (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 5, 1.). On *either hand* The lawns and meadow-ledges midway down Hung rich in flowers (TENNYNS. p. 98.). The chief officers of *either army* were present (THACKER., Hist. of H. Esm. 2, 14.). The transition into the meaning of *alteruter* is made by passages like: An equivocator that could swear in both the scales against *either scale* (SHAKSP., Macb. 2, 3.), with which compare: He . . would offer it to *either family* that would bribe him best (THACKER., Hist. of H. Esm. 2, 14.). The reference to one and every one of several generally, which Webster's Dictionary (Lond. 1864) places at the head of the significations, is shewn in sentences of the following kind: Here are ten oranges; take *either orange* of the whole number (ib. v.). — *Neither side* was impatient to come to action (MACAUL., Hist. of E. II. 168.). Both pronouns are singular.

Harrison expresses the opinion that *either* is misused for *each*: Engl. Langu. Lond. 1848 p. 228: *Either* gives simply an alternative; as 'Place them on *either side*'; that is on one side or the other, but not on both, whilst *each* signifies *both* taken distributely; as 'Place them on *each side*' that is on both sides apart. The meaning *alteruter* is however only the derivative one, although this transition is ancient. Old-Engl.: And if so falle, a cheventen be take On *eyther side*, or elles sle his make, No lenger schal the turneyng laste (CHART., C. T. 2557.). Hallsax.: Forrpi wennendenn þeꝛ full wel þatt *owwþerr* off þa tveꝝjenn Off dæþe wære risenn upp (ORM. 10344.). Anglosax.: Ne eāgena (hafað) ægðre tvega (GREIN, Ags. Poes. II. 387.). The meaning *uterque* is, moreover, predominant. Old-Engl.: That schal be ordeyned on *eyther side* (2555.). The heles atte buttokes, the kneon in *aither eye* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 139.). Hallsax.: Till *eꝝþer kinn* onn eorþe, Till weppmann annð till wifmannkinn (ORM. 3057.). Twa tuness wærenn . . Annð þurh þe name off *eꝝþerr tun* lss herrsummnesse tacnedð (10584. sq.). Off *eꝝþerr boc*, Off þalde annð off þe newe (15158.). Anglosax.: Seð sunne ne cymð him næfre tð, ac æt-sent on ægðre healfē at þām sunnstedum (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 13.). On *ððre hand* (OROS. 1, 14.). The reference to each among several objects is likewise early met with, in spite of the original reference to duality. Anglosax.: Cynebalde men from þām holmclyfe hafelan bæron, earfoðlice heora æghwāðrum felamōdigra (Bæv. 1634. Grein). Comp Middle-Highdutch: Behender garzūne gnuoc, der ietweder truoc driu sper ode zwei (LWEIN 260). Modern-Lowdutch: *jedweder, jedwederen* = unusquisque. — The negative *neither* presents no syntactical variety. Hallsax.: *Nouwþerr mahht* Off þise tveꝝjenn mahhtess Niss god inoh (ORM. 10902.). Anglosax.: God hine ne neaðode on *nāðre healfē*, ac lēt hine habban his āgene cyre (BASIL, Hexam. 15.).

β. *either* and *neither* stand absolutely only when supported by given substantive notions.

The people of Paris are much fonder of strangers that have *money*, than of those that have *wit*. As I could not boast of *either*, I was no great favourite (GOLDSM., Vic. 20.). Here where *thou* droop'st lies *France!* I am very feeble — of little use it seems to *either* now (BURL., Richel. 4, 2.). On *both sides* store of blood is lost, Nor much success can *either* boast (SCOTT, Lady of the L. 6, 6.). — There's *Oxenstein*, there's *Arnheim* — *neither* knows What he should think of your procrastinations (COLER., Picc. 1, 10.).

Ermond and *Castlewood* looked at each other at this compliment, *neither* liking the sound of it (THACKER., *Hist. of H. Esm.* 3, 9.).

Old-Engl.: *pe emperour & pe ping* to grete love drowe, And *cyber* to oper bytwene hem jiftes jeue ynowe (R. OF GL. I. 59.). *Buxomnesse* and *boost* Arn evere more at werre, And *either* hateth oother (P. PLOUGHM. p. 287.). Tak *everferne* . . and tak *mynt*, of *ayther* y-lik mekell (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., *Rel. Ant.* I. 54.). Nis the *gist* siker of the *husebonde*, ne *nober* of offer (I. 130.). Oone shese, oone, and this makes two Bot *navder* of thise may I forgo (TOWNS. M. p. 12.). Halfsax.: *Judisskenn mann* and *hæpenn mann* þuss birp þe lufenn bape, þatt *e3þerr* turne himm toward Crist (ORM. 5036.). *Twe3zenn burzness* wærenn þa . . Annd *e3þerr* . . Wass Beppleam jehatenn (6982. sq.). Till *owwerr*, Till *Sune*, ne till *Haliz Gast* (7449.). He wass sennd To *spellenn* annd to *fullhtenn* Ær þann þe Laferrd Jesu Crist Bigann *owwerr* to donne (9349.), that is spell annd fulluhbt. Anglosax.: Ne bið þær *ængam góðum* gnorn átýved ne *ængum yftum* vel: ac þær *æghvæter* anfealde geyvryht andveard vigeð (CYNEVULF, Crist 1576. Grein).

Halfsax.: Sone *heo* (sc. Galerne & Brien) gunen to-delen, for nauere *neoðer* nalde . . þat þe king hit wiste (LAZAM III. 238.). Similar references backwards have not occurred to me in Anglosaxon, the neuter in regard to two sentences is contained in the following instances: Me *návðer* deág, *secge* nè *svige* (CYNEVULF, Crist 189. Grein).

other, Anglosax. *óðer*, Old-Sax. *óthar*, *áthar*, Old-Fries. *other*, Old-norse *annar*, Old-Highdutch *andar*, Modern-Highdutch *ander*, see Vol. I. p. 313. The original ordinal number for duality, which, going early beyond this notion, united the meaning of *alius* with that of *alter*, and was used even in Goth. for the Gr. *δευτερος*, *ετερος* and *ἄλλος*, has been discussed p. 186. 213. with regard to its reminiscence of the notion of the ordinal number, which is even still present, as well as with respect to its combination with the article.

a. It is either attached immediately to the substantive:

Perhaps thou art no more mad than *other people* (THACKERAY, *Hist. of H. Esm.* 3, 2.). I can offer no *other alternative* (TAYLOR A. READE, *Masks* 2, 1.).

Old-Engl.: Masons and mynours, And many *othere craftes* (p. 14.). *Manye other dyverse contrees* (MAUNDEV. p. 313.). By prayeres, and by confession, and *other goode werkes* (CHAUC., C. T. p. 192. II.). Halfsax.: He isæh his muchelne lure, & nom him *oðerne cure* (LAZAM. II. 44. sq.). Anglosax.: þa he iteode of þære dura, þa geseah hine *oðer vyln* (MATH. 26, 71.). Mid him wæron gelædde tvegen *oðre mánfulle* (LUC. 23, 32.).

β. Or it stands referred back to a substantive notion.

Each *day* still better *other's* happiness (SHAKSP., *Rich.* II. 1, 1.). My cousin's a *fool*, and thou art *another* (*Much Ado* 3, 4.). Now in one *part* and now in *another* (DICKENS, *Christm. Car.* 2.). Good worldly *reasons* may, doubtless, be given for the circumstance, which it would be difficult to combat with *others* that might seem merely fanciful (IRVING, *Sk. B. Roscoe*). His *orders* crush all *others*! (BULW., *Richel.* 5, 1.).

Old-Engl.: Though we killen the *cat* Yet sholde ther come *another* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 12.). Wan *lond* after *oper* (R. OF GL. I. 44.). No *mon* . . Schal not supplante *othur* (HALLIW., *Freemas.* 204.). Eche day, *Holy-day* and *othur* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 101.). Alle theise han manye *articles* of oure feythe, and to *othere* thei ben varyaunt (MAUNDEV. p. 122.). Halfsax.: þe

king hefde ænne broðer, neafde he nenne oðer (LAŶAM. I. 24.). Wa wurðe a þon broðer þe bi-swikeð þene oðer (I. 190.). Itt was hæfedd kinedom Abufenn opre unnfæwe (ORM. 9175.). Anglosax.: þonne hig eov ehtað on pyse byrig, fleoð on oðre (MATH. 10, 23.).

- γ. *Other* is used substantively of persons.

But charity not feign'd intends alone *Another's* good — theirs centres in their own (COWP. p. 108.). No *other* but such a one as he can serve the army (COLER., Picc. 1, 4.). Some *other* give me thanks for kindness (SHAKSP., Com. of Err. 4, 3.). Many spread their garments in the way; and *others* cut down branches off the trees (MARK 11, 8.). What *others* felt was slight to what the lovers appeared to endure (GOLDSM., Vic. 2.). If he is trimming, *others* are true (THACKER., Hist. of H. Esm. 3, 11.).

Old-Engl.: Ofpuuchunge of opres god (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 67.). Seynt Luke the Evaungelist was disciple of Seynt Poul for to lerne phisik; and many *othere* (MAUNDEV. p. 124.). Clothed hem in copes, To ben known from *othere* (P. PLOUGHM p. 4.). Halfsax.: þa sholde an *operr* comenn forþ (ORM. 10410.) Bruttes to wude hælden, þe *oðere* after wunden (LAŶAM. III. 61.). Anglosax.: Eart þu þe tó cumenne eart? hvæðer he ve *oðres* sculon onbidan? (LUC. 7, 19.). Þær vās mycel mænigeo mánfulra and *oðerra*, þe mid him sæton (LUC. 6, 29.). Þā betveox *oðre* com þær þæs foresprecenan vrāccan Aðelbaldes gefera (S. GUTHLAC 16.).

- δ. The indeterminate pronoun *other* often stands in the plural with the expression of a totality, if one or several individuals comprised under it are distinguished from the rest, and as it were separated from them.

Happy is Rome of *all earth's other states* (BEN JONS., Poetast. 5, 1.). Of *others all*, moste cause haue we to mone (GASCOYNE, Jocasta 1, 1.). This gambol thou advisest Is, of *all others*, the unwisest (BUTL., Hud. 3, 3, 517.). We choose this time, because it is a time, of *all others*, when Want is keenly felt, and Abundance rejoices (DICKENS, Christm. Car. 1.).

The pronoun here appears pleonastically with the totality of individuals, the moment of the exclusion of one or of several being at the same time present to the speaker. The form of expression is ancient. Old-Engl.: The serpent, that was most wily of *alle other bestis* that God hadde makid (CHAUC., C. T. p. 191. I.). Halfsax.: Galoes wes feirest of *alle þan oðren* (LAŶAM. I. 115.). Compare also: Old-Engl.: Tho ben grete ymages . . And *amonges theise othere*, ther is a gret ymage, more than any of the *othere* (MAUNDEV. p. 173.). — I have not met with any such expression in Anglo-saxon. The similar Latin expression is well known: Per Divitiarum, quod ex aliis ei maximam fidem habebat (CAES. B G. 1, 41.).

such, Anglosax. *swylc*, Goth. *svðleiks*, Old-Highdutch *sölîh*, Middle-Highdutch *solich*, *solch*, which in Old-English runs through a series of forms as *suilk*, *swylk*, *swich*, *swech*, *selk*, *such*, as well as *swilc*, *swulc*, *swlc*, *sulche*, *soch* in Halfsaxon, is to be so far distinguished from the form *slyke*, *slik*, occurring in Northern dialects, and which is of exactly the same meaning, as the latter points immediately to the Old-norse *slikr*, Swed. *slik*, Dan. *slig*. By its origin (*sva-leiks* = so like) *such* supposes the reference to an object sensuously present or already characterized, or to be determined by a succeeding dependent sentence, although only as to its effect, the *so* (*svá*) con-

tained in it not denying its demonstrative nature. For that reason it may in some measure represent the demonstrative pronoun, when it expresses rather the variety of the object than its mere exhibition.

α. In its immediate combination with the substantive it also takes the article *an*, *a*, in the singular, which has made great encroachments from early times, so that it has now become of the most frequent use with generic names and with substantives assimilated to these. See p. 184.

But there is no *such man* (SHAKSP., *Much Ado* 2, 1.). But *such conduct*, though it did not please, was yet sufficiently safe (JOHNS., *Lives* 1.). Harry fell on him with *such rage* that the other boy . . . had by far the worst of the assault (THACKER., *Hist. of H. Esm.* 1, 7.). A man of *such perfection*, as we do in our quality much want (SHAKSP., *Two Gentlem.* 4, 1.). I do remember one, with *such a merry laugh* and bright eye (TAYLOR A. READE, *Masks* 1, 1.). In *such a France* as this (CARL., *Fr. Revol.* 2, 1, 2.). *Such histories* as these do, in reality, very much resemble a newspaper (FIELD., *T. Jon.* 2, 1.). *Such scenes*, *such men* destroy the public weal (BYRON, *Engl. Bards* p. 324.). A thousand *such hillocks* lay round about (THACKER., *Hist. of H. Esm.* 2, 13.).

Old-Engl.: Me siðth noȝt *such thing* (WRIGHT, *Pop. Treat.* p. 135.). *Such qualité* nath no man to beo lechour other schrewe. That ne mai him writte ther aȝen (p. 133.). *Swich richesse* saugh I nevere (P. PLOUGHM. p. 29.). *Swich good* as God yow sent Goodliche parteth (p. 25. sq.). A *such wille*, as ȝe ysep, broȝte þis lond to gronde (R. or GL. I. 59.). War to liveth *selke a wrecche*? (WRIGHT, *Anecd.* p. 10.). Somme chosen chaffare . . . *Swiche men* thryveth (P. PLOUGHM. p. 3.). Þe grett kaisers and þe kinges, And alle *suilk laverdinges* (ANTICRIST 143.). The form *slyke*, *slike* is presented by (WRIGHT, *Anecd.* p. 31, TOWN. M. p. 26. 59 281. Criste . . . dyed for thame on *slyke a tree* To brynge thame owte of my posté (Ms. in HALLIW. v.). Here also belongs the form *sli*: Bot alle *sli thinges* wrought wit art, O sothfastnes sal ha na part (ANTICRIST 173.). Halfsax: *Swillic lif* iss all þwerret ut dæd Fra weoreldshippess lusstess (ORM. 1632.). He makede ane riche burh . . . *swlc werc* him þuhte swiðe muri (LAJAN. I. 119.). To *swuche forewarde* fon ich hit wulle (I. 231.) [to *þis f.* modern text]. *Swulc lac* him brohte þat leof him wes to habben (III. 67.). Scal arisen *swilc a sune* (LAJAN. II. 368.). *Swillic menn* soþfast meocnesse folliþenn (ORM. 1636.). Anglosax.: God, þe sealde *srylcne anveald* mannun (MATH. 9, 8.). Þý ic vundrige for hvý hi gilpan *svelces anvealdes* (BOETH. 29, 1.). Ne magon nā *swilce men* makjan vununge þam clængeornan Gode (BASIL, *Admonit.* 7.). Manegum *srylcum bigapellum* he sprā tō hym (MARC. 4, 33.).

Such is combined with an adjective determination before a substantive, when the demonstrative element of the pronoun often seems designed to render prominent not so much the substantive united with the adjective as the adjective.

I never saw *such noble fury* in so poor a thing (SHAKSP., *Cymb.* 5, 5.). What wisdom is this which is given unto him, that even *such mighty works* are wrought by his hands? (MARK 6, 2.) The life of Milton has been already written in so many forms, and with *such minute inquiry*, that I might perhaps more properly have contented myself etc. (JOHNS., *Lives* 1.). *Such sudden and violent revenge* would not have been thought strange in Scotland (MACAUL.,

Hist. of E. II. 145.). The possessor of *such rare and valuable works* (IRVING, Columb. Pref.). — Therewith stands the determination of the adjective by *so*, which meets it immediately: Did you ever hear *so conceited, ignorant a wretch?* (FIELD., The Temple Beau 1, 2.) The vicinity of *so remarkable a people* early began to produce an effect on the public mind of England (MACAUL, Hist. of E. I. 12.).

Such has a substantive, already determined by an adjective, in the relation of inordination; the emphasis which may here be laid upon the adjective, awakens in part the semblance that *such* is to contain only its determination. Comp. moreover *such* with an article following it: On *such a bitter night* (DICKENS, Christm. Car. 1.). It is readily intelligible that, objectively considered, the effect of *such* may agree with that of *so*. Modern-Highdutch: *Solch guter Mann*; *solch ein guter Mann* and *so ein guter Mann*, wherein the German goes indeed so far as to substitute *so* generally for *solch*: *solch ein Mann* and *so ein Mann*. The combination of *such* with substantives adjectively determined was also to be formerly met with. Old-Engl.: Ys my fader ybrojt in *such deoful cas?* (R. or GL. I. 35.) *Suche glaryng eyghen* hadde he as an hare (CHAUC., C. T. 686.). *Suche foule venymouse bestes* (MAUNDEV. p. 61.); beside: With *swich an esy manere* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 307.), Unto *such a worthi man* as he (CHAUC., C. T. 243.) and He is *so foule* a thing (AMIS. A. AMIL. 1593.). Nowher *so besy* a man as he ther nas (CHAUC., C. T. 323.). *So noble* a man *so valiant* lord and knyght (SKELTON I. 7.). Halfsax: Himm reoweþþ þatt he noht ne maþ *Swille haliz biene* shæwenn, Alls himm hiss herrte bereþþ to (OAM. 5588.), comp.: þho wass *swa bifundenn wif* þatt þho ne mihhte tæmenn (129.). In Anglosaxon the combination of *swylc* with substantives attributively determined is not familiar: the immediate determination of the adjective by *swá* is frequent: Hvig eart þu . . *swá gedrefedes módes?* (APOLLON. or T. p. 2.) Hvá vās ælre *swá dirstiges módes?* (ib.). Nis nāne vuht þe mæge ôððe ville *swá heðgum gode* wiðcwædan (BOETH. 35, 4.).

The addition of *another* to *such*, sometimes, especially in former times, makes *other* appear pleonastic.

I must use you in *such another trick* (SHAKSP., Temp. 4, 1.). O *such another* sleep, that I might see But *such another man* (Ant. a. Cleop. 5, 2.). *Such another chance* may not present itself for months again (THACKER., Hist. of H. Esm. 3, 10.).

Old-Engl.: *Sweche another noyse* herd I never er (Cov. MYST. p. 395.). Ye neuer dwelte in *suche an other place* (SKELTON I. 38.). "Have ye kept me none other Blyssyng . . ?" — "*Sich an other* have I none (TOWN. M. p. 43.). In the most ancient language we find. Anglosax.: *ôðer swylc*, aliud tale, Old-norse: *annat slikt* (ATLAKVIDA 6.).

Such also combines with *like*, a pleonasm, in which an element already contained in *such*, which has become unrecognisable through the elision of *li* before *ch*, is repeated.

And even with *such like valour*, men hang and drown Their proper selves (SHAKSP., Temp. 8, 3.). For *such like need* . . Norham can find you guides enow (SCOTT, Marm. 1, 19.). For *such like petty crimes* as these (SHAKSP., Two Gentlem. 4, 1.). Many other *such like things* (MARK 7, 8.). What on earth has Nero, Or any *such like sovereign buffoons*, To do with the transactions of my hero (BYR., D. Juan 3, 110.).

I have not observed this composition in olden times, although similar is

found even in Goth.: *Jah anþar galeik svaileikata manag taujip* (MARK. 7, 8.), in Anglosax.: *Manega ððre pyllice ping ge dðð*. An elliptical or substantive *such-like*, in the meaning of *alia hoc genus*, is popular, for which *such*, standing alone in a like sense, occurs in dialects: A keeper complained that all sorts of "varmins" infested his woods" pole-cats, wizzles, stoats *and such* (STERNBERG, Dial. of Northamptonsh. p. 109.). Comp. Old-Engl.: *Beneficis*, and *dignites*, *prelacies*, *and suche other* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 41.). Halfsax.: *All þatt wass unnclede deor, Off horrs, off swilke* (Orm. 7809.). This *and such* becomes in part an insignificant addition, which may be compared with *and so* (see p. 115.) comp. *I won't stay here haggling all day and such* (Leicestersh.).

The reduplication *such and (or) such* is frequent, by which an indeterminate or differently determinable person or thing is denoted.

No man or woman ever once in all his life inquired the way to *such and such a place* (DICKENS, Christm. Car. 1.). That the monks were of *such and such genus*, *such and such a number* (CARL., Past a. Pres. 2, 2.). And, if still free, that *such or such a lover* Might please perhaps, a virtuous wife can quell *Such* thoughts (BYRON, D. Juan 1, 78.).

The analogy with the Fr. *tel et tel* is obvious, yet the repetition at least is genuinely Germanic. Halfsax.: *All þejre lac wass swilc annd swilc* (Orm. 1006.). *Annd seggesst swilc annd swilc wass þu* (1512.). *All swilc annd swilc comm Sannt Johan To shæwenn* (9381.). *Forr swilc annd swilc wass Drihhtin lap Saducewisshe leode* 9749.). Anglosax.: *Be swilcum and be swilcum þu miht āngitan þot se crāft þās lichoman bið on þam mōde* (Boeth. 38, 1.). This form certainly diverges frequently from the present one, so far as a demonstrative reference to what precedes is contained in it. The French form may therefore not be without influence. Compare moreover the repetition of *so* p. 115.).

β. *Such*, referred backwards, readily leans upon a preceding substantive notion.

On *such a stool* immortal Alfred sat . . And *such* in ancient halls and mansions drear May still be seen (COWP. p. 163.). You are *our elder brother* — as *such* we view you (THACKER., Hist. of H. Esm. 3, 4.). Adulation ever follows *the ambitious*; for *such* alone receive most pleasure from flattery (GOLDSM., Vic. 3.).

Old-Engl.: Here is *hunger*, and *purst*, *elde*, *unhale*, *flit*, and *win*, *ece*, and *smertinge*, *sorinesse*, *werinesse*, and *oðre woice* muchel. Of *swilch* mai gisen men þe ani god cunnen (WRIGHT A. MALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 130.). My *gyrdille* gay and *purs* of silk and *cote* away thou shalle, Whils I am we-re-re of *swylke*, the longere mercy may I calle (TOWN. M. p. 292.). *Ðan sal þar rise in þat siqur A soru, swilk* was never ar (ANTICRIST 205.). Halfsax.: He somenede *færd*, *swulc* nes næuere ear on erde (LAJAM. I 177.). In these last cases *swilk*, *swulc* may be taken relatively; see the Adjective sentence. Anglosax.; *Lætā þa tythingas tō me cuman . . swylcera ys Godes rice* (Luc. 18, 16.). Goth.: *Unte þize svaileikaize ist þiudangardi gups* (ib.).

γ. *Such*, used substantively, is referred to persons in the plural, whose constitution or character is previously indicated in a general way, (without a preceding substantives serving for its support) but is mostly more particularly denoted by a modal sentence

introduced by *as*; the place of which was formerly often taken by an adjective sentence.

Receive him therefore in the Lord with all gladness; and hold *such* in reputation (Phil. 2, 29.) [τοὺς τοιοῦτους]. No little part Of *such* as have been consuls (BEN JONS., Sejanus 1, 1.). In at this gate none pass The vigilance here placed, but *such* as come Well known from Heav'n (MILT., P. L. 4, 579.). *Such* as I are free in spirit when our limbs are chained (SCOTT, Qu. Durw. 16.). Principal sentences with an adjective sentence following, as: The merit of *such* whose modesty otherwise would have suppressed it (ADDIS.) are at present censured. See the Adjective Sentence.

Old-Engl.: It were ayeins kynde . . That any creature sholde konne al, Except Crist oone: Ayein *swiche* Salomon speketh (P. PLOUGH. p. 297.). And seide to *swiche* that suffre wolde, That patientes vincunt (p. 311.). Ozias seith for *swiche* That sike ben and feble (p. 327.). Halfsax.: Alle þa patt lofenn Godd . . *swillke* sindene Cristess folle Annd Cristess Kine-riche Annd Crist shall rixlenn aȝ occ aȝ Inn heoffness ærd i *swillke* (Orm. 2251—2264.). Anglosaxon instances are wanting; comp. however the Goth.: Andnimaip nu ina in frauin mip allai fahedai jah þans *swaleikans* sverans habaip (Phil. 2, 29.). Compare too the Adjective Sentence.

The substantive use of the neuter is not foreign to the older language. Old-Engl.: After þat mon souit als *swyich* sal he mouin (WRIGHT A. HALLW. Rel. Ant. I. 172.). Þe godmen sal *swilk* se be wroght, þai sal be studiand in pair thoght Queþer þat he be crist or nai (ANTICRIST 181.). Halfsax.: All *swille* annd *swille* comm Saant Johan To shæwenn (Orm. 9381.). Anglosax.: Oðer *swile* (Exod. 7, 11.).

all, Anglosax. *eall*, *eal*, *al*, Goth. *alls*, Old-norse *allr*, Old-High-dutch *al*, Old-Fries. *al*, *ol* (see Vol. I. p. 311.), in general answers to the Gr. *πᾶς*, although it chiefly retains the idea of totality, as of the wholeness or allness of the individual object or of a collective notion, and of the totality of individuals, whereas the discrete or distributive conception (*omnis*, *quisque*) of the singular, falls more into the background.

α. In combination with substantive notions, to which pronouns used substantively are also attached, so far as they can be regarded as the bearers of the substantive in the attributive relation, the treatment of the singular is to be distinguished from that of the plural.

In the singular, if no other determinative is added to the substantive, the idea of the totality of the object, taken as a unit, also gives place to the discrete conception of it, so that the meaning of *every*, *each* may in some cases be substituted for *all*.

- Through *all Athens* (SHAKSP., Mids. N. Dr. 1, 2.). *All Paris* knows it (BULW., Richel. 5, 1.). Through *all Scotland*, near and far (SCOTT, Marm. 1, 20.). *All France* is eligible (CARL., Fr. Revol. 3, 1, 1.). I have sat here *all day* (SHAKSP., Meas. for Meas. 4, 1.). It had not been light *all day* (DICKENS, Christm. Car. 1.). *All night* long he did not cease to talk (THACKER., Hist. of H. Esm. 1, 12.). I have not had a wink of sleep *all night* (BOURCAULT, Lond. Assur. 1.). — By what melancholy magic have they lost *all power* to amuse the least exacting class of readers? (KAVANAGH, Fr. Women of Litt. 3.). *All search* as yet, in vain

for Mauprat (BULW., Richel. 4, 1.). Flow'r of *all* hue (MILT., P. L. 4, 256.). For Justice *All* place a temple, and *all* season, summer! (ib.) In thee *all* passion becomes passionless (TENNYS. p. 82.). In the cases last cited, the meaning *quilibet* comes forth, most readily with generic names, whereas abstract terms, which do not well admit a plural, do not in the same manner require this discrimination of the total compass of the notion, and of its isolation, thought at the same time.

If another determinative, especially the definite article, a demonstrative or a possessive pronoun, is added to the substantive notion, the comprehension of the whole or of allness is still more estranged by those very determinations of a distributive conception of them.

All the story of this night told over (SHAKSP., Mids. N. Dr. 5, 1.). The sov'reignty of *all* the world (BEN JONS., Sejanus 2, 1.). I have missed him *all* the morning (BULW., Lady of L. 5, 1.). We will sing to you *all* the day (TENNYS. p. 44.). Thou, to me, except a father's name, Hast *all* the father been (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 5, 2.). *All* this letter . . . was mere idle talk (THACKER., Hist. of H. Esm. 3, 8.). Tiberius borrows *all* His little light from us (BEN JONS., Sejanus 2, 1.). Three Earls came against him with *all* their train (SCOTT, Harold 1, 3.). The demonstrative pronoun following *all* appears as a substantive: You told her *all* this (TAYLOR A. READE, Masks 2, 1.).

All, accompanying the plural, with or without another determinative, comprehends the individuals in a totality.

A word that *all* men love (SHAKSP., Love's L. L. 4, 3.). She is jealous, *all* women are (THACKER., Hist. of H. Esm. 3, 7.). Esmond laughed at *all* widows, *all* wives, *all* women (2, 5.). Happy is Rome of *all* earth's other states (BEN JONS., Poetaster 5, 1.). That home-felt joy *all* other joys excelling (ROGERS, Hum. Life). Are *all* these things perceived in me? (SHAKSP., Two Gentlem. 2, 1.) I may tell *all* my bones (Ps. 22, 17.). I have used up *all* my common excuses on his duns (BOURICAULT, Lond. Assur. 1.).

Although the affinity of *all*, the use of which is of the widest extent in the Germanic language, to the Gr. *ὅλος* is not to be proved, it yet seems certain, that the more concrete idea of geometrical completeness or wholeness preceded the more abstract one of arithmetical totality. The former also chiefly pervades the singular. Here too *all* deviates from *πᾶς* (*quilibet*) used without the article, in modern times, and even in Anglosax. in some measure, since an Anglosaxon *ælc* is frequently substituted for this *πᾶς*, which is often rendered in Goth. by *alls*: LUC. 3, 5. 6. 4, 37. 5, 17. JOH. 5, 25. In the more ancient language the categories above cited are moreover repeated.

Thus in the Singular. Old-Engl.: þe kyng of Westsex hadde þo *al* Wiltshire (R. or GL. I. 5.). *Al* Soupsæ he hadde also (ib.). *Al* Engelond to wynne (P. PLOUGHM. p. 11.). Of *alle* Asye the lesse (MACDEV. p. 8.). *Al* day to drynken At diverse tavernes (P. PLOUGHM. p. 33.). To *all* sturnhede he drou (E. or GL. II. 369.). Þe gospelle and *al* hali writt He sal fordo (ANTICRIST 17.). He sal do rise *alle* maumentri (19.). Of *ulle* maner o craftes ille, Of *alle* falsched þai sal him fille (I. 29.). Halfsax.: He *was* *all* daz3 Unncleue anan till efenn (ORM. 1104.). To brukenn *alle* bliise

(656.). Godd forrwerppēþ *All modizlēȝe*, and *grediȝlēȝe*, Annd *irre*, annd gluternesse (3993.). Anglosax.: Hine geond *ealle eorðan* söhton (APOLLON. OF T. p. 7.). On *ealle Judæa* (LCC. 7, 17.). Þonne smeað min tunge . . *ealne dæg* þin lof (Ps. 34, 26.). Ic vās *ealne dæg* eac gesvungen (72, 11.). Ðā heah-sacerdas söhton, and *eall geþeaht*, tāle ongean þone Hælend (MARC. 14, 55.). *Eall folc* ūs hænð (20, 6.). *Yearð eal here* sōna burhvarena blind (CAEDM. 2484.). Þone geōcend þe ūs *eall gōd sylð* (AZARIAS 88. Grein).

Old-Engl.: She bryngeth . . *al the comune* in care (P. PLOUGHM. p. 52.). He bigan to spelle tille *alle þe chiuatrie* (LANGT. I. 2.). *Al that cité* he wolde brenne (ALIS. 2703.). *Al thiike while* (CHAEC., C. T. p. 196. II.). For *al his grete wounde* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 375.). Hallsax.: *All þe bisscopp wass* þær hidd, Annd lokenn þær wippinnenn (ORM. 1754.). Þe strengeste of *al þe tune* (LAȜAM. I. 258.). *Al þat land* heo makeden west (II. 16.). *Mid allen his strengðe* (I. 29.). Mid *alle heore mihte* (II. 28.). Anglosax.: *Eall seō mænigeo* hym tō com (MARC. 2, 13.). Ðā *eall þāt folc* vās gefulod (LCC. 3, 21.). *Eall þeas woruld* (CAEDM. 601.) and so forth. An *all* also often combines with the demonstrative pronoun used substantively. Old-Engl.: *All this* suffred oure Lord (CHAEC., C. T. p. 189. II.). Anglosax.: *Eall þys* ic heold of minre geōguðe (18, 21.). *Syle eall þāt þu hæfst*, and *syle eall þāt* þearfum (18, 22.). Sometimes we meet the combination with the indefinite article. Old-Engl.: It not onely pervertith oon man but *al a puple* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 51.).

Likewise in the plural. Old-Engl.: Wit and wisdom, The welle of *alle craftes* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 296.). *Alle kingrikes* þat Rome wat under (ANTRICRIST 257.). *Alle þe hordes* þar ar hid (195.). I fond there freres *Alle the foure ordres* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 4.). *Alle hire lif daies* (p. 52.). In *al his ofers* (ANTRICRIST 132.). Hallsax.: Hæfedd off *alle preostess* (ORM. 632.). *Al þa Frense leoden* (LAȜAM. I. 207.). *Alle þe prestess* (ORM. 482.). Anglosax.: Åtȳvde him *ealle ricu* eorðan ymbhehvyrtes (LCC. 4, 5.). Vā eov þonne eov *ealle men* bletsjað (6, 26.). Beforan ansȳne *ealra folca* (2, 31.). Ðu ēfest miht *ealra læca* (AGS. POES. II. 280. Grein.). Geheold *ealle þas word* (LCC. 2, 19.). Ðȳ lās ve ārleāse *ealra þinra mildsa* þurh feōndscipe fremde veorðan (AGS. POES. II. 286.). Ofer *coll hyra nehheburas* (LCC. 1, 65.).

In the attributive relation in the narrower sense, in which the determinations of the substantive notion coalesce with the latter into a unity of accent, *all* stands at the front and tolerates no article before it. The *all* immediately following the substantive, which does not take away the attributive relation, and takes only the acute accent, else belonging to the substantive, when it can be preceded by any other determination, is not foreign to the language, although it has become more rare in prose. Where *all* follows the substantive, it stands either alone or with a further determination, and *all* receives, with a noun or an adverb after it, either an appositive or an adverbial character, so that the syntactical discrimination of the indeterminate pronoun *all* and of the adverb of like sound is in many cases rendered more difficult.

Before the beards of *the warders all* (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 3, 11.). And startled forth the *warriors all* (3, 26.). — A *flower all gold* (TENNYS. p. 39.). Like the stone That sheds a *lustre all its own* (ROGERS, Hum. Life). The fourscore *windows all alight* (TENNYS. p. 24.).

all often follows the verb, whereby it is separated from its sub-

stantive notion; even here the relation is obscured, if *all* meets with an adjective or participle whose adverbial determination it may constitute: And now *the world* is *all* before her (ROGERS, *Jacqueline* 1.). Where the *guests* stood *all* aside (SCOTT, *Marm.* 1, 12.). *The rest* are *all* more stupid one than another (R. ROY). *His strong helm*, of mighty cost, was *all* with burnish'd gold emboss'd (*Marm.* 1, 6.).

A prepositive *all* also appears separated by the verb from a substantive following it, when it is joined to the latter in an attributive relation.

The sound . . did *all* confound *her sense* (TENNYSON p. 12.). *All* in the blue unclouded weather *Thick-jewell'd* shone *the saddle-leather* (p. 69.).

We mention these partly doubtful cases, because they remind us of an ancient warranted use of the pronoun. We reserve the combination of *all* with personal pronouns for the discussion of the appositive relation. The postpositive *all* is not unfamiliar to in ancient times. Old-Engl.: Quar es þe rote of *ivels alle* (ANTICRIST 110.). O þe maumentri þair *temples alle* (365.). Over *godd's alle* (300.). Wel they warden *gatis alle* (ALIS. 2667.). Was thou not farist of *angels alle*? (TOWN. M. p. 4.). Halfsax.: Uss birp nu biforenn Godd Offirenn þa *lakess alle* Rihht o þatt wise (ORM. 1010.). In Anglosaxon this position is frequent: *Verod eall ærās* (CAEDM. 3029.). *þāt folc eall ofslōgon* (SAX. CHR. 921.). *þāt corn eal forbārndon* (894.). *þāt scip eall tōbārat* (APOLL. OF T. p. 11.). Apollonius *gefēran ealle forvardon* (ib.). *Þā forlēton his leorning-cnihtas ealle hine* (MARC. 14, 50.). — Further combinations of *all* in such a case, which may pass as appositive, are not wanting. Old-Engl.: With *toures and pymacles alle of gold* (MAUNDEV. p. 312.). Anglosax.: Her līð *ūre ealdor eall forheāven* (BYRHTNOTH. 314. Grein).

The *all* separated by a verb from a preceding substantive is likewise ancient. Old-Engl.: þe kyng Cadwaladre *þis lond* had *alle lorn* (LANGT. I. 1.). Halfsax.: Whannse *þatt presteflocc* . . þewwdeðd hæffden *all* (ORM. 547.). Annd talde laþhess *presteflocc* Comm *all* off þa twa prestess (489.). Anglosax.: *Feorhæceno cynn*, þā þe flōd vecceð geond hronrāde, inc hƿrað *eall* (CAEDM. 204.). The combination with adjectives is common. Old-Engl.: The *chirche* . . is bothe gret and fair, and *alle fulle* of grete simulacres (MAUNDEV. p. 173.). This *chirche* is fulle richely wroughte, and *alle overgyllt* withinne (ib.). Anglosax.: penceð þāt *his vise* velhvām pince *eal unforçūð* (AGS. POES. I. 211. Grein). Since *eal* is also used adverbially in Anglosaxon, the separation of the pronoun and of the adverb is not always certain here. The separation of the prepositive *eal* by other parts of the sentence from the substantive to which it may be referred is not uncommon in Anglosaxon: *Eal vās þāt mearcland morðre bevunden* (ANDREAS 19.). Ic *eall* gebār *vrāðe vrōhtas* geond verpeode (Juliana 506.). Halfsax.: *Alle* ich habbe *pine casles* [castles] *swiðe wel bitæht* (LAȜAM. II. 136.).

- β. *All* also stands by itself, with a reference backwards to one or several preceding substantives: Beyond the Batavians . . dwelt the great Frisian family . . The Zuyder Zee and the Dollart . . did not then interpose boundaries between kindred tribes. *All* formed a homogeneous nation of pure German origin (MOTLEY, *Dutch Republ.* 1, 2.).

Old-Engl.: The sevene artz and *alle* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 212.). Thanne bereth the crop kynde fruyt And clennest of *alle* (p. 334.). Anglosax.: Ne hafu ic in heafde hƿite loccas . . nē ic breāga ne brūna brūcan mōste, ac me bescyrede scyppend *eallum* (AGS. POES. II. 390. Grein).

- γ. *All* has been used substantively from the most ancient times, and used in the plural of persons, the singular as a neuter, like the German *Alles* (*πᾶν πάντα*). In a few cases the distinction of the plural from the singular, so far as *alles* may also comprise persons, is not possible.

Death is certain to *all*, *all* shall die (SHAKSP., II Henry IV. 3, 2.). To *all* that need (Ant. a. Cleop. 5, 2.). What few can learn, and *all* suppose they know (COWP. p. 112.). It looked as *all* within were blest (ROGERS, Jacqueline 1.). — *All* is one with her (SHAKSP., Merry W. 2, 2.). On *all* that blooms below, or shines above (COWP. p. 78.). Cleveland . . listened in silence to *all* the father had to say (BULW., Maltrav. 1, 12.). *All* grows and dies, each by its own wondrous laws (CARL., Fr. Revol. 1, 2, 1.). When I am gone, *all* is over with me (FIELD., T. Jon. 12, 3.). But one word — I can explain *all* (TAYLOR A. READE, Masks 1, 2.). Nor was this *all* (WARREN, Now a. Then 1.). Saddest of *all*, her name has remained as a by-word with a posterity that has never cared to read her (KAVANAGH, Fr. Wom. of Lett. 2.). Here also belongs: Laughing *all* she can (TENNYS. p. 5.), where the intransitive operates transitively. The neuter tolerates possessives with it: A man can but give his best and *his all* (THACKER., Hist. of E. Esm. 2, 15.). The neuter *all* may also be found in the comprehension of a series of substantive notions, or of the climax towards totality: I am ready to renounce credit — character — wife — *all* for you (TAYLOR A. READE. Masks 1, 2.). Friends, glory, France, *all* reft from me (BULW., Richel. 4, 2.).

Instances of the personified in the plural are, in Old-Engl.: To thee and to *alle* that schulyn be saved (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 41.). *Alle* þat he cristen finds þare . . He sal þam sla (ANTICRIST 134.). To *alle* that liveth (P. PLOUGHM. p. 275.). So welles as hym that *alle* shalle deme (TOWN. M. p. 3.). Halssax.: *Alle* þe weren at þisse reade biluode þeos runen (LAȜAM. I. 17.). Mucþele lue heold wið *alle* þat ȝirnden his grið (II. 4.). Anglosax.: Se cyng se silf and *ealle* þe þar andvearde wæron (APOLLON OF T. 17.). Se þe of heofone com se ys ofer *ealle* (JON. 3, 31.). *Ealle* vundredon (MARC. 2, 12.). Instances of the neuter used substantively. Old-Engl.: Heaven and erth and *alle* that is (TOWN. M. p. 2.). *Alle* is in my sight (p. 1.). It were ayeins kynde . . That any creature sholde konne *al* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 297.). Halssax.: Forr *all* þatt æfre onn erpe iss ned . . *all* læcheþ þemm Goddspelles hallþe lare (ORM. Ded. 121.). Anglosax.: Syle *eall* þat þu hæfst (LUC. 18, 22.). Dælde *eall* þit heo æhte (MARC. 5, 26.). *Eall* he his leorning-cnithum æsundron rehte (4, 34.). Me is miht ofer *eall* geseald (ANDR. 1434.). In Gothic the neuter plural is also employed in the Greek fashion, like *πάντα, τὰ πάντα*; for ex. LUC 2, 20. 3, 20. JON. 17, 7. and often.

Other words, such as *sundry*, *certain*, *several*, *different*, *divers*, which may be regarded as adjective indeterminate pronouns, are not distinguished, in their syntactical relations, from other adjectives. Those properly denoting a variety or separation are often added, especially in former times, to other indeterminate pronouns or numerals, and may be considered in part as pleonastic, in part as emphasizing the separation.

Each several paper (SHAKSP., Two Gentlem. 1, 2.). *Every several*

lineament (Rom. a. Jul. 1, 3.). *Many several* ways (Henry V. 1, 2.). *A hundred several* times (Two Gentlem. 4, 4.). *Two several* powers (Coriol. 4, 6.) and the like.

Compare Old-Engl.: Of *many a dyverse* greovus poynt (MAUNDEV. p. 314.). Amonges so *many a dyverse* folk (ib.). *Many* other *dyverse* contrees (p. 313.). Chese o pers, O *mani* other *alsua divers* (ANTICRIST 113.). I have hym sent Of *many* bestes *sere* present (TOWNS. M. p. 47.), cf: Romaunces *many* and *sere* (Ms. in Halliw. v. *sere*). Old-Fr. *seivre* for ex. *seivrer*, *sevrer*, *separare*.

To the indeterminate pronouns may also be referred the interrogative relative, and generalizing pronouns compounded with *ever*, so far as they appear adjectively. They are treated of in the doctrine of the concessive sentence. Among them the postpositive *whatever* often appears as a determinative, also appearing outside of the concessive sentence: There being no room for any physical *discovery whatever* (WHATELY, Logic). No *allusion whatever* (BYRON, Lett.). *Whatever* is, in point of fact, used elliptically in such a case. Although this, as well as other similar forms, stands adjectively with the substantive in the concessive sentence: I hoped that *whatever wine* he drank was neat (BYRON, Lett.), the very postposition separates *whatever* from the relation with its substantive to the verb of the predicate, and requires of itself a completion by a verb and a subject, although it thus approaches the Latin *quicunque*, Fr. *quelconque*.

This employment of the generalizing pronoun belongs to modern times.

Repetition and Non-repetition of Indeterminate Pronouns.

If the same adjective indeterminate pronoun gives the determination to more than one substantive, its non-repetition, especially in the copulative and disjunctive relation, is very common. The repetition of the polysyllabic, or, at least, heavier forms, where the stricter separation of the notions, their opposition, or the emphatic prominence of the identical determination is not intended, seems rather ill-sounding. The non-repetition in an asyndetic connection is a matter of course. Plural forms, on the other hand, favour the comprehension of the substantives under an indeterminate pronoun.

Give me *some wine* and *powder* for my teeth (BEN JONS., Catilina 2, 1.). *Some ruined temple* or *fallen monument* (ROGERS, It. Naples.). From *many an inland town* and *haven large* (TENNYS. p. 102.). *Many a prayer* and *pater-noster* (LONGF. I. 234.). *Many hours in each day* and *night* (THACKER., Hist. of H. Esm. 3, 9.). In *every lineament, branch, shape, and form* (SHAKSP., Much Ado 5, 1.). Be death your theme in *ev'ry place* and *hour* (YOUNG, N. Th. 5, 730.). If you have *any pity, grace, or manners* (SHAKSP., Mids. N. Dr. 3, 2.). In *every word* and *action* (KINGSLEY, Two Years ago 1, 1.). *Beauty* and *glory enough* (ib.). I have been writing . . unto *all the tribes* And *centuries* (BEN JONS., Catilina 2, 1.). In *all the commandments* and *ordinances* of the Lord (LUKE 1, 6.). The humble sphere of *all her joys* and *sorrows* (ROGERS, Jacqueline 1.). *Some few offi-*

cers and *members* of Parliament had been invited (THACKER., Hist. of H. Esm. 3, 12.) and the like. Therewith stand such repetitions as: Healing *every sickness* and *every disease* (MATTH. 9, 35.). At home the friend Of *every worth* and *every splendid art* (THOMSON, Autumn), especially with members asyndetically connected: *Such scenes, such men* destroy the public weal (BYRON p. 324.). I have *no urns, no dusty monuments, No broken images* of ancestors (BEN JONS., Catilina 3, 1.). Edmond laughed at *all widows, all wives, all women* (THACKER., Hist. of H. Esm. 2, 5.).

Ol-Engl.: *Every man and womman and child* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 38.). *Such a lord and light* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 385.). For *any weye or warde* (p. 388.). God over *alle thinges* and *remes* (MAUNDEV. p. 35.), along with: *Moni a pound and moni a marke* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 8.). *Such clamour And such pursuyte* (CHAUC., C. T. 6471.). That sechen *every lond* and *every stream* (6449.). Even Anglosaxon comprises several substantives in a similar manner under one indeterminate pronoun: *Ælc munt and beorh byð genyðerod* (LUC. 3, 5), *Gangende on eallum hys bebodum and rihtvisnessum* (MATTH. 9, 35.); yet repetition is familiar to it: *Hælende ælce ædle, and ælce untrummysse* (MATTH. 9, 35.). It is even found even where various qualities are added to the same object: *pā sāt sum eald and sum æfestig ealdorman* (APOLLON OF T. p. 14.).

Indeterminate Pronouns in the partitive Relation.

Indeterminate pronouns, so far as they are terms for a continuous or a discrete quantity, may appear as partitive determinations of a whole, or of a total number. Thus they appear in the partitive relation to a totality, from which the part denoted by it is to be separated mentally. The modern language subjoins the totality to them with the preposition *of*, by which the genitive, originally in use here, is paraphrased. It is remarkable that the expression for totality, *all*, is assimilated to the rest of the indeterminate pronouns, to which *both* presents an analogy among numerals, so far as the total number does not exceed duality. *All* is treated thus in combination with fundamental numbers.

a. The syntactical combination of these pronouns with the plural of a substantive or of a pronoun, or with a collective name in the singular, is first to be considered. With the exception of *none* the pronouns may here appear in the shape which they have as adjective determinations; but some of them, such as *any, each, every*, may combine with *one*, which has been especially favoured with *every* in modern times. *Several, certain, divers*, and the like, also share the quality of indeterminate pronouns in such a relation. With a plural after them, the pronouns are to be thought as decidedly agreeing in gender with the substantive; with a collective after them, the idea of the individuals comprised thereunder decides the gender. If the pronouns are considered in all these cases as used substantively, this is right with regard to their syntactical effect; they however retain their dependent nature by only receiving their definite relation and meaning by a substantive or pronoun syntactically combined with them. They are therefore in a certain

measure in the same case as the pronouns referring backwards, used absolutely.

One, cited as an indeterminate pronoun, hardly belongs to this series, although it does not always bring out with particular emphasis the idea of unity in opposition to plurality: He had *one of the best appetites* in the world (FIELD., T. Jon. 4, 10.). And a smile — not *one of your unmeaning wooden grins* (DICKENS, Pickw. 2, 19.).

As to the rest of the indeterminates, comp.: They understood *none of these things* (LUKE 18, 34.) [οὐδέν τούτων]. *None of the women* who have written during the last two centuries received more honours (KAVANAGH, Fr. Wom. of Lett. 2.). *Of Scotland's stubborn barons none* would march to southern wars (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 4, 8.). *None of them* said anything to his vindication (MACAUL., Hist. of E. II. 55.). I have . . . *Some of my mistress' marks* upon my shoulders (SHAKSP., Com. of Err. 1, 1.). *Some of Mr. Roscoe's townsmen* may regard him merely as a man of business (IRVING, Sk. B. Roscoe). *Some of them* did us no great honour (GOLDSM., Vic. 1.). This good man — *few of you* deserve that title (SHAKSP., Henry VIII. 5, 2.). *Few of them* ordinarily can stand that title (THACKER., Hist. of H. Esm. 2, 4.). After *any of these interviews* between her lovers, of which there were several, she usually retired to solitude (GOLDSM., Vic 17.). I suppose you think yourself more handsomer than *any of us* (FIELD., T. Jon. 4, 9.). When *any one of our relations* was found to be a person of a very bad character (GOLDSM., Vic. 1.). *Many of their works*, also, undergo a kind of metempsychosis (IRVING, Sk. B. The art of Book-Making). I was obliged to become poetical in *many of my motives* (LEWES, G. II. 6.). *To each of you* one fair (SHAKSP., All's Well 2, 3.). *Each of the combatants* (FIELD., T. Jon. 4, 8.). *To each one of you* (SHAKSP., Tit. Andron. 3, 1.). I may be negligent, foolish, and fearful; In *every one of these* no man is free (Wint. Tale 1, 2.). *Every one of its ten volumes* (KAVANAGH, Fr. Wom. of Lett. 2.). *Every one of them* wore chains (DICKENS, Christm. Car. 1.). Though I shall not perhaps be able absolutely to acquit him of *either of these charges* (FIELD., T. Jon. 4, 6.). For *either of these particulars* no authority is given (JOHNS., Lives I. Dryden). *Neither of us* spoke (BULW.). Among *such of the French* as were poor enough to be merry (GOLDSM., Vic. 20.). *Certain of the scribes* (MATTH. 9, 3. cf. MARK 2, 6. 11, 5. LUKE 7, 2.). *Divers of them* came from far (MARK 8, 3.). There are *several of the minor poems* of Milton on which we would willingly make a few remarks (MACAUL., Essays I. 17.). *All of us* hold this for true (BUTL., Hud. 2, 2, 255.). There was a visible embarrassment of *all four of us* (WARREN, Diary 1, 9.).

Instances of the combination of pronouns with collectives are: *Every of this happy number*, That have endur'd shrewd days and nights with us (SHAKSP., As You Like It. 5, 4.). *Some of the crew* (IRVING, Sk. B. The Voyage) and the like.

In Old-English the genitive of pronouns in long found beside the periphrasis with *of* in these cases: Now is there *non of the cālyffes* (MAUNDEV.

A. The attributive Relation. 1. Determinatives in the Partitive Relation. 277

p. 44.). *None of the seven synnes* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 287.). *Som of us hym never saw* (TOWN. M. p. 186.). *Hwar ase eni of peos was ofer is* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 67.). Thus he dothe . . when he will have *any of hem* (MAUNDEV. p. 39.). *Fals or Favel, Or any of hise feeris* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 39.). *Of fees and robes had he many oon* (CHAUC., C. T. p. 319.). *Many of hire houres* Arn doon un-devoutliche (p. 7.). *To manye of my bretheren* (p. 393.). *Fele of you* (p. 314.). *Eche of them* (CHAUC., C. T. p. 39.). *Ech of us* (1134.). *Ilkon of you* (TOWN. M. p. 319.). *Everyche of hem* hath be zere the mountance of 6 score floreyne (MAUNDEV. p. 38.). It behovethe, that *every of hem* holde 3 hors and a cameyll (ib.). *Everich of thise foure* (CHAUC., C. T. p. 189. II.). *Wolden everych of hem eten other* (p. 188. I.). *Everich of hem* (GAMLYN 119.). The armes . . Of *either of tho theves* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 373.). *Ayther off hem* othyr gan kysse (RICH. C. DE L. 1535.). *Nowher of pe familiars* ne beo fram hire lasdi (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 4.). *Neyther of us* (CHAUC., C. T. 1137.). Cayphas hadde envye And *othere of the Jewes* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 404.); with a collective. So dude never *non of thy linage* (ALIS. 3068.). *Of mankynde* thou shalt *none* sle (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 50.). The ancient genitive appears in: *Hir noon* may hente other (P. PLOUGHM. p. 287.). *Ene-myes and frendes Love hir eyther other* (p. 212.). *Kisse hir either other* (p. 446.). *Hir oon* fordoth *hir oother* (p. 373.). *Bad Reason . . recche of hir neither* (p. 67.). *Halfsax: Nan of hise possitless* (ORM. 13931.). *Fand sume off pa* patt tokenn wel Wipp himm (19155.). *Fele off pa* patt sæghenn þær þa tacness (15618.). *Monie off Rom-leoden* wolden þat hit awa eoden (LAJAM. III. 116.). *Ælc of heom* (I. 296.). *Off illc an off alle pa* (ORM. 509.). — *Haffde off Judewisshes folc* Himm chosenn *ane fewe* (19763.). *Off pe miccletec* att himm Well *fele* tokenn hæle (15502.). The genitive stands in: *patt zure nan* Ne seije þuss (9271.). *Heore nenne* (LAJAM. III. 57.). *Ezyperr here* (119. cf. 413. 10440.). In Anglosaxon the genitive interchanges with the case accompanied by *of*: *Nyste nân þæra sittendra* tō hvām he þāt sæde (JOH. 13, 28.). *Þær heora heretogena sum* ofslāgen veard (SAX. CHR. 794.). *Gif Cantvara ænig* in Lundenvic feoh gebycge (LEGG. Hloth. et Eadr. 17.). *Þāt heora ænig* unmihtigre beo þonne Almihtig God (BASIL., Hexam. 3.). *Heora feala* þær ādruncon (SAX. CHR. 794.). *Hiora manigne* ofslōg (BOETH. 35, 4.). *Manige sindon . . þāra* þe þu gehveorfest tō heofonlechte (ANDREAS 973.). *Ælc āgenra frīðmanna frīð* hābbe (LEGO. ÆTHELR. III. 3.). *Muneca gehwylc* þe ūte of mynstre sý (IV. 3.). *Þā ongan hiō hine lufjan, and hiora ægðer* oðerne (BOETH. 38, 1.), with a collective: *Nanne* ne sparedon *þās heresfolces* (JUD. 138, 23.). *Monige Cristes folces* (ELENE 499.). *Metod eallum* veold *gumena cynnes* (BEOV. 2114.). Combinations with *of* are not rare: *Sume of þām cnihtan* (SAX. CHR. 1083.). *Sume of þām bócerum* (MARC. 2, 6. cf. 7, 2. 13. 13.). *Feava oðre of þām heáfod-mannan* (SAX. CHR. 1106.). *Svā ys ælc of eow* (LUC. 14, 33.); as even in Goth.: *Af þaimai sumai* (1 TIM. 1, 6.).

- β. If, on the other hand, a singular with *of* is added to the indefinite pronoun, and which does not comprise collectively a multitude of individuals, the pronoun receives the character of a neuter substantive.

It seems perhaps difficult to conceive that any one should have had *enough of impudence* to lay down dogmatical rules in any art or science without the least foundation (FIELD., T. Jon. 5, 1.). With just *enough of learning* to misquote (BYRON p. 312.). He shall put *some of the blood* upon the horns of the altar (LEVIT. 4, 18.). I lack *some of thy instinct* (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 2, 4.). We must lay aside *some of our romance* (SHERID., Riv. 4, 2.). "Softly", said

the youth, falling back on his pillow, and losing *some of that colour* which alarmed his companion (COOPER, Spy 12.). "Sirrah, if they meet not with saint Nicholas clerks, I'll give thee this neck." — "No, I'll *none of it*: I pr'ythee, keep that for the hangman." (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 2, 1.) Israel would *none of me* (Ps. 81, 11.). *None of your violence*, sir! *none of your violence*, if you please; it won't do with me (SHERID., Riv. 2, 1.). Thy cousin lacks *none of thy company as now* (SCOTT, R. Roy 12.). But this is *none of my affair* (BULW., Rienzi 4, 5.). *None of the watchfulness*, which was so necessary to their situation, was neglected by the wary partisan (COOPER, Spy 5.). It had *none of the invidious character of a race* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 37.). *All of me* then shall die (MILT., P. L. 10, 792.). *All of wonderful and wild* Had rapture for the lonely child (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 6, 21.). From the Capitol to the Lateran swept in long procession *all that Rome* boasted of noble, of fair and brave (BULW., Rienzi 4, 5.). In the last instance the reference of *of noble* to *all* is primarily transferred to the relative.

The cases cited are shewn to be analogous, so that *some* and *none* appear to be of the same meaning as *something* and *nothing*. It would certainly remain to suppose an attraction of the indeterminate pronouns by the following substantive, as in the Gr.: ὁ ἥμισυς τοῦ ἀριθμοῦ (PLAT., Phaed. 104. a.). τὸν πολλὸν τοῦ χρόνου (HEROD. 1, 24.). τὴν πλείστην τῆς σφαρίδος (THUCYD. 7, 3.), instances of which are also presented by the Romance languages, especially in ancient times. See Diez's Romance Gr. 3, 146. A few of the above instances would certainly not agree here, so that the explanation of the indeterminate pronouns as neuters in this case appears justified. *Some* for *ex.* is sometimes used absolutely outside of this construction: It came to pass, as he sowed, *some* fell by the way-side (MARK 4, 4.). Compare Old-Engl.: Peter fished . . *Som* thei solde and *som* thei solde and *som* thei soden (P. PLOUGHM. p. 312.). For that thei beggen aboute, In buyldinge thei spende it, And on himself *som* (p. 314.). For *none* comp. p. 247. In the partitive relation those indeterminate pronouns also formerly occurred with the singular. Old-Engl.: Gold & seluer ich wol be zeue, & *ynow of eche store* (R. or GL. I. 13.). It menys of *sorow enoughe* (TOWN. M. p. 136.). *pis kyng hadde . . som of Gloucestre schire*, and of *Warwik schire* also (R. or GL. I. 5.). *Of that holy water* ther *sum* thow nome (HALLIW., Freemas. 600.). He gathyred *som of his gere* (TORRENT 652.). *Of thy golde* wolde he take *non* (RICH. C. DE L. 3547.). *Alle that hem nedethe of rytaylle* (MAUNDEV. p. 34.). Anglosax.: Gife ic him *pās leihtes genōg* (CAEDM. 616.), which is in the same case as: *pāe folces mycel ofslōh* (SAX. CHR. 626.). *Sōna hāilde unligigendes eal geseformod, fēt and folma* (BEOW. 1488.). Even Gothic also uses *all* in the singular with the partitive genitive: *All manageins* iddjedun du inma (MARC. 2, 14.) [omne turbæ]. *All gaskaftais* gups gop (I. TIMOTH. 4, 4.) [omne creaturæ]. In the Anglosaxon I cannot point to *sum* and *nān* with the partitive genitive. Compare moreover the Adjective c.

2. Qualitative Determinations

The adjective undertakes the qualitative determination of the substantive notion. But a substantive, either in a case or in connection with a preposition, may also be added to another, and con-

stitute its more particular determination. The stiff form of the adverb is found in a limited field in the place of an adjective. See p. 138. Since the infinitive is essentially equivalent to a substantive, it is also employed, in connection with prepositions, to determine the substantive notion; see p. 41.

The Adjective.

The adjective; whose function the participle, as the verbal adjective, also undertakes, is always to be thought as in concord with its substantive in number and case, whether preceding or following it.

a. The adjective determines a substantive in the stricter sense.

This *young gentleman* had a father (SHAKSP., *All's Well* 1, 1.). *Tired Nature's sweet restorer, balmy Sleep!* (YOUNG, *N. Th.* 1, 1.) God created *great whales*, and every *living creature* that moveth (GEN. 1, 21.). His waistcoat came to measure, I am afraid to say how many *Prussian ells* (CARL., *Fred. the Gr.* 4, 4.). He washed like a *very Mussulman*, five times a day (ib.). Swords drawn — before our *very palace* (BULW., *Richel.* 4, 1.). Your *very tears* are treachery (TH. MOORE p. 118.). Participles of the perfect may retain prepositions with them in the modern language, which derive their origin from the transmutation of the active into the passive: *Men approv'd of* by the Gods and Cato (ADDIS., *Cato* 1, 5.). Is she the *mighty thing* talked of? (GOLDSM., *G. Nat.* M. 1.) To the other *topics touched upon* in the petition, I shall not advert (BYRON, *Parliam. Speech.*).

Old-Engl.: þys noble duc Wyllam (R. or GL. II. 367.). God sende *wynd god ynou* (II. 410.). To *mylde men* debonere (II. 369.). By *grene rootes* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 276.). Thorough *lele libbynge men* (p. 300.). To the modern *very* answers the older *verray*, *verry* Old-Fr. prov. *verai* (veracem) and has, as an adjective, the meaning not only of *true*, *real*, but also of the Fr. *même* (met — ipsissimus, ipsimus). He durste not for *verray filth* and *schame* (CHAUC., C. T. 6975.). Drawith a stryngge, and that shal streight yow leyde Unto the *verry path* of your governaunce (WRIGHT, *Anecd.* p. 83.). And *verray ensamples* manye (P. PLOUGHM. p. 311.). — Halfsax.: Haffde an *duhhtiz wiif* (ORM. 113.). Þurh hiss *hallzhe spell* (185.). Annd teþ wærenn . . . *Rihhtwise menn* (118.). Habbeoþ writen ibroht þe, *word swiþe grate* (LAJAM. III. 2.). Þa weoren heo uæine uor uæiren his *worden* (II. 210.). The concord of the adjective, in its strong and weak form, with the substantive is, of course, most prominent in Anglosaxon: þonne cymð on uhtan *eðsterne vind* (CAEDM. 314.). *Rice man* wæs se heāhfader Abraham (A.-S. HOMIL. I 130.). On bæl āhōf *Isaac geongne* (CAEDM. 2897.). Mid *inneveardum mōde* (BOETH. 21, 1.). Se *vilda fugel* (CAEDM. 1455.). Þæt *swearte fýr* (A.-S. HOMIL. I. 132.). Tōgengdon . . on þone *grēnan veald* (CAEDM. 838.). On þære *tōveardan tīde* (1278.). Þā *ýttran þeōstru* sind þās lichaman blindnyssa viðūtan, þā *inran þeōstru* sind þās mōdes blindnyssa viðinnan (A.-S. HOMIL. I. 132.). After þām *foresprecenan cyningum* (BOETH. 1.).

b. The uninflected adjective used substantively may also be determined by an attributive adjective. The position of the words makes the substantive known in the last, and the context distinguishes the personal from the neuter substantive.

The *pensive fair* draws near (ADDIS., Rosam. 1, 3.). What powerful call shall bid arise The *buried warlike* and the wise? (SCOTT, Marm. Introd.) The *soft blue* of a love-speaking eye (BYR. p. 305.). The *vade mecum* of the *true sublime* (D. Juan 1, 201.). One *infinite incredible grey void* (CARL., Past a. Pres. 2, 2.). In *ambitious, rhetorical Latin* (2, 14.).

Old-Engl.: His *kyrtel of clene whiit* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 464.). It is readily intelligible that in all ages the substantives proceeding from adjectives could also have attributive adjectives with them. But, with the equal absence of inflection in a considerable number of substantive forms with the adjective, a certain restriction in their use arises in Modern-English.

- c. The indeterminate pronouns compounded with *thing*, which in part precede it, without being compounded, as well as *ought* (*ought*) admit an adjective after them, which is to be thought as standing in concord with them.

Something wicked this way comes (SHAKSP., Macb. 4, 1.). I felt *something soothing* in the magnificent scenery with which I was surrounded (SCOTT, R. Roy 36.). My friend Morier, indeed, saved *something handsome* (BULW., Lady of L. 5, 1.). Nor *nothing monstrous* neither? (SHAKSP., Troil. a. Cr. 3, 2.). Let *nothing adverse, nothing unforeseen*, Impede the bark, that ploughs the deep serene (COWP. p. 99.). There is *nothing wonderful* in this (LEWES, G. I. 287.). To the hearing of *any thing good* (SHAKSP., II Henry IV. 1, 2.). Without *any thing remarkable* (FIELD., J. Andr. 3, 12.). Did you ever know *anything so unlucky*? (TROLLOPE, Framl. Parson 1, 2.) A home destitute of *every thing elegant*, — almost of *every thing convenient* (IRVING, Sk. B. The Wife). — Whether *ought*, to us *unknown*, afflicts him thus (SHAKSP., Haml. 2, 2.). Welcome — if you bring with you *Aught good* to our head-quarters (COLER., Picc. 1, 4.). This postposition of the adjective points to the original construction of the forms and compounds cited, serving as substitutes for neuter pronouns, with a genitive after them. It is distinguished from constructions like: In *every earthly thing* (SHAKSP., Much Ado 4, 1.). Can there *any good thing* come out of Nazareth (JOHN 1, 46.), by the sharper accent belonging to the adjective which follows. It has also naught in common with the substantive use of those compounds which tolerate determinatives and attributive determinations after them: In her manner . . there was *an indefinable something* (DICKENS, M. Chuzzlew 1, 2.). Have you not . . . Some brooch? some pin? *some anything*? (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 3, 2.)

The ancient language often substitutes the adjective with *of* for the partitive genitive of the neuter adjective in use here. Old-Engl.: Of Nazareth may *sum ping* of good be? (WYCL., Joh. 1, 47.) He myghten not seye *no thing of neuve* (MAUNDEV. p. 314.). The addition of the simple adjective early begins. Hallsax.: Heo ne seide *naping seð* (LAȜAM. I. 128.), beside: *Na whit* heo ne funden *quikes* (III. 22.), unless in the former case *naping* is only the strengthened negation (not at all). In Anglosaxon with *sum ping*, *un ping*, *ænig ping*, as with *viht*, *vuht*, *aviht*, *āht*, *nāviht*, *nāht*, the genitive of the adjective usually stands: *Hi gebienjað sum ping nives* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 16.). *Nān ping grēnez* (Exod. 10, 15.). *Ænig*

þing gôdes (JOH. 1, 46.). *Vuht lāðes* (CAEDM. 528.). *þæt æht sie þæs þe* God dōn ne mæge (BOETH. 35. 5.). He ne gefremede *nāht cynelīces* (SAX. CHRON. 1040.).

A following substantive of course receives *of* in Modern-English: It thus necessarily assumed *something of the sculpturesque form* (LEWES, G. II. 9.). *With aught of change* (BYRON, Siege 21.). *Nought of life left* (27.). It was *nothing of the kind* (I. 287.).

d. Like the positive, which attributes a quality to an object absolutely, when this quality may be in itself relative in its nature, the simple and periphrastic degrees of comparison of the adjective, which contain a contrary reference to other objects, are employed attributively.

α. The comparative supposes a reference to a substantive notion of the same or a different kind, to which the quality named does not belong in the same degree. If no other object is immediately opposed to that determined by the comparative, such a one is either collected from the context, or the object stands opposed, with its augmented quality, to an object of the same kind. Instead of single objects, classes of objects may also come under consideration.

God made two great lights; the *greater light* to rule the day, and the *lesser light* to rule the night (GEN. 1, 16.). Great shame and sorrow of that fall he tooke . . But weenedst thou what wight thee overthrew, Much *greater grief* and *shamefuller regret* For thy hard fortune then thou wouldst renew (SPENS., F. Qu. 3, 1, 7. 8.). Though with their high wrongs I am struck to the quick, Yet with my *nobler reason*, 'gainst my fury Do I take part (SHAKSP., Temp. 5, 1.). Thebes did his rude unknowing youth engage; He chooses Athens in his *riper age* (DRYDEN in Johns. Lives 1.). But whatsoever we do, we will not shame Your *better feeling*, with an idle game Of grin and mimicry (SHERID. KNOWLES, Virgin. Epilogue). Sir, I know, your *smoother courtiers* please you best (BULW., Richel. 4, 1.). Your Eminence must excuse a *longer audience* (ib.). England will answer it; or, on the whole, England will perish; — one does not expect the *latter result* (CARL., Past a. Pres. 1, 3.). The comparative always has to do with the idea of two objects or classes of objects, which are compared with each other; yet a few comparatives are used where the superlative would be in place, which renders prominent over all others one object or a number out of a total class: Direct mine arms, I may embrace his neck, And in his bosom spend my *latter gasp* (SHAKSP., I Henry VI. 2, 5.). At the *latter Day* (Henry V. 4, 1.) [at Doomsday]. Cast him into *outer darkness* (MATTH. 22, 13.). Through *utter* and through middle *darkness* borne (MILT., P. L. 3, 16.). He dared depart in *utter scorn* Of men that such a yoke had borne (BYRON, Ode to N. B. p. 347.).

The use of the comparative has been the same in all ages. Old-Engl.: *Inde the lasse and the more* (MAUNDEV. p. 4.). A wynd per com . . & drof hym to Scotlonde, So þat after *betere wind* hii moste þere atstonde (R. or GL. II. 267.). The peynes stronge Bothe of the lover and the

prisoner. I not which hath the *wofullere cheer* (CHAUC., C. T. 1340.). A love-knotte in the *gretter ende* ther was (197.). Thei fulfillen first the *more longe pilgrymage*, and aftre returnen aȝen be the *nexte weyes* (MAUNDEV. p. 53.). To holde the *more righte weye* be see, it is wel a 1880 myle of Lombardye (p. 55.). Halfsax: þatt lajhre was bitwenenn menn Annd *zunagre mann* on elde (ORM. 13270.). Mid *grettere wordes* þane kaiser he grette (LAJAM. I. 379. mod. text). Anglosax.: Scōp God trā miccle leōht, þat is sunne and mōna, and betæhte þat *māre leōht*, þāt is sunne, tō þam dāge, and þāt *lāsse leōht*, þāt is se mōna, tō þære nihte (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 2.). His *yldra sunu* vās on ācere (LUC. 16, 25.). Gif þin *swiðre hand* þe āswice (MATH. 5, 13. cf. Ps. 44, 11. 49, 6.) [dextra properly *fortior manus*].

The use of comparative forms instead of the superlative is chiefly restricted to those which, even in Anglosaxon, oscillate between the meanings of a positive and of a superlative. Old-Engl.: For the synne of oure *formere fader* Adam (MAUNDEV. p. 2.). Anglosax.: Veorpað hine on þā *āttran þystro* (MATH. 22, 13.). Comp.: Beoð āvorþene on þā *gtemestan þystro* (8, 12.). Þā *yłtran þeostru* . . þā *inran þeostru* (A.-S. HOMIL. I. 132.).

- β. The superlative attributes a quality to an individual, or to a number among a total kind, in the highest degree. The superlative has from the earliest times not been absolutely bound to the definite article, which it does not in general take where another determinative excludes it (see p. 193 and 200.), yet, where the latter is not the case, it has an inclination to unite with it, since the separation of a determinate individual or of a class from the kind is decidedly manifested by the article.

In *humblest manner* I require your highness (SHAKSP., Henry VIII. 2, 4.). With *sweetest touches* pierce your mistress ear (Merch. of V. 5, 1.). She hath lost *her best man* (II Henry VI. 4, 10.). You find me now amidst *my trustiest friends* (BULW., Richel. 4, 1.). This is a strife in which the *loftiest look* is the *most subtle armour* (4, 2.). I promise thee *The fairest and most loving wife* in Greece (TENNYS. p. 105.). This is *the most romantic time*, twilight (OXENFORD, Twice Killed 2.). She is one of the *pleasanteſt figures* in German Literature (LEWES, G. I. 11.).

Old-Engl.: Lechours did he *grettest ico* (CHAUC., C. T. 6892.). God is *his grettest help* (P. PLOUGH. p. 288.). To God that is *owre best leche* (WRIGHT & HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 194.). He was *þe icisiste mon* þat was in Engelonde on (I. 170.). He makethe to come before him, the *fairest and the nobleste* of birthe and the *gentyllste damyſeles* of his contree (MAUNDEV. p. 39.). There is the *most fayr chirche*, and the *most noble* of alle the world (p. 8.). Halfsax.: Alle *his bezste cnihtes* (LAJAM. I. 377.). *þe aldeste broðer* Locrin wes ihaten (I. 89.). Þin is *þat beste deal* (I. 127.). Anglosax.: þe þær fāgorost vās and *ādelstan cynnes* (S. GUTHLAG 1.). Þāt te Job Saturnes sunu sceolde beon *se hehsta God* ofer ððre Godas (BOETH. 35, 4.). Ve gepoljað *þone heardestan hungor* and *þone rēðestan* (APOLLON. OF T. p. 9.). Þāt *vyrrreste pingc* þu didest (p. 8.). The possessive here excludes the article: *Mijn se getryvenda begn* (p. 5.).

The superlative with the definite article is associated with the pronominal *one* and with the substantive accompanied by the article *an*, *a*.

Your lady Is *one the fairest* that I have look'd upon (SHAKSP., Cymb. 2, 4.). Ferdinand . . was reckon'd *one The wisest prince*

Henry VIII. 2, 4.). Whether ever I . . Have to you . . spake *one the least word* (ib.). — To be precious Was in her eyes *a thing the most precious* (BYRON, D. Juan I, 54.). The Turks illuminate their vessels of war in *a manner the most picturesque* (ID., Lett.).

The cases comprised here are to be regarded as of the same kind, by reason of the affinity of *one* and *an*, although in *one* the idea of numerical unity often comes to the front. The superlative receives in part the nature of a supplemental, appositional determination, but is so essential that *one* and *an* might be absent, and transformations of the sentences, as: Your lady is *the fairest*; . . was in her eyes *the most precious thing* etc. would contain the kernel of periphrases. The expressions are old. Old-Engl.: He is *one mones mildist maister* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 171.). Of *on the best schale* be owre speche That evere was fonde in boke of kynde (I. 194.). For sche was *on the fairest* under sonne (CHAUC., C. T. 11046.). — Cethegrande is *a fis de moste* ȝat in water is (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 220.). But it is *a lake the grettest* of the world (MACNDEV. p. 266.). Sone aftyr he had *a sone The fyerest* that on fot myght gon (TORRENT 16.). However near determinations of this sort border on appositions, like the Hallsax.: *Enne sune* he hafde , . . *æðelest* alre kingen (LAȜAM. I. 110.), the distinction is not to be mistaken. Romance influence might have to be looked for here. In the Romance languages the attachment of the superlative with the definite article to a substantive with the indefinite article is familiar; see Diez Rom. Gr. 3, 11.). The transfer to the simple *one* seems to have proceeded from it.

The attributive superlative also tolerates determinatives like *some* and *no*, and the indefinite article before it; the latter especially takes the superlative formed by the periphrasis of *most* with the positive.

Not manageable, suppressible, save by *some strongest* and *wisest man* (CARL., Fr. Revol. 1, 2, 4.). And yet let *no meanest man* lay flattering unction to his soul (1, 1, 4.). This gentleman . . had *a most noble father* (SHAKSP., Meas. for Meas. 2, 1.). He was a ready orator, an elegant poet, a skilful gardener, an excellent cook, and *a most contemptible sovereign* (GIBBON, Decl. 6.). Hardy-knute, which, though evidently modern, is *a most spirited* and *beautiful imitation* of the ancient ballad (SCOTT, Minstrelsy I. 43.). Insurrection, never so necessary, is *a most sad necessity* (CARL., Past a. Pres. 1, 3.). I have seen him eye thee With *a most hungry fancy* (BULW., Richel. 4, 1.).

In the instances cited we see the organic superlative, and particularly that formed by periphrasis with *most*, so used that the comparison, peculiar to it, with all remaining objects of the same kind seems no longer regarded. Such a superlative is usually called the absolute superlative, or the elative, by which only a very high degree of the quality is denoted. But in point of fact the individual is in these cases denoted as belonging to the class to which the quality belongs in the highest degree. But whereas in this combination with the indefinite article the Romance languages use the organic superlative (Sp. *crude-lisimo*, *fortisimo*, It. *bellissimo*, Old-Fr. *grandisme*) the periphrastic form is the usual one in English. German acts similarly in such expressions as: ein *höchst gefährliches* Unternehmen; eine *äusserst bedenkliche* Sache.

The enhanced quality imputed to an object is therein taken into consideration more than the compared object. In the older language this form of expression is not met with; it much more frequently allows the adjective to be accompanied by adverbs of comparison of another sort.

Forasmuch as the superlative of the quality compared gives a reference to the total sphere to which the object belongs, the comparative on the other hand supposes a duality of objects or classes, the superlative is disapproved of by grammarians where the totality does not exceed duality, although it is not avoided by the language.

I would have put my wealth into donation, And *the best half* should have return'd to him (SHAKSP., *Tim. of Ath.* 3, 2.). Your *eldest daughters* have fordone themselves (*Lear* 5, 3.). [Here the two elder stand opposed to the younger or to the youngest of three.] Comp.: The question is not whether a good Indian or bad Englishman be *most happy*, but which state is *most desirable*, supposing virtue and reason to be the same in both (JOHNS., *Life of Sir Fr. Drake*). Her mother seemed the *youngest* of the two (THACKER. in v. Dalen Gr. p. 255.).

However natural and usual the comparative is in this case, the superlative is not absurd, in which the duality is disregarded, and the object attributively determined is denoted as affected with the quality in the highest degree in the class which is treated as numerically indifferent. The expression is not unfamiliar even in earlier times. Old-Engl.: So that his *eldest sone* was chosen afre him, Melechemader; the whiche his brother leet sle prevyly (MAUNDREV. p. 38.). Hadde tuo sones . . . Of which the *eldest* bighte Algarsif (CHAUC., C. T. 10343.). Comp. Lat.: Id mea minime refert, qui sum natu *maximus* (TERENT., *Ad.* 5, 4, 27.) [There are two brothers, Demea and Micio]. The older Germanic mode of speech certainly seems decidedly to retain the comparative in similar cases, as, among others, the Gothic translation of the Bible is more exact than the Greek original in the separation of the comparative from the superlative.

The outbidding of a superlative by a comparative may occur in the emotional mode of expression: And in the *lowest deep* a *lower deep* Still threaten'g to devour me opens wide (MILT., *P. L.* 4, 76.). Latin: Ego sum *miserior* quam tu, quae es *miserrima* (CIC., *Fam.* 14, 3.).

- γ. The comparative as well as the superlative may appear in combination with a substantive notion or pronoun to be taken partitively, which is introduced by *of*, so far as one or several objects belong to a dual or to a class of things of the same name.

The younger of them (LUKE 15, 12.). I fell to calculating, . . . since it was clear that the "two trades could not agree", which was likely to be *the pleasanter and more profitable of the two* (TH. HOOK, *Gilb. Gurney* 1.). Thou art the *best o' the cut-throats* (SHAKSP., *Macb.* 3, 4.). York is *most unmeet of any man* (II Henry VI. 1, 3.). *Of all his race the valiant'st* (BUTL., *Hud.* 1, 2, 409.). *The mightiest of sovereigns* (KAVANAGH, *Fr. Wom.* of Lett. 2.). *Of these barons the most powerful* were the Orsini and Colonna (BULW., *Rienzi* 1, 2.). Thus *the greatest of poets* has described it (MACAUL., *Essays* I. 7.). In the *most ancient of*

books (Hist. of E. IV. 6.). *The last and truest of the four* (SCOTT, Marm. 1, 8.).

The prepositional member with *of* answers to a partitive genitive. Old-Engl.: *pe eldore of the tuo* (R. or GL. II. 367.). I not which was the *fyner of hem two* (CHAUC., C. T. 1041.). And myd the *hexte of ys men* to be kyng he com (R. or GL. I. 142.). Ygerne, Gorloys wyf, was *fairest of echon* (I. 157.). *Of alle wymmen scheo was fairest* (ALIS. 6660.). O Lucifer! *brightest of aungels alle* (CHAUC., C. T. 15490.). *The swiftest of these arrowes five* (CHAUC., Rom. of the Rose 949.). *To the lest of mine* when ye oghte did To me ye did To me ye did the self and same (TOWN. M. p. 318.). The genitive is frequent in Halfsaxon along with the periphrasis with *of*. *Of þan broðeren he was ældest* (LAȚAM. II. 41.). *Dis beoð þa for-cuðeste men of alle quike monnen* (III. 88.). He sende to *pan hexten of Arðures hireden* (II. 557.). — *Monne leofuest ert þu me* (II. 269.). *þu Aldolf eorleve aðelest* (ib.). *þe cnihren was fæzerest* (II. 476.). In Anglosaxon the genitive seems alone in use: *Bið ealra vyrta mæst* (MARC. 5, 32.). *Hvæt være ealra beboda mæst* (12, 28.). *þæt mæste bebod ealra* (12, 29.). *Heo spræc þa to Adame idesa sceðnost* (CÆDM. 701.). *Eve . . idesa sciðnost, vifa vliðgost* (818.).

This construction is used to strengthen the superlative by juxtaposition with the kind characterized by its positive.

To feel only looking on *fairest of fair* (SHAKSP., Love's L. L. 2, 1.). She's *fairest of the fair* (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 3, 1.). How fondly blest he seems to bear *The fairest of Phoenician fair* (TH. MOORE p. 31.). Condemn'd to drudge, *the meanest of the mean* (BYRON p. 330.); see Vol. I. p. 383. With that may be compared the strengthened meaning of the comparative through combination with the positive accompanied by *than*: *Greater than great, great, great, Pompey!* (SHAKSP., Love's L. L. 5, 2.).

I have not observed turns of this sort, which answer to the German: *die Schönste der Schönen, schöner als schön*, Gr. *κακῶν κάκιστος* and the like, in the older English. The repetition of the same substantive with *of* in the plural is, however, to be compared, of which we shall speak upon the attributive substantive.

The substantive use of the superlative in a neuter meaning, with a substantive in the singular accompanied by *of*, is often met with in Modern-English. The partitive construction also lies at the root of this construction.

See, how this river . . cuts me, from *the best of all my land*, A huge half-moon, a monstrous cantle out (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 3, 1.). He strode haughtily into *the thickest of the group* (BULW., Rienzi 1, 4.). Alan's regiment was in *the hottest of the fight* (HOLME LEE, Thorney Hall 59.). Moloch . . would envy us *the wildest of our despair*, and call it calmness (LEWES, G. II. 10.).

Superlatives thus used are hardly ever used substantively except in a similar combination; they recall French expressions like: *Dans le plus fort de la bataille* (ACAD.). The neuter used substantively appears with more weight than the superlative in immediate attributive combination with the substantive. Compare therewith the later use of the Latin positive, as in: *In hoc lubrico ætatis* (PLIN. Ep. 3, 3.). Instances from the older English literature are wanting.

The periphrasis of the comparative and superlative by *more* and *most* with the positive has been shewn Vol. I. p. 280., to have extended far back into Old-Engl.; it is foreign to Hallsaxon. The Romance form by *plus*, *le plus*, Prov. *plus*, *lo plus*, was perhaps the standard, *le plus* being transformed into the corresponding *most*. Analogies are certainly found even in Gothic, where *Gop* ist imma *mais* (Marc. 9, 42.) answers to the Gr. *καλὸν* .. *μᾶλλον*. The comparison downwards by *less*, *least* of course attached itself thereto. Old-Engl.: *Bettere it is or lesse yuele* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW. II. 45.).

The former comparison of the organic comparative and superlative by *more* and *most* (see Vol. I. p. 280.) may be illustrated by classical originals. Gr.: *μᾶλλον ὀλβιωτέρος* (HEROD. 1, 32.). *μᾶλλον εὐτυχέστερος* (EURIP. Hec. 377.). *μάλιστα ἐχθιστος* (IL. β 220.). *μάλιστα δεινότατος* (THUCID. 7, 42.).

- e. The same adjective may be referred to more than one substantive, if these can be comprehended as a whole under any point of view. It is here repeated, which is the rule with determinatives.

Of *great expedition and knowledge* in the ancient wars (SHAKSP., Henry V. 3, 2.). They in France, of *the best rank and station* (Hamlet. 1, 3.). A gentleman of *considerable fortune and influence* (SMOLLET, R. Rand. 1.). A man . . with a *black coat and waistcoat* (MARRYAT, P. Simple 1, 1.). James the First of Scotland, the pride and theme of *Scottish poets and historians* (IRVING, Sk. B. A Royal Poet). Close shut mouth with thin lips, *prominent jaws and nose* (CARL., Fred. the Gr. 1, 1.). Of true allegiance, *constant faith or love* (MILT., P. L. 3, 104.). The man is not of godlike physiognomy, any more than of *imposing stature or costume* (CARL., Fred. the Gr. 1, 1.). — The adjective is repeated, partly with greater emphasis, partly with a more decided separation of the notions, especially in an asyndetic series: With a *good leg*. and a *good foot* (SHAKSP., Much Ado 2, 1.). And still *new needs*, *new helps*, *new habits rise* (POPE, Essay on M. 3, 137.).

Old-Engl.: He adde sone *gret folc and poer* (R. OF GL. I. 167.). With *gret joye and solemnyte* (MAUNDEV. p. 308.). Of *the precious body and blood* of oure Lord Jesu Crist (p. 1.). Of *holy thought and werk* (CHAUC., C. T. 481.). For *mikel hounger and thirst and cold* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 10.). *þe firste lordes and maystres* (R. OF GL. I. 2.). Of *dyverse maneres and lawes* (MAUNDEV. p. 4.). Hallsax.: All *weoreldlike lif annd lusst* (ORM. 1628.). *Sop sawless lihht and leome* (1906.). *þurth clene pohht annd worrd annd weorre* (2703.). Anglosax.: Sege me nu, hvæt heóver deórvyrðesta *væla and anveald sie* (BEOTH. 16, 1.). Hí þær gefærdon *máran hearn and yfel þonne hí æfre véndon* þæt heom ænig burhvaru gedón sceolde (SAX. CHR. 994.). þone dæg setton *Romanisce veras and vilan* tó þam mónþe þe ve hātað Februarus (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 13.). þā bōc ic gesette . . *hlútrum vordum and tǣcnum* (S. GUTHLAC, Prol.). Næren þā velige hāmas, nē *mistlice svōtmettas nē drincas* (BOETH. 15.). — The repetition of the adjective is natural in all ages, especially with the recurrence of determinatives or of a preposition. Old-Engl.: *Holy men and holi wummen* beoð of alle vundunges swuðest ofte i-tempted (WRIGHT A. HALLIW. Rel. Ant. I. 65.). I have assayed *thi grete sapiens and thi grete trouthe* (CHAUC., C. T. p. 151. I.). *In divers act and in divers figures* (ib. 7068.). Hallsax.: And *clene pohht*, annd *clene worrd*, Annd alle clene dedess (ORM. 1594.). *Sopfasst læfe o Criste*, Annd *sopfasst hiʒ*, annd hope onn himm, Annd *sopfasst lufe*

o bape (2776.). *purrr haliz spell*, Annd ec *purrr haliz bisne* (195.). Anglosax.: *þincð þe nu þæt lytel gestreón and lytel eadca þinra gesælda?* (BOETH. 20.). *Hvæt vênst þu hú micelne hlísan and hú micelne veorðscipe* Æn Romanisc man mæge habban (18, 2.).

f. If several adjectives are added as attributive determinations to the same substantive, they may:

a. be regarded as original predicates of one and the same subject, and in this case stand to one another in the relation either of inordination or of coordination.

aa. Inordination arises, when one or several adjectives serve to determine the total notion, which arises through the combination of the substantive with one or more coordinate adjectives. The inordinating or comprehending adjective suffers no connection by a particle.

The *good old lord Gonzalo* (SHAKSP., Temp. 5, 1.). A comic romance is a *comic epic poem* in prose (FIELD., J. Andr. Pref.). Her *small white hand* could hardly reach the taper (BYRON, D. Juan, 1, 198.). A million of *hungry operative men* (CARL., Past a. Pres. 1, 3.). She is the *sweetest-tempered, honestest, worthiest, young creature* (FIELD., J. Andr. 4, 2.). A rapidity far surpassing the usual pace of *unpatronized professional merit* (SCOTT, Waverl. 2.). Her *deep hair ambrosial* (TENNYS, p. 105.). Groves, heaths, and *smoaking villages remote* (COWP. p. 167.). The distinguishing inordination from coordination is rendered in part difficult, and is conditioned by the sharper accent of the comprehending adjective; the perception of it is in many cases facilitated by the absence of punctuation.

Old-Engl.: *þis word dude much sorwe þis seli olde man* (R. of Gl. I 33.). *þys lupere false men* (I. 171.). With a *low litylle dore* (MACNDEV. p. 75.). *Thei han a lytylle round hole* (p. 205.). The *wrecche synful man* (CHAUC., C. T. p. 187. II.). This *proude Freinshe cortes* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 191.). In collocations of words like: *Emelye hir yonge suster schene* (CHAUC., C. T. 974.). the decision may remain doubtful. Anglos.: *Ane hand on þam fägerestan reðdan hive* (S. GUTHLAG 1.). *Lyft is lichamlic gesceaft svýðe pygne* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 17.).

ββ. Coordination is the equal reference as regards one another of indifferent predicates to the same subject. Coordinate adjectives may be attached to one another syndetically or syndetically.

What *stern ungentle hands* Have lopp'd and hew'd, and made thy body bare Of her two branches (SHAKSP., Tit. Andron. 2, 5.). A *lunatic lean-witted fool* (Rich. II. 2, 1.). Come then — a *still, small whisper* in your ear (COWP. p. 47.). Morier is a *thrifty economical dog* (BULW., Lady of L. 5. 1.). He was a *lean, slim, meagre man* (TROLLOPE, Framl. Parson. 1, 15.). The *lofty, melodious, and flexible tongue* (SCOTT, Minstr. I. 13.). Thou *sure and firm-set earth* (SHAKSP., Macb. 2, 1.). This *best and meakest woman* (BYRON, D. Juan 1, 29.). Th' *upright*

heart and pure (MILT., P. L. 1, 18.). *Stern rites and sad* (BRYANT p. 38.).

In the older language the asyndetic succession of coordinate adjectives is on the whole little favoured; syndetic connection and supplementary further determination are, on the other hand, the common phenomenon. Old-Engl.: *Into a deep derk helle* (P. PLOGHM. p. 21.). *Grete huge cytees manye, and fayr* (MAUNDEV, p. 44.). The *marveylous and delicious song* of dyverse briddes (p. 279.). In the name of *God glorious and allemyghty* (p. 6.). *Heo were of gret power & noble folc & hey* (R. OF GL. I. 11.). *Troye, pat god mon was & weys* (I. 10.). *A lute bal and round* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 137.). *Sire Emer de Valence, gentil knyght and free* (Polit. S. p. 216.). *Ful modi man and proud* (Anecd. p. 2.). *He was hardy mon and strong* (ALIS. 4402.). The *foulest contree, and the most cursed, and the porest* (MAUNDEV. p. 129.). Halssax.: *Harrrd annd haliz lif* (ORM. 1612.). *Lamb is softe annd stille deor* (1312.). *Droh harrrd annd hefz pine inoh* (1442.). *Off grinne annd nipfull herrte* (1672.). *Wæren riht-wise annd gode menn* (369.). *Summ apell mann annd god* (ORM. 611.). *Rihtwise menn annd gode* (118. cf. 406.). Anglosax.: *Se visa and fæstraða Cato* (BOETH. 19.). *Manige foremære and gemyndgyrðe veras* (ib.). On *misticum and mænigfaldum hivum* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 2.). *Se foremæra and se æræða Somana heretoga* (BOETH. 19.). *pās foremæran and pās visan goldsmiðes bān Velandes* (ib.). *Trā scinende leóht mycele and mære* (BASIL., Hexam. 7.). *Gif ænig man hābbe mōdigne sunu and rancne* (DECTER. 21, 18.). *Tō gōdum lande and vidgillum* (EXOD. 3, 8.). *He gefōr . . . gōð man and clæne and sviðe æðele* (SAX. CHR. 1056.). *Væron on pisum felda unrim gesomunga hvittra manna and fægerra* (BEDA 5, 13.). — In the position of adjectives before and after the substantive, prepositions are also repeated. Old-Engl.: *With longe berdes and with hore* (RICH. C. DE L. 6822.). Anglosax.: *pāt se anveald . . . becom to gōdum men and tō visum* (BOETH. 16, 1.).

β. Or the various adjectives are to be regarded as original predicates of different subjects.

αα. If the singular attributive relations require the singular of the substantive, the latter appears more rarely in the singular, if the adjectives precede the substantive in the copulative relation.

The *civil and ecclesiastical administration* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 95.). To the ancient mode answers the separation of the adjectives by the substantive, to which may also be referred: That true *self-love* and *social* are the same (POPE, Essay on M. 4, 396.). [*Social* is here opposed to *self* received into the substantive].

The abbreviation may be incidentally mentioned, in which with an adjective the substantive is to be supplied, which only follows in another member in combination with an adjective: The *desprat'st* is the *wisest course* (BUTL., Hud. Her. Ep. 8.). And found the *private* in the *public good* (POPE, Essay on M. 3, 282.). In him the *emotive* was subjected to the *intellectual man* (LEWES, G. I. 13.). They . . . devoted with one-sided exclusiveness to the *ideal*, neglect to study the *actual world* (II. 4.). This occurs with the singular no less than with the

plural: Mongrel Christians . . That expiate *less* with *greater crimes* (BUTL., Hud. 2, 2, 89.). Here *fix'd the dreadful*, there the *blest abodes* (POPE, Essay on M. 3, 255.).

On the other hand the plural of the substantive is common in the modern language with adjectives (also ordinal numbers) preceding it.

With *lower, second* and *third stories* shalt thou make it (GEN. 6, 16.). Others make posies of her cheeks, Where *red and whitest colours mix* (BUTL., Hud. 2, 1, 605.). The *Æmilian and Flaminian highways* offered an easy march of about four hundred miles from Milan to Rome (GIBBON, Decl. 10.). These exercises and compositions, written during Goethe's *sixth, seventh and eighth years* (LEWES, G. I. 21.). The prudence, and good sense, and admirable dispositions, of his *first, second, third, first and fifth daughters* (SCOTT, Waverley 2.). Comp. also: Make figs at me (put the thumb between the *fore and middle fingers*) (HAZLITT ad SHAKSP., II Henry IV. 5, 3.).

So far as the definite article comes under consideration in this relation, details are to be sought at p. 173. The separation of the adjectives, and the placing the one adjective first are usual in the ancient language, especially with the substantive in the singular without the article. Old-Engl.: Sche byryld *why't wyne and rede* (TORRENT 292.). Ne *hynnen cloth ne wollen* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 276.). Half-sax.: Fra *læwedd folc and læredd* (ORM. 1021.). The conjunction of the substantive in the plural with adjectives in the singular, corresponding to the Latin and French usage (see my Fr. Gram. p. 537.) cannot be vouched for out of the ancient language.

- ββ. If the various subjects are to be thought in the plural, the substantive naturally conforms to the plural adjectives standing in concord with it, whether they precede or follow it.

This small packet of *Greek and Latin books* (SHAKSP., Taming 2, 1.). She had read most of the best *German and Italian authors* (LEWES, G. I. 11.). The poetry and eloquence . . was assiduously studied in *Mercian and Northumbrian monasteries* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 9.). Fast barr'd by *laws divine and human* (YOUNG, N. Th. 5, 477.).

In the ancient language the separation of the adjectives by the substantive is very common, even in this case. Old-Engl.: *pe wylde foules & pe tame* ne mytten noman telle (R. OF GL. I. 52.). Sum wisdom we han seid Off *olde men and zunge* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 256.). Anglosax.: Ne *vyrc ge sylfrene Godas and gyldene* (EXOD. 20, 23.). Ne *vyrc þu pe gyldene godas ðisse seolfrene* (LEGG. ÆLFR. 10.). The appositive junction of adjectives is likewise familiar. Old-Engl.: *po so muche folc to hym come of knyghtis zong & olde* (R. OF GL. I. 167.). Halfsax.: *Æfter þine children þan zungen & þan olden* (LAJAM. II. 168.). Anglosax.: Svā hēr *men dōð, geonge and ealde* (CAEDM. 1201.). An scyppend is *ealra þinga, gesevenlicra and ungesevenlicra* (THORPE, Anal. p. 59.). Comp., too, as to the position of adjectives p. 173.

- g. The attributive, as well as the predicative adjective can be more particularly determined by adverbs. The most frequent determinations of the adjective in the stricter sense are determinations of degree, with which are connected many determina-

tions of the kind. Participles, from their verbal nature, can readily be otherwise determined. Yet adjectives in the stricter sense also admit determinations of time, for ex.: whereby they approach participles.

A *full poor* cell (SHAKSP., Temp. 1, 2.). King John, *sore sick* (John 5, 4.). Her child's *right true* father (DUNNE, Sat. 1, 56.). A *right noble* instinct of what is doable (CARL., Past a. Pres. 1, 3.). The *very false* gallop of verses (SHAKSP., As You Like It 3, 2.). I have the honour to wish you a *very good* morning (BULW., Lady of L. 1, 1.). A *whimsical* request enough (OXENF., Twice Killed 2.). Bend not my heart with thy *too piercing* words (MARLOWE, Edw. II. 1, 4.). It seems *too broad* an avowment (SCOTT, Minstrelsy I. 51.). *How long* a time lies in one little word (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 1, 3.). Pardon my grief for your *so grieved* minde (FERREX A. PORREX 1, 1.). The vicinity of *so remarkable* a people (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 12.). Sempromius is *as brave* a man as Cato (ADDIS., Cato 3, 4.). We will . . . strive to penetrate a little . . . into a *somewhat remote* century (CARL., Past a. Pres. 2, 1.). A deep unspoken sense lies in these strong men, — inconsiderable, *almost stupid* (1, 3.). The *rather heavy* gentleman is carried by fifteen men (DICKENS, Pict. fr. It., A Rapid Diorama). *Thrice happy* Britain! (ADDIS., The Campaign 33.). An art *far more essential* (SCOTT, Waverl. 3.).

Some . . . to *beggarly vile* appetites descend (YOUNG, N. Sh. 5, 465.). My dear, most dear — Oh *damnably dear* sir! (BULW., Rienzi 2, 1.). In the *comparatively correct* age, in which our lot is cast (BROUGHAM, Hist. Sketch). I had formed a determination *precisely contrary* (SCOTT, R. Roy 1.); see p. 95.

Go, then, and punish some *soon gotten* stuff (DUNNE, Sat. 6, 19.). Those gems *too long withheld* from modern sight (BYRON p. 328.). His *already wearied* horse (BULW., Rienzi 3, 1.). And over those scrolls, *not oft so mute*, Reclines her *now neglected* lute (BYR., Bride 2, 5.). He stabbed him with a wound *instantaneously mortal* (ROSCOE, Life of Lorenzo). The daughter of a *once dear* friend (BULW., Money 2, 3.). That *ever glorious*, almost fatal fray (BYR. p. 319.). Is it some *yet imperial* hope . . . ? (Ode to N. B. p. 347.) The further determination of the adjective often discloses the original abbreviation of the sentence, which comes out clearly through other adverbial collateral determinations: Let Southey sing, although his teeming muse, *Prolific every spring*, be too profuse (BYR. p. 328.).

The ancient language is poorer in determinations of the adjective in the stricter sense, if the determinations of degree are disregarded, which are much oftener met with even in a few extinct or decaying forms, and frequently stand in the place of the subsequent superlative *most*. Old-Engl.: Gogomagog was a geand *swipe gret* (R. or GL. I 22.). Ich wille geve the gift *ful stark* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 8.). A *fulle gret* kyngdom (MAUNDEV. p. 43.): A *fulle strong* citee (p. 47.). A *fulle fair* bird (p. 48.). A *ful noble* way, and *ful covenable* (CHAUC., C. T. p. 185 l.). A *fulle hedus* syn (TOWN M p. 137.). A *fulle faire* hille, and *well highe* (MAUNDEV. p. 113.). Engelond ys a *wel god* lond (R. or GL. I. 1.). Sholde nevere *right riche* man . . . Wite what wo is, Ne were the deeth of kynde

(P. PLOUGHM. p. 381.). Thei ben *righte foule* folk (MAUNDEV. p. 129.). What bihoveth and is necessarie to *verray perfyte* penitence (CHAUC., C. T. p. 186. I.). A batayle *hard and strong ynow* (R. OF GL. I. 12.). *Al to wis* a grome (SEUNY SAGES 1110.). *To longe* a tale (MAUNDEV. p. 6.). *So noble* folc, þat of *so gret* blod come (R. OF GL. I. 12.). Þat dai *sa brene* (ANTICRIST 710.). *As good* a man's son was I As any of you (TOWN. M. p. 105.). To han *fer more* vylenye (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 45.). Halſax.: He wes *swiþe kene* mon (LAJAM. III. 5.). He hafde *swiþe muchel* mod (III. 10.). *Full mikell* fresst (ORM. 261.). Þurh *riht apell* kinde (7133.). An *riht god* reowwsunne (5563. cf. 13477.). *Welle æþel* wes pere a mon (LAJAM. I. 278.). Anglosax.: Basilus . . *vās swiþe hālig* biſceop (BASIL., Admon. Prol.). He hafde *ānc swiþe vlitige* dōhter (APOLLON. OF T. p. 1.). On *ful blācne* beām bunden (AOS. POES. Grein I 197.). [*Ful* often appears as a particle of composition *fuddysig, fulbliþe, fulgetreov, fulsōð* and many more are written]. *Vel gesund* cyninge! (APOLLON. OF T. p. 4.). Þe *tō micelne* andan hāfō (BOETH. 37, 4.). Sōna svā he mid þan hrāgle *svā mīceles* veres gegyred vās (S. GUTHLAC 16.). Hvā vās æfre *svā dirstiges* mōdes? (APOLLON. OF T. p. 2.). Tvegen hrefnas . . *tō pās gifre* þāt etc. (S. GUTHLAC 9.). He hafde *mæst ealne* pāne eāstðæl āvēst (OROS., Etm. 7, 15.). Sæde þā þāt he viste sum eālan *synderlice digle* (S. GUTHLAC 3.). Benedictus þe ūs bōc āvrāt . . *leōhtre be dæle* þonne Basilus (BASIL., Admon. Prol.). Adverbs of time are also met with: *Ænne* ālmihtigne God *æfre unbegunne* (BASIL., Hexam. 3. cf. 1.). Compare moreover what has been observed at p. 95. upon the combination of adjectives with adverbs.

In the union of a superlative with *possible* no adverb is to be looked for: The scene in all the churches is *the strangest possible* (DICKENS, Pict. fr. It.. Rome). This combination, recurring in the German *bestmöglich* and the like, has been taken from the French. The adjective *possible* is properly an abbreviation of a sentence.

The adnominal Substantive.

Under this denomination we comprehend partly the substantive proper, partly all parts of speech used substantively, so far as they, in conjunction with a substantive notion, serve to determine it, and form, together with it, a separate member of a sentence.

The Genitive.

Of the cases of the Anglosaxon language the genitive has been preserved in an inflective termination which exceeds its original justified use, and chiefly in the attributive relation. Even here, however, the inflective case has remained in use only in a limited measure, having mostly given place to the periphrasis by *of* with the case of the object. Poetry allows it place in a wider extent than prose; among the provinces of the ancient genitive that of the subjective genitive by far preponderates, whereas that of the objective genitive has very much receded, and it is no longer to be met with in the partitive relation. The personal substantive, to which are attached numerous personified notions and names of beasts, also preponderates over the neuter substantive. A determining genitive is

frequently to be regarded as having coalesced with the determined substantive into one verbal body. Beside the genitive of the substantive stands the genitive of pronouns used substantively, as well as of the relative pronoun (*whose*).

The genitive essentially denotes the object as one whence something starts or proceeds. This explains its application to local, temporal, causal, partitive and other relations, as well as the possibility of its being represented by *of*, as in the Romance languages by *de*, *di*, in Hollandish by *van*, as well as by kindred prepositions in other tongues.

As an adnominal case, the genitive, in denoting the relation of one substantive to the other, exceeded the province belonging to it in conjunction with a verb or an adjective. The amplitude of the relation of dependence of one substantive notion upon the other caused a place to be conceded to the genitive wherever a mutual reference of objects took place, whose various nature often remained to be made out from the context of the speech.

a. The closer relation of the adnominal genitive is that in which its word of relation leads to the idea of a predicate as the subject or object of which the genitive appears.

α. The genitive of the subject appears partly where the verbal transitive or intransitive meaning is still active in the word of relation, and expresses its activity, and it may here be called also the active genitive; partly where the genitive expresses the object which has or possesses anything, or to which anything belongs. Effect, origin, possession and appurtenance equally have the genitive for their bearer, and those meanings pass in part imperceptibly into one another.

As *Hereford's love*, so his (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 2, 1.). *A mother's love, a mother's tender woe* (THOMSON, Summer). The bearer of *the Emperor's behests* (COLER., Picc. 1, 2.). *Fame's flight is glory's fall* (YOUNG, N. Th. 6, 262.). *We wrestle with great Nature's plan* (2, 167.). *A deadly groan, like life and death's departing* (SHAKSP., III Henry VI. 2, 6.). *Last night, but for Heaven's mercy, I should have fallen a victim to a hireling's dagger* (BULW., Rienzi 4, 7.). *Exposed thus solitary to the wolf's rage* (1, 5.). *The trumpet's sound* (SHAKSP., Tim. of Ath. 3, 6.). *With merry harp and beaker's clang* (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 5, 8.). *Against the morrow's dawn* (5, 9.). *Winter's rude tempests* are gathering now (BYRON p. 306.). *The inner court Which in the tower's tall shadow lay* (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 5, 11.). *An assistant, who might . . . keep the vessel's way* according to his counsel and instruction (SCOTT, R. Roy 1.).

The duke of Gloster's men (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 3, 1.). *He's too much every man's man* (GOLDSM., G. Nat. M. 1.). *The Lord's portion* is his people (DEUTER. 32, 9.). *One has no encouragement to take pains with one's vineyard* (BULW., Rienzi 1, 9.). *Your mother's cat* (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 3, 1.). *The British colonel's horse* (COOPER, Spy 10.). *Where subject's feet* May hourly trample on *their sovereign's head* (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 3, 3.). *Thou wilt not . . . wrong thyself in men's mouths* (BULW., Rienzi 1, 4.).

Fletcher's blood boiled (MACAUL., Hist. of E. II. 145.). *O God's name* (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 3, 3.). *A low voice* breathed *Nina's name* (BULW., Rienzi 1, 11.). She was *beauty's self* (THOMSON, Autumn). This debt *Friedland's self* must pay (COLER., Picc. 1, 9.). *The king's brother-in-law* (SHAKSP., Wint. T. 4, 3.). *The spider's most attenuated thread* (YOUNG, N. Th. 1, 178.). I don't choose a *hornet's nest* about my ears (COOPER, Spy 10.). *Golconda's gem* and *sad Potosi's mines* (THOMSON, Summer). The richest work of *Iran's loom*, And *Sheeraz' tribute* of perfume (BYR., Bride 2, 5.). Alike to him was time or tide, *December's snow*, or *July's pride* (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 1, 21.). *Life's theatre* as yet is shout (YOUNG, N. Th. 1, 125.). *Twilight's dewy lints* (ROGERS, Pleas. of Memory 1.). *Futurity's blank page* (2.).

It is remarkable how early even the subjective genitive in prose is restricted in use. Wycliffe, Maundeville and Chaucer (in both his prose tales) employ it remarkably seldom, and then mostly of names of persons. It is certainly otherwise in poetry, although names of persons preponderate, even here. Old-Engl.: *Ymartired for oure lordes love* (R. OF GL. I. 81.). *Leulyn had despite of Edward's sonde* (LANGT. II. 237.). *Mihten be ful blythe and thonke Godes sonde* (WRIGHT, Pol. S. p. 223.). *From be deuyles poer* (R. OF GL. I. 173.). *Ful wel made of masonnes craft* (MAUNDEV. p. 42.). *be kynges tresour he delde eke aboute* (R. OF GL. I. 107.). *Of be kyng Arture's hous* (I. 180.). *The emperours hors* (MAUNDEV. p. 17.). *Many mennes malt* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 12.). *Under be rof of Cristes heven* (ANTICR. 186.). *be cristen kyngrik up to yeild* (375.). *A mannes breek girdille* (MAUNDEV. p. 50.). *To the soudanes chambre* (p. 39.). *With dunt of monnes hond* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 214.). *Wit man's muth* (ANTICR. 595.). *Kyng Locrynes herte* (R. OF GL. I. 24.). *Silui Ascaine's sone* (I. 9.). *Goddess sone* (MAUNDEV. p. 35.). *To a gret princes daughtre* (p. 35.). *Oure Ladyes modre* (p. 15.). *Hire lordes concubine* (R. OF GL. I. 27.). *Upon a retheres hude* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 220.). *Aboute the cattles hals* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 11.). *To be west worles ende* (R. OF GL. I. 181.). *In an hauene's moupe* (I. 20.). *To the sees stronde* (ALIS. 5016.). *At the tables ende* (AMIS. A. AMIL. 1582.). *To saue be londes prow* (LANGT. II. 261.). *To lerne londes lawes* (RICH, C. DE L. 629.). It will be observed further on how the periphrasis by *of* intrudes even here; and the greater extent of use of the genitive in the earliest times hardly needs mentioning. The subjective genitive is of course of the widest extent in Anglosax.: *pā forseah he Apollonius cyrlises mannes grētinge* (APOLLON OF T. p. 7.). *Be ūtgonge Israēla folces* (BEDA 4, 24.). *pās hālgan gāstes cyme* (ib.). *pāra apostola lare* (ib.). *Mid Godes gife* (LEGG. INAE 14.). *Tvegra manna gevitnes is sōð* (JON. 8, 16.). *Pāt bið blindra þeáv* (S. GUTHLAG, Prol.). *pās cynges rædels* (APOLLON. OF T. p. 5.). *Pā nam he Apollonies hand* (p. 21.). *Ingilð vās lnes brōðor* (SAX. CHR. 926.). *Tóforan pās huses duru* (S. GUTHLAG 1.). *Se scima gástlicre beorhtnyse* (2.).

- β. The objective genitive answers to the object of a transitive verbal notion, which is still active in the word of reference of the genitive, and may, in this respect, be named the passive genitive; but also to objects which might be attached to the word of reference by means of prepositions. It is of limited extent in English.

For *sin's rebuke* and *my Creator's praise* (SHAKSP., III Henry VI. 4, 6.). *My life is my foe's debt* (Rom. a. Jul. 1, 5.). Shall

Rome stand under *one man's awe*? (Jul. Cæs. 2, 1.). *The maker*, and *the earth's* (BYR., Cain 1, 1.). Hither may be red substantives with the genitive, containing the notion of power over anything: Lord Saturninus, *Rome's great* (SHAKSP., Tit. Andr. 1, 2.). To meet at London, *London* in woe (Rich. II. 3, 4.). Five times outlaw'd had he be *England's king*, and *Scotland's queen* (SCOTT, L. Minstr.). Bid *Gloster's Earl* the fight begin (Lord of the Isl. 6, 21.). drew *Marseilles' good bishop* purer breath, when nature si and each gale was death! (POPE, Essay on M. 4, 107.).

The separation of the objective genitive is not to be always accomplished. Thus, in: You heard of *Hamlet's transformation* (Hamlet. 2, 2.) the transitive *transform* may be thought as operating the intransitive verb and *transformation* may also be regarded as quality of Hamlet. Names of Worship, like those above cited, regarded as combined with the objective genitive, inasmuch as they put in part a periphrasis of it by *over* with the case of the object. Engl.: Of *pe kynges crounement* (R. or Gl. II, 433.). Ich habbe *kynges loue* yholde aȝeyn *pe* (L. 54.). Many man for *Cristes* *be* martired (P. PLOTGM. p. 327.). In such pereyl, & in *depes d.* of Gl. II. 452.). Of hym that is *oure soules leche* (TOWN. M. Hallsax.: *Shippend allre shafte* (ORM. 346.). In Anglosaxon the direct object of a verbal notion in the genitive living in the relation, appears, but also oblique objects and such as need their intervention of prepositions: Se almihtiga *scippend and rihten geacefta* (BOETH. 4.). Gyldre *cyninges oferhrynnisse* (LEGG. ÆTHE. 23.). *Godes ege* nis beforan his eāgum (Ps. 35, 1.). For *perre ege* (JOH. 7, 13.). *Synna forgyfenesse* (LUC. 3, 3.). On þam feorð *þysere vorulde geacpennysse* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 4.). Be *fy tintreglican wites* (BEDA 4, 24.). Fram *synna lufan* (ib.). *Lifes* (APOLLON. OF T. p. 11.). *Tō tūcne pære sibbe* (BEDA 4, 5.). *Godes trāvan* (MARC. 11, 22) faith in God]. Vacigende on *Gode* (LUC. 6, 12.) [in prayer to God]. And him *unweald sealde unclean* (MARC. 6, 7.) [power over unclean spirits]. The genitive often with names of worship. Old-Engl.: Bi houre loveded, *her* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 3, 5.). Hallsax.: Att *Rome hurræss* *Ku* (ORM. 8271. cf. 8241.). He wes *þisse londes king* LAM I 292) *londes king* (II. 129.). Hail seo þu Gorlois, *gumenene laured* (Anglosax.: *Cyning engla* (CAEDM. 1778. 1940 &c.) *Constantin cyning* (SAX. CHR. 926.). *Siddæles evæn arist on dōme* (MATH. The combination of proper names with names of dignity is rein Ingvald *Lunden biscop*, and Aldvine *Licetfelda biscop*, and Aldul-*ceastre biscop* (SAX. CHR. 729.). The periphrasis of the objective by *of* is touched here after. We early find *of* with names of

- b. The adnominal genitive has been preserved in prose, especially with determinations of measures of space and of time

About *half a mile's riding* (SCOTT, R. Roy 28.). All . . . this sympathized *one day's error* Have suffered wrong (S. Com. of Err. 5, 1.). 'T will be *two long days' journey* (3.). In the *ten years' war* (BUTL., Hud. 1, 2, 422.). They d from the mount of the Lord *three days' journey* (NUMB. 1 During a *twelvemonth's absence* (FIELD., J. Andr. 1, 11.). *seven months' confinement* (GIBBON, Decl. 13.). After a n

pause (SCOTT, Ivanh. 6.). His beard prematurely grey, was of *several days' growth* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. II. 185.). To find a priest, however, for such a purpose, at *a moment's notice*, was not easy (II. 9.). Whereas however here extension and duration come under consideration, the genitive of the time is also used, especially to denote the space of time in which any thing falls: The rest of *this day's deeds* (SHAKSP., II Henry IV. 4, 3.). They want as much training as a company of recruits *the first day's muster* (GOLDSM., She Stoops 1.). I had seen *the Thursday's Benediction* dropping damply on some hundreds of umbrellas (DICKENS, Pict. fr. It., Rome). In *a summer's day* (FIELD., J. Andr. 1, 3.), with which compare also the inflected adverb: Bring us the bill for *tonight's supper* (GOLDSM., She Stoops 2.). These cases are not essentially distinct from the possessive genitive.

In the older language here, as elsewhere, the denoting the genitive by the inflection is wanting: They seten stille wel *a forlong way* (CHAUC., C. T. 3637.). This Johan lith stille *a forlong whyle* or two (4197.). I schal not faile searly of my day, Nought for a thousand frankes *a myle way* (14686.). It is nyghe *a day iorneye* fro Bethanye (MAUNDEV. p. 48.). Comp. Part I. p. 244. The oldest language uses the genitive. Anglosax.: Hig fōron of Drihtnes munte *preora daga fāreld* (NEM. 10, 33.). Þā cōmon hig *ānes dāges fer* (LUC. 2, 44.). Goth.: Qemun *dagis vīg* (ib.). The denoting the time in which anything falls by the genitive is as ancient. Anglosax.: *Sunnandāges frēols* healde man georne (LEGG. ÆTHELB. IV. 17.).

- c. In poetry an appositive genitive of a proper name after a generic name, which is otherwise periphrased by *of* with its case, is still met with; see Subst. with Prep.

The government of *Britain's isle* (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 1, 3.). *Numidia's spacious kingdom* (ADDIS., Cato 2, 1.). *Numidia's empire* (4, 4.). The blind old man of *Scio's rocky isle* (BYR., Bride 2, 2.). *Tempe's classic vale* (ROGERS, Pleas. of Mem. 1.).

This genitive reminds us of such Latin expressions as: *Urbem Patavii* (VIRG., Aen. 1, 247.). *Celsam Buthroti* . . . *urbem* (3, 293.). In *oppido Antiochiae* (CIC., Attic. 5, 8.). The older English tongue mostly uses other expressions; see Subst. with *of*. In Hallsaxon a similar genitive is more frequent: Into *Lundenes tun* (LAȜAM. II. 352.). King of *Gascunnes ærd* (III. 86.). Till *Nazaræpess cheastre* (ORM. 1808, cf. 3161.). Neh *Ʒerrsa-læmess cheastre* (10627.). *Romess kinedom* (9173.). I *Romess kineriche* (9446. cf. 9177.). Here seems to be long. Anglosax.: *Brytene ealond* (SAX. CHR. 1, 1.). *Breotone ealond* (BEDA 1, 2.) [Breoton, Bryten = Britannia], apart from the genitive of names of nations, as *lānd*, *ēvel*, *rice* and the like.

- d. The repetition of a substantive in the genitive singular is here and there to augment the notion.

That peace which sleeps within the core of *the heart's heart* (SHELLEY, Cenci 5, 2.). My *soul's soul*! — my all of hope! — my *life's life*! (BULW., Rienzi 2, 2.).

This juxtaposition of the singular with the singular is of modern origin, it is also connected by *of*: *The life of life*, the zest of worldly bliss (YOUNG, N. Th. 9, 1211.).

It seems to have proceeded from the ancient augmentation of a notion by a genitive in the plural, which is periphrased by *of* in

the modern language: That sprightly *Scot of Scots*, Douglas (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 2, 4.). But now to come to your *face of faces*, or courtier's face (BEN JONS., Cynth. Rev. 2, 1.). Up led by thee into the *heav'n of heavens* (MILT., P. L. 7, 12.). To him that rideth upon the *heaven of heavens* (PS. 68, 33.). The *course of courses* is, our curse to love (YOUNG, N. Th. 9, 42.). *Mystery of Mysteries* (TENNIS. p. 33.).

The earlier language only knows a genitive of the plural in this case, which is already periphrased by *of* in Old-English and Halfsaxon. Old-Engl.: Crist *kyngene kyng* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 21.). *Allre maidene maide*, and *hevene quen* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 128.). — Jhesu Crist, and *king of kinges* (CHAUC., C. T. 7172.). He is *kyng of kynges* (TOWN. M. p. 141.). In: This place the Jewes callen *Sancta Sanctorum*; that is to seye *holy of hallowes* (MAUNDEV. p. 85.) *Sanctorum* seems to have been mistakenly translated as masculine Halfsax.: Criste is *allre kinge king* (OEM. 3588.). — *King off alle kingess* Annd *preost off alle preostess ec* (344. cf. 6671.). In Anglosaxon the genitive is frequent with names of persons and things: *Ealra cyninga cyning* (COD. EXON. 9, 17. 14, 6.). *Symle þu bist hālig, dryhtna dryhten* (25, 22.). He bið *peōvena peova* his gebrōðrum (GEN. 9, 25.). *Ealra prymma prym* (COD. EXON. 45, 28.). In *dredma dream* (36, 22.). Si him lof *symle purh voruld vorulda* (48, 26.). *Heofona heofonas* (BASIL., Hexam. 5.). Old-norse: *Sveinn sveina* (Harbarðsl. 1.). *Karl karla* (ib. 2.). *Mær meyja* (HYNDLAL. 1.). *Rökkur rökkra* (ib.). Compare the Adject. p. 285. The genitive of the plural is nearly akin to the genitive after superlatives; the genitive of the singular may in its effect be compared with it as to the repetition of the same substantive.

- e. If the word of reference of the genitive is contained in a preceding sentence or member of a sentence, the genitive sometimes stands without repetition of the word of reference.

Man's *life* is cheap as *beast's* (SHAKSP., Lear 2, 4.). His *knowledge* was not far behind *the knight's* (BUTL., Hud. 1, 1, 479. cf. 2, 1, 175. Ep. of Hud. 85.). I will listen to your mournful *song*, Sweet as *the soft, complaining nightingale's* (SOUTHERN, Oroon. 2, 2.). Imitative *strokes* can do no more 'Than please the eye — *sweet Nature's* ev'ry sense (COWP. p. 174.). That *eye* returned him glance for glance, And proudly to *his sire's* was raised, Till *Giafar's* quail'd and shrunk askance (BYR., Bride 1, 5.).

With this reference back to a preceding substantive is to be compared the use of a genitive in analogy with the possessive pronoun (see p. 222.), when the substantive word of reference, unless it is a collective name or the name of a material, would have to be completed in the plural.

Shrew me, If I would lose it for a *revenue* Of *any king's* in Europe (SHAKSP., Cymb. 2, 3.). There's *money* of *the king's* coming down the hill (I Henry IV. 2, 2.). Letters came last night To a dear *friend of the good duke of York's* (Rich. II. 3, 4.). This *news of papa's* puts me all in a flutter (GOLDSM., She Stoops 1.). 'Tis a friend of *Rienzi's* (BULW., Rienzi 1, 3.). My father's foolish opinion, if one may give that epithet to any *opinion of a father's*, does not affect your real innocence (SCOTT, R. Roy 11.). Adam came to be constantly thrown into the way of a certain *maid of Mr. Hylton's* (WARREN, Now and Then 1.). He is likewise a *rival of*

nine, that is *my other self's* (SHERID.). I was taken to a new *toy* of *his* and *the squire's*, which he termed the falconry (IRVING, Br. II. The Bury Man).

The supplemental introduction of a genitive without repetition of the word of reference, which in this case is commonly accompanied by another genitive or by a possessive, is ancient. Old-Engl.: Let pulte out ys own *eye*, & ys *sone's* also (R. or GL. I. 71.). Study in Petres *wordes* and in *Poules* (CHAUC., C. T. 7401.). My fader's *dayes* shalle com with *grete*, And *my moder's* also (TOWN. M. p. 44.). Anglosax.: On Godes *grife* and on *pās cyninges* (LEGG. ÆTHELR. IV. 20.). Sý hit *cyninges man*, sý hit *pegnes* (VI. 4.). Gif hwa arcebisceopes *borh* ðððe *æðelinges* ábrece (LEGG. CUTH. I B. 55.).

I cannot vouch with ancient instances the use of the genitive of a substantive in combination with the preposition *of*, as in the cases last specified, however homogeneous it may be with that of the possessive pronouns, which is found in former times. (See p. 223.)

- f. The genitive is also used elliptically. The substantive notion to be completed is either that of a building, as house, shop, church, or of a locality, as square, parish &c. The genitive is a name of a person, frequently a proper name.

I'll to *the surgeon's* (SHAKSP., I Henry VI. 3, 1.). Come! to *the Duke's* (COLER., Picc. 1, 5.). I write to you from *Murray's*, and, I may say, from *Murray* (BYRON, Lett.). I saw him at *the jeweller's* to-day (LONGF. I. 131.). This oily rascal is known as well as *Paul's* (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 2, 4.). Like the two figures at *St. Dunstan's* (COWP. p. 15.). We hurried off to *St. Peter's* (DICKENS, Pict. fr. It., Rome). To tourney at *St. Mark's* (ROGERS, It. Foscarì). Doctor Thomas Tenison, who then held the vicarage of *St. Martin's* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. II. 192.). We shall be the happiest couple in all *St. James's* (GOLDSM., G. Nat. M. 2.). The vast increase of buildings in *St. Giles's* and *St. Martin's* in the Fields (BRITTON, Pict. of Lond. p. 14.).

These ellipsis chiefly occur in combination with prepositions, it yields little fruit to pursue them in the ancient literary language of England. Yet we find, for ex.: And wonede at *Seynt Petre's* in a nonnery pere (R. or GL. I. 129.). Comp.: At *Seynt Petur kyrke* (HALLIW., Nugae Poet. p. 63.). The frequent ellipsis with *at* is discussed Part II. 1. p. 376. and pointed out even in Old-norse. Old-norse instances with *tíl* with names of persons are not decisive, this preposition having the genitive. Grimm gives, Gr. 4, 261. middle-netherlandish instances of the omission of the subst. *hause*. Goth.: Gaggip sums manne fram *pis fauramapleis synagogeis* (Luc. 8, 49.). Greek is analogous: *Εἰς Ἰλαίωνος, εἰς διδασκάλου φοιτῶν* and the like. Latin: Ad *Iovis Statoris* sc. aedem, templum (Liv. 1, 41.). The like in Anglosaxon is unknown to me.

- g. Two genitives preceding a substantive may serve to determine it. A twofold relation is then possible. Either the last genitive stands in immediate relation with the following substantive, and is determined in this combination by the former; or both genitives stand in the closest relation to each other, thus determining the following substantive. Here, as with composition, there always arises a division into two, so that either the first two or the last two substantives are to be regarded as a simple member of the

relation, to which the remaining substantive stands opposed as the second member. The context decides as to the separation. The two genitives commonly form the first member, as especially in the denoting of relationships.

As he is but *my father's brother's son* (SHAKSP., *Rich.* II. 1, 1.). Philip, *good old Sir Robert's wife's eldest son* (JOHN 1, 1.). This is my niece Die, *my wife's brother's daughter* (SCOTT, *R. Roy* 6.). Spottletoe married *my father's brother's child* (DICKENS, *M. Chuzzlew.* 1, 4.). That is madam Lucy, *my master's mistress's maid* (SHERID., *Riv.* 2, 1.). He's dead; and at the *murderer's horse's tail*, In beastly sort dragg'd through the shameful field (SHAKSP., *Troil.* a. Cr. 5, 11.). — *The lieutenant's last day's march* is over (STERNE, *Tr. Sh.* 6, 6.). Words for which a true cavalier would have drawn the *speaker's life's blood* (BULW., *Rienzi* 4, 5.).

Old-Engl.: *pe kyng Artures systers sone* (R. or GL. I. 169.). *Costantynes sones fur fle* I. 133.) [Ignem filiorum Constantini diffuse]. Halssax.: *David kingess kinness menn* (ORM. 319.). Anglosax.: *Godes rices godspel* (MARC. 1, 14.). *pās ares flōdes wearnes* (BEDA, Sm. 616, 16.). In Anglosaxon the genitives may naturally also follow: *pȝ fīftan geāre Orrēdes rices pās cȳninges* (BEDA, Sm. 641, 25.). *purh innōðas ūres Godes mildheortnisse* (LUC. 1, 78.).

- b. The non-denoting of the genitive by inflection is in Modern-English restricted to those cases in which an inflective *s*, occurring in the member of the sentence, reacts upon the undenoted case. Instances belonging here are cited Part I. p. 244.

For the history of this combination compare, besides Old-English, the Halssax.: Upponn *Herode kingess daz* (ORM. 257.). *David kingess kinness menn* (319.). *De Laferrd Cristess karre* (DED. 56.). For other rejections of the not yet acknowledged reception of the inflectional termination of the genitive in the ancient language see Part I p. 244. Comp. also: In the temple *Salomon* (R. or GL. II. 410.). They were *bir eme knyghtes* (PROVYDOR 1983.). That was *Abymelech sone* (MAUNDV. p. 111.). *Byshope Jettyr shepe* (p. 57.). In the *priest hand* (TOWN. M. p. 10.). *Jesse son . . I am* (p. 51.). *Kyng in Jacob kyn* (p. 74.). Under his *horse wombe* (WRIGHT, *Polit. S.* p. 218.). With forms like: His *fadir heved* (ALIS. 1085.). *Heor fader dep* (R. or GL. I. 134.). His *brother leuedy* (AMIS. A. AMIL. (1144)). Hire *sone schipes* (ALIS. 1070.) we must still think of the operation of the original Anglosaxon genitive forms *fāder* (rarely *fāderes*), *brōðor*, *mōðor*, *sunu*. The longer preservation of such genitives may have been supported by the Old-French usage of omitting the particle *de* with the adnominal genitive, in particular of names of persons: Por amor *Deu* (TRIST. ed. Michel. I. 179.). Sara: femme *Abram* (GENESE 24, 48.). Les filz *Aymon* (HAYMONSK. ed. Bekk. 70.). A l'amour *Jhesu-Crist* (935.). La mort *li Rei* (ROM. DE ROU 15226.); see Orelli, Old-French Gr. p. 37. Diez, *Romance Gr.* 3, 135.

As the genitive forms enter into the composition of substantives, see Part I. p. 476.

The Accusative.

An accusative appears in a limited measure as the more particular determination of a substantive. We disregard the combination of verbal substantives in *ing* with an object (see p. 73.), as well as

the compounding of verbal substantives with the case of the object (see Part. I. p. 478.), where the effect of the transitive verb is completely transferred to the derivative form. At this place we have in our eye a few determinations of time and measure, in part approximating to adverbs, and more natural in the language of conversation than in the literary language.

My troublous *dream this night* doth make me sad (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 1, 2.). Whose *adventures this day*, when our grandchildren shall hear to be made a fable, I doubt not but it shall find both spectators and applause (BEN JONS., Ev. Man in h. hum. 5, 1.). To write of *victories next year*, And castles taken yet i'th'air (BUTL., Hud. 2, 3, 173.). The coachman objected, "that he could not suffer him to be taken in, unless somebody would pay a shilling for his *carriage the four miles*" (FIELD., J. Andr. 1, 12.).

Adverbial members, supported in this way, not by the verb but by a substantive, can, of course, only be so, if verbal strength so far dwells in the substantive as to awaken the idea of an action. I have not been able to note any ancient instances.

The Substantive with Prepositions.

A prepositional member also serves to further determine a substantive notion. The reference of the preposition with the case of the object to the solitary substantive with which it appears combined is not always free from doubt. It may seem as if, where the substantive appears as the predicative complement or as the object of a verb, the prepositional member is to be primarily referred, not to the substantive, but to it only in this its combination with the verb. The construction would then rest upon the equivalence of a periphrased verbal notion with a corresponding verb. Comp.: To be a *sharer* in her grief (Rowe, Fair Penit. 1, 1.) = to *share* in h. gr. Who *is lord* over us? (Ps. 12, 4.) = who *lords* [rules] over us? The occurrence of prepositional members, even with the isolation of the substantive notion determined thereby, as well as the possibility of the transfer of the government by the verb to a derivative substantive, and of the analogous treatment of homogeneous or allied substantives with those still disclosing the power of verbs, finally, the frequent power of substituting a simple genitive for the prepositional member, give support to the immediate and strict grammatical connection of the prepositional member with the substantive, when the conception first cited is not absolutely excluded. In a few cases this construction may be reduced to an abbreviation of speech bordering on Ellipsis.

The preposition most frequently occurring in the adnominal relation is *of*, next in order to which is *to*, but the rest of the prepositions also frequently come under consideration; but, in general, the multiplication of prepositional members in the adnominal relation belongs to modern times, and to the growing endeavour for brevity of expression.

of has, from the most ancient times taken here the first place; it agrees more with the Romance *de* and the Hollandish *van* than

the German von, in especially taking the place of a genitive in the adnominal member.

a. The reference to the relation of space, originally denoted by of is rarely decidedly evident, as may be the case with the notion of descent and origin, particularly in reference to localities, although the cases referable here are in contact with the genitive, or directly coincide with it.

A noble gentleman of Rome Comes from my lord with letters (SHAKSP., *Cymb.* 1, 7.). The men of Herefordshire (ib. 1, 1.). The edict of Milan secured the revenue as well as the peace of the church (GIBBON, Decl. 14.). The booty of Killiecrankie (MACAUL., Hist. of E. V. 41.). The pictured arras of Lombardy decorated the walls (BULW., *Rienzi* 1, 4.). Compare further on Pronouns with attributive Determinations. Therewith is connected the term for the place at which anything takes place: The battle of Patay (SHAKSP., *I Henry VI.* 4, 1.). The battle of Pharsalia (FIELD., *J. Andr.* 2, 9.). After the defeat of Emesa (GIBBON, Decl. 7.). The victory of Killiecrankie (MACAUL., Hist. of E. V. 33.). At the same hour with this victory of Jemappes, there went another thing forward (CARL., *Fr. Revol.* 3, 2, 4.). The council of Nice (GIBBON, Decl. 14.). Not exactly in the style of the prize essays of Oxford and Cambridge (MACAUL., *Essays* I. 2.). Beside these stand such expressions as: Cressy battle (SHAKSP., *Henry V.* 2, 4.) or with the genitive: St. Alban's battle (*II Henry VI.* 5, 3.) and with at: Margaret's battle at Saint Alban's (Rich. III. 1, 3.). — The connection of names of places by of with names of worship of persons may likewise border thereon, although we also find the genitive of names of places, which we should rather designate as an objective one; see p. 294. The emperor of Russia (SHAKSP., *Meas. for Meas.* 3, 2.). The duke of Milan (*Temp.* 1, 2.). My noble lord of Lancaster (Rich. II. 1, 1.). The Archbishop's grace of York (*I Henry IV.* 3, 2.). Thomas, fourth Duke of Norfolk, Philip, eleventh Earl of Arundel (MACAUL., Hist. of E. II. 196.). A house belonging to the Marquess of Athol (*V.* 41.). The old pope of Rome (CARL., *Past a. Pres.* 3, 1.). In the mere combination of a proper name with a geographical name a reference to descent may be operative: Duke Eric of Brunswick (MOTLEY, *Rise of the Dutch Rep.* 3, 3.). The devil take Henry of Lancaster (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 5, 5.). Henry IV. of Castile (ROSCOE, *Leo X.* 1.). The impudent accusation which he had brought against Catharine of Braganza (MACAUL., Hist. of E. V. 53.). The struggle of John of Anjou, Duke of Calabria, for the crown of Naples (IRVING, *Columb.* 1, 2.). Athelstane of Coningsburgh (SCOTT, *Ivanh.* 6.), although the geographical name, appearing as a part of the proper name, does not absolutely express descent from the country named.

The idea of descent and origin is found denoted by of from the most ancient times. Old-Engl.: þer was sum syk man Lazarus of Bethanye of þe castel of Mary and Marthe (WYCL., *Joh* 11, 1.). Amonges men of Sodome (P. PLOUGHM. p. 278.). Naaman of Syrie (MAUNDEV. p. 104.). Þat folc of Denemarch (R. or GL. II. 371.). Heo bigonne arere Werre vp men

of *pis lond* (I. 79.). *De feind of helle* (ANTICRIST 59.). *Reed wyn of Gascoigne* (P. PLOUGH. p. 14.). *Shelles of Galice* (p. 109.). Halſsax.: *Josæpess sune, off Nazaræp* (ORM. 12778.). Anglosax.: *pā gemætte se here pā scipu Eást-Englum and of Lundene* (SAX CHR. a. 992.). *pā men of Lundendbyrig gefetedon pā scipu* (896.). *Agelbyrht of Galvalum* (650.). There-with comp. *ut* of. Halſsax.: *Whar beo ge mine gumen ut of Galwæiða?* (LAJAM. II. 25.). — The denoting of the place at which an activity takes place is found in Old-Engl.: *pat was in þe bataile of Troie* (R. OF GL. I. 69.). In the *batayle of Kyrkencluf* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 216.). To the *feire ef Botolfston* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 4.). The use of *of* in such cases seems attributable to the influence of the Romance *de*. With names of Worship of all sorts of early became usual with geographical names. Old-Engl.: To July, *þe emperour of Rome*, *Androge, erl of Kent* (R. OF GL. I. 54.). To Howwel, *kyng of þe lond* (I. 169.). Robert, *erl of Gloucestre* (II. 432.). Of *þe byssop of Londone* (II. 421.). *þe erchebyssop of Canterbury* (II. 417.). *Cenobia of Palmire the queen* (CHAUC. C. T. 15733.). To Odenake, *prince of that citee* (15758.). The *abbot of Seon* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 214.). The *scheref of that contré* (HALLIW., Freemas. 411.). Halſsax.: *Leir . . laured of Bulvine* (LAJAM. III. 103.). *Axien king of þissen londe* (I. 307.). *þe eort of Flandres* (III. 86.). *Turnus . . þt wes of Tuskanne duc* (I. 7.). *Of Babiloyne he wes ældere* (III. 103.). *Of þissen londe he wes primat* (III. 192.). *Of Rome he was legat and of þan hirede prelat* (II. 607.). *þe king off Romeburh* (ORM. 7010.). *Heo wes quen of alle wodes* (LAJAM. I. 49.). Something of this sort is met with in Anglo-sax.: *Se vās ær biscop of Lunden* (SAX. CHR. 616.). *Se vel villenda bisceop of Vinceastre* (984.). The immediate combination of the name of a person with the name of a place also belongs to Old-Engl.: *Nou is Edward of Carnarvan King of Engeland* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 249.). *Sire Johan of Lyndeseye* (p. 217.). *Sire Thomas of Multone* (ib.). *Philippos son of Macedon* (CHAUC., C. T. 16142.). *þe kyng Phylp of France* (R. OF GL. II. 379.). *Of the erl Hugilin of Pise* (CHAUC., C. T. 15893.).

For the local meaning of *of* comp. also Part II. 1., p. 290.

- b. *Of*, with the case of the object, represents the subjective genitive of the person or thing, the meaning of which has been discussed at p. 292.: *All flesh shall see the salvation of God* (LUKE 3, 6.). *Every word of God* (4, 4.). *No works of man* *May rival these* (COWP. p. 174.). *When . . the Capitol of the Cæsars witnessed the triumph of Petrarch*, the scholastic fame of the young *Rienzi* had attracted the friendship of the poet (BULW., *Rienzi* 1, 4.). *Tears, sometimes, and the conquest of an eye* (YOUNG, N. Th. 5, 539.). *Vile spark of heav'nly flame* (POPE, *Dying Christ*). At the early peep of dawn (SCOTT, *Ivanh.* 2.). *The product of this time* which made the greatest sensation was the *Xenien* (LEWES, G. II. 171.). *The inclemency of the season* (GIBBON, *Decl.* 16.). A powerful and independent mind, emancipated from the influence of authority (MACAUL., *Essays* I. 2.). *He can't survive the glare of fashion long* (THACKER., *Vanity Fair* 3, 3.). *The too frequent fickleness of earthly friendships* (WARREN, *Now a. Then* 1.). *Father of angels! but the friend of man!* (YOUNG, N. Th. 4, 602.). *To the house of signior Baptista Minola?* (SHAKSP., *Taming* 1, 2.) *The sun of heaven* (JOHN 5, 5.). *Hands of invisible spirits touch the strings Of that mysterious instrument, the soul* (LONGF. I. 139.). *The pit of a theatre* (SCOTT, *Ivanh.* 7.). *The cords of the tents* (ib.). *The pleasures of this happy place* (ADDIS., *Rosam.* 1, 1.). *The trumpet*

of the battle Hath a high and thrilling tone (MRS. HEMANS p. 171.). *Of age the glory* is, to wish to die (YOUNG, N. Th. 5, 649.). Where is the *fable of thy former years?* (4, 810.) The only *lamp of this lone hour*, Is glimmering in Zuleika's tower (BYRON, Bride 2, 5.). Have you seen the *debate of last night* (DOUGL. JERROLD, Bubbles 1, 1.).

The province of the prepositional member with *of*, instead of the subjective genitive remained a long time, and is still partly narrowed by the preservation and extension of the old genitive form in *es* (*s*). Yet *of* is also frequent in the thirteenth and fourteenth century in this combination. Old-Engl.: *þoru bone of Seyn Wolston* (R. or GL. II. 386.). The *rysing of flech* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 38.), *þe word o Gregori* (ANTICR. 415.). Neper of *wille of fleysche*, neper of *wille of man* (WYCL., Joh. 1, 13.). For the *avowerie of the kyng* of Fraunce (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 189.). Thorb *b(i)dding of baytys* such harm hem hath biht (p. 150.). Thurf grete *wit of clergie* (Pop. Treat. p. 132.). The *note . . . Of the (h)ende egle* (DEPOSIT. OF RICH. II p. 17.). *þe temple o Salamon* (ANTICR. 137.). The *lord of this lord* (MAUNDEV. p. 7.). The *croz of our Lord Jesu Crist* (p. 9.). Alle the *sepultures of the patriarkes* (p. 66.). *Might of the communes* Made hym to regne (P. PLOUGHM. p. 8.). Fro *chele of the wynter* (DEPOS. OF RICH. II. p. 13.). The *dyversitee of langages* (MAUNDEV. p. 40.). The *sones of God* (WYCL., Joh. 1, 12.). All the *prophete (= profit) of the lond* (DEPOSIT. OF RICH. II. p. 27.). Under *þe rof of Cristes heven* (ANTICR. 186.). The *monceie of this molde* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 17.). *Gods alle o þe ald tim* (ANTICR. 300.). In Hallsaxon similar instances are much rarer: *þa he isaid hauede þa sæzen of ure drihten* (LAWM. III. 189.). *þurh fir Off soþfast lufe* (ORM. 1634.). *Mikell smec Of recless* (1088.). Till all þe rihte *witt off þa patt all rihtwise wærenn* (189.). Intill *þe burh off heffne* (1699.). Al *þat god of þisse londe* (LAWM. I. 43.). Anglosaxon presents little support, if commencements of the possessive meaning are excepted, as: *þa muneccas of þe mynstre* (SAX. CHR. 656.).

- c. The periphrasis with *of* represents an objective genitive with concrete and abstract substantives, containing the notion of an action directed or referred to an object, which mostly lies in the verb of the stem, which requires either a case of the object or even the intervention of a preposition.

Thou great *defender of this Capitol* (SHAKSP., Tit. Andron. 1, 2.). To be *rulers of thousands* (EXOD. 18, 21.). The houseless *rovers of the silvan world* (COWP. p. 178.). Æmilianus, *governor of Pan- nonia* (GIBBON, Decl. 6.). The Colonna were stanch *supporters of the imperial party* (BULW., Rienzi 1, 4.). The *owner of the hut* (MALTRAV. 1, 1.). The infamous *lover of the unfortunate Queen Mary* (SCOTT, Old Mortality 4.). The Koran *chanters of the hymn of fute* (BYRON, Bride 2, 27.). Make us *partakers of a little gain* (SHAKSP., I Henry VI. 2, 1.). See thy Paris *judge of Gods* (TENNYNS. p. 101.). — I would the *cutting of my garments* would serve the turn; or the *breaking of my Spanish sword* (SHAKSP., All's Well 4, 1.). There Was *shedding of blood, and rending of hair, Rape of maiden, and slaughter of priest* (SCOTT, Harold 1, 1.). The *remission of sins* (LUKE, 3, 3.). During that *persecution of the Whigs* which followed the *dissolution of the Oxford parliament* (MACAUL., Essays I. 1.). The *cultivation of the soil* (SCOTT, Monastery 1.). They are the *affectation of affectation* (FIELD., J. Andr. 3, 3.). In consequence

of a general seizure of his papers (ib.). The furtherance of his own plans (SCOTT, S. Roy 1.). A desperate . . defence of their liberties (Monastery 1.). Every offer of service, favour or promotion (BULW., Rienzi 1, 4.). The fear of the Lord is clean (Ps. 19, 9.). My fear of death (YOUNG, N. Th. 4, 618.). Love of gain (5, 155.). They still possessed the sense and desire of liberty (BULW., Rienzi 1, 2.). He was disappointed . . in his hopes of immediate patronage (IRVING, Columb. 2, 3.). Give an account of thy stewardship (LUKE 16, 12.). The legendary love-tale of Romeo and Juliet (BULW., Rienzi 1, 7.). Speak plainly your opinions of our hopes (SHAKSP., II Henry IV. 1, 3.). The gospel of the kingdom of God (MARK 1, 14.). Sing, sing in memory of the brave departed (MRS. HEMANS p. 174.). Fondness of fame is avarice of air (YOUNG, N. Th. 5, 2.).

The objective or subjective relation, both of the periphrasis and of the genitive, becomes clear from the context, the same substantives mostly admitting determinations of both kinds. The way was early paved for the periphrasis, now by far preponderant, for the objective genitive relation. Old-Engl: The beste worcheres of gold, sylver, cotoun, sylk MAUNDEV. p. 212). Pompeus, of the orient conquerour (CHAUC., C. T. 16179.). Ma'ker of all that is (TOWNS. M. p. 20.). Begynnar of blunder! (p. 30.) — Þoru foloing o þat fuls prophet (ANTICRIST 430.). For likynge of drynke (P. PLOUGHM. p. 16.). Thei knewen him in brekyng of bred (MACNDEV. p. 116.). With-outen castynge of of hire clothes (p. 41.) By pyllynge of zoure peple (DEPOS. OF RICH. II. p. 6.). The desiring of the joye perdurable (CHAUC., C. T. p. 186. 1.). The forzefenesse of synnes (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 38. cf. (P. PLOUGHM. p. 283.). The expositioun of dremes (MAUNDEV. p. 44.). Thou havest grauntise of hire love (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 12.). For coveitise of cope (P. PLOUGHM. p. 4.). The governance of the peple (p. 38.). The lordshipe of youre londes (P. PLOUGHM. p. 323.). With-outen speche of any word (MAUNDEV. p. 234.). Unordynate love of wordly thinges (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 39.). For drede of kyng Heroude (MACNDEV. p. 34. cf. p. 138. P. PLOUGHM. p. 282.). For del of hire min herte breke (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 11.). Mekylle thank of youre good wille (TOWNS. M. p. 128.). In Hallsaxon much of the kind is found: Forræifenesse off sinness (ORM. 9194. cf. 9512.). Forr þe lufe off himm (4848.). For þon lufe of his broðer (LAJAM. I. 10.). Summe heo flujen to Irlonde, for þan æie of Gurnonde (III. 167. [= for the awe of G.] Ða profetess þatt hæfðenn witt purh Hali; Gast Off all þatt cumenn sholde (ORM. 16803.). Of deað he hæfde care (LAJAM. I. 44.). In Anglosaxon there is perhaps to be referred here: He sylf is sēð anginn of þam sōðan anginne (BASIL., Hexam. 2.). Him stent ege of þe (DEUTER. 28, 10.); otherwise the genitive rules in this province: For þara Judæa ege (JOH. 7, 13.), see p. 296.

- d. To the particular relations of the adnominal determination with of, belonging to the side of the subjective genitive relation, or developed from them, the following are to be referred.

- a. The adnominal member serves to denote the material or the ingredients of the object expressed by the word of relation.

A form of wax (SHAKSP., John 5, 4.). By this hand of flesh (BEN JONS., Alchemist 1, 1.). Creatures of other mold (MILT., P. L. 4, 360.). A rock of diamond (6, 364.). A house of stone (WEBST. v. stone). Her lamp of fretted gold (BYRON, Bride 2, 5.). Her turban of yellow silk (SCOTT, Ivanh. 7.). Thick clouds of dust (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 5, 5.). A pile of wood (SHAKSP., Tit.

Andr. 1, 2.). Dryden's *groves of oak* (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 6, 23.). A *circle of precious stones* (SCOTT, Ivanh. 7.).

This construction is old. Old-Engl.: A *raketyne of yre* (R. or GL. I. 142.). *Basyne of bras* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 189.). A *faire tombe of ston* (MAUNDEV. p. 88.). A *vesselle of cristalle* (p. 12.). With *sadel of gold* (ALIS. 176.). *Bellis of selver schene* (177.). *Hourves of selk* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 13.). A *crowne of thorne* (TOWN. M. p. 209.). A *gerland of leves* (p. 218.). A *crest of fedres* (MAUNDEV. p. 48.). Halfsax.: *Ænne micle zeord of golde* (LAJAM. II. 521.). *Ænne ring of rede golde* (III. 237.). Urnen *stremes of blode* (III. 105.). *Clāðes soften al of white seolke* (II. 533.). *Enne brond al of stele* (III. 106.). It extends into Anglos.: *Hāfde reaf of olfenda hærum* (MATH. 3, 4.). Besides adjectives from names of materials, as *golden, silfren, cyperen, stānen* and compounds with names of materials, as *goldfāt, seolferfāt, stānburh, stānweall* frequently restricted periphrasis.

β. Akin to that is the introduction of the quality or attribute, the measure, value or price of the word of relation, by *of*.

The *man of wisdom* is the *man of years* (YOUNG, N. Th. 5, 775.). He was a *man of parts and learning, of quick sensibility* and stainless virtue (MACAUL., Hist. of E. II. 7.). Have we a living *bard of merit*? (BYR., Engl. Bards p. 322.) With thine *eyes of blue*, And boasted *locks of red or auburn hue* (p. 316.). An excellent *man of the old stamp* (SCOTT, Kenilw. 1.). A *man of a goodly person, and of somewhat round belly* (ib.). *Arguments of mighty force* (SHAKSP., III Henry VI. 2, 2.). *Brands of foreign blade and hill* (BYR., Bride 2, 8.). The most ancient historical *ballad of any length now in existence* (SCOTT, Minstrely I. 42.). A *maiden of forty* (COWP., Spy 1.). A *brigitante of 150 tons* (FIELD., J. Andr. 2, 17.). A *present of five thousand pounds* (2, 33.).

These determinations, answering to a genitivus qualitatis, pretii, mensurae of the Latin, diverging from this, have from ancient times not merely admitted a substantive accompanied by the adjective, by which its degree and measure are more particularly determined. The attribute may be an abstract and a concrete substantive. Old-Engl.: A *doȝter ich haue of gret prys* (R. or GL. I. 12.). Strong *knyght and hardi, and mon of gret fame* (I. 48.). Many *Cristene men of gode feythe* (MAUNDEV. p. 167.). *Folk of oon feith* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 329.). Mi loved is . . . *Mon of pris* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 5.). *Tuo bishops of renoun* (LANGT. II. 283.). A *raton of renoun* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 10.). *Alisaundre wexeth child of mayn* (ALIS 656.). A *chyld of myghte* (TOWN. M. p. 74.). *Vitailles of grete vertues* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 275.). *Vayr man . . . & of broune here* (R. or GL. II. 429.). A *mon of myghty hond* (ALIS. 97.). In a *tawny tabard Of twelf winter age* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 88.). Instances are rarer in Halfsax.: An *God off trinne kinde* (ORM. 1358.). A *king of mucle mæhte* (LAJAM. II. 556.). A *jung mon of priti ȝeren* (I. 17.). In Anglosaxon I have not met with *of*, but *on* in this combination: Ane *hand on þam fāgerestan reðdan hīve* (S. GUTHLAC 1.). The genitive is besides in use: Sum fore-mæra *mann āðelan kyne-kynnes* (S. GUTHLAC 11.). þā bet-stan *mereȝriðtan æleas hīves* (BEDA, I, 1). Feoƿer *circulas . . . hītes hīves* (SAX. CHR. 1104.). An *gylden calic . . . vunderlices geƿeorces* (1058). Sum *fenn unmetre mycelnesse* (S. GUTHLAC 3.). Comp. Goth.: *Dauhtar . . . was imma sve vintrive tvalibe* (LRC. 8, 42.), in imitation of the Latin.

- γ. The adnominal member is added appositively to its word of relation, by a narrower notion's being added to the more general one, which, as a notion of a sort, or as the term for an individual, contains its more particular determination.

This case very frequently appears with geographical notions with the addition of the proper name, as with those of land, empire, province, diocese, town, village, island.

The *land of Canaan* (GEN. 13, 12.). This *land of England* (CARL., Past a. Pres. 2, 17.). The *kingdom of Denmark proper* (CHAMBERS, Informat. II. 205. I.). In the *provinces of New-hampshire and Main* (ROBERTSON, Hist. of Amer.). The *duchy of Anjou* (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 1, 1.). The *archduchy of Austria* (CHAMBERS, Informat. II. 201. I.). The then independent *principality of Wales* (II. 216. I.). Th' *earldom of Hereford* (SHAKSP., Rich. III. 4, 2.). In the *Grafschaft of Mansfeld* (LEWES, G. I. 7.). The *city of London* (SHAKSP., I Henry VI. 3, 1.). The *city of Genoa* (IRVING, Columb. 1, 1.). The pleasant *town of Doncaster* (SCOTT, Ivanh. 1.). The *village of Cumnor* (Kenilw. 1.). That *island of England* (SHAKSP., Henry V. 3, 7.). The *island of Atalantis* (IRVING, Columb. Introd.). The *isle of Man* (CHAMB., Inform. II. 210. II.). So, to a smaller extent, with the succeeding denomination of mountain, valley, river, desert, and the like. The *mountain of Nebo* (DEUTER. 34, 1.). The comparatively fertile *valley of Teviotdale* (SCOTT, Monastery 1.). The savage *vale of Glencoe* (CHAMB., Inform. II. 233. II.). The *river of Cydnus* (SHAKSP., Ant. a. Cleop. 2, 2.). The wild *stream of Cona* (CHAMB., Informat. II. 233. II.). The *desert of Zin* (NUMB. 20, 1.). The *wilderness of Kadesh* (Ps. 29, 8.) [unless we have to except deserts named after other localities]. The substantives first named have in part, and more rarely, the proper name in the same case after them: That fatal *country Sicilia* (SHAKSP., Wint. Tale 4, 1.). The *city Tours* (II Henry VI. 1, 3.). Your *city Rome* (Coriol. 5, 5.). This *city Jericho* (JOSH. 6, 26.). The *city Rehoboth* (CHAMB., Inform. II. 77. I.), or, inversely, before them: At *Berkley castle* (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 2, 2.). *Conway and Caernarvon Castles* (CHAMB., Inform. II. 216. I.). Before *Troy town* (BUTL., Hud. 1, 2, 324.). The feast was over in *Branksome tower* (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 1, 1.). Among those last named *mount* and *river* commonly precede the appositional proper name in the same case: The *mount Misenum* (SHAKSP., Ant. a. Cleop. 2, 2.). *Mount Hermon* (MILT., P. L. 12, 142.). *Mount Carmel* (12, 144.), see p. 154. The *river Po* (SHAKSP., John 1, 1.). The *river Euphrates* (JOSH. 1, 4.). The *ivers Pison, Gihon, Hiddekel and Euphrates* (MACAUL., Essays I. 325.). For this and the like, as well as for *cape*, *head* and *ness* see elsewhere. The genitive is still poetical in many places, see p. 294.

The use of *of* in these cases goes back to Halfsaxon. It agrees with that of the Romance *de*, to which, however, it is not to be reduced, although it was supported by it. Old-Engl.: *pe lond of Lumhardy* (R. or Gl. I. 10.). *pe lond of Ysland* (II. 371.). *pe lond of Grece* (I 11.). The *lond of Histria* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 272.). *pe imperi*

of Rome (ARTICR. 285.). *pe kingrikes of Grece and Pers.* (244.). The *reme of Russye* (MAUNDEV. p. 7.). The *rewe of Arabye* (p. 42.). In the *bischoppriche of Exetre* (R. OF GL. I. 5.). *pe contreye of Norphomberlond* (II. 386.) *pe boru of Jerusalem* (I. 72.). *pe town of Euerwik* (I. 27.). The *town of Jerusalem* (RICH. C. DE L. 1268.). The *cité of Londone* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 10.). The *cite of Facen* (ALIS. 4805. cf. 4807.). The *yle of Man* (R. OF GL. I. 2.). *pe grete yle of Orkeneye* (ib.). The *ile of Cipre* (MAUNDEV. p. 158.). — The *mount of Synay* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 348. cf. MAUNDEV. p. 34.). The *hille of Lyban* (p. 103.). The *grete see of Occian* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 137.). The *ryvere of Danubee* (MAUNDEV. p. 7.). The *ryvere of Euphrate* (p. 41. cf. 43 45. 56. 103.). The *ryver of Gysen* (CHAUC., C. T. 7662.) *Bytuene pe water of Trente & Ouse* (R. OF GL. II. 371.). The *broke of Cison* (MAUNDEV. p. 111.). Valleys and deserts named after other localities are: The *vale of Elyn* (MAUNDEV. p. 57.). The *desert of Pharan* (p. 103.). *Halfsax: I þon lond of Griclond* (LAJAM. I. 26.). *pe land off Galile* (ORM. 6984.). *pa burh of Eschestre* (LAJAM. III. 243.). *pe burrh off Zerrusalem* (ORM. 16764.). To *þane castle of Sparatin* (LAJAM. I. 26.). To *þan castle of Deoure* (III. 250.). — *Bi pe montaine* [contre mod. text] of *Azare* (I. 54.). *þen lac of Silvius* (ib.). How far the genitive of the proper name was and is used see p. 294. The mere proper name has appeared appositively from the most ancient times with many of these generic names. Old-Engl.: *pe town Zephayle* (R. OF GL. II. 409.). The *castelle Saffra* (MAUNDEV. p. 115.). The *feld Magede* (p. 111.). — The *mount Thabor* (p. 113.). To *mount Syon* (p. 90. 92.). In the *monte Synay* (TOWN. M. p. 51.). In that *hille Thabor* (MAUNDEV. p. 114.). The *grete see Ocean* (p. 256.). To *fom Jordan* (p. 98.). *Flume Jordan* (TOWN. M. p. 167.). Of *fom Jordone* (Cov. MYST. p. 9.) *Halfsax: pe burh Kair-Uske* (LAJAM. I. 257.). — *De flumm Jordan* (ORM. 8299. cf. 9247.). *Flumm Jordan* (10626. cf. 10652.). This is familiar to Anglo-sax: *þas rices Trachonitidis* (LUC. 3, 1.). *Buƿon þære byrig Gabaon* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 13.). *þas burh Hiericho* (JOS. 6, 26.). Of *þære ceastre Nazareth* (LUC. 2, 4. cf. 2, 39.). On *þam edlonde Sicilia* (BOETH. 16, 1.). — *Uppan þone munt Nebo* (DEUTER. 34, 1.). On *þam munte Sinai* (BASIL., Hexam. 1.). *Við þone mere Genesareth* (LUC. 5, 1.). *Oð þa miclan eð Eufraten* (JOS. 1, 4.). *Cómon . . tó þam vèstene Sin* (NUM. 20, 1.). — The inverse collocation of the proper name and the appositive generic name with and without the article is wider diffused in ancient times than in the modern period of the language Old-Engl.: *Bethleem the citee* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 383.). Of *Thebes the citee* (CHAUC., C. T. 941.). *Acres town* (LANGT. I. 143.). To *Rome town* (SEUTN SAGES 329.). Into *Jerusalem town* (RICH. C. DE L. 5139.). To *Jaffe castel* (6850.) *Be Seyne water* (OCTOVIAN 1359.). *Besyde Jordan streme* (TOWN. M. p. 44.). *Halfsax: Winchestre pa burh* (LAJAM. III. 137.) *Uppen Uske þan wætere* (I. 256.). *Lancastel* (II. 171.). Anglo-sax.: On *Sennaar lande* (GEN. 11, 2.). *At Paris þære byrig* (SAX. CHR. 886.). On *Antiochia þære ceastre* (35.). To *Mailros þam mynatre* (BEDA 5, 13.). *Eall Vihte pāt eðland* (SAX. CHR. 534.). *Orcadas þa eðland* (BRDA 1, 3.). *Uppan Sinai munt* (EXOD. 19, 11.). On *Oreb dūne* (33, 6.). *Be Tinon þære eð* (SAX. CHR. 875.). Appositive generic names after proper names are of course distinct from such combinations as in Mod.-Engl.: *By Candy shore* (MARLOWE, Jew of M. I, 1.). In *Malta road* (ib.). Through *Malta streets* (5, 4.). At *Antwerp bridge* (DOCT. FAUST. I, 1.). The *Strasburg gates* (LEWES, G II. 82.). The *Strasburg Cathedral* (II. 83.). The corner of *Twickenham churchyard* (TH. HOOK. Gilb. Gurney 3.). The *Tyrol passes* (COLLIER, Picc. 1, 10.). Through *Solway sands*, through *Tarras moss* (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 1, 21.). The *Oxford parliament* (MACAUL., Essays 1, 1.). With *Merseburg beer* (Le-

WES, G. II. 84.). Old-Engl.: O *Londonne brugge* (WRIGHT, Pol. S. p. 213.). To *Londonne brugge* (p. 213.) and the like, in which another genitive is represented by a loose composition, as is the case with other proper names, and also names of persons: The *Blumenbach theory* (DICKENS, M. Chuzzlew. 1, 1.). The *Monboddoo doctrine* (ib.).

A few notions of time, such as month and hour, are followed by the more special determination with *of*; in the latter case this is a numeral.

Full of spirit as the *month of May* (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 4, 1.). In that *month of August* (LEWES, G. I. 16.). Betwixt the *hours of twelve and one* (MARLOWE, Doct. Faust 5, 4.). At length the *hour of twelve o'clock* swung its summons over the city (SCOTT, R. Roy 21.). At the early *hour of three* (TH. HOOK, Gilb. Gurney 3.).

Old-Engl.: In the *monthe of Jun* (R. or Gl. II. 410.), else also in juxtapositions like: In *March moneth* (RICH. C. DE L. 2031.). Comp. Anglo-sax.: On *Augustus mōnðe* (BOETH 5, 2.) and compounds *Solmōnāð*, *Hýðmōnāð*, *Hrēðmōnāð*. The genitive is met with in Hallsax.: Wippinnenn *Joless monepp* (ORM. 1910.), instead of the Anglosaxon *Geála*, that is, Yule month, in which the yule feast falls.

Among the remaining generic names there especially occur, accompanied by *of*, name, word, title, cry &c.; but also many others with proper names, names of sorts or members of another sort, and even sentences.

My *name of George* (SHAKSP., Rich. III. 1, 1.). He usually went among his sect by the *name of Gains the publican* (SCOTT, Old Mortality 4.). Wherefore dost thou urge the *name of hands*? . . If Marcus did not name the *word of hands* (SHAKSP., Tit. Androm. 3, 2.). Nothing merits the *name of eloquent or beautiful*, which is not suited to the occasion, and to the persons to whom it is addressed (BLAIR, Lect.). The *nickname of Musselmou'd Charlie* (SCOTT, Minstr. I. 85.). He had assumed the *surname of Cæsar* (GIBBON, Decl. 2.). For himself he chose the *title of prince of the senate* (ib.). A German, who assumed the lofty *title of the Duke Werner* (BULW., Rienzi 1, 2.). The man stationed in the round top surprised them with the joyful *cry of "land"* (ROBERTS, Amer.). The infernal *cry of "Holla, ho!"* (SCOTT, The wild Huntsm.) The *cry of "Down with the Bishops!"* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. II. 51.). The *cry of "Live the king"* (BULW., Rienzi 2, 8.). In 1723 was performed his *tragedy of "Mariamne"* (JOHNS., Lives II. Fenton). In the nautical *drama of "Backeyed Susan"* (LEWES, Brit. Dramatists II. 1.). When in 1816 he published his *poem of "Rimini"* (I. 434.). The *Intermezzo of "Oberon and Titania's Marriage"* (G. II. 192.). Following his father's *trade of wool-combing* (IRVING, Columb. 1, 2.). The *element of fire* Is pure (LONGF. I. 140.) and others. With the statement of the tenor of the word after the word of reference, the former is often added without more: What is the *word, honour?* (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 5, 1.) Never to mention the *word goodness* (FIELD., T. Jon. 3, 3.). He . . gain'd the *suraddition, Leonatus* (SHAKSP., Cymb. 1, 1.). The *shout "They*

come, they come!" (BYR., *Siege* 22.). In his poem, *The Gods of Greece* (LEWES, G. II. 165.),

Old-Engl.: And ȝaf hyt the name of masonry (HALLIW., *Freemas.* 24.). As the psalm of *Benedicite* seythe (MAUNDEV. p. 35.). Scheo hadde not this gift of kunnyng (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., *Rel. Ant.* I. 39.). Þe art of lechecraft (R. OF GL. I. 150.). Contricioun destruyeth the prisoun of helle (CHAUC., C. T. p. 190. II.). Here belong terms for trees, as: A tree of oke (MAUNDEV. p. 24.). The tree of eldre (p. 93.). Trees of palme (p. 57.). Trees of cedre (p. 103.), comp.: *arbor fici*, and such as: The nombre of 9 (p. 228.), which are in use even in Hallsax.: þe tale of ehhite (ORW. 4337. cf. 4338.). þurh tale off seoffne (5385. 5477.). þe tale off tweyenn hundredd (6091. cf. 6085.). I have not met with the like in Anglosaxon; there the appositive relation is met with: Heom naman sette Boanerges (MARC. 3, 17.). Scōp him Heort naman (BEOW. 157.). Þýstre genip þam þe se peoden self sceōp nihte naman (CAEDM. 139.). Where *nama* occurs with the genitive, the common subjective or possessive relation takes place: On dryhtnes naman (MARC. 11, 9.). Se þe underfēhð vitegan on vitegan naman (MATH. 11, 41.), comp. the name God; in God name.

Names of persons, but names of things also, are attached with of and the indefinite article to another substantive, by which the same are characterized according to their sort or quality.

'Twas a strange riddle of a lady (BUTL., *Hud.* 1, 3, 337.). He's the devil of a fellow (SOUTHERN, *Oroon.* 1, 2.). Mr. Honeywood's rogue of a drunken butler (GOLDSM., *G. Nat. M.* 4.). He's a jewel of a man (DOUGL. JERROLD, *Rent Day* 1, 4.). But then she had a devil of a spirit (BYR., *D. Juan* 1, 20.). I chanced upon the prettiest, oddest fantastical thing of a dream the other night (CH. LAMB, *Essays on Elia*). It would seem that the annexing of the singular of generic names to such abstract substantives as *manner*, *sort* and *kind* should be similarly apprehended: *What manner of man* is he? (SHAKSP., *Twelfth N.* 1, 5.) *A sort of throne* (SCOTT, *Ivanh.* 7.). *A sort of Goshen* (Monastery 1.). *An odd sort of apology* (BYRON, *Don Juan* 1, 41.). *What kind of a place* is this Bath? (SHERID., *Riv.* 1, 1.) You have got an odd kind of a method of swearing (2, 1.), among which the substantives with the indefinite article lean more closely on the above cited mode of expression: If Beverley should ask you *what kind of a man* your friend Acres is, do tell him I am a devil of a fellow (SHERID. *Riv.* 4.).

Substantives with the indefinite article occur in German: Ein Schurke von einem Bedienten (Lessing); eine Pracht von einem Becher (Schiller); beside: ein Engel von Mädchen; ein Schurke von Bedienten; ein Teufel von Kerl, in which the article does not appear, as in Romance expressions: un grand coquin de coureur (JOUR); ce damné d'hérétique (DEMAS); ce diable d'homme; cette diable de femme (ACAD.). Those forms seem, however, like these, to point to the French usage, and mostly belong to popular speech. The word of reference contains the attribute of the other substantive, and may be replaced by a corresponding adjective, as in: ein schurkischer Bediente. I have found naught similar in the older English. *Manner*, *sort*, *kind* properly point to the following substantive as the generic notion, which, generalized, is equal to the plural, as in: There are a sort of men (SHAKSP., *Merch.*

of V. 1, 1.). Such *kind of men* (Much Ado 3, 3.). But the corresponding expressions *maner*, *kyn*, *mystyr*, Old-Fr. *mestier*, are treated remarkably similarly in Old-English. We find them in immediate juxtaposition with substantives in the singular and plural: Uter . . . *pat Ambrose hette also*, In *anoper maner name* (R. of GL. I. 147.). *What maner mon* was he? (SIR AMADAS 122.). Of *alle manere mysscheff* (DEPOS. OF RICH. II. p. 21.). *Uche maner faired* in hire was (ALIS. 212.). For *alle manere beestes* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 275.). Maker of *alle kyn thyng* (TOWN. M. p. 132.). *What mystyr man* dede the mysuse? (COV. MYST. p. 140.). Compare for the singular the German: *eine Art Mensch*; *eine Art Vogel*, and the like; see under *f*. They correspond, combined with other determinations, to an adjective determination of the succeeding substantive, as they perhaps would in the genitive, which is also found in its place: Of *any kynnes creature* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 377.) [this is of any kind of creature]. Of *alle kynnes filthe* (p. 274.). *Manikynes ding* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 219.). From *alle kyns ille* (TOWN. M. p. 127.). Hallsaxon: *O whilces kinnes wise* (ORM. 5283.). On *elches cunnes wise* (LAJAM. I. 344. cf. I. 186.). Anglosax.: On *māniges cynnes misdædan* (LEGG, ÆTHELR. IV. 22.). We meet concurrently the subsumption under a plural member with *of*. Old-Engl.: Of *alle manere of men* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 2. cf. TOWN. M. p. 281.).

- δ. The periphrasis with *of* has from the most ancient times taken the place of a partitive genitive; it then denotes the totality a part of which, and which the word of reference expresses, comes under consideration. The substantive notion conjoined by *of* stands, not only in the plural, but also in the singular, either if it is a collective notion, or, generally, if a concrete or abstract substantive is to be taken as a totality. The substantive word of reference denotes a quantity, multitude, measure or weight.

They inclosed a great *multitude of fishes* (LUKE 5, 6.). The ships with the *residue of the captives* (IRVING, Columb. 15, 7.). The *rest of the family* will be at supper (BOURCAULT, Lond. Assur. 4, 1.). It requires a *vast deal of address* (BULW., Lady of L. 1, 1.). How a *score of ewes* now? (SHAKSP., II Henry IV. 3, 2.). I'll give my jewels for a *set of beads*, My subjects for a *pair of carved saints* (Richel. II. 3, 3.). Some six or seven *dozen of Scots* (I Henry IV. 2, 4.). You can try how your signature will look across *half a dozen of them* (BOURCIC., Lond. Assur. 3, 1.). I have bought *five yoke of oxen* (LUKE, 14, 19.). Not a *man of us* has been chased, as yet (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 1, 1.). Many *thousands of square miles* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 277.). There were only two *millions of human beings* in England, Scotland, and Ireland taken together (I. 278.). With the working people, again, it is not so well. Unlucky! For there are from *twenty to twenty-five millions of them* (CARL., Fr. Revol. 1, 2, 2.). *2 lbs of butter*; *6 gallons of rum*; *11 bushels of wheat*; *11 ounces of gold* (GROSSLEY A. MARTIN, Arithm. p. 27.). The *thousandth part of a million* (p. 17.). Three *tenth deals of flour* (NUMB. 18, 12.). Do't, and thou hast the *one half of my heart* (SHAKSP., Wint. T. 1, 2.). One *fifth of the booty* (IRVING, Columb. 15, 7.). Here also are to be referred expressions like: My young companion was a *bit of a poet*, a *bit of an artist*, a *bit*

of a musician (TH. HOOK, Gilb Gurney 1.). That the notion of the whole is treated like that of a part has been already observed with *all* (p. 275.). Here belongs the use of *the whole*: I would sit and sing *the whole of the day* (TENNYSON p. 58.). Four hundred a year is *the whole of my income* (TH. HOOK, Gilb. Gurney 3.).

It has been discussed at p. 209. how verbs, in themselves substantive, accompanied by substantives, are treated like adjectives. So too other collective numbers are also combined immediately with a substantive: The *million millions* — The *myriad myriads* (BYRON, Cain 1, 1.). Amongst *three or four score hogheads* (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 2, 4.). A *dozen years* (Temp. 1, 2.). They have had *half a dozen consultations* (IRVING, Br. H. Falconry). Some *half dozen family-pictures* (WARREN, Ten Thous. a-year 2, 7.).

Old-Engl.: *Plente me may in Engeldon of alle gode yse* (R. or GL. I. 1.). Thorough *plentee of payn* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 278.). Gret *plentee of gode fische* (MAUNDEV. p. 115.). Fulle gret *multitude of peple* (p. 43.). *Fourti pousant of roperen* he lette quelle *per to*, And of *fatte weperen an hundred pousand* also (R. or GL. I. 52.). *Sixtene hundred of horsmen* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 189.). *An hundrid of zeris* (DEPOS. OF RICH. II. p. 15.). *þe mett o quete* (ARTICR. 343.). A *pounde of oymement precious spykenarde* (WYCL., Joh. 12, 3.). Halfsax: *Mikell flocc Off þiss Judiskenn peode* (ORM. 169.). *Muchel del of londe* (LAJAM. III. 191.). *Wipp fife wehte off sillferr* (ORM. 7812. cf. 7828.). *Seoue þusend punde of seoluere and of golde* (II. 522.). Anglosax.: *Slôh of his mannon mycelne dæl* (SAX. CHR. a. 1087.). Else the genitive is frequent after substantives: *Mycele mænegeo fixa* (LUC. 5, 6.). *Mycel swiþna heord* (5, 11.). *An getyme oxena* (14, 19.). *Hæfde æne yndsan goldes* (OROS. 4, 10.). *Se sæster hvættes* (SAX. CHR. 1051.). *Hund mittena hvættes* (LUC. 16, 7.). *Tvelf fôður græfan* (SAX. CHR. 852.). *Fæover hund scillinga seolfres* (GEN. 23, 16.). *Tvâ and tventig þusend punda goldes and seolfres* (LEGG. ÆTHEL. III. 8.). For numeral substantives see p. 209. The want of the inflective termination, as well as of the preposition *of* is peculiar to Old to a greater extent than to Modern English: A *dozeyn myle aboute* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 434.). The mountance of 6 *score foreynes* (MAUNDEV. p. 38.). In *six score dayes* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 51.). *Gif us a busschel whet, or malt, or reye* (CHAUC., C. T. 7328.). *Half a quarter otes* (7545.); not rarely with the transposition of the substantives: *Maistres he hadde a dosayn* (ALIS. 657.). But there is *gold and silver gret plentee* (MAUNDEV. p. 184.). These combinations answer to the Modern-Highdutch eine Masse Geld; ein Pfund Fleisch; ein Fuder Wein; ein Stück Brod, and: Geld hat er eine Menge; Freunde besitzt er eine gute Anzahl.

The member with *of* appears in many regards as a substitute for a partitive genitive. Thus we have become acquainted with it in the objective relation with the verb (Vol. II. 1 p. 253.), with cardinal numbers (p. 209.), with ordinal numbers (p. 213.), with interrogative pronouns (p. 236.), with indeterminate Pronouns (p. 275.), and with comparatives and superlatives (p. 284.). We have frequently been able to pursue the periphrasis into Anglosaxon.

- e. The emphatic repetition of the same substantive with *of*, instead of which the genitive also still occurs, has been discussed at p. 295.

off and *out of* are sometimes employed in adnominal determinations.

That exquisite mimic, the *best actor off the stage* (TH. HOOK, *Gilb. Gurney* 1.). — Devout *men, out of every nation* (ACTS 2, 5.). I will do more reverence to him, than I will to the *mayor out of his year* (BEN JONS., *Every M. in his hum.* 5, 1.). My dear *deliverer out of hopeless night* (COWP. p. 102.).

Old-Engl.: As *creatures out of wytt* (MAUNDEV. p. 154.). With . . . *Chaterunge out of reson* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 133.). Halssax.: *per wes Doldamin þe kene ut of Gutlonde* (LAJAM. II. 578.).

from is not seldom used in the adnominal member, both in the meaning of space and in a metaphorical meaning, in the sense of movement from an object, of origin and descent, as well as of separation and removal, of defence and of deliverance.

His first *flight from home* (ROGERS, *It. Montorio*). Her *journey from Vienna to Paris* (LEWES, *G.* II. 86.). Exploring . . . the wat'ry *vaste* For sight of *ship from England* (COWP. p. 181.). *Punishment from Heaven* (ROWE, *Fair Penit.* 5, 1.). *Ambassadors from Harry* (SHAKSP., *Henry V.* 2, 4.). *Letters from the boy* (TH. CAMPBELL, *Theodric*). A *legacy from a distant relation* (ROGERS, *It. The Bag of Gold*). I shall be prouder of such a *tribute from you*, than the most *passionate profession from others* (GOLDSM., *G. Nat. M.* 1.). The army, Just in the moment of our expectation Of *aidance from it* etc. (COLLER., *Picc* 1, 3.). A *movement from Mr. Harper* . . . encouraged him to proceed (COOPER, *Spy* 1.). Silence and Darkness! . . . *Twins from ancient Night!* (YOUNG, *N. Th.* 1, 28.). — Of an infinite distance *From his true-meant design* (SHAKSP., *Meas. for Meas.* 1, 5). This *departure from the established tram-way* (TROLLOPE, *Framl. Passon.* 1, 16.). A *shelter from his ire* (MILT., *P. L.* 6, 842.). A *screen from sultry suns* (COWP. p. 169.). My wretched *ness* may find *relief from thee* (ROWE, *Jane Sh.* 1, 2.). Why to frenzy fly, For *rescue from the blessings we possess?* (YOUNG, *N. Th.* 2, 105.). *Immunity from priestly pow'r* (COWP. p. 103.). A *singular exemption from the cruel caprice of the tyrant* (GIBBON, *Decl.* 10.).

Old-Engl.: He byhet hym . . . Al þat lond *fram* Humber anon into Scotland (R. OF GL. I. 221.). To hire anon he sendethe a *ryng fro his syngre* (MAUNDEV. p. 39.). — A *stones hast fro that chapelle* (p. 92.). Halssax.: *Hercnede tidende from Arþure* (LAJAM. III. 46.). Him likede *tidende from Frolle* (II. 571.). Anglosax.: Ac þu us *freoddöm gief*, folca valdend *from yfla geh-vam* (COD. EXON. 469, 8.).

to (more rarely unto) very often stands in the adnominal relation.

It is often used of the reference of movement, extension and direction to anything in space: His *return to Rome* (SHAKSP., *Tit. Andron.* 1, 2.). Our *march to the gates* (BULW., *Rienzi* 5, 3.). He would spend no more money in *trips to Scotland* (TROLLOPE, *Framl. Parson.* 1, 9.). Having for some time intended a *visit to Madrid* (IRVING, *Columb. Pref.*). He hears the sentence "*Banishment to Candia*" (ROGERS, *It. Foscari*). An honorable *exile to his castles* (COLLER., *Picc.* 3, 1.). This *invitation to Chaldicotes* (TROLLOPE, *Framl. Parson.* 1, 2.). Grant me a *passport to some distant land* (AN ADVENT.).

Access to his person (GIBBON, Decl. 9.). *She shall be our messenger to this paltry knight* (SHAKSP., Merry W. 2, 1.). *The way to Chester* (II Henry IV. 4, 1.). *I was on my road to London* (MARRYAT, Pet. Simple 1, 1.). *The path to bliss* (COWP. p. 47.), and in relative metaphors of the idea of direction: *In prayer to God* (LUKE 6, 12.). *My letters to him* (GOLDSM., G. Nat. M. 1.). *In a letter to Milton* (MACAUL., Essays I. 16.). It is a *serenade to a damsel* in bed, and not to the *Man in the Moon* (LONGF. I. 132.). *To* is also employed with the notion of nearness, partly with a regard to the adjective stem of the word: *Our nearness to the king* in love (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 2, 2.). *Their proximity to those spirit-stirring events* (SCOTT, Minstrelsy I. 11.).

Old-Engl.: *Joyfulle of thi com To me* from Nazareth (TOWN. M. p. 81.). *Pilgrimages to Rome* (P. FLOUGHM. p. 285.). In the *weye to Jerusalem* (MAUNDEV. p. 72. cf. 125. 128.). Anglosax.: *Usic þonne gesæce purh þin sylfes gony eadmôð tō eorðan* (CYNEVULF. Crist 254. Grein). *Þy lās eov viðer-feohtend veges forvyrnen tō vuldres byrig* (Cod. Exon. 282, 17.). *Tō gehealdenne þone veg tō þam lifes treove* (GEN. 3, 24.). *Nis seó gecyrrrednys tō Gode of us sylfum ac of Godes gife* (A.-S. HOMIL. I. 114.).

The instances are numerous of the employment of *to* in the metaphorical and ethical reference of the particle, which in part leans upon substantives derived from verbs or adjectives with *to*, in part upon others denoting objects, and frequently activities which are directed to a jointly participating object, and serve its utility or its disadvantage, as well as those denoting emotions, inclinations and disinclinations; when persons come chiefly under consideration: *It was thy country's gift to her Deliverer* (ROGERS, It., Genoa). The eleventh chapter . . of *additions to that constitution* (MOTLEY, Rise of the Dutch Rep. 3, 2.). *My answer to his letter* I will send myself (BULW., Rienzi 3, 2.). *You have no objection to my proposal* (SHERID., Riv. 1, 2.). After Lord Lufton's *assent to it* (TROLLOPE, Framl. Parson. 1, 21.). There are . . many *exceptions to the general rule* (TH. HOOK, Gilb. Gurney 1.). *Oh blindness to the future!* (POPE, Essay on M. 1, 85.). *The superiority of the Paradise Lost to the Paradise Regained* (MACAUL., Essays I. 17.). On me, sole *cause to thee* of all this woe (MILT., P. L. 10, 935.). *A calamity to our country* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 14.). With small *risk to its liberties* (I. 35.). The most potent *antidote to despair* (MELVILLE, Digby Grand. 1.). *His courtship to the common people* (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 1, 4.). *A compliment to my good sense* (GOLDSM., She Stoops 3.). This was adding an *insult to his penetration* (COOPER, Spy 5.). *Clear from treason to my sovereign* (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 3, 1.). *A little of your fine serious advice to the young lady* might go far (G. Nat. M. 1.). *You forgot your oath to us* at Doncaster (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 5, 1.). *Our duty to God, and our duty to Your Majesty* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. III. 169.). *Thy love to Theseus* (SHAKSP., Mids. N. Dr. 2, 2.). *Her foe in all, save love to thee* (BYRON, Siege 21.). *Any man's good will to others* (GOLDSM., G. Nat. M. 1.). *His present kindness to a supposed child* (2.). *His goodness to his parents* (FIELD., J. Andr. 4, 1.). *I was always against severity to our children* (GOLDSM., G. Nat. M. 2.). *Thy aversion to me* (GAY, Begg. Op. 2, 2.). *His antipathies to his enemies*

(COOPER, Spy 5.). His *dislike to politics* (LEWES, G. I. 18.) and many more. Thus the prepositional member with *to* is also associated with personal substantives, often standing here, as also in some of the instances cited, alongside of that with *of*, which can be reduced to a possessive genitive: A *traitor to the name of God* (SHAKSP., Rich. III. 1, 4.). Did king Richard then Proclaim my brother . . . *Heir to the crown?* (I Henry IV. 1, 3.) A *suitor to your daughter* (Taming 2, 1.). Glavis (his friend, also a rejected *suitor to Pauline*) (BULW., Lady of L. Dram. Pers.). Our Destroyer, *foe to God and man* (MILT., P. L. 4, 749.). Some *foe to man* Has breath'd on ev'ry breast contagious fury (ROWE, Fair Penit. 5, 1.). Antony . . . the *brother to the duke of Burgundy* (SHAKSP., Henry V. 4, 8.). The *sister to Laban the Syrian* (GEN. 25, 20.). This construction is common in the enumeration of persons before dramas: Bailo, *gouverneur to the Queenes sonnes*. Œdipus, the olde King *father to Eteocles, and Polynices, sonne and husbande to Jocasta* (GASCOYNE, Jocasta, Dr. Pers.). Ferdinand, *son to the king of Naples*. Miranda, *daughter to Prospero* (SHAKSP., Temp. Dr. Pers.). François, *first page to Richelieu*. Julie an orphan, *ward to Richelieu*. Marion de Lormd, *mistress to Orleans* (BULW., Richel. Dr. Pers.); see Vol. II. 1, p. 291. Herewith compare incidentally the employment of the infinitive with *to* with substantives. — *To* is also often found with substantives denoting claim and pretension: Your highness' *claim to France* (SHAKSP., Henry V. 1, 2.). An absolute *claim to originality* (SCOTT, Minstr. I. 7.). Our *title to the crown* (SHAKSP., III Henry VI. 1, 1.). I have a *right to the imperial robe* (BULW., Rienzi 5, 3.). Let us from this moment give up all *pretensions to gentility* (GOLDSM., Vic. 3.) and others.

Instances with *unto* are: For your professed *subjection unto the Gospel of Christ*, and for your liberal *distribution unto them and unto all men* (2 Cor. 9, 13.). Love of you, not *hate unto my friend* (SHAKSP., Two Gentlem. 3, 1.).

In the older language we miss this extensive use of the prepositional member in immediate combination with the substantive. Similar is found in solitary cases. Old-Engl.: Per *confessionem to a priest* Peccata occiduntur (P. PLOUGHM. p. 279.). For *salve to hise woundes* (p. 352.). Right as contricion is comfortable thyng . . . And a *solace to the soule* (p. 290.). Notions of inclination and aversion are often combined with *to*: Han but little *appetyt to mete* (MAUNDEV. p. 157.). *To hys tresore* have I no *nede* (RICH. C. DE L. 3379.). That ever had *to his estat envye* (CHAUC., C. T. 16184.). Halfsax.: Heo hafden muchel *onde to þan kinelonde* (LAJAM. III. 265.); *till* also for *to: God wille Till þa patt stollðenn Unnderrfion Wipp blisse Cristess come* (ORM. 3955.). Anglosaxon here takes the lead with *tō*: Ne bið him *tō hearpan hyge* (CŌE EXON. 308, 23.). Þā nam he micelne *graman and andan tō þām mannum* (A-S. HOMIL. I. 16.). — *to* is not rarely found in Old-English with names of persons: þe *name to þe seruaunt* was Malcus (WYCL., Joh. 18, 10.). The which is *sib to God himself* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 289.). He is an *eretyk and a tretour bolde To Sesare and to oure lawe* (COT. MYST. p. 250.). Comp. Vol. II. 1. p. 292. — The combination of the notions claim and pretension seem in modern times assimilated to that of: *titre, prétention*, *droit* sur of the French.

toward, towards appears in a few combinations, approaching *to*, in the sense of space, and in a metaphorical meaning: *Unto the great*

sea toward [the going down of the sun (JOSH. 1, 4.). An excursion *toward the gates of Hell* (MILT., P. L. 8, 231.). In *progress towards Saint Alban's* (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 1, 4.). Their slower or swifter *progress towards civilisation* (SCOTT, Minstrelsy I. 14.). Their *duties towards Austria* (COLER., Picc. 1, 11.). That . . they may find *Justification towards God* (MILT., P. L. 12, 295.). Quick is mine ear to hear of *good towards him* (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 2, 1.). In *love one toward another, and towards all* (I THESSAL. 3, 12.). My *feelings towards her* were purely of a selfish nature (MELVILLE, Digby Grand 3.).

Old-Engl.: In *the half toward us* the sonne sent his list (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 134.). *De veage toward Rome* he byleuede (R. of GL. I. 220.). *After go men the weye toward Ynde* (MAUNDEV. p. 150.). Compare: *over against*.

into often stands in modern times with verbal substantives: It *was a peep into a fairy-land* (MELVILLE, Digby Grand 3.). They have now an *insight into the whole* (COLER., Picc. 4, 2.). The mere *arrangement of words into poetical rhythm* (SCOTT, Minstrelsy I. 10.). A *version of the work into English* (IRVING, Columb. Pref.). The *researches into popular poetry* [SCOTT, Minstr. I. 14.). The *inquiry into Gæthe's ancestry* (LEWES, G. I. 6.) and the like.

Instances are wanting in ancient times In the Anglosax.: *pā yldestan þenas* (= pegas) *intō Seofon-burgum* (SAX. CHR. 1015.) *in* is interchanged with *intō*. See Vol. II. 1. p. 312. on *into*.

up and *down* are here rarely met with: A winding *path up the mountain* (BULW., Rienzi 3, 1.). A *stroke of my father's hand down my head* (MARRYAT, Pet. Simple 1, 1.).

In Halfsaxon combinations like *up of* in adnominal members are met with: *Hiss Faderr upp off heoffne* (ORM. 352.).

through is found in the adnominal member in relation to space, and perhaps of time: I have lov'd the rural *walk through lanes of grassy swath* (COWP. p. 165.). A rugged *road through rugged Tiverton* (BRYANT p. 94.). His *progress through Somersetshire and Devonshire* in the summer of 1680 (MACAUL., Hist. of E. II 144.). My *boast thro' time! bliss thro' eternity!* (YOUNG, N. Th 4, 591.).

Old-Engl.: Behold my *woundes fyfe thrughe hondes, syde and foytt* (TOWNS. M. p. 283.); also in a causal relation: Come my *schaply thoric scharite, my colver throw sympleness* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel Ant. I. 40.) Halfsax.: *Broperr min . . þurh fulluht annd þurh troweþe* (ORM., Decl 3.).

across, round, around. Her *flight across thy father's ground* (SHAKSP., Wint. T. 4, 3.). — Forget the *world around you* (COLER., Picc. 2, 3.).

against is added to the substantive in an ethical relation: I can get no *remedy against this consumption of the purse* (SHAKSP., II Henry IV. 1, 2.). Flat *treason 'gainst the kingly state of youth* (Love's L. L. 4, 3.). Nothing less than *treason against the monarchy* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. III. 327.). To witness the *insult against feeling and taste* (LEWES, G. II. 85.).

Old-Engl.: To be his *helpe azen hys fon* (R. of GL. II. 336.). Now cometh the *remedye agens lechchery* (CHAUC., C. T. p. 206. I.). Crist took the

bataille Aycins deeth and the devel (P. PLOUGHM. p. 340.). Halfsax.: *Noff whatt menn mihhtenn habbenn nip Ne wrappe ƿæn heore owuƿerr* (ORM. 123.). Anglosax.: *On gevinne . . ogeain his aġenum lustum* (JOB in ETTM. 6, 6.).

in is in frequent use in modern times in the adnominal relation. The preposition often serves to connect the object which comprehends another object or an activity in itself. — *God in heaven* knows (MARLOWE, Doct. Faust 1, 2.). All the *water in the rough rude sea* (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 3, 2.). Our *friends in Bourdeaux* (SCOTT, R. Roy 1.). The hour before the heavenly harness'd team Begins his golden *progress in the east* (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 3, 1.). The news of her happy *arrival in the capital* (LEWES, G. II. 86.). No *object in nature* is more beautiful than a well carried musket (MELVILLE, Digby Grand 1.). The eyes of Harper dropped quietly on the pages of the *volume in his hand* (COOPER, Spy 3.). To advocate *falsehood in children* (TROLLOPE, Framl. Parson. 1, 16.). The preposition also stands in a wider application to abstract and concrete objects: My *light in darkness!* and my *life in death!* (YOUNG, N. Th. 4, 590.) His *first step forward in life* (TROLLOPE, Framl. Parson. 1, 1.). — A young gentleman in a powdered wig and a skyblue coat (DICKENS, Pickw. 2, 20.). — The *man in debt* (YOUNG, N. Th. 6, 532.). A *man in years* (BULW., Rienzi 1, 1.). The *people in employment* (GAY, Begg. Op. 2, 2.). The *stock in trade* of this old gentleman (DICKENS, Dombey a. S. 1, 4.). He drank *success to me in my profession* (MELVILLE, Digby Grand 1.). The *articles in force* Between both Churches (BUTL., Hud. 2, 2, 425.). The *newest cut in fashion* (1, 3, 1172.). To the more important point in *debate* (SHERID., Riv. 1, 2.). I did *all in my power* (GOLDSM., G. Nat. M. 5.). Every *office in their gift* was filled by a Frenchman (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 14.). — *In strength* each armed hand a legion (MILT., P. L. 6, 231.). Thou *Greek in soul*, if not in *creed* (BYRON, Bride 1, 4.). So, also it is combined with notions of time: Of all the *friends in time of grief* (GAY, Begg. Op. 3, 3.) and so forth.

Old-Engl.: Any *mon in londe* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 9.). *Crist yn heven* (HALLIW., Freemas. 555.). *God in hevyn* (Cov. MYST. p. 136.). To an *castel in Yrchenfeld* (R. OF GL. I. 135.). That *dougeon in the dale* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 18.). Trew for to trist as *ston in the walle* (TOWN. M. p. 33.). I am *God in trone* (p. 1.). A-ƿon is al my *streynthe In armes ant in honde* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 125.). Halfsax.: Biforenn *God inn heoffne* (ORM. 421.). *Broperr min i Godess hus* (Ded. 5.). For Anglosaxon the instances of *in* interchanging with *on* are to be compared. See *on*. In a wider application Old-English presents: To other *people in derknesse* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 345.). Of alle *angels in brightnes* (TOWN. M. p. 20.). *Lord in mageste* (p. 170.). Oone *God in endless bliss* (p. 20.). *Syn in pride* (p. 21.). — *Mony juster in eovertour*, Many *knyght in riche armure* (ALIS. 3213.). As *persons in pelure* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 294.). Comp. Anglosax.: *Secg on searvum* (BEOV. 503.). — *Yhen answered kyng Richard, In deed tyon, in thought libbard* (RICH. C. DE L. 2181.). Halfsax.: *patt tu ƿe loke wel fra man Inn aƿess annd i wittness* [= *manaþ*] (ORM. 4478.).

We particularly mention the notions of share, interest, joy, claim or pretension, as well as of belief and trust, and some names of persons allied therewith, to which an adnominal determination with *in* is usually added, as an adverbial determination with

in belong, to verbal notions allied in origin or corresponding in sense: Thou shalt have a *share in our purchase* (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 2, 1.). I begg'd to be a *sharer in her grief* (ROWE, *Eair Penit.* 1, 1.). 'Tis to the virtues of such men, man owes His *portion in the good* that Heav'n bestows (COWP. p. 1.). He was only a junior *partner in the firm* (MELVILLE, *Digby Grand* 15.). What's thy *interest In this sad wreck?* (SHAKSP., *Cymb.* 4, 2.) The bystanders . . seem to take so much *interest in the sport* (MELVILLE, *Digby Grand* 13.). Your *enjoyment in all this* is enhanced by a sense of variety (2.). My *title in the queen* (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 1, 1.). The *propriety of man in man* (MACAUL., *Hist. of E. I.* 22.). — His *belief in her renown* (SHAKSP., *Cymb.* 5, 5.). A fair *believer in ghosts, goblins, and all sorts of curiosities* (OXENF., *Twice Killed* 1, 2.). I wish you . . greater *faith in woman* (LONGF. I. 131.). It is astonishing how great becomes his *trust in the wisdom* of the public (TROLLOPE, *Framl. Parson.* 1, 8.).

In the older tongue I hardly find substantives of this sort outside of the construction with a verb. Old-Engl.: *Suche a lykyng he had in play* (IPOMYDON 900.). That *han no beleve in hem* (MACNDEV. p. 166.) and the like.

on, upon, which often interchange with one another in the adnominal relation also, are met with in the meaning of space, and also metaphorically: Like two *gipsies on a horse* (SHAKSP., *As You Like It.* 5, 3.). *Unto a mountain on the east* of Beth-el (GEN. 12, 8.). *Berwick upon Tweed; Stratford upon Avon*: Often in geographical determinations: With an *angry frown upon her forehead* (TROLLOPE, *Framl. Parson.* 1, 16.). God . . quits his *grasp upon the winds* (COWPER p. 189.). A mere *crowder upon an untuned fiddle* (SCOTT, *Minstrelsy* I. 60.). — The vassals and dependents *on his power* (ROWE, *Jane Sh.* 4, 1.). My only plea Is what it was *dependence upon thee* (COWP. p. 54.). Have I *commandment on the pulse of life?* (SHAKSP., *John* 4, 2.) I have no *power upon you* (Ant. a. Cleop. 1, 3.). It was not only a *constraint upon the child's mind*, but even *upon the natural grace and freedom* of her actions (DICKENS, *Dombey a. S.* 1, 3.). That sunny evening had an *influence on my later life* (MELVILLE, *Digby Grand* 8.). This threat did have its *effect upon him* (TROLLOPE, *Framl. Parson.* 1, 12.). What *claim on all applause!* (YOUNG, *N. Th.* 4, 384.) His violent *attacks on the buckwheat cakes* (COOPER, *Spy* 5.). In an *assault upon their countrymen* (BULW., *Rienzi* 5, 3.). His ambitious *design on Rome* (3, 1.). Thwarted in his more grand and aspiring *projects upon Rome* (ib.). *To judgment* he proceeded *on th' accused Serpent* (MILT., *P. L.* 10, 164.). Your smooth eulogium . . Seems to imply a *censure on the rest* (COWP. p. 3.). A general cry for *vengeance on the foreigner* (MACAUL., *Hist. of E.* II. 146.). Denouncing *vengeance upon John* (SHAKSP., *John* 3, 4.). An *outrage on humanity and decency* (MACAUL., *Hist. of E.* II. 189.). A great *fraud on the nation* (III. 327.). Your *exposition on the holy text* (SHAKSP., II Henry IV. 4, 2.). A biblical *poem on Joseph and his Brethren* (LEWES, *G. I.* 37.). I have been but an *observer upon life* (GOLDSM., *She Stoops* 2.). A *discourse upon any other subject* (TROLLOPE, *Framl. Pars.* 1, 6.).

In former times *on* and *upon*, frequently interchanging with *in*, was often

enough used of a sensuous relation; metaphorical applications to ethical relations, on the other hand, rarely come under consideration. Old-Engl.: *The tour on the toft* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 15). *Mon on urthe* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 5.). Halfsax: *Biforenn menn onn eorpe* (ORM. 422.). Off *preostess kann onn eorpe* (358.). Off *Cristess dæp u rode* (5855.). Anglosax.: *Svylce Godes englas on heofenum* (MARC. 12, 25.). þæt synd þā leóhtan *steorran on þam heofonlican rodore* (BASIL., Hexam. 7.). *Seó ceastervaru on Tharsum* (APOLLON. OF T. p. 10.). þā ástáh Apollonius on þæt dóm-setl on þære strate (p. 9.). Bide þinne *Fäder on diglum* (MATH. 6, 6.) [*τῷ πατρὶ σου τῷ ἐν τῷ κρυπτῷ*]. Old-Engl.: *As muk apon mold I widdar away* (TOWN. M. p. 21.). Twenty thousande *maidens upon destrers* (ALIS. 4925). Such constructions are moreover met with, as in Old-Engl.: *Lauerd ha merci on alle nu* (ANTICRIST 487.). Reason *hadde ruhte on me* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 294.). Halfsax.: He . . *bigon ræwinge uppen Basian* (LAJAM. II. 15.), see Vol. II. 1. on.

at. After a long *voyage at sea* (SHAKSP., Pericl. 4, 6.). His *agents at Portsmouth* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. III. 326.). Like *oxen at the stall* (SHAKSP., 1 Henry IV. 5, 2.). His hopes of *success at court* (IRVING, Columb. 2, 3.). There seems to be a charm in *life at the University* (MELVILLE, Digby Grand 13.). — Let . . Coleridge lull the *babe at nurse* (BYR. p. 327.). — Our *officers at arms* (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 1, 1.). A *pursuivant at arms* (Rich. III. 1, 1.). These are suggestions of a *mind at ease* (ADDIS., Cato 1, 1.). My first *attempt at consciousness* (MELVILLE, Digby Grand 1.). Full of *envy at his greatness* (SHAKSP., Troil. a. Cress. 2, 1.). Our *impious discontent At aught thy wisdom has deny'd* (POPE, Univ. Prayer).

Old-Engl.: *Wyp pleyngne at tables* (R. OF GL. I. 192.). I am *his madyn at his hand* And in his wold (TOWN. M. p. 75.). Anglosax.: He *getymbrade þæt mynster át Glástingabyrig* (SAX. CHR. 688.).

by. The rural walk . . *by rivers brink* (COWP, p. 165.). — The *Conquest by Duke William of Normandy* (SCOTT, Ivanh. 1.). Though printers condescend the press to soil With *rhyme by Hoare* and *epic blank by Hoyle* (BYR. p. 329.).

Old-Engl.: *Wente me to reste Under a brood bank By a bornes side* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 1.). In a *chapel be the way* A body on a bere lay (SIR AMADAS 227.). July . . *muche del of the world bi Est* to hys power nom (R. OF GL. I. 44.). — *Filius by the fader wille* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 335.). *ðat ðefte meiden Marie bi name* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 209.). Halfsaxon: *Karlum bi Uske* (LAJAM. II. 596.). Al þa *scipen bi sæ stronde* he nom to his honde (II. 15.). Anglosax.: An *geveorc on Defena-scyre be þære norð-sæ* (SAX. CHR. 894.). *Ve viton öðer igland hé eðstan* (ib. Introd.). Comp.: *beside, besides*. Old-Engl.: At *Snowdon biside Bangore* (LANGT. II. 237.). At *Cayre besides Babyloyne* (MACNDEV. p. 44.). Halfsax.: *Bi þære sæ stronde biside Scotlonde* (LAJAM. II. 94.).

with. A *maid with clean hands* (SHAKSP., Two Gentlem. 3, 1.). The *guard with the lantern* (DICKENS, Pickw. 2, 20.). *Shoes with buckles* (ib.). Great formal *wigs with a tie behind* (ib.). — Is whispering nothing? . . *Kissing with inside lip?* (SHAKSP., Wint. Tale 1, 2.). They are unlike all *coquettings with imaginary beauties* (LEWES, G. I. 95.). *Lucinda* did not like that *tampering with fate* (I. 97.). A *connexion with one so unworthy her merits* (GOLDSM., G. Nat. M. 1.). His *conference with Rienzi* (BULW., Rienzi 3, 1.). His *compact with me* (GOLDSM., G. Nat. M. 1.). His *intimacy with me* (ib.). My *ac-*

quaintance with him (MELVILLE, Digby Grand 13.). *In perfect consentment with ourselves* (12.). *His intrigues with the Queen of Faery* (SCOTT, Minstrelsy I. 25.). *His adventure with Gretchen* (LEWES, G. I. 61.). *To wars with the women* (SHAKSP., Ant. a Cleop. 2, 2.). *The war with Granada* (IRVING, Columb. 2, 3.). *Avoiding any interference with his religious faith* (LEWES, G. I. 94.).

Old-Engl.: *A modi clarc with croune* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 11.). *Swich a frend With so free an herte* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 304.). *A bulle with many bisshopes seles* (p. 5.). *The coppe with the drinke* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 10.). Halfsax.: *Egþerr sibb wiþþ operr* (ORM. 336.). Anglosax.: *At Baddan-byrig wið Vinburnan* (SAX. CHR. 901.). *Vealas nellað sibbe wið ús* (607.). *þær bið . . . long nið wið god* (GREIN, Ags. Poes II. 348.). With abstract substantives *with* commonly occurs only where they contain *with* a verb the periphrasis of a corresponding verbal notion. The *mid*, frequently equivalent to *with*, is also used adnominally in Anglosaxon: *lc on neorxna vonge nive æsette treow mid telgum* (SATAN 481. Grein).

between, betwixt. The *way between Saint Albans and London* (SHAKSP., II Henry IV. 2, 2.). The *space between the stars and us* (COWP. p. 105.). A *curtain-drop between the acts of death* (TH. CAMPBELL, Theodric). That Serbonian bog *Betwixt Damia and Mount Casius old* (MILT., P. L. 2, 592.). — There may as well be *amity and life 'Tween snow and fire* (SHAKSP., Merch. of V. 3, 2.). An *alliance between these two fine arts* (SCOTT, Minstrelsy 1, 10.). The *truce between the two great parties* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. IV. 7.). The vehicle of social communication *betwixt him and his brethren* (SCOTT, Minstr. I. 6.). He perhaps shall need *Some messenger betwixt me and the peers* (SHAKSP., John 4, 2.). A *lawsuit between your two ladies* (GAY, Begg. Op. 3, 1.). The little altercation between them (DICKENS, Dombey a. S. 1, 3.). The *struggle between the two Teutonic breeds* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 10.). The *Wars betwixt England and Scotland* (SCOTT, Monastery 1.). A general *similarity betwixt these and the Danish ballads* (SCOTT, Minstr. I. 82.). That's all the *difference between them* (GOLDSM., G. Nat. M. 3.). The *difference betwixt day and night* (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 3, 1.). A *choice between you and poverty* (BOURCIC., Lond. Assur. 1, 1.). *Twilight . . , short arbiter 'Twixt day and night* (MILT., P. L. 9, 50.).

Older writers rarely present the close connection of substantives with *between*, as the following instances shew. Old-Engl.: *Bytuene pys tueye kinges anon so gret loue þer was* (R. or GL. I. 237.). *Bytuene þe kyng Edelfred and þe quene ys wyf . . . wax a gret stryf* (ib.) *His herte gaf tille Blanche, if hir wille wer þerto, & holy kirke wilð stanche sibred bituex þam tuo* (LANGT. II. 253.). *Bituex þise tuo kynges a verre bigan* (I. 14.). Halfsax.: *þatt sette gripp onn erpe Bitwenenn Godd annd menn* (ORM. Pr. 60.). *þer wes þa motunge bituex þan twam kinge* (LAJAM. III. 213.) and the like. Anglosax.: *Oferhergade eall hiora lond betweoh dicum and Vusan* (SAX. CHR. 905.). *Frif freondum bitweon* (COD. EXON. 101, 15.). *Forþam þe hi macodon mæst þæt unsæht betweonan Godwine and þam cýnge* (SAX. CHR. 1052.). Comp. also *among*. Old-Engl.: *They holden the beleefe amonge us* (MAUNDEV. p. 121.). *To se sich stryfes wedmen emong* (TOWNS. M. p. 30.).

for. My *depart of France* (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 1, 1.). Their *departure for town* (MELVILLE, Digby Grand 5.). On his *road for Kiegsburg* (COLER., Picc. 4, 2.). — His *residence for five-and-thirty*

years (ROGERS, It., Foscarì): — As he could not assure her of some *return for her affection* (LEWES, G. I. 98.). Some *flattery for this evil* (SHAKSP., Love's L. L. 4, 3). By *prayer for us* (2 Cor. 1, 11.). My *love for you* (LONGF. I. 171.). My *friendship for the young lady* (GOLDSM., G. Nat. M. 1.). Your *cares for me* (ib.). My *sorrow for them* (ROWE, Jane Sh. 2, 1.). A mother's tears in *passion for her son* (SHAKSP., Tit. Andron. 1, 2.). A strong *passion for geographical science* (IRVING, Columb. 1, 1.). With all his *fondness for travel* (MELVILLE, Digby Grand 9.). He . . has no *relish for frippery and nick-nacks* (CARL., Past a. Pres. 3, 1.). His *raye for arms* (SCOTT, Last Minstr. 4, 9.). There was a general *cry for vengeance* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. II. 146.). The *struggle of John of Anjou . . for the crown of Naples* (IRVING, Columb. 1, 2.). The *hour for stir and village-gossip* (ROGERS, It., The Fountain). A *text for a stanza* (MACAUL., Essays I. 13.). Alas! small *cause for joy!* (YOUNG, N. Th. 4, 303.). What *grounds for apprehension* (SHERID., Riv. 2, 1.). A *butt for Herschel-telescopes* (CARL., Past a. Pres 3, 1.). With a *heart for any fate* (LONGF. I. 7.) and many more.

The ancient language is poor in the extension of the use of *for*. Old-Engl: Vhe *thonking . . For hire faire giftes* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 37.) *Surgiens for dedly synnes* (p. 279.) A dead *scoruwe vor lure of eie worldliche pinge* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 67.).

before. Nicholas dipped his pen into the *inkstand before him* (DICKENS, O. Nickleby 2, 6). Women are but mirrors, which reflect the *images before them* (COOPER, Spy 4.).

after. With many *inquieris after my father* (MELVILLE, Digby Grand 19.).

Old-Engl: For *covetyse after good* (HALLIW., Freemas. 659.). For *coveitise after cros* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 325.).

over. The rural *walk O'er hills* (COWP. p. 165.). — Young Plantagenet, Son of the elder brother of this man, And *king o'er him, and all that he enjoys* (SHAKSP., John 2, 1.). Who is *lord over us?* (Ps. 12, 4.) He is . . *master over himself* (LEWES, G. I. 142.). Which, indeed, is a mere *tyranny over her guests* (BEN JONS., Cynth Revels 2, 1.). That hath *authority over him* (SHAKSP., III Henry VI. 1, 2.). The *domination of race over race* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 2.). *Exclusive jurisdiction over all crimes whatever* (MOTLEY, Rise of the Dutch Rep. 3, 2.). The same *influence over posterity* (SCOTT, Minstrelsy I. 12.). This has a remarkable *spell over my imagination* (BULW., E. Aram. 1, 1.).

Old-Engl: Heyl, *floure ovyr ffleur!* . . *lord over lordys!* . . *kynge ovyr kynges!* (COV. MYST. p. 154.) *God over alle thinges and remedies* (MAUNDEV. p. 35.). He hadde . . *maistrie over any man* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 293.). To hym is *cure over us* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 44.). Halssax: Nu wes ic leopod Cadwalan *kind over Anglen* (L. JAM. III. 257.). *þat ic am duc ofer heom* (I. 20) *þu art læwerd ove(r) us* (I. 265.). Heo hire wolden maken *duc & deme ofer his folke* (I. 16.). Alls if itt wære *laferrðfloc Offr alle þopre floccens* (ORM. 589.). Anglosax: Se vās *cyning ofer eall Ongel-cynn* (SAX. CHR. 901.). *þæt hira ealdras anveald ofer hi habbað* (MARC. 11, 42.).

above. From yon blue *heavens above us* (TENNYNS. p. 128.). —

My father . . had a lucrative living, a "soul above buttons" (MARRYAT, P. Simple 1, 1.). Of wits and parts above thy age (ADDIS., Rosam. 2, 2.).

Old-Engl.: Upe þe doune aboute Bape (R. OF GL. I. 174.). In thy palace aboute the orient (SKELTON I. 13.). Ne to be mair above men (P. PLOUGHM. p. 290.). Hælsax.: Itt wass hæfedd kinedom Abufenn opre unnfæwe (ORM. 9175.).

under. Out of every nation under heaven (ACTS 2, 5.). The recently discovered tribes of the African coast, under the same latitude (IRVING, Columb. 4, 1.). — All the bands Of angels under watch (MILT., P. L. 5, 287.). The Tartar-Frigate under weigh (DICKENS, Dombey a. S. 1, 4.). The officers and men under his command (MACAUL., Hist. of E. III. 326.). Two pretty girls, both under twenty (LEWES, G. I. 96.).

Old-Engl.: To wone inne in thraldom under þe kyng (R. OF GL. I. 143.). Ne to be mair above men, Ne mynystre und kynges (P. PLOUGHM. p. 290.).

within, without, the latter whereof especially stands in the adnominal. The oracle within him . . He must invoke (COLER., Picc. 1, 4.). — Morn without eve! a race without a goal (YOUNG, N. Th. 6, 453.). He had declared against his uncle a war without quarter (MACAUL., Hist. of E. II. 188.).

Old-Engl.: To joye wypouten ende (R. OF GL. I. 231.). The lyf with-out ende (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 38.). Folc wypoute ende (R. OF GL. I. 217.). Soule with-out sinne (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 134.). Werre with-outen hede is not well (LANGT. I. 2.). O fleoure withouten pere! (SKELTON I. 14.). In Anglosaxon viðútan also stands adnominally in the sense of space: þá cvað man mycel gemót viðútan Lundene (SAX. CHR. 1052.); otherwise bútan in the sense of exclusion: Líf bútan ende-deaðe (COD. EXON. 101, 4.). Gíoguo bútan ylde (101, 6.). Hælu bútan sære (101, 8.). Rást bútan gevinne (101, 10.). Dæg bútan peóstrum (101, 92.).

beyond. In Bethabara beyond Jordan (JOHN 1, 28.). — A task far beyond his powers (MACAUL., Essays I. 15.). In old times, beyond the reach of history or tradition (IRVING, Columb. 1, 1.).

Old-Engl.: þat þe kyng adde al put lond Eldelfred byzonde Homber (R. OF GL. I. 237.). The lond bezonde the see (MAUNDEV. p. 1.). Of dyverse folk bezond theise marches (p. 142.). Anglosax.: þás king væron gevordene in Bethania begeondan Jordanen (JOH. 1, 28.). Comp.: Eal þæt rice viðgeondan Jordanen (MATH 3, 6.). Forgeaf þám fugelum flyð [flyht?] geond þás lyft (BASIL., Hexam. 8.).

over against. In the campaign over against Hilkai (DEUTER. 11, 30.). Into the village over against you (MARK 11, 2.). In the plain over against the Red Sea (DEUTER. 1, 1.).

Comp. Anglosax.: On þam lande Moab, ongean Jericho (DEUTER. 32, 49.) and On þam feld vèstene við þá reáðan sæ (1, 1.).

The above instances, which might readily be increased with regard to other prepositions still in use, as well as to older ones, shew the early inclination to abbreviation of speech and the manifold use of prepositions in the adnominal relation, primarily for relations of space. In many cases also the gradual release of the substantive accompanied by the preposition from the connection with a verb shews itself, to the decided sole connection of it with a substantive notion, which must, however, pass as the essential motive for

the employment of the preposition. Hence the decision on the close connection of the prepositional member with the substantive in modern times frequently remains in suspense, and is to be judged by the context in each case, where the substantive appears as the predicative or objective determination of a verb.

Pronouns and Numerals with attributive Determination.

In the place of a substantive with a determination belonging to it, there stand pronouns and numerals with such a determination, not only where those point back to a preceding substantive, but also where they represent a substantive independently.

The connection of substantive words of this sort with adjective determinations is not uncommon: As *one disarmed* (MILT., P. L. 10, 945.). When he gave his opinion on any point, it was with that easy tone of confidence used by *those superior to their society in rank or information* (SCOTT, R. Roy 4.). Comp. p. 243.

They likewise appear accompanied by adverbs; see p. 138.

And thus they also admit prepositional members: What is *he at the gate?* (SHAKSP., Twelfth N. 1, 5.) *They in France, of the rank and station* (Hamlet. 1, 2.). The Stagirite . . and *he of Tusculum*, with *him of Corduba* (YOUNG, N. Th. 9, 974.). "Let it pass round!" quoth *He of Lorn* (SCOTT, Lord of the Isl. 2, 5.). And art thou *He of Lodi's bridge, Marengo's field, and Wagram's ridge!* (BYR., Field of Waterloo 14.) Was . . No subtle question rais'd among *Those out-o-their wits*, and *those i' th' wrong?* (BUTL., Hud. 1, 2, 701.) The lawyers are bitter enemies to *those in our way* (GAY, Begg. Op. 1, 1.). The brief, abrupt, and somewhat stern mode in which he was wont to communicate his pleasure to *those around him* (SCOTT, R. Roy 1.). *One from the court* . . demands my lady (ROWE, Jane Sh. 2, 1.). Like *one in prayer* I stood (LONGF. I. 3.). "Are all here?" — "All with you; except the *three On duty*" (BYR., Mar. Fal. 3, 2.).

Apart from the partitive relation formerly touched upon, in which *of* stands in the prepositional member with pronouns, we find of particularly employed in the most ancient times, and with geographical names chiefly to denote plural pronouns, when the meaning of origin comes to the front. Old-Engl.: *Heo of Troye siwede* (R. OF GL. I. 20.). *De deol pat þer was of hem of Normandye* (II. 216.). *De deol ek of hem of Aungeo* (ib.). *Hii of Denemarch flowe sone* (II. 378.). Whenne *they of France wyste*, That the maystry hadde the Chryste (RICH. C. DE L. 5755.). *þulke of Troye* (R. OF GL. I. 219.). Subsequently other prepositions appear in various connections: How do *they in Gessen?* (TOWN. M. p. 63.) *On withouten tonge and teeth* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 295.). Halfsax.: Weoren *heo of Rome* alle ridinde (LAJAM. I. 252. cf. 251.). Anglosax.: Mid him hieldon *þa of Rome*, and se duc of Sicilie (CHR. (SAX. 1129.). The Gothic already follows the Greek, not only in combinations of the pronoun (article) with adverbs, as: *Qap du þaim jainar* [λέγει τοῖς ἐκεί] (MATH. 26, 71.), but also with prepositional members, as: *þai bi ina* [οἱ περὶ αὐτῶν] (MARC. 4, 10.). Allans *þans miþ imma* [τοῖς σὺν αὐτῷ] (LCC. 5. 9.), where Anglosaxon prefers dependent sentences: *þam þe þær væron*; *þa trelfe þe mid him væron*; ealle *þa þe mid him væron*.

B. Apposition.

Apposition has the determination of a substantive notion (for which a pronoun may also be substituted) in common with the attribute in the stricter sense; it is distinguished from it in not being thought in immediate union with the substantive notion, like the attribute. It does not therefore blend into that unity of accent with the word determined by it, in which the attribute stands with its substantive notion, and in writing is often separated by a mark of punctuation from the notion determined by it, although this internal abolition of the unity of accent is not essential. It is, in fact, the abbreviation of an attributive dependent sentence, with a sensuous retrospect to its origin.

If the current combination of nouns in the appositive fashion has brought about their being pronounced with a unity of accent, the original grammatical relation is obscured, approaching partly to the genuine attributive relation, partly to composition. Here, for instance, belongs the juxtaposition of christian and surnames, as, Julius Cæsar, Thomas Carlyle, of proper names with titles, as King Henry, Lord Hastings, or with other names of kinds, as Mount Vesuvius, in which the preceding word is depressed in the accent.

Determinations may be added to apposition which pertain to the further developed predicate of a dependent sentence.

Not only substantives, but also adjectives, numerals and pronouns stand in the appositive relation.

The appositive word is to be thought in general in concord with the case to which it is referred. The appositive member needs unconditionally to agree in number, as little as a predicative substantive with its subject.

A preposition preceding the word of relation must be regarded as operating continually upon the appositive member.

The appositive substantive.

- a. It is added as an explanatory determination to another substantive, and may be accompanied by determinative, attributive and adnominal determinations. The determinant most naturally follows the word of reference, to be regarded as the subject of a sentence.

Where is *my prince the Dauphin* (SHAKSP., John 5, 5.). The daughter of *Thomas Mowbray Duke of Norfolk* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 37.). Likewise there rose *Abbé Terray, dissolute financier* (CARL., Fr. Revol. 1, 1.). In the phrase of *Comines, the most judicious observer of that time* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 21.). To the great king of Angola, a mischievous monarch in those parts (SOUTHERN, Oroon. 1, 2.). For our country, mother of us all (FERREX A. FORR. 1, 2.). *Bacchus, Jove's ambrosial boy* (TH. MOORE p. 31.). *Learning, that cobweb of the brain* (BUTL., Hud. 1, 3, 1339.). *Scepter and power, thy giving I assume* (MILT., P. L. 6, 730.). "I've

such a nice dinner for you", replied the wife, all smiles (MARRYAT, P. Simple 1, 2). Apposition also receives further adverbial determinations, which refer more plainly to an original abbreviation of the sentence: *Death, most our dread*; death thus more dreadful made (YOUNG, N. Th. 2, 123.). *The earthquake voice of Victory, To thee the breath of life* (BYRON, Ode to N. B. p. 346.). The great gates of the Lateran, *then the Palace of the World* (BULW., Rienzi 4, 6.). By Robert Blake, *afterwards the renowned Admiral of the Commonwealth* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. II. 154.).

But the reverse position of the substantives also appears, so that the subject of which anything is predicated appears as an explanatory determination: 'Tis *Jove's world-wandering herald, Mercury* (SHELLEY, Prometh. 1.). The rival *Moorish kings of Granada, Muley Boabdil*, the uncle, called also El Zagal, and *Mahomet Boabdil*, the nephew (IRVING, Columb. 2, 3.). Or hail at once *the patron and the pile* Of vice and folly, *Greville and Argyle!* (BYRON, Engl. Bards p. 323.). In the *nicest point, The honour of my house*, You've done me wrong (OTWAY, Venice Preserved 1, 1.). And *shapeless sighs* come wandering by, *The ghastly people of the realm of dream* (SHELLEY, Prometh. 1.). Reason's whole pleasure, all the joys of sense, Lie in *three words, health, peace and competence* (POPE, Essay on M. 4, 79.). To the appositive relation belong two members, serving reciprocally to explain each other; if we would denote the last only by the name of the appositive member, this may be allowed, if an appositive predicate is distinguished from an appositive subject. The possibility of reversing the members rests upon the exchange of the position of the predicative substantive which is allowed in the developed sentence. Compare: The *first pledge* of their reconciliation, was *the great Charter* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 15.), out of which the appositive relation: *The first pledge* of their reconciliation, *the great Charter*, beside: *The great Charter, the first pledge* of their reconciliation, is developed. In a solitary case it may be doubtful how to settle which is subject and which is predicate in the apposition, and the collocation of the words may then mark the first substantive as the subject. Where the following logical subject clashes immediately, and without any further preceding determination, with the substantive predicated, the appositive relation is effaced: *The old beldame earth* (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 3, 1.). *The patriot Hampden*, best beatified man we have (CARL., Past a. Pres. 2, 16.). I found *the urchin Cupid* sleeping (TH. MOORE p. 3.) See above.

When an appositive substantive is added to a genitive an inflective letter common to both, can, as we have seen, (Vol. I. p. 246) be joined to the last substantive alone: Isaac brought her into *his mother Sarah's* tent (GEN. 24, 66.), by which the grammatical group receives the character of a united whole, whereas with the repetition of the inflection the syntactical separation comes out more clearly: At *Albius'* house, *The jeweller's* (BEN JONS, Poetast. 1, 1.). The zeal of martial hearts was at his call, And *that Helvetian's, Udolph's* most of all (TH. CAMPBELL, Theodric). The judgment of the syntactical relation of the cases, when an uninflected

case is added to the inflected genitive, admits a twofold point of view. We have either to think the recollection of the inflective case as continually operating, or to regard the appositive member as the nominative which would belong to a developed sentence: Into young Arthur's hand, *Thy nephew, and right royal sovereign* (SHAKSP., John 1, 1.). *Alfred's name, the father of his age* (COWP. p. 4.). But not in flimsy Darwin's pompous chime, *That mighty master of unmeaning rhyme* (BYRON, Engl. Bards p. 328.). See below.

The natural position of the appositive predicate after the substantive to be explained is frequently found at all ages. Old-Engl.: *Eustas, erl of Boloyn* (II. 393.). *Macolon kyng of the lond* (II. 367.). *Pandras, þe stronge kyng*, as pryson he nom (R. or GL. I. 12.). *Kay, ys felawe, hym wolde awreke, kyng of Aungeo* (I. 216.). *þo hii seye her kyng aslawe, flour of chyualerie* (ib.). *Tancred, hys neuwe* (II. 393.). *Bi houre loved, hevene king* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 3.). *A nonne, a prioress* (CHAUC., C. T. 113.). *He Arpies slough, the cruel briddes felle* (15586.). *Ich am Reneuard thi frend* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant II. 275.). *Adelwolf & Ethelbert, knyghtes bope fulle wyght* (LANGT. I. 17.). *They com to London that cite* (RICH. C. & L. 1239.). *In Grece that contré* (CHAUC., C. T. 16143.). *Wo worth Herode, that corsyd wyght!* (TOWN. M. p. 131.). *Lo, irous Cirus, thilke Percien* (CHAUC., C. T. 7661.). *Cresus, whilom king of Lyde* (16213.). *Halfsax.: Euander king hine aqualde* (LAJAM. III. 75.). *Þis iherde Lear king* (I. 142.). *Of Arðure þan kinge* (I. 55.). *Of Judon pere quene* (I. 171.). *Claudien þe kaiser* (I. 407.). *Ouer Maluan æne flum suide long* (I. 55.). *To Regau mire dohter* (I. 143.). *þa cleopede he corles tweie, afele men and wise* (III. 42.). *Anglosax.: þa feng Alfred, Aðelvulfing, tō Vestseaxna rice* (SAX. CHR. 871.). *þy geara gesette Alfred cyning Lundenburg* (886.). *þær sæton Aþelstān b. and Ranig ealdorman.. and þær wās Bryning scirgerfa* (HICKES, Dissert. epist. p. 2.). *Dryhten sylf heofona heahcyning* (ANDE. 5.). *Fram Grante eā (S. GUTHLAC 3.). Gefuhton wið Vyrteorne þam cyninge* (SAX. CHR. 455.). *Loðvi se Cāsare forðferde* (840.). *Gabriel se engel* (LUC. 1, 26.). *Acenned of Marian þam mædene* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 35.). *Oð Rīn þa eā* (OROS. 1, 1.). *At Florentia þære burh* (SAX. CHR. 1059.). *Tō Pentapolim þære cyriniscan birig* (APOLLON. OF T. p. 10.). *Under Abiathar þāra sacerda ealdre* (MARC. 3, 26.). *Ic Ine, mid godes gife Vestseaxna cyning* (LEGG. INAE init.).

But the inversion of the members of the appositive relation is no less old, especially where a generic name is added to the proper name. Old-Engl.: *Kyng Macolom* spousesed Margarete (R. or GL. II. 368.). *King Conan* he fond ded (I. 101.). *þe erl Beaumont* (II. 393.). *þys nohle duc Wyllam* (II. 367.). *To that mayden milde Marie* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 194.). *To the mount Synay* (MACUNDEV. p. 58.). *The feld Magede* (111.). *Halfsax.: þa hefde þe king Siluius his wille* (LAJAM. I. 116.). *þa spac Dunian & þe oðer biscop Fagan* (I. 443.). *Is broðer Fereus* (I. 170.). *Aftterr patt te Lafard Crist Wass cumenn* (ORM. 17815.). *Cristess possstell Sannt Johan* (5186.). *Godess þewu Ezechyel* (5798.). *Anglosax.: Ure drihten ālmihhtig God* (S. GUTHLAC 3.). *Se cyning Eādmund* (SAX. CHR. 943.). *His hlāforde Alfrēde kynince* (OROS. 1, 1.). *On oðre heafle þære eā Dōnua* (ib.). *Tō þam vēstene Sin* (NUM. 20, 1.). *Fram þam dēman Syrgis Cirino* (LUC. 2, 2.). *Hi gesealdon heora twām nefum Stoffe and Vihtgære. eall Vihte* (SAX. CHR. 534.). *Tō ful monegum dāge men synt forlædde, Adam and Eve* (CAEDM. 723.). Even Gothic often presents this collocation of Words: *Aggilus Gabriel* (LUC. 1, 26.). *Fram kaisara Agustau* (2, 1.). *Us baurg Nazaraip* (2, 4.). *Vasuh þan newa dulps Judaie so hleprasta-keins* (JOH. 7, 2.).

The genitive in the appositive relation early omitted the inflective form of the first substantive, when the immediate attachment of the substantives caused them to appear as one united notional whole: By *kyng Wyllame's day* (R. OF GL. II. 374.). *þe kyng Arture's syster's sone* (l. 169.). *Yn tyme of good kyng Adelstonus day* (HALLIW., FREEMAN, 62.). *Thu art of Davi kinges kin* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., REL. ANT. I. 169.), see p. 298. The oldest form is of course the repeated inflective form. Anglosax.: *Sitt nu åt sviðran Godes älmhtiges fäder* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., REL. ANT. I. 35.). But the first substantive was also early alone inflected. Old-Engl.: *Roberde's soster Courtehesse* (R. OF GL. II. 393.). *Bi Graciane's day þe emperour* (l. 92.). That was *Josephes modre, the patriarke* (MAUNDEV, p. 72.). Sit on his *fadir* richt honde *God almichti* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., REL. ANT. I. 57.) [*fadir* answers to the Anglosaxon genitive], alongside of which the second genitive form primarily appears: *Sif on his fader rith half Goddes alweirdinde* (l. 282.). Halfsax.: *Ælienor þe wes Henries quene, þes hezes kinges* (LAZAM, I. 3.), which of course appears in Anglosaxon when the appositive combination is interrupted by the insertion of a substantive: *On Isaias bec þas vitegan* (LUC. 3, 4.). *On Torcvinas dagum þas ofermôdan cyninges* (BOETH. 16, 1.). *Be Cnutes dage cinges* (HICKES, DISSERT. CP. p. 2.). Passages like *Tô þines folces vuldre Israhel* (LUC. 2, 32.), Gr. *λαρὸν σου Ἰσραήλ*, compared with the Goth., *Vulpu managein þeinai Israela* (ib.), cannot be considered as the joining on of a nominative. Thus *Israhel* stands uninflected: *on Israhel* (ib. 2, 34.). A deviation from the concord in the appositive relation generally occurs here and there: *Minum þam leofestan hláforde ofer ealle ðære men eorðlice kyningas — Alfvold Eást-Engla kyning, mid rihte and mid gerisenum rice healdend* — (S. GUTHLAG, PROL.), in which a nominative appears, as it were released from the construction by reason of its remoteness from the word of reference. Independence of the appositive member occurs more frequently in modern times, as in the German: *Er warf sich nach Mainz, damals eine volkreiche Stadt* (GRESEBRECHT, DEUTSCHE KAISERZEIT I. 374.). Such a free conception of the appositive member might be developed from an original neglect of the case inflection in English, for which the cases cited under c. and d. may give further proofs.

The repetition of the same substantive with a more particular determination is also to be regarded as apposition.

O lead my mind (*A mind that fain would wander from its woe*)
Lead it thro' various scenes of life and death (YOUNG, N. TH. I, 45.). And all our extasies are wounds to peace; *Peace, the full portion of mankind below* (5, 951.). 'Twas near a noble house, the house of *Pansa* (ROGERS, IT, Naples). I am *Ferguson, the famous Ferguson, the Ferguson for whose head so many hundred pounds have been offered* (MACAUL., HIST. OF E. II. 160.).

This mode of expression borders hard on the emphatic repetition of the same word, and belongs principally to modern emotional language.

- b. An appositive substantive, supported by a pronoun, often indeed borders hard on the mere reduplication of a subject or an object, but is distinguished from the previous indication or supplementary repetition of the same notion by apposition's giving the accent to an explanatory determination.

When *I roved, a young Highlander*, o'er the dark heath (BYR., p. 304.). *To thee, the Queen of nymphs divine* (TH. MOORE p. 39.). *On him, their second Providence*, they hung (POPE, ESSAY ON M. 3, 217.). He enjoys, *he sinner*, a glimpse of the glorious Martyr's

very Body (CARL., Past a. Pres. 2, 16). *We, the Verdun Municipals*, see no resistance possible (Fr. Revol. 3, 1, 3.). But Why before *us protestants* produce An Indian mystic, or a French recluse? (COWP. p. 42.) In arms *they* stood Of golden panoply, *re-fulgent host*, Soon banded (MILT., P. h. 6, 526.). He left an only daughter, *Whom* he brought *An infant* to Angola (SOUTHERN, OROON. 2, 1.). The transposition of the appositive substantive increases its weight: *The daughter of a hundred Earls*, You are not one to be desired (TENNYNS. p. 126.).

Old-Engl.: Al that man hath mys-do, *I, man*, wole amende (P. ПЛОСНН. p. 389.). *We olde men*, I drede, so fare we (CHAUC., C. T. 3872.). Thenk on God, as *we* doon, *men that swinke* (3491.). And thanne *wee* entreden *14 personnes* (MAUNDEV. p. 283.). What love hadde he to *us his subjettes* (p. 3.). Anglosax.: Ic þā *Alfréd cyning* (LEGG. ÆLFRED. 49.). *Ve cildra biðdað þe* (THORPE, Anal p. 101.). Nu *ve þine peðvas* synd besvungene (Exod. 5, 16.). þis is mycel *eðv mannum* on mōde tō āsmeāgenne (BASIL., Hexam. 3.).

- c. Apposition is particularly to be mentioned, with which the appositive determination is related as with the genitive (see above p. 323.), the possessive points to the genitive relation. We have mentioned a corresponding phenomenon upon the participle and adjective (See 280. 290.).

I had no lover, no wishes, knew myself Only as *his* — *his* daughter — *his, the Mighty* (COLER., Picc. 2, 7.).

For the sake of the same want of concord we at the same time mention the frequent case introduced with *as*, which may also be accompanied by other conjunctions, and in which we no longer perceive a mere apposition, the specific relation indicated by the particle exceeding the mere relation of a predicative notion to a subject. The notion introduced by the particle may indeed coincide in effect with apposition, although this is nowise absolutely the case, as the following instances sufficiently shew: In *his* capacity *as a justice* (FIELD., J. Andr. 2, 3.). The assemblies of the senate displayed the abilities of Julian as an orator, and *his* maxims *as a republican* (GIBBON, Decl. 15.). Owen, whose probity and skill . . rendered *his* services invaluable *as a handclerk* (SCOTT, R. Roy 1.). Guildford, now found himself . . restricted to *his* business *as a judge* in equity (MACAUL., Hist. of E. II. 26.), with which also compare: With an air of composed and steady deliberation, which even *my* arrival *although an only son* unseen for four years, was unable to discompose (SCOTT, R. Roy 1.).

Ancient instances, in which a substantive presenting decidedly the character of apposition, follows, are wanting. It is readily understood that an explanatory word in the same case is given to the Anglosaxon genitive of personal pronouns, as to every other case: Vās sum *his* scipes-man *þās foresprecenan vrāccan Aðelbaldes* (S. GUTHLAG 22.).

The incongruence of case in the abbreviated dependent sentence with *as* appears also in early times. Old-Engl.: *His* nama . . *as a seynt* (MAUNDEV. p. 177.). Neythyr stede ner palfrey, But a staffe was *hys* hakenay *As a man in pouertē* (SIR CLEGG 244.).

- d. Sentences, members of sentences and clauses may have

an appositive substantive in their train, which answers to a predicative nominative.

These are the Septemberers; *a name* of some note and lucency (CARL., Fr. Revol. 3, 1, 6.). All this without th' eclipse of th' sun, Or dreadful comet, he hath done By inward light, *a way* as good, And easy to be understood (BUTL., Hud. 1, 1, 577.). Though his daughter, Mrs. Bruce of Arnot, had much talent, *a circumstance* which may perhaps mislead the antiquary (SCOTT, Minstrelsy I. 75.). They not only tore the lead from the roof of the magnificent Cathedral to make bullets, *an act* for which they might fairly plead the necessities of war, but wantonly defaced the ornaments of the building (MACAUL., Hist. of E. II. 170.).

This sort of apposition in which a judgment upon what precedes is contained, borders on the ellipse, from which it is, however, distinguished by its immediate support by an notional complex. It is familiar to Latin, as well as to Greek, in the form of a nominative and of an accusative. See Krügers Lat. Gr. p. 389. Kühners Gr. Gr. Vol. II. 146. Even modern tongues, such a French and German, often use it. It seems to have become current in English with the cultivation of prose in modern times, not, perhaps without the influence of the classical and Romance tongues.

2. The appositive Adjective.

The adjective appears as an appositive member where it does not appear in immediate union with a substantive notion, but, by its separation from it, causes the character of a predicative complement to shine through.

- a. With the substantive it stands partly in combination with the definite article, as in: Of Persia's king, *the rich, the great!* (TH. MOORE p. 4.) *Henry the Fourth* etc., a case, which is discussed at p. 170.; partly without it: But its great *grandsire, first o' th' name* (BUTL., Hud. 1, 1, 567.). There lies *a vale* in Ida, *lovelier Than all the valleys of Ionian hills* (TENNYNS. p. 98.). They tell how *Atys, wild with love*, Roams the mount (TH. MOORE p. 6.). *Zuleika, mute and motionless*, Stood like that statue of distress (BYRON, Bride 2, 22.). Cases of this sort are to be separated, on the one hand from the attributive connection of the adjective with the substantive; on the other, from the predicative combination with the verb of the sentence. In a few cases these relations may blend or be interchanged. The released adjective often takes the lead: *Dark-blue the deep sphere* . . Grew darker (TENNYNS. p. 22.). *Ardent and intrepid on the field of battle*, Monmouth was everywhere else effeminate and irresolute (MACAUL., Hist. of E. II. 100.). It is readily to be seen that participles are in such cases to be similarly judged. It may also be observed that adjectives to be taken distributively, with or without the article, approach closely to the category in question: For all these *reasons, avowed and secret*, my father determined I should embrace his profession (SCOTT, R. Roy 1.). Those who have *read any romance or poetry, ancient or modern*, must have been informed that love hath wings (FIELD., J. Andr. 1, 11.), so far as supplementary specific determinations mark the generic name more particularly.

The separation of the adjective by the definite article is common to all ages, see p. 170. The Old-English also makes the indefinite article precede it: *A monk ther was a fair for the maistrie* (CHAUC., C. T. 165.). *A frere ther was, a wanton and a merye* (208.), comp. p. 183. The reference to a relation of the sentence by a mere adjective, which is not occasioned either by another determination added to it, and in partly indicated in modern English by the punctuation, usual also in other cases, cannot often be pointed out as intended in Old-English. We may recognise it in such cases as: *A noble Samson, strengest of al mankynde* (CHAUC., C. T. 15561.). *þer was erl Alfred, of the lawe suite wis* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 170.). *Maidnes shene so bon me come to bi-holde* (I. 123.). Old-English frequently makes an adjective come out stronger in poetry by a greater distance from its word of relation: *hū he him strenglicran stōl gevorhte, heðhran on heofonum* (CAEDM. 273.), without thereby going decidedly beyond the connection of adjectives.

For older instances of adjectives to be taken distributively in appositive connection see p. 289.

b. An appositive adjective is likewise associated with pronouns.

Could *you, so rich in rapture*, fear an end (YOUNG, N. Th. 1, 184.); often at the beginning of the Sentence: *Greatly unfortunate, he fights the cause* Of honour, virtue, liberty, and Rome (ADDIS., Cato 1, 1.). *Rich in bliss, I proudly scorn* The stream of Amalthea's horn (TH. MOORE p. 40.).

Old-Engl.: *Ase ich rod thourh Rome, Richest alre home* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 122.).

3. The appositive Pronoun and Numeral.

Pronouns and Numerals are mostly added to other pronouns as explanatory or distributive determinations, but also to other substantives.

When shall *we three* meet again? (SHAKSP., Macb. 1, 1.) *They all* complain (ADDIS., Cato 1, 3.). *Tey are all* at a sumptuous banquet (TAYLOR A. READE, Masks 2, 1.). With blackest moss *the flower-pots* Were thickly crusted, *one and all* (TENNYS. p. 9.). Let *us every one* go home (SHAKSP., Merry W. 5, 5.). Woe were *we each one* (SCOTT, Marm. 1, 22.). At his command *th' uprooted hills* retired *Each* to his place (MILT., P. L. 6, 781.). With *Aves many a one* (SCOTT, Lord of the Isl. 2, 21.). *The Generals* are, *many of them*, long ago won over (COLER., Picc. 2, 1.). And are *they not, some of them*, set forward already (SHAKSP., 1 Henry IV. 2, 3.). *Two engagements, one* near the Hellespont, *the other* in the narrow defiles of Cilicia, decided the fate of his Syrian competitor (GIBBON, Decl. 3.). Thus also *each* and *one* are supported, with reference to an objective *other*, appositively by a substantive or pronoun: *They saw each other daily* (LEWES, G. I. 53.). *The one* against the other *His wrathful sonnes* have planted all their force (GASCOYNE, Jocasta 1, 1.).

We may also regard the decomposition of the plural of a pronoun into various grammatical persons as an appositive determination: Let *us* make a covenant, *I* and *thou* (GEN. 31, 44.), in which the divergence of the case may be explained by p. 325.

The cases cited are almost all found in the ancient language. Old-Engl.; *We þre haf þe ward of God* (LANGT. I. 149.). So liche *we be bothe twain* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 109.). Lene *us alle to ben wys* (ib.); to into Anglosaxon see p. 209. 272. The singulars *ilkon, echon, everilkon everychon* recur uncommonly frequently in Old-English, beside *ech* and *every* as appositive determinations with plurals and collective notions: The payn can not be told that *they shalle have ilkone* (TOWN. M. p. 143.). Hastily *ilkone þe kynges* com fulle suythe (LANGT. I. 2.). *þo hii were echone yset* (R. OF GL. I. 191.). So *þat oper grete kynges* douted hym *echon* (I. 181.). Thei sonken into helle, *The citees echone* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 278.). Evely gostes . . *Thyn evyl wordes* han wrote In here bokys *ichon* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 101.). Whan *his flete* was alle at Tibre *everilkone* (LANGT. I. 50.). *This foules everichon* joye hem wit songe (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 100.). An on assemblede he *is dousse pers everuchon* (WRIGHT, Pol. S. p. 190.). Siththe hath he spoke of *everychon These noble wyfes and these lovers* eke (CHAUC., C. T. 4478.). A companye of *ladies, Tweye and tweye, Ech* after other (900.). Alle the *other barouns every of hem* zeven hem presentes (MAUNDEV. p. 237.). *many one* likewise stands with plurals: *Fayre weyes mongon þer* bep in Engolonde (R. OF GL. I. 7.). *Wylde bestes mony on* (I. 14.). *Ful goode wywes many oon* (CHAUC., C. T. 3156.). Halſax.: *þeʒʒ forenn forþ Ille an* wipþ þrinne lakess (ORM. 3460.). In Anglosaxon *ælc* stands appositively in a distributive meaning: *Ve villað, þæt ælces hædes men* georne gebūgan *ælc* tō þam riht þe him tō gebyrige (LEGG. CNUT. I. A. 6.). *Sume* precedes the plural of substantives and pronouns determined by the article: *þā cwaðdon sume þā bōceras* (MATH. 9, 3.). *þā misvendon sume þā englas* heora āgenne cyre (A.-S. HOMIL. I, 112.). *Sume hig cōmon* feorran (MARC. 8, 3.). *Ac sume ge ne gelyfað* (JOH. 6, 64.). Here arises an appositive relation, instead of which a partitive genitive or a case accompanied by *of* in combination with *sume* occurs.

The appositive decomposition of a plural pronoun into various grammatical persons is always usual. Old-Engl.: *Ar we not brether, thou and I?* (TOWN. M. p. 11.). *Wen of on kynde We* bep ycome *ʒe & we* (R. OF GL. I. 47.). Anglosax.: *þæt freondscipe sig betvux unc, me and þe* (GEN. 31, 44.).

Section the Second. The Doctrine of the Joining of Sentences.

As the doctrine of the Sentence has for its subject the relation of notions to one another, so the doctrine of the Joining of Sentences treats of the grammatical relation of Sentences to one another. The sentences thus combined with one another into a whole stand to one another in the relation either of coordination or of subordination.

Coordinate sentences are equal to one another in grammatical value; subordinate ones have, as dependent sentences, a relation of dependence to the principal sentence, whose members, developed into sentences, they represent.

The particles which undertake the union of coordinate sentences are called copulative conjunctions, those which are the means of connecting principal with dependent sentences are named conjunctions simply.

The equal grammatical relation of sentences to one another does not exclude variety of logical relation. This especially finds application to coordinate sentences, but becomes apparent also in the relation of subordination, so that the same conjunctions may appear with various sorts of dependent sentences.

Coordinate principal or dependent sentences may also stand beside each other without the intervention of copulatives; their meaning then makes their relation to each other clear. Sentences connected by copulatives are called syndetic, those attached to one another without copulatives are called asyndetic.

I. Coordination of Sentences.

One coordinate sentence may stand in combination with another either complete or incomplete. A member common to several coordinate sentences, when a repetition of it with particular energy is not in the intention of the speaker, is in general put only once, and there then appears, instead of the connection of sentences, only a union of individual members of sentences. This contraction of sentences, an early consequence of the effort for simplification of speech, takes place both in syndetic and asyndetic coordination, and is common to prose with poetry. The latter may, however, make a bolder use of it. The contraction leads either to a blending of sentences, which especially appears where the verb expresses by its form the comprehension of several subjects, or a member which becomes intelligible in its connection with others appears as an abbreviated sentence. With the great extension which contraction has obtained, we shall consider it more particularly before discussing the forms of syndetic and asyndetic coordination.

A. Contraction of coordinate Sentences.

1. Different subjects are combined with the same notion of activity. The subjects are then either comprehended by a plural verbal form: *Care and age come unawares* (LONGF. I. 114.). *Reflection, reason*, still the ties *improve* (POPE, Essay on M. 3, 133.), although with the effacement of the inflective forms of the verb such a formal comprehension often remains dubious; or the verb is decidedly annexed primarily to a subject: *Another love succeeds*, *another race* (POPE, Essay on M. 3, 130.). *Laws die*, *Books never* (BULW., Richel. 1, 2.). If different determinations are given to the same verb in the several sentences, this is common: *Force first made conquest*, and *that conquest law* (POPE, Essay on M. 3, 245.). *Pleasure is good*, and *man for pleasure made* (YOUNG, N. Th. 7, 598.). *The chapel was void*, and *the Baron away* (SCOTT, Minstr. 2, 33.). A determination common to several sentences, but differently modified, may then be given to the first, so that only the other modification remains to the second: *Bacchus was the type of vigor* And *Silenus of excess* (LONGF. I. 259.). In poetry the verb

is often attached, not to the subject and the determination of the first, but of a succeeding sentence: *Reason the root; fair faith is but the flow'r* (YOUNG, N. Th. 4, 751.). For *eloquence the soul, song charms the sense* (MILT., P. L. 2, 556.). *Angels their feelings, mortals have their praise* (YOUNG, N. Th. 4, 539.). *Hoarser the wind, and deeper sounds the rill* (SCOTT, Lord of the Isl., Introd.). Sentences whose subjects are of different numbers or of unlike grammatical persons may also be contracted, whereas the verbal form conforms grammatically to one subject alone: *Dire was the tossing, deep the groans* (MILT., P. L. 11, 489.). *They [the drawings] were carried up into the library . . and no intimation given to me of their coming* (BYR., Lett.). *I am extremely pleased . . and my vanity . . not a little flattered* (MONTAGUE, Lett.)' although the coincidence of different personal forms of the verb renders such an unlikeness less sensible: *We 'll calm the Duke of Norfolk, you your son* (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 1, 1.). Childless *you had been* else, and in the grave *your name* (OTWAY, Venice Preserved 1, 1.). *He had not sung* of Wales, nor *I* of him (BYRON, Engl. Bards p. 318.). How the verb is attracted by its nearest subject has been discussed Part. II. 1. p. 151.

Corresponding contractions belong to almost all periods of the language. Here belongs the comprehension under a plural. Old-Engl.: *Hors and Henigst* bothe, *pat twei breþre were, Come to Kent* (R. of Gl. I. 111.). Anglosax.: *Se fæder and se sunu and se hælga gäst habbað* æne godcundnysses (THORPE, Anal. p. 60), as well as the attachment to one first subject. Old-Engl.: *Anofer day Joon stode and two of his disciplis* (WYCL., Joh. 1, 35.). Al that evere *Marc made, Mathew, Johan, and Lucas* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 102). Anglosax.: *Micel rip ys, and feawa vyrthena* (MATH. 10, 38.). If different determinations belong to the verb in several sentences, the verb is ordinarily joined to the first subject. Old-Engl.: *That on hihgte Fladrine, and that other Zinglantz* (MAUNDEY. p. 167.). *Whan a man is an urthe ded, and his soule bi God* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 134.). Half-sax.: *Meubritz haihte pe aldre, Malin pe zungre* (LAJAM. I. 107.). Anglosax.: *Abrahames vif hütte Sarai, and Nachores vif Melcha* (GEN. 11, 29.). The reverse combination of the verb belongs to the modern language. Unlike numbers and grammatical persons are frequently referred to the non-congruent verb of a subject. Old-Engl.: *Hyrd-men hem hatieþ, ant uch mones hyne* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 157.). *Frist sawe they it not, ne youre self nother* (DEPOS OF RICH. II. p. 6.). *He loveth me and ich him wel* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 5.). *Thou art my Lord, and I thy hyne* (TOWN. M. p. 181.). Anglosax.: *Ne synd nā pry almihtige Godas, ac ān almihtig God* (THORPE, Anal. p. 60.). *He vunað on me, and ic on him* (JOH. 6, 56.). *pær ge gnornende deað sceolon dreogan, and ic dreāma vyn āgan mid englum* (COD. EXON. 142, 29.).

2. Several determinations of a predicative or adverbial nature may be given to the same notion of activity.

Thou . . which *art a lion and a king of beasts* (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 5, 1.). The girl *grew red and white* by turns (BULW., Maltrav. 1, 3.). *Whence and what art thou?* (MILT., P. L. 2, 681.). He *beheld the uplifted arm and the threatening sabre* (COOPER, Spy 9.). He *sunk to the abyss? to the dark void?* (SHELLEY, Prometh. Unb. 3, 2.). We *ought to blame the culture, not the soil* (POPE, Essay on M. 4, 13.). A further determination may also be given to the

verb in a following incomplete sentence: The night *is come*, but *not too soon* (LONGF. I. 8.). An interlacing of sentences: where a determination occurring, in the second is detached to complete the first, is rare: Man never *Is* but always *To be blest* (POPE, *Essay* on M. 1, 96.).

Old-Engl.: I *hove be preest and parson* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 102.). Nu *ben thei lions in halle, and hares in the feld* (WRIGHT, *Polit. S.* p. 334.). Whanne we *taken in pley and in bourde* the myracilis of God (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., *Rel. Ant* II. 43.). *Lene us alle to ben wys* Ant *to ende in his serveys* (I. 109.). Thanne *was Conscience called To come and appere* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 50.). Anglosax: *Væron hi swiðe cūðe and mære geond Angelcynnes land* (S. GUTHLAG, *Prol.*). *pone fruman on þam fruman ic gesette, and pone ende in þam ende* (ib.). *Mannum he forgeaf hlāf to bigleofan, and þām nytenum gārs* (THORPE, *Anal.* p. 59.). þu *scealt gelīfan on þone lifigendan God, and nā ofer þine mæðe mōljan be him* (BASIL., *Hexam.* 3.).

3. Several notions of activity, with or without a more particular determination, frequently combine with the same subject.

Nature exerting an unwearied power, *Forms, opens, and gives* scent to ev'ry flower (COWP. p. 19.). *I knew* it all, but *said* nothing (LEWES, G. I. 13.). *I pursue* The selfsame road, but *make* my own review; Not *seek* great Jeffrey's, yet, like him, *will* be Self-constituted judge of poesy (BYR., *Engl. Bards* p. 312.). Dust *thou art*, to dust *returnest* (LONGF. I. 6.).

If the same notion of activity has to be repeated in a different form with an auxiliary or modal verb, it is not uncommon that the form of the preceding verb, completing the predicate, especially an infinitive, remains to be supplied: "Awake a louder and a loftier strain," Such as *none heard* before or *will* again (BYR., *Engl. Bards* p. 317.). The same takes place with a reduplicated subject: *Prayers and tears have moved me, gifts could* never (SHAKSP. II Henry VI. 4, 7.). At every ball *my wife now waltzes and my daughters shall* (BYR., *Waltz* p. 345.). The infinitive form remains also to be supplied from a mere participial form: *Love, loving* not itself, none other *can* (SHAKSP., *Rich.* II. 5, 3.). This is *Holmsdale, Never conquer'd, never shall* (PROVERB in Ingram ed. *Sax. Chr.* p. 125. n. 3.). — The reference is bolder to a verb which only follows in the second member, an auxiliary verb being in the first: As *she has* already, or *intends to offer* you a bed at his house (CHATHAM, *Lett.* 17.). Comp.: Like silly beggars, Who, sitting in the stocks, *refuge* their shame That *many have*, and *others must sit* there (SHAKSP., *Rich.* II. 5, 5.).

Old-Engl.: *She leteth passe* prisoners, And *paieth* for hem ofte, And *gyveth* the gailers gold . . . And *taketh* the trewe bi the top And *hangeth* etc. (P. PLOUGHM. p. 51.). *A wynd per com po in the see, & drof hym to Scotlonde* (R. or GL. II. 367.). *Thou art old and may not go* (ALIS. 3310.). Halfsax.: Boc *he nom þe pridde, leide* per amidden (LAJAM. I. 3.). *Se biddeð mine dohter swa hende & haldeð me inne bende* (I. 45.). *pe king wes swiðe særi & sende his sonde . . . gæderede his ferde* (I. 63.). Anglosax.: Hēr *fōr se here . . . tō Hreopedūne, and þær vintersetl nam* (SAX. CHR. 874.). þā *eode* he hām to his huse and *com* oft on morgen and þy bestan leode geglenged him *āsong and āgeaf* þāt him beboden was (BEDA 4, 24.).

The completion of one verbal form from another is often required. Old-

Engl.: *I love and ay shal* (CHAUC., C. T. p. 1185.), *Hit semyd hym never, ne never shalle* (TOWN. M. p. 4.). *I the honoure and evyr more xal* (Cov. MYST. p. 49. cf. p. 113.). Amonges us . . . That man *is dwellynge*, And evere *hath*, as I hope, And evere *shal* hereafter (P. PLOUGHM. p. 152.). Halfsax! We *haldeð* Cristes laze & *wulleð* auere an ure dæge (LAŒAM. III. 168.). Anglos.: þis Ebræisc folc ys micel and *vixst* and *sviðor vyle* (Exod. 5, 5.).

4. Different notions of activity may be referred equally to the same predieative or adverbial determinations, whether they have a common subject or different subjects. Thus also infinitives and participles are combined with different auxiliary and modal verbs.

Some *are* and *must be* greater than the rest (POPE, Essay on M. 4, 50.). By all who *feared* or *envied the greatness of England* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 2.). He *could not see*, he *would not hear*, Or *sound or sign foreboding fear* (BYR., Bride 2, 1.). And every creed and every race, With them *hath found* — *may find a place* (2, 20.). Hope *elevates* and joy *Brightens his crest* (MILT., P. L. 9, 633.). The question whether the administration of that family *had* or *had not been in accordance* with the ancient constitution of the kingdom (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 27.). The reader will find the reasons alleged why the taste for song *was* and *must have been longer preserved* on the border than in the interior of the country (SCOTT, Minstrelsy I. 35.). It then occurs that the common determination, according to form or the construction, does not exactly fit the different verbs: Nothing *can* or *ought to give me* a higher satisfaction (CHATHAM., Lett. 6.). In him who *is*, or him who *finds a friend* (POPE, Essay on M. 4, 60.).

Old-Engl.: Hou the Flemmyshe-men *bohten hem ant solde* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 187.). *Take and leyð them both in* (TOWN. M. p. 6.). If ich *mai* other *cone In eni wise for the do* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 6.) I *have and have had Som del haukes maneres* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 103.). No *schaltow paye* . . . Ac *schole the pore eehe halfpeny* (ALIS. 3114.). Halfsax.: An hird *tatt off Eleazar wass sprungenn annud wass strenedd* (ORM. 559.). Anglosax.: Ic forþan *halsige* and *bidde pone ge læredan and pone ge lædfullan* (S. GUTHLAG, Prol.). Nān *yfel ne māg nē ne mōt þe geneālæcean* (BASIL., Admon. 1.). Incongruent forms occur: Heora fāderas *væron ær on Egipto ymbenidene*, and seō *juguð nās* (Jos. 4, 5.).

B. Syndetic Coordination.

Sentences, or members, which are to be regarded as resting upon contraction of Sentences, appear in coordination placed equal to one another, when their logical relation to one another may be various.

1. In the copulative coordination, effected by connecting copulatives, the single sentences or members are set or denied at the same time; yet the setting of one member may also be combined with the negation of another, that is, an affirmative member may be set at the same time as a negative.

- a. The grammatical connection of concordant members of a series of thoughts, where the other comparative value of the

single members is disregarded, commonly takes place by the particle *and*, Old-Engl. often *ant*, Anglosax. *and*, Old-Sax. *ande*, *ende*, *endi*, Old-Fries. *anda*, *ande*, *and*, Old-Highdutch *anti*, *enti*, *inti*, *unte*, *unde*, *unt*, Middle-Highdutch *unde*, Modern-Highdutch *und*, foreign to Gothic and Old-norse.

The widow *and* her child returned to England helpless *and* almost hopeless (IRVING, Br. H. The Lovers). Descend, *and* follow me down the abyss (SHELLEY, Prometh. Unb. 3, 1.). I can answer for myself *and* the other ladies (FIELD., Amelia 1, 10.). The equal rank of the members does not condition the homogeneity of the combined parts of speech or forms: The mariner Bound homeward, *and* in hope already there (COWP. p. 176). A cheerful man *and* with a monarch's mien (COLER., Picc. 2, 4.). A person of indefatigable research, *and* whose industry has been crowned with the most successful result (SCOTT, Minstrelsy I. 86.). If you have a mind to know the exact number of statues, *and* how many feet they cast up the water (MONTAGUE, Lett.).

Old-Engl.: Mury & fair yt poȝte ynow (R. OF GL. I. 41.). Saturnus is above; *and* Jubiter is the nexte (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 132.). Amend thi mod, *and* torn thi thout (Anecd. p. 5.). Ful he was of tene *and* treie (p. 6.). Halfsax.: Gat iss . . Gal deor, *and* stinckeþ fule (ORM. 1200.). Wass Forrshamedd *and* forrdrefedd (2193.). Anglosax.: Hig æton *and* druncon *and* wifodon (LUC 17, 27.). þā geneālehte hym ān hundredes ealdor, hyne biddende *and* þus cveþende (MATH. 8, 5.). Alȝfe me ærest to farene *and* bebyrigean minne fāder (8, 21.). Formal heterogeneity of the members is not excluded. Old-Engl.: He kest a man of cler latoun. *And* in his hond an arblast heldand (SEVEN SAGES 1976.). Penitence is the pleyning of man . . *and* no more to do any thing for which him oughte to pleigne (CHAUC., C. T. p. 185. II.). Anglosax.: Ana . . þe þær fāgorost wās *and* āfelstan kynnes (S. GUTHLAG 1.).

- b. The frequent combination by *and* of oppositive as well as of kindred notions has made especially adverbial combinations become formal. Here belong: Let them wander *up and down* for meat (Ps. 59.). To meet *now and then* (GOLDSM., G. Nat. M. 1.). If there was *here and there* an elder peasant (SCOTT, Bride). Wandering *hither and thither* (DICKENS, Christm. Car. 1.). His picture I will send *far and near* (SHAKSP., Lear 2, 1.). — *Far and wide* his eye commands (MILT., P. L. 3, 614.). Full *wide and far* was terror spread (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 4, 3.). I proceeded . . placing, *ever and anon*, my hand on the neck of his cob (TH. HOOK, Gilb. Gurney 5.). A melancholy, dreamy mood, forcing him *ever and anon* into solitude (LEWES, G. I. 42.).

These and similar forms extend back far into antiquity. Old-Engl.: The way was ever *up and down* (ALIS. 7043.). That he no myghte geve heom bataile Bote *here and there* (6141.). That makith you lord and sire, *Nygh and feor* (7229.). For acqweyntaunce that hath beon, *Ferre and neor*, heom bytweone (7259.). Robbede *ver & nere* (R. OF GL. II. 388.). Halfsax.: To clennsenn *here and tere* (ORM. 10475.). Anglosax.: *Ufane and neofane* (BOETH., Rawl. p. 117.). *Hider and pider* (MORE, Quellen, Aachen 1830. Gloss.). *Feor and neah* (CAEDM. 2930. 2447. COD. EXON. 24, 25.). *Feorran and nean* (BEOW. 1684.). *Nean and feorran*

(2352. 4624.). Ealra þara þe him sið *and* ær gifena drihten forgifen hæfde (CAEDM. 2928.) *Ær and sið* (JULIANA 496.). Old-Engl.: They wolde with him wende *wyde and side* (ALIS. 6015. cf. SEUYN SAGES 1687.). So schall I do *euer and oo* (SIR AMADAS 179.). Peasse be with you *ever and ay* (TOWN. M. p. 294.). Halfsax.: Sprang *wide annd side* (ORM. 10258. cf. LAȜAM. III. 199.). Nu *annd æfre* (ORM. 2683.). Anglosax.: *Vide and side* (SAX. CHR. 959.). *Vide and vel-hvær* [every where] (975.). *Neith and efene* = [propemodum] (GLOSS. ÆLFRIC., Cotton. 152) and many more.

- c. The double or manifold repetition of the same word in a copulative manner is frequent, whereby in part a real repetition is expressed, in part the rhetorical strengthening of the prominent notion is aimed at. Each passes into the other. A distributive meaning can be annexed to it: There went in *two and two* (GEN. 7, 9.). The knights come riding *two and two* (TENNYNS. p. 67.). Verbal notions often present iterative activity as well a predicate repeated subjectively and with emphasis: Borrowing only *lingers and lingers* it out (SHAKSP., II Henry IV. 1, 2.). I *gazed and gazed*, until I knew No vision it could be (BYRON, Mazeppa). I do rouse sometimes. But what then? always *haggling and haggling* (GOLDSM., G. Nat. M. 1.). Whilst I say, *he lies, And lies, and lies* (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 4, 1.). I *have borne, and borne, and borne, and have been fubbed off, and fubbed off, and fubbed off*, from this day to that day (II Henry IV. 2, 1.). Scrooge went to bed again, *and thought and thought, and thought it over and over and over* (DICKENS, Christm. Car. 2.). So to nouns, pronouns, and, frequently, particles are often formally combined: I . . have lived for *months and months* on shipboard (BYR., Lett.). They . . meditate for *many and many* a day (ROGERS, It., M. Cassino). I have sat beside you *many and many* a day (DICKENS, Christm. Car. 1.). The olde trot syts groning, with *alas and alas* (GAMMER GURT. NEEDLE 1, 1.). Now I would be an empress, and *by and by* a duchess (BEN JONS., Poetast. 1, 1.). There's somewhat in this world amiss Shall be unriddled *by and by* (TENNYNS. p. 86.). My buckler cut *through and through* (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 2, 4.). He looked the phantom *through and through* (DICKENS, Christm. Car. 1.). Toiling *on and on and on* (LONGF. II. 35.). The king . . repeated the same words *over and over* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. III. 169.). He has told me so *again and again* (COOP., Spy 2.). It was repeated *again and again and again* . . by the echoes of the surrounding cliffs (SCOTT, R. Roy 39.). Vines that wandered, Seeking the sunshine *round and round* (LONGF. II. 20.). The Lord is king for *ever and ever* (Ps. 10, 16. cf. 21, 4. 45, 6.). And *thus and thus* have I done (JOSH. 7, 20.). — The reduplication of comparatives, which is in use, is to be observed, whereby a growing augment is expressed: I love thee *more and more*; think *more and more* What's best to ask (SHAKSP., Cymb. 5, 5.). The situation of Columbus was daily becoming *more and more critical* (IRVING, Columb. 3, 4.). "But I love him." — "Love him! *worse and worse!*" (GAY, Begg. Op. 1, 1.) Grains

are becoming *scarcer and scarcer* (CARL., Fr. Revol. 3, 2, 2.). Yet the comparative is also reserved for the second member: *Still and still more*, his griefs do grow upon him (BEN JONS., Poetast. 1, 1.). *Wide and more wide*, th' o'erflowings of the mind Take ev'ry creature in, of ev'ry kind (POPE, Essay on M. 4, 369.).

A distributive meaning early belongs to the combination with *and* in the case above touched upon. Old-Engl.: A companye of ladyes *trewe and trewe* (CHAUC., C. T. 900.). Halssax.: *Æuer tweie and tweie tuhte to somne* (LAJAM. II. 617.). Anglosax.: *Agan hig sendan twām and twām* (MARC. 6, 7.). *Anne finger and anne* (OROS. 2. 3.) [unum et alterum]. — The repetition of the notion of activity with the conjunction commonly yields to the combination of verbs allied in sense; that of particles is, on the contrary, frequent. Old-Engl.: He said he wild asay per hors alle in a mile. He asayed þam *bi & bi* (LANGT. I. 219.). To do hem reverans *by and by* (HALLIW., Freemas. 728.). Two yonge knightes ligging *by and by* (CHAUC., C. T. 1013. cf. 4141.) [juxta]. Telle us now thi questyon *out and oute* (COV. MYST. p. 205.). We have sorow *then and then* (TOWN. M. p. 99.). So that heo draweth hire ner the sonne, and *lute and lute* a-bac (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 134.). She florrissbeth *new and new* (SKELTON l. 78.). Halssax.: *pa fleh Henges purh & purh* (LAJAM. II. 264.). *Ærneð æuere vorð and vorð* (ib.). *þatt æfre annd æfre* stannde Biforenn Godd (ORM. 206.). Forr þatt teþ woldenn cumenn *eft Annd eft*, annd ofte annd lome (12924.). Anglosax.: Ic geseah þæron veaxende blōsman *litlum and litlum* (GEN. 40, 10.). *Litlan and litlan* his leōht vanode (SAX. CHR. 1110.). Similar is: *Lufedon sviðe and ofersviðe* gitsung on golde and on seolfre (ib. 1087.). — The connection of repeated comparatives often meets us. Old-Engl.: She hym comforttyd *more and more* (SIR CLEGGES 149.). It amenisith the love that men schulde have to God, *more and more* (CHAUC., C. T. p. 192. l.). Halssax.: *Auer þer comen ma & ma* (LAJAM. II. 343.). *Aþ summ þho mare annd mare* toc Aþ wex itt *mare annd mare* (ORM. 8679. cf. 10219. 12080.). Forr swa to cwemenn *bett annd bett* Drihhtin annd *mare annd mare* (11835.). Anglosax.: And ā hit vȳrsode mid mannan *sviðor and sviðor* (SAX. CHR. 1086.).

- d. If *and* stands at the beginning of a sentence without immediately effecting a union of sentences, the reference to the thought of another or of the speaker himself is to be assumed.

"Loe, this is all; now tell me your advise." — "*And* this is much, and asketh great advice." (FERREX A. PORR. 1, 2.) "Think on my words." — "*And* shall do." (SHAKSP., Cymb. 1, 6.) "Yet ask." — "*And* shall I have?" (Rich. II. 4, 1.) "Is she so fair?" — "*And* matchless beautiful." (MARLOWE, Jew of M. 1, 2.) "Never believe me, if yonder be not our parson Adams walking along without his horse." — "On my word, *and* so he is," says Slipslop (FIELD., J. Andr. 2, 7.). "And hard I've spurr'd all night, to shew The mustering of the coming foe." — "*And* let them come!" fierce Dacre cried (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 4, 29.). Alas! alas! *and* stands it so? (COLER., Picc. 1, 5.) "*And* what" he asked a plainly dressed citizen, "is the cause of this assembly? (BULW., Rienzi 2, 8.). My lord, *and* shall we pass the bill I mention'd half an hour ago? (TENNYSON p. 319.) *Evelyn* (examining him curiously . .): *And* that's the celebrated Dudley

Smooth? (BULW., Money 2, 5.) The commencement of lyric poems with *and* is not uncommon: *And* I was once like this (SOUTHEY p. 123.). *And* do I then wonder that Julia deceives me...? (TH. MOORE p. 54.) *And* are you then a thing of art...? (p. 65.) *And* hast thou mark'd the pensive shade...? (p. 146.). The occupation of the poet with a series of thoughts into which he immediately enters is the reason. This is familiar to many modern lyric poets, as to Goethe in German. After a completely concluded sentence or clause, which is separated from a sentence beginning with *and* by a greater pause, which the full stop, for example, expresses, the relation of the sentences is to be judged from the general point of view.

In ancient times instances of the kind above touched upon are rarer. *And* sometimes stand in the transition from narrative to direct speech: He bad hem to withdrawe — "*And* bryngys trees and many a bowgh.." (RICH. C. DE L. 4352.) Halſax.: *And* hahten hine aȝain wenden "*& ȝi, þu nult aȝein faren, sorhȝen þu ſcalt habben & kare.*" (LAȜAM. II. 550.) While the supposition of a member of a sentence in the form of a sentence is here the means of connection, as is the case with the above specified instances in dialogue, the commencing of speech by *and* also occurs without any such support. Old-Engl.: What? thou stynkyng losel, *and* is it so? (COV. MYST. p. 37.) Poems also often commence with *and*: *And* as I passid in my preiere ther prestis were at messe; the alliterative poem DEPOS. OF RICH. II. p. 1. begins thus. The same seems popular in ballads: The Perse owt of Northombarlande, *and* a vowe to God mayd he (PERCY, Rel. p. 2. I) Comp Middle-Highdutch: Kint, *unt* welle dich gelücke miden (v. D. HAGEN, Minnes. 2, 184. b.) [at the beginning of a song]. Even Anglosaxon presents the particle annexed to the speech of another: "*Forþam ic nelle fēdan hig on sumera forþam þe hig þearle eðað.*" — "*And* manige fēdað þā getemedon ofer sumor þāt eft hig habban gearuue." (ÆLFERIC. COLLOQ. in Ebeling, Ags. Leseb. p. 51.) and otherwise: Vel gesund Apolloni. *And* ne forseoh þu cyrlicne man (APOLLON. OF T. p. 7.). From this is to be distinguished *and*, employed for the Greek *xai* in the meaning of the Modern-English *also*, and which also appears at the beginning of the Sentence, as well as within it: *And* þu være mid þam Galilēiscan Hælende (MATH. 26, 69.). *And* þes vās mid þam Nazareniscan Hælende (26, 71.). *and* was also used in this sense in Old-Engl.: Y worthe thi wil ase in heuene and ine erthe (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 42. cf. p. 38.). He þat hatip me, hatip *and* my fadir (WYCL., Joh. 15, 23 and often).

- e. *And* may connect sentences, and members of sentences, which are added in an explanatory manner, partly parenthetically, partly supplementarely and emphatically, when the same word may also be repeated with a fresh determination.

I stake my fame (*and* I had fame) . . Upon this cast! (BYR., M. Faliero 3, 2.) Scrooge signed it: *and* Scrooge's name was good upon "Change" (DICKENS, Christm. Car. 1.). Now in travelling we multiply events, *and* innocently (ROGERS, It., For. Trav.). Yet there is one, *And* he amongst the foremost in his power (ROWE, J. Shore 1, 1.). Speak truth, *and* the whole truth (SHELLEY, Cenci 5, 2.). He *and* he alone has done all this (MACAUL., H. of E. III. 323.).

In such a combination a demonstrative pronoun, especially

that more rarely *this*, is given to *and*, whereby a preceding notion or sentence is referred to, to which a supplementary determination belongs. With that the intensive *too* may be associated! see below: I heard a humming, *And that* a strange one *too* (SHAKSP., Temp. 2, 1.). She has one foe, *and that* one foe the world (COWP. p. 13.). There was, however, one piece of intelligence, *and that* of no little interest to herself (COOPER, Spy 3.). With very short intervals of sleep, *and those* entirely filled with dreams (FIELD., J. Andr. 2, 4.). God shall help her *and that* right early (Ps. 46, 5.). Chance often hits the mark, *and that* by means the least expected (FIELD., J. Andr. 2, 15.). He rode several races for Sir Thomas, *and this* with such expertness and success etc. (1, 2.).

Old-Engl.: Into this dongeon depe I soght *And* alle for luf of the (TOWN. M. p. 259.). Hallsax.: He heom bi-tahte þa burh & iearwed mid þan beste (LAJAM. I. 88.). An emphatic addition with *and that* is very usual: Beestes ben there ynowe, *and that* ful grete plenté (MACUNDEY. p. 129. cf. 214. 233. 251. 273.). They hied heom quyckliche, *And that* sone and pryveliche (ALIS. 3764.). A knight ther was, *and that* a worthy man (CHAUC., C. T. 43.). He slough the grisly bore, *and that* anon (15595.). I shalle, *and that* in hy, set alle on sex and seven (TOWN. M. p. 143. cf. 69. 179. 244.). like Hallsax.: & hete . . makian an eorð hus . . & þæt inne swiðe feire stude (LAJAM. I. 100.). Comp. below *and to*. I have not met with anything corresponding in Anglo-saxon.

- f. The sentence appended by *and* also contains the consequence of what precedes, especially after imperatives, and elliptical or abbreviated sentences.

Delight thyself also in the Lord, *and* he shall give thee the desires of thy heart (Ps. 37, 4.). Believe, *and* look with triumph on the tomb! (YOUNG, N. Th. 4, 762.). Adorn but man with freedom, *And* proud he braves the gaudiest slaves, That crawl where monarchs lead' em (TH. MOORE, Ir. Melod.). Elliptical and abbreviated sentences, especially of a temporal and qualifying kind, are related logically like imperatives in these sentences: For yet a little while, *and* I will avenge the blood of Jezreel upon the house of Jehu (HOSEA 1, 4.). A few days *and* we are parted for ever! (BULW., Money 3, 2.) A few more days, *and* this essay will follow the Defensio populi to the dust and silence of the upper shelf (MACAUL, Essays I. 3.). I . . have escaped from the hands of my enemies; but five minutes since *and* I was a prisoner (COOPER, Spy 7.). This war once ended, *and* you may take that hand for ever (6.). Once removed from the worldly atmosphere of her father's counsels, *and* you will form and raise her to your own level (BULW., Money 3, 3.). They are grammatically equal to principal sentences, as in: They touch our country, *and* their shackles fall (COWP. p. 185.).

The union of a logical conclusion with an imperative by *and* has been in use from the most ancient times. Old-Engl.: Smyteth the hed his body fro, *And* mucbe honour y schal you do (ALIS. 1951.). Werke by counseil, *and* thou schalt not rewe (CHAUC., C. T. 3530.). Salamon saith. "werke al thi thing by counseil, *and* the thar never rewe." (p. 151. II.) Anglosax.: Gelýf vitóðlice, *and* heó bið hál (LUC. 8, 47.). Ac cveð þin

an vord, *and* min cnapa bið gehæled (MATH. 8, 8.). Cum and sete þine hand uppān hig, *and* heó lyfað (9, 18.).

- g. Even the contrary may be conjoined by *and*, so that this particle seems to take the place of an adversative. This becomes especially apparent with succeeding negative sentences or members of sentences.

God made the country, *and* man made the town (COWP. p. 182.). — The mate for beauty Should be a man, *and* not a money-chest (BULW., Richel. 1, 2.). She is a free-born maid, *and* not a slave (SHERID. KNOWL., Virgin. 3, 3.). It is the cause, *and* not our will, which asks Such actions from our hands (BYRON, M. Faliero 3, 2.).

Old-Engl.: Theih sholde chastise the folk, *and* theih maken hem bolde (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 332.). Ich have i-loved hire moni dai, *And* of hire love hoe seith me nai (Anecd. p. 7.). Thei wenen, that thei han bawme; *and* thei have non (MAUNDEV. p. 51.). They were full glad, *and* nothinge lothe (FROMYDON 2102.). He shalle lif *and* not be brent (TOWN. M. p. 41.). Halfsax.: patt he þær toc Adames flæsh *Annd* noht Adames sinne (ORM. 12406. cf. 2857.). Anglosax.: Seó sunne ymbscinð pone blindan, *and* se blinda ne gesihð þære sunnan leóman (JOB in ETTM. 3, 19.). Ic ville mild-heortnysse *and* nā onsägdnyse (MATH. 12, 7.).

- h. A number of other particles serves to conjoin either a homogeneous or a more important member. So far as they are properly adverbs, they may also take *and*, which in therefore not, in the proper sense, substituted for them.

also, Anglosax. *ealswá*, Old-Highdutch *also*, Middle-Highdutch *also*, *als* properly expresses the complete agreement of quality and kind. In connecting sentences it denotes, with a weakened meaning, that what is added equally takes place, when the internal relation of the sentences may be different.

I can no more go out and come in: *also* the Lord hath said unto me, Thou shalt not go over this Jordan (DEUTER. 31, 2.). He sold wine, and kept a table d'hôte, occasionally *also* let bedrooms to travellers (LEWES, G. I. 52.). If *likewise*, allied in sense, is used, its adverbial relation to the predicate becomes mere prominent: Jesus took the loaves; and . . he distributed to the disciples, and the disciples to them that were sat down; *and likewise* of the fishes (JOH. 6, 11.). *Likewise* is also combined with *also* with various shades of meaning: *Likewise also* the chiefpriests mocking said among themselves etc. (MARK 15, 31. cf. LUKE 6, 31.).

Old-Engl.: Castantyn lette *also* in Jerusalem chirches rere (R. OF GL. I. 87.). Of foules and of bestes of wyldre *and* tame *also* (I. 1.). The steward wendes, the childe *alswa* (SEVERN SAGES 3645.). And take with the Mary, *Also* hyr chyld so fre (TOWN. M. p. 135.). Anoynt thi ship with pik and tar *and als* within (p. 23.). Here lith the myller and his wyf *also* (CHAUC., C. T. 4254.). Comp. Anglosax.: Hvi fastað Johannes leornung-cnihtas . . *and eall-swá* Farisea (LUC. 5, 33.). Se Hælend nam þā blāfas . . and hig tōdælde sittendum; *and eall-swá* of þām fixum (JOH. 6, 11.). In Wycliffe's translation *also* and stands [and = etiam]. He departede to men sittynge at þe mete, *also* and of þe fischis; *also eke*. The Anglosaxon *gelice*, with the dat. sometimes answers to *also* in a

similar combination, He vundrode, and ealle . . *gelice* Jacobum and Johannem (Luc. 5, 9. sq.).

eke, Anglosax. *ēc*, *éc*, Old-norse *ok*, *og*, *auk*. Old-Highdutch *auch*, *ouch*, belonging to the Anglosaxon *ēcan*, augere, serves less to unite than to render prominent a subjoined more important sentence or notion. In subsequent times it has yielded its place to *too*, Anglosaxon *tō*, as well as to *also*. Both frequently take *and*. *Eke* moreover seems to have been early weakened, like *ok* in Old-norse.

That both my purpose may more firmly stand, *and eke* that they may better rule their charge (FERREX A. PORR. 1, 2.). But now is time to lay this sworde aside, *And eke* of them to knowe where is the queene (GASCOYNE, Jocasta 2, 1.). Master guest, and master Page, *and eke* cavaliero Slender (SHAKSP., Merry W. 2, 3.). And I to Ford shall *eke* unfold How Falstaff . . His dove will prove (1, 3. cf. Mids. N. Dr. 3, 1.).

The Chaos, *too*, he had descry'd (BUTL., Hud. 1, 1, 563.). Only, give way I will not. Depose me *too* they shall not (COLER., Picc. 1, 11.). "God help thee", Southey! *and* thy readers *too* (BYR., Engl. Bards p. 315.). With *and* preceding it, it frequently renders prominent the determination after which it is put: What you will have, I'll give, *and* willing *too* (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 3, 3.). And tho' some there are, Nay, *and* those great ones *too*, who would enforce The rigour of our power to afflict you (ROWE, Jane Sh. 4, 1.). I heard some one talking, *and* passionately *too* (COLER., Wallenst. 1, 3.); see above *and* p. 337.

The particles *ek*, *eke*, *and eke* are very usual in Old-Engl.: Wateres he hæp *eke* gode ynow (R. or Gl. I. 2.). Of salt fysch *and eke* fresch (I. 1.). Lijtinge cometh *ek* therof (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 135.). Mid wordes milde *and eke* sleie Faire he hire grette (Anecd. p. 6.). Many fayre woodes, *and eke* wylde beestes (MAUNDEV. p. 127.). He made tho bothe halle *and eke* bowre (HALLIW., Freemas. 63.). Hafsax.: Gaet *and* þa swin *eke* (LAZAM. III. 19.). þurh fullubht annd þurh haliþ spell Annd *ec* þurh haliþ bisne (ORM. 195.). *also* is also added. Old-Engl.: He sent his knave *and eek* his wenche *also* (CHAUC., C. T. 3631.). Anglosaxon presents *ēc*, *and ēac* and *ēac svā*, *ēac svā ilce*, *ēac svylce*, which agrees with *ealewā*; Nu hābbe ge gehýred þā hālgan þrynnysse; ge sceolon *ēac* gehýran fā soðan ānnysse (THORPE, Anal. p. 60.). Folca manegum þe us *ēc* bevræcon (CAEDM. 3822.). Ðær veaŕð Ordhelm . . ofslegen, *and ēac* monige oðre cyninges þegnas (SAC. CHR. 894.). Micel dæl þāra burhvara, *and ēac svā* oðres folces (896.). Mine eāgan væron gedrefede and āfærde for þinum yrre, *and ēac svā ilce* min mōd and min maga (Ps. 30, 10.). Sume synt yrðlingas, sume scēp-hyrdas, sume *ēac svylce* huntan (THORPE, Anal. p. 102.). In Ormulum the Scandinavian *oc* is used quite like *and*: Aþ occ aþ (ORM. 12077.).

Eke in Old-English slowly gave place to the frequent use of *to*: That hye and his leman also Sostren were and tvinnes *to* (LAY LE FREINE 323.). *Therto* is often found. Of salt fysch . . and fayre ryueres *perto* (R. or Gl. I. 1.). Of Kent and of West Sex, *and of* þe March *perto* (I. 4.). Hire mouth ful smal *and therto* softe and reed (CHAUC., C. T. 153.). Compare Modern-Engl.: His friends are wealthy, *Therto*, his own possessions large and mighty (ROWE, Jane Sh. 4, 1.). *tō* extends moreover into Anglos.: Hāfde . . nigon hund vintra *and* hund seofontig *tō* (CAEDM. 1217 sq.).

Other adverbs, such as *besides*, *moreover*, *further*, have little syntactic interest. The use of such forms is in part old.

Beside he was a shrewd philosopher (BUTL., Hud. 1, 1, 127.). *Besides* I say etc. (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 1, 1.). *Besides*, he is your cousin (BULW., Money 1, 1.). Singular, *moreover*, is the absence of any fierce indignation (LEWES, G. I. 67.). *Further* I say; and *further* will maintain etc. SHAKSP., Rich. II. 1, 1.). *Further* — and this is a point to be insisted on — his style in poetry and prose, is subject to the same law (LEWES, G. I. 66.).

Old-Engl.: *And*, *moreover*, the mysease of helle, schal be in the default of mete (CHAUC., C. T. p. 187. II.). *Moreover* thare neighbors thai demyd (TOWN. M. p. 319.). *And forther-morover* here disease schal be in defeaute of frendes (CHAUC., C. T. p. 188. I.). *And fortherover* thay schal have defeaute of alle manere delices (ib.). *And forthermore* it is necessary to understonde etc. (p. 191. I.). *Forthermore* yet that ordeyn he (HALLIW., Freemas. 43. cf. 617.). Anglosax.: þa get ic *furðor* gefregen (CAEDM. II. 225.),

The connective *now*, which is especially used with a subsumption, properly expresses the tarrying at the moment in question, and is therefore adapted to subjoin what comes immediately before the mind of the speaker on the given occasion.

And the child grew . . . *Now* his parents went to Jerusalem every year etc. (LUKE 2, 40.). Jesus . . . findeth Philip, and saith unto him, Follow me. *Now* Philip was of Bethsaida etc. (JOH. 1, 43.). Then Well for the whole, if there be found a man . . . *Now* such a man is Wallenstein etc. (COLER., Picc. 1, 4.). No sooner do they enter the world, than they loose that taste for natural and simple pleasures, so remarkable in early life . . . *Now* travel, and foreign travel more particularly, restores to us in a great degree what we have lost (ROGERS, It., For. Trav.).

Old-Engl.: *Now* afre that men han visited tho holy places, thanne will they turnen toward Jerusalem (MAUNDEV. p. 63.). Hafsax.: Brutlond wes blife a to þeos kinges liue: *Nu* hauede þe king Arviragus ennesune etc. (LAJAM. I. 422.). Instead of the particle of time *þa* commonly serves to connect in Anglosaxon, of which the translation of the Bible presents numerous instances, where English chuses *and*. Where the Greek continues with *δὲ*, the modern English translation of the testament often gives *now*, the Anglosaxon. on the other hand, the assertive *sōðlice* certe, otherwise answering to the Gr. *ἰδοὺ*: *Sōðlice* Phillippus vās fram Bethsaida (JOH. 1, 44.). *Sōðlice* āfter þam þā Apollonins āfaren vās, Antonius se cynineg him tō gecigde his dihtnere (APOLLON. OF T. p. 5.). I have not met in Anglosaxon with a *nu* only to form the transition to another sentence.

1. When several affirmative members of the coordination come into a reciprocal relation to one another, these might in ancient times be expressed by *and* . . . *and* before each member, as in Gr. by *καὶ* . . . *καὶ*, and in Lat. by *et* . . . *et*.

Old-Engl.: As I am *and* true *and* lele, to God here I pray, Shat this be the fyrst mele that I shalle ete this day (TOWN. M. p. 112.). Seyinge: *And* I haue clarifiede, *and* yet schal clarifie (WYCL., Joh. 12, 28.). Forsōpe nowē and þei haue seen *and* hatide me (15, 24.). Anglosaxon: þā com stefn of heofone, þus cweðende: *And* ic gevuldrode, *and* eft ic

gevuoldrige (JOH. 12, 28.). Where *and* takes the lead in modern times, it does not have its correlative in *and* after it, but points to a preceding thought. Anglosaxon even commonly substituted *ge . . ge* or *ægðer ge . . ge* (eac), for the correlative particles, but might also give *and* (eac) instead of *ge* to *ægðer ge* in a succeeding member. In *3a . . 3a* Halfsaxon still presents a reciprocal relation: *3a þa þatt wærenn gode menn, 3a þa þatt wærenn ille* (Osm., Introd. 53.). *3a læwedd folc 3a læredd* (Osm. 845.). *Godess eþhe . . All seþ . . 3a þatt tatt wass, 3a þatt tatt iss, 3a þatt tatt 3et shall wurrþenn* (17693.). *ægðer . . and* was long preserved in *æiðer . . and*: *per Hengest þe swike æiðer bi worde & bi write cuðde þan kinge þat he cumen wolde* (Lazam. II. 212.). *Hæo weoren ifaren . . fodder to biwinnen, æiþer uodder and mete* (III. 76.). Comp. Anglosax.: *lc ville, þæt ælc man sý folcristes vyrðe. ge earm ge eadig* (LEGG. EADG. I B. 1.). *Doune beoð hi utlage ge við hy ge við us* (LEGG. ÆTHEL. III. 8.). *Hig hatodon ægðer ge me, ge minne Fæder* (JOH. 15, 24.). *He vās swiðe rædfast man ægðer for Gode and for vorulde* (SAX. CHR. 1019.). *Mycel forleās ægðer ge on feoh and eac on lond* (1118.). The simple *ge* also occurs alone in the second member: *Drihten rixað on écnesse on þisse vorulde ge on þære tō-veardan* (Ps. 9, 36.).

The modern tongue, however, likewise according to the precedent of the ancients, where only two members or series of members are considered, commonly expresses the reciprocal relation by *both . . and*, but also admits more than two. *Both* comprehends, and *and* joins the members enumerated, whether *both* is supported by a substantive notion or sums up notions of activities, predicative and adverbial determinations as such.

I created all th' ethereal powers And spirits, *both* them who stood *and* them who fail'd (MILT., P. L. 3, 101.). I have *both* glorified it, and will glorify it again (JOHN 12, 28.). His brethren *both* hated *and* feared Mr. Tuft (WARREN, Ten Thous. a.-year 2, 10.). This it was which helped to give his countenance that expression *both* quaint *and* unaffected (3, 1.). "To be relinquished of the artists —" — "So I say; *both* of Galen and Paracelsus." (SHAKSP., All's Well 2, 3.) Volatile he was, wild, and somewhat rough, *both* in appearance *and* in speech (LEWES, G. I. 41.); and in the inverse comprehension: Inward *and* outward *both* (MILT., P. L. 8, 221.). More than two members are presented, for instance by: The God that made *both* sky, air, earth, *and* heaven (MILT., P. L. 4, 722.). It might at once the ruin prove *Both* of his honour, faith, *and* love (BUTL., Hud. 2, 3, 51.).

The old form so far agrees with *ægðer . . and* as even here the reference to a duality of members is present. In Old-English we often find the particle *and* supported by *eke*, *also*, after *both*. *þat bope yre louerd & yre sone ylore adde þat lyf* (R. OF GL. II. 392.). Himself was knyght and sweyn; *Bothe* maide *and eke* chaumburleyn (ALIS. 377.). *Me mot bothe wyne and leose* (1658.). *Hys pawes was bothe scharp and long* (RICH. C. DE L. 1072.). *Both* of the see *and* of fersche water he draweth up the breth (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 136.). He understode al fowles language, *Bothe* in wod *and als* in cage (SEUYN SAGES 3563.). *Bothe* here *and* there (MAUNDK. p. 283.). The members are frequently more than two: I wille distroy *both* beest, man, *and* woman (TOWN. M. p. 22. cf. 161.). *Sovereyn Bothe* of lond, sonne, *and* see (P. PLOUGHM. p. 400.). *The mayster mason mooste be ful securly bothe* stedefast, trusty, *and* trwe

(HALLIW., Freemas. 88.). Several successive members are also joined by *and* repeated: And rente down *bothe* wal, *and* sparre, *and* raftur (CHAUC., C. T. 992. cf. COV. MYST. p. 22. 30.). As to a similar accumulation of members with the Middle-Highdutch *beidiu* . . . *and* see Grimm Gr. 4, 954. It is not to be denied that totalities or pairs are often opposed, as one member, to the other; yet the freer accumulation is thereby explained. The corresponding form is familiar to Halfsax.: He him wolde jifuen lond, *boðe* seoluer & gold (LAJAM II. 289.). He heom walde yfel don *boðe* ablanden *and* anhon (II. 189.). *Ba* bi daie & bi niht (I. 88.) [*bope* bi daije *and* bi nipt mod. text]. All forþi wass Cristess kinn Uppwarð *and* dunnwarð *bape* Bi Josæp reccnedd (ORM. 2063. cf. 2055.). Anglosaxon frequently comprises by the numeral double members joined by *and*: Hafað átgrædere *bu* lic *and* sáve (COD. EXON. 64, 12.). Sceolde *bu* vitan ylða æghvilc, godes *and* yfles (CAEDM. 476.). Min bân *and* blôð *butu* (COD. EXON. 125, 7.). The comprehension of substantive notions makes the transition to the neutral comprehension of members of a sentence.

It has become common to denote the reciprocal relation by an incomplete modal or comparative clause with *as well as*. The setting the members as equal is adapted to denote the intimate union of the members. This comparison of course does not absolutely express the copulative relation; Instances such as: I can *as well* be hanged *as* tell the manner of it (SHAKSP., Jul. Cæs. 1, 2.) are not substituted for any copulative comparison.

It will be my endeavour to relate the history of the people *as well* as the history of the government (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 3.). A sickness long *as well as* severe (WEBST. v. well).

Old-Engl.: Of þe child wer drede þe lond *als wele as* he (LANGT. II. 252.) [= mult serreyt en perylle *regne & regalle*. Ms. gall]. The gardyn is always grene and florissching . . . *als wel* in wyntre *es* in somer (MAUNDREV. p. 54.), see Vol. I. p. 419. The comparison sometimes stands in Anglosaxon as equivalent to the copulative relation: Manna gehvylc mæg sprecaþ myð his mûðe *svá* yfel *svá* gôð (EV. NICOD. 6.).

Alike . . . *and* is reduced to a comparison, in which *alike*, which may also follow the members joined by *and*, is to be regarded as an adverb. The reference to comparison has also allowed *as* for *and*.

Our dunny earth *alike* Feeds beast *as* man (SHAKSP., Ant. & Cleop. 1, 1.). — A lady that disdains thee *and* the devil *alike* (Cymb. 1, 7.). Spend-thrift *alike* of money *and* of wit (COWP. p. 19.). Men eminent *alike* in war *and* peace (ROGERS, It., Foscarì). Stephen Colonna, who, of all the nobles of Rome, was the most powerful, *alike* from the favour of the pope, *and* the number of armed hirelings (BULW., Rienzi 1, 4.).

We see that *alike* might be wanting in the copulative relation, and only renders prominent the equal or identical relation of a verb or of a determination of the sentence to the conjoined members. Old-Engl.: And lovede well with hert trewe Nyght *and* day *glych* newe (OCTOVIAN 92.). Compare Anglosax.: þæt ve *gelice* sceolon lea-num hleo-tan, *svá* ve . . . vor-cum hlôdun (CYSEVELF, Crist 783. Grein), — Vintres *and* sumeres vudu bið *gelice* blêdum gehongen (PHOEBIX 37. ib.).

As *alike* expresses the idea of equality, so *at once* expresses, with the members joined by *and*, the contemporaneous appearance or the no-

tional coincidence: Oh! dark asylum of a Vandal race! *At once* the boast of learning *and* disgrace (BYRON, *Engl. Bards* p. 330.). The prime minister . . . was *at once* detested *and* despised (MACAUL., *Essays* IV. 30.). The members may then be comprehended otherwise: It might *at once* the ruin prove *Both* of his honour, faith, *and* love (BUTL., *Hud.* 2, 3, 51.).

The reciprocal relation by *what* repeated, which syndetically, is *what . . . and what*, abbreviated *what . . . and*, and asyndetically *what . . . what*, and is capable of frequent repetition, denotes the single members as parts of a totality, The indefinite *what* (aliquid), at the root of which is the Anglosaxon indefinite *hwā*, *hwāt*, appears in this employment in the modern language as an adverbial accusative, and readily combines with prepositional members, the preposition *with* being preferred.

I fear . . . *what* with the sickness of Northumberland . . . *And what* with Owen Glendower's absence, thence . . . I fear, the power of Percy is too weak (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 4, 4.). *What* with their noise, *and what* with the trembling of the thin crust of ground . . . , *and what* with the flashing of the fire in our faces, *and* the shower of red-hot ashes that is raining down, *and* the choking smoke and sulphur; we may well feel giddy (DICKENS, *Pict. Fr. It.*, Vesuv.). *What* with breakfasting with this one, *and* lunching with that, *and* dining with a third, *and* supping with another, a pretty tight week he used to make of it (Pickw. 2, 20.). The asyndetic *what . . . what* is not rare: Such a flood of greatness fell on you, — *What* with our help; *what* with the absent king; *what* with the injuries of a wanton time (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 5, 1.). The year before, he had so used the matter, that *what* by force, *what* by policy, he had taken from the Christians above thirty castles (KNOLLES in Webst. v.). *What* with chagrin and confinement, *what* with bad diet . . . Wilhelmina sees herself "reduced to a skeleton" (CARL., *Freder.* the Gr. 4, 8, 3.).

If it is in some cases possible to attach *what* to a verb as its object, this is nowise requisite. In the older language, on the other hand, *what* is decidedly inserted in the sentence as its subject or object, yet it also stands adverbially, is repeated both syndetically and asyndetically, and also leaves *and* without a supplement with a following member. Old-Engl.: They drank of kyng Richardes cuppe. *What* ther wer drownyd, *and what* wer slawe (RICH. C. DE L. 6946.). *What* before *and what* *behynde*, A thousand and mo . . . He slowgh (7039.). *What* with gefthe *and* qweyntise, Al he wan to his serveyse (ALIS. 4682.). *What* with game *and* with gyle, I shall smyte and smyle, And qwite hym his mede (TOWN. M. p. 25.). Here folc heo loren . . . monyon *Wat* in batayle *wat* in se (R. OF GL. I. 50. cf. (WRIGHT, *Polit. S.* p. 216. *Pop. Treat.* p. 134.), see I. p. 411.). *What . . . what* quite corresponds in meaning to the Romance neuter *que . . . que*, occurring asyndetically for *partim . . . partim*, and *partly . . . partly*, and is adapted to take the place of the Lat. *qua qua*; see DEIZ. *Rom. Gr.* 3, 78. Although a repetition of *hwāt . . . hwāt* is not familiar to Anglosaxon, the English usage is not of pure Romance origin, since *hwāt*, aliquid = pars, might readily be repeated according to the analogy of *sum . . . sum*.

k. A negative sentence may be attached to an affirmative one in two manners.

- a. This happens by *and*, so that the negation of the attached sentence or member appears within it, and the copulative *and* expresses the equal value of both members without any previous regard to its other meaning.

Our supreme foe in time may remit His anger, *and* perhaps thus far remov'd *Not* mind us not offending (MILT., P. L. 2, 210.). We both had our share to-day, *and* I *never* saw a man more polite than Mr. Handycock (MARRYAT, P. Simple 1, 2.). Here the negative determination, logically considered, may also qualify an adversative relation; see above p. 334.

Old-Engl.: It were a gode contree to sowen inne thristelle and breres, and broom and thornes; *and* for *no* other thing is it *not* good (MAUNDEV. p. 129. sq.). Anglosax.: Hig sūvedon, *and* *ne* sædon mānum men etc (Luc. 9, 36.). Ic sealde eov anveald . . *and* *nān* þing eov *ne* derað (10, 19.).

- β. Or the negative nature of the sentence is straightway presented by the copulative, in which case *neither*, or, commonly, *nor* comes at the commencement of the negative sentence.

The glossary . . is, of course, full of errors. *Neither* was Mr. Pinkerton more happy in the way of conjectural illustration (SCOTT, Minstrelsy I. 74.). — So passed they naked on, *nor* shunn'd the sight Of God or angel, for they thought no ill (MILT., P. L. 4, 319.). Cease then, *nor* order imperfection name (POPE, Essay on M. 1, 281.). The tale is long, *nor* have I heard it out (ADDIS., Cato 4, 3.). He drank one draught, *nor* needed more (BYRON, Bride 2, 14.). It was a large house, but of broken fortunes; for the spacious offices were little used . . Fowls clucked and strutted in the stables . . *Nor* was it more retentive of its ancient state, within (DICKENS, Christm. Car. 2.).

The dissimilated forms *neither* and *nor* originally point to a reduplication of negative sentences or members. They therefore were most naturally joined to a preceding affirmative sentence, if a negative thought could be substituted for it, yet they early took the place of *ne* and were employed in the sense of the Gr. οὐδέ μὴδὲ; see I. Old-Engl.: So and þe sone quykenith whom he wole *neþer* þe fadir iugþ any man (WYCL., Joh. 5, 22.). Greek: οὐδὲ ὁ πατήρ ἐκτίσσει οὐδένα.

Nē, in use in Anglosaxon even after affirmative sentences, is found in Modern-English in former times: For all that art he learned had of yore: *Ne* was he ignoraunt of that leud lore (SPENSER, F. Qu. 3, 2, 28.). She wandred had from one to other Ynd, Him for to seeke, *ne* ever would forsake (1, 6, 2.). Justice lyes on sleepe *Ne* doth regarde the wrongs of wretchednesse, *Ne* princes swelling pryde it doth redresse (GASCOIGNE, Jocasta p. 256.). Old-Engl.: I desire also You for to serve . . *Ne* never for no wele, ne for no wo *Ne* schal the gost withinne myn herte stente etc. (CHAUC., C. T. 8844.). Hallsax.: þatt child . . Shall ben , . Full mahhti; mann annd mære, *Ne* shall he næfre drinnkenn drinneh þatt ærunnkennesse foll;hepp (ORM. 804.). Anglosax.: Svá eác se Sunu gelifast þá þe he vylc. *Nē* se Fāder ne

dæmð nāpum menn (Jow. 5, 22.). And eton ealle þæt flæsc . . . *Nē* ne eton ge of þam nān þing breōves (Exod. 12, 8. sq.). Comp. I.

1. If one negative sentence, either complete or abbreviated, is attached to another, onesided relation backwards to the first member, or a negative reciprocal relation may take place.
- x. The onesided reference backwards is taken by *neither*, commonly by *nor* in a following sentence.

That Jesus was *not* there *neither* his disciples (JOHN 6, 24.). Great men are *not* always wise: *neither* do the aged understand judgment (JOB 32, 9.). Squandering and payment by loan is *no way* to choke a Deficit. *Neither* is oil the substance for quenching conflagrations (CARL., Fr. Revol. 1, 3, 2.). A young man . . ., in my circumstances, was *not* entitled to be highly indignant at the mistake which confounded him with this worshipful class of depredators. *Neither* was I offended (SCOTT, R. Roy 3.). — You'll *not* fight *nor* fly (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 5, 2.) Blame *not* thy clime, *nor* chide the distant sun (YOUNG, N. Th. 5, 450.). Scout said "If she sent to a hundred lawyers, *not* one *nor* all of them could alter the law" (FIELD., J. Andr. 4, 3.). My hair is gray, but *not* with years, *Nor* grew it white in a single night (BYRON, Pris. of Chillon).

With the junction of several negative members the repetition of *nor* is usual; *nor* and *neither* also formerly interchanged: If thou be *not* Christ, *nor* Elias, *neither* that prophet (JOHN 1, 25.). Call *not* thy friends, *nor* thy brethren, *neither* thy kinsmen, *nor* thy rich neighbours (LUKE 14, 12.). I am *not* ugly *nor* old, *Nor* a villanous scold (ADDIS., Rosam. 1, 3.).

Thus in Old-English a second negative member with *neither* or *nor* attaches itself to a former one, and it may be repeated with several appended members: þe whiche *not* of bloodis, *neþer* of wille of fleysche *neþer* of wille of mon, but ben borne of god (WYCL., Joh. 1, 13.). Ȝif þou art *not* Crist, *neþer* Helie, *neþer* a prophete (1, 25.). The Sarazines bryngen forthe *no* pigges, *nor* thei eten *no* swynes flessche (MAUNDEV. p. 72.). This *neither*, *nor* has taken the place of the Anglosaxon *nē*, which as a conjunctive particle of negation must, we think, be distinguished from *nē*, the negation of the sentence. That *nē*, as we have met with it in modern times attached to affirmative sentences, likewise meets us in earlier works of the most modern period of the language, where the first negative member contains no previous reference to attached negative members: But *none* of those excuses could take place; *Ne* would they eate, till she in presence came (SPENSER, F. Qu. 3, 9, 26.). *No* fort can be so strong, *Ne* fleshly brest can armed be so sownd (1, 9, 11.). It beseeems *not* me *ne* yet my yeares (GASCOYNE, Jocasta 4, 1.). Hence forth *n'am* I your ioy *ne* yet your sonne (2, 1.). This conjunctive negation is attached in Old-English in the forms *ne*, *ny*: In þe world hire pere *nas*, So whit, *ne* of such colour, *ny* in eche maner so gent (R. OF GL. I. 24.). Theon thou schalt *not* thy nese snyte, *ny* at the mete thy tothe thou pyke (HALLIW., Freemas. 745.). Thei mowe *not* lyve *ne* dure (MAUNDEV. p. 144.). *Nat* fully quyk *ne* fully deed they were (CHAUC., C. T. 1017.). Trespas did he *never* *nane*, *Ne* yit *no* mys (TOWN. M. p. 263.). Hallsax.: *Ne* wūrðe nan cniht swa wod, *ne* kempe swa wilde þæt he æuere spoke worde (LAȜAM. I. 366.). Nulle ich na-

uere mare . . heren into Rome, *næ nauere mare heom senden gaeul* (I. 413.). Anglosax.: *Ne can ic Abeles or nê fore* (CAEDM. 1003. *Nis þær hungor nê þurst, slæp nê svâr leger, nê sunnan bryne, nê cyle, nê cearo* (Cod. Exon. 101, 20.).

- β. A reciprocal relation of negations is in modern English chiefly expressed by *neither . . nor*; the etymologically equivalent *nor . . nor* hardly appears except in poetry. Although the negative *neither* (*nor*), analogously to *both*, originally supposed two members only, more may be attached by *nor*. *Neither . . neither* is obsolete; *ne . . ne* is still sometimes used in the same sense by poets: *Neither a borrower nor a lender be* (SHAKSP., Haml. 1, 3.). He will spare *neither* man, woman, nor child (II Henry IV. 2, 1.). He could *neither* write nor read (MARRYAT, J. Faith, 1, 1.). William wanted *neither* a guide nor a flatterer (MACAUL., Hist. of E. III. 11.). But they . . *neither* marry, nor are given in marriage. *Neither* can they die any more (LUKE 20, 36.). Let *neither* envy, grief, nor fear. *Nor* love-sick jealousy appear (ADDIS., Rosam. 1, 6.). He was *neither* shabby, nor insolent, nor churlish, nor ignorant (DICKENS, Pict. Fr. It., Through Bologna a. Ferrara.).

If my office be of such mortal kind, That *nor* my service past, *nor* present sorrows, *Nor* purpos'd merit in futurity Can ransom me (SHAKSP., Oth. 3, 4.). *Nor* love thy life, *nor* hate (MILT., P. L. 11, 553.). *Nor* fame I slight, *nor* for her favours call (POPE, Temple of Fame). Let us appear *nor* rash nor diffident (ADIS., Cato 2, 1.). Thou hast sought *nor* priest nor shrine (BULW., Richel. 1, 2.). Stout Deloraine *nor* sigh'd *nor* pray'd, *Nor* saint, *nor* ladye, call'd to aid (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 3, 5.).

They wanted *neither* meate *neither* musike (EUPHUES 10.). *Neither* did'st thou tell me, *neither* yet heard I of it (GEN. 21, 26.). It shall not be forgiven him, *neither* in this world, *neither* in the world to come (MATTH. 12, 32.).

But nowe the head to stoupe beneath them both, *Ne* kinde *ne* reason *ne* good ordre beares (FERREX A. PORR. 1, 2.). *Ne* barrier wall, *ne* river deep and wide, *Ne* borrid crags, *nor* mountains dark and tall Rise like the rocks that part Hispania's land from Gaul (BYRON, Ch. Har. 1, 32.).

Old-English pretty early favoured the repetition of the various forms *nather*, *nother*, *nouther*, *noither*, *nether*, *neither*, corresponding to the Anglosaxon *nāwðer*, *nāðer*, and chiefly gave the shortened *nor* to the second member: *Neper* þis man synnede *neper* his fadir and modir (WYCL., Joh. 9, 3.). God liketh not that Raby men us calle, *Neither* in market, *neither* in your large halle CHAUC., C. T. 7769.). — They make no money *nouther* of gold *nor* of sylver (MAUNDEV. p. 239.). Is *neither* Peter the porter *Nor* Poul (P. PLOUGHM. p. 295.). But the combination of *nather*, *nother* with *ne*, *ny*, *no* after it, which approaches most nearly to the most ancient form, long occurs much more frequently, and which equally points to the Anglosaxon *nê*: Her hors were al astoned & nolde after wylle Sywe *noper* spore *ne* brydel (R. or GL. II. 396.). For *noper* gyn *ny* monnes strengþe, yt þynkep, *ne* myȝte yt do (I. 7.). He nath of hire nou hevynisse *nother* of flesch *ne* of blod (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 134.). I you forbede To m

nother nose *ne* cry (TOWN. M. p. 8.). In that place *nouther* sytte *ny* stonde (HALLIW., Freemas. 627.). So is the Holy Gost God, *Neither* gretter *ne* lasse (P. PLOUGHM. p. 358.). *Noiþer* Gildas. *no* Bede, *no* Henry of Huntinton, *No* William of Malmesbire, *ne* Pers of Bridlynton, Writeþ not in þer bokes of *no* kyng Athelwold (LANGT. I. 25.). No schaltow paye, of thy purs, *Neither* besant *no* no peny (ALIS. 3114.). Halfsaxon knows as little as Anglosaxon the reduplication of *nouþer*, *neouþer*, *noþer*, but subjoins *ne* (*no*). Forr birrþ me *nouwþerr* helpenn þe To lif *ne* to þe sawle (ORM. 3124.). Þat *ne* mihte þer na man *neouþer* ute *no* igan [in gon mod. text] (LAWAM. II. 277.). *Ne* (*neque*) is also doubled, which is not to be confounded with negation of the sentence (*non*), which is also added: Naffþ he riht nan mahhte *Nowwþerr*, noff Cristess halþhe peod, Noff Cristess peodess ahhte (ORM. 12212.). The origin of this usage is to be pointed out in Anglosaxon, where *nāwðer* (neutrum) may serve to comprehend two negative members, which are commonly accompanied by *nē* . . . *nē*: Ne ete ge *nāwðer* *nē* rysel *nē* blōd (LEVIT. 3, 17.). And stældon on me þāt ic *nawðer* *nē* nyste *nē* ne vorhte (Ps. 34, 11.). þāt he *nāwðer* *pāra* *nē* gesittan *nē* standan mihte (S. GUTHLAC 16.). Man ne māg *nāwðer* *nē* erjan *nē* ripan (GEN. 45, 6.). An ālmihtig God, se is fāder, se þe nis *nāwðer* *nē* geboren *nē* gesceapen fram nānum oðrum (THORPE, Anal. p. 60.). Næron hie *nāwðer* *nē* on Frysisc gescāpene *nē* on Denisc (SAX. CHR. 897. A simple *nē* also connects a second member: On heofenan þær *nāwðer* oðm *nē* moððe hit ne fornymð (MATH. 6, 20.). It is evident that *nāwðer* was not always inserted in the construction as subject or object, but might appear adverbially or as a particle. The subsequent reduplication of it in English and the transition of forms once set into the meaning of *oūðer*, which we have above discussed, is supported upon the mistaking of *nāwðer*, opposed to a simple *nē*.

The Old-English usage, often to be observed in the Towneley Mysteries, is peculiar, to append *then* instead of *ne* to *nawther*, *nouther*, as well as to other negations: *Nouder* tre *then* boghe *Ne* other thyng (TOWN. M. p. 34.). Ther is *nawther* kyng *ne* sweyn, *Then* no kyng that may hym layn *Ne* hyde from his hete (p. 51.). Wyt thou welle I hyd hym *noht* *Then* bare hym nawre with me (p. 267. cf. p. 50. 226.). This *then* answers to the Anglosaxon *pē ne*, which springs from the disjunctive connection. Comp. Anglosax.: Hwāðer he lif āge *pē nāge* (LEGG. INAE 6.); see Disjunctive Coordination.

The mere *ne* . . . *nē*, *neque* . . . *neque*, answers to the most ancient mode of denoting of the reciprocal relation. Old-Engl.: þat no prest ne no bissop ne mai him chastien, *ne* mid forbode, *ne* mid scifæ, *ne* mid cursinge (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 131.). Halfsax.: Ne dred te, Zacarige, noht, Noff me, noff mine wordess (ORM. 151.). Þatt þho *ne* shamedd wass *ne* shenned, *Ne* forr forlējenn haldenn (1999.). Anglosax.: *Nē* ic ne dide *nē* ic ne do (ÆLF., Gram.).

7. The omission of the negation in the first member is proper to lively speech in Modern-English, where *nor* follows with a connected member. The negative determination becomes here retroactive.

Helen, the mother of great Constantine, *Nor* yet Saint Philip's daughters, were like thee (SHAKSP., I Henry VI. 1, 2.). I have express commandment, That thou *nor* none of thine, shall be let in (ib.). Sigh, *nor* word, *nor* struggling breath Heralded his way to death (BYR., Siege 27.). A heart his words *nor* deeds can daunt (Bride 1, 12.).

The ancient language thus employs *ne* (neque) after the first member. Old-Engl.: For wille ich the love *ne* non other, Bote mi wedde house-sebonde (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 6.). Trist to soster *no* brother (Polit. S. p. 205.). The negation of the Sentence is certainly found alongside of it with the verb according to the ancient mode: Ring *ne* broche nabbe ge (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 3.). The kyng, *ne* non of his *ne* lough (ALIS. 5727.). Oker, *ne* symony, thou com *not* nere (TOWN. M. p. 162.). Comp.: Tongue, *nor* heart, Cannot conceive, nor name thee (SHAKSP., Macb. 2, 3.). Anglos.: Beorgas pær *nē* muntas steape *ne* stondað (Cod. EXON. 199, 6.). Svā fela hira byð svā ge *nē* eovre yldran *ne* gesāvon (EXON. 10, 6.).

- d. The particle *neither* at the end of a sentence is finally to be mentioned, where it is attached not merely to a simple negation, but also to a preceding *nor*, in the latter case indeed completely pleonastically, although strengtheningly.

I saw Mark Anthony offer him a crown; yet it was *not* a crown *neither*, 'twas one of these coronets (SHAKSP., Jul. Cæs. 1, 2.). Though I have known a woman speak plainer before now, and *not* understood *neither* (SOUTHERN, Oroon. 1, 1.). I was forced to clap him in irons, and did *not* think safe *neither* (1, 2.). "We can only say he changed his mind." — "No, no, we needn't say that *neither*!" (SHERID. KNOWLES, Virgin. 1, 1.). — "I care not for his thrust." — "No, *nor* I *neither*." (SHAKSP., II Henry IV. 2, 1.). I am not afraid of you, *nor* them *neither*, your hang-byes here (BEN JONS., Every M. in h. Hum. 4, 1.). I'll not go to bed, *nor* to the devil *neither* (GOLDSM., G. Nat. M. 1.). I never was thought to want manners, *nor* modesty *neither* (FIELD., J. Andr. 1, 9.).

This postpositive *neither* is indebted for its origin to the early transposition of the word comprehending a negative double member, or more than two members after *ne* (neque); this supplemental determination has then passed into the negative member, which is attached to an affirmative one. Old-Engl.: Drynk *nat* over delicatly, *Ne* to depe *neither* (P. PLOUGHM p. 88.). Ȝif the snow *ne* were, men myght *not* gon upon the yse, *ne* hors *ne* carre *nouther* (MAUNDEV. p. 130.). *Ne* god ordeyned *not*, *ne* never devysed, *ne* the prophete *nouther* (p. 119.). The maner of werre is *not* there, as it is here . . *ne* the ordynance of werre *nouther* (p. 191.). Ffor *no* defawth in hym I fynde, *Ne* Herowdys *nother* . . Defawte in hym cowde fynde ryth non (Cov. MYST. p. 311.). *Ne* . . *nouther* is attached to an affirmative member, when it answers to a negative thought: But fewe comen aȝen, and nemely of the mys belevynge men, *ne* of the Cristene men *nouther* (MAUNDEV. p. 281.). The transposition, not yet familiar to Anglo-saxon, is found in Hallsaxon: Forr hellepitt iss *næfre* full *Ne* grediȝnesse *nowwþerr* (ORM. 10215.). *Ne* talde þeȝ *nohht* teȝre kinn Uppwarrd *ne* dunnwarrd *nowwþerr* (2060. cf. 2465. 7168.).

As to how the disjunctive coordination has forced itself into the negative reciprocal relation, see the Disjunctive Coordination d. a.

- m. A reciprocal relation of opposed members is substituted for a copulative relation, in which the sentences or determinations of a sentence standing opposed in the negative and affirmative form are comprehended as a totality. This happens by means of the

introduction of the members by *not only* (sometimes *alone*, *merely* and the like) and *but also* (also additional and strengthening particles, like *too*, *even*) or by *but* alone. But the affirmative member contains not merely an amplification of the series of thoughts, but, at the same time, a comparison. If *also* is added to *but*, the contrary appears as equal in point of value; if *also* is absent, there appears the semblance of a negation of the preceding member, which is nevertheless jointly comprised, but in this manner more decidedly exceeded.

Eteocles . . *Not only* shut his brother from the crowne, *But also* from his native country soyle (GASCOYNE, *Jocasta* 1, 1.). From you sounded out the word of the Lord, *not only* in Macedonia and Achaia, *but also* in every place (1 THESS. 1, 8.). The end of a scientific morality is *not* to serve others *only*, *but also* to perfect and accomplish our individual selves (BULW., *Maltrav.* 6. 5.). To whose free gift the world does owe *Not only* earth, *but* heaven *too* (BUTL., *Ep. of Hud.* 105.). They don't *only* scorn to marry, *but even* to make love to any woman of a family not as illustrious as their own (MONTAGUE, *Lett.*). A cruel and licentious superstition, more noxious, *not only* than popery, *but even* than Islamism (MACAUL., *Hist. of E. I.* 45.). Companions dear, — Found worthy *not* of liberty *alone*, Too mean pretence, *but* what we more affect, Honor, dominion, glory and renown (MILT., *P. L.* 6, 419.). Dryden was *not only* a papist, *but* an apostate (MACAUL., *Hist. of E. IV.* 23.). They *not only* forgave *but* applauded him (I. 33.). In this way they have whimsically designated *not merely* individuals, *but* nations (IRVING, *Sk. B.*, John Bull). How Scotland . . was at length united to England, *not merely* by legal bonds, *but* by indissoluble ties of interest and affection (MACAUL., *Hist. of E. I.* 2.).

The opposition of *nought onely* (*not only*) and *but also* is met with more frequently since the fourteenth century; *eeke* also appears beside *also*. *nawt ane* was formerly in use for *not only*, and *ah* (Anglosaxon *ac*) is also used instead of *but*. But the mere *but* is very familiar in the out-bidding member. Old-Engl.: *Thei ben not onely* contrarious to the worships of God . . *but also* thei ben gynnyngs of the deuvell (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., *Rel. Ant.* II. 46.). *Whit this flour the bed mot be strawed, not only* of the relygyous . . *bote also* of the active men of valeyes (I. 40.). And *nought onely*, that oure defaute schal be juged, *but eek* that alle oure werkes schul be openly knowen (CHAUC., *C. T.* p. 187. I.). *Siche miraculis pleying not onely* pervertith oure bileve *but* oure verrey hope in God (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., *Rel. Ant.* II. 47.). That *not onely* schulde kepe chastite *but* alle othere vertues (II. 43.). *Nought only* thou *but* every mighty man (CHAUC., *C. T.* 15437.). *Thay somne not* a man *oonly* to doo newe wronges, *but* thay comaunde it (p. 160. I.). *Thi fader, thi moder, thou shalle honowre, Not only* with thi reverence, *Bot* in thare nede thou thaym socoure (TOWNS. *M.* p. 161.). — And ge don als wa . . *nawt ane* to owre anres, *ah* to alle folkes heale (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., *Rel. Ant.* II. 6.). God dede ich siggg *nout one* pat mon deð him, *auh* þet God deð him (I. 67.). The Anglosaxon used the formula *nā (nalās) pāt ān* . . *ac eac swylce (swā)* and also the simple *ac* in the last member: *pu bist Godes freond; and nā pāt ān pāt þu his freond sý, ac eac swylce pu bist Godes bearn* (A.-S. HOMIL. I. 56. cf. THORPE, *Anal.* p. 107 109.).

Vās heó svā micelre snytro and visdómes, pátte *nalās pāt an* pátte pā mettran men ymb heora nēdpearfnesse væron, *ac eac svylce* cyningas and ealdormen of from hire geþeaht and visdóm sôhton (THORPE, Anal. p. 56. cf. 52.). And *nalās pāt an* pāt him pā fugelas unferþeodde væron, *ac eac svā* pā fixas (S. GUTHLAC 9.). Svā pāt *nalās pāt an* ealle þīne yldran, *ac ealle* cyningas . . in mihte and on rice oferstīgeþ (Beda 2, 11.). Even in the Gothic form *ni patain . . ak jah patain* is used adverbially for *uiþor*: *Ni patain* unvaurstvons *ak jah* (1 TIMOTH. 5, 13. cf. Rom. 9, 10. 2 Cor. 8, 19.). As to the interchange of *ac* with *but* see the adversative Coordination a.

2. The Disjunctive Coordination takes place where the coordinated sentences or members exclude one another in such a manner that only one of two or even more can be valid, when, however, the judgment as to the member which is to avail remains undecided.

- a. The disjunction of the members may be denoted by the simple *or* (see Vol. I. p. 419.); the fuller form *either* is rarely found in the earlier modern English.

The world's no neuter; it will wound *or* save (YOUNG, N. Th. 8, 376.). I ask you, are you innocent *or* guilty? (SHELLEY, Cenci 5, 2.) — Can the fig-tree . . bear olive-berries? *either* a vine, figs? (JAMES, 3, 12. comp. MATTH. 7. 16.).

The Anglosaxon form *ðwæ*, Goth *aippau*, Old-norse *œa*, *œr*. Old-Highdutch *odo*, *edo*, Middle-Highdutch *ode*, *od*, *oder*, Old-Frieslandish *uder*, *auder*, early yielded to the form *oper*, abbreviated *or*, and was assimilated to the correlative, or rather the comprehensive Anglosax. *awæter*, *æwer*. Old-Engl.: Fleoþ hwon heo ham i-heres *oper* i-scoþ (WRIGHT A. MALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 66.). ðe þet swereþ greate oðes, *oðer* bitterliche kurseþ, *oper* missciþ bi God, *oper* bi his haluwen (ib.). That ewere he hadde lond *outher* lordshipe, Lasse *other* moore (P. PLOUGH. p. 293.). Withouten counseil of Conscience *Or* cardynale vertues (p. 426.). Withoute juggle *or* other officere (CHAUC., C. T. 1714.). The form *oper* was used in Hallsax.: Alle þa wulleþ mid fehte biþiten lond *oðer* ahte (LAJAM. III. 4.). Þe mihte riden *oper* gan (I. 26.). Þatt aniz mann þe shendepp *operr* werdepp (ORM. 6254.). In the one-sided relation of the disjunction Anglosaxon knows the use of *ðwæ* only: Nelle ge vënan pāt ic come tōveorpan þā æ *ðwæ* þā vitegan (MATTH. 5, 17.). Hi ne mihton *ðwæ* hi noldon (SAX. CHR. 1051.).

- β. The members may then be opposed to each other, not as to the notion, but only as to the form; in this manner one serves to explain the other.

Australasia . . includes Australia *or* New Holland . . Papua *or* New Guinea (CHAMBERS, Informat. II. 282. I.). The poet becomes *αοιδός*, *or* the man of the song (SCOTT, Minstr. I. 11.).

Old-English: *Rancor sive odium*, þet' is hatunge *oper* great heorte (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 67.). Þe vormeste is cheaste *oper* strif (ib.).

- γ. An appended member may also have the meaning of a correction of what precedes.

Had I not four *or* five women once, that tended me? (SHAKSP., Temp. 1, 2.) It is generally flat *or* but slightly undulating (CHAMBERS, Informat. II. 282. I.). An improvement of the ex-

pression is often denoted by adding *rather*, *potius*: The persons who have made this prodigal and wild waste of public evils . . . have met in their progress with little *or rather* with no opposition at all (BURKE, *Reflections*). The king's Majesty . . . did leave, as gift for our St. Edmund shrine, a handsome enough silk cloak — *or rather* pretended to leave (CARL., *Past a. Pres.* 2, 1.). With that is connected the outbidding by *or even*: His industry was incredible beyond the example, *or even* the conception of our days (MIDDLETON, *Cicero*). Not a vestige of a town *or even* cottage was within sight or hope (BYR., *Fragm.*).

Old-Engl.: Castelis . . . That XII *other* XV. knyghtes bare (ALIS. 2061.). An castel . . . þæt pangcaster, *oper* Tangcaster, yclepud was (R. OF GL. I. 116.). Ðer come fram hyre a leme . . . As a tayl *oper* a lance (II. 416.). Hallsax: þatt ta bi name nemmedd was Abyaþ *opþr* Abyas (ORW. 479. cf. 539.).

- d. Finally, an inference drawn from the non-appearance of what precedes may be subjoined by *or*.

Awake, arise, *or* be for ever fall'n (MILT., *P. L.* 1, 330.). Recall Those hasty words, *or* I am lost for ever (ADDIS., *Cato* 3, 2.). You shall be repaid with some of Tim's best Lafitte, *or* I'm an ass (TH. HOOK, *Gilb. Gurney* 3.).

Old-Engl.: Heo wol beo wroke *othir* to-berste (ALIS. 1343.). Fleo thou now, gef thou beo sounde, *other* men schull the dryve with boundes (1742. cf. 1730.). Love me al at ones, *Or* I wol dye (CHAUC., *C. T.* 3280.). Hallsax: þat Cesar wolde . . . Brutlond biwinnen *oþer* her mid sweorde ligger to-swungen (LAJAM. I. 342.). Compare Anglosax.: Ic me mid Hruntinge dôm gevyrce *ôððe* me deað nimeð (BOEV. 2985.).

As to *or else* see f.

- b. The relation of the members to each other is rendered more sharply prominent by adding *either* to the first member, which indicates beforehand a double articulation; the number of members is not however restricted absolutely to two. Instead of *either . . . or, or . . . or* is met with, especially in poetry; *either . . . either* is obsolete. The logical relation of the members may moreover be different; see a.

Either pay that, *or* we will seize on all (MARLOWE, *Jew of M.* 1, 2.). So some rats, of amphibious nature, Are *either* for the land *or* water (BUTL., *Hud.* 1, 1, 27.). By all who were zealous *either* for the new *or* for the old opinious (MACAUL., *Hist. of E.* I. 49.).

Why the law Salique, that they have in France, *Or* should *or* should not, bar us in our claim (SHAKSP., *Henry V.* 1, 2.). Alike *or* when, *or* where they shone or shine, *Or* on the Rubicon *or* on the Rhine (POPE, *Essay on M.* 4, 245.). I will yeelde to more, then *either* I am bount to graunt, *eyther* thou able to proue (EURIPIDES 7.).

Since the forms *oper*, *ayther*, *either* and *or* represent the same word, *other . . . other*, as well as another interchange of forms, is justified in Old-English, although, as has been observed Vol. I. p. 419., the shorter form is readily joined to the second and to further members: þat he ne schulde adoun *oper* ys hors *oper* boþe anon (R. OF GL. I. 137.). Wil *ðet*

him uuele i-tidde, *oper* on him sulf, *oſer* on his eihte (WRIGHT A. HAL-LIW., Rel. Ant. I. 67.). In myraclis ther'ore that Crist dude heere in erthe, *outher* in hymself *outher* in hise seyntis (II. 42.). And who the scholde to dethe don, *othir* thy freondis *other* thy foon? (ALIS. 730.). Thanne schalle every man have affir his dissert, *outher* gode *or* *evylle* (MAUNDEV. p. 115.). A man moot ben a fool *other* yong *or* olde (CHAUC., C. T. 1814.). I shalle hym slay *Aythre* by eest *or* west (TOWN. M. p. 70. cf. p. 16.). That him ne meved *eyther* his conscience *Or* ire, *or* talent, *or* sum maner affray (CHAUC., C. T. 5556.). *Or* stands more rarely in the first member: Deye as God liketh, *Or* thorough hunger *or* thorough hete (P. PLOUGHM. p. 276 sq.). In clothe of gold *or* of Tartarye *or* of Camaka (MAUNDEV. p. 40.). *Oſer* . . *oſer* appears even in Half-sax.: Alle . . *oſer* mid fure he lette hom slæn, *oſer* he heom lette quic flæn (LAȜAM. I. 273 sq.). *Oſer* far þe awæiward and wend þe riht hamward, *oſer* to dæi a seoueniht þu scalt habben græt fiht (II. 550.). Here also the comprehensive *oſer* (alterutrum), which may be interwoven into the construction, is followed by a double *oſer*: þat þu him sculle *oſer* don, *oſer* slæn *oſer* a-hon (LAȜAM. I. 353.). Anglosaxon repeats *ôððe* before the single members, whereas Gothic does not *aippau* before the first member, but only uses it in the connection after the first one, but otherwise puts *jabai* or *andizuh* before the first: *ôððe* he ænne hatað, and *ôðerne* lufað: *ôððe* he ænum folgað and *ôðerne* forhogað (Luc. 16, 13.). Svá man rihtaast mæge *ôððe* gemetan *ôððe* getellan, *ôððe* ávegan (LEGG. ÆTHELST. I. Schmidt p. 68.). Yet it frequently places *áððer*, *áðer* before the first of two members, with *ôððe* repeated before each: þat he *áðer* *ôððe* feoh *ôððe* feorh þe vyrse sý (LEGG. Cnut. I. B. 15.). Gif *áðor* *ôððe* mæg *ôððe* fremde man þá ráde fýrsace, gilde þam cýning CXX scill. (ib. 23.). Finally the original pronoun is added to the first member without *ôððe*, and one or more is added with this particle: Ymbe æfre ælce neode þe man beparf *áðor* for þissum life, *ôððe* for þam tóveardum (LEGG. Cnut. I. A. 22.). Ælc vȳrd is nyt þára þe *áððer*. *dêð*, *ôððe* lærð, *ôððe* vȳrcð (BORTH. 40, 2.).

- c. Here belongs also the disjunctive question, the first member of which is introduced by *whether*, whereas *or* is added to the second. *Whether* . . *or* commonly appears in the indirect double question, whereas in the direct one *or* only mostly appears in the second member; the indirect double question is also employed concessively, and is then hardly distinguished logically from the disjunction introduced by *either* . . *or*. Several members may besides be here connected by *or*.

Whether, utrum, belonged originally both to the direct and the indirect question, in modern times rarely to the former. Yet it is attached, as a genuine pronoun, to the direct double question: For *whether* is easier to say, Thy sins be forgiven thee; *or* to say, Arise, and walk? (MATTH. 9, 5.) [τί γὰρ ἐστὶν εὐκολώτερον. :]. In the indirect question the conjunctive *whether* has remained very familiar: But here our authors make no doubt *Whether* he were more wise *or* stout (BUTL., Hud. 1, 1, 29.). At all events it will be decided *whether* he receives you *or* not (MARRYAT, P. Simple 1, 3.). The particles *whether* . . *or* frequently answer to the Latin *sive* . . *sive*, and often stand with abbreviations of the sentence: Of my hand didst thou require it, *whether* stolen by day, *or* stolen by night (GEN. 31, 39.). Beauty, which *whether* waking *or* asleep Shot forth peculiar graces (MILT., P. L. 5, 14.

cf. 189.). To thee I have transferr'd All judgment, *whether* in heav'n, or earth, or hell (10, 56.). The earliest example we have of that language, *whether* in prose or poetry (SCOTT, Minstrelsy I. 32.). Still all . . . were delighted at a temperance which they foresaw would free Rome from a thousand dangers, *whether* from the Emperor or the Pontiff (BULW., Rienzi 2, 8.).

In the cases specified *whether* is also repeated after *or*: If any man will do his will, he shall know of the doctrine, *whether* it be of God or *whether* I speak of myself (JOHN 7, 17.). It signifies little *whether* the musician adapts verses to a rude tune, or *whether* the primitive poet . . . falls naturally into a chant or song (SCOTT, Minstrelsy I. 11.). Two massy clods of iron and brass . . . (*whether* found where casual fire Had wasted woods . . . or *whether* wash'd by stream From underground) (MILT., P. L. 11, 565.). I have always observed your children of prosperity, *whether* by way of hiding their full glow of splendour from those whom fortune has treated more harshly, or *whether* that to have risen in spite of calamity is as honorable to their fortune, as it is to a fortress to have undergone a siege — however this be, I have observed that etc. (SCOTT, Qu. Durw., Introd.). Comp. *whether* in the simple question; see the Substantive Sentence.

Whether, which also appears in the forms *whethir*, *wher*, *where*, *wer*, was early followed in the direct and indirect double question by *or*, *other* in the second member. Old-Engl : *Whethyr* will ye come or nay? (FROMYDON 1844.) Now *whethir* have I a sikur hond or noon? (CHARR., C. T. 7651.) *Whether* seistow in earnest or in pley? (1127.) *Whether* xal he abyde or go? (COV. MYST. p. 312.) Comp. Middle-Highdutch: *Weder* ist er morder oder diep? (EREC 5442. ed. Haupt 1839.). — He schal knowe of þe techyng, *wher* he be of God or I speke of myself (WYCL., Joh. 7, 17.). Be the whiche men assayen and preven, *where* here children ben bastardis or none, or of lawefulle mariage (MAUNDEV. p. 54. cf. 219.). Chese *whether* thou wilt go or ellis fight? (FROMYDON 2036.). — Sone anon thou sese thy tale, *Whether* he drynke wyn other ale (HALLIW., Freemas. 754.). The employment of particles in the abbreviation of concessive sentences is less favoured in the ancient language. Even in Half-saxon one or more members with *oppr* are added to a member with *wehþpr*: Ille an hird wel wisste inoh *Wheþpr* itt to serrfenn sholde Prest senn denn i þe firrste lott, *Oppr* i patt comm þær after, *Oppr* i þe þridde lott, *oppr* i þe ferþe, *oppr* i þe fiftre (ORM. 525.). Yet here *þe*, *þa* is met with for *other*, *or*: Cuðe lutel reden *wæðer* heom, weore wsumre to faren *þe to wonien* (LAȜAM. I. 39.). Axeden *wheðer* he wolde grið *þe* he wolde unfrið (I. 403.). Bed ure drihten . . . þat he from him selue taken him sende gif hit weore iqueme þan heouenliche deme *wheðer* he scolde liðen *þe* he scolde bi-lauen (III. 289.). Nuste hit mon to soðe *whaðer* he weore on ðeðe . . . *þa* heo here seolf weore isunken in þe wætere (III. 138.). Anglosaxon, in the interrogative and concessive relation of the sentence after *hwæðer*, frequently puts *þe* . . . *þe* with the single members, or one *þe* with the second member, but also *aððe*: analogously to the Gothic, which usually employs *þau*, rarely *aippau* with the second member: *Hwæðer* wæs Johannes fulluht *þe* of heofone, *þe* of mannum? (MARC. 12, 30.) Ðæt ic wite *hwæðer* hit sig *þe* soð *þe* leas þæt ge secgað (GEN. 42, 16.). Gā hider neār þæt ic āthrine þin . . . and fandiðe, *hwæðer* þu sig min sunu Esau *þe* ne sig (27, 20.). Se *þe* nu gið-

með hvāðer his gæst sīe earm *pe* eadig (Cod. Exon. 95, 6. cf. 80, 12, 82, 3.). In double questions, moreover, there is no need for *pe* to be preceded by *hvāðer*: Is hit ālyfð *pe* nā? (MATH. 22, 17.) God āna vāt . . . hū his gecynde bið, vif-hādes *pe* veres (Cod. Exon 223, 6.). Ge nyton hvānne þās hūses hlāford cymð, *pe* on æfen, *pe* on middre nihte, *pe* on hancrēde, *pe* on mergen (MARC. 13, 39.). Instances with *ðððe* after *hvāðer* are rarer: *Hvāðer* þāt land folc si tō feohte stranglic *ðððe* untrumlic (Num. 13, 20.). A reciprocal relation, used also in the concessive sense, is also that of *svā hvāðer* . . . *svā* . . . *svā*: þonne gevyld man hine *svā hvāðer* man mæge, *svā* cucne *svā* deaðne (LEGG. Cnut. I. B. 23. cf. LEGG. ÆTHELR. II. 16. V. 24.).

Old-English does not seem to like the repetition of *whether* after *or*; it is however, in use in Anglosaxon, where the opposition of *hvāðer* . . . *ðððe hvāðer* beside *hvāðer* . . . *hvāðer pe* occurs: *Hvāðer pe* þāt dust herige on þære burgene *ðððe hvāðer* hit cýðe þine rihtvisnissæ? (Ps. 29, 9) Axode hig *Hvāðer* hira fāder være hāl . . . *ðððe hvāðer* he lyfode (Gen. 43, 27.). — He gecnæwð be þære lāre *hvāðer* heo sig of Gode, *hvāðer pe* ic be me sylfum spece (Joh. 7, 17.). *Hvāðer pe* is also added to the second member: Alýfð reste-dagum vel tō dōnne, *hvāðer pe* yfele? sáwle gehælan, *hvāðer pe* forspillan? (MARC. 3, 4. cf. 12, 14. MATH. 17, 25)

- d. The disjunctive particles *or*, *either* . . . *or*, *or* . . . *or* are attached to a negation where this is to be thought as continuously and equally operative upon the disjunctive members, which are only taken into consideration among one another according to their mutually exclusive nature.

Heav'n, whose high walls fear *no* assault *or* siege, *Or* ambush from the deep (MILT., P. L. 2, 343.). With *no* great love for learning *or* the learn'd (BYR., D. Juan 1, 19.). There was *no* manifestation of disgust *or* pity, *or* indignation, *or* sorrow (DICKENS, Pict. of It., Rome). But that implies *not* violence *or* harm (MILT., P. L. 4, 901.). Rienzi made *no* reply; he did *not* heed *or* hear him (BULW., Rienzi 1, 1.). — There's *nothing either* good *or* bad but thinking makes it so (SHAKSP., Haml. 2, 2.). Love was *not* in their looks, *either* to God *Or* to each other (MILT., P. L. 10, 111.). I *never* saw her *either* read a book *or* occupy herself with needle-work (MARRYAT, P. Simple 1, 1.). — And *never* more saw I *or* horse *or* rider (COLER., Picc. 5, 3.). Nothing there like grief, *Nothing or* harsh *or* cruel (ROGERS, It., Foscari). When, with the onesided continuation of the negation, *nor* takes the place of *or*, the repetition of the disjunctive particle instead of *neither* . . . *nor*, *nor* . . . *nor* has become so usual with the reciprocal relation of the members, that the use of the latter seems remarkable *or* is even declared contrary to the genius of the language: From whence I could *not* extricate *Nor* him *nor* me (BYR., Mazeppa).

Neither . . . *or* is even used instead of *neither* . . . *nor*: Thou shalt well perceive, That, *neither* in birth, *or* for authority, The bisshop will be overborne by thee (SHAKSP., I Henry VI. 5, 1.). Let me say, that I have *neither* age, person, *or* character, to found dislike on (SHERID., Riv. 3, 2.). Often had William of Deloraine, . . . trampled down the warriors slain. And *neither* known remorse *or* awe (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 2, 20.). The guide, who *nei-*

ther seemed offended *or* surprised at the young man's violence of manner (Qu. Durw. 16.).

In the simple reference back to a preceding negation the following members are also appended with *neither* or *nor* (see I. I. p. 349.) Where a reciprocal relation of negative members takes place (I. m. p. 349.), the modern language has, after a negation, naturalized the disjunctives *either*, *or* in the reduplication. Neither in the former not in the latter case is the use of these disjunctive particles familiar to the older language. In the former combinations like: Pley of the fleysch is *not* convenable *ne* helpely to the spirit (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 52.). Grucchet *not* ajeynes God *ny* man (I. 39.) are always recurring; and in the latter another negation in the sentence is no impediment to another negative reciprocal relation. *Nane* temptaciouns *nouder* inre *ne* uttere (ib. II. 1.). *Ne* gruse ge *nawt*, *nouder* fruit, *ne* ower hwat (II. 5.): comp. p. 348. Accumulation of negations is peculiar to the older language in general. Hence, *not* is by moderns added even to a negative member connected by *nor*: They sayd the forsed *not*, *nor* carede *not* to dy (SKELTON I. 9.). I have only been able to discover traces of the modern usage in writings of the fourteenth century: Ever sithen regnyde sicke apostasie in the puple, seside *never* tho venjaunae of God upon us, *outher* of pestilence, *outher* of debate, *outher* of flodis, *other* of derthe and of many *other* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 54.). The influence of the Latin tongue might have operated here: Auctoritas dignitasque formae *non* deficit *vel* stanti *vel* sedenti (Sueton, Claud. 30.). *Nemo* aut miles aut eques . . . ad Pompejum transierat (CAES., B. C. 3, 61.). *Nec* aut consilia earum aspernantur *aut* responsa negligunt (Tacit., G. 8.). *Nec* quod facimusve sumusve, cras erimus (Ovid., Met. 15, 215.).

The opposition of *neither* . . . *or* remains most striking after *neither* is conceived by the modern language rather as the correlative of a second negation than as the word indicating the members in common. If Webster defends such sentences as: It is *neither* the one *or* the other (WEBST. v. *neither*) by referring *neither* to both members (*neither* applies to both parts of the sentence), he disregards the original use of the negation (*nē* see p. 347.) in the second member. An attraction of it in the second member certainly takes place in the modern usage, which has not yielded to the censure of other grammarians.

- e. *Either* is also put at the end of sentences after *or* preceding it.

An you offer to ride with me with your collar *or* halter *either*, I may hap shew you a jade's trick (BEN JONS., Every Man in h. Hum. 3, 2.). Look on this beard, and tell me whether Eunuuchs wear such, *or* geldings *either*? (BUTL., Hud. 2, 1, 719.) I'll venture Miss Jenny against Baldface, *or* Hannibal *either* (FIELD., J. Andr. 1, 16.). One may say a civil thing to a pretty girl, without hurting her feelings, *or* her father's *either* (BULW., Maltrav. 1, 1.).

But this postpositive *either* has also forced its way into negative sentences after *not*, taking the place of the *neither* (see p. 349) otherwise used: I did *not* think her romance could have made her so d—nd abused *either* (SHERID., Riv. 4, 3.). "You lead your son into the secret?" — "No!" — "What! and *not* warn him *either* what bad hands His lot has placed him in?" (COLER., Picc. 1, 3.). "O Max —" — "Nay, *not* precipitately *either*, Thekla." (2, 9.) The streets seem quiet enough now, and, the Virgin be praised! we are *not* far from home *either* (BULW.,

Rienzi 1, 4.). Webster also attributes (v. *neither*) to (good speakers the use of *either* after *nor*, as in *nor then either*.

The employment of *either* after *or* stands in analogy to that of *neither* after *nor* (see p. 349.) and has its explanation therein. A little of this sort is also earlier met with: And if Conscience carpe ther agein, *Or* kynde wit *either*, *Or* eretikes (P. PLOUGHM. p. 356.).

With the going of *either* after a negation, the negation is referred to *either* in such a manner that, combined with it, it is equal to *neither*. Thus in Shakspeare, the negation contained in an appended *nor* is referred to the pronoun *either*: *Lepidus flatters both, Of both is flatter'd*; but he *neither* loves, *Nor either* cares for him (Ant. a. Cleop. 2, 1.).

- f. *Else*, Anglosax. *elles*, aliter, belonging to the Goth. *alis*, alius, is also employed as a disjunctive particle. It denotes that another thought is set, through the unreality of one that is expressed. Its adverbial nature is disclosed by its freer collocation, as it does not always come at the beginning of the member to which it belongs. It is related to *or* as the Germ. *sonst* to *or*, and is often combined strengtheningly with *or*, as *sonst* is with *oder*.

Let life be short, *else*, shame will be too long (SHAKSP., Henry V. 4, 5.). Free they must remain Till they intrhal themselves; I *else* must change Their nature (MILT., P. L. 3, 124.). Even now I am arrived, it had been *else* my duty — (COLER., Picco. 1, 2.). — Hush, and be mute *Or else* our spell is marr'd (SHAKSP., Temp. 4, 1.). Seven, by these hilts, *or* I am a villain *else* (I Henry IV. 2, 4.). Give me children *or else* I die (GEN. 30, 1.). Or my intelligence is false, *or else* The dame has been too lavish of her feast (ROWE, Jane Sh. 1, 1.).

Otherwise, kindred in sense, has been substituted for *else*; it frequently appears, even in Shakspeare: I have sat in the stocks for puddings he hath stolen, *otherwise* he had been executed (Two Gentlem. 4, 4.). Take heed that ye do not your alms before men . . *otherwise* ye have no reward of your Father (MATTH. 6, 1.).

From ancient times *else*, *elles*, *ellis*, *els*, *elle*, has been thus used, alone and in combination with *or*, *other*. Old-Engl.: But thei be poore of herte: *Ellis* is al on ydel (P. PLOUGHM. p. 285.). Let hym go, *els* wyrk we wrang (TOWN. M. p. 64.). I am ful glad and fayn, for to receyve my childe agayn, *Ellys* were I to blame (Cov. MYST. p. 178.). Halfsax.: Help us nu for þu miht, *alles* we habbeoð muchel pliht (LAȜAM. II. 108.). Anglosax.: Begjmað þāt ge ne dōn eovre rihtvisnesse beforan mannum . . *elles* nābbe ge mēde mid eovrum Fāder (MATH. 6, 1.) [= Gr. *εἰ δὲ μή*, Goth. *aippau*, as 9, 17. LUC. 5, 36. 37. 2 COR. 11, 16.]. Ne āsent nān man scȝp of nivum reāfe on eald reāf; *elles* þāt nive slit (LUC. 5, 36.). The combination with *or* early appears. Old-English: The have no wode, *or elle* lytylle (MAUNDEV. p. 129.). Thei kepen it a certeyn time . . *or elle* thei sleen it (p. 154.). For I wol speke *or elles* go my way (CHAUC., C. T. 3135. cf. 15415.). It is som spirit *or els* som gast (TOWN. M. p. 280. cf. Cov. MYST. p. 366.). Halfsax.: Beden hine heom rāden, *oðer alles* heo weoren dāde (LAȜAM. II. 82.). *Else* is also combined with *and*. Old-Engl.: It behovethe also, that the place, that men han pissed in, be halewed aȝen; *and elles* dar no man entren ther inne (MAUNDEV. p. 249.). I love another, *and elles* were I to blame (CHAUC., C. T. 3710.). That was hyr comfort most in care, *And ellis* she had hyr self for-fare (IPOMYDON 883. cf. 1023.).

3. The adversative coordination contains an opposition, where an inference, to be drawn from the first sentence, or the sentence itself, is taken away by another. In the first case the adversative sentence does not take away the judgment itself, but restricts it. The taking away of the judgment only appears when the first sentence is negative, and then not absolutely, the negation being perceptible, not so much by the form of the sentences as by the meaning and context. The opposition is chiefly denoted by the second member. The particles considered here, with the exception of *but*, may also be preceded by the copulative *and*, and even by the adversative *but*, and sometimes other adversative particles combine with each other.
- a. The most important of these particles is *but*, which rules the whole adversative field, and always stands at the commencement of the sentence or member.

The particle sometimes appears in a restrictive opposition. The opposition then often approaches the copulative connection of contrary judgments or notions, bordering therefore partly on the Greek particle *δέ*: Small showers last long, *but* sudden storms are short (SHAKSP., *Rich.* II. 2, 1.). Wealth may seek us; *but* wisdom must be sought (YOUNG, *N. Th.* 8, 621.). I have the wish *but* want the will to act (LONGF. I. 150.). We dissent from his opinions, *but* we admire his talents (MACAUL., *Essays* III. 324.). They will admit that he was a great poet, *but* deny that he was a great man (LEWES, *G. I.* 3.). They struggled fiercely for life, *but* struggled in vain (MACAUL., *Hist. of E. I.* 42.). "And you, too, are a dependant!" — "*But* on Lady Franklin, who seeks to make me forget it." (BULW., *Money* 1, 4.) "No! No! No! Certainly not!" — "No! no! *But* I say yes! yes!" (1, 5.). They say he's dying all for love, *but* that can never be (TENNYS. p. 131.). I replied, that I had never been at sea in my life, *but* that I was going (MARRYAT, *P. Simple* 1, 2.).

The contrary thought sometimes does not stand in a neuter relation to what precedes. This is the case with an interruption of the speaker by any outward event or with the voluntary breaking off of his own train of thought. *But* then refers to a silent thought: Of much less value is my company than your good words. *But* who comes here? (SHAKSP., *Rich.* II. 2, 3. cf. 3, 2.) May I see the letter? Yes, I think this is the wording. *But* I did not mean to tell you what case of charity it was (BULW., *Money* 2, 5.). So I saw there was no time to be lost, Sir, and — and — *but* you know all the rest (*Maltrav.* 1, 4.). Thus the speaker annexes his answers, not immediately to the preceding predicate or question, but to a suppositious thought of the other, or a silent judgment: "Have you got nothing for me?" — "Yes, *but* I have, I've got a letter for you in my pocket." (SHERID., *Riv.* 2, 2.) "Why, you won't fight him, will you, Bob?" — "Egad, *but* I will, Jack." (4, 1.)

But the opposition with *but* may also absolutely include the negation of what precedes: Think not the king did banish thee; *But* thou the king (SHAKSP., *Rich.* II. 1, 3.). All those

who contribute, not to the necessities of life, but to the enjoyments of society (SCOTT, *Minstr.* 1, 37). *Grande-Lieu* was not a theatrical popinjay with feathers and steel-cap on it, but a man living upon victims (CARL, *Past & Pres.* 2, 1).

Bute, which at present has completely superseded the ancient *bū*, was nevertheless early employed as an adversative particle, although in a more limited measure, and had obtained, even in the fourteenth century, a great extension alongside of the latter. Old Engl.: Min herdele wil bi the bede : *Bote* wraðthen we for ani dede Were me loth Wraun, Answ. p. 3.). Offte was Saladyn wel and woo, *But* never so glad as he was thoo (RICH. C. DE L. 6521.). He wolde . . have cleped it Klyz; *And* that name lasted not longe (Marsden, p. 84.). Of a thousand men . . I fond oon good man ; *but* ceteris of alle womanen good woman fund I never oon (CHAUC., C. T. p. 152. ll.). — Ac so ne clepeþ he yt myt, *bute* þe Newe Troie (R. or Gl. l. 23.). I seek not my wille, *but* þo wille of þe fadir (Wycl., Joh. 5, 30.). He stoyede up, not opynly, *but* an in priveþ (ib. 7, 10.). Ther schal no mayster supplants other, *but* he togeder as systur and brother (Halliw., Freeman, 203.), Hallwax. And al hit punçd him wel idon . . *bute* nele ho pe newere Euellin mid nyhtes bi-tæchen (Lajam. l. 352.). The transition of the Anglo-Saxon *bûtan*, Low Dutch *bûten*, from the meaning of exception to that of opposition was close at hand. Hence Anglo-Saxon instances may be compared : Se here på ælberst . . *bûtan* an scip þær man ofselh (Mar., Chm. 992.), Ealle . . gefeoillon at Calne of ænre up-floran, *bûtan* se hālgā Driстан arcebiscop ana āt-stōd upon anum beāmo (978.). Hēr . . nān nān farold to Rōme, *bûtan* tvegen blēaperas Ālfred cyning wende mid gewitum (880.). *Bûtan* is remarkable at the commencement of speech: Plūtus ungān þā enihtas to āxjenne for hvig þāt folc pone Hariond wā yfelā hafle, Hig andsvoredon Pilate and swaðon : *Bûton* hig habbað andan to him (Kv. (Nicob. 8.). To the Gr. answered ac, ach, formerly also ah, Goth., ak, akei, Old-High Dutch oh. Old-Engl. : þe fader hem leuda alla gyt, ac þe yngest most (R. or Gl. l. 29.). When that fur cometh into this water, gret noise anon ther is; Ac me ne hurth hit nat anon, bi hit so fur is. Ac the litenge we seoth anon (Watson, Pop. Treat. p. 136.). Ye mowe wel him do breche and honze, Ac y sigge bit wher with wrong (Aris. 4022.). Sume is love of dancwele, Ac hit wakith ceating feole (7363.). In Ezekiel . . It is wel hard to expounden. Ac sum deat I shal seyen it (P. Psalms, p. 261.). — Ha me nan knowed, uch is an chirche æfter Watons & Halles, Ret. Act II 2., Haltes knowenius was þæt eowen wifor uh her selien, ugh na wofor (Laym. l. 10.). We ȝe bide fulfard to. Ac w. þerth briddes can ge (Gos. Ind. 2.). Ne we sit Jens nan middewinter . . Ac we sit summer . . Mearnesse (Cm 212.). Lagrune. Is þæt bi þerost ut þæt min na miht habban weorge Zerk 32. l. Is minna þæt my minna is me, ut na de eft ut is (Zerk 6.). — Ut na min bi sommon yearwaga, na þā ferast ut minnum to untrehte lagung yearwaga (A-Z Herbar. i 1). — Se þæt minlen teat, ut na wegt Meant xlv.

Reiner When last conference with me was after negative statements, he repeated in a more negative statement. For example it is more negative than of meaning. There is negative suggestion of the form of an intimidating and was nothing returned but rather gave words "I must". I. M. Ligament. How that not exact was that of about in this and the more that we of Reiner. Reiner and more because when I, I am in either a 100 in engineering and in a class, developing much will be the different in the 100 in a planning and

- b. The originally temperal *yet*, Anglosax. *git*, *get*, *giet*, *gyt*, *adhuc*, also appears as a restrictive adversative particle, properly denoting that the following thought is still (notwithstanding) valid, alongside of the preceding one. The particle is also combined with *and* and *but*.

Little joy have I, To breathe this news, *yet* what I say, is true (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 3, 4.). My soul is continually in my hand: *yet* do I not forget thy law (Ps. 119, 9.). I know your hopes — they are daring, *yet* not vain if I aid them (SCOTT, Qu. Durw. 19.). The air of dignity, *yet* of deep feeling (Waverley 4.). Johnsons are rare; *yet* as has been asserted, Boswells perhaps still rarer (CARL., Past a. Pres. 2, 1.). No hope! *Yet* I endure (SHELLEY, Prometh. Unb. 1.). — His spirits hear me, *And yet* I needs must curse (SHAKSP., Temp. 2, 2.). Not long, *and yet* too long (LONGF. I. 177.). This is strange: *and yet* the strangest is behind (MACAUL., Essays I. 64.). — I know you wise; *but yet* no further wise Than Harry Percy's wife; constant you are, *But yet* a woman (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 2, 3.). Ye are but common men, *but yet* ye think With minds not common (COLERIDGE, Wallenst. 2, 3.). For other combinations see below *nevertheless*, *notwithstanding*. It also serves to interchange with *but* where a first contrary itself stands opposed to a second. *But* of his cheere did seeme too solemne sad; *Yet* nothing did he dread, *but* ever was ydrad (SPENS., F. Qu. 1, 1, 2.). I hear, *yet* say not much, *but* think the more (SHAKSP., III Henry VI. 4, 1.).

So far as *yet*, as a particle of time, coincides with *still*, the latter, as well as the former, serves not only to strengthen the comparative, but is itself adversative: But grant her end More distant . . . *Still* they are frowning signals (COWP. p. 186.) and both may be combined: *Yet still* on that horizon hangs the cloud (BULW., K. Arthur 7, 83.). Thus also *still* is used like *yet* in the principal with a concessive dependent sentence; see the Dependent Sentence.

In Old-English *yet*, *ȝit* alone, and in combination with other particles works adversatively: I have a wyf . . . *Yet* nolde I . . . Take upon me more than enough (CHAUC., C. T. p. 3159.). As helpe me Crist, as I in fewe yeeres Have spendid upon many divers freres Ful many a pound, *ȝit* fare I never the bet (7533.). All the pennys to them y told; *ȝette* axte thei mykyll mare (SIR AMADAS 162.). Synfulle dede wold he nevyr do, *ȝit* hym to kyll thei sparyd nought (COV. MYST. p. 365.). — He hated Cristene men; *and ȝit* he was cristned (MAUNDEV. p. 84.). — This emperor . . . is Cristene, and a gret partie of his contree also; *but ȝit* thei have not alle the articles of oure feythe (p. 272.). The interchange of *yet* and *but* also occur: And *ȝit* he was cristned, *but* he forsoke his law (p. 84.). Even in Hallsaxon no longer find this application. As to the transition of the particle of time into the adversative meaning compare the German *dennoch* = *denn*, *dann* and *noch*, both constitutive of which have a temporal meaning.

- c. *nevertheless*, obsolete *natheless*, sometimes *not the less*, Anglosax. *nā pe lās*, to which a *never the more*, *nathemore*, *not the more*, Anglosax. *nā pe mā* stands opposed, which appears more rarely

in the modern tongue, answers to the German *nichts desto weniger*; thereby is indicated that the following sentence claims no-wise less value by reason of the preceding one. The contrary form says that it has not therefore more validity. They also combine not only with *and*, but also with *yet* and *but*.

For I said in my haste, I am cut off from before thine eyes; *nevertheless* thou heardest the voice of my supplication (Ps. 31, 22.). Rich Lepelletier Saint-Fargeau . . had argued and reported, there and elsewhere, not a little, against Capital Punishment: *nevertheless* he now says, Death (CARL., Fr. Revol. 3, 2, 7.). — And the torrid clime Smote on him sore besides, vaulted with fire; *Nathless* he so indur'd (MILT., P. L. 1, 297.). — Wave after wave of mighty stream To the deep sea hath gone; *Yet not the less* . . The exhaustless flood rolls on (MRS. HEMANS p. 3.). The proud Duesza . . Enforst her purple beast with all her might . . *But nathemore* would that courageous swayne To her yeeld passage (SPENS., F. Qu. 1, 8, 13.). But thou Revisit'st not these eyes . . *Yet not the more* Cease I to wander, where the muses haunt Clear spring etc. (MILT., P. L. 3, 22 sq.).

The ancient forms *natheless*, *nathemo*, *nolheles* subsequently begin with *never* instead of with *na*, no of like meaning. They also early take *and* and adversative particles. Old-Engl.: Oper seyden naye; but he deceyueþ þe compaynes, *nepeles* no man spac opynly of hym (WYCL., Joh. 7, 12.). Gret stryf was, bytwene the olde, And the yonge that weore bolde; *Notheles* the olde, saun faille, Wan the maistry of that counsaile (ALIS. 3117.). — He nuste to weþer doþter beter truste þo, *And nopeles* he wende aȝeyn to þe oper (R OF GL. I. 33.). It semethe that it wolde covere the erthe, *and natheles* ȝit it passethe not his markes (MAUNDEV. p. 144. cf. (WRIGHT & HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 131.). Therefore hit thingþ hit cometh bifore *ac nathel:s* hit ne doth noȝt (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 135.). Hallsax.: þare quene hit of-pouhte, *nopeles* heo hit poledde (LA-ŶAM. I. 7.). Feondliche heo fuhten *and noþeles* heo feollon (II. 333.). Anglosax.: þonne nam grið and frið við hi. *And na þe lās for eallum þisum griðe and friðe and gafole*, hi ferdon æghvider floccmælum (SAX. CHR. 1011.).

Old-Engl.: After hete me ne schal no thundre i-seo ne hure . . Ne in þur winter *nothe mo* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 135.). Anglosax.: Dide þone kyng to understandene . . *Oc* hit ne vās *nāðemā* eallsvā (SAX. CHR. 1127.).

The particle *never* is naturalized in Old-English along with *na*: I am not worthi to do this dede, *Nevee theles* I wille be Godes servant (TOWNS. M. p. 169. cf. 74.). He . . sum watt mendyd hys chere; *But never-theless* hys hart was sore (SIR CLEVES 146. cf. TOWNS. M. p. 155. 294. 295.). — I wille *never the more* chawnge my mood, for no wordys that thou dost shewe (Cov. MYST. p. 37.). See Dependent Sentences.

- d. The particle *nothwithstanding* combined with the negation, Old-French *nonobstant*, used as an adversative particle, expresses that the preceding thought is no impediment to the succeeding one. It also combined, like those before mentioned, with other particles.

He hath a tear for pity, and a hand Open as day for melting charity; *Yet nothwithstanding*, being incensed, he's flint (SHAK. II Henry IV. 4, 4.). And Moses said, Let no man leave

till the morning. *Notwithstanding* they harkeued not unto Moses (Exod. 16, 19.). See Prepos. Vol. II. 1. p. 475.

The participle, properly used absolutely, has its logical subject in the preceding sentence, Old-English seems not to have early adopted it. On the other hand, and perhaps through Romance influence, the particles *not for than*, *not for thi* in an adversative meaning have early become usual: And dude al his wille . . . *And noȝt for þan* þat oper maide he louede more ynow (R. of Gl. I. 25.). And ȝyveþ also qualite to do so other so, *And noȝt for than* bi his in-wit ech man may do (Wright, Pop. Treat p. 133.). Prudens . . . bysought him of his wepyng to stynte. *But not forþis* he gan to crie ever lenger the more (Chauc., C. T. 150. II.). Here the negation operates exactly as in the Old-French: *neporhuc*, *neporoc*, *nepuroc*, *nonporhuc*, *nonpruc*, with which *neporquant*, *nonporquant*, *nonportant* are connected, not denying the sentence in which it appears, but constituting an adversative determination to what precedes. The preposition *for* else of itself introduces an adversative determination, therefore too formerly in *for þon*, and the like, as now in *for all that*, *ne . . . for þon*, but is found only in negative sentences. Halfsax.: His leode hine hateden . . . *nalde he for þon* hit bi-leæfue (Lajam. I. 300.). Anglosax.: Drihten . . . eov bār on eallum þām vegum þe ge fōron . . . And ge *for þon* ne gelyfdon Drihtne (Deuter. I, 31. 32.). Comp. Modern-Engl.: All human flesh must die; but yet a man may live many years *for all that* (Field., T. Jon. 12, 3.).

- e. A remnant of the adversative use of the particle *though*, Anglosax. *peðh*, Goth. *pauh*, Old-norse *pó*, which in Modern-English does not stand at the commencement, but often at the end, is only met with where the speech is incomplete, and *though* is referred to a thought which is to be gathered from the whole preceding speech or from the temper of the speaker, and often serves to ward off a possible objection.

I dare not fight; but I will wink, and hold out mine iron; It is a simple one: but what *though*? (Shaksp., Henry V. 2, 1.) She really carries on a kind of correspondence with him, under a feigned name *though*, till she chooses to be known to him (Sherid., Riv. 1, 2.). "A foolish coxcomb!" — "Ay! let him alone *though*." (Coler., Picc. 1, 6) Methinks 'twere well *though* not to run the hazard (2, 7.). Peace be with their ashes! Well! well! they fought for a good cause *though* (2, 12.). 'Twas pity *though*! (Wallenst 3, 7.) You come, *though*, to the castle? (ib.) He was a wonderful man, that uncle of yours, *though* (Dickens, Pickw. 2, 19.).

This *though* in the principal sentence agrees with *doch*, frequently preserved in the Modern-Highdutch. Middle-Highdutch: Sage durch got, wer weiz es *doch* (Iwken 89.). Ne sluoc ich *doch* ir man (78.). Nu sage mir *doch* (H. Trist. 5997.). Old-Engl.: Of þisse unpeauwe me nimeþ to lutel geme, and is *pauh* of alle on loðest God (Wright & Halliw., Rel. Ant. I. 67.). Wendeþ bi þen ilke weie . . . God *pauh* ful warliche, vor i þisse wildernesse beoþ monie uele bestes (I. 66.). Holy men and holy wummen beoþ . . . ofte i-tempted . . . heo bigiteþ þe blistule kempene crune. Lo! *pauh* hwi he meneþ ham bi Jeremie: persecutores nostri velociores aquilis dei, super montes persecuti sunt nos (I. 65.). Anglosax.: Gerdon tō him þāt hi mōston beón vurðe ælc þāra þinga þe heom mid unrehte of genumen vās; þā viðlāg se cyng sume hville *peðh* (Sax. Chs. 1052.).

Fif cyningas þar væron tó gehálgode; þát vās *peáh* mid Earnulfes geþāfunge (887.). Mine dōhtra and pine suna and pine heorda and ealle þā þing þe þu gesiht synd mine: hvāt mæg ic *peáh* dōn minum sunum and minum magum? (GEN. 31, 43.). We here find the freer collocation of *peáh* and its not always immediate adversative relation. It is to be observed that *peáh*, *svā peáh*, *peáh hvādere*, *svā peáh hvādere* introduce in general the adversative sentence, perhaps also combined with *ac*: *ōðer* is fāder, *ōðer* is sunu, *ōðer* is se hálga gāst; *ac peáh hvādere* þære preora is ān godcundnys (THORPE, Anal. p. 60.). *peáh hvādere* stands, for ex. LUC. 6, 24. 10, 14. JOH. 7, 13. Efnē he is nu on þīre handa, *svā peáh hvādere* heald his sāve (JOB in ETTM. 5, 16.). Thus the Goth. has *sve pauh* in the adversative sentence. The Hallsaxon uses *poh swa peh* (ORM. 395, 9713) and puts *ai* first (1104.), alongside of the simple *poh* (9723.). The particle in question corresponded in the concessive and adversative sentence. Hallsax.: Forr *pohh þatt* þo wass hali; wif, *pohh* wass þo miccle lahre (ORM. 2663.). Anglosax.: *peah þe* būtū on ānum men sien, *peah* byð ægðer him on sunþran (BOETH. 16.).

- f. *However*, *howsoever*, dialectically *howsumever*, are placed before or subjoined to an adversative sentence, to denote that in whatever manner or degree what precedes is valid, what follows nevertheless stands firm. These forms properly stand elliptically in the sense of a complete concessive sentence, which in fact assumes, in the combination *howbeit*, obsolete *howbe*, the form of a particle introducing the adversative sentence.

I have not seen her since our quarrel; *however*, I expect to be recalled every hour (SHERID., Riv. 2, 1.). Some of the adventurers pressed Monmouth to take a severe course. Monmouth, *however*, would not listen to this advice (MACAUL., Hist. of E. II. 146.). We suspect . . . that he would then have purchased, by another apostasy, the power of burning men better and braver than himself. We do not mean, *however*, to represent him as a monster of wickedness (Essays I. 127.). . . I will drink with thee *howsoever* (BEAUMONT A. FLETCHER ed. Darley. L. 1839. II. 376.). The gentleman was a little false-hearted; *but howsumever*, it was hard to have two lovers, and get never a husband at all (FIELD., J. Andr. 2, 6.). . . *Howsumever*, to proceed — (SCOTT, R. Roy 26.). . . *Howsomdever*, I object nothing to Capt. Cleveland (DIAL. OF CRAVEN I. 236.). — When my face is fair, you shall perceive Whether I blush or no; *Howbeit*. I thank you (SHAKSP., Coriol. 1. 9.). He . . . prayed him that he might be with him. *Howbeit* Jesus suffered him not (MARK 5, 18.). True, those men were chiefs and nobles; but are plebeians less human? *Howbeit*, I have seen enough from afar — I will now approach, and examine the man himself (BULW., Rienzi 1, 4.).

Those forms, introducing the adversative sentence, of which *however* has, in Modern-English obtained the widest extension, are sufficiently explained by what is to be cited on the occasion of the concessive sentences. The elliptic forms, among which those with *sum*, Old-norse *sem*, Swedish, Dan. *som*. Hallsax. *sum* = as, so (ORMUL.) belong to the Norse, are hardly familiar to Old-English. The complete sentence *how be it* appears hereafter similarly used: For your jentyll husband sorowful am I; *How be it*, he is not furst has had a los (SKELTON I. 24.). *Hombeit* often takes the place of the ancient *naðeles*, Anglosax. *peáh hvādere*; comp. WYCL., JOH. 7, 13. and the Anglosaxon.

- g. *Meantime, meanwhile*, may be in some measure compared the German *inzwischen, unterdessen, indessen*, Lat. *interea*, & these particles of time introduce a contrariety, limitatio objection, which takes place at the same time, although in En they have, more rarely, a remote reference to time.

I will perform it to enfranchise you. *Meantime*, this deep grace in brotherhood Touches me deeper than you can imagine (SHAKSP., Rich. III. 1, 1.). At our more consider'd time, read, Answer, and think upon this business; *Meantime*, we t you for your well-took labour (Hamlet. 2, 2.). Egmont was prudent enough to make himself the mouth-piece of their resistance . . . *Meantime* his own day of reckoning had arrived (LEY, Rise of the Dutch Rep. 3, 1.). But let the laws of I determine all; *Meanwhile* I am possess'd of that is mine (SHA Tit. Andr. 1, 2.). Thus, too, *in the mean time* is employed: Creed and Ten Commandments may be taught in the same ner, without the necessity of the grave face, deliberate to recital, and devout attention, hitherto exacted from the governed childhood of this realm. It may, *in the mean tim* subject of serious consideration, whether those who are accus only to acquire instruction through the medium of amusem may not be brought to reject that which approaches unde aspect of study (SCOTT, Waverley 3.).

In the ancient tongue I find no support for the adversative use forms cited, occurring in a temporal meaning: He swoor anon gulif was; and *in the mene whiles* An hond him smot upon the boon (CHAUC., C. T. 5087.).

4. The causal coordination contains a reference of sentence each another in such wise that the substance of the one is regarded as the cause of the other. The sentence attached a copulative contains either the cause or the consequen the preceding one.
 - a. The coordinate sentence which contains the cause of wha cedes is introduced by *for*. This is the preposition disc above Vol. II. l. p. 427, which, like others, has come a commencement of a dependent sentence, in the earliest accompanied by the particle *that* (see Dependent Sentence), appearing independently, and finally, so released from the struction with a principal sentence, that it may also pass particle in independent principal sentences, although the re of subordination is not always to be distinguished from tl coordination. That it is also treated as a coordinating pa is proved by its even commencing a new sentence after the clusion of one sentence by a pause. It thus answers t German *denn*, Lat. *nam, enim*, in a logical regard. The cited may be either a real (objective) or a subjective and assume the nature of an cause explanatory of wha been said.

O Lord, . . . Lend me a heart replete with thankfulness thou hast given me, in this beauteous face, A world of blessings to my soul (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 1, 1.). *For*

tell how human life began Is hard; *for* who himself beginning knew? (MILT., P. L. 8, 250. cf. 6, 296.) Remember what I warn thee . . ; *for* know, The day thou eat'st thereof . . thou shalt die (8, 327.). Occasionally indeed, — *for* where but in farces is the phraseology of the humorist always the same? — he escaped into a more enlarged and christianlike method of dealing with the king's English (BULW., Eug. Aram 1, 1.). The general effect of this chequered narrative will be to excite thankfulness in all religious minds, and hope in the breasts of all patriots. *For* the history of our country during the last hundred and sixty years is eminently the history of physical, of moral, and of intellectual improvement (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 2.). But speak the word only, and my servant shall be healed. *For* I am a man under authority, having soldiers under me: and I say to this man, Go, and he goeth; etc. (MATTH. 8, 8.).

The freer attachment of the sentence with *for* is ancient: To trufle he yt wende. *Vor* þe lupernesse of hym non tong telle ne may. *Vor* so luper mon, ne so cruel, ych wene, non man ne say. *Vor* þe worste men . . He wolde make hys conseylers (R. or Gl. II. 417). Ac God pouȝte on hire for hire trewnesse. *For* þe kyng of France herde telle of hire godnesse, And bad hire fader graunt hym þe gode Cordeille (I. 31.). Thou servest after Godes grome, Wen thou seist on me silk blame. *For* ich am old, and sek, and lame; Seknesse haveth makid me ful tame (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 7.). Ȝif thei werein sepultures, thei scholden not ben voyd withinne. *For* ȝee may well knowe, that tombes and sepultures ne ben not made of suche gretnesse (MAUNDER, p. 53.). Even in Half-saxon this loose attachment with a simple *for* is to be pointed out: Annd forþi trowwe icc þatt te birrp Wel þolenn mine wordess Eþhwær þær þu shallt findenn hemm Amang Goddspellless wordess. *Forr* whase mot to læwedd folc Larspell off Goddspell tellenn, He mot wel ekenn maniz word Amang Goddspellless wordess (ORM., Ded. 51.), Anglosaxon, which in general does not know *for* as a simple particle, combines it, partly with the pronoun accompanied by *þe*, partly with the mere pronoun *þam*, (also *þy*) in the causal sentence, and makes it appear as a dependent sentence: þa ongan ic slāpan and slēp, and eft ārās, *for þam þe* Drihten me avehte and me upp-ārærde (Ps. 3, 5.). Far mid ūs þāt ve þe veligne gedōn, *for þam þe* Drihten behēt gōd Israhēla folce (NUM. 10, 29.). He bið unscildig *forþam* hit ys feoh (Exod. 21, 21.). Mīn nama ys Legio: *forþam* ve manega synd (MARC. 5, 9.). Since the distinction of the subordinate sentence from the coordinate one essentially consists in the former's incorporating itself, as it were, into another, as the periphrasis of a member of a sentence, a supplementary attachment of an original dependent sentence, apparently falling out of the construction, makes the latter appear coordinate. See the Causal Sentence as a Dependent Sentence.

- b. The consequence connects itself with various copulatives in the coordinate manner, although several of the particles belonging here have also relative collateral forms, lending to the sentence the character of a subordinate member.
 - a. The adverb *therefore*, Halfsax. *þærfore*, *per foren*, for which the relative *wherefore* also appears, points to the preceding sentence as the standard cause. It answers to the German *dafür*, which may be compared with *darum*, Middle-Highdutch *dār umbe*, *dā umbe*, in a causal meaning.

Thy father slew my father; *therefore* die (SHAKSP., III Henry VI. 1, 3.). They are at hand, To parley, or to fight; *therefore* prepare (John 2, 1.). This would be worse. War *therefore* . . My voice dissuades (MILT., P. L. 2, 186.). Where we are not at ease, we cannot be happy; and *therefore* it is not surprising that Edward Waverley supposed that he disliked and was unfitted for society (SCOTT, Waverley 4.). I felt certain that marriage was a lottery in which there were thousands of blanks to one prize. When, *therefore*, any of Madame d'Albret's acquaintances brought up the subject . . I earnestly implored Madame d'Albret not to be influenced by their remarks (MARRYAT, Valerie 5.).

Comp.: And being found in fashion as a man, he humbled himself . . *Wherefore* God also hath highly exalted him (PHILIPP. 2, 8. cf. 12.). Much further he, Rais'd on his aged beast, could see; Yet not sufficient to descry All postures of the enemy; *Wherefore* he bids the Squire ride further (BUTL., Hud. 1, 2, 73.).

Therefore, at present frequently employed in the causal province, extends into Hallsaxon. As an adverb it tolerates other particles, as *and* before it, and also appears within the sentence, although from ancient times it readily comes at the commencement. Old-English: We nuste war bileuc; *per fore* we wolle bidde þe, þat þou vs sum place jesus (R. of GL. I. 40.). That herte he yef for treuthe of love; *Therfore* in hym one is trewe love (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 167. cf. 192. 193.). No wynd onethe hadden hee; *Therfore* hem was swythe woo (RICH. C. DE L. 58.). He has don us grevance, *therfor* shalle he drynk (TOWN. M. p. 191.). Ich wende . . That i-seie were soth, And *therefore* thou were me loth (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 276.). And als moche take the amyralle . . And *therefore* whan the soudan wille avance ony worthi knyghte, he makethe hym amyralle (MAUNDEV. p. 38. cf. 42. 69.). Hallsax.: Ah he neuuede nenne sune *per fore* he wes sari (LAȜAM. I. 209.). Nefde heo children na ma, *per foren* wes pere quene wa (I. 270.). . . *Þærfore* seȝde ȝho þiss word (ORM. 2431.). I have not yet met with the particle in Anglosaxon.

Sentences with *wherefore* appear later: Ilkon said, þat Edmund þe kyng Spak no word *per* of . . *Wharfor* þe barons granted him ilkone Knoute to be corouned (LANGT. I. 48 sq.). The hilles of Gelboe, where Saul and Jonathas that weren so fayre, dyeden; *wherefore* David cursed him (MAUNDEV. p. 111. cf. 53. 102. 144. 177.). Whan I first com to you . . Left I my wille and my liberte, And took your clothing; *wherefor* I ȝow preye, Doth youre plesaunce (CHAUC., C. T. 8531.). I dede nevyr forfete with man i-wys; *Wherefore* I pray ȝow amende ȝour mon (COV. MYST. p. 118.). He þat sua fild o goods gram, *Quarfor* he sal ha suilk a nam (ANTICRIST 3.). So far as sentences of this sort are added more loosely to a principal sentence, they may be compared with the Latin ones introduced with *quare*, *quamobrem* and the like.

For *thi* in the conclusive sentence, long preserved concurrently with *therefore*, is more frequent instead of *therefore* in former times, alongside of which *for* *than* also appears, that is *for* with the instrumental or the dative of *pāt*. Old-Engl.: Nis he fol chepmon þet hwon he wule buggen hors oðer oxe, gif he nule biholden bute ðet heaved one? *vor þi* hwon ðe deovel beoðeð forð þis best . .

he but ever þene teil (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., *Rel. Ant.* I. 69. 215. cf. II, 3. 5.). Mi douter lovede him al to wel; *For-thi* mark I sori del (WRIGHT, *Anecd.* p. 10.). Though we killen the cat, Yet sholde ther come another . . . *For-thi* I counseille at the commune To late the cat worthe (P. PLOUGHM. p. 12. cf. CHAUC., C. T. 1443. SEUYN SAGES 43. 2330. 2947. *ANTICRIST* 5, 72. TOWN. M. p. 61. 66. 79. 126. 136. 268.). Halfsax.: þus we ferdæn pere & *for þi* beoð nu here (LAJAM. II. 156.). Wind heom stod on willen, weder also heo wolden, bliðe heo weoren alle *for þi* (II. 530.). Ðu þohhtesst tatt itt mihtte wel Till mikell frame turnenn . . . Annd *forþi* ƿerrndesst tu þatt icc þiss werre þe sholde wirrkenn (ORM., *Ded.* 17 sq. cf. 51.). *For than* is rare: . . . Canst thou nought be blamed *for than* (ELLIS, *Spec.* of early metr. Rom. II. 29.). Ich hevede i-thout miself to slo; *For then* radde a frend me ge To the mi sereve telle (WRIGHT, *Anecd.* p. 7.), which still belongs to northern dialects. *For þam* (*þan*, *þan*) very frequently stands alongside of *for þy* in Anglosaxon: Hire mǣgen ic svǣ micel and svǣ mære, þāt heo unclænne man, þonne he tō hire cymeð, vel hraðe forfleon vile. *For þy* þu hi bevrīð . . . mid iserne (THORPE, *Anal.* p. 94.), Ac he hig hatode, and *for þam* he hig lædde út þāt he hig ofslōge (DEUTER. 9, 24.). Ne sealdest þu me sunu; *for þan* mec sorg dreceð on sefan sviðe (CAEDM. 2173. cf. 724. 740.).

- β. Where *thereon*, *thereupon* occur conclusively, it proceeds from the idea of proximity and succession in time or of resting upon something: (He) hopes to find you forward upon his party, for the gain thereof; And, *thereupon*, he sends you this good news (SHAKSP., *Rich.* III. 3, 2.). These particles come little under consideration. Comp. *on*, *upon*.

- γ. *Then*, Anglosax. *þonne*, *þenne*, Goth. *þan*, Old-Fr. *than*, Old- and Middle-Highdutch *danne*, *denne*, originally equivalent to the Lat. *tum*, *tunc*, Gr. *τότε*, and at the same time applied similarly to *qnam*, *όταν*, has become split up in German into *dann* and *denn*, the former of which is also chiefly used conclusively, whereas the second stands in the sentence which contains the cause of the knowledge. *Then* answers to the conclusive *dann* (*ergo*, *igitur*, Fr. *donc*), which indeed likewise often yields to the form *denn*. The coincidence in time of the activity which belongs to the sentence accompanied by *then* with that contained in the preceding one is originally indicated by it. Thence is developed the idea of an inference proceeding from what precedes, where a connecting judgment may be supposed.

Come, Katherine, our losses equal are, *Then* of true grief let us take equal share (MARLOWE, *Jew of M.* 3, 2.). I know thee not; why *then* should I betray thee? (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 4, 10.) "But sometimes Virtue starves, while Vice is fed." What *then*? Is the reward of Virtue bread? (POPE, *Essay on M.* 4, 149.) We have no slaves at home — *then* why abroad? (COWP. p. 185.) But so, at least, by Royal Edict of the 24th of January, does it finally, to impatient France, become not only indubitable that National Deputies *are* to meet, but possible . . . to begin electing them. — Up, *then*, and be doing! (CARL., Fr. *Revol.* 1, 4, 2. extr. and 3. init.)

There often exists no sentence upon which *then* immediately

rests, the judgment which furnishes the motive is then to be gathered from the context, or from the situation of the speaker. This is especially the case in interrogative sentences and exclamations. It was at that instant, that looking around him, he saw the wild dress and appearance of his Highland associates, heard their whispers in an uncouth and unknown language . . . "Good God!" he muttered, "am I *then* a traitor to my country . . .!" (SCOTT, Waverl. 46.) O Lord, hast thou *then* forsaken me? (BULW., Rienzi 5, 3.) And are you *then* a thing of art, Seducing all, and loving none? (TH. MOORE p. 65.) And this, *then*, is the end! All's gone! (DOUGL. JERROLD, Rent Day 2, 4.)

Older instances of the conclusively operative *then*, *than*, *thanne* are not wanting. Old-Engl.: "Lo here myn hond, in me schal be no lak" — "Now *thanne* put thyn hond down at my bak." (CHAUC., C. T. 7721.) "As help me Crist, as I in fewe yeeres have spendid upon many divers freres Ful many a pound, yit fare I never the bet . . ." — ". . . Holde ye *than* me, or elles oure covent To praye for you insufficient?" (7531 sq.) Trewthe dyd nevyr his maystyr shame; Why xulde I ses *thon* trewth to say? (COV. MYST. p. 367.) He bled owte alle his herte blood; How xulde he *thanne* ryse with myght? (368.) The immediate particle, to be explained by the situation, occurs: Who *thenne* hath that dede i-done? (RICH. C. DE L. 926.) The Anglosaxon has similar: And gif se deofol ađrifu ut pone deofol, hig beoð tōdælede; hū māg *ponne* his rice standan? (MATH, 12, 25.) Gr. πῶς οὐκ ἀναθήναις ἢ θυμολογίαις αὐτοῦ. Compare even the Goth.: Jah auk uf vaira qens at libandin abin gabundana ist vitoda . . . *pannu* þan at libandin abin haitada horinondei (ROM. 7, 2.).

- δ. The demonstrative particle of space *hence*, Anglosax. *hthan*, *heonan*, Old-Highdutch *hinana*, *hinnān*, Middle-Highdutch *hinan*, is used in this province, analogously to the German *daher*, Fr. *de là*; the subordinating relative form *whence* stands alongside of it, comp. α. The consequence, or effect, proceeding from the immediately preceding sentence, as the actual point of departure, is thereby denoted.

He uttered no "moral verdict"; he was no Chorus preaching on the text of what he pictured. *Hence* we cannot gather from his works what his opinions were (LEWES, G. I. 66.). — Our supreme foe in time may remit His anger . . . satisfy'd With what is punish'd; *whence* these raging fires Will slacken, if his breath stir not their flames (MILT., P. L. 2, 210.).

Old-English seems to have used *henne*, *hennes*, conclusively as little as the Middle-Highdutch did *hinnen*, although the metaphor was close at hand, as took place in Gr. with ἐνταῦθα and ὅθεν and also in Latin with *inde*.

- ε. The modal particle *so*, Anglosax., Goth., Old-norse *sá*, Old-Sax., Old-Highdutch *so*, appears in a conclusive meaning; It then denotes that the consequence rests upon the stated nature of what precedes.

I would to heaven, I were your son, *so* you would love me (SHAKSP., John 4, 1.). Or wilt thou thyself Abolish thy creation . . .? *So* should thy goodness, and thy greatness, both

Be question'd and blasphem'd (MILT., P. L. 3, 162.). I go undismayed, for death is a debt — A debt on demand, *so* take what I owe (GAY, Begg. Op. 3, 1.). I heard a voice whisper him; I knew the voice, and then they both went out by the backway; *so* I stole down, and went out and listened (BCLW., Maltrav. 1, 4.). It also combines with *then*, like the *so . . denn* in German: The woman which hath an husband is bound by the law to her husband so long as he liveth . . *So then* if, while her husband liveth, she be married to another man, she shall be called an adulteress (ROM. 7, 2.). . . *So, then*, Faulkland, if you were convinced that Julia were well and in spirits, you would be entirely content (SHERID., Riv. 2, 1.).

But *so* is often not so much a conclusive as a connective particle, although, as distinguished from *and*, a more sensuous reference to circumstances previously denoted takes place: And the men of Gibeon sent unto Joshua . . *So* Joshua ascended from Gilgal (JUDGES 7, 8. cf. JOSH. 7, 22. 10, 7.). It is also added, almost pleonastically, to *and*: They saw it, *and so* they marvelled (Ps. 48. 5.).

A conclusive *so* is not unfamiliar in Old-Engl.: For I juggle yow alle; *So* I may boldly be housled (P. PLOUGHM. p. 434.). Sche demed it was ful foully dight, And ill besemed a may so bright; *So* to her coffer quick she cam, And her riche baudekyn out-nam (LAY LE FREINE 355.). The more diffuse narrative combines the sentences by *and so*: But upon that montayne, to gon up, this monk had had gret desir; *and so* upon a day, he wente up (MAUNDEV. p. 148.). And thei . . seyden, that he was a fool; *and so* he departed fro hem alle aschamed (p. 225.). And than thei seyden amonges hem, that there was no man . . ; *and so* thei wenten hire wey (p. 227.). Maundeville also often makes the progress in the narrative by *also*, without attributing any emphasis to this word; see p. 33. 42. 48. 49. The oldest language, as the Anglosaxon, does not give such a reference to *svá*. The Romance may therefore have had an influence upon *so*, at least in narrative. Old-Fr.: Que ce est une caitive qui fu amenée d'estrangle terre, *si* l'acata li Vis Quens . . *si* l'amena en ceste ville. *Si* l'a levée . . *si* li donra un de ces jours un baceler (BARBAZAN, Fabl. et C. I. 380.). English has certainly not gone to this weakening of the particle. In connections, Anglosaxon frequently used *pá*, Old-English *thanne*.

- ζ. The Latin conclusive *ergo* early found some reception, and from it flowed the corrupt forms *argo* and *argal*. *ergo* is foreign to the modern cultivated language.

Light is an effect of fire, and fire will burn; *ergo* light wenches will burn (SHAKSP., Com. of Err. 4, 3. cf. All's Well 1, 3.). "And Smith, the weaver." — "*Argo*, their thread of life is spun." (II Henry VI. 4, 2. cf. TH. MOORE p. 24. MIDDLETON, Works I, 392.) If I drown myself wittingly, it argues an act . . : *argal*, she drowned herself wittingly (SHAKSP., Haml. 5, 1. and often ib.).

Old-Engl.: Patriarkes and prophetes Prophecied . . *Ergo* is no name To the name of Jhesus (P. PLOUGHM. p. 397.).

- η. Adverbs like *accordingly*, *consequently* may of course be em-
Mätzner, engl. Gr. II. 2.

played in inferential sentences. They are in the same predicament as the German *folglich*, Fr. *conséquemment*. They express conformity and correctness of inference in regard to what precedes. *Of course* may be similarly used, although this formula denotes more the natural (current) consequence. They of course all tolerate other copulatives, such as *and*, before them.

He is very great in knowledge, and *accordingly* valiant (SHAKSP., *All's Well* 2, 5.). I therefore expressed a strong wish to accept Mr. Brandon's invitation . . . *Accordingly* . . . I left Elmsley (FULLERTON, *Ellen Middleton* 4.). I say . . . That he did plot the duke of Gloster's death; Suggest his soon — believing adversaries, And, *consequently*, . . . Sluic'd out his innocent soul through streams of blood (SHAKSP., *Rich.* II. 1, 1.). I have not the honour of Mrs. Dombey's good opinion . . . *Consequently* . . . your making these communications to Mrs. Dombey through me, is sure to be particularly unpalatable to that lady (DICKENS, *Dombey a. S.* 3, 4.). A family which had been always wealthy, and inclined, *of course*, as a mark of splendour, to furnish their shelves with the current literature of the day (SCOTT, *Waverley* 3.). With this form, which has only become very familiar in modern times, compare *of consequence*: Our young hero, who was permitted to seek his instruction only according to the bent of his own mind, and who, *of consequence*, only sought it so long as it afforded him amusement (ib.).

These periphrases of conclusive particles, in themselves so readily explicable, are foreign to the ancient language.

C. Asyndetic Coordination.

Sentences or members of sentences are coordinated asyndetically to one another, when, without any express reference of their connection by a copulative, they must nevertheless be apprehended in relation to one another. They then indicate this reference by their meaning, although often leaving the one or the other mode of reference to be supplied mentally. This looser connection is partly calculated in its operation, and is especially peculiar to lively and emotional speech, partly a matter of traditional custom, and even of negligence. In general, every separate member is thereby made an object of particular attention. The asyndetic mode of expression has gained ground in the course of time, the more the language has been become inclined to give expression to subjective temper and emphasis.

1. The copulative coordination is most frequently interchanged with the asyndetic connection.

a. Sentences with adverbs which are adopted to denote succession commonly stand without the copulative particle, and the former readily gain the semblance of connective particles.

When we mean to build, we *first* survey the plot, *then* draw the model (SHAKSP., *II Henry IV.* 1, 3.). *First*, the king could not legislate without the consent of his Parliament. *Secondly*,

he could impose no taxes without the consent of his Parliament. *Thirdly*, he was bound to conduct the executive administration according to the laws of the land (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 29.).

Old-Engl.; *Althirfurst* ye schul considre . . *Thanne* schalt thou considre . . *Thunne* schalt thou considre . . (CHAUC., C. T, p. 156 sq.). Comp. so p. 369.

- b. In the lively or hasty narrative of events crowding upon one another, as well as of the abundance of objects and of adverbial determinations or qualities, the omission of the copulative is a matter of course.

I *pitied* thee, *Took* pains to make thee speak, *taught* thee each hour One thing or other (SHAKSP., Temp. 1, 2.). What is this *absorbs* me quite? *Steals* my senses, *shuts* my sight, *Drowns* my spirits, *draws* my breath? (POPE, Dying Christ.) She *gained* the door, *applied* the key -- *the door yielded* (BULW., Maltrav. 1, 2.). Servility, with supple knees, Whose trade it is to *smile*, to *crouch*, to *please* (COWP. p. 4.). Something to *give*, to *sing*, to *say* (SCOTT, Rokeby 1, 29.). *Time* flies, *death* urges, *knells* call, *heav'n* invites, *Hell* threatens (YOUNG, N. Th. 2, 292.). The land, Where *Nature*, *Freedom*, *Art*, *smile* hand in hand (TH. CAMPBELL, Theodric). *Iron*, *oil*, *vinegar*, *coal*, *saltpetre*, *lead*, *starch*, *yarn*, *skins*, *leather*, *glass*, could be bought only at exorbitant prices (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 62.). These *shadowy*, *desert*, *unfrequented* woods (SHAKSP., Two Gentlem. 5, 4.). The greatest of hearts was also the bravest; *fearless*, *unwearied*, *peacefully* invincible (LEWES, G. I. 4.).

Old-Engl.: Out of the courte he went, *dwelid* he no while (LANGT. II. 292.). He *did* pam no more hard, no longer *was* delayed, *Disseised* him self of alle, *zald* it to Sir Jon (II 250.). Bidderes and beggeres *Faste* aboute *yede* . . *Faiteden* for hire foode, *Foughten* at the ale (P. PLOUGHM. p. 3.). *Seththe* he *wa- y-opened*, *is boweles y-brend*, *The heved* to Londone-brugge *was send* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 221.). But *yk* *am* old; *me list* not pley for age; *Gras tyme* is doon, *my fodir* is now forage (CHAUC., C. T. 3865.). *Goth feccheth* me the traytours (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 120.). He *weepeth*, *wayleth*, *maketh* sory cheere; *He siketh* etc. (CHAUC., C. T. 3618.). I *seigh* a *tour* on a toft *Trieliche* y-maked, *A deep dale* byneth, *A dongeon* therinne (P. PLOUGHM. p. 2.). That *knyght*, *kyng*, *conquerour*, *May* be o persone (p. 397.). And *justices*, *shirreves*, *meires*, *baillifs* . . *Hii* *kunnen* of the faire day make the derke night (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 336.). I *piasse* *wildernesse* *þoot* *monic* *uwele* *bestes*; *liun* of prude, *neddre* of attri onde, *unicorne* of wreððe, *beore* of dead slouhðe, *vox* of giscunge, *suwe* of givernesse, *scorpiun* mid te teile of stinkinde lecherie (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 66.). In Anglosaxon poetry asyndetic connections are frequent, and even prose uses them in long enumerations: *Lyst bið onbarned*, *hredsað heofon-steorran*, *hydað vide gifre glêde*, *gæstas hveorfaf* on êne eard (COD. EXON. 64. 26.). *Væron* Egypte oft *oncyrde*, *flugon* forhtigende, *fær ongeton* (CAEDM. 3380.). *Þat* he mæge ealle geriman, *stânas* on eorðan, *steorran* on heofonum, *sæbeorga sand*, *sealte yða* (3369.). Of þære heortan *cumað yfele gepancas*, *mann-slyhtas*, *unriht-hamedu*, *forligru*, *stala*, *ledse*, *gevitnyssa*, *tællice* vord (MATH. 15, 19.).

- c. This connection especially takes place where parts of sen-

tences, which calmly measured speech does not usually repeat, recur, which mostly happens at the commencement of members of sentences or sentences. Here belong substantives, verbs attributive and adverbial determinations, as well as prepositions and conjunctions.

God reigneth over the heathen; *God* sitteth upon the throne of his holiness (Ps. 47, 8.). *Can* piety the discord heal, Or staunch the death-feud's enmity? *Can* Christian lore, *can* patriot zeal. *Can* love of blessed charity? (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 1, 8.) The Hall of harps is lone to-night, And cold the chieftain's hearth; *It hath* no mead, *it hath* no light, No voice of melody, no sound of mirth (MRS. HEMANS p. 145.). His primary virtue *was* Justice, *was* the courage to be just (LEWES, G. I. 4.). *His* life will be safe — *his* possessions safe — *his* rank safe (BULW., Rienzi 1, 8.). *Her* princes, *her* lords, *her* prelates would have been men differing in race and language from the artisans and the tillers of the earth (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 14.). *All her* traditions, *all her* tastes were monarchical (I. 57.). *So* will I grow, *so* live, *so* die (SHAKSP., Mids. N. Dr. 1, 1.). The oracle within him, that which lives He must invoke and question — *not* dead books, *Not* ordinances, *not* mould-rotted papers (COLER., Picc. 1, 4.). *In* perseverance, *in* self-command, *in* forethought, *in* all the virtues which conduce to success in life, the Scots have never been superseded (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 64.). *If* rich, they go to enjoy; *if* poor, to retrench; *if* sick, to recover; *if* studious, to learn; *if* learned, to relax from their studies (ROGERS, It., For. Trav.). *Where* the hearth shines, *where* the kind looks are met, *Where* the smiles mingle, our place shall be yet! (MRS. HEMANS p. 114.) *While* the crowd hailed the proposition of Rienzi; *while* their shouts yet filled the sir; *while* Raimond . . sought by signs and gestures to convey at once his gratitude and his humility, the Tribune-Elect . . perceived many hitherto attracted by curiosity (BULW., Rienzi 2, 8.).

With that we may compare the emphatic repetition, mostly immediate, of the same sentence or word, which is sometimes accompanied by another determination: *We will thrive, lads, we will thrive* (SHAKSP., Merry W. 1, 2.). *Sing praises to God, sing praises* (Ps. 47, 6.). *Weep on, weep on*, your hour is past (TH. MOORE p. 227.). *To suck, to suck*, the very blood to suck (SHAKSP., Henry V. 2, 3.). *Then, then* I rose (YOUNG, N. Th. 4, 291.). The slaughter'd chiefs . . Shall *never, never* be forgot (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 1, 8.). A boundless plain Spreads through the shadow of the night, And *onward, onward, onward* seems To stretch beyond the sight (BYR., Mazeppa). O *wicked, wicked* world! (SHAKSP., Merry W. 2, 1.) O *rain, rain, rain!* all else! (YOUNG, N. Th. 6, 570.) In the *long, long* night (ROGERS, It., Naples). O the *dreary, dreary* moorland; O the *barren, barren* shore! (TENNYNS. p. 271.) Many a *black, black* eye (p. 130.). *Along the sheen, along the glassy sheen* (BULW., K. Arthur 1, 2.). That *love, true love* should be forgot (SCOTT,

L. Minstr. 5, 2.). *As* and also combines the members in similar cases. See p. 336.

Recurrent parts of sentences, which are otherwise saved by contractions or by continued operation upon others, were also formerly found asyndetically joined. Old-Engl.: *Ye seoth my wo, ye seoth my pyne* (ALIS. 1944.). *She was the fairest thing on-live, She was so hend,* and so well ytaught (ELLIS, Specim. II. 104.). *His heer, his berd was lik safroun* (CHAUC., C. T. 1541.). *Oure Lord, our God, thi wille be done* (TOWN. M. p. 6.). *The ende of oure joye, of oure worldly labour* (CHAUC., C. T. 4843.). *With thirst, with cold, with hunger so foundyd* (4520.). *Whii werre . . . is i-come, Whii hunger and derthe . . . the pore hath undernome, Whii bestes ben thus storve, Whii corn hath ben so dere, ȝe that wolen abide, listneth etc.* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 324.). Halfsax.: *per* is æuer ælc swein swulc he weore riche þein, *per* beoð þa cnihtes swulc hit weoren kinges (LAȜAM. III. 2.). *Ofte* heo eoden to ræde, *ofte* heo heolden rune (III. 4.). *Of Crete* þe king Ipolitte, *of Syrie* þe king Euander, *of Frigie* þe duc Teucer, etc. (III. 5.). *Mid* mucle wiaxen. *mid* longe saxon (III. 8.). Anglosaxon: *Við þe ænne* ic gesyngode . . . *við þe ænne* ic sceal pāt betan (Ps. 50, 5.). *per* is vlitig and vunsum . . . *per* is brāde lond (CAEDM. II. 215. cf. SATAN ib. Grein). Eā lā pāt ic eam ealles leas écan dreames, pāt ic mid handum ne mæg beofon geræcan (168.). The asyndetic connection of dependent sentences with the repetition of the conjunction is, in general, little familiar to the older language, whereas it is not foreign to classical Latin.

Words repeated immediately after one another are likewise added asyndetically. Old-Engl.: *Cry on, cry*, whiles the thynk good (TOWN. M. p. 11.). *Alle haylle, alle haylle*, bothe blithe and glad (p. 8.). *Two, two*, now this is thre (p. 12). Anglosax.: *Singað, singað* and *hērjað* urne cyning (Ps. 46, 6.). Comp.: *Gearo is min heorte, pāt ic gode svylce sealmas singe* (Ps. 56, 9.).

- d. The asyndetic connection is favoured when sentences or members of sentences form an ascending series (climax).

In such touches as these lurks the future poet: still more so in the very choice of the subject (LEWES, G. I. 59.). Without stopping to *secure, far less to enjoy*, the acquisition which he made (SCOTT, R. Roy 1.). *I may not, must not*, sing of love (L. Minstr. 2, 30.). *Till drooping, sickening, dying*, they began Whom they revered as god, to mourn as man (POPE, Essay on M. 3, 223.). Time and their wrongs had changed *them all, him most!* (ROGERS, It., Foscari.)

Old-Engl.: *To be called a knight is fair . . . To be called a kyng is fairer* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 397.). In the most ancient poetry the asyndetic accumulation of members, particularly of substantives, is frequent, not, however, in the manner of outbidding. Anglosax.: *He is magna spēd heafod ealra heah-geceasta, frēa ālmihtig* (CAEDM. 3.).

- e. With the opposition or parallelizing of sentences and members of sentences, hence also with divisions, in which the same word, though not referred to the same object (place, time &c.), may recur, the asyndetic connection is adapted to render the single members more sharply prominent. Such opposition often

borders on the adversative relation, as well as the union by *and* of members which are in themselves opposed.

God is thy law, *thou* mine (MILT., P. L. 4, 637.). For *thou* art heav'nly, *she* an empty dream (7, 39.). *Olivia* wished for many lovers, *Sophia* to secure one (GOLDSM., Vic. 1.). *All* was delusion, *nought* was truth (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 3, 9.). *The one* vanquished by a single blow, *the other* by efforts successfully repeated (GOLDSM., Vic. 1.). *Some* were for departing. *Others* were for dispersing (BULW., Rienzi 2, 8.). What was my art? Genius, *some* say — *some*, Fortune, — Witchcraft *some* (Richel. 1, 2.). Thus we often find *now . . now*; *sometimes . . sometimes*; *partly . . partly* opposed, although they admit *and* in the following member: Our vital streams . . *Now* swift or slow, *now* black or clear (BYR. p. 307.). So the figure itself fluctuated in its distinctness: being *now* a thing with one arm, *now* with one leg, *now* with twenty legs, *now* a pair of legs without a body (DICKENS, Christm. Car. 2.). In this order we begin the descent, *sometimes* on foot, *sometimes* shuffling on the ice (Pict. of It., A Rapid Dior.); yet also: *Now* in one part *and now* in another (Christm. Car. 2.). In consequence *partly* of unwise interference, *and partly* of unwise neglect (MACAUL., Hist of E. I. 2.).

Old-Engl.: *He* is hirde, *we* ben scp (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel Ant. I. 209.). *Theo* day failith, *theo* night is come (ALIS 3958.). *The water* to norish the fysh swymand, *The erth* to norish bestes crepeand (TOWN. M. p. 2.). Thei growen many to gedre, *on* lytille, *another* gret (MAUNDV. p. 158.). *Now* in the east, *now* in the west (TOWN. M. p. 98.). Halfslx.: *Sone* heom after wenden iwepnede kempen, *per* sixe, *per* seouene, *per* æhte, *per* nigene (LAJAM. III. 53.). Anglosax.: *Veorðan* þá ávyrðde, *ves þu* gebletsað (Ps. 108, 27.). *Vudu* bār *sunu*, *fāder* fȳr and sveord (CAEDM. 2880.). *Geseonde* *dumbe* specende, *healte* gange, *blinde* geseonde (MATH. 15, 31.). *An* brohte prȳtigfealdne, *sum* syxtigfealdne, *sum* hundfealdne (MARC. 4, 8.). *Hvāðer* bāt and cald *hvilum* mencað, *hvilum* ic gehēre helle scealcas . . grnndas mænnon . . *hvilum* nacode men vinnað ymbe vȳrmas (CAEDM. II. 132.).

f. The mixing of the asyndetic and syndetic connection in various manners is ancient.

- a. The conclusion, by a member attached by *and*, of a series of members attached asyndetically to one another is very usual.

That (rose) which, withering on the virgin thorn, *Grows, lives and dies*, in single blessedness (SHAKSP., Mids. N. Dr. 1, 1.). He *gamed, robbed, and was devoted* to the thief's reward — the gallows (DOUGL. JERROLD, Rent. Day 2, 4.). This silenced the man, who *made* his promise, *took* my measure, *and departed* (MARRYAT, P. Simple 1, 2.). Let it *bud, ripen, flaunt* i' the day, *and burst* To fruit (BULW., Richel. 1, 2.). *Honour, revenge, contempt and shame*, Did equally their breasts inflame (BUTL., Hud. 1, 3, 241.). Are we to trace the speculations of the *Srythians, Persians, and Egyptians?* (LEWES, Hist. of Philos. I. 12.) To hope the best is *pious*,

brave and wise (YOUNG, N. Th. 3, 442.). *A fair, sad girl, mild suffering, and serene* (CRABBE, The Borough 2.).

Old-Engl.: He wole *grennen, cocken. and chiden* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 188.). *Pryde, covetyse and envie* han so enflamed the hertes (MAUNDEV. p. 3.). He that was kyng of *hevene, of eyr, of erthe, of see and of alle thinges* (p. 1.). Halssax.: Biforenn Godd, *lo lutenn himm, To lofenn himm annd wurrpenn* (ORM. 207.). Anglosax.: *Aris, nym pin bedd, and gang on pin hūs* (MATH. 9, 6.). This conclusion is less familiar to Anglosaxon; asyndetic and polysyndetic succession of the members, as well as a mixture of both, is more frequent: *Fyr, forst, hāgel and gefeallen snāw, is and gyste* (Ps. 148, 8.).

- β. An early diffused combination of the asyndetic and the syndetic construction is the connection in pairs, in which notions either allied or opposed in sense appear as asyndetic double members.

Forgets both *joy and grief, pleasure and pain* (MILT., P. L. 2, 586.). Where *squire and yeoman, page and groom*, Plied their loud revelry (SCOTT, Lord of the Isl. 1, 28.). *O'er lake and marsh, through fevers and through fogs, midst bears and yankees, democrats and frogs*, Thy foot shall follow me (TH. MOORE p. 162.). The priests . . have . . daily chaunted the same ancient confessions, supplications and thanksgivings, in *India and Lithuania, in Ireland and Peru* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 52.).

Old-Engl.: Meni of religioun me halt hem ful hene, *Baroun and bonde, the clerc and the knyght* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 150.). As we mai al i-se Both *est and west, north and suth* (p. 202.). Y not wharof beth men so prute; *Of erthe and axen, felle and bone?* (p. 203.). To punysshē . . *Brewesters and baksters, Bochiers and cokes* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 47.). Halssax.: *Wipp hat annd kald, wipp nesshe annd harrd* (ORM. 3734.). Anglosax.: Seolfa he gesette *sunnan and mōnan, stānas and eorðan, streām ūt on sæ, vāter and volcen* purh his vundra miht (CARDM. II. 4.). *Adam and Abraham, Isac and Jacob, monig mōdig eorl, Moyses and David, Esaias and Sacharias* (GREIN, Aes. Poes. I. 193.). *Manstagan and mānsvaran, hādbrecan and ævbrecan gebūgan and gebētan* (LÆGG CANT. I. B. 6.). *Licceteras and leogeras, rjyperas and reāferas* godes graman habban æfre (ib 7.). *Ve sceolon . . gesceādlice tōdælan ylde and geōgoðe, velan and vādle, freōt and peōvāt, hæle and unhæle* (ic. 66.). *Hehýre ge ālpeōdige, frige and peōve, āðele and unāðele* (APOLLON. or T. p. 12.).

- g. The polysyndetic connection of a series of members to which an equal grammatical value is due, and whose total unity is brought to recollection by the repetition of the copulative, stands in a certain measure in opposition to the asyndetic succession. Since, however, modern usage in general attains the conclusion of a long series by the copulative inserted with the last member, the repeated prominence of the additional relation operates almost in the same manner as the asyndetic succession; with the distinction, however, that the accumulation of the copulatives of speech, with less mobility, affords in part a more earnest emphasis, in part a more agreeable diffuseness.

Thus men, in shining riches, see the face Of happiness, nor know it is a shade; But gaze, and touch, and peep, and peep again, And wish, and wonder it as absent still (YOUNG, N. Th. 6, 525.). The Cossack prince rubb'd down his horse, And made for him a leafy bed, And smooth'd his fetlocks and his mane, And slack'd his girth, and stripp'd his rein, And joy'd to see how well he fed (BYR., Mazeppa). *Havoc and spoil and ruin* are my gain (MILT., P. L. 2, 1009.). Where all is cliff, and copse, and sky (SCOTT, Rokeby 1, 25.). You mark him by the crashing bough, And by his corslet's sullen clank, And by the stones spurn'd from the bank, And by the hawk scared from her nest, And raven's croaking o'er their guest (2, 14.).

Old-Engl.: *Makes feir semblaunt, and fikes mid to heaved, and stinges mid to teile* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 69.). And wurpen god sad þar onne, and hit wacæ, and wel peagh, and brahte forð blostmes (I. 129.). Thanne cometh ther a cougioun . . and precyð to the nest, And preyliche pirith till the dame passe, And sesith on hir sete, with hire softe plumes, And hoveth the eyren that the hue laide, And with hir corps hevereth hem till that they kenne. And ffostrith and ffoðith, till ffoðris schewe (DEPOS. OF RICH II. p. 16.). A cat of a contree Cam whan hym liked, And overleep hem lightliche, And laughte hem at his wille, And pleide with hem perillousli, And posed aboute (P. FLOUGHM. p. 10.). Hit to-cheowes and to-vret Godes milde milce, and his muchele merci, and his unimete grace (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 67.). Godes sed is Godes word, þe men tilien in chireche on salmes, and on songes, and on redinges, and lorsepelles, and on holdebedes etc. (I. 129.). Hallsax.: Forr cullfre iss milde, annd meoc, annd swet, Annd all wipputenn galle (ORM. 1258.). Þatt folcless lac wass shep annd gat, Annd oze, annd cullfre, annd turttle, Annd teþre lac was bull, annd lamb, Annd buckess twa togeddre, Annd recles smec, annd hultedd bræd etc. (988.). Anglosax.: þa soðlice geendode þe gebeorscipe, and þa men ealle arison, and grættan þone cyng and þa cveþe, and bædon hig gesunde beon, and hām gewendon (APOLLON. OF T. p. 18.). Men gesaþon āne hand . . of heofonum cumende; and seo hāfde āne gyldene rōde, and vās āteōvod manegum mannum, and helde tōveard tōforan þās hūses duru (S. GUTHLAC 1.). He beheold þāt gold, and þāt seolfor, and þa deorurðan reaf, and þa beōðas, and þa ryuelican pēnunga (APOLLON. OF T. p. 14.). And hēr beoð oft fangene seolas and hronas and meresvin (BEDA 1, 1.). Mycel mænigeo geāiledra, blindra and healtra, and forscruncenra (JOH. 5, 3.).

2. The relation of disjunctive coordination more rarely remains undenoted.

- a. The exclusion of one member by the other may certainly result from the nature of the opposed members.

And, will you, nill you, I will marry you (SHAKSP., Taming 2, 1.). Am I right, am I wrong? (CARLYLE, Past a. Prest. 2, 15.).

Old-Engl.: *Wol he, null he, ded he is* (ALIS. 2317.). *Be the luef, be the loht, sire Edward, Thou shalt ride sporeless* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 71.). Hallsax.: *Wæore heom lef, wæore heom lað, alle heo sworn pene að* (LA-ſAM. II. 415.).

- b. A mixing of the syndetic and the asyndetic disjunction is not uncommon.

- a. With a greater number of members, the choice among which is left open, or is often given to the last or to several members, while others precede without it.

Progressive, retrograde or standing still (MILT., P. L. 8, 126.). No use of metal, corn or wine or oil (SHAKSP., Temp. 2, 1.). Unchanged by sufferings, time, or death (SCOTT, Marm. 1. Introd.). No, perish the hearts, and the laws that try *Truth, valour or love*, by a standard like this (TH. MOORE p. 215.). I have not named to thee *Father or mother, mistress, friend, or being* With whom I wore the chain of human ties (BYR., Manfr. 2, 2.).

Old-Engl.: Nor eni þing ǣ he *poled, i-siht, oðer i-heres* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. 1. 66.). In general the repetition of the disjunctive particle, was usual in the most ancient times. Anglosaxon: Sva man rihtast mæge *oððe gemetan, oððe getellan oððe ávegan* (LEGG. ATHELST. I. 68.). Nys nán man þe his *hús forlæt, oððe magas, oððe broðru, oððe víf, oððe bearn* (LEGG. 18, 29.).

- β. The asyndetic juxtaposition of double members joined by *or*, which even stand in the relation of disjunction to each other is not unfamiliar.

Let *pow'r or knowledge, gold or glory* please (POPE, Essay on M. 2, 169.). What does it most of all behove him to do? To complain of *this man or of that, of this thing or of that?* (CARLYLE, Past a. Pres. 1, 5.).

This articulation by pairs ascends to the most ancient times. Old-Engl.: I woot no better leche Than *parson or parissh-preest, Penituncer or bisshope*, Save Piers (P. PLOUGHM. p. 444.). Anglosax.: Gif her vind cymð *vestan oððe eástan, súðan oððe norðan* (CAEDM. 804.). þæt man veorðige hæðene *godas, and sunnan oððe mōnan, fyre oððe flodwáter, vyllas oððe stānas* (LEGG. CRET. I, B. 5.).

3. The adversative coordination leaves wide play for the asyndetic antithesis. Forasmuch as *and* is found in such an opposition, particularly before the negative member, we may here behold in part a substitute for copulative coordination.

- a. An adversative member often appears asyndetically, which makes itself felt in various manners as a limitation of the preceding one.

Death but intombs the body: *Life the soul* (YOUNG, N. Th. 3, 458.). Earth trembles ere her yawning jaws devour; And smoke betrays the wide — consuming fire: *Ruin from man is most conceal'd when near* (3, 221.). You met me as your foe. *Depart my friend* (BULW., Richel. 1, 2.). Laws die, *Books never* (ib.). Rome wants still a liberator — *never a usurper* (Rienzi 2, 8.). The meaning, *not the name* I call (MILT., P. L. 7, 5.). They made an exile — *not a slave* of me (BYR., Proph. of Dante 1.). The Titan looks as ever, firm, *not proud* (SHELLEY, Prometh. Unb. 1.).

Old-Engl.: Bi-foren he þe bimedned, *bi-hinden he þe scarned* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 176.). Ere was I blynde, *now may I se* (TOWN. M. p. 231.). Hallsax.: þa brude deade iwearð, *þe child wes iboren isund* (LAJAM. I. 13.). Anglosax.: He fela findeð, *fēa beoð gecorene* (COD. EXON. 105, 28.). Symle ge habbað þearfan mid eov . . *me ge symle nabbað*

(MARC. 14, 7.). "Tô ure anlicnysse." Þær is seô ánnys; tô áure anlicnysse, ná tô þrin anlicnyssum (BASIL., Hexam. 11.). Ic ville mildheortnesse nās onsāgdnesse (MATH. 9, 13.). Þāt þis is sōð nales leas (COD. EXON. 263, 28.).

- b. In the relation of negation the affirmative follows the negative member with emphasis.

Not simple conquest, *triumph is his aim* (YOUNG, M. Th. 5, 811). This is not my fault, *It is my destiny* (LONGF. I. 205.). It was not enough for Julian to have delivered the provinces of Gaul from the barbarians of Germany, *he aspired to emulate the glory of the most illustrious of conquerors* (GIBBON, Decl. 13.). 'Tis not on the bed of rose, Love can find the best repose; *In my heart his home thou'lt see* (TH. MOORE p. 259.). Instead of the at once adversative and copulative *not only . . . but*, in the negative member, *not only* is likewise employed, with the omission of *but* in the cutbidding member: Not only does he master it, and ride with calmer, more assured grace, — *he seems so bent on reaching the goal* that he scarcely thinks of anything else (LEWES, G. I. 66.).

Old-Engl.: Wot no mon þe time . . . *Drittin hit one wot* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 175.). Ne say þu hit pin arege; *seit pin sadilbouce and ridþe singende* (I. 176.). Anglosax.: Nellen ge gold-hordjan eov gold-hordas on eorðan . . . *gold-hordjað eov sōðlice gold-hordas on heofenan* (MATH. 6, 19.). Ne gelyfe ve nā for þinre sprāce; *ve sylfe gehýrdon*, and ve viton þāt he is sōð middan eardes Hælend (JOH. 4, 42.).

4. A member of speech asyndetically connected may also stand in the causal relation to a preceding one.

- a. It may contain the real or the logical cause of the preceding one.

You may be gone; *it is not good you tarry here* (SHAKSP., Merry W. 1, 2.). Death is victory; *It binds in chains the raging ills of life* (YOUNG, N. Th. 3, 495.). Zuleika started not, nor wept, *Despair benumb'd her breast and eye* (BUR., Bride 2, 23.). You shall not die. *France needs you* (BULW., Richel. 1, 2.). They . . . longer yet would weep and wake, *He sings so wild and well* (BYR., Bride 2, 28.). Upon a gravelled yard, *Where two gaunt trees, rattled rather than rustled, their leaves were so smoke-dried* (DICKENS, Dombey a. S. 1, 3.).

Old-Engl.: Whatsoever the carpenter answerde, It was for nought, *no man his resoun herde* (CHAUC., C. T. 3841.). Be not abast, *God is oure freynd* (TOWN. M. p. 64.). Adoun he moste, *he wes therinne* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 274.). Reste nevede he non, *The love wes so strong* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 2.). I slombred into a slepyng, *It swayed so murye* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 1.). Ne triste no man to hem, *so false theih bath in the bile* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 339.). Halfsax.: þe king nom þat writ on hond & he hit wroðliche bi-heold; *seolcuð him puhte arulcere speche* (LAȜAM. I. 21.). Anglosax.: Him nās nān þearf þāt ænig man sæde gevitnesse be men; *he viste witōðlice hvāt vās on men* (JOH. 2, 25.). Ne geunret þu ālpeōðige, *ge wæron ālpeōðie on Egiptā-lande* (EXON. 22, 21.).

- b. The consequence also resulting from the preceding one, may also be uttered by an asyndetic member.

It will be dangerous to go on; *no farther* (SHAKSP., Coriol. 3, 1.). The law is just, most reasonable — I framed that law myself — *I will maintain that law!* (SHERID. KNOWLES, Virgin. 3, 3.). This is so great a favour, *I don't know how to receive it* (SOUTHERN, Oroon. 2, 1.). The stings are swept with such a pow'r so loud, *The storm of music shakes th'astonished crowd* (COWP. p. 14.).

We commonly find, in the sentence preceding the inference, a determination of kind or of degree, like *so*, *such*, so that the consequence is adapted to represent a consecutive dependent sentence with *that*. It is, however, to be observed that in the asyndetic sentences, which contain a reason, only a mere inversion of these sentences is often met with. See a. In Old-English both kinds of construction, in which *that* with the demonstrative particle *so* contains the reasons of the other, is frequently employed, although they seem quite absent in Anglosaxon. Old-Engl.: Ich hire love, *hit mot me spille* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 8.). The day goth fast, *I wol no longer lette* (CHAUC., C. T. 5537.). *De luttele mon he his so rei, ne mai non him wonien nei* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 188.). So harde to our knyght he droff, *Hys schelde in twoo peses roff* (RICH. C. DE L. 503.). So wis he was in dede, of body so valiant, *With dynt of suerd & drede he mad pam recreant* (LANGT. I. 9.). He was so strong, *ther might no man him lette* (CHAUC., C. T. 15602.). It is so hie, *we may not ride* (TOWNS. M. p. 38.). The logical inference is indeed at all times to be found in a loose connection. Halfsax.: Lauine hehte his leuemon, *pene castel he clepede Lauinion* (LAŶAM. I. 9.). Anglosax.: Sarai vās untȳmende, *nāfde heó nān bearn* (GEN. 11, 30.).

II. The Subordination of Sentences.

The dependent sentences, as the periphrasis of a member of a sentence, may be regarded as the development of a substantive, of an adverb, or of an adjective into a complete sentence. Dependent sentences are therefore divided into substantive sentences, adverbial sentences and adjective sentences, not so much to denote thereby the transmutation of the aforesaid parts of speech into sentences, as to indicate the analogy of dependent sentences with the single parts of a whole which, in its articulation as principal and dependent sentence, receives the name of a period. The relation of the dependent to the principal sentence is effected by means of copulatives, which are various among one another, mostly particles, in great part prepositions, but also relative pronouns.

A. The members of the period receive various denominations with regard to their position.

1. When the dependent sentence precedes its principal sentence, the former is called the protasis; the latter, the apodosis. These names are ordinarily limited to the period which contains an adverbial dependent sentence; in fact that collocation comes principally under consideration even in such a case: *Because she brought him none but girls*, she thought Her husband loved her not (BEN JONS., New Inn 1, 1.). *If sir Harcourt knew this*, he would go mad (BOURCIC., Lond. Assur. 1.).

As the Shutters were not yet taken down, the Captain's first care was to have the shop opened; and when the daylight was freely admitted, he proceeded . . . to further investigation (DICKENS, *Dombey* a. S. 2, 5.).

Old-Engl.: *Whan a child hath alle his lymes*, ech lyme quik is (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 139.). *þo þis sterre was ysey*, mon wondrede ynow (R. of GL. I. 152.). Hallsax.: *3if he is him to leof*, penne wule he lijen (LAȜAM. II. 541.). Anglosax.: *þa he hit on handa hūfde*, þa frāng he hvāðer hi ealle smylte mōd and būtan eallum incan bliðe tō him hāfdon (BEDA 4, 24). *Gif hie brecað his gebodscipe*, þonne he him ābolgen vurdæð (CAEDM. 428.). Individual dependent sentences present instances.

2. If the members of the principal sentence are separated by the dependent sentence, or sentences, the dependent sentence is called an intermediate sentence.

Can'st thou, *when thou command'st the beggar's knee*, Command the health of it? (SHAKSP., *Henry V.* 4, 1.) My father, *though it was a very unusual thing with him*, grew intoxicated with liquor (FIELD., *Amelia* 1, 8.). The principal apartment, *as we have seen*, were four in number (SCOTT, *Kenilw.* 6.). The impeachment, *while it much affected Mr. Tooodle Junior*, attached to his character so justly, that he could not say a word in denial (DICKENS, *Dombey* a. S. 2, 2.). The transitions of light and darkness, *whence proceed the alternations of day and night*, are produced by this diurnal revolution (IRVING, *Hist. of N.-Y.* 1, 1.). The blood and courage, *that renowned them*, Runs in your veins (SHAKSP., *Henry V.* 1, 2.). The rich vein of melancholy, *which runs through the English character, and gives it some of its most touching and ennobling graces*, is finely evidenced in these pathetic customs (IRVING, *Sk. B. Rural Funerals*). The dependent sentence may, as a relative principal sentence, (see below) itself take an intermediate sentence, and an intermediate sentence therefore be inserted in an intermediate sentences: It was also true *that the Earl of Lauderdale, who, both from his high talents, and from the long imprisonment which he had sustained ever since the battle of Worcester, had a peculiar title to be consulted on Scottish affairs, strongly advised the king to suffer his northern subjects to retain possession of their darling form of worship* [SCOTT, *Tales of a Grandfather*. 49.). Not rarely the intermediate sentence is joined immediately to the copulative, (so too to the relative pronoun) of the dependent sentence: If they do this, *As, if God please, they shall*, my ransom then Will soon be levied (SHAKSP., *Henry V.* 4, 3.). It was a common saying in his troop *that when the Captain laughed, he was sure to punish* (COOPER, *Spy* 18.). I leave you till my lord's arrival with good Master Richard Varney, *who, as I think, hath somewhat to say to you* (SCOTT, *Kenilw.* 6.). The enclosure of the intermediate by the principal sentence has been named the period in the stricter sense.

This periodologic treatment of the period constitutes no inessential side of the cultivated language, especially of its prose, although it has not, in the modern languages generally, obtained the extension which belonged

to it in the classical tongues. It was also not wanting to Old-English and obtrudes itself especially with relative sentences, but it keeps itself within narrower bounds. Old-Engl.: *Monie mo wheolpes þen ich habbe i-nempned*, haveð þe liun of prude i-hweolped (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 66.). *I þisse wilderness wende ure loverdes folc, asc Exode telleð, touward tet eadie londe of Jerusalem (ib.)*. *ʒursten-dai ich herde saie. As ich wende bi the waie, Of oure sire (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 4.)*. *O partie of the crowne of oure Lord, wherwith he was crowned, and on of the nayles . . . ben in France (MACNEEV. p. 12.)*. The tridde cause, *that oughte to moue a man to contricioun*, is drede of the day of doome (CHAUC., C. T. p. 186. II.). The insertion of an intermediate in a dependent sentence, especially immediately after a copulative, is early favoured in a few cases: *Strong batayle smyte pere . . . so þat atte laste þo hii ne seye oper won, hii gonne to fle faste (R. OF GL. I. 170.)*. For sothely whan we so done, drede to synne is taken away, *as a servant whan he bourdith with his mayster leesith his drede to offendyn hym (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 43)*. *Wexing euer beþ oure fon bi water and by londe, þat, ʒef we abydeþ longe, we schal hem not at stonde (R. OF GL. I. 155.)*. *Ihesus Sirac saith that if a wif have maistrie, sche is contrarious to hir housbond (CHAUC., C. T. p. 152. II.)*. The secounde cause . . . is this, *that, as seith seint Petre, who so doth synne is thral of sinne (p. 186. II.)*. Knowe ʒee, Cristeu men, *that as Crist God and man is bothe weye, trewþ, and lif . . . so Crist dude nothings to us but effectuely in weye of mercy (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 42)*. Halssax: *Swa wass filledd opennli þatt word tatt ær wass cwidedd, þatt Godess folc, Iudiskenn folc, þatt Godess laʒness heldenn, Aʒʒ sholdenn habbenn allderrmenn etc. (ORM 281.)* Forr þatt he wolde tacnenn þatt *whase wile horrgheenn ben Himm birrp hiss herrte [turnnenn] (19774.)*. The Anglo-saxon, whose cultivated prose excels in syntactical adroitness the Old-English, which was again forming itself in mixing with new elements, frequently concedes a place to the intermediate sentence: *Ac sume dæge on ærne mergen. þa he of slepe aʒoc, he aʒrac into þam būre (APOLLON. OF T. p. 1.)*. *Seo fostor-mōdor sōðlice þa þa heo gehyrde þat þat mæden hire deaðes girnde, þa cliopode heo hi hire tō (p. 2.)*. *Seo eorðe sōna svā svā hyre God bebead stōd mid holtum āgrōven (BASIL., Hexam. 6.)*. *Þa sceolde he, gif he volde, vurfjan his scyppend (10)*. *He vyle ofslean, gif him svā byð gerymed, þone unscyldigan for his sceatta pingon (Admonit. 9.)*. *Ac þu ne miht svā þeah, þeah þu svā micclum dvelige, gedon þat heora ægre unmihtigre beo þonne ālmihtig god (Hexam. 3.)*. *Se iunga man þe þu āfter aʒsōdeʒt is fōrliden man (APOLLON. OF T. p. 14.)*. *Þa mid þām burhvarum and þam fultume, þe him vestan com, fōron eāst tō Beāmfleōte (SAX. CHR. 894.)*. The intermediate sentence is also inserted in the dependent sentence: *God ge-cvāð, þat elc syn þe nære ofer eorðan ge-bēt, sceolde beon ou pyssere vorulde gedemed (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 278.)*. *Þonne gif þu þat vilnast þat þu of þe þa ær gefremedan synna āþvean vylt, þonne scealt þu pinne lichaman þurh forhāfnyssse vāccan; forþon svā mycclre svā þu hēr on vorulde svýðor svīnest, svā þu eft byst on ecnyssse fāstlicor getrymed (S. GUTALAC 5)*. *Ac hit vās svā þeah þat gif he tōbræce þat litte bebod, þat he være svýðan sōna deaðlic (BASIL., Hexam. 16.)*.

3. If a principal sentence, which may also be amplified into a period, appears in the manner of an intermediate sentence, it is called a parenthesis. But this not only separates the members of a sentence, but also comes between sentences, and may contain preliminary or supplemental observations, incidental re-

flections, illustrations, exclamations, asseverations &c. In modern times they are mostly separated from the context of speech by marks of parenthesis, although these are also used to part off members of speech, such as dependent sentences, adverbial determinations &c., in order to keep the relation of the more remote members of a sentence to one another more clear. The parenthesis, in the meaning above denoted, belongs to all periods of the language. It becomes more frequent in modern times. It borders partly on the principal sentence, appearing for a dependent one, partly on the principal sentence, which takes another, instead of a dependent sentence. When appearing elliptically it touches adverbial determinations of the sentence.

Write to him (*I will subscribe*) gentle adieus, and greetings (SHAKSP., *Ant. a. Cleop.* 4, 5.). I am grieved for you, That any chance of mine should thus defeat Your (*I must needs say*) most deserving travails (BEN JONS., *The Fox* 5, 1.). You have a gift, sir, (*thank your education,*) Will never let you want (ib.). Sir, tho' (*I thank God for it*) I do hate Perfectly all this town, yet etc. (DUNNE, *Sat.* 2, 1.). A female servant, who, with my wife (*she had heard the sudden cries of my patient*) instantly made her appearance (WARREN, *Diary* 2, 5.). As good luck would have it (*Tom always said he had great good luck*) the assistant chanced that very afternoon to be on duty by himself (DICKENS, *M. Chuzzlew.* 1, 5.). The friend (*it was a woman*) sobbed (LEWES, *G.* II. 241.). In the temper of Bacon, — *we speak of Bacon the philosopher, not of Bacon the lawyer and politician*, — there was a singular union of audacity and sobriety (MACAUL., *Essays* III. 133.). The following pages will, *it is hoped*, furnish evidence for such a judgment (I. 4.). The sympathies of a Protestant, *it is true*, will naturally be on the side of the Albigensians (MACAUL., *Hist. of E.* I. 44.). — The Gaelic or Irish bards, *we are also aware*, occasionally strolled into the Lowlands (SCOTT, *Minstralsy* I. 31.). The position held by the corps of dragoons, *we have already said*, was a favourite place of halting with their commander (COOPER, *Spy* 16.). In the last cases the parenthetical sentence may be regarded as the principal sentence, to which the interrupted sentence is related as the logical subject or object.

This is always the case with the verbally cited contents of a speech or of a thought, into which a principal sentence with a verb of predication or of thinking, partly in the inverted form, is inserted, and which may besides come at the end, so that no parenthesis of the kind above cited here takes place.

For who, *say they*, doth hear? (Ps. 59, 7.) "The vile old person", *said the eldest of the old maids*, "to take away so good a man's character." (BULW., *Maltrav.* 4, 5.) "O God! O God!" *cried Alice, in agony*; "what shall I do?" (4, 6.) Comp. "What's that to you?" *said I*. "It is to me," *says he* (FR. GENTLEMAN, *Tobaccoist* 2, 1.). "A very unpleasant line of character, I should think?" *said Nicholas* (DICKENS, *N. Nickleby* 2, 17.). "She has

left me to come off as I may," thought Wayland (SCOTT, Kenilw. 20.).

Old-Engl.: He sende aboute ys messageres . . forte wyte, How mony schiren weren in eche lond, & townes in eche schire, And how mony men in eche toun, (*he was a gret sire*) And þat ech mon paide a peny (R. or Gl. I. 60.). A quoynte maistre of þe Saxones (*Rope was ys name*) To Passence wende anon (I. 150.). My lord your fader (*God his soule blesse*) And youre moder . . Han in my hous been (CHAUC., C. T. 16781.). Halfsax.: Ær ich hider uore, *nis hit nawhit zære*, Octaues ure king i Lundene heold his husting (LAȜAM. II. 56.). Wið innen ane zere, *nes þer first na mare*, iwað þe king Gracien gumene forcuðest (II. 86.). Þho wass swinnfull, *witt tu wel*, Inn alle gode dedess (ORM. 2621.). Anglo-sax.: Cwædon him men tō , . "Hvāt þāt is vundor, brōðer Drythelm" — *vās þāt þās veres nama* — "þāt þu svā micle rēðnesse cyles ænige rihte āræfnan miht." (BEDA 5, 13.) Vit þāt gecwædon cniht-vesende and gebeotodon — *væron begen þā giū on geðgoðfeore* — þāt vit on gārsecg ut aldrum nēðdon (BEOV. 535. Grein.). Gang þā āfter flōre fyrdrvyrðe man mid his handscale — *healcudu dymede* — þāt he pone visan vordum nægde freān Ingvina (1316. id.). Thus the parenthesis is often inserted between the principal and the dependent sentence in poetry. Sege nu, *ic þe bidde*, þāt þu min svuster sig (GEN. 12, 13.). For þam þe ne mæg se unmaga þam magan, *ve viton*, ful georne gelice byrðene āhebban (LEGG. Cnut. I. B. 66.).

The apparently parenthetical insertion of the sentence with the verb of the preterite &c. into verbal citation of speech has been in use from ancient times alongside of other positions of this sentence Old-Engl.: "þe prynce," *he seide*, "oþer kyng nys to preysse noȝt" (R. or R. I. 57.). "Oure bileue," *quop þis oper*, "in þe hȝe Godes ys ydo." (I. 112.). "Sonne", *said scho*, "neuer more trowe þe traytours tale." (LANGT. II. 269.). "Certeyn, felawe," *quath the frere*, "withouten any fayle" etc. (P. PLOUGHM. p. 457.). "No," *quod Pacience patiently* (p. 275.). Anglosax.: Hvāter þu nu vene, *ongan se visdōm eft spelligan*, þāt þās cyninges gefērræden . . mæge ænigne mon gedōn veligne . . ? (BEOTH. 29.) Beatus vir etc. þāt ys on englisc: Eādīg man bið, *cwæð he*, se þe hēr on vorulde manigfealdlice gesvincnyssse and earfoðnyssse dreogeð (T. GUTHMAC 2.). — *Quoth*, at present often used pleonastically in the lower mode of speaking, rests upon *quoth* (*he, she*), formerly superfluously added. Old-Engl.: The womman *answerde*, of the fruyt, *quod she*, of the trees in Paradys we feede us (CHAUC., C. T. p. 191. I.). Of which that David *saieth*, I say, *quod David*, I purposid fermely to shryve me (190. II.). Comp. Anglosax.: *Andswarode* he bilevitlice, forþon he vās bilevitre gleāvnnesse and gemetfāstre gecynde man, *cwæð ce*, "cealdran ic geseah." (BEDA 5, 13.).

4. The compass of a period is determined by the contents, which the speaker wishes to present, in the total picture of a series of sentences concluded within itself. It has its measure partly in the material, partly in the perspicuity and clearness of the thoughts in their concatenation.
 - a. The simplest form of the period consists in the connection of a principal with a dependent sentence.
 - b. But one principal sentence may also appear in combination with several dependent ones.
 - a. The dependent sentences in this combination may be of like degree and coordinated to one another, when they appear either complete or abbreviated by contraction:

The Lord shall send upon thee cursing . . . until thou be destroyed and until thou perish quickly (DEUTER. 28, 20.). It seems natural that they should have been friendly to each other, and that they should have lived as one people under the same government (SCOTT, *Tales of a Grandfath.* 1.). Parties on Parties find that they cannot work together, cannot exist together (CARLYLE, *Fr. Revol.* 3, 3, 1.). In his old age Diogenes was taken captive by pirates, who carried him to Crete and exposed him for sale, as a slave (LEWES, *Hist. of Philos.* II. 23.). We miss, too, those hideous forms which make so striking a part of the description of Bunyan, and which *Salvator Rosa* would have loved to draw (MACAUL., *Essays* II. 2.).

The contraction of homogeneous dependent sentences, and the nonrepetition of the conjunction beside a copulative with the sentence otherwise complete is usual, though not necessary. Old-Engl.: He sywede myd þe Brytones vp þe Romaynes so faste *þat* *vr* kyng him louede & ys herte al vp hym caste (R. or GL. I. 63.). Therfore somme men seyn, that he deyed noughte, but that he resteth there til the day of doom (MACDEV. p. 22.). Therfore it semethe wel. that theise hilles passen the clowdes, and joynen the pure cyr (p. 17.). Now pray I yow alle that heren this litel tretis or reden it (CHACC., C. T. p. 211. II.). Halfsax.: Speke wi of Arðure æðelest kinge, *þa* *þe* he bisoht hæfde his peines sele, and ælc wes ham iuare (LAJAM. III. 7). Anglosax.: Hi þa . . . sædon, *þæt* he on efnunge ge-vite, and *þæt* his lic læge on flora ealle *þa* niht oð hancréd (WRIGHT A. HALLIW. I. 277.). For minum þingum þu geheolde þas vâlreôvnesse, *þæt* ic purh þe gevurðe vâlla and þearfa, and *þæt* se vâlreôva cyng me þij eadde forðon mihte (APOLLON. OF T. p. 11.). Þas gifu sealde seô ceastervaru on Tharsum Apollonio þam Tiriscan, forþam *þe* he folc of hungre âlêde, and heora ceastre gystaðolode (p. 10.). Hyge vâs oncyrrred, *þæt* hie ne marddon æfter mandreðme . . . ac hie hæg and gârs for meteleaste mēðe gedrêhte (ANDR. 36.).

- β. Or they are not of like degree, but stand to one another in the relation of subordination. In relation, therefore, to the dependent sentence subordinated to it, a dependent sentence becomes a relative principal sentence, to which the bearer of the whole period is superordinated as an absolute principal sentence. The gradation of sentences may go still further, so that a relative sentence of the second order is given to the relative principal sentence. Further gradations, however, make the speech heavy and readily disturb, especially when they are of like kind, the lucidity of the whole period: We are no tyrant, but a Christian kind. *Unto whose grace our passion is as subject, As are our wretches fetter'd in our prisons* (SHAKSP., *Henry V.* 1, 2.). Sooner may a cheap whore, *who hath been worn out by as many several men in sin As are black feathers or musk-colour'd hose*, Name her child's right true father 'mongst all those (DORNE, *Sat.* 1, 53.). The very insects *as they sipped the dew that gemmed the tender grass of the meadows*, joined in the joyous epithalamium (IRVING, *Hist. of N.-Y.* 2, 4.). This is an eminently beautiful and

splendid edition *which well deserves all that the printer and the engraver can do for it* (MACAUL., *Essays* II. 1.). *When they came to countries where the inhabitants were cowardly*, they took possession of the land (SCOTT, *Tales of a Grandfath.* 2.). — *I, that am curtail'd thus of fair proportion . . . And that so lamely and unfashionably, That dogs bark at me*, as I halt by them; Why I, in this weak piping time of peace Have no delight to pass away the time etc. (SHAKSP., *Rich.* III. 1. 1.). This is especially suitable *when the scene is laid during the old days of merry England, when the guests were in some sort not merely the inmates, but the messmates and temporary companions of mine Host*, who was usually a personage of privileged freedom etc. (SCOTT, *Kenilw.* 1.).

Old-Engl.: At 140 paas, is a depe cave . . . *where seynt Petre hidde him, whanne he had forsaken oure Lord* (MAUNDEV. p. 92.). He is þat soðe liht, þe lihteð alle men, þe on þis worold cumeð (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., *Rel. Ant.* I. 128.). — But there ben manye mo, that wil not, that men knowen, that thei ben Cristene (MAUNDEV. p. 239.). *If that a wyf couthe kepe hir al chast, bi licence of hir housebonde, so that sche geve non occasioun that he agilt*, it were to hir a gret merit (CHAUC., *C. T.* p. 207. II.). Half-sax.; & swar muchelne oð þat nolde he þonne faren ar his feo[n]-den feie weore (LAJAM. I. 13.). Anglosax.: Ic . . . eov cyðe þæt ic gelife þæt ge villan beon gemindige þissere fremfulnessse (APOLLON. OF T. p. 9.). Paulus . . . ávrát þe hym sylfum þæt he vere ge-læd up tō heofonum áððæt he becom tō þære þrid-dan heofonan (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., *Rel. Ant.* I. 276.). Þā viðer-vinnan evedon þæt hit unrihtlic være, þæt se man þe unriht ge-pafude sceolde bútan vite tō reste faran (I. 217.).

- γ. Finally, the dependent sentences subordinated to the same principal sentence may stand to one another neither in the relation of coordination nor in that of subordination, but be in a condition of grammatical indifference towards one another: *Shine out, fair sun, till I have bought a glass, That I may see my shadow as I pass* (SHAKSP., *Rich.* III. 1. 2.). *When he returned home*, he found his son and daughter far more despondent even than he had left them (WARREN, *Now a. Then* 2.).

Old-Engl.: *Whan thei fynde the flessche fatte*, than thei seyn, *that it is wel don*, to senden him sone to Paradyss (MAUNDEV. p. 202.). þan þe sa-farinde men seð þa sa-sterre, hie wuten sone wuderward hie sullen wei holden, for þat þe storres liht is hem god tacen (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., *Rel. Ant.* I. 128.). Half-sax.: ȝif ȝe me readeð, ich hine wille freoien, ȝif he me ȝefeð gersume (LAJAM. I. 38.). Anglosax.: Mid þȳ he þær dagas vunode þā gelamp hit þæt be sum ge-writ ávrát on cartan (S. GUTHLAC 11.). The sentences grammatically indifferent towards one another either attach themselves more closely to various determinations of the principal sentence, or determine it generally in various regards.

- c. Several principal sentences may be superordinated to one or several dependent sentences, that is, the depen-

dent sentence may be in dependence from several principal sentences at the same time: "I will speak lower." — "*I pray you and beseech you, that you will.*" (SHAKSP., *Henry V.* 4, 1.) *Girondins have moved, Buzot moved long ago, from principle and also from Jesuitism*, that the whole race of Bourbons should be marched forth from the soil of France (CARLYLE, *Fr. Revol.* 3, 3, 3.).

Old-Engl.: *I holde and believe*, that God, which that is ful of justice and of rightwisnesse, hath suffred this to betyde, by juste cause resonable (CHAUC., *C. T.* p. 159. l.). Hallsax.: *pa þæ ærnde wes iseid, þæ kaisere wes ful særi mon, & astured weoren Romweren alle* (LA-ſAM. III. 3.). Anglosax.: *lc forþam halsige and bidde þone gelæredan and þone geleāffullan, gif he hēr hvylic hleaterlic vord onfinde, þāt he pāt ūs ne vīte* (S. GUTHLAG, *Prol.*).

Words of Relation in the Principal and in the Dependent Sentence.

The grammatical relation which takes place between the principal and the dependent sentence is essentially denoted by copulatives, which may be regarded as belonging to the dependent sentence, although this is not originally applicable to all these words. In formal juxtapositions like *so that*, *so as* and the like, the first element, properly belonging to the principal sentence, is readily distinguished from the second, belonging to the dependent sentence. As in the cases just denoted, dependent sentences of various kinds have, though not necessarily, a correlative in the principal sentence, so that the mutual relation of the sentences is rendered manifest in both at the same time.

If correlatives of this sort shew themselves as in part superfluous, and only serve rhetorical aims, the copulative, on the other hand, seems indispensable to the dependent sentence. Nevertheless we find that even this exponent of the relation of the sentences may be in many cases omitted, as also that in others the word of reference pertaining to the principal sentence alone undertakes the connection of the grammatical relation.

A. We consider first of all the correlatives of the dependent sentence in the principal sentence, or those words which, pointing forwards or referred back, make known the grammatical relation of the dependent to the principal sentence and the member developed into a dependent sentence, as well as those which bring this relation in general to recollection. Most of these words are in themselves of a demonstrative nature, and originally the words of reference for relative parts of speech.

1. To these correlatives the neuter pronoun *it*, as well as the demonstratives *this* and *that* may be referred, which especially refer to substantive sentences and therewith become reduplications of a dependent sentence to be conceived as a subject or an object. See Vol. II. 1. p. 21.

II. Words of Reference in the Principal and in the Dependent Sentence. 387

2. Here also belong demonstrative adverbs, as *there, thence, thither, then, therefore*, which commonly have reference to relative adverbs in the dependent sentence, which appear as copulatives.

Thus, adverbs stand in relation to sentences of the determination of space: *Where* the bee sucks, *there* suck I (SHAKSP., Temp. 5, 1.). *Where* nature deviates from that law, and strumbles Out of her limits, *there* all science errs (COLER., Wallenst. 1, 9.). *Whither* he goes, *thither* let me go (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 5, 1.);

Then refers to sentences of time: *When* night Darkens the streets, *then* wander forth the sons Of Belial (MILT., P. L. 1, 500.). *When* my father and my mother forsake me, *then* the Lord will take me up (Ps. 27, 10.). No! *when* that heart shall cease to beat, And *when* that breath at length is free; *Then*, Rosa, soul to soul we'll meet (TH. MOORE p. 62.);

then is also referred to conditional sentences: So that if a man can number the dust of the earth, *then* shall thy seed also be numbered (GEN. 13, 16.). *If* I speak false, *then* may my father perish (SHELLEY, Cyclops IV. 288.);

therefore may point to causal sentences: Man is made great or little by his own will; *Because* I am true to mine, *therefore* he dies (COLER., Wallenst. 3, 8.).

In all these cases the demonstrative particle serves the purpose of emphatic demonstration, and we even find it repeated: How? *then when* all Lay in the far-off distance, *when* the road Strech'd out before thine eyes interminably, *Then* hadst thou courage and resolve (COLER., Picc. 4, 7.).

This natural use of correlatives in the principal and in the dependent sentence is more widely diffused in the most ancient language, but is there frequently without the emphasis which the less usual employment is adapted to give it.

In the Old-English of in sentences of the determination of space the opposition of *there* (*there as*) . . . *there* and *where* (*where as*) . . . *there* is often usual. The ancient correlatives *there* . . . *there* answer both to the Latin *ibi* . . . *ubi* and to *ubi* . . . *ibi*: *Ther as* wrathe and wranglynge is, *Ther* wynne thei silver; Ac *where* is lore and leautee, Thei wol noght come *there* (P. PLOUGH. p. 67.). And *there* he loggith anon, *Ther* Darie hadde been erst apon (ALIS. 4098.). Ffor *ther* he is, *ther* wold he be (Cov. MYST. p. 323.). *Hwar ase* eni of peos was, oþer is, *þer* was oþer is þe kundel . . . of þe attri neddre of onde (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 67.). In Hallsaxon we find *þær þær*; *þær . . . þær* and *þær þær . . . þær*; *whærsum . . . þær*: Salit iss swiþe god *þær þær* itt tobelimpeþþ (ORM. 1656.). Forr *þær þær* ure Laferrd Crist Wass borenn her to manne, *þær* brohhte 3ho þe wasstme torþ etc. (1935. cf. 1931.). *Whærsum* we findenn . . . Wel birrþ uss lokenn *þær* etc. (1827.). To these answer correlatives in Anglosaxon: *þær þæt* gemynd bið, *þær* bið þæt andgyt and se vylla (THORPE, Anal. p. 65.). *þær* þin gold(hord ys, *þær* ys þin heorte (MATH. 6, 21.). *Svá hvar svá* Israhelita bearn væran, *þær* vās leóht.

With sentences of time *there* frequently stands in Old-English *whanne* (*whan*) . . . *thanne* (*thenne*, *than*) for the more ancient *þenne* . . . *þenne*. Anglosax. *þonne* . . . *þonne* (*penne* . . . *penne*): For *wanne* he his lif alre beste trowen *þenne* sal he letin lif his oþene (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel.

Ant. I. 175.). *Whan* Antoyne his resons to þe kyng said þus, *þan* spak þe barons, Sir kyng listen tille vs (LANGT. II. 257). *Whan* the sonne is in the signe of Virgo, *thanne* begynnethe the ryvere for to wane (MACNDEV. p. 44.). *ðanne* we of wenden *ðanne* is ure winter (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 215.). *Thenne* when he sye no nother won, To dethe he lette them *thenne* gon (HALLIW., Freemas. 527.). Halfsax.: *þenne* pat uul beoð icumen, *þenne* cusseoð heo þreoien (LAJAM. II. 175.). *Whan swa* cumeð neoðe . . *þenne* mæf ich suggen hu hit seoððen scal iwurðen (II. 294.). Anglos.: *þonne* se sunu vryð, *þonne* ealdað se fader (THORPE, Anal. p. 61.). *þonne* hit dagian volde, *þonne* toglād hit (SAX. CHR. 979.). The opposition of *pā* . . *pā* and *pā* *pā* . . *pā* is equally familiar, as *pā* generally is found opposed to other particles of time in the principal sentence. This also subsequently. Halfsax.: *pā* þis folc isomed wes . . *pā* sette [leg. lette] þe kaisere arimen al þære here (LAJAM. III. 6.) *pā* *pā* he wes ald mon, *pā* com him ufel on (II. 385.). *pā* *pe* he wes wel ald mon, *pō* com him uuel on (II. 50.). Anglosax.: *pā* þæt gafol gelæst vās . . *pā* tōferde se here vide (SAX. CHR. 1012.). And *pā* *pā* he slēp *pā* genam he ān ribb of his sidan (GEN. 2, 21.). *Mid þam* *pe* his geferan þās vord gehýrdon, *pā* væron hi sviðe vundrjende (S. GUTHLAC 2.). *Mid þy* he *pā* unmanige dagas þær vās, *pā* geondsceaode he *pā* þing þe tō þære stove belumpon (3.). — Thus too other particles of time are parallelized, as *ær* . . *ær*, *siððan* . . *siððan*, *pā* *hwile* *pe* . . *pā* *hwile*, of which the subsequent language still presents instances. Old-Engl.: *Myn* dede *ere* shuld I dyght *Or* it were so (TOWN. M. p. 131.). Halfsax.: *Forr* *ær* þeþ woldenn þolenn dæp . . *Ær* *þann* þeþ woldenn gilltenn ohht (ORM. 6316.). Anglosax.: *Ær* hi sind gebundene *ær* hi beon geborene (A.-S. HOMIL. II. 252.). *Syððan* hit tō þam ārise, þæt āngylð, *siððan* sý þæt vite hundtveltig scill. (LEGG. ÆLF. B. 9.). *Cirus* . . *pā* *hwile* *pe* Sabine und Rōmāne vunnon on þam vestrdele, *pā* *hwile* vann he ægðer ge on Scyððige ge on Indje (OROS. in ETTM. 7, 13.).

thanne, *thenne* in the principal sentence, may from the earliest times refer to the conditional sentence. Old-Engl.: *Ef* it so belimpit lo . . e þat ge wurpen, *þanne* wot þi fend þad her wiste þi frend (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 179.). Ac *gif* þu havist a frēnd to day and to moreuin drivist him auel, *þenne* bes þu one al so þu her were; and *þanne* is þi fe for-loren and þi frend bothen (I. 181.). Anglosax.: *Gif* ic sōð sprāce *þonne* sceal Dauides dōhtor sveltan stānum āstyrfd (CON. EXOS. 12, 24.). *Gif* ic ænegum þegne þeoden mādmas geāra forgeāfe . . *þonne* he me nā on leofran tid leānum ne meahte mine gife gylðan (CAEDM. 407; in GRIN 409.). *þeah* þu þonne sēce his stove *þonne* ne findst þu hý (PS. 36, 10.). With other dependent sentences also with relative pronouns or particles, which border on or pass into the conditional meaning, *þonne* is employed in the principal sentence *Se* *pe* *ville* eard rihtlice clænsjan and unriht ālecgan and rihtvysnesse lufjan, *þonne* mōt he georne pillices styran and pillice āscūnjan (LEGG. CANT. I. B. 7.). *Svā* *hvā* *svā* mid fullan villan his mōd vent tō þām yfum, *pe* he *ær* forlēt, and hi *þonne* fullfremeð . . *þonne* forlýst he eall his ærran gōd (BROT. 35, 6.). Ac *þær* *þær* hi gōde beoð, *þonne* beoð hi þurh þās gōðan mannes gōd gōde, þe him gōd mid vryeð (16.).

Reference was formerly made to causal sentences of various kinds by *for* *thi*, answering to *therefore*. Old-Engl.: *Sen* it is his wille . . *For* *thi* I red thi sorowe thou slake (TOWN. M. p. 224.). Halfsax.: *Forr* *þi* seððe Gabriæl þu shalt an sune streonenn, *For* *patt* hiss sune sholde ben Biginning off *patt* blisse (ORM. 703.). In Anglosaxon *for* *pam* (*þy*) . . *for* *pam* correspond to each other. And *for* *pam* man nemde þā stove Babel, *for* *pam* þær væron tōdælede ealle sprāca (GEN. 11, 9.). Nu hāfð heo (sc. seððe sāv) *for* *þy* Godes anlicnyse on hyre *for* *pam* *pe* heo hāfð preo þing on hyre untōdæledlice vrycende (THORPE, Anal. p. 65.).

3. Adversative particles, which appear in the relation of coordination, as *yet*, *still*, *nevertheless*, have for along time been used, along with concessive sentences, in the principal sentence instead of other correlative particles. In modern times *yet* and *still* particularly appear here.

Tho' women first were made for men, *Yet* men were made for them agen (BUTL., Hud., The Lady's Answ. 239.). *Though* my hopes may have fail'd, *yet* they are not forgot; *Though* cold is my heart, *still* it lingers with you (BYR. p. 305.). But *although* Edward eagerly carried the gun for one season, *yet* when practice had given him some dexterity, the pastime ceased to afford him amusement (SCOTT, Waverl. 4.). *Howe'er* my tongue thy softness wounds, *Yet* I must prove all true to thee (BYR., Bride 2, 17.). But *although* the victory over Barnaby Rudge . . . procured me an enforced respect, *still* the Domine's good-will towards me was the occasion of a settled hostility (MARRYAT, Jac. Faithf. 1, 4.).

In Old-English we particularly meet with *yet*, *natheles* (also *yet natheles*), *never the lasse*: *Though* we killen the cat, *Yet* sholde ther come another (P. PLOUGH. p. 12.). *Though* he were strong, *yet* was sche stronger (CHAUC., C. T. 16007.). For *alle thoughe* it were so, that he was not cristned, *zet* he lovede Cristene men (MAUNDEV. p. 84.). And *alle be it* that men fynden gode dyamandes in Ynde, *zet natheles* men fynden hem more comounly upon the roches in the see (p. 158.). *They that* hyt be be so . . . *nevere the lasse* thay turne alle untylle an ende (p. 128.). *poh* (*pat*) . . . *poh* formerly corresponded. Halssax.: Forr *pohh patt* þo wass hali; wif, *pohh wass* þo micle lahre þann ure lafdi; Marje wass (ORM. 2663.); also: Annd *tohh swa pehh pohh* all folc neh All haffde Godd forlætenn, *pohh ræh* himm off hiss hanndewerc (18879.) see p. 368. Anglosax.: Ac *peah* þu nu fier sie þonne þu wære, ne eart þu *peah* ealles of þam earde adrifen (BOETH. 5, 1.). *peah* hi gesibsumlice hwilum wið me sprecað *peah* swiðe fæcenlice (Ps. 34, 20.).

4. *So* and kindred notions occur as correlatives in the principal sentence, which are to be considered with the single dependent sentences.
5. As to the correlatives of the adjective sentence, see details in the discussion of this dependent sentence.
- B. The members of the period, formally characteristic of the dependent sentence as such, the conjunctions, whose employment is taken into consideration with the various classes of dependent sentences, do not absolutely make known the definite logical reference of the sentences. The same conjunctions may therefore appear in various sorts of dependent sentences. This depends upon their transfer from one notional sphere to the other, which, in the given case, is to be known from the context of the series of thoughts.
1. But the discussion of the particle *that* is of especial importance, primarily in the combinations into which it has entered with other particles, and from which it for the most part separates in the modern language, although it has remained in many combinations admissible, and in some necessary.

This conjunction is nothing else but the originally demonstra-

tive neuter pronoun *pāt*, which has passed into the relative meaning and partly operates by itself combiningly as a word of relation; partly, when attached to prepositions and adverbs, gives to these a virtue for combining sentences, or supports their conjunctive nature. Like the Gr. *ὅτι*, Lat. *quod*, Fr., Span., Port. *que*, Ital. *che*, *that* may be denoted a sentence relative. The English *that* primarily took in the dependent sentence the place of the Anglosaxon particle *pāt*, Old- and Middle-Highdutch *daz*, Goth. *patei*, compounded with *ei*, operating as a relative, where it constituted of itself the particle of the dependent sentence, answering, not merely to a nominative and accusative, but also to other cases. It then took the place of that case of the same pronoun combined with particles, particularly with prepositions, to which the relative *pe* was usually added, as well as sometimes to *pāt* in *pätte*, — *for pam pe*, *við pam pe*, *ær pam pe*, *āfter pam pe*, *tō pam pe*, *for þy pe*, — also replaced the simple *pe* in *pā pe*, *peðh pe*, and was at last transferred to all conjunctions which in Anglosaxon entered into combination neither with a case of *pāt* nor of *pe*. Besides, not only *pāt* instead of *pe* combines with the preceding pronoun, as in *for þy pāt*, *purh pāt pāt* (whence the reduplication *patt tatt* in Hallsaxon), but we also meet with the interchange of *pāt* and *pe* immediately after the preposition, as in *ôð pāt* and *ôð pe*. The equal employment of *that* instead of the various cases might also be thus supported. Some influence upon the Old-English usage of *that* may be ascribed to Old-French with its compound particles *com que*, *combien que*, *dementres que*, *manes que*, *deci que*, *si la que*, *tantost que* and others; but it is in itself intelligible, and was further extended than that of *que*. Moreover how early *that* could be rejected, even where an original relative of the sentence was at the root, is taught by the instances given in discussing the dependent sentences singly.

The employment of *that* in combination with particles has been progressively diminishing in Modern-English.

- a. The particles which have come down as prepositions, and have passed into a prepositional employment with *that* following them, are primarily to be remarked, and *that* comes down, in a certain measure, into Modern-English, although indispensable only in a few cases

after that. *After that* things are set in order here, We'll follow them (SHAKSP., I Henry VI. 2, 2.). Then the word of the Lord came to Jeremiah, *after that* the king had burned the roll (JEREM. 36, 27 ff. 34, 8. GEN. 13, 14. EXOD. 7, 25. ACTS 1, 2.).

Old-Engl.: At *pe laste dyede Brut*, *po al þis was ydo*, *Aftur pat he com to Engelond in po four & twentipe jor* (R. OF GL. I. 23. cf. 47. 142.). Now *afre that* men han visited the holy places, thanne will thei turnen toward Jerusalem (MAUNDEV. p. 63. cf. 67. 70. 92. 122. 245.). That men don deedly synne *after that* they have receyved baptisme (CHAUC., C. T. p. 185. II.). Hallsax.: Forlurenn þeþre steorne *Afterr patt teþ* hemm turrdenn ut Off þeþre rihhte weþe (ORM. 6581.). *Patt manninn for till helle All afterr patt tatt Adam*

for (ib. Intr. 49.). Anglosax.: *After þam þe Moises vrāt þisse æ ge-
bodu and þā gefilde, he bebeod Levies kynne* (DEUTER. 31, 22.).

before that. Then take my soul; my body, soul, and all,
Before that England give the French the foil (SHAKSP., I Henry
VI. 2, 2. cf. 4, 4.).

Old-Engl.: *Bifore that* Abraham was made, I am (WYCL., Joh. 8,
58.). This cytee founded Helizeus Damascus . . *before that* Ysaac
was born (MAUNDEV. p. 123.). That thei told me. *before that* I wente
toward Ynde (p. 224.). Hallsax.: þatt Drihhtin wass full cweme . .
Biforenn þatt to Laferrd Crist Wass borenn her to manne (ORM. 965.
cf. 6380. 12624. 12632.). In Anglosaxon *ær þam þe, ær þe, ær þy,*
ær are here usual.

ere that. *Ere that* we will suffer such a prince . . To be
disgraced by an inkhorn mate, We, and our wives, and chil-
dren, all will fight (SHAKSP., I Henry VI. 3, 1.). *Ere that*
the world confuses me with those Poor wrethees . . This age
and after ages speak my name With hate and dread (COLER.,
Picc. 4, 7.).

In the older language we meet, alongside of *that* after *er, or,* also
than, thanne, which points to the forms *þan, þon,* in use alongside
of *þan.* Old-Engl.: Schryff and hosel thou grand me bo, *þer that* y
schall hennus go (HALLIW., Freemas. 647.). *Or that* we myghte come
ther, Men off rycheeste kynne wer slawe (RICH. C. DE L. 3620.). This
kyng seythe every day devoutly 300 preyes to his God, *or that* he
ete (MAUNDEV. p. 197. cf. CHAUC., C. T. 36, 3630.). *Or that* this
might [leg. night] be gone Alone wille ye leyf me (TOWNS. M. p. 181.
cf. 183.). — [Take] thou horsmen and vyttayle *Er thanne* thou the
toun asayle (RICH. C. DE L. 4099. cf. 4243.). I have enterly desyrryd
to kepe my mawndé Among sow *er than* I suffre my passyon (Cov.
MYST. p. 271.). Hallsax.: He þatt wass full off Haliȝ Gast *Ær þann*
he borenn wære (ORM. 813. cf. 1965. 6318. 8111 &c.). Anglosaxon:
And ic þe bletsige *ær þam þe* ic svelte (GEN. 27, 4.). For þan þe
ic nān þing ne dō *ær þon þe* þu þyder cume (19, 22). Mynte, þāt
he gedælde *ær þon* dāg cōme . . ānra gehvylces lif við lice (BEOV
1466.).

till that. Following . . *Till that* to the sea-coast at length
she her addrest (SPENS., F. Qu. 3, 4. 6. cf. 3, 4, 11.). O, fly
to Scotland *Till that* the nobles, and the armed commons,
Have of their puissance made a little taste (SHAKSP., II Henry
IV. 2, 3. cf. 4, 4.).

Old-Engl.: Up he teō *til* ðat he ðe hevene seō (WRIGHT A. HAL-
LIW., Rel. I. 210.). Na word þan sal þe quether sune, *Til þat* þai
be alle fallen dune (ANTICR. 498.). But Loveday þet schul they make
none, *Tyl tath* the werke day be clene a-gone (HALLIW., Freemas. 313.).
Wente forth . . *Til that* he cam to Tolomew (ALIS. 7777.). Moste
non out off Acres toun, *Tyl that* payde wer her rounsoun (RICH. C.
DE L. 3309. cf. MAUNDEV. p. 114. 179. 267. CHAUC., C. T. 3655.
15617. 15704.). Hallsax.: Fra þatt Adam wass . . Anan *till þatt* itt
cumenn wass Till Cristess dæþ o rode (ORM., Intr. 3.). Annd swa
þeȝ leddenn heore lif *Till þatt* teȝ wærenn alde (ORM. 125. cf. 9147.).
Beside it stands to *that*: That ye lyg stone styлле to *that* I have doyn
(TOWNS. M. p. 105.), answering to the Anglosaxon *tō þon-þāt*: Nās þā
long *tō þon þāt* þē hilt-latan holt ofgeafon (BEOV. 5683.). It is an-

alogous to the Anglosaxon *ôð pāt*: Hig vunodon þær *ôð pāt* hig gehælede vurdon (JOS. 5, 8.).

since that. Though all that I can do, is nothing worth, *Since that* my penitence comes after all, Imploring pardon (SHAKSP., Henry V. 4, 1.). How else! *since that* the heart's unbiassed instinct Impell'd me to the daring deed (COLER., Picc. 4, 4.).

Old-Engl.: Ywis, me n'as neuer so wo, *Seththen that* y was born AMIS A. AMIL. 1070. cf. 374.). It is fulle longe *sithe that* ony man durste neyhe to the tour (MAUNDEV. p. 40. cf. 114. 146. ALIS. 5513. RICH. C. DE L. 821. IPOMYDON 207.). As many a yeer it is passed henne, *Syn that* my tappe of life bygan to renne (CHAUC., C. T. 3887.). A corresponding *sithðan pāt* is offered by Anglosaxon, where *sithðan* has not yet the character of a preposition: þā for mid him and after him svā micel folc svā næfre ær ne dide *sithðan pāt* se firste fare vās (SAX. CHR. 1128.). *From, fro that* also stands in opposition to *that*. Old-Engl.: þis was pre pousant and foure score and pre þer *From þat* þo world was first mad (R. OF GL. I 20.). *Fro that* begynnes the gospelle, Tyl the messe be sungge (RICH. C. DE L. 213.). Hallsax.: All mannkinn. *fra þatt* Adam was (ORM. Introd. I.). Að *fra þatt* Adam Godd forliet (ORM. 355. cf. 1247. 5833. 9146.).

for that often meets us in Modern-English: O, spare me not, my brother Edward's son, *For that* I was his father Edward's son (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 2, 1. cf. 1, 1. John 5, 4. I Henry VI. 2, 5.). As nothing seemde more precious in his sight: Partly, *for that* his features were so fine, Partly, *for that* he was so beautifull (GASCOYNE, Jocasta 1, 1.). My spirit shall not always strive with man, *for that* he is also flesh (GEN. 6, 3.). If, because our wrongs, *For that* they are unnatural . . Exceed all measure of belief? (SHELLEY, Cenci 3, 1.). He would rather you addressed the populace than the best priest in Christendom; *for that* other orators inflamed the crowd, and no man so stilled and dispersed them as you did (BULW., Rienzi 1, 8.). I assured him that, nothing on earth could so effectually serve him as the cultivation of calm . . ; *for that* the affection of his eyes depended almost entirely upon the condition of his nervous system (WARREN, Diary 2, 5.).

Old-Engl.: *For þat* þe was eldeste, me lokede hym best by riȝt (R. OF GL. I. 23.). It is clept Jude, *for that* Judas Machabaeus was kyng of that contree (MAUNDEV. p. 73. cf. 102.). How he destroyed the ryver of Gysen, *For that* an hors of his was dreynt therinne (CHAUC., C. T. 7662. cf. 16077.). *For that* they despyssyd hym soo, Kyng Richard swoor and was agreved (RICH. C. DE L. 4742.). Hallsax.: All þatt hird off Eleazar Wass strenedd her to manne; Annd tatt, *forr þatt* Eleazar Sextene suness hæfde (ORM. 569.). *Forrþi* wass þe Laferrd Crist Of preostess kinn on eorpe *Forr þatt* he wolde wurrþenn lac (357 cf. 457. 703.); and thus very often with *forrþi* immediately preceding it: þiss boc iss nemmedd Ormulum *Forrþi þatt* Orrm itt wrohhte (ORM. Pref. 1. cf. ORM. 579. 1208. 1392.). Anglosax.: Se hýra flýð *for þam þe* he byð áhyrod (JON. 10, 13.). Þat vās *forþþi þe* hie væron benumene ægðer ge þās ceāpes ge þās cornes (SAX. CHR. 895.). Þā forlæs [= forleās] he þāt mid rihte *for þi pāt* he hit hæfde æror bejeten mid unrihte (1127. cf. 1137.) see Causal Sentence.

11. Words of Reference in the Principal and Dependent Sentence. 393

because that may be cited. by reason of its affinity with *for that*, and of the prepositional use of *because*, although the substantive notion (*cause*), as well as the leaning upon the Fr. *à cause que*, sufficiently explains the sentence relative: Oberon is passing fell and wrath, *Because that* she, as her attendant, hath A lovely boy (SHAKSP., Mids. N. Dr. 2, 1.). I know you love them not . . . *Because that* I esteem them (COLER., Picc. 5, 3.).

Old-Engl: For he departed that ryvere in 360 smale ryveres; *because that* he had sworn, that he scholde putte the ryvere in suche poynt etc. (MACNDEV. p. 41. cf. 47. 48. 51. 94. 103. 131. 144. 153. 162. 163. 165. 188 &c.). And fand the bed, and thaughte nat but good *Bycause that* the cradil by it stood (CHAUC., C. T. 4221.). *Because that* we ar in myschefe, Thus shalle he dy (TOWN. M. p. 166.). *Because that* no frute of us dothe procede, I fere me grettly the prest wole me dysspic (Cov. MYST. p. 72.).

but that is an old combination, variously retained, the discussion of which is reserved for the Conditional Sentence.

notwithstanding that sometimes occurs in the modern language, answering to the French *nonobstant que*: These days were ages to him, *notwithstanding that* he was basking in the smiles of the pretty Mary (IRVING Wagener, Gr. p. 388.). See Concessive Sentences.

in that, which agrees with the German *indem*, but belongs to the modern language only, never appears without *that* (see the Causal sentence), likewise the Old-English *with that*, which has become rare in modern times (see the Conditional Sentence). *save that* is also an ancient combination of particles which is still in use.

The ancient language exhibits other prepositions combined with *that*. Here especially belongs *by that*, which interchanges with *by than* (then) and will be mentioned with the dependent sentence of the determination of time. *purh þat* was early lost (see the Causal Sentence); in Hallsaxon *of that* is met with concurrently: Writenn uppō boc . . . *off þatt* mannkinn þurh his dæp Wass lesedd ut off helle (ORM., Ded. 161 sq.). Icc wile . . . spellenn . . . *off þatt* he wass send þurh God (ORM. 9153.).

- b. A multitude of other conjunctions still occasionally appears with *that* in Modern-English.

while (whilst) that. *While that* the armed hand doth fight abroad, The advised head defends itself at home (SHAKSP., Henry V. 1, 2.). All of you, *that* stand and look upon me, *whilst that* my wretchedness doth bait itself (Rich. II. 4. 1.).

In former times, after the original accusative of the Anglosaxon substantive *hwil*, which was usually followed by a relative *pe*, the interchange of *pe* with *that* is not rare. Old-Engl: Thei holden hem self blessed, and saf from alle periles, *while that* thei han hem upon hem (MACNDEV. p. 227.). Thanne thei maken fressche men redy . . . *whill' that* the laste bryngere reste him (p. 243.). Moysses Jerde, with the whiche he made the Rede See departen . . . *whils that* the peple

of Israel passeden the see drye foot (p. 85.). And stood in nobles *whil that* he might se (CHAUC., C. T. 15504.). Ne never might her fomen doon hem fle Ay *while that* Odenakes dayes last (15804.). Halfsax.: I þatt fresst, *whil þatt* þho wass . . att hume Comm Godeas enngtill (ORM. 2393.). Ne nan ne wass *whil þatt* þho wass Bitwenenn menn onn eorþe (2565. cf. 4193. 5307. 10571.). The Anglosaxon has *pā hwile þe*, which often recurs in Laȝamon: Ic gescilde þe mid minre svȝōran handan *pā hwile þe* ic forð gā (Exod. 33, 22.).

The use of *that* after substantives containing a notion of time is, moreover, analogous, as to which see the Dependent Sentence of the Determination of Time.

if that both in interrogative and in conditional sentences: Belike your lordship takes us then for fools, To try *if that* our own be ours or no? (SHAKSP., I Henry VI. 3. 2. cf. 5, 1.) Which you'll make him know, *If that* his head have car in music (Cymb 3, 4. cf. 5, 2.). O *If that* my husband now were but return'd Home from the banquet (COLER., Wallenst. 5, 6.). *If that* I did not know philosophy To be of all our vanities the motliest, The merest word . . I should deem The golden secret, the sought "Kalon" found (BYR., Manfr. 3, 1.).

Old-Engl.: He asked *yif that* the schild was sound? (SAEYNS SAKES 1103.). Seggeþ me, *ȝef þat* ȝe konne, wat ys bineþe þe gronde (R. OF GL. I. 131.). So that no man schalle neyghe the charyot, but only tho lordes, but *ȝif that* the emperour call ony man to him (MAEYDEV. p. 241.). And blesse the fayre, *ȝef that* thou conne (HALLIW., Freemas. 631. cf. 187. 713. 730.). Thou shalt abyge this fart, *if that* I may (CHAUC., C. T. 7737.). And *if that* I consent, I wrongfully Complaine ywis (Troil. a. Cress. 1, 414. cf. 407. 413.). Halfsax.: I shall hafenn . . God læn . . *ȝiff þatt* I . . hafe itt inntill Ennglissah wennd (ORM., Ded. 143.). He shall . . Uss gifenn heffness blisse *ȝiff þatt* we shulenn wurriþi ben (ib. 247.). A pronominal form is foreign to Anglosaxon. The strange assertion that *if* must properly have had *that* in its train (see WEBST., Compl. Dict. Lond. 1864), is readily disposed of as resting upon an etymological error.

though that. "I think, thou lov'st me well." — "So well, that what you bid me undertake, *Though that* my death were adjunct to my act, I'd do't (SHAKSP., John 3, 3.). And *though that* in him this kind of poem appeared absolute, and fully perfected, yet how is the face of it changed since (BEN JONS., Every Man out of h. Hum. Prol.). And *though that* she was sick and old, She struggled hard, and fought (K. WHITE, Gondoline).

Old-Engl.: Beth nought agast, *Though that* they ben moo than wee (RICH C. DE L. 4460.). To the fayrest mossel thou myȝt not strike *Thagh[t] that* thou do hyt wel lyke (HALLIW., Freemas. 741.). For *though that* Absolon be wood or wroth . . This Nicholas hath stonden in his light (CHAUC., C. T. 3394. cf. 1832.). More we se of Goddis secré thinges Than borel folk, *although that* thay ben kinges (7543.). Halfsax.: *poth þatt* he se þe lape gast, Niss he riht noht forfæredd (ORM. 679. cf. 972. 1317.). Anglosaxon presents *peah þe*, concurrently with *peah*: Ac hit ne com nā of heofenum, *peah þe* hit svā gehivod være (Job in Fttm. 4, 44.). See the Concessive Sentence.

lest that. Belphebe gon to feare *Least that* his wound were

inly well not heald (SPENS., F. Qu. 3, 5, 49.). Let wives with child Pray, that their burdens may not fall this day, *Lest that* their hopes prodigiously be cross'd (SHAKSP., John 3, 1. cf. Henry V. 2, 4. III Henry VI. 1, 1.).

Old-Engl.: Apon the holiday þe move wel take Leyser y-nowȝ love-day to make, *Lest that* hyt wolde the werke day Latte here werke (HALLIW., Freemas. 315.). Speed the fast, *Lest that* our neyghebourse the aspye (CHAUC., C. T. 3726. cf. 7483. 15827.). The combination of *lest* with *that* seems to belong to a comparatively modern age; Anglosaxon has *þy lās þe*, alongside of *þy lās*: *þāt hig þe on hyra handum beron, þy lās þe þin fōt āt stāne ātsporne* (MATH. 4, 6.). See the Final Sentence.

now that is a frequent combination in modern times, existing concurrently with the simple *now*: Although the fulfilling of my father's last injunctions had borne up my spirits, *now that* they were obeyed, a re-action took place (MARRYAT, J. Faithf. 1, 2.). *Now that* we are alone . . I will impart to you the reason of my going (IRVING, Br. H., The Spectre Bridegr.). But *now that* their distress was over, they forgot that he had returned to them (MACAUL., Hist. of E. IV. 17.).

These dependent sentences of the determination of time, bordering on the causal domain, are in ancient times hardly presented by the addition of *that* to *now*. *Now siþe* (MAUNDEV. p. 142. 257.); *now siþ that* (CHAUC., C. T. p. 155. I. p. 198. I. p. 185. II.); *now siþ so is that* (p. 195. I.); *now syn* (p. 155. II.); *now afre that* (MAUNDEV. p. 63. 122.); *now because that* (p. 131.) and the like, were often met with formerly. *Now that* stands in: *Now that* I am in chawmire brought, I hope ryght welle my chyld to se (COV. MYST. p. 148.). It answers to the Middle-Highdutch *nū daz*: *Nū daz* diu kint verweiset sind, der juncherre sich underwant siner swester (GREGOR. 103.). See Müller, Middle-Highd. Dict. II. 421 The most ancient language only knows *now*, *nu* in a conjunctive application. Compare the Dependent Sentence of the Determination of Time.

- c. The connection of *that* with interrogative and relative forms, such as *how*, *why*, *whether*, *where*, *when*, *who*, *what* (*that*), *which*, is finally to be remarked, and with *as*, which has been in part preserved, although it is least supported by the precedent of the most ancient language.

how that. Then remembered I the word of the Lord *how that* he said, John indeed baptized with water (ACTS 11, 16.). We declare unto you glad tidings, *how that* the promise . . God hath filled the same (13, 32 sq.). Brother Ned related *how that*, exactly thirty-five years ago, Tim Linkinwater was suspected to have received a love-letter, and *how that* vague information had been brought to the counting house etc. (DICKENS, Nickleby 2, 6.).

Old-Engl.: Now have I told you . . *how that* men mowen gon unto Jerusalem (MAUNDEV. p. 128. cf. p. 213. 267.). For I wol telle a legende . . *How that* the clerk hath set the wrightes cappe (CHAUC., C. T. 3143. cf. 3453. 7708.). The lordes seygh *how that* they spedde (RICH. C. DE L. 4539). Now, wolde to God, thou wolde lege money downe, Lorde, *how that* I wolde caste it full rounde! (SKELTON I. 45.).

Comp. Middle-Highdutch: Nu rātt mir *wie das* i' uweru hulden nāhe mich (PARVIV. 330, 9. cf. 126, 16.).

why that. If I demand . . . What rub or what impediment there is, *Why that* the naked, poor and mangled peace . . . Should not . . . put up her lovely visage? (SHAKSP., Henry V. 5, 2.)

Old-Engl.: I asked hem the cause, *whi that* thei helden suche custom (MAUNDEV. p. 286.). The cause *whi that* they wepen . . . is this (ib.). Whereto plaine I thenne, I n'ot, ne *why* unwery *that* I feint (CHAUC., Troil. a. Cres. 1, 409.). I wille thou know *Whi that* he commys thus unto the (TOWN. M. p. 169.). Iff any man aske *why that* ȝe do so (COV. MYST. p. 252.).

whether that. The judge, great lords, if I have done amiss; Or *whether that* such cowards ought to wear This ornament of knighthood, yea or no? (SHAKSP., I Henry VI. 4. 1.) *Whether* or not *that* it arises from this sentiment — there is one peculiar characteristic in all genius of the highest order (BULW. in Wagner, Gr. p. 329).

Old-Engl.: þai sal be studiand . . . *Queper that* he be Crist or nai (ASTICR. 182.). Wee weren in gret thought, *whether that* wee dursten putten oure bodyes in aventure, to gon in or non (MAUNDEV. p. 282.). *Whethyr that* thou do wake or slepe, These lawys to lerne thou herke ful hynde (COV. MYST. p. 64.). Ask all your neybouris *whether that* I ly (SKELTON I. 24.). Comp. the interrogative *ȝif that*.

where that. You may imagine him upon Blackheath, *Where that* his lords desire him, to have borne His bruised helmet, and his bended sword, Before him, through the town (SHAKSP., Henry V. 5. Chor.).

Adverbs of time like *wher* and *ther*, *whens*, *whederward* used relatively, were formerly, as conjunctions, combined with *that*. I pray you telle me . . . *where that* ȝe have bene (TOWN. M. p. 123.). I kan not telle *wher that* he be (COV. MYST. p. 38.). *Wher that* thou doste worche, when thou herest to masse knytle, Pray to God with herte stille (HALLIW., Freemas. 688.). Y seighe it meself this ich day, *Where that* sche in thy chaumber lay (AMIS A. AMIL. 850 cf. (MAUNDEV. p. 40. 54. 61. 80. 103. 104. 124 &c.). In to the chaumber he gan to go, *Ther that* his childer were (AMIS A. AMIL. 2270.). Her patyloun whan they com tylle *Ther that* sche was (OCTOCIAN 1239.). And bad hem to wende hem nere, And aske, *whens that* they war (RICH. C. DE L. 2466.). For he wist noght *whederward That* he sold take the redy way (SECVN SAGES 2930.). So too *wherfore*: Bot yit some fawt must we foylle, *Wherfor that* he shuld dy (TOWN. M. p. 174.). Even Halfsax.: Fare thou salt to reade *woder that* ich þe leode (LAȜAM. II. 372. mod. text [beside *wuder swa* ich þe læde old text]).

when that. *When that* my father lived, Your brother did employ my father much (SHAKSP., John 1, 1.). And *when that* we have dash'd them to the ground, Why, then defy each other (2, 2.). Wilt thou be able, with calm countenance, To enter this man's presence, *when that* I Have trusted thee his whole fate (COLER., Picc. 3, 1.).

II. Words of Reference in the Principal and Dependent Sentence. 397

Old-Engl.: *Whan that* messangeres of straunge contrees comen be-fore him, the meynee . . . thei been aboute the souldan (MAUNDEV. p. 40. cf. 83. 133. 148. 157. 237. 275.). *Whan that* Aprille . . . The drought of Marche hath perced to the roote . . . Thanne longen folk to gon on pilgrimages (CHAUC., C. T. 1. cf. 762. 1092. 15626. 15746.). *Whan that* he in chamber was alone, De doune upon his beddes feet him set (Troil. a. Cress. 1, 358.). I haue sene you indede Er this, *whan that* ye made me royall chere (SKELTON I. 4. cf. 1.). *Whenne that* ilke man hadde hys charge, Home they wolden (RICH. C. DE L. 2789.). Amiloun . . . it hadde in wold, *When that* he went me fro (AMIS A. AMIL. 2081.). I pray the be nere *when that* I have nede (TOWN. M. p. 118.). Noght a leif o pam sal last *Quen pat* pe gret of pam sal brast (ANTICR. 566.). Comp. Middle-Highdutch *swenne das*: Ir sult gedenken wes mir swuor iwer hant *swenne das* vrou Prünhilt kæme in dize lant (NIBEL. 562.).

who, what, as well as *that, which* used relatively, and the pronoun *whether* were, in ancient times, often accompanied by *that*.

Old-Engl.: He wondryd *who that* it was (RICH. C. DE L. 372.). *Whoso that* wole, may leue me (MAUNDEV. p. 221.). A man of that lond . . . To *whom that* Merlin saide thous (SEUN SAGES 2401.). Thou mayst hire wyne . . . For *whom that* I most needes leese my lyf (CHAUC., C. T. 1291.). *Who that* drough hit of the molde, The world to wille wyne scholde (ALIS. 2629. cf. 3925. MAUNDEV. p. 145.). I shal assayen hire . . . *Whot* man of this moode *That* hire were levest (P. PLOUGHM. p. 43.). To bere wytnesse of that sawe, In *what* manere *that* he was slawe (RICH. C. DE L. 841.). *What* man *that* first bathed him, afre the mevyng of the watre, was made hool (MACNEEV. p. 88.). To se *what* trees *that* here been (TOWN. M. p. 6.). Now wot ye, lord, *what that* I reede (p. 70.). And bad hem aske of him, *what that* they wolde have of hym (MAUNDEV. p. 294.). Fro the land of Galilee, of *that that* I have spoke (p. 122.). God . . . *the whiche that* cam fro hevene (MAUNDEV. p. 47. cf. 153. 260. 316.). Thorow *the which that* Troy must be fordo (CHAUC., Troil. a. Cress. 1, 74. cf. C. T. 1421. TOWN. M. p. 283.). In a star he gan to loke, *Whiche that* sat next the mone (SEUN SAGES 356.). Bad heom of *whiche* thyng *that* hit myght beo signifyng? (ALIS. 584.). His sone *which that* highte Balthazar (CHAUC., C. T. 15669. cf. 15501 &c.). *Which* of yow *that* bereth him best of alle . . . Schal han a soper (798.). *Whether* off hem *that* wyne the prys, And *who that* haves the huyer hand, Have the sytā (RICH. C. DE L. 5238.). In Halfsaxon we find: Al Albanakes folc folden i-scohten buten *whilc pat* per at-wond (LA-ŷAM. I. 92.) and instead of *pat, pe* also: *Whaßer* unkere *pe* mæi of oðere *pat* betere biwinne, habben al pis oðeres lond (II. 569.).

as that frequently appears in Old-English instead of the simple *as*, whether these are supported by a correlative or not.

Old-Engl.: Ffor *als pat* Crist him-selven chese Be born in Bethleem . . . Right sua sal pe feind him pis Chese etc. (ANTICR. 103 sq.). As fast *as that* I may (TOWN. M. p. 14.). As clene *as that* she was be-forne (p. 184.). *As that* he wille so must it be (p. 302.). I red we do *as that* he says (p. 221.). Also sone *as that* we may, We xal it bryng to tle (Cov. MYST. p. 252.). How xulde thi wombe thus be arayd, So gretly swollyn *as that* it is? (p. 137.) He ran *as fast as*

ouer *that* he myghte (SKELTON I. 47). This usage seems to have been chiefly peculiar to northern dialects.

so that was likewise formerly in use in dependent sentences instead of the simple *so*.

See the Conditional Sentence.

The form *what*, in combination with *but*, is met with for *that*: Never fear *but what* our kite shall fly as high (BULW., Caxtons 1, 6.). Her needle is not so absolutely perfect in tent and cross-stitch, *but what* my superintendence is advisable (SCOTT, Kenilw. 6.). Not *but what* I hold it our duty never to foster into a passion what we must rather submit to as an awful necessity (BULW., Caxt. 18, 8.). This interchange was also formerly observed. Old-Engl.: More coude I saye, *but what* this is ynowe (SKELTON I. 48.); yet I have not been able to pursue it further. It has here and there an analogy the Lowdutch dialect: He sād' mi nich *wat* he dat dān hadd', that is, that he had done this.

2. With the habit of combining *that*, as the sentence relative, with other particles, is connected the usage, very much restricted in modern times, in coordinate sentences of the same kind, instead of the repetition of the particle in a succeeding member, to put only *that*, which seems to serve to represent it, while the former is properly to be thought as continuing to operate concurrently therewith.

Before we met, or *that* a stroke was given etc. (SHAKSP., I Henry VI. 4, 1.). *Since* you to non-regardance cast my faith And *that* I partly know the instrument That screws me from my true place in your favour etc. (Twelfth N. 5, 1. cf. Merch. of V. 4, 1. Lear 5, 3.). Is it *because* the throne of my forefathers Still stands unfill'd, and *that* Numidia's crown Hangs doubtful yet etc. (ADDIS., Cato 2, 5.). *When* but in all I was six thousand strong, And *that* the French were almost ten to one etc. (SHAKSP., I Henry VI. 4, 1.). *If* we have entrance . . And *that* we find the slothful watch but weak, I'll by a sign give notice to our friends (3, 2.). *If* I had no music in me, no courtship, *that* I were not a reveller and could dance . . I think I should make some desperate way with myself (BEN JONS., Cynth. Rev. 4, 1.). For *if* I thought my wounds not mortal, Or *that* we'ad time enough as yet To make an honorable retreat, 'Twere the best course (BUTL., Hud. 1, 3, 598. cf. 2, 2, 57.).

Old-Engl.: And afre hem another (sc. comen another multitude of fische . .); *tille* alle the dyverse maner of fisses han ben there, and *that* men han taken of hem (MAUNDEV. p. 192.). Men may well lykne *that* bryd unto God; *be cause that* there nys no God but on; and also, *that* oure Lord aroos fro dethe to lyve, the thridde day (p. 48. cf. 95.). It happethe, *that* *whan* he wil not go fer, and *that* it lyke him to have the emperesse and his children with him, than thei gon alle to gydere (p. 242.). *Whan* hit is not so hote, and *that* the pissemeyres ne reeste hem not in the erthe, than thei geten gold (p. 301.). But *as some as* they styffe, and *that* they steppe kunne, Than cometh and crieth her owen kynde dame (DEPOS. or RICH. II. p. 67.). Therefore dur not the marchauntes passen there, but *zif* thei knowen wel the passages, or elle *that* thei han gode lodes men (MAUNDEV. p. 271.). *If that* another man be occasioun or ellis enticer of his synne, or *that* the estate of a persone

be such thurgh which his synne aggreggith, or elles *that* he may not playnly schryve hym . . . thanne may he telle it (CHAUC., C. T. p. 209. II.). For the gret multytude of dede bodyes, that I saughe there liggynge be the weye, be alle the vale, as *though* there had ben a bataylle betwene 2 kynges . . . and *that* the gretter partye had ben discomfyted and slayn (MACDEV., p. 283.). This employment of *that*, frequent in Maundeville among others, reminds one of the Romance fashion. See Diez, Rom. Gr. 3, 339.

3. After the interruption of the dependent sentence beginning with *that* by other dependent sentences after that conjunction, *that* is in modern times repeated, only where the reference to the principal sentence is required by perspicuity, whereas in ancient times this repetition was current in general after an intermediate sentence.

It is not likely, *That* when they hear the Roman Horses neigh, behold their quarter'd fires . . . *That* they will waste their time upon our note (SHAKSP., Cymb. 4, 4.). For I had heard, *that* when the chance of war Had bless'd Anselmo's arms with victory, And the rich spoil of all the field, and you, The glory of the whole, were made the prey; *that* then . . . He did endear himself to your affection (CONGREVE, Mourning Bride 1, 1.).

Old-Engl.: . . . And *pat* ðef he hadde oȝt misdo aȝeyn hym myd wowȝ, *pat* he yt wolde amēdy (R. or GL. I. 57.). Thei seyn ȝit, *that* and he had ben crucyfied, *that* God had don aȝen his rightewisnesse (MAUNDEV. p. 134.). I say ffor myself . . . *That* ho is riall of his ray, *that* light reede him folwith (DEPOS. OF RICH. II. p. 19.), Maistres han y-told me, bydene, *That* whan my lord is comen home, *That* he wol away me dryve (ALIS. 305.). Ther is a lawe that says thus, *That* if a man in a point be agreed, *That* in another he sal be releved (CHAUC., C. T. 4178.). It may not be, saith he, *that* wher as a greet fuyr hath longe tyme endured, *that* there ne leveth som vapour of hete (ib. p. 155. II.). Half-sax.: penne beoð eou iwarre *pat* penne ȝe i-hereð pene dune, *pat* ȝe ȝeten untunen (LAȜAM. II. 441.). This is very familiar to Anglosaxon: þonn is þæt riht, *þæt* se ȝe þone hearm gevorhte, *þæt* se þone hearm eac gebēte (LEGO, CNUT, I. B. 73.). Hit vās svā geuunelic on caldum dagum, *þæt* gif hvām sum færlīc sār becom, *þæt* he his reáf tōtære (JON in Etm. 5, 40.). Þā se cyng . . . hēt . . . ofer ealle þis land beoðan, *þæt* ealle þā ȝe of þam cyngre land heoldan, eallsvā hī friðes veorðe beon voldan, *þæt* hī on hirēde tō tide veron (SAX. CHR. 1095.).

4. As, on the one hand, *that* has gained admittance to a great extent into the dependent sentence, even where the necessity for its rise was not present, so, on the other hand it has not only been separated from the combination with other particles, but also is frequently omitted where it otherwise constitutes by itself the band between the principal and the dependent sentence. This is especially the case in substantive sentences, both when these are of subjective and of objective and adnominal nature. Instances of this rejection of *that*, which therefore acquire the appearance of principal sentences, pervade the poetical and prosaic productions of literature, as well as of the language of conversation.

Is't enough *I am sorry?* (SHAKSP., Cymb. 5, 4.) Suffice it

thee *Thy pain is a reality* (TENNYNS. p. 307.). 'Tis thus *Omnipotence his law fulfills* (COWP. p. 98.). 'Tis strange *they come not* (BYRN., Manfr. 3, 1.). No wonder *you are deaf to all I say* (ADDIS., Cato 1, 4.). The fact is, *I've ordered the carriage to be here in about a quarter of an hour's time* (WARREN, Diary 2, 5.).

And come you now to tell me, *John has made his peace with Rome?* (SHAKSP., John 5, 2.) I grant *the man is sane who writes for praise* (YOUNG, N. Th. 5, 3.). I do assure you *I would offer him no less*, was it my own case (FIELD., Amelia 1, 10.). He thought *I was a ghost* (TENNYNS. p. 131.), Remember *Hear'n has an avenging rod* (COOPER p. 102.). I trust *I do not disturb you* (BULW., Maltrav. 7, 2.). Say *thou lovest me* (BYRN., Manfr. 2, 4.). I answered firmly, "*I was sorry that my letter was unsatisfactory*" (SCOTT, R. Roy 2.). I hope *you have passed the morning agreeably* (MARRYAT, P. Simple 1, 1.). Thou seest *I am calm* (TALFOURD, Ion 3, 3.). I doubt not, *officers are*, whilst we speak, *Sent to arrest us* (SHELLEY, Cenci 5, 1.). Swear to me *thou will do this* (TALFOURD, Ion 4, 1.). See *thou say nothing to any man* (MARK 1, 44.). I would *I were So tranced*, so rapt in ecstasies, I stand apart and to adore (TENNYNS. p. 81.). A ludicrous contretemps happened to-day, which I wish *I could describe as forcibly* as it struck me (WARREN, Diary 1, 3.).

With substantives and adjectives the substantive as well as the causal dependent sentence, which frequently touch each other, may dispense with *that*.

And that's the cause *we hear it not* (BUTL., Hud. 2, 1 620.). I give heaven thanks, *I was not like to thee* (SHAKSP., John 1, 1.). Is there necessity *I must be miserable* (CONGREVE, Mourning Bride 1, 1.). Are you sure *you have every thing ready?* (WARREN, Diary 1, 2.). I am really afraid *we cannot afford to trouble you often* (2, 5.). I am glad *you're hungry* (MARRYAT, P. Simple 1, 1.). The omission of the particle with substantive notions of time is to be discussed with the Sentence of Time.

That the consecutive sentence may appear without a copulative has been pointed out at p. 378.

Other details will have to be discussed with different dependent sentences, as well as the corresponding omission of the relative pronoun with the adjective sentence.

Whether a sentence appearing in the form of the principal sentence is to be considered as a dependent sentence is decided by the context. When it requires the sentence as a member of the construction, its recognisability as such is then the necessary supposition, which is supported by the habitual suppression of the bond of the sentences. This custom moreover extends into Anglosaxon Old-Engl.: Him thouste *that water there stonk* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 274.). Me thinkith *they ben lik Jovynian* (CHAUC., C. T. 7511.). Hit bifel þer afturward swythe longe ynow *Out of þe lond of Scitie oper folk pider droȝ* (R. OF GL. I. 41.). Schame hit is *we weore so faynt* (ALIS. 3720.). It was my gylt *he was forlayn* (TOWN. M. p. 263.). — Wel we wot eldest *thou art* (R. OF GL. I. 105.). Ich wene hit is *Sigrim* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 274.). Thei . . wenden *he had ben ded* (MAUNDEV. p. 226.).

I leve, *He sholde stande starc naked* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 336.). I trowe *he wolde he wroth* (p. 337.). And seide *he was purest eyr* (R. or Gl. I. 106.). He segh on him *fel theo harme* (ALIS. 110.). He swor *he scholde sore abugge* (2971.). Tho he felde *drenche he scholde* (3492.). I say it is no *foly to chaunge counsel* whan the thing is chaunged (CHAUC., C. T. p. 153 l.) Thou schal not . . ly . . ny by thy felows concubyne, no more thou woldest *he dede by thyne* (HALLIW, Freemas. 324.). Look thou have no drede (TOWN. M. p. 38.). — I had no knowledpe it *was he* (TOWN. M. p. 277.). That is the cawse *I hast me* (Cov MYST. p. 174.). Take intent, *Thou ryse* (TOWN. M. p. 135.). I was adrad *he scholde telle Thyng of schame* (ALIS. 229.). In Hallsaxon I have not observed this sort of disconnected juxtaposition. But in Anglosaxon we find uncombined sentences of this kind substituted for subjective and objective substantive sentences, when sentences both with the indicative and the conjunctive occur: þá sóna gelomp, þá hit svá sceolde, *leóma leóhtode leóda mágðum* (Cod. EXON. 15, 8.). Sôðlice vās gevorden, þá hi þær væron, *hyre dagas væron gefyllede* (LUC 2, 6. [here after the precedent of the Greek as well as in Gothic]). Hit vās āfter Moyses forðsiðe, *Drihten sprāc tō Josue* (JOS. 1, 1.). — Ic vāt, *ine valdend God ābolgen vyrð* (CAEDM. 548.). Sāgde hȳ *drȳas uæron* (Cod. EXON. 260, 23.). Cwāð, *he vesan sceolde . . hleōmaga þeov* (CAEDM. 1587.). Ve . . voldun *pu þe sylfa gesāve þāt ve þes sōð onstāldun* (Cod. EXON. 130, 16.). *þāra gehwylc ve villað sȳ tȳybōt* (LEGG. ÆLFRED. B. 5.). A further extension of this usage was ready at hand.

As opposed to the omission of the conjunction *that*, its superfluous introduction before direct speech may be incidentally cited, which we occasionally meet in the biblical usage. Mod.-Engl.: They glorified God saying, *That a great prophet is risen up among us*; and *That God hath visited his people* (LUKE 7, 16.). The general usage excludes *that* before direct speech. The cause of that phenomenon lies in the Greek text, which uses *ὅτι* in such cases. The translation of this particle by *for* in Wycliffes is remarkable: He knowelechide, *for* I am not Crist (JOH 1, 20.). Gr. *ὡμολόγησεν ὅτι οὐκ εἰμι ἐγὼ ὁ Χριστός*. He also thus translates *ὅτι* before substantive sentences: I siȝe and bare witnessynge, *for* þis is þe some of God (1, 34.). Gr. *μεμαρτύρηκα ὅτι xλ.* We witen, *for* of God þou hast comen (3, 2.). Gr. *οἶδαμεν ὅτι xλ.* Anglosaxon here often translates it by *þāt*: And cwædon, *þāt* mære vītega on ūs ārās (LUC 7, 16.). Johannes cȳððe gevitnesse, cveðende: *þāt* ic geseah nyðercumendne Gāst of heofenum (JOH. 1, 32.). Gothic likewise frequently rendered this *ὅτι* by *patei*: Qipandans *patei* praufetus mikils urrais in unsis (LUC. 7, 16. cf. MATTH. 27, 43. MARC. 1, 40. 6, 16. 10, 33.).

The widely diffused custom is observable, instead of consecutive substantive sentences with *that*, of introducing the interchange of the sentence without and with *that*.

Think *I am dead*, and *that* even here thou tak'st . . my last living leave (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 5, 1.). O, would the *quarrel lay upon our heads*, And *that* no man might draw short breath to-day, But I, and Harry Monmouth (I Henry IV. 5, 2.). I wish the *organs of my sight were crack'd*, And *that* the engine of my grief could cast Mine eyeballs forth (BEN JONS., Every Man out of h. Hum. 1, 1.). Should I say *thou art rich*, or *that* thou art honourable (Poetast. 1, 1.). He'd prove *a buzzard is no fowl*, And *that* a lord may be an owl (BUTL., Hud. 1, 1, 73.). He told my father it *was high time for him to think of settling*, and *that* he had provided a match for him (SMOLLET, Rod. Rand. 1.).

She fancied *the gentleman was a traveller, and that he would be glad to eat a bit* (FIELD., J. Andr. 2. 14.). I hope *the air of Cambridge has brought no disorder upon you, and that you will compound with the muses etc.* (CHATHAM, Lett. 18.). I concluded *it must either refer to my desertion of the bottle the preceding evening, or that my uncle's morning hours being a little discomposed by the revels of the night before, his temper had suffered in proportion* (SCOTT, R. Roy 7.). Think *we are but older by a day, And that the pleasant walk of yesternight we are to-night retracing* (TALFOURD, Ion 4, 2.). I thought *there was a strong tendency to hepatic phthisis, but that it might, with proper care, be arrested, if not even overcome* (WARREN, Diary 2, 5.). He says, *you are never in earnest in your speeches; That you decoy the Swedes* (COLER., Picc. 1, 10.).

Old-Engl.: Men seyn, *thei schalle gon out in the tyme of Antecrist, and that thei schulle maken gret slaughtre of Cristene men* (MARSHALL, p. 267.). And witen *I am here mortal enemy And that here deth lith in my might also* (CHART., C. T. 1796.). This alternation, which has become such a favourite in modern times, seems very unfamiliar to the most ancient times.

Abbreviation and Contraction of the Dependent with the Principal Sentence.

The contraction of the dependent with the principal sentence, in which commonly only the dependent sentence appears abbreviated, is in general more limited than that of coordinate sentences. In this contraction there frequently appear predicative substantives, participles and adjectives, as well as prepositional members, whose completion cannot be effected immediately from the principal sentence, and which we may, and, in part, must deem to be elliptical sentences; more rarely, especially in modal sentences, the subject and object of the principal sentence appear in the imperfect dependent sentence. We might also regard a few of these abbreviated sentences as appositive determinations with the conjunction introduced. This does not however hinder us from treating all these abbreviations as grammatically homogenous. The freedom of modern English in the treatment of substantives, participles and adjectives in their connection by copulatives, especially in regard to the determination of space and time, is a preference which it has appropriated to itself before other tongues, and whereby the sensuous indication of the original dependent sentence, which lies at the root of the appositive and adjective members, which are elsewhere kept more general, remains preserved to them.

We make no further mention in this place of the abbreviation of dependent sentences with a modal verb, which is not different from that of the coordinate sentence, in which an infinitive from another sentence remains to be supplied. See p. 332.

A. Among substantive sentences indirect interrogative sentences permit an abbreviation and a contraction, when the interrogative word often alone remains out of the dependent sentence.

"Why am I beaten?" — "Dost thou not know?" — "Nothing, sir; but that I am beaten." — "Shall I tell you *why*? — "Ay, sir, and *wherefore*." (SHAKSP., Com. of Err. 2, 2.) And what recalls me? Look the world around And tell me *what*? (YOUNG, N. Th. 4, 23.) Ask where's the North? . . At Greenland, Zembla, or the Lord knows *where* (POPE, Essay on M. 2. 224.). I . . staggered a few paces, I know not *whither* (WARREN, Diary 1, 11.).

This mode of expression is common to all ages. Old-Engl.: God Engelish he speketh, ac he wot nevere *what* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 328.). Men witen wel, that men dwellen there: but thei knowe not *what men* (MACNDEV. p. 260.). Ne ek thy mayde Gille I may not save; Aske nought *why* (CHAUC., C. T. 3556.). Ther is ful many an eyghe and many an eere Awayt-and on a lord, and he not *where* (7635.). She is with chyld, I wote never *how* (TOWN. M. p. 76. cf. 128. 208.). Anglosax.: þá burhmenn ofslógon XIX menn on óðre healde, and gevundodan mǫ, þát hi nystan *hú fela* (SAX. CHR. 1051.). Ic viste þát þu útáfaren være, ac ic nyste *hú feor* (BOETH. 5.).

B. Sentences of the determination of place admit a contraction.

Strange that one so vile . . Should, *where withdrawn in his decrepitude*, Say to the noblest, be they where they might, "Go from the earth!" and from the earth they went (ROGERS, It., Naples). And tangled on the weeds that heap The beach *where, shelving to the deep*, There lies a white capotel (BYR., Bride 2, 26.).

C. Likewise sentences of the determination of time.

I was better *when a king* (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 5. 5.). As I felt *when a boy* (BYR. p. 305.). This apparent exception, *when examined*, will be found to confirm the rule (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 48.). Time has soften'd what was harsh *when new* (CRABBE, The Borough 2.). Quevedo . . Ask'd *when in hell*, to see the royal jail (COWP. p. 3.). O! remember your Sheelah *when far, far away* (TH. CAMPBELL, The Harper) *Whilst blessing your beloved name*, I'd waive at once a poet's fame, To prove a prophet here (BYR. p. 309.). He got acquainted with Miss *while on a visit in Gloucestershire* (SHERID., Riv. 1, 1.). I shortly afterwards set off for that capital, with an idea of undertaking, *while there*, the translation of the work (IRVING, Columb. Pref.). As when men . . Rouse and bestir themselves *ere well awake* (MILT., P. L. 1, 331.). *Ere yet in being*, was mankind in guilt? (YOUNG, N. Th. 7, 750.) Learn wisdom and repentance, *ere too late* (COWP. p. 12.). Most vain dream! This austere monitor had bid thee vanish *Ere half-reveal'd* (TALFOURD, Ion 4, 1.). Take the terms the Lady made *Ere conscious of the advancing aid* (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 4, 30.). I lose most of my fortune, if I marry without my aunt's consent *till of age* (SHERID., Riv. 1, 1.). Let me cease, and dread Cassandra's fate, With warning ever scoff'd at *till too late* (BYR. p. 330.). I have but few books here, and those I read ten times over *till sick of them* (ID., Lett.). I clambered *until out of breath* (SCOTT, R. Roy 30.). The experienced successor of Colonel W. knew too well the power of his enemy to leave the uneven surface of the heights *until compelled to descend to the level of the water* (COOPER, Spy 7.). *Since he,*

miscall'd the Morning-Star, Nor man nor fiend hath fallen so far (BYR., Ode to N. B. p. 346.).

Up to the fifteenth century instances of this sort are hardly found. Sentences with *ere*, or *are*, however, often abbreviated. Old-Engl.: The erl hies to the lady fre Bot the knyght come lang or he (SEYNS SAGES 3129.). We were up or thou (TOWN. M. p. 108.). This simple reference to the predicate of the preceding sentence is found in Anglosaxon: Forðferde Aðelréd . . feoever vucum ær Ælfred cyning (SAX. CHR. 901.).

D. Here also belong abbreviated causal sentences.

You shall have our will *because* our king (SHAKSP., III Henry VI. 4, 1.). Remember, that both Church and State are properly the rulers of the people, only *because* their benefactors (BULW., Rienzi 2, 28). Glory . . is shame and guilt; The deeds that men admire as half divine, Stark naught, *because* corrupt in their design (COWP. p. 1.). He . . was yet more in power with the herd, *because* in honour with the nobles (BULW., Rienzi 1, 4.).

E. Conditional sentences, abbreviated in various modes, are very frequently contracted with the principal sentence.

Why knows not Montague, that of itself England is safe, *if true within itself* (SHAKSP., III Henry VI. 4, 1.). *If rich*, they go to enjoy; *if poor*, to retrench; *if sick*, to recover; *if studious*, to learn; *if learned*, to relax from their studies (ROGERS, It., For. Trav.). Surely, *if needful*, it is also frightful, this machine (CARLYLE, Fr. Revol. 3, 2, 8.). Much wealth is corpulence, *if not disease* (YOUNG, N. Th. 6, 507.). One guest resided generally, *if not constantly*, at the Castle of Avenel (SCOTT, Abbot 1.). The learning and eloquence . . were regarded . . with suspicion, *if not with aversion* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 80.). The abbreviations *if so* and *if not* also point to sentences outside of the construction: The volcanic lava flood . . will explode and flow according to Girondin Formula and pre-established rule of Philosophy? *If so*, for our Girondin friends it will be well (CARLYLE, Fr. Revol. 3, 3, 1.). Are you gone mad? *If not*, pray speak to me (SHELLEY, Cenci 2, 1.). Of still more elliptical nature is: As would have . . dash'd his brains (*if any*) out (BUTL., Hud. 1, 2, 862.). — Reason still, *unless divinely taught*, Whate'er she learns, learns nothing as she ought (COWP. p. 105.). I will not fight against thee *Unless compell'd* (COLER., Wallenst. 2, 8.). Wherefore should we turn To what our fathers were, *unless to mourn?* (BYR. p. 322.). In the series of particles belonging here we may also place *but* and *except*: She had no hope *but in their errors and misfortunes* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 15.). We cannot *but admit* (I. 20.). No man of English extraction would have risen, *except by becoming in speech and habits a Frenchman* (I. 15.). See the Conditional Sentence.

Even here the older usage forsakes us, if we except *but*. Old-Engl.: Crist' deede nothings to us *but effectuely in weye of mercy* (WRIGHT A. HALLW., Rel. Ant. II. 42.). Anglosax.: Hvá árist elles of Syon to þām þāt he sylle Israēlum hælo, *būtan þu?* (Ps. 13, 11.) Þāt ic ne þorfte nā mære ávendan þære bēc, *būtan tō Isaac Abrahames suna* (THORPE. Anal. p. 25.).

F. Concessive sentences are in the same case as conditional sentences.

Although the victor, we submit to Cæsar (SHAKSP., Cymb. 5, 5.). Homer . . who, *though the early poet of a rude age*, has purchased for the era he has celebrated, so much reverence (SCOTT, Minstrelsy I. 12.). Hear his sighs, *though mute* (MILT., P. L. 11, 31.). Vipers kill, *though dead* (SHELLEY IV. 3.). It is unfortunate *though very natural* (CARL., Fr. Revol. 3, 1, 1.). Mr. Effingstone, *though such* as I have described him, gained no distinctions at Oxford (WARREN, Diary 1, 12.). You are your own mistress, *though under the protection of Sir Anthony* (SHERID., Riv. 1, 2.). But it is well to have known it, *though but once* (BYR., Manfr. 3, 1.). I disdain'd to mingle with A herd, *though to be leader* (ib.). I'd joy to see thee break a lance, *Albeit against my own perchance* (Bride 1, 5.). Freedom has a thousand charms to show, That slaves, *howe'er contented*, never know (COWP. p. 8.). *Whether with reason or with instinct blest*, Know, all enjoy that pow'r which suits them best (POPE, Essay on M. 3, 79.). *Whate'er the motive*, pleasure is the mark (YOUNG, N. Th. 8, 558.).

G. Abbreviations of the final sentence also occur.

Descending now (but cautious *lest too fast*) A sudden steep, upon a rustic bridge We pass a gulf (COWP. p. 169.).

H. The abbreviation of modal sentences with *as* and *than* belongs to all periods of the language, although it likewise is more freely dealt with in modern times.

1. He is, if they can find him, fair . . *As summer's sky, or purged air* (BEN JONS. p. 691. II. Gifford), I am *as a drop of dew* that dies (SHELLEY, Prom. Unb. 4.). It touches you, mylord, *as much as me* (SHAKSP., Rich. III. 1, 3.). *As night to stars*, woe lustre gives to man (YOUNG, N. Th. 9, 407.). They loved him not *as a king*, but *as a party leader* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. IV. 11.). It does not appear that, *as in Homer's time*, they were honoured with high places (SCOTT, Minstrelsy I. 31.). Hudibras wore but one spur, *As wisely knowing* etc. (BUTL., Hud. 453.). Fernando de Talavera . . looked upon his plan *as extravagant and impossible* (IRVING, Columb, 1, 2.). And next they thought upon the master's mate *as fattest* (BYR., D. Juan 2, 81.). The freer employment of the abbreviated dependent sentence goes even to a decided elliptical expression: Thou think'st me *as far* in the devil's book, *as thou and Falstaff* (SHAKSP., II Henry IV. 2, 2.). The adverse winds . . have given him time To land his legions *as soon as I* (JOHN 2, 1.). It ought to be *as hard a struggle*, Sir, *as possible* (DICKENS, Battle of Life 1.). The connection of the abbreviated sentence with a possessive pronoun, as in: His maxims *as a republican* (GIBBON, Decl. 15.), leads to its support by a substantive without the indication of any logical subject: In the prospect of success *as a dramatist* (TH. HOOK, Gilb. Gurney 1.). See p. 325. Bolder retrospective references, such as the compulsory transfer of a passive form from the active, are rare: To change the property of selves, *As sucking children are by elves* (BUTL., Hud. 3, 1, 953.).

Old-Engl.: *As an appel* the urthe is round (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 132). That *als nedder* sal he sitt (ANTICR. 42.). Thei ben blake *as the Maures* (MACSDEN. p. 46.). Hii gon wid sward and bokeler *as men* that wolde fihthe (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 328.). Pandras, þe stronge kyng, *as pryson* he nom (R. OF GL. I. 12.). Yset in the ende of þe world, *as al in the west* (I. 1.). Thei lijn *as in a drem* (MACSDEN. p. 288.). That the spere karf thoroughout, *Also thorough a wollen clout* (ALIS. 4458.). þis Reseamiraduk, *als fole & vnwise*, His letter gan rebuk (LANGT. II. 246.). Halfsax.: þu ært me leof *al swa mi lif* (LAJAM. II. 269.). He dude *al so wis mon* (II. 520.). He þe leouede *al so his sone* (I. 215.). Anglosax.: Ic græde *swā gōs* (COD. EXON. 406, 18.). His reaf væron *swā snāw* (MATH. 17, 12.). Se self *snāw swā swā vulle* (PS. 147, 5.). Heold hig *swā his eagan seon* (DEUTER. 32, 10.). Geveorðe þin villa on eorðan *swā swā on heofenum* (MATH. 6. 10.). Deað *swā swā biutan orde* (GREGOR., Pastor. 40.). Sig hit *swā gecveden* (GEN. 44, 10.). Ðæt vāter stōd *swylce tvegen hōge veallas* (EXOD. 14, 22.). Te steorra scān *swylce sunnebeām* (SAX. CHR. 678.).

2. Wisdom less shudders at a fool *than wit* (YOUNG, N. Th. 5, 273.). Beauty's tears are lovelier *than her smile* (TH. CAMPBELL, Pleas. of Hope 1.). 'Tis better playing with a lion's whelp, *Than with an old one dying* (SHAKSP., Ant. a. Cleop. 3, 11.). Now he will have power More to reward *than ever* (BEN JONS., Sejan. 5. 10.). Mr. Hillary's temper had become ten times worse *than before* (WARREN, Diary 2, 5.). Conspiracies no sooner should be form'd *Than executed* (ADDIS., Cato 1, 2.). The abbreviation of sentences with *than* also touches the ellipsis: I . . will make thee a greater nation and mightier *than they* (NUMB. 14, 12.). O thou son of Sol, But brighther *than thy father* (BEN JONS., Fox 1, 1.). Go — let thy less *than woman's hand* Assume the distaff (BYR., Siege 4.).

Old-Engl.: He compe wel bet *than he gouerne* such a londe (R OF GL. I. 106.). More hy ben *than olyfaunz* (ALIS. 5417.). God takith more venjaunce on us than a lord that todaynly sleeth his servaunt (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 43.). That peyseth no lasse *thenne ten ponge* (HALLIW., Freemas. 201.). Wimmon weped for mod ofter *panne fro eni god* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 182.). Bettere it ys or lesse yvele that thei han theyre recreaoun by pleyinge of myraclis *than bi pleyinge of othre japis* (II. 45 sq.). Betere is child unboren *penne unbeten* (I. 177.). Halfsax.: Bettre art tu *pann ure preost* (ORM. 2827.). Itt iss mare *pann inoh* (10722.). Ðæt he ne moste libben na lengere *pene seowen zere* (LAJAM. I. 294.). Leofere heom weore to here Karic *pene Gurmunde* (III. 161.). Anglosax.: Ic com vræstre *ponne he* (COD. EXON. 423, 23.). He vās ær *ponne ic* (JOH. 1, 15.). Býð his setl ær *swylce þonne mōna* (PS. 71, 17.). Seō vās Dryhtne gehālgad on clānan māgðhāde mā *ponne pritig vintra* (THORPE, Anal. p. 53.).

3. The particles *as* and *than* often stand isolated before another dependent sentence, before which the relative principal sentence introduced with *as* or *than* remains to be completed out of the absolute principal sentence.

And such appear'd, *as when* the force Of subterranean wind transports a hill Torn from Pelorus (MILT., P. L. I. 230. cf. 594. 612. 675.). You are just so gay *as when* you are in good spirits (BULW., Alice 1, 1.). I have as much forgot your poor, dear uncle, *as if* he had never existed (SHERID., Riv. 1, 2.). In

the vine were three branches: and it was *as though* it budded (GEN. 40, 10.). I were a fool, not less *than* if a panther Were panic-stricken by the antelope's eye, If she escape me (SHELLEY, Cenci 1, 2.). Nor was his ear less peal'd With noises . . . *than* when Bellona storms . . . , or less *than* if this frame of Heav'n were falling (MILT., P. L. 2, 924.). Mine iniquity is greater *than* that it may be forgiven (GEN. 4, 13. Randglosse). We are contented rather to take the whole in their present, though imperfect state, *than* that the least doubt should be thrown upon them, by amendments or alterations (SCOTT, Minstrelsy I. 88.). With that are connected further abbreviations of the second dependent sentence, as: Words . . spoke *as if* from Angels (BULW., King Arth. 8, 20. cf. 8, 17.). Stooping *as if* to drink (COWP. p. 169.).

For other forms in use here see Vol. II. 1. p. 128. and the remarks made upon various dependent sentences. Similar contractions of dependent sentences are in Old-Engl.: How moven thei be more taken in idil *than* *whanne* thei ben mad japinge stikke, *as* *when* thei ben pleyid of japeris (WRIGHT A. HALLW., Rel. Ant. II. 50.). It schalle falle to the botme of the vesselle, *as* *thoughe* it were quyksylver (MAUNDEV. p. 52.). Away they gan flying fare *Also* *theygh* hit nought no ware (ALIS 4602.). Hafsax.: He sæt stille *alse* *peh* he wolde of worlden iwiten (LÅSAM. II. 298. cf. I. 284. 285 sq.). Þatt wolde bettre Drihbtin Godd . . *þann* *þatt* te laffdig were shennð (ORM. 1983.).

1. The completion of principal out of dependent sentences is rarer, and is in the same predicament as in coordinate sentences: But though true worth and virtue in the mild And genial soil of cultivated life . . *Yet not in cities oft* (COWP. p. 180.).

Other details are mentioned upon the single dependent sentences. The further extension of the abbreviation and contraction of sentences is only partly to be explained by the influence of French and classical tongues in modern times.

The Ellipsis of the Sentence.

As a member can be absent in the simple sentence, so may an entire sentence in the period. This can only be a principal sentence, inasmuch as an absent dependent sentence could not be indicated by any linguistic mean; the omission of a dependent sentence is an aposiopesis.

The omission of the principal sentence is restricted to a few cases. In living speech the principal sentence may often be guessed from the tone and gesture of the speaker. The written language indicates it by the employment of interjections, or only by matter of punctuation, denoting the emotion which is the motive for suppressing the principal sentence. The dependent sentences to which an unmistakable element of the principal sentence is added belong to another province.

- A. The dependent sentence introduced by *that*, which is mostly to be regarded as a substantive sentence, is employed in various relations without a principal sentence.

1. It may denote the subject matter of a wish.

O, *that I had her here*, to tear her limb-meal! (SHAKSP., Cymb. 2, 4.) Oh, master, *that I might have a hand in this!* (MARLOWE, Jew of M. 2, 2.) O *that Ismael might live before thee!* (GEN. 16, 18.) O *that I was safe at Clod Hall!* (SHERID., Riv. 5, 2.) Oh, God, *that I were buried with my brothers!* (SHELLEY, Cenci 1, 3.) Oh *that a pointer had been present!* (WARREN, Diary 1, 3.)

Sentences of this sort, in which *that* answers to the Latin *utinam*, and which suppose a principal sentence with the notion of the wish, are foreign to the older tongue. See Vol. II. 1. p. 111. Middle-Highdutch: *Das iuch got bewar!* (PARZIV. 389, 14.) Similar is: Mercy, and *that ye not discover me* (CHAUC., C. T. 9816.). On the other hand we often find sentences reducible to an act of the will or a command: Brynge alway of the beste . . . Anon *that it be done* (COV. MYST. p. 184.). In payn of your godys and your lyvys, *That ze lete hem nouth shape zou fro* (p. 339.). Peas, of payn *that no man pas* (TOWN. M. p. 55.). Anglosax.: And *pät nän man nenne man ne underfö* ne länge [var. l. nā leng] þonne þreo niht (LEGG. CANT. I. B. 25.).

2. Or, the dependent sentence leaves a principal sentence to be inferred which would express surprise, indignation or regret.

That a king's children should be so convey'd! So slackly guarded! (SHAKSP., Cymb. 1, 1.) My brother . . . *that a brother should be so perfidious!* (Temp. 1, 2.) O foul descent! *that I, who erst contended With gods to sit the highest, am now constrain'd Into a beast* (MILT., P. L. 9, 163.). Great God! *that such a father should be mine!* (SHELLEY, Cenci 1, 2.) O *that such eyes should e'er meet other object!* (SHERID. KNOWLES, Virgin. 3, 3.)

In the older language such sentences were mostly introduced by *alas* or *wa la wa* and similar exclamations. Old-Engl.: *Alas! that y wæs bore!* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 124.) *Allas! that richesse shal reve And robbe mannes soule* (P. PLOUGHM p. 231.). *Alas! alas! that ever I live!* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 10.) *Allas! that ever knewe I Perothous!* (CHAUC., C. T. 1229.) *Allas, sche seyde, that I was born!* (LAY LE FREINE 95.) A, Lord, *that I shuld abide this day!* (TOWN. M. p. 39.) Passages like the following seem to have a somewhat different shade of meaning: Lord, *that Alisaunder was wo!* (ALIS. 4650.) *Alas! alas! that me is wo!* (TOWN. M. 7863.) — Hallsax.: *Wa la wa, pat hit sculde incurthen swa!* (LAZAM. II. 400.) *Wale, pat ich pe uedde!* (III. 26.). *Wale, pat ich wæs iboren!* (ib.). Anglosax.: *Eā lā pät nän wuht nis fiste stondendes veorces ā vunjende on vorulde!* (BORTH. 9.) *Ac vā lā vā, pät hi tō hraðe bugon and flugon!* (SAX. CHR 999) *Vā lā vā pät ænig man sceolde mōðigan svā hine sylf upp-āhebban, and ofer ealle men tellan!* (1087.) Compare Middle-Highdutch: *Daz mir daz solde geschehn!* (IWEIN 151.) *Ouwē daz ich ie wart gehorn* (1469.).

3. A sentence with *that* in combination with *not* and *only*, which belong to the incomplete principal sentence, is also to be regarded as a substantive sentence. With *not* an assertion is commonly precluded, as opposed to another; with *only*, it is put as an exception or limitation.

Take me with thee . . . *Not that I fear to stay*, but love to go Whither the queen intends (SHAKSP., III Henry VI. 2, 5.). Men in their loose unguarded hours they take, *Not that themselves are*

wise, but others weak (POPE, Essays on M. 4, 227.), A book's a book, although there's nothing in't, *Not that a title's sounding charm can save, Or scrawl a scribbler from an equal grave* (BYRON, p. 312.). That I cannot, sir, in the present instance, *not that I will not* (SCOTT, R. Roy 1.). *Not that I mean to infer* that my life has not been one of adventure . . . I only mean to say, that in all which has occurred, I have been a passive, rather than an active, personage (MARRYAT, P. Simple 1, 1.). He might have seemed some secretary or clerk engaged in the service of the public, *only that his low, flat, and unadorned cap . . . indicated* that he belonged to the city (SCOTT, Fort. of Nigel 2.).

These forms of expression answer to the German *nicht dass, nur dass*, formerly also *allein dass*, and are without doubt of the same kind as *nicht allein dass*. They may be regarded as sentences of the subject, although it matters little if they are considered sentences of the object, since in the principal sentence with *not* or *only* a verb of the predicate in the active is supplied in thought. They would be related as sentences of the subject, as in: *It is not that* I dread the death (BYRON, Parisina 13.) In the ancient language the particle *that* is frequently used after *not* only! O foule lust, O luxurie, lo thin ende! *Nought oonly that thou feytest mannes mynde*, But verrayly thou wolt his body schende (CHAUC., C. T. 5345.). *Nought oonly*, lord, *that I am glad*, quod sche, To don your lust, but I desire also Yow for to serve (8843. cf. p. 204. II.). *That* is also repeated after an opposed member: And *nought only, that our defeaute schal be juged, but eek that alle our werkes schul be openly known* (p. 187, 1), with which compare the more complete mode of expression of the Anglosax.: *þu bist Godes freond*; and *nā þāt ān þāt þu his freond sý* ac eac sýlce *þu bist Godes bearn* (A.-S. HOML. I. 56.). See p. 350.

4. On the other hand an elliptical final sentence with *that* is rarely found.

Of them, and then, *that I say no more*, it was not despised (BEN JONS., Dedicat. a. 1616.).

This turn is not unfamiliar in German: Ich bin verdrieszlich, *dass ich dir's gestehe* (GOETHE, Tasso 5, 1.). Comp. Lat.: *Itaque, ut plura non dicam, neque aliorum exemplis confirmem* cæt. (CIC., Leg. Man. 15.). Instead of the elliptic sentence, for which we may, with Grimm supply a sentence like: *I say, I add*, an infinitive as in: *to say the truth* is commonly used.

5. In *that I know* (*that I know of*) and a few assimilated sentences, however, the relative pronoun is to be met with, as such, in an adjective sentence used substantively.

Their best way (*that I know*) is, sit still (BEN JONS., Every Man out of h. Hum. Prol.). "None in the Duke's own hand?" — "No, *that I know*." (COLER., Picc. 3, 2.) I am no kindred to you, *that I know of yet* (FARQUHAR, Recroit. Officer 1, 1.). Nor a rich lady *that I know of* — except in beauty and merit (DICKENS, Battle of Life 2.). "Do you know one Morray, or Morris, or some such name?" — "Not *that I can at present recollect*." (SCOTT, R. Roy 7.). "Can we do nothing!" "Nothing, *that I see*." (SHELLEY, Cenci 1, 3.)

Here the relative *that* is not referred to a preceding substantive notion,

but the form answers to the Lat. *quod sciam*, Fr. *que je sache*, German *dasz ich weisz, wüsste, dasz ich nicht weisz*, although it is observed in English. Moreover the *of* added points plainly to a preceding pronoun. The sentences *for aught I know* (SHAKSP., John 5, 1. SCOTT, Abbot 1.), *for aught I see* (SHAKSP., I Henry VI. 1, 4. BEN JONS., Every M. in h. Hum. 2, 1.), otherwise answer to the Latin expression, in which the relative is omitted. The Latinism cited is found even earlier. (Old-Engl.: "Say ar ther ayy (leg. any) catyffs?" — "Nay, lord, none *that I knowe*." (TOWN. M. p. 237.) No word yit he spake *That I wyst* (p. 196.).

B. The conditional sentence is frequently used elliptically. Its suppressed principal sentence is to be explained by the situation in each case.

In emotion a desire is not rarely denoted by this form, the appearance of the condition leaving the satisfaction of the speaker, the person spoken to, or the person spoken of to be supposed: O, *If you but knew* how you the purpose cherish, Whiles thus you mock it! (SHAKSP., Temp. 2, 1.) Oh, Mr. Simple! *if you knew* how I loved that girl! (MANRYAT, P. Simple 1, 17.) *If the malignant eye of her father had seen them at the moment!* (WARREN, Diary 2, 5.) Distraction! — *If the earth could swallow me!* (BULW., Lady of L. 2, 1.) *If we had but a countess!* (DOUGL. JERROLD, Bubbles 1.) In other cases the conditional sentence assumes the character of the question, when the leaving the consequence doubtful makes the case exhibited appear as exciting anxiety: *An she have overheard me now?* (BEN JONS., Every Man in his Hum. 2, 1.) *If, now, she should really love him!* (DOUGL. JERROLD, Bubbles 3.) Or the condition points to a threatening question: Hush, hush: — *if ever be our day again!* (BULW., Rienzi 4, 1.) Not rarely the conditional sentence is placed in doubt with regard to its consequence: "What a pity it is the law don't allow changing!" — "*If it did, Flippanta!*" (VANBRUGH, Confederacy 2, 1.) *If you, Cardinal Camillo, were reduced at once . . . To that which nature doth indeed require?* (SHELLEY, Cenci 2, 2.) In such a case words of interrogation, such as *how, what*, are also placed before the conditional sentence: *How if I thrust my hand into your breast, And tore your heart out . . . ?* (SHERID. KNOWLES, Virgin. 5, 3.) *What if the son of Maia soon Should make us food and sport* (SHELLEY, Prometh. Unb. 1.). *What tho' the sickle, sometimes keen, Just scars us as we reap the golden grain?* (YOUNG, N. Th. 3, 503.) See Vol. II. 1. p. 50.

The expression of desire by the conditional sentence standing alone is rarely met with in Old-English, although it is very old. Anglosax.: *Eá lá gif ic móste þam eáddigan Laurentium geefenlæcan!* (A.-S. HOMIL. II. 432.) *Eá lá gif þu være hund!* hund is sávilleás and helle ne provað (II. 308.). Lat.: *O mihi præteritos referat si Jupiter annos!* (VIRG., Aen 7, 560.) The sentences introduced by the interrogative *what* are not wanting. Old-Engl.: *What though thin hors be bothe foul and lene?* (CHAUC., C. T. 16299.) But *what and she my hales bete . . . ?* (Rom. of the Rose 4441) Anglosax.: *Heāt gif hit unclene beoð fīcas* (THORPE, Anal. p. 105.). Comp. Middle-High-dutch: *Nū waz oh iu got dū zun selbe sinen rāt git?* (LWEIN 217.,

The Dependent Sentence, particularly according to its Sorts.

In a syntactical relation, dependent sentences, as members of a simple sentence developed into sentences, are to be divided according to the functions which they undertake, as representatives of those members. But, as members of sentences, with an identity of form, they have various functions, so too various functions frequently being in the period to dependent sentences of the same form, so that they cannot be taken into consideration as divided strictly according to their forms.

We name the single dependent sentences by their most essential action. But, while considering the dependent sentence A. as the subject and as a predicative determination, B. as an adverbial Determination of the Sentence, and C. as an attributive determination of the sentence, we shall sometimes see the same forms recur in these various provinces, and even employed for various purposes within the same province.

A. The Dependent Sentence as the subject and as a predicative Determination.

The substantive sentence comes especially under consideration as the subject, and it comprises, partly indicative, partly interrogative sentences, the latter bearing the name of indirect interrogative sentences. Both also occur under adverbial determinations as case sentences. That is to say, what may be the subject of the sentence may likewise become its object.

- a. The substantive sentence, as the subject, constitutes the thing or fact of which anything is predicated. This sentence is commonly introduced by the particle *that*, and, as the logical subject, is often supported by a grammatical one, such as *it*.

Is not enough, *that to this lady mild Thou falsed hast thy faith?* (SPENS., F. Qu. 1, 9, 46.) *That materials for such a collection existed*, cannot be disputed (SCOTT, *Minstrelsy* 1. 40.). *That there should have been such a likeness* is not strange (MACAUL., *Hist. of E. I.* 27.). The triumph of my soul is *that I am* (YOUNG, N. Th. 9, 422.) The report is, *that you are quitting England* (GOLDSM., G. Nat. M. 5.). The cry of hundreds of thousands was *that they were English and not French* (MACAUL., *Hist. of E. I.* 40.). It was stipulated, *that Peter should not remain within an hundred miles of the state* (BOLINGBROKE, *Lett.* 3.). For sentences belonging here supported by a grammatical subject see Vol. II. 1. p. 22.

Old-Engl.: Hou is *that it quelleth men?* (WRIGHT, *Pop. Treat* p. 136.) Wel may happe in hevene *That he worth worthier set* (P. PLOUGHM. 120.). Betere him were *i-borin þat he nere* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., *Rel. Ant.* I. 176.). The first statute was, *that thei scholde beleeven and obeyen in God immortalle* (MACGREG., p. 225.). It semethe *that it wolde covere*

the erthe (p. 144.) Anglosax.: Sêlre ys *pāt* ve hine sylloŋ tō ceāpe Is-mahelitum (GEN. 37, 27.). Være him pōn betre *pāt* hi bealodæde ælces unryhtes ær gescomeden (COD. EXON. 80, 3.). Semninga bið *pāt* pec dryht-guma, deað ofersvyrðeð (BEOW. 3539.). Ælces landes gecynd is, *pāt* hit him gelice vyrta and gelicne vudu tydrige (BOETH 34, 10.). Ðā geveaŋ hit . . . *pāt* . . . forvrēgde Valfnōð (SAX. CHR. 1009.). Ðat vās gecveden butan veres frigum *pāt* purh bearnes gebyrd brýd eacen yearð (COD. EXON. 3, 16.).

- b. Even the indirect interrogative sentence may appear as the subject. See the case sentence.

How he can is doubtful, that he never will is sure (MILT., P. L. 2, 153.).

Anglosax : Ne vās me on mōde cūð, *hvāðer* on þyssum folce frēan al-mihtiges egesa være (CAEDM. 2703.).

- c. Likewise the adjective sentence and substantively. See the adjective sentence.

What followed was in perfect harmony with the beginning (MACAUL., Hist. of E. II. 26.). *What he lived* was more beautiful than *what he wrote* (LEWES, G. I. 2.).

2. The adjective sentence used substantively may also be employed as a predicative determination.

I never was *what* is popularly called *superstitious* (SCOTT, R. Roy 21.).

B. The Dependent Sentence as an adverbial Determination.

Adverbial dependent sentences present themselves, in point of form, partly as case sentences and as prepositional case sentences, partly as adverbial sentences in the narrower sense, if the particles are taken into consideration by which they are introduced. But, in the division of dependent sentences according to their matter, we refer to adverbial sentences in the stricter sense the greater number of prepositional sentences also.

The Case Sentence.

The case sentence, which is also called the objective sentence, after a main function of it, answers to a case which must be regarded as an original accusative, but also as a genitive. It is already by that distinguished from other adverbial dependent sentences, but it is also characterized by not, as it were, comprehending in itself the activity of the principal sentence, like sentences specifying the sphere of the activity in space and time, neither does it stand in an internal combination with it, like causal sentences in the wider sense and modal sentences, but only specifies the real or imaginary fact to which the activity predicated in the main sentence, even as itself productive of it, is directed or referred. But as a case might be added to the adjective and be employed adnominally, the

case sentence also stands in combination with an adjective and a substantive. A contact of the case sentence with the causal sentence also takes place in a few provinces. The case sentence does not, however, extend beyond the whole province of the case.

1. a. The case sentence, introduced by *that*, combines with notions of activities denoting an utterance of sensation, perception, imagination, thinking, predication, desiring asking and obtaining, as well as of effecting and admitting, and, on the negative side, of denying, forgetting, rejecting, hindering and avoiding, and other similar activities.

He *hath heard, that men of few words are the best men* (SHAKSP., Henry V. 3, 2.). You *see that I am composed* (DICKENS, *Dombey* a. S. 3, 9.). I *find . . . that you get all the honour* (GOLDSM., Vic. 3.). The Duke of Savoy *felt that the time had at last arrived* etc. (MOTLEY, *Rise of the Dutch Rep.* 1, 3.). Why should I *suppose that in this point alone it would continue inflexible?* (DIAL. OF THE DEAD. Lond. 1760. p. 84.) I *did dream that I had murdered her* (SHERID. KNOWLES, *Virgin.* 5, 3.). Wist ye not *that I must be about my Father's business?* (LUKE 2, 49.) I *concluded also that if any of our vessels were in chase of me, they also would now give over* (DE FOE, *Robins.* p. 19. Tauchn.). It would be a great error to *infer from such irregularities that the English monarchs were absolute* (MACAUL., *Hist. of E. I.* 32.). I do not mean to *imply that he was an ideal man* (LEWES, G. I. 2.). They *told me that your name was Fontibell* (SHAKSP., *All's Well* 4, 2.). I *replied, that he confounded the operations of the pencil and the pen* (SCOTT, *Bride* 1.). His father *begged that every year he would present him with such a volume* (LEWES, G. I. 38.). To *show that I am a man* (I. 242.). Her calm and decisive manner *convinced me that remonstrance would be useless* (WARREN, *Diary* 1, 2.). I *must absolutely insist that honest Mr. Williams shall be rewarded for his fidelity* (GOLDSM., Vic. 17.). Both kings . . . *agreed that an œcumenical council should at once assemble* (MOTLEY, *Rise of the Dutch Rep.* 1, 3.). Will you *permit that I shall stand condemn'd?* (SHAKSP., *Rich. II.* 2, 3.). They *will admit that he was a great poet, but deny that he was a great man* (LEWES, G. I. 1.). *Forgive me that I break upon thee thus* (SHERID. KNOWLES, *Virgin.* 5, 3.). God *forbid that I should wish them sever'd* (SHAKSP., *III Henry VI.* 4, 1.). How the accusative of the object may retain its case with the verb in the passive (see Vol. II. 1. p. 213), so to the case sentence: I *have often been told by my friends that I was rather too modest* (DIAL. OF THE DEAD p. 26.). We *have been taught . . . that we cannot without danger suffer any breach of the constitution to be unnoticed* (MACAUL., *Hist. of E. I.* 32.).

A contact of the case sentence with the causal sentence especially takes place with verbs of emotion (as with their corresponding adjectives) and some others. As sentences of the object, they denote the object of the emotion; as causal sentences, its cause. So far as such verbs permit the simple case of the object, the dependent sentence with *that* may without scruple be considered a case sentence, although the transition of an intransitive into the

transitive verb is not in general anything surprising, and verbs of emotion, originally having the genitive, may also take the substantive sentence for it: I'gin to *fear that thou art past all aid* (BYR., Manfr. 3, 1.). Let none *admire That riches grow in Hell* (MILT., P. L. I. 690.). The people *boasted that they lived in a land flowing with milk and honey* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. II. 152.).

See too the Causal Sentence.

The same manner of treatment is allotted in all ages to the dependent sentence with *that*, although the omission of the sentence relative has gradually made greater progress, concurrently therewith, in speaking and writing. See p. 399. Old-Engl.: Whan he *felte, that he scholde dye* (MAUNDEV. p. 89.). Mani man *venit . . . frend pat he hadde* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 179.). Alle þo þe *leuð pat swilch þing hem muge furðrie oðer letten* (I. 131.). Þo he *ruste pat þet mayde aslave was* (R. OF GL. I. 206.). Heo *rnderstode, pat þis lond ynad was al clene Of god folc þoru Maximian and Conan* (I. 96.). *That I am dronke, I knowe wel* (CHACC., C. T. 3140.). Yond in the yerd I *troue that sche be* (7380.). Lif *seith that he lieth* (P. PLOTGHM. p. 371.). Wif *wolde pat hire lovede dead were* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 130.). There the aungelle *commaunded Adam, that he scholde duelle* (MAUNDEV. p. 67.). I *pray you alle, that noon of you him greeve* (CHACC., C. T. 3908.). He *suffrethe wel, that Cristene men duelle in his lordschipe* (MAUNDEV. p. 246.). God *schilde, that he deyde sodeinly* (CHACC., C. T. 3427.). God *forbode that we stynten here* (4337.). For yet I *shal not mysse That attle leste wey I schal hir kisse* (3679.). Halssax.: þurh þat teẏ herreddenn þat he wass *Sop Godless Sune* (ORM. 10968.). Sere we *adredeð þat heo him mis-ræden* (LAJAM. II. 124.). Witt tu wel to sope þat all folc wass *forrgillt* (ORM., Intr. 24.). Uss birp lefenn þat he wass *Sop mann* (ORM. 6716.). Nollde he nohht *tatt teẏ Ohht herreddenn* (6927.). We þe wulleð *hiden . . . þat þu heom bilæuen* (LAJAM. II. 185.). Anglosax.: Ge gehyrdon *þæt ic eov sæde, ic gā* (JOH. 14, 28.). Heo on hyre *gefremde þæt heo of þam vite gehæled wæs* (MARC. 5, 29.). Ge *gecnivað þæt ic eom on minum Fæder* (JOH. 14, 20.). Viise he gearve *þæt him holt-vudu helpan ne meakte* (BEOV. 4668.). Bearne ne *truvode þæt he við ælfylcum eðel-stolas healdan cūðe* (4730.). Hvā volde *gelyfan . . . þæt þe heo Abrahame on hys ylde æcende?* (GEN. 21, 7.). Crædon *þæt heo rice reðe mōde āgan voldan* (CAEDM. 47.). Josue *bebead þæt hi vudedon* (JOS. 9, 27.). Biiddað hine *þæt he me selle leafe* [Genitive sentence] (GEN. 50, 5.). Ic gedū *þæt þu vyzt* (17, 6.). Þu þe self *hafast dædum gefremed þæt þin [dōm] lyfað æra to aldre* (BEOV. 953. Grein.). Peah þu . . . *onsiwe to sviðe, þæt þu sōð godu lufjan volde* (JULIANA 192. Grein.).

With regard to the notion of emotion comp.: Verst he *was sore adrad* þat þe *geant were pere ney* (R. OF GL. I. 204.). I *merveylled moche, that there weren so manye* (MAUNDEV. p. 283.). Halssax.: Sere we *adredeð þat heo him mis-ræden* (LAJAM. II. 124. cf. II. 290. II. 107.). Anglosax.: Ic me *onegan māg þæt me vrādra sum . . . feore beneoite* (CAEDM. 1823.).

- b. The case sentence stands with adjectives, with which originally the genitive was mostly required, for which the periphrasis with *of* was substituted.

But are you *sure That Benedick loves Beatrice so entirely?* (SHAKSP., Much Ado 3, 1.) I am not so *certain that these much decried children have been dunces* (LEWES, G. I. 6.). She was from that moment *aware that I fully saw and appreciated her situation* (WARREN, Diary 2, 5.). Mr. Pounce was *desirous that Fanny should continue her journey with him* (FIELD., J. Andr. 3, 12.). Adjectives

denoting an emotion might likewise be taken into consideration here; we discuss them on the Causal Sentence.

Old-Engl.: Art thou *sekyr* that we shall *spede* (COV. MYST. p. 180.). Half-sax.: þa wes Aurilie *wær* þat Hengest wolde *cumen* *þær* (LAȜAM. II. 261.), Anglosax.: þonne heo *geornast* bið *þæt* heo *āfare* *fleogan* on *nette* (Ps. 89, 10.).

- c. The dependent sentence also appears adnominally in immediate reference to a substantive.

I have no *hope* That he's *undrown'd* (SHAKSP., Temp. 2, 1.). For more *assurance* that a living prince Does now *speak* to thee, I embrace thy body (Temp. 5, 1.). *Persuasion* in me grew That I was *heard* with favor (MILT., P. L. 11, 152.). A feeling that propels me into a *belief* that you're in *roseate health* (DOUGL. JERROLD, Bubbles 1.). I was ever of *opinion* that the *honest man* who married . . . *did* more service than he who continued single (GOLDSM., Vic. 1.). That he really was a *wonderful child* we have *undeniable evidence* (LEWES, G. I. 18.). My husband has no *idea* that I have been here (WARREN, Diary 2, 5.). They made a *bargain* that they would never forsake each other (GOLDSM., Vic. 13.). The *principle* that the king of England was bound to conduct the administration according to law . . . was established at a very early period (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 31.). The *fact* that Monmouth was in arms etc. (II. 149.). The *circumstance* that they were some centuries behind their neighbours in knowledge (I. 66.). The dependent sentence is in the same predicament as an objective genitive depending upon the substantive, or epexegetically, like an appositive case.

Old-Engl.: He leet setten 12 grete stones on here, in *tokene* that *sche* had born 12 children (MAUNDEV. p. 72.). In sygne to bere *record* That kyng Richard was her *ovyr-lord* (RICH. C. DE L. 4591.). This is the *cause* . . . That I with man *wylle* *nevyr* melle (COV. MYST. p. 92.). Thanne gan I meten A *merveillous* *wrevene* That I was in a *wildernesse* (P. FLOUGHM. p. 2.). In toke of the *miracle*, that the *watre* *withdrowghe* him so (MAUNDEV. p. 104.). Halfsax.: He bi-heihte hire *biheste* . . . *þat* to hire he wolde *teman* (LAȜAM. I. 54.). Anglosax.: Hāfdon *gielp* micel *þæt* hie wið *drihtne* *dælan* *meahton* *vuldorfāstan* *wic* (CAEDM. 25.). Him wæs *lust* micel, *þæt* he *leod* *spellode* (BOETH., Praef.) Alvalde nele þā *earfeow* sylfa habban, *þæt* he on *þysne* sið *fare* . . . ac he *gingran* sent (CAEDM. 510.). Ve *vyllað* *þæt* ælc man ofer XII vintre sylle þonne *āð*, *þæt* he nelle *peof* *beon* nē *peofes* *gevita* (LEGG. CNCT. I. B. 19.).

2. With the notions of fear, anxiety and of prevention, the dependent sentence with *lest* takes the place of that with *that*, and it is attached, not merely to transitive, but also to intransitive verbs, as well as to adjectives and substantives, like as the Latin dependent sentence with *ne*, and in part *quominus*, in similar cases expresses the prohibitive tendency that something should not happen, and is, in point of fact, identical with the negative final sentence. *Lest* partly interchanges with *that*, and sometimes serves to give to a notion in the principal sentence the more definite reference to fear or prevention, as in *sicken*, *enrage* or *look*: I fear'd *Lest* it might anger thee (SHAKSP., Temp. 4, 1. cf. MILT., P. L. 10, 1024. LEWES, G. II. 93.). But do you not *fear lest* he discover that Clara wrote the letter? (BULW., Money 3, 1.) I dread *lest* an expedition

begun in fear should end in repentance (GOLDSM., *G. Nat. M.* 5.). *I dread every minute lest I should meet some cursed person or other* (OXENE., *Twice Killed* 2.). The careful plowman doubting stands, *Lest . . his hopeful sheaves Prove chaff* (MILT., *P. L.* 4, 983.). He wisely doubting lest the shot . . *Might at a distance gall*, press'd close (BUTL., *Hud.* 1, 3, 503.). Other doubt possesses me, *lest harm Befal thee sever'd from me* (MILT., *P. L.* 9, 251. cf. 10, 783.). I trembled lest the thunders of their wrath might dissolve in showers like that of Xanthippe (SCOTT, *R. Roy* 24.). I tremble lest he be discovered (BULW., *Lady of L.* 2, 1.). I sicken lest I never see thee more (SHERID. KNOWLES, *Hunchb.* 4, 2.). He was afraid lest the poetical spirit should be swept away along with the prophetic (LEWES, *G. I.* 73.). He was most enraged lest *Such an accident should chance to touch upon his future pedigree* (BYR., *Mazeppa*). 'Tis a just fear, lest you should prove False (BUTL., *Hud.* 2, 1, 549.). Goethe's greatest anxiety . . was lest his scientific manuscripts should be destroyed (LEWES, *G. II.* 313.). Could it be, that Fate . . should . . give The skies alarm, lest angels too might die (YOUNG, *N. Th.* 7, 214.). Beware lest blundering Brougham destroy the sale (BYR. p. 321.). Take heed lest passion sway Thy judgment (MILT., *P. L.* 8, 635.). Look but somewhat In yonder corner, lest perhaps she lie Conceal'd behind that screen (COLER., *Picc.* 2, 3.). These combinations of sentences are dissimilar among each other, agree, however, in this, that the negative tendency assumed in the affirmative principal sentence or in the negative interrogative sentence, with the supposition of its affirmation, is reflected in the dependent sentence, for which reason we place these instances together.

In Old English it is chiefly the notion of fear, with which *lest* can introduce the dependent sentence: *Marie dredde lest it hadde ben Takmia* (MAUNDEV. p. 132.). *I drede lest God on us will take vengeance* (TOWN. M. p. 21.). He was somdel adrad *Leste he hadde for vuel ycome* (R. or GL. I. 91.). *Drede is at the laste Lest Crist in consistorie A-corse ful manye* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 7.). *I am ever in drede, wundreth, and wo Lest Pylate for mede let Jesus go* (TOWN. M. p. 202.). *For doute lest he sterre* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 227.). In Hallsaxon we find: *Hii habbeþ of oure londe al þane norþ ende, and we beoþ adrad sore leste he habbe nou more* (LAȜAM. II 107. modern text [alongside of *pat* commonly used in such a context in the old text]). Even in Anglosaxon there stands *pē lās pē*: *For þam pē ic hine ondræde pē lās pē he cume and ofslea þās mōdra mid hiora cildum* (GEN. 32, 11.), although *pāt* is commonly used, without the reflection of the negative relation of the subject to the thing, to be gathered from the principal sentence, as is also admitted by the modern language. With the notion of fright, Gothic presents the interrogative particle *ibai*, also *ibai aufto* (aiþm:) for the Gr. *ui*, answering to the Lat. *ne*.

3. After negative sentences the dependent sentence introduced by *but that* or *but* is very commonly employed instead of a substantive sentence. This particle frequently answers to the Latin *quin*, with which indeed it does not coincide in its exceptive meaning, and in the adversative meaning proceeding therefrom, although it exerts a similar effect.

But that and *but* are met with in negative sentences with a verb of sensuous or mental perception, imagination and pre-

dication: I see not then, but we should enjoy the same license (BEN JONS, Every Man out of his Hum., Prol.). I never saw but *Humphrey*, duke of Gloster, *Did bear him like a noble gentleman* (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 1, 1.). I had two friends with me; and as we did not know but that the crowd might be very great, we were on the spot by half past seven (DICKENS, Pict. of It., Rome. cf. SHAKSP., Rom. a. Jul. 5, 3.). Think not but we will share in all thy woes (ROWE, Fair Penit. 4, 1. cf. SHAKSP., Rich. III. 1, 3.). Believe not but I joy to see thee safe (ROWE, Fair Penit. 4, 1.). All the world should not persuade me but I were a cuckold (BEN JONS., Every Man in his Hum. 2, 1.). You shall never persuade me, but you knew of Mr. Oakly's going out to-day (COLMAN, Jeal. Wife 5, 2.). I cannot be persuaded but that marriage is one of the means of happiness (JOHNS., Russel. 28.). I can hardly persuade myself but you're alive (DICKENS, M. Chuzzlew. 1, 2.). Father, never dream . . . But ill must come of ill (SHELLEY, Cenci 1, 3.). This does not convince me but that marriage is one of the means of happiness (GOLDSM., G. Nat. M. 3.). Yet I'll not pledge myself, but that those letters may furnish you, perchance, with proofs against him (COLER., Picc. 3, 3.). Here the omission of *but* would produce the contrary sense.

The dependent sentence with *but* (*that*) is likewise attached to an elliptical *not*: *Not but they thought me worth a ransom . . . But for their own sakes, and for fear They were not safe when I was there* (BUTL., Hud. 2, 2, 549). Pray don't desire it of me: *not but that you may persuade me to any thing, sooner than any person in the world* — (SOUTHERN, Oroon. 1, 1.). *Not but your father had good qualities etc.* (BICKERSTAFF, Lion a. Clarissa 1, 1.).

The same dependent sentence takes place where the notions of doubting or of denying stand in the negative principal sentence: I doubt not but I shall find them (SHAKSP., Pericl. 4, 6. cf. All's Well 4, 4. Henry V. 2, 2). You doubt not but in valley and in plain God is as here (MILT., P. L. 11, 349.). I won't doubt but you'll maintain your word (SOUTHERN, Oroon. 3, 2.). Doubt not but I will use my utmost skill (SHELLEY, Cenci 1, 2.). There is no doubt But that they are murderers of Count Cenci (4, 3.). Neither, o king, I can or will denie But that this hand from Ferrex life hath reft (FERREX A. PORR. 4, 2.). It must not be denied but that I am a plain dealing villain (SHAKSP., Much Ado 1, 3.). It cannot be denied but peace is a great maker of cuckolds (Coriol. 4, 5.). This *but* is also found preserved with the transformation of the dependent sentence into the infinitive: I doubt not but to ride as fast as York (SHAKSP., Rich II. 5, 2.). I doubt not but to die a fair death for all this (I Henry IV. 2, 2.). I doubt not shortly but to reign sole king (MARLOWE, I. Tamburl. 1, 1. cf. Jew of M. 1, 2. D. Faust 1, 2.). In this case, however, the substantive sentence may appear as a dependent sentence: Being perfectly well acquainted with his father's disposition, he did not doubt that he was glad of this pretence to get rid of him (SMOLLET, R. Rand. 1.). The soldier could not doubt that it was his mistress (COOPER, Spy 6.). I could not doubt that the billet was most probably designed for him

(SCOTT, R. Roy 23.). I made *no doubt that the pack was my uncle's* (5.). His sentiments remained unchanged; and he could not doubt that they were correct (MACAUL., Hist. of E. II. 192.).

So far as the question with a verb of the predicate of the aforesaid kinds supposes a negative answer, or becomes the expression of an uncertain presumption, *but (that)* likewise finds a place in the dependent sentence: *O who shall believe, But you misuse the reverence of your place* (SHAKSP., II Henry IV. 4, 2.). *Who knows but I shall die a living death?* (MILT., P. L. 10, 786. cf. (BUTL., Hud. 1, 3, 381.) *Who knows, thought I, but it is Hunt himself* (IRVING, Br. H., The Stout Gentlem.). *Who knows but we may make an agreeable and permanent acquaintance* with this interesting family (TH. HOOK, Gilb. Gurney 3.). *How do I know but you have juggled together in my absence?* (SOUTHERN, Oroon. 1, 2.) — *Can it be doubted but that the finest woman in the world would lose all benefit of her charms etc.* (FIELD., T. Jon. 5, 1.). — The mingling of the construction of *that* and *but that* is remarkable in the reception of the conjunction after *who knows* in: *Who knows, thought I, that in some of the strange countries which I am doomed to visit, but that I may fall in with, and shoot one of these terrific monsters?* (MARRYAT, P. Simple 1, 1.)

After the notions forbid, prevent, where these notions, in themselves negative occur in the principal sentence without a negative, *but* is nevertheless met with in the dependent sentence: *God defend, but still I should stand so* (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 4, 3.). *What hinders then, but that thou find her out?* (ADDIS., Cato 3, 7.).

In instances of the classes cited here, as well as in others to be hereafter cited, *but what* is sometimes met with instead of *but that*. See p. 398.

Upon the dependent sentence introduced with *but (that)* and its various applications the details will have to be discussed in the conditional sentence. But how far *but* in this position can be compared with *quin* the following Latin passages may prove.

Dici non potest, quin ii qui nihil metuant... beati sint (CIC., Tusc. 5. 7.).

After the elliptic negation *quin* is replaced by *but*: *Consilium tuum reprehendere non audeo, non quin ab eo ipse dissentiam, sed quod ea te sapientia esse judicem, ut meum consilium non anteponom tuo* (CIC., Fam. 4, 7, 1.).

With the denied notion of doubting and of denying: *Agamemnon non dubitat, quin brevi sit Troja peritura* (CIC., Leg. Agr. 2, 27.). *Nemini dubium esse debet, quin reliquo tempore eadem mente sim futurus* (NER. 23, 2.). Itaque (se) *negare non posse, quin rectius sit cæt* (LIV. 40, 36).

With interrogative sentences: *Quis unquam dubitavit quin in republica nostra primas eloquentia tenuerit semper?* (CIC., Or. 41.) *Quis ignorat, quin tria Graecorum genera sint vere, Athenienses, Acoles, Dores?* (FLACC. 27.).

However widely the employment of *but* as a conjunction may have been extended in olden times, as to which the indications are to be found in the conditional sentence, and however closely the use of the conjunction treated of here may be connected in principle with other employments of it, I am yet not able to cite ancient instances belonging here earlier than from the fourteenth century: *But, frend, peraventure þee seyen that no man schal make you to byleven but that it is good to playen the passion of Crist*

(WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 56.). *No doute but that myracles pley-inge is verré takyng of Goddis name in ydil* (II. 50.). *No doute but that it is deadly synne* (II. 51.). Here this usage seems to have become already familiar.

4. Indirect interrogative sentences stand as sentences of the subject and as case sentences. In the principal sentence they suppose the notion of questioning itself, or that of an idea or utterance of thoughts, to which are also to be added that of doubt, surprise and apprehension.

a. Either the sentence itself, that is, the admissibility of the reference of the subject and predicate to each other, may then be called in question, so that the sentence is to be either affirmed or denied. The dependent sentence is in this case introduced by *if* or *whether*, and was formerly also by *an* (*and*).

Ask me if I am a courtier (SHAKSP., All's Well 2, 2.). *You have heard if I fought bravely* (BULW., Richel. 1, 1.). *Look if it be my daughter* (TALFOURD, Ion 3, 3.). *Knowest thou if she hath aught of a jointure from this Walter de Avenel?* (SCOTT, Monastery 5.). *I doubt if even they'll chip* (DOUGL. JERROLD, Bubbles 3.). *I wonder if the lion be to speak* (SHAKSP., Mids. N. Dr. 5, 1.).

The question . . . standeth thus: *Whether our present five and twenty thousand May hold up head without Northumberland* (SHAKSP., II Henry IV. 1, 3.). For the other — *I owe her money; and whether she be damn'd for that, I know not* (2, 4.). *I . . . asked him whether it was not difficult to learn* (MARRYAT, P. Simple 1, 2.). *See whether it be well with thy brethren* (GEN. 37, 14.). *Whether, Count, That right is mine, this paper may instruct you* (COLER, Picc. 5, 4.). *I doubt whether their legs be worth the sums That are given for'em* (SHAKSP., Tim. of Alb. 1, 2.). He doubted, as he has himself owned, *whether he had not been born "an age too late"* (MACAUL., Essays I. 4.). *I . . . looked after him, uncertain whether I ought not to follow him* (SCOTT, R. Roy 21.). *I wonder whether she cautioned her when she was there* (TROLLOPE, Framl. Parson. 1, 13.). *Often did I look at the lights in the town, and wonder whether any of them were in the presence of Celeste* (MARRYAT, P. Simple 3, 7.). *I don't care a jot Whether you are a prince* (BULW., Lady of L. 2, 1.). *Ask him an he will clem me* (BEN JONS., Poetast. 1, 1.). He shakes his head like a bottle, to *feel an there be any brain in it* (Every Man in h. Hum. 4, 1.). *To spy an I can hear my Thisbe's face* (SHAKSP., Mids. N. Dr. 5, 1.). The verb which gives the condition to the question may also have to be gathered from the context: *He came if haply he might find any thing thereon* (MARK 11, 13.).

The double, or disjunctive, question, which may also be extended to more than two members, and so disposes of the affirmation or negation of each member that its affirmation supposes the negation of the other or others, and conversely, is introduced by *if* or *whether*, and contains in the second member the particle *or*, which, however, may also be accompanied by

the interrogative particle, especially by *whether*: Nay, tell me if you speak in jest or no (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 2, 3.). *Whether the house is leasable or not* . . I do not know (TROLLOPE, Framl. Parson. 1, 18.). You must declare you *Whether you determine To act a treason 'gainst your Lord and Sovereign, Or whether you will serve him faithfully* (COLER., Picc. 5, 4.). See p. 353.

The indirect question has been from the earliest times introduced by *if*, which like the Anglosax. *gif*, Old-norse *ef*, *if*, Old-Highdutch *ipu*, *ibu*, *upi*, *ubi*, Middle-Highdutch *obe*, *ob*, stands in the conditional and, at the same time, in the interrogative dependent sentence (for *si* and *num*, *an*), whereas in Gothic an interrogative *ibai* is distinguished from the conditioning *jabai*. How near too, the meaning of the doubting question or the enquiry stands to that of the conditional sentence is immediately clear. Old-Engl.: *Zif he is a synner I wot nere* (WYCL., Joh. 9, 25.). Thus manye wedded men *preve zif the children ben here owne* (MACNDEV. p. 54.). And euyr beheld the lady bryght, *If she might se the whyte knyght* (IPOMYDON 967.). Ther nys no man can *deme* . . *If that it were departed equally* (CHACC., C. T. 7818.). Halfsax.: *Sezz us ziff patt iss Patt tu artt Helysew?* (ORM. 10295.). Anglosax.: *Frāgn gif him vore* . . *niht getæse* (BEOV. 1319. Grein). *Gif he synful is, pāt ic nāt* (Jou. 9, 25.). He āsende pā eft ūt āne culfrun, *pāt heō sceowode gif pā vātera pā git gesevicon ofer pære eorðan brādnisse* (GEN. 8, 8.). The use of *gif* in the meaning of *hwāðer*, *num*, *an*, has been overlooked by Grimm Gr. 3, 285, for which reason he compared *gif* with the Gothic *jabai*, not only in form, but also in the more restricted meaning.

The use of *whether* is as old. Old-Engl.: *Whether that it was as us semode, I wot nere* (MACNDEV. p. 283.). *Wheder he be rysen and gane Yet we ne knaw* (TOWN. M. p. 274.). Halfsax.: *Ich wulle wið mine mine rune halden, . . wheðer ich pe zetten wullen pā ping pe pu bede* (LAJAM. III. 270.). Anglosax.: For pām pe Drihten *fandað eovre hwāðer ge hine lufgeon* (DEUTER. 13, 3.). *Pā fandode frōd veard scipes, hwāðer sinkende seofōd pā git være under volcnum* (CAEDM. 1431.). He com and *sōhte hwāðer he paron aht funde* (MARC. 11, 13.). Ne vās me on mōde cūð *hwāðer on þissum folce freān ālmihtiges egesa være* (CAEDM. 2703.). *Hwāðer* properly, analogously to the Lat. *utrum*, supposes a double question, but since the question generally points to the possibility of a twofold answer, *hwāðer* is justified with the simple question, like *utrum*, after which *necne*, *an non* could be suppressed: *Quæram, utrum emeris et quo modo* (CIC., Verr. IV. 16.).

And, *an* has also passed from the conditional into the indirect interrogative question. Old-Engl.: I charge the and conjure . . That thou telle us *aad thou be Goddys sone* (COV. MYST. p. 296.). *Loke and the flesh and sennes welle last* (p. 319.). See the Conditional Sentence.

In Halfsaxon we also see the conditional *peh* pass, like *if* into the interrogative sentence: *Nute wo on liue peh he heo nabbe to wife* (LAJAM. III. 18.).

The verbal notion to be referred immediately to the interrogative sentence, has from ancient times been sometimes absent, especially with verbs of motion which leave the purpose of the inquiry to be guessed. Old-Engl.: I wold we yede To sir Pilate, *if we myght spede* His body for to crave (TOWN. M. p. 231.). Goth.: *Atiddja ei aufto bigeti wa ana imma* (MARC. 11, 13.). Gr.: ἤλθεν, εἰ ἄρα εὐρήσεται.

In the question of more than two members we meet with *if* and *whether* in Old-Engl.: Preyethe him to *aske the ydole zif his fadre or modre or frend schalle dye on that evylle or non* (MACNDEV. p. 201.). He scholde telle hire *gif it were he or no* (p. 133.). Though he *wite* no more than

a gos, *Whether he wole live or die* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 333.). The double question with *if* seems not to have been in use in ancient times, that with *whether* . . . or (*whether*) universal. Particulars thereon as well as on other forms are to be found in the discussion of the Disjunctive Coordination p. 351.

- b. Or some determination in the sentence is called in question, when the interrogative adverbs and pronouns appear.

Say where greatness lies (POPE, Essay on M. 4, 217.). *Whence* thou return'st and *whither* went'st I know (MILT., P. L. 12, 610.). Neither did I so much as *consider*, *whither* I should steer (DE FOE, Robins. p. 17.). The people at the inn do not seem to *know* exactly *when* you return (TH. HOOK, Passion a. Principle 15.). We can't *make out why* you thought fit to summon him in such haste (WARREN, Diary 2, 5.). He little *knew how much* he wronged her (ib.). I told him . . . to *beware how* he taxed the people (BULW., Rienzi 5, 5.). They *wondered how* you durst with so much wealth Trust such a crazed vessel (MARLOWE, Jew of M. 1, 1.). I *warvell'd how* the mind was brought To anchor by one gloomy thought (TENNYS. p. 311.). *Why* me the stern usurper spared, *Why* thus with me his palace shared, I *knew not* (BYR., Bids 2, 15.). *Who* it was he first bade Julia guess (TH. CAMPBELL, Theodric). He *knew not for whom* he copied (SCOTT, Minstrelsy I. 8.). He slew That which he loved, *unknowing what* he slew (BYR., Manfr. 2, 1.). To the king of France it *mattered little which of the two English parties* triumphed at the elections (MACAUL., H. of E. II. 28.). I *wonder what* Miss Hillary is thinking about! (WARREN, Diary 2, 5.). Yet fain would I . . . *judge how far* his power is supported, and *in what manner* it is borne (BULW., Rienzi 2, 8.). On my *inquiring what sort of a night* she had passed, she replied etc. (WARREN, Diary 2, 5.). It is evident how hard the interrogative sometimes borders on the relative sentence; the division lies essentially in the predicative notion of the principal sentence, and is to be based upon the analogy with the question (a).

A few modes of expression which have become formal or familiar belong here, with which the idea of the question falls into the background. Thus *where* stands after *see* or *look*, especially where attention is drawn to the place of appearance of a person: *See where he comes* (MARLOWE, Jew of M. 4, 4.). *Look where the sister of the king of France Sits wringing of her hands, and beats her breast* (Edw. II. 1, 4.). *Look, where it comes again!* (SHAKSP., Hamlet 1, 1.). *See where she comes from shrift* (Rom. a. Jul. 4, 2.). But *see where Portius comes!* what means this haste? (ADDIS., Cato 4, 4.) But *how* stands especially accompanied by verbal notions of perception, of thinking and of expression, where it is not so much a question of the *how?* of the fact, as of the fact as such: That thou may'st *know how that the earth is the Lord's* (EXOD. 9, 29.). We will not *hide it from my lord how that our money is spent* (GEN. 47, 18.). That they would *say: and how that I had quarrell'd My brother purposely* (BEN JONS., Every Man in h. Hum. 2, 1.). Throughout the

town 'tis told, *How the good squire gives never less than gold* (COWP. p. 109.). They tell *how Atys, wild with love, Roams the mount, and haunted grove* (TH. MOORE p. 5.). The gray warriors prophesied, *How the brave boy, in future war, Should tame the Unicorn's pride, Exalt the Crescent and the Star* (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 1, 19.). The older combination of *how* with *that* had no particular influence upon this usage (see p. 395), any more than making *as* precede it in the speech of the common people: *I believe as how your man deals with the devil* (SMOLLET, H. Clinker). And she says *as how . . . you should have thought of all this long ago* (WARREN, Diary 2, 5.). See the Modal Sentence.

The character of this notional question has always remained the same. Old-Engl.: & asked *whēpen* þei were? (LANGT. II 236.). *I ne not wider* I sal faren (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 235.), *Tel* thou me, *Whan* y schal sterve, yn god fay, *Whare*, and in *what* contray? (ALIS. 6897.) *Wher* that he be, I can nat sothly sayn (CHAUC., C. T. 3670.). *Loke* how it is (3433.). *Be* war therfor with lordes *how* ye play (7656.). Heo *aschede* at Corineus, *how* heo so hardi were, To honte vp þe kynges lond (R. OF GL. I. 16.). Now thou myght *chese* *How* thou coveitest to calle me (P. PLOUGHM. p. 296.). He *ascode* hem, of *vanne* þei, and *ho* hem pider broȝte. And *for wat* encheson ceo comv, & *wat* þing þei soȝte? I. 111.). In mony studes me *nuste* *Wuch* was on, ne ne *wuch* was oþer (I. 120.). This sely carpenter bath gret *mervaille* Of Nicholas, or *what* thing may him ayle (CHAUC., C. T. 3423.). Wel aught a man *arised* for to be *Whom* that he brought unto his pryvyte (4331.). Halfsaxon: *Fræineden* whær weoren þe king (LAȜAM. II. 88.). Al folc *wundredon* on *weonnene* com swa feir mon (I. 300.). Næs nan witie þat auere *wuste* here *whes* sune he weore (II. 293.). *Fræinede* his cnihtes sone *what* weoren þat speche (II. 174.). Nu wile I *shæwenn* þu *forwchi* ȝho ȝaff swille sware onnænness (ORW. 2421.). Anglosax.: Ic *ārige* hwær seo off-rung sig (GEN. 22, 7.). Ge *nyton* *hvanon* ic com, and *hryder* ic gā (JOH. 8, 14.). Hāfde þā *gefrunen* *hvanon* siō fæhō ārās (BEOW. 4797.). Nu ge *geseōð* hū hit mid me ys, and *gehirað* *hwit* ic tō eow sprāce (GEN. 45, 12.). Men *wundredon* hū þis land mihte eall pone here āfēdan (SAX. CHR. 1085.). Ne mæg ic þeah *gehyccan*, *hvy* him on hige porfte ā þy sæl vesan (ÆLFR. METH. 15, 9. Grein). He *frāgn* . . *hwā* þā duru heolde (GREIN, AGS. POES. I. 342.). Ne *visten* we *hwā* pone unræd ærest gerædde (SAX. CHR. 1065.). *Sāge* Adame, *hwilce* þu *gesihðe* hāfst. (CAEDM. 614.).

As with *see* and *look* we find in Old-English, especially with the particle *lo*. Anglosax. *lā*, a sentence with *where*: I se here by sowthe *Where* *Peas* cometh pleyinge (P. PLOUGHM. p. 379.). *Lo where* he stondeth! (p. 28.) *Lo, where* they cum that wille me take (TOWS. M p. 187.). *Lo. where* he comes us even ageyn (p. 211.). Is the sentence to be regarded as an expression of surprise? Older instances are wanting. Comp. Middle-Highdutch; Nu *seht*, *wā* dort here reit (IWMIS 34.). *Seht wō* der louch *sō hōhe* pran (ОТТОС., Reimchr. Pertz 90.). The employment of the sentence introduced by *how*, where a substantive sentence with *that* would be justified, belongs to the oldest period of the language. Old-Engl.: He cam and *seide* to the kyng *How* his fadir hette *Felip* (ALIS. p. 1564.). *Me dreded* . . *how* *hosanna* by *organye* *Olde* folk *songen* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 369.). Kyng Rychard *sawgh* *how* that he com; The way agayns hym be gan nom (RICH. C. DE L. 1589.). Whan men *spēken* to hem of the Incarnacioun, *how* that . . *God sente* his *Wysdom* in to *erthe* . . thei seyn that it is sothe (MACDEV. p. 136.). Ye *sayn* me thus, *how* that I am your brother (CHAUC., C. T. 7708. and often). Halfsax: þat *word* com to Scotten . . *hu* *Arður* þe king com *touward* heore londe (LAȜAM. II.

488.). Anglosax.: *Ve gehírdon þát Drihten ádrigde þá reádan sæ, . and hū ge ofslēgon siððan tvegen cynegas* (Jos. 2, 10.). And *geseah hira gesvencednyssa and hū sum Egiptisc man slōh sumne Ebrēiscne* (Exod. 2, 11.). *Ve gesávon hū he vās on heofenas ástigende* (Ev. Nicod. 18.). Compare Middle-Highdutch: *Nu seite er in mære wie er worden wære herre* (IWKIN 103.). The transition from *þát* to *hū* is readily explicable, the former simply comprehends the fact, whereas the latter reminds us poetically of the sensuous course or manner of the fact.

- c. The indirect interrogation is sometimes attached to the principal sentence by a preposition, the sentence being, as a substantive one, treated like the simple substantive. This is, in point of fact, the case with all sentences commencing with a preposition, which we arrange, with regard to their substance, with the dependent sentences to be hereafter cited.

Hath the prince John a full commission . . To hear and absolutely to *determine Of what conditions we shall stand upon* (SHAKSP., II Henry IV. 4, 1.). At the *idea, of how sorry she would be if I were killed* (MARRYAT, P. Simple 1, 3.). You *said nothing of how I might be dungeoned as a madman* (SHELLEY, Cenci 2, 1.). Or have they any *sense of why they sing?* (TENNYNS. p. 207.) Have you money enough to carry on the daily *quarrels of man and wife about who shall squander most* (GAY, Begg. Op. 1, 1.). They have had half a dozen *consultations about how the hawk is to be prepared for the morning's sport* (IRVING, Br. H., Falconry). So, too, the article *the* may precede the interrogation: As to *the how this act Be warranted*, it rests with you (SHELLEY, Cenci 4, 2.).

Compare the treatment of sentences of the determination of place and of adjective sentences used substantively, preceded by relative, (originally interrogative) particles and pronouns. Old-Engl.: *To carpe moore of Crist*, And *how he com to that name* (P. FLOREN. p. 400.). Halfsax.: *þatt Goddspell wrihte þatt wrat off hu þe Laferrd ras* (O. M. 5835.). Nu wille icc here *shawenn þuw . . Off hu 3ho barr þe Laferrd Crist* (3264. cf. Ded. 163.).

The Adverbial Sentence.

The Dependent Sentence of the Determination of Place.

1. The Dependent Sentence, by which the locality is determined, to which the action contained in the principal sentence is referred, is introduced by a relative adverb of place, which may have a correlative in the principal sentence (see p. 397.) but may also dispense with it.

Fly thither *whence thou fled'st* (MILT., P. L. 4, 963.). *Where there is nothing like nature* there is no room for the troublesome part of thought or contemplation (CHESTERFIELD, Character. III. 5. Bas. 1790). *Where a great regular army exists*, limited monarchy, such as it was in the middle ages, can exist no longer (MACAUL. Hist. of E. I. 41.). *Whither I go*, ye cannot come (JOHN 13, 33.). Thou . . shalt embrace it, harness it down; and make

it bear thee on, -- to new Americas, or *whither God will!* (CARLYLE, *Past a. Pres.* 3, 11.).

As the adverb of place may also be determined by prepositions, so too the whole sentence of determination of place may be connected with the principal sentence by a preposition, like a substantive: *Cam'st thou from where they made the stand?* (SHAKSP., *Cymb.* 5, 3.) He raised the maid *from where she knelt* (BYRON, *Bride* 1, 12.). We saw a stag bound nimbly by, within about twenty paces *of where we were sitting* (GOLDSM., *Vic.* 5.). If the loud cry of a mother's heart Can ever ascend *to where thou art* (LONGF., II. 138.). The star . . stood *over where the young child was* (MATTH. 2, 9.). He was cast away *About where Troy stood once, and nothing stands* (BYR., *Beppo* 94.).

The originally interrogative *where* formerly appeared, alongside of the forms *there thider*, used relatively, in dependent sentences of determination of place; the latter have, however, long been preserved as relatives. Old-Engl.: No wonder theȝ hit smyte harde *ther hit doth alizte* (WRIGHT, *Pop. Treat.* p. 136.). Þe rose is myghties, *þer nettille spredis over fer* (LANGT. I. 280.). *Ther that mischief is gret*, Mede may helpe (P. FLOUGHM. p. 53.). And wente *ther the kyng stondis* (ALIS. 7216.). Sche come to hym *ther he sat* (RICH. C. DE L 1569.). Ther have I taught hem to be charitable, And spend her good *ther it is resonable* (CHAUC., C. T. 7377.). Halfsax.: For wurðscipe ualleð adune *þer wes ær wunne* (LAJAM. III. 216.). Forr þær þær ȝho purrh Drihhtin warrp Off haliz Gast icipp childe þær toc ȝho blostme off Godless Gast (ORM. 1931.). Anglosax.: Vuna þær þe leofost ȝs (GEN. 20, 15.) Hvearf þá hróðlice þær Hróðgár sāt (BEOW. 717.). Álfvine vās ofslegen be Trentan, þær þær Egferð and Eðelréd gefuhton (SAX. CHR. 679.). Nu þu mōst fēran *þider þu fundadest* (COD. EXON 102, 11.). Gā þu and læde þis folc *þāder þe ic þe ær sæde* (32, 34.). In the last instance *þe* undertakes the relative relation. — Thurgh the hole gan he pas, Til he come *where the lady was* (SPENCY SAGES 3081.). *Where is love and leautee*, Thei wol noght come there (P. FLOUGHM. p. 67.). Uncoupled thei wenten . . *Where herself liked* (p. 10.). The Cristene men wenten, *where hem lykede best* (MAUNDEV. p. 260.). There *where seynt Katerine was buryed*, is nouthir chirche ne chapelle (p. 62.). Go now *weder thou has to go* (TOWN. M. p. 43.) and even Halfsax.: Ech man mot wende *woder his loured hotep* (LAJAM. II. 623. modern text [where the older text has: *þær his lauerd hine hateð gan*]).

The attaching of this dependent sentence by means of a preposition belongs to the oldest period of the language. Halfsax.: Mann barr þatt fule lic Till þær he bedenn hæfde (ORM. 8183.). Anglosax.: And ferde nihtes tō þær heora fyrð vicodon (JUDIC. 7, 19.) Se steorra . . him beforan ferde, oð he stōð ofer þær þāt child vīs (MATTH. 2, 9.).

2. As, generally, the adverb of place is not restricted to the determination of place in the strictest sense, but may also be referred to things, or even persons, with whom or with which anything takes place, so, too, it is sometimes used where a circumstance of time, rather than a place, is thought of.

Ne let vaine fears procure your needlesse smart, *Where cause is none* (SPENSER, F. Qu. 1, 1, 54.). — *Where one on his side fights*, thousands will fly (SHAKSP., *Rich.* II. 1, 3.). But *where he rode one mile*, the Dwarf ran four, And the Dwarf was first at the castle door (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 2, 31.).

In the last instances an opposition is at the same time effected, which in modern times has been transferred to *whereas*. See 3. The local sentence formerly often bordered on the temporal sentence. Old-Engl.: We held with hym *ther he saide leasse*, And therfor have we alle unpeasse (TOWN. M. p. 5) Halſax.: Arður wes wnnsum *per he hafde his willen*, & he wes wod sturne wið his wiðer iwinnen (LAȜAM. II. 522.), Anglosaxon: þær þær hi gode beoð, þonne beoð hi þurh þæs gōdan mannes gōd gōde (BOETH. 16.).

3. The form *whereas* (*there as*), in use concurrently with the simple *where*, is now obsolete in this sense, although it was imported with the modern tongue.

They backe retourned to the princely place; *Whereas an errant knight . . they new arrived find* (SPENSER, F. Qu. 1, 4, 38.). 'Tis his highness' pleasure You do prepare to ride unto Saint Albans, *Whereas the king and queen do mean to hawk* (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 1, 2.).

On the other hand *whereas* is in modern times employed similarly to the German *während*. Fr. *tandis que*, so that what appears at the same time or of the same measure is, as it were, placed in the same space.

And ye shall be left few in number, *whereas ye were as the stars of heaven for multitude* (DEUTER. 28, 63.). Gr. ἀνδρῶν ὅτι ἦτε ὡς ἐὶ τὰ ἀστὲρ. She was a married woman; 'tis convenient Because in Christian countries 'tis a rule To view their little slips with eyes more lenient; *Whereas if single ladies play the fool . . I don't know* how they ever can get over it (BYR., Beppo 24.). And *whereas I was black and swart before*, With those clear rays which she infused on me, That beauty I am bless'd with, which you see (SHAKSP., I Henry VI. 1, 2.). And hence it is that *whereas the quality*, which first strikes us in most poets, *is sensibility . . the first quality* which strikes us in Goethe . . is intellect (LEWES, G. I. 42.).

Yet *whereas* is also employed, particularly in the legal style, to represent the situation of the thing in which what is contained in the principal sentence appears. We may find it about answering to the Lat. *quoniam, quandoquidem*: *Whereas you desire to know* the Queen's Majesty's pleasure, what she will do for appeasing of these controversies . . ; her pleasure in this behalf, that ye should leave off the maintenance of this civil discord (ROBERTSON, Hist. of Scotl. III. 226. Declar. a. 1571. cf. ib. p. 142.). *Whereas thou hast searched all my stuff*, what hast thou found of all thy household stuff? (GENES. 31, 37.). *Whereas I had appointed to meet her to-day*, say I cannot (AINSWORTH, Lat. Diction. 1824. v. *whereas*).

With *whereas* compare *when as* and *while as* with the dependent sentence of the determination of time. In ancient times *there as* and *where as* were used, like the particles without *as*, of the determination of space: *pere as þe batayle was*, an abbey he let rere (R. of GL. II. 369.). *pere as ys vnclē ded lay*, ys foule caroyne broȝte (I he 216.). To the hexte hevene . . *ther as the sterreu beoth* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 134.). *Ther as the semblē y-holde schal be*, Ther schul be maystrys and felows also (HALLIW., Freemas. 408.). *There as the stom Jordan partethe fro the see of Galilee*, is a gret brigge (MACDREV. p. 115.). *Ther as thou may have noon audience*, enforce the not to speke (CHAUC, C. T.

p. 152. II.). — *Hwar ase eni of peos was . . þer was . . þe kundel etc.* (WRIGHT & HALLIW., *Rel. Ant.* I. 67.). And the colveres retournen aȝen, *where as thei ben norissht* (MACDEV. p. 118.). Or I go . . to the lond of myse and of derknesse, *wher as is the schadow of the deth, wher as is noon order ne ordinaunce* (CHAUC., *C. T.* p. 187. II.). They . . will tell of thinges that have be done, *Whereas never shyneth sone ne mone* (HALLIW., *Nugae Poet.* p. 8.). The particle *as* has no other effect than the particle *that*, which may also combine with *where*: This frere com, as he were in a rage, *Wher that his lord sat* (CHAUC., *C. T.* 7748. See p. 397.

Where as was subsequently used in a metaphorical meaning: It semeth that yow sufficeth to have been counseiled by these counsellours only . . *wher as in so gret and so heigh a neede, it hadde be necessarious mo counsellours* (CHAUC., *C. T.* p. 156. II.). — *Wher as ye sayn*, that alle wommen ben wikke . . ye despise alle wommen in this wise (p. 153. I.). And *ther as ye blame alle wymmen . . I schal schewe . . that many a womman hath ben ful good* (ib. II.).

4. The sentences of determination of place denote either a definite locality at that time occupied by an object, or the place indicated by it may change or be in itself indefinite, and is determined each time by the identity of the action only. These dependent sentences may coincide in point of form, as is shewn by the instances cited under 1. But the generalization or the indefiniteness of the locality may also be from the commencement expressed by combination. The questionable place is generalized in Modern-English by adding *ever* or *soever* to the adverb of place, whereas the former subjunction of *so* merely is obsolete.

Wher'er a frown Appears against you, nothing's spared to make
The wearer doff it (SHERID. KNOWLES, *Virgin.* 5, 3.). Oh lead me
wheresoe'er I go, Thro this day's life or death (POPE, *Univ. Prayer*).
I will go *whithersoever you lead* (WEBST. v.).

Dependent sentences of this sort, which become concessive sentences (see the Concessive sentence) have from the most ancient times admitted only the originally interrogative form of the adverb of place. The accompanying *so* (*sua*, *svá*), which was at first preceded by a correlative *svá*, sufficed for the generalized sentence, but *ever* was also early added to or substituted for it. Old-Engl.: *Wasches ow hwer so ned is* as ofte as ge wiln (WRIGHT & HALLIW., *Rel. Ant.* II. 4.). Therefore ever-eft after-ward *wher so develen heo*, Of thundre bi beoth so sore agast that hi nute whoder fleo (WRIGHT, *Pop. Treat.* p. 136.). But evermo, *wher so I go or ryde*, I am thin owen clerk (CHAUC., *C. T.* 4236. cf. 16123.). *Where so we go*, *where so we veynd*, Thus shalle we say (TOWN. M. p. 267.). Hallsax.: þat heo moten wonien *wer swa heo wolles* (LAȜAN. I. 21. cf. I. 392. II. 50.). Faren þu scalt bi ræde *wuder swa ich þe læde* (II. 372.). In Orm *whærse*, *whærs*, *whærsumm*, Old-norse *hvar sem*, Danish *whorsonhelst*, are met with: *Whers itt iss itt harrdneþþ* all þe gode manness herrte (ORM. 1574. cf. 4874.). Forr þatt teȝȝ woldenn cumenn eft . . Till himm, *whærsumm he wære att inn* (12924. cf. 1822.). In Anglosaxon a *svá* precedes the adverb: Sige hæfdon *svá hvar svá hi cōmon* (SAX. CHR. 449.). Vās underfangen ovæ eall, *svá hvar svá he com*, mid micel vurðscipe (1130.). *Svā hvyder svā he in-gæð*, *segað þās hūses hlāforde etc.* (MARC. 14, 14.). Thus the Middle-Highdutch combines *swa sô*, *swar sô*, that is *sô swa*, *sô war sô*, but mostly contents itself with *swa*, *swar*. — *Ever* is for instance, met with in Old-Engl.: And taketh hede . . *whersever ze com* (HALLIW., *Freemas.* 579.). He hath always 3 wives with him, *where that ever he be* (MACS-

DEY. p 217.). In *Halfsaxon* *euere* stands with *ware* in an indirect question: *Sellich beom pohten ware euere onder heauene soch heued were ikenned* (LAFAM. III. 37. modern text).

As to the reference of the adverbial sentence to a substantive see the Adjective Sentence.

The Dependent Sentence of the Determination of Time.

1. This dependent sentence may, in the first place, determine the when? in general as a point or a space of time within each of the three spheres of time to which the action of the principal sentence is referred, which may likewise be a present, a past or a future one. The action contained in the dependent sentence may in fact coincide with that of the principal sentence, or be unctemporaneous; both may cover each other, or one enclose the other, as the space does the point of time. These relations, in themselves possible, resulting both from the tenses of the dependent and of the principal sentence, and from the context and the nature of the actions, are not of themselves indicated by the particle of time contained in the sentence; it is least characteristic, therefore capable of various relations, and might in part interchange with others.

a. a. The particle chiefly coming under consideration here is *when*.

Wash they his wounds with tears? mine shall be spent, *When theirs are dry* (SHAKSP., Rom. a. Jul. 3, 2.). I like a parliamentary debate, Particularly *when 'tis not too late* (BYR., Beppo 47.). It was broad day *when he awoke* (LEWES, G. I. 39.). *When we arrived in London*, they drove to the Blue Boar (MARRYAT, P. Simple 1, 1.). *When Columbus arrived at Cordova*, the court was like a military camp (IRVING, Columb. 2, 3.). *When I was young* I thought of nothing else But pleasure (SHELLEY, Cenci 1, 1.). Most men, *when they knew* that her melancholy had no ground in real sorrow . . . might have wished her whatever could add to her happiness (SCOTT, Pirate 3.). Mordaunt resisted being swept off with the receding billow, *when*, though an adroit swimmer, *the strength of the tide must either have dashed him against the rocks, or hurried him out to sea* (7.). I hope you will pardon my passion *when I was so happy to see you last* (GAY, Begg. Op. 3, 1). [In this instance the sphere of time of the ebullition is stated by the dependent sentence.] I remember *When he was no better born than myself* (FIELD., J. Andr. 2, 5.). [Here the temporal sentence borders on the indirect question.] *When the Provost and Cleveland had returned into the public council-room*, the former retired a second time (SCOTT, Pirate 35.). *When I shall die* Take him and cut him out in little stars (SHAKSP., Rom. a. Jul. 3, 2.).

In narrative, not so much the sphere of time of the action generally is stated by a dependent sentence following the principal sentence, as a surprising event introduced by it: He was proceeding in this learned manner, *when a mighty noise interrupted him* (FIELD., J. Andr. 1, 14.). I was preparing to go out, *when the servant informed me* there was one yet to be spoken with (WARREN,

Diary 1, 4.). They lowered him, with the sound Of requiems to repose, *When from the throngs around A solemn voice arose* (MRS. HEMANS p. 20.). A detachment of his troops was preparing to march to Bridport, *when a disastrous event threw the whole camp into confusion* (MACAUL, Hist. of E. II. 145.). The schoolmaster had scarcely uttered these words in a fierce whisper, *when the stranger entered* (DICKENS, Nickleby 1, 4.). The principal sentence contains either a general situation or a completed action, as in the last instance, which interchanges with other forms of the sentence, as is to be observed under b, where older forms are also stated.

The older language introduces these sentences both with the originally interrogative, but also formerly relatively used *whanne*, *hwæn*, Anglosaxon *hwænne*, *hwonne*, and with the originally demonstrative, formerly more generally relatively employed *thanne*, *than*, Anglosox. *pænne* *penne*, commonly *ponne*. Old-Engl.: *Wanne I ðenke ðinges ðre*, Ne mai hi nevre bliðe ben (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 235.). *Wanne he is i-kindled stille lið ðe leun* (I. 209.). Ge muhen swa don ofte, *hwæn ow punches hevie* (II. 4.). *Wen þe strengþe faileþ*, me mot take quoyntyse (R. of GL. I. 20.). Wynter is þer long, *whan somer is here in pride* (LANGT. II. 240.). *Quen alle thinges draus þus-gat til end*, þe angels . . Sal knele dun (ANTICR. 675.). *Whan that messangeres of straunge contrees comen before him* . . thei ben aboute the souldan (MAUNDEV. p. 40.). *Whan he was awoyled of the pape Serge* He died (LANGT. I. 1.). *Whan thei had sene þat sight*, þes com and teld our kyng (II. 253.). *Whan the peple was plener comen*, The porter unpynned the yate (P. PLOUGHM. p. 209.). *Whan sayd was this miracle every man As sober was* (CHAUC., C T. 15102.). *Whanne þe ilke spirit of treupe schal come*, he schal teche þou al treupe (WYCL., Joh 16, 13.). Halfsax.: *Wonne þu comest to þon crihten* . . þær þu findest seouen houndred (LAJAM. I. 31.). In the two texts of Laſamon the forms *ponne* and *wenne*, *wane*, *wonne* frequently interchange in the sentence of time, as I. 28. 31. II. 37. *Þure preost ltt awwneþþ all*, Aþ *whanne he sinzeþþ messe* (ORM. 1724.). Anglosax.: Gesette me ænne āndagan *hwænne þu ville þūt ic for þe gebidde* (EXOD. 8. 9.). The sentences with *hwænne* are often not to be decidedly separated from the indirect sentence.

The dependent sentence with the original demonstrative particle extends into the fifteenth century. Old-Engl.: *ðanne him hungreð he gapeð wide* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 220.). *Than thei were redi for to fare* The douke had al that ther ware, To chirche thai schulde wende (AMIS. A. ANIL 2245.). *Than the lordinges schuld forth wende*, That riche douke . . Cleped to him that tide The tway barouns (109.). Ffor this is the very lombe . . Of weche John the Baptyst dede prophesy *Than this prophesye he dede begynne* Seyng "Ecce agnus Dei!" (COV. MYST. p. 272.). This carfulle lady cried faste, *Than she herd this hornes blaste* (TORRENT 2123.). Halfsax.: *ponne men gað to bedde*, þu scalt forð wenden (LAJAM. I. 31.). *penne þi lif endeð* þer þu scalt resten (II. 298.). Heore leþe birrþ hemm beon Rædiþ, *þann itt iss addledd* (ORM. 6234.). All þe werelld toc att Himm Bignning *þanne het wrohhte* (18565.). Anglosax.: *ponne ge gehiron mid þam biþman blāvan*, *ponne faron ge on þone munt* (EXOD. 19, 13.). *ponne hit dagjan volde*, *ponne tōglād hit* (SAX. CHR. 979.). Ac *ponne hi mæst tō yfele gedēn hāfdon*, *ponne nam man grið and frið við hi* (1011.). Thus Gothic used the particle *þan* for *ḥtan*, *ḥtr*, *ḥret*. This particle gradually gave way to the former, and was early avoided, especially in prose, as by Maundeville, Wycliffe, Chaucer, (in his prose pieces.).

Both the above named particles were in the ancient language restricted to the province of the past by *tho*, Anglosax. *þa*, Old-norse *þá*, alongside whereof no *þann* stands, Old- and Middle-Highdutch *dô*, Lowdutch *da*.

Old-Engl.: *pis was þo in Engoland Britones were* (R. of GL. I. 2.). *þo monk was joyful ynow, þo he hurde pis* (I. 105.). *Hys strengþe & hys wisdom . . . He turnde al to loþernesse, þo Lanfrac was ded* (II 389.). The fitte joie is feirest in wede, *Tho thou in to hevene trede* (WRIGHT A. HAL-LIW., Rel. Ant. I. 49.). *To oure Loverd on urthe tholedeth deth*, the devel he bond anon (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 136.). *The Alisaundre this say, he lowh* (ALIS. 2635.). *To the belles began to ryng*, Upe rose that ryche kyng (TORRENT 811.). *þo he hadde ys bone ydo*, he fel on slepe riȝt pere (R. of GL. I. 14.). *Neghe yere tho sche hadde there g-dwelled*, Her sone was fiftene wynter eld (OCTOCIAN 655.). *Tho he hadde it y-seyd*, The king sore was amayd (ARTH. A. MERLIN p. 86.). Halſax.: Annd tatt wass don þurh Godd tatt he Ne wass nohht ta þærinne *þa patt unncupe folc comm inn* (ORM. 6462.). *þa þa Mærling wes ilad*, þa wes Dinabus ful glad (LAJAM. II. 230.). *þa þe he wes ald mon þa com him ufel on* (II. 385. cf II. 50.), *þa þat child wes of prittene yere þa iwærð his fader unueren* (II. 37.). In Anglosaxon all later forms were very frequent; we find *þā . . þā þā*, *þā þe . . þā*, *þā þe* and *þā*, among which the reduplicated *þā þā* may be resolved into a demonstrative and a relative element, the former of which often reappears in the principal sentence: Loth com *þā tō* Segor, *þā þā sunne uppeode* (GEN. 19, 23.). *þā þā þās pingc gedōne wæron*, *þā becom se foresæda Thaliarcus* (APOLLON. OF T, p. 6.). And *þā þā he slæp*, *þā genam he an ribb of his sidan* (GEN. 2, 21.). *þā þe he tō pære byrig com*, *þā nolde seð burhwaru abūgan* (SAX. CHA. 1013.). Hie of-foron þonne here hindan *þā þe he hāmveard vās* (911.). *þā hig hine ne fundon*, hig ge-vendon tō Hierusalem (LCC. 2, 45.). *Tho*, with a demonstrative meaning is found in Spenser, and in dialects, as in Somerset

β. The sentence of time introduced by *when* may include various logical relations of the dependent to the principal sentence.

Thus a causal relation may be found in it: Yet not to Earth's contracted span Thy goodness let me bound, Or think thee Lord alone of Man, *When thousand worlds are round* (POPE, Univ. Prayer).

The sentence of time may also sometimes be readily transmuted into a conditional one: It is never well to put ungenerous constructions, *when others, equally plausible and more honorable are ready* (LEWES, G. I. 8.), although here what is given in time appears as the conditioning.

An adversative relation, such as may be in sentences with *where* (b.), is also sometimes met with: *When they will not give a doit to relieve a lame beggar*, they will lay out ten to see a dead Indian (SHAKSP., Temp 2, 2.). An honest man, Sir, is able to speak for himself, *when a knave is not* (II Henry IV. 5, 1.). Comp. *while, whilst*. Here also may be referred: Ye shall flee *when none pursueth* (LEVIT. 26, 17.). Anglosaxon: Ge fleoð *peðh eow man ne drife*. Gr. φεύξουσθε οὐδενός διωκοντος ὑμᾶς. — And they shall fall *when none pursueth* (26, 36.). Anglosaxon And fleoð *peðh him nān man við ne feohte*.

The diffusive nature of this sentence of time explains such a comprehension of logical relations, which the particle does not of itself denote.

Causal and conditional sentences might often have been put in the place of the Old-English sentence of time with *when*. Old-Engl.: *Wen ze habbeþ forme of men*, beþ men on alle wise (R. of GL. I. 101.). No wonder . . þaw Breteyne al day go tō gronde, *Wan heo, þat þer inne beþ, suche folcs beþ yfonde* (I. 147.). *þe mowe siȝe, whan thundre is menginge of fur*

and wette, Hou is that hit quelleth men? (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 136.) He is a traitour strong, *when he, with tresoun and with wrong, Thi doughter hath forlaine* (AMIS. A. AMIL. 790.).

The transition from dependent sentences with *when* (*ponne*) to conditional sentences with *if* has been readily effected from the most ancient times. Old-Engl.: *Whan thei fleen afre here preye, and take it before men of armes*, it is a gode signe; and *zif he fayle of takynge his praye*, it is an eyvle sygne (MAUNDEV. p. 166.). Anglosax.: *ponne Moises his handu upáhof*, *ponne háfde Israhela folc sie*; *gif he ponne lithvon slacode*, *ponne háfde Amalech sie* (EXOD. 17, 11.).

An adversative relation may also be concealed under the tempora form. Old-Engl.: And seide hym it was gret despit pat per wer in þis lond Twei kynges, *man ryzt was*, pat he it hadde al on hond (R. OF GL. I. 38.).

- γ. The combination of *when as* is in general obsolete, but it is nevertheless met with in modern poets in the meaning of *when*.

Such *when as Archimago them did view*, He weened well to worke some uncouth wyle (SPENSER, F. Qu. 2, 1, 8.). Ah one that was a woeful looker-on, *When as the noble duke of York was slain* (SHAKSP., III Henry VI. 2, 1. cf. 1, 2. Cymb. 5, 4. and often).

When as his mother Mary was espoused to Joseph, before they came together. she was found with child of the Holy Ghost (MATTH. 1, 18.). Now *when as sacred light began to dawn* . . forth came the human pair (MILT., P. L. 9, 192.). Such combat should be made on horse . . With brand to aid, *when as the spear Should shiver in the course* (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 4, 34.). *When as the Palmer came in hall*, Nor lord, nor knight, was there more tall (MARR. 1, 28.).

When as is also met with similarly to *whereas*, where an opposition takes place: So Judas kiss'd his master, And cried — all hail! *When as he meant — all harm!* (SHAKSP., III Henry VI. 5, 7.) What boots it thee . . to be the governor, *When as thy life shall be at their command?* (MARLOWE, Jew of M. 5, 2.)

This combination of particles, already disappearing seems not to be able to claim any great age. *When as*, subsequently assimilated to *where as*, is hardly met with alongside of it, while *whan that* occurs very often. Yet the combination *whan so* early meets us, even where there is no question of a generalization of the temporal sentence. Hallsax.: *Uor weonne so ich beo uorð faren*, Hengest eow wul moken kare (LAJAM. II. 206.). Comp. δ.

- δ. In the generalization of the dependent sentence the particle *when* may combine with *ever*, *soever*. Compare the Dependent Sentence of the Determination of Place 4.

Where is the woman who would scruple to be a wife, if she had it in her power to be a widow *whenever she pleases* (GAY, Begg. Op. 1, 1.). *Whenever the coach stopped*, the sailor called for more ale (MARRYAT, P. Simple 1, 2.).

So formerly sufficed. Old-Engl.: *When so thou will send after me* (SECTY SAGES 3211.). Spenser offers *when so*. Hallsax.: *Whan swa cumeð neode* . . *þenne mæi ich suggest hu hit seoððen scal iwurðen* (II. 294.). *Whanne swa æi ferde fundeð to þan ærde þeonne fleoð þa fugeles feor i þan lufe* (I. 490.). In Orm *whanne* is also combined with *atz*: *Azz whanne þu forrripest tuss þin wrappe andd ec þin wræche*, *Azz þanne lakesst þu þin Godd etc.* (ORM. 1466. cf. 547.); it of course also appears without *an-*

cf. 912. 924. I have not yet met with any Anglosaxon *swá hvonne swá*. Comp. p. 426.

- b. The space or point of time may be denoted by a substantive on which the dependent sentence has its correlative. The dependent sentence is introduced either by *when* or by *that*; the sentence without a particle has here a place.

α. The dependent sentence with *when*, at present familiar, is by reason of the more definite character of this particle limited to a narrower sphere than that with *that* and is of a more recent origin than the latter: *The time of night when Troy was set on fire, the Time when screechows cry* . . . That time best fits the work we have in hand (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 1, 4.). Now is the time when after sparkling showers Her starry wreaths the virgin jasmin weaves (BULW., K. Arth. 1, 2.). From the time when the barbarians overran the Western Empire to the time of the revival of letters, the influence of the Church of Rome had been generally favourable to science etc. (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 47.). Hide not thy face from me in the day when I am in trouble (Ps. 102, 2.). The forest's trees, coeval with the hour When Paradise upsprung (BYR., Heav. a. Earth 3.). That fearful moment When he left the cave Thy heart grew chill (Bride 2, 27.). Hence also: He had obtained a living at an age when other young clergymen are beginning to think of a curacy (TROLLOPE, Framl. Parson. 1, 3.). Sentences of this sort may of course interchange with adjective sentences: This was the period in which Goethe was born (LEWES, G. I. 16.). On the evening on which the Duke landed (MACAUL., Hist. of E. II. 147.).

Old-Engl: Wot no man þe time wanne he sal henne rimen (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 175.). Spied tyme & tide whan he suld issue oute (LANGT. II. 242.). Of alle thise prophetes . . . Was none that told the tyme before, When he shuld com to by us peasse (TOWN. M. p. 159.). Ffor a mery tyme now is, Whan God my lord is born (COV. MYST. p. 174.). In Anglosaxon *þā* is occasionally referred to a substantive notion of time: *þā seō tid gevearð, þā he fniðgedāl fremman sceolde* (CAEDM. 1135.). The forms cited under *þ* are, however, more familiar here.

- β. The reference of sentences with *that* to substantive notions of time in the principal sentence goes back to the most ancient period of the language. This particle in former times attached more manifold temporal relations. We may, in general, consider sentences of this sort as genitive sentences, which, because of their analogy with the genitive, render possible various relations of the Dependent Sentence to the substantive, not answering to the *when*? or at what time? alone, although this is mostly the case in modern English: *The day that she was missing* he was here (SHAKSP., Cymb. 4, 3.). I gave a noble to the priest, *The morn that I was wedded to her mother* (I Henry VI. 5, 4.). At the time that I was born, he smoked and she drank, from morning to night (MARRYAT, Jac. Faithf. 1, 1.). *Every day that she saw him, her woman's heart throbbed with pity towards him* (WARREN, Diary 2, 5.). — *The days were accomplished that she should be delivered* (LUKE 2, 6.). Gr. *αἱ ἡμέραι τοῦ τεκεῖν αὐτήν*.

As *that* may be omitted in the substantive sentence in general, so too in temporal sentences of this kind: In *that day thou seest my face thou shalt die* (EXOD. 10, 28.). *The day thou eat'st thereof . . . inevitably thou shalt die* (MILT., P. L. 8, 32⁹). *The instant he understood my meaning, he forgot all his grievances* (SCOTT, R. Roy 35.). *The moment my business here is arranged I must set out* (BYR., Lett.). *This is the tenth time I've called for my bill* (DOUGL. JERROLD, Bubbles 2.).

The following correspond to most of the sentences cited. Old-Engl.: Til it cometh *the tyme dat storm stired al ðe se* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I 220.). So that hit come to *the time That hoe shulden arisen* (II. 277.). Seven ðere was he kyng *that tyme pat he was dede* (LANGT. I. 23. cf. II. 242. OCTOBIAN 1939. (RICH. C. DE L. 1116). Thei han often tyme werre with the soudan; and namely *that tyme that I was with him* (MAUNDEV. p. 64.). Ich was bysschop of the lawe *That ðer that Crist for ȝou was slawe* (WRIGHT A. MALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 241). Syn *thilke day that they were children lyte* (CHAUC., C. T. 1195.). Thei com home *that ylk a (ylke?) day, That here bredale was holde* (AMIS. A. AMIL. 2437.). In Hallsaxon (in Laȝamon) *pe* occurs alongside of *pat*, as *pāt* and the indeclinable, relative *pe* interchange with each other: Saunte Margess *time* was *pāt ȝho pa sholde childenn* (ORM. 3316. cf. 3394.). *pāt dazȝ pāt Crist comm her to manne* (3720.). After þritti wintere com *pe dæi þot Cunedagius deað læi* (LAȜAM. I. 165.). Nu is icumen *pe ilke dæi pe drihten us helpen may* (II. 396. cf. II. 420.). Anglosax.: Hit vās pā se tima *pāt vinberȝan ripodon* (NEM. 13, 21.). Nu is se dāg *cumen pāt ure mandryhten māgenes behōfað gōdra gūðrinca* (BEOV. 5286.). Pā sæton hie . . . oð þone fyrst *pe hie vurdon swiðe metelease* (SAX. CHR. 918.). Forðfērde þȝ ilcan geāre *pe siō sunne āpȝstrode* (885.). Oð þonne āne dāȝ *pe he við pam vyrmes gevegan sceolde* (BEOV. 4790.). But the particles are not only referred to the notion of time in such a manner that the matter of the sentence introduced by them falls in the space of time named; they may rather *ȝe* referred to the two extreme limits of the notion of time. Old-Engl.: He was ybore . . . *pe pryðde ȝer pāt hys fader Engolond bywan* (R. OE GL. II. 420.). Aftur *fiȝtene daves, pāt he hadde ordeyned þis*, Tō London he wende (I. 144.). After the *tuelf furste dayes that the sed hath whyt i-beo*, Hit becometh to a thikke blod (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 139.). *The thryðde day is this that he was clad In coold clay and leyd in grave* (COV. MYST. p. 366.). Hallsax.: Nu hit is *umbe seoue ȝere pāt þu weren here* (LAȜAM. I. 214.). Nes hit buten *feower wiken pāt þas kinge ifaren weoren*, cam Brennes riden (I. 200.). Anglo-sax.: On *pam āftran geāre pe se arcebiſceop Alfeg vās gemartyrod*, se cyng gesitte Lyfing biſceop tō Cantvarabyrig tō þam arce-stōle (SAX. CHR. 1013.). *þis pe* else frequently stands *ex quo*. Modern-English usually uses *since*: It is *fifteen years since I saw my country* (SHAKSP., Wint. T. 4, 1.). It is *three days since I saw the prince* (ib.). — Hallsax.: Nævede heo bute *preo nihte feorſt faren pāt heo scolde* (LAȜAM. I. 192.). Anglosax.: *Hyre dagas væron gefyllede pāt heō cende* (LUC. 2, 6. see above). After *pam pe elta dagas gefyllede væron pāt pāt cild ymh-sni-den være* (2, 21.). Gr.: τοῦ περικτεμενῶν αἰσίου. Nās seō *stund latu earmra gæsta nō pāt onbid long pāt pā vroht-smiðas vāp āhifun* (COB. EXOS. 156, 16.). With negative sentences *pāt* most frequently appears.

The omission of *that* after the substantive, reminding one of the omission of the relative pronoun occurring with the adjective sentence, is in use in Old-Engl.: *Time is come the lady schal childe* (ALIS. 604.). Ffor *that time ȝe had ȝoure bore bent in honde . . . ȝe wolde the pryk han*

11. Subor. of Sent. The Depen. Sent. as an Adver. Deter. The Adver. Sent. 433

hitte (Cov. MYST. p. 45.). *That day thou syst Goddus body* Thou shalt have these etc. (HALLIW., FREEMAS, 667.).

- c. As the dependent sentence leans upon a substantive notion of time, so does it also upon the temporal adverb *now*, and that mostly without the relative *that*, which did not appear till subsequently. In this sentence a fact is cited, which either falls in the immediate presence of the speaker, or belongs to a point of past time just present, and is mostly cited as the cause of the main sentence.

Now I think on thee, My hunger's gone (SHAKSP., Cymb. 3. 6.). I see thee, *now thou art gone*, As one dead in the bottom of a tomb (Rom. a. Jul. 3, 5.). And *now I've nothing left me to bestow*, You hate the wretched bankrupt you have made (Rowe, J. Shore 2, 1.). Why, Mr. Honeywood brought me here, to do nothing *now I am here* (GOLDSM., G. Nat. M. 5.). *Now you mention Sir William Honeywood* . . , you'll be glad to hear he's arrived from Italy (2.). Methinks I breathe more freely, *now my lot is palpable* (TAFFOURD, Ion 3, 2.). *Now thou art gone*, we have no staff, no stay (SHAKSP., III Henry VI. 2, 1.). — But *now that their distress was over*, they forgot that he had returned to them (MACAUL., Hist. of E. IV. 17.). — To this construction is assimilated the joining of the dependent sentence to *once*: And *once I've stamped it there*, I'll lay aside my doubts for ever (SHERID., Riv. 4, 3.).

The Analogy of these sentences to those cited under b, *β*, is readily seen. The causal relation is also not expressed thereby, although from the earliest times the motive was indicated by what was immediately present in time. Old Engl. *Nou ich am in clene live*, No recche ich of childe ne of wive (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel Ant. II. 277.). *Alle þee schulleth beo the bet, nou icham y-come* (II. 241.). *Now I find the here*, wele set is my travaille (LANGR. II. 242.). *Now thou schalt afot go*, Y schal fight afot also (AMIS. A. AMIL. 1342.). *Now mi louerd is out i-gon*, Thou comest hider for no gode! (SEUYX SAGES 2232.). *Now the sonne to the grounde held*, Yet stondith the olifans in the feld (ALIS. 2521.). As to how *now* combines, with other temporal conjunctions in Old Engl. See p. 395. Anglosax. *Hvæt recst þu hū ge hvearfjan nu ic siemle mid þe beo?* (BORTH, 7, 3.). *Ic underfēng þine bēne þāt ic þā burh ne tōvende nu þu vylt pider būgan* (GEN. 19, 21.). *Him is unhyldo valdendes vitod, nu hie vordecyde his lāre forlēton* (CAEDM. 726.). *Nis me on vorulde mōd æniges pegnscipes, nu ic mines peōdnes hafa hyldo forvorthē* (832.) and thus frequently; often too with the correlated *nu*: *Nu ic þe bearn godes, biddan ville, veoroda vill-gifa, nu ic vāt, þāt þu eart gecyðed and æcened allra cýninga þrym* (ELENE 813.). For the modern *now that* See p. 395.

- d. The modal sentence has from the earliest times been transferred to the temporal domain. In Modern-English we meet with the dependent sentence with *as*, by which, properly, the equal presence of the action expressed in the dependent sentence and of that contained in the principal sentence is denoted, by which the idea of contemporaneousness as well as of immediate succession is readily yielded.

As you return, visit my house (SHAKSP., II Henry IV. 3, 2.). The plates and dishes are flying in this way *as his mother returns* (LEWES, G. I. 19.). Goethe was born on the 28 August, *as the*

clock sounded the hour of noon (I. 9.). Hell trembled as he strode (MILT., P. L. 2, 676.). Bells were toll'd, and aye as they rung, Fearful and faintly the grey brothers sung (SCOTT, Harold 1, 2.). They arrived at the squire's house just as dinner was ready (FIELD., J. Andr. 3, 7.). I heard a noise in the street, and, as I approached, perceived two gentlemen in custody of three watchmen (SMOLLET. R. Rand. 21.). He rose, as I entered, politely — I should rather say obsequiously (WARREN, Diary 1, 11.). As ended Albert's simple lay, Arose a bard of loftier port (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 6, 13.).

As Gr. *ὡς*; Lat. *ut*, Fr. *comme*, Germ. *als* and even *wie* take the place of particles of time, so the Engl. *as*, that is *also*, *als*, Anglosax. *ealswá* also stand temporally. If *as* in Mod. Engl. disdains the plusquamperfect. this does not lie absolutely in the nature of the conjunction. Comp. the Hallsax. and Germ. use of *als*. The iterative meaning too, though commonly, is yet not absolutely excluded from this dependent sentence. See below. In Old Engl. *als* and *also* occur, concurrently with *as*, in the sentence of time. Thus pleyneth Johan, as he goth by the way Toward the mylle (CHAUC., C. T. 4112.). As I com by an waie, Hof on I herde saie (WRIGHT. Anecd. p. 2.). As he wolde schete an hert, Al aseyen hys wille, To depe he schet ys owne fader (R. OF GL. I, 11.). As þe ost on eiper side to þis batail drow, Heo come & metten baldeliche (I. 139.). As the fyre began to brenne aboute hire, sche made hire preyeres to oure Lord (MAUNDEV. p. 69.). Hard was þe bata ile, als þei to-gider stynt Herman was per slayn (LANGT. I. 10.). And right als thai went with him thus, So com maister Maxencius (SEVEN SAGES 2861.). [here with the correlative so]. Al so he lay in slepe by nyght, Him thoughte a gohsauk. . . Setliþ on his beryng (ALIS. 482. cf. 1161. The simple *so* also occurs. An ay he laide, so he fleygh (ALIS. 568.). The gleomen useden her tunge; The wode aqueightte so hy sunge (5256.). The form amplified by *al* is also temporal in Hallsax: as *al swa* and *alse*: Al swa þe adele, king þas word hafede isæid, Cador sprong to horse (LAJAM. II. 478.). Alse Arður wolde to þam walle ræse, þa com þer riden Patric (II. 430.). Alse þe king slepte. a sweuen him imette (III. 13.) The Anglosax. frequently uses the simple *swá* with the correlative *þá* in the principal sentence, or the reduplicated *swá swá* in the sentence of time. Swá in cūteres þrym ealne middan-geard mēre-īfrod þeahte, þá se æðela vong æghwæs onsond við ýð-fare gehealden stōd (COB. EXON. 200, 16.). And swá se here eft hāmveard vende. . . þa hergedon hie etc. (SAX. CHR. 895.). And þá svýðe raðe áfter þam, svá þá öðre hām comon, þa fundon hie öðre flocc-ráde (917.) Hergodon and bārndon and slōgon svá svá hī ferdon (1006). þāt is also found instead of *swá* in combination with *svá*: Hēr forðfærde Harðac-nut cýng át Lamb-hýðe, svá þāt he át his drince stōd (1052). Even Gothic uses *sve* the correlative of *sva* temporally, as Lcc. 1, 41. Joh. 6, 16.

In iterative sentences or sentences to be taken universally *when* is commonly used by the moderns, whereas formerly *as* was not avoided; yet *as* is also found in such sentences as: Duly as ever on the mountains' height, The peep of Morning shed a dawning light, Again, when Evening in her sober vest, Drew the gray curtain of the fading west, My soul should yield thee willing thanks and praise (COWPER p. 103.). — Old Engl. often has *as* with repetitions or generalizations: Bi þe wei as ho gas, ga seinde hire beodes (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 4.). And alle weyes, as thei gon, thei smyten hem self (MAUNDEV. p. 173.). Of thundre hi beoth sore agast. . . And sleth men bi the way as hī fleoth (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 136.).

To denote the equally iterative appearance of the action principal and of the dependent sentence, the language uses a comparative with *as (so) often as* and the like: If the penalties . . . are regularly remitted *as often as they incurred* (MACAUL., H. of E. I. 30.). See the Modal Sentence. Old Engl.: *As often as þe do this with trewe intent*, It xal defende þow from þe (the?) ffende Cov. MYST. p. 276.). Comp. the *so oft als*, formerly too *als oft . . als oft*, Anglosax.: *svd oft svá* (LEGG. ÆTHELR. 3.), Goth. *sva ufta sve* 1. Cor. 11, 25, 26.).

- e. *Against*, sometimes occurring in the dependent sentence, may be regarded as a determination of time.

They made ready the present *against Joseph came* at noon (GEN 43, 25.), Thou shalt stand by the river's brink *against he come* (EXOD. 7, 15.).

The notion of space *against* is here referred to an action to be expected in time. Comp. Gr. *ἠτοίμασαν δὲ τὰ δῶρα ἕως τοῦ ἐλθεῖν τὸν Ἰωσήφ* (GEN. 43, 25.), Old Engl.: Nede y mot spene that y spared þore *Aȝen this cacherles cometh* thus y mot care (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 151.). Anglosax. Hig lēdon forð hira lác *ongēn þátte Josep inéode* (ib.). In Hallsax: *oomæn pat* is often referred to an equivalent activity or function, or to the action directed to another (ORM. 6128. 7553. 10572. 10978. 11144.).

The older language has other particles which determine the time of an action in a more general manner. Here belongs the Old Engl. *be (bi)* *that or than*, for which also the mere *be (bi)* in the sense of *when*, *Wie Bi that hye was of XII winter eld*, In al Ingland ther nas non A fairer maiden (LAY LE FREINE 232.). *Be that the soper was dyght*, (Sir Amadas was com SIR AMAD. 206.). *Be that the giaunt had him dight*, Cam ageyn that gentylle knyght (TORRENT 1587.). *Bi then that half yere was ago . . His leuedi wax ful wroth and wo* (AMIS. A AMIL. 1585.). *Bi than the toelmsneth was al gon*, Amorant went into that won (1657.). *Be than it nyed nerehand nygt*, To a castelle, he rode right (TORRENT 1644.). (We shall make myrthe and gret solace *Bi this thyng be broght to end* (TOWN. M. p. 38. cf. p. 311.). *Be the gyant was redy dyght*, Torrent had slayne the dragon (TORRENT 578.). With that agrees the Goth. *bipe*, which is equivalent to *pan*, Anglosax. *ponne*, Comp. MARC. 4, 29. Mid. High dutch uses *bi das*, *bedaz* similarly. See BENECKE Mid. H. D. Dictionary I. 321. The Anglosax. has *pan þe hīre þūhte*, where the particle answers to the Lat. *sicut* (GEN. 3, 6.).

2. The immediate coincidence of actions, as well as the immediate succession of the one upon the other, is expressed in various manners, in part by comparative sentences.

- a. The combination of particles *as (so) soon as*, *soon as* is familiar, which is distinguished from the simple *as* (see p. 433) by the prominence given to the undelayable in the encounter of actions.

As soon as they hear of me, they shall obey me (Ps. 18, 44.). A father must form wishes for his child *as soon as it comes into the world* (CHATHAM, Lett. 21.). There — the work is done! — and now it may go to Press *as soon as you will* (BULW., Caxtons 18, 8.).

And come again *so soon as thou hast done* (MARLOWE, Jew of M. 3, 4.). It was a part of the solemnity, that a Celtic bard stepped forth, *so soon as the king assumed his seat* (SCOTT, Minstrelsy I. 21.).

Soon as they forth were come to open sight Of day-spring Lowly

they bow'd down (MILT., P. L. 5, 138.). *Soon as my friend had broke my prison doors*, I flew to thy assistance (ROWE, J. Shore 5, 1.). *Soon as the British shores he reached*, Hither his foaming courser stretched (ADDIS., Rosam. 1, 5.). *Soon as the wilder'd child saw he*, He flew at him right furiously (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 3, 15.). *Soon as he began*, With deafening noise of warlike instruments They drown'd his words (COLER., Wallenst. 2, 10.).

Old Engl. frequently *al so* (*als*, *as*) *sone as* (*als*) or *so sone so*: Theo kyng wel faire he grette, *Al so sone so he him mette* (ALIS. 6822.). *And al so sone as he was come*, He brak asunder the sheltrome (RICH. C. DE L. 5743.). *And also soone as sche might aspyse . . Than wold sche suffre him doon his fantasie* (CHAUC., C. T. 15769.). *Sche schal be hool and sound, als sone as it is possihle* p. 151. II.). *Als sone as he was ded*, sche delyvered alle the lordes out of presoun (MAUNDEV. p. 89. cf. p. 132.). *As sone as occurs*. Rob. of Gloucester: *As sone as Eldol hym seye*, ys herte vpward R. of Gl. I. 140. — *So sone so he the quene fond*, In hire mouth he bleow a brond (ALIS. 490.). *So sone so he was alyght*, Y-swowe he feol to grounde ryght (4490.). — Concurrently therwith *als* (*as*) *tite als* (*as*) often occurs: *Als tite als* the mes was done, *Than* was thare made grete menestrelsy (SEYTN SAGES 3362.). *As tite as that gentil knight Seighe that bird in bour so bright Com*, with him for to mete, Oyaines hir he gan wende (AMIS. A. AMIL. 559.). *Amorwe as tite as it was day*, The leuedi com hom al with play (2353.). *Tite* still in use, particularly in Northern dialects, otherwise spelt *tight* belongs to the Anglosax. *tygan tyjan, tian*, Part. tyged, Engl. *tie*. — In Hafsax we meet with *swa sone swa* (*so sone so*, *so rathe so*): *Swa sone swa heo mihten*, ut of scipe heo rehten (LAȜAM. III. 17.). *Swa sone swa* V̅er of pissen pingan iward war, færde he þad stronge (II. 344.). The mod. text has *so rathe so* (III. 17.) *so sone so* (II. 344.). In Anglosax. *svā sona svā* is not favoured (See below) *svā raðe svā*, on the otherhand, often to be met with: *Svā raðe svā hi beoð deaðe*, *svā beoð hi mid ealle geendode* (A.-S. HOMIL. I. 16.). *Svā raðe svā, pat scrin in bið geboren*, *svā oft stint se stream* (JOS 3, 13.).

The combination diffused by far the most widely in the most ancient times is that in which *soon*, the place of which *anon* also takes, begins without the demonstrative correlative. Old Engl. *Sone so þe quene fader Corineus was ded*, þe kyng hadde þer after wel sone ywone red (R. of Gl. I. 26.). *So pat sone so he was kyng . . He spousesde hyre* (II. 422.). *Soone so Richard seygh* this . . His own baner was soon arerde (RICH. C. DE L. 5185.). *Soone so he wiste* Than I was of Wittes hous (P. PLOUGHM. p. 187.). — *Me mai i-seo wel fur a thing anon so hit is i-do* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 135.). *Anon as hy myzte hym y-soe*, Hy seyde blessed mot ha boe (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 214.). *And anon as thei ben entred in to the gravely see*, thei ben seyn no more (MAUNDEV. p. 273.). *Anon as thei ben born*, they leet bynde hire feet (273.). *Anon as thei ben born*, they leet bynde hire feet (p. 311.). — The Hafsax. combines *sone swa*, *sonse* (*sons sone sum*, *anan swa*, *anan se* and even *sone anan se* 'sum'), *anan swa . . sone*; also, as we often find the correlative *than* in the main sentence, the particle *þa* is added to it, or a *swa* repeated follows in its place *swa*: *Sone swa heo hine iseȝen*, heo him to sæiden etc. (LAȜAM. II. 337.). *Sone swa patt steorre stod*, þa kingess well itt sæȝhen (ORM. 6450.). *Sone se Zacariȝe sahh patt enngless brihhte leome*, He warp fördræd (657.). *Anan swa heo iseȝen Brennes*, buȝ heon to-ȝennes (LAȜAM. I. 237.). *Sone anan se piss was seȝd . . A mikell here off enngleþeod Wass cumenn* (ORM. 3368.). *Sone anan summ peȝz patt word Herrdenn . . peȝ seȝdenn þuss* (16582.). *Anan swa he lai hire mide*, hire lif heo losede sone (LAȜAM. III. 28.). *Anan swa pat maiden hine i-saȝ*, sone heo him to bæh

(III, 237.). *Anan swa seomer come þa ferden heo to Rome* (I. 422.). *Sone swa Ufer hine isæh, swa he him to-þeines bæh* (II. 369. cf. II. 521. III 28.). — In Anglosax. *sona swá* alone, or with *þá*, still more commonly with *swá* repeated, is familiar in the principal sentence. Ac he forðferde *sona swá he hider com* (Sax. Chr. 667.). *Sona swá pinre grétinge stefn on minum eárum geworden wás, þá fagnode min cild* (Luc. 1, 44.). *þá sona swá he hæfde vind, swá ferde he ofer intô Normandie* (Sax. Chr. 1123.). *Sona swá he tó his gebróðrum cam, swá bereáfodon hig hine his tunecau* (Gen. 37, 33.). *Sóna swá seó sunne sealte streamas heá ofer-hlifað, swá se haswa fugel heorht of þás bearnes beáme geviteð* (Cod. Exon. 206, 1). The Goth. uses the kindred *sunsei* (suns-ei) for instance, Lcc. 1, 44. Joh. 11, 20., where the Gr. offers *ως*.

Anglosax. also offers *sona þás þe* (Sax. Chr. 694. 1066.), *raðe þás þe* (Ps. 36, 19. Sax. Chr. 1052. 1057.).

- b. This period is partially replaced by a negative principal sentence with the comparative of *soon*, in the combination *no sooner*, and by the dependent sentence formerly preponderantly introduced by *but* (*that*), but at present by *than*.

No sooner had this painful wombe brought forth His eldest sonne . . . *But straight he charge a trustee man of his To beare the childe into a desert wood* (GASCOYNE, Jocasta 1, 1.). Which they shall have *no sooner* achieved *but we'll set upon them* (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 1, 2.). The breath *no sooner* left his fathers body, *But that his wildness . . . Seem'd to die too* (Henry V. 1, 1.). For he *no sooner* was at large *But Trulla straight brought on the charge* (BUTL., Hud. 1, 3, 999. cf. 3, 1, 1159.). I *no sooner* saw my face in it *but was startled at the shortness of it* (ADDIS.). — *No sooner* did he land, *than he threw himself upon his knees* (IRVING, Columb. 4, 1.). The pains are *no sooner* over *than they are forgotten* (ROGERS, It., For. Trav.). The prince had *no sooner* mounted the English throne *than he began to show an intolerant zeal for the government and ritual of the English church* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 66.).

This junction of sentences, agreeing with the Fr. *ne . . . pas plus tôt . . . que* belongs to modern times. The use of *but* after the comparative has its reason in the addition of the negation, and is also met with elsewhere, (See the Modal-Sentence) although require *than* referred immediately to the comparative. Comp. c.

- c. The same relation of actions to one another is expressed by the adverbial *scarce*, *scarcely*, also *hardly* in the principal sentence, with *when*, *ere*, *before* or *but* in the dependent sentence.

But *scarce* had he a furlong on This resolute adventure gone, *When he encounter'd with that crew* (BUTL., Hud. 1, 3, 342.). *Scarce* were they gone, *when he orders them to be called back* (HUME, Essays). He had *scarcely* finished, *when the labourer arrived* who had been sent for my ransom (IRVING, Tales. The Story of the Band. Chieft.). The schoolmaster had *scarcely* uttered these words in a fierce whisper, *when the stranger entered* (DICKENS, Nickleby 1, 4.). — The words were *hardly* uttered, *when . . . the hag and her refractory flock where converted into stone* (SDOTT, Black Dwarf 2.). *Scarce* was he in his palace *ere he ordered couriers . . . to be in preparation for his summons* (BULW., Rienzi 5, 2.). *Scarce* had he mounted, *ere the Pappenheimers . . . broke through the lines* (COLER.,

Wallenst. 4, 4.). Three years were *scarcely* clapsed from the council of Nice, *before* Arius was recalled (GIBBON, Decl. 14.).

Scarce had I left my father, *but* I met him Borne on the shields of his surviving soldiers (ADDIS., Cato 4, 4.). For *scarce* had I arrived here, *scarce* deliver'd The mother and the daughter to your arms, *But* there is brought to me from your equerry A splendid richly-plated hu ting dress (COLER., Picc. 1, 9.).

While the immediate encounter of actions is denoted in the instances given under b, by the one's not being consummated before the other appears, the one is here represented as scarcely consummated when or before the other takes place. The conjunction *when*, which also introduces supplementarily a surprising event (See p. 427.), may give place to the particles *ere* or *before* without any essential change of the relation of time, the scanty measurement of which is likewise indicated thereby. But *but* rests upon the negative determination contained in *scarce*, *scarcely*, which is not very remote from *not*, if we compare such sentences as: He had *not* put two pieces in my mouth *before* Mr. Handicock desired me to get up and hand him the porter-pot (MARRYAT, P. Simple 1, 1.).

The older language, in a similar syntactical relation of sentences, has, instead of *scarce*, *scarcely*, borrowed from the Old Fr. *escars*, *eschars*, Mediaeval Lat. *excarpsus*, *scarpsus* from *excarpere* instead of *excerpere*, the adverb *unethe*, Anglosax. *uneaðe* (not easily), and gives to the second sentence the particle *tha* (*pá*) or *that*. Halfsax. *Vnneaðe* wes þis spel isaðd to þan ende *pá* iseyen heo Hengest (LAJAM. II. 263.). *Onnepe* was þat word issaid to þan ende *pat* hine hit isehze (ib. modern text.). Anglosax. *Uneaðe* Isaac geendode þas spræce þa Jacob uteode, *pá* com Esau of huntose (GEN. 27, 30.). — We subsequently find *unethe* replaced by *scantily* (from Anglosax. *scanan*, frangere, halfsax. *scanen*, *scenen*, *scenen*, Partic. *scaned* in the dependent sentence *that*: *Scantily* had they the mete coryn, *That* in comyth the kynges messyngere (FROM. 1228.); as, in general, *that* follows in the dependent sentence after principal sentences corresponding notionally, and even negative ones: *Thai ne hadde doluen but* a stounde, *That the cauudronn was i-founde* (SKUTN SAGES 2473.). Halfsax. *Neoren noht feouwert* dajen allunge iuereden *pat* Coel þe king seoc lai (LAJAM. II. 34.). Comp. 4.

3. A duration of the activity to the time in which the action of the principal sentence falls, is variously denoted by particles.

- a. By *the while*, *while*, *whilst*, Anglosax. *pá* *while*; in the dependent sentence, a space of time is indicated, to which the activity predicated in the principal sentence does not need to correspond in point of extension, so that partly a momentary, partly a continuous activity may be contained in the principal sentence. They thus stand alongside of the Lat. *dum*. Among the forms occurring here, the accusative of the original substantive accompanied by the article has been more rarely preserved in the modern language, especially in poetry, when the form *whiles*, amplified by *s*, occurs.

The while We in the field here gave our cares and toils To make her great . . mother Nature . . Has done her part (COLER., Picc. 1, 8.). I muse, as in a trance, *the while*, Slowly as from a cloud of gold. Comes out thy deep ambrosial smile (TENNYS. p. 81.). Right on De Boune, *the whiles* he pass'd Fell that stern dint (SCOTT, Lord of the Isl. 6, 15. cf. Marm. 1, 13.).

Wit shall not go unrewarded, *while* I am king of this country

(SHAKSP., Temp. 4, 1.). *While they abode in Galilee*, Jesus said unto them etc. (MATTH. 17, 22.). *While I have life and tongue*, I'll curse the authors of my slavery (SOUTHERN, Oroon. 3, 1.). She (sc. Nature) . . lives but *While she moves* (COWP. p. 172.). I always eat my eggs *While they are hot* (TROLLOPE, Framl. Pars. 1, 15.). Even *while we speak*, Adrastus meets his council (TALFOURD, Ion. 2, 2.).

Whiles I in Ireland march a mighty band, I will stir up in England some black storm (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 3, 1.). *Whilst the emperor lay at Antioch* . . the rage of a legion was excited by the punishment of some soldiers (GIBBON, Decl. 4.). Cristoforo was stabbed . . *Whilst she* he loved *was sleeping with his rival* (SHELLEY, Cenci 1, 3.). I almost doubt If we can wait *whilst that is brought about* (PLANCHÉ, Fortunio 2, 4.).

The contemporaneousness of actions frequently includes an adversative relation, which is foreign to the particles of the Dependent Sentence, but is transferred to them in such a manner that they may be used, even in the opposition of un contemporaneous actions: Pride may be pamper'd, *while the flesh grows lean* (COWP. p. 42.). Edith is sad, *while* all are gay (SCOTT, Lord of the Isl. 1, 8.). Sarah thinks the British are never beaten, *while I do not put so much faith in their invincibility* (COOPER, Spy 1.). I sat all weak and wild; *Whilst you alone stood up*, and with strong words Checked his unnatural pride (SHELLEY; Cenci 2, 1.). You may . . smile, years hence, with children round your knees; *Whilst I, then dead* . . *Shall be remembered only as a dream* (ib.). In such oppositions *while*, *whilst* coincides with *whereas* (see p. 425), with which it sometimes interchanges; *while as* is even employed in this sense: He was of low stature, *whereas all his brethren seemed to be descendants of Anak*. and *while they were handsomely formed*, Rasleigh, though strong in person, was bull-necked and cross-made (SCOTT, R. Roy 6.). Pirates may make cheap penny-worths of their pillage. . . *While as the silly owner Weeps o'er them* (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 1, 1.).

The oldest corresponding form of sentence contains the combination of the substantive *while* reduced to a participle, with the article in the accusative; but the word without the article, as well as that amplified by *s*, subsequently *st* also soon appears. Old Engl. þo gradde .he to ys fellows myd gode herte pere, To legge on vaste þe luper men, þe wule hii versse (that is fresh) were (R. or GL. I. 216.). þe folc so pycke com, þe wule he her louverd slou, Aboute him (I. 233.). A tyme, þe wule he zong was, hys o broper hym smot (II. 420.). *The while that hit in the water is*, hit gotheleth swide loude (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 135.). Thanne loke we mowen, And peeren in his presence *The while him pleye liketh* (P. FLOREN. p. 11.). *s* is also appended to the substantive: Therefore amende *the whiles thou may* (TOWN. M. p. 326.). The transmutation into *towhile*, *towhils* in Langtoft's Chronicle is remarkable: *Towhile Sir Edvard gos to Gascoyn forto apese*, Wales to werre vp ros, þorgh conseile of a Rese (LANGT. II. 245. cf. 267.). *all* is also made to precede: *All the while thou spekest with hym*; fayre and loveliche bere up thy chyn (HALLIW., Freemas. 705.). Hallsax. still presents *pa while þe* and *þe while þe or þat*, as it also rejects *þe' þat*: *pa while þe ic libbe ofer nulle ic habben* (LAZAM. I. 95.) [*þe wile þat* modern Text.]. He huld god grið *þe while þe i- last his lif*

(I. 268.) [*pe wile pat* modern text]. *pe* his fader hefde imaked, *pe wile* *pe he* on liue wes (I. 10.). [*wile* he was modern text.]. *pat* wes a swiðe duhti mon *pa while* his dazes ilasten (III. 111. Swiðe heo hit mænde to alle monnen *pe* hire fader wolde [= welde, Anglosax. *weold*] *pe while* he wes on liue (I. 103.) [*wile* he was mod. text.]. The Anglosax. used *pā hwile* *pe*: Ic gescilde *pe* mid mænre svýðran handan *pā hwile* *pe* ic forð gā (Cod. Exon. 33, 22). Ic can eovre gefit and eovre heardheortnisse on minum life, *pā hwil* *pe* ic mid eov ferde (Deuter. 31, 27.). Ne nā mā wifs þonne ān hābbe, ac beo þe þære ānre *pa hwile* *pe* heo libbe (LEON. ÆTHER. IV.). The Mid. Highdutch used *die wile* and *al die wîl*, *alle die wile*, whence *diereil*, *diereilen* and *alldieweil*, which having in modern times passed from the province of time into that of causality, are lost, and give place to the simple *weil*, which has likewise become causal.

The rejection of the article extends concurrently far back. Old Engl.: *pou* ne schalt . . of scapie so lyȝte, *pe while* *per* *ys* in *my ryȝt hond eny strengþe & myȝte*: And *whyle* *y* may *per* *ryȝt myn hond aȝe* *op draue* (R. of Gl. I. 25.). *Hwil* *he* sið hire *bisi*, he pencheð þus „for naut ich schulde cumen nu nech hire“ (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 3.). As me mai the mone i-seo *While* *he* is *nue right*, A lute rundel as a sikel (WRIGHT. Pop. Treat. p. 133.). The quenis name in the wax he wrot, *Whil* *hit* was *sum del hot* (ALIS. 337.). We hoppen alway, *whil* *the world wol pype* (CHAUC., C. T. 3874.). *Quyl* *I* fete *sum quat fat* þou *pe* fyr bete (MORRIS, Engl. Alliter. Poems, L. 1864. p. 56.). Even in Halfsax. we meet *whil*, *whil* *that*: Ȝho wass æfre mæȝdenn mann . . Biforr *pat* Ȝho wipp childe wass, Annd *whil* Ȝho wass *wipp* childe (ORM. 2085.). I *pat* fresset, *whil* *pat* Ȝho wass *Wipp* hire kinn att hame, Comm Godes enngell (2393. cf. 2565. 4193.). see above LAȜAM. I. 10. In the decay of Anglosax. we find the substantive used as a participle. Te king sculde bēn lāverd and king *wile* *he* līvede (SAX. CHR. 1140.).

The form *whils*, *whiles*, amplified by *s*, which we also find combined with the article, is used alongside of the other without any visible distinction: *Whils* *he* was in *presoun*, he made that psalm (MACDEV. p. 144.). His men toke Machometes sward out his schethe. *whils* *he* slepte (p. 141.). Somwhat schal I give Unto your holy covent *whils* *that* I lyve (CHAUC., C. T. 7711.). Of this lordes dethe . . Which *whils* *he* lyued had fuyson of euery thing (SKELTON I. 11.) *Whiles* *the* messangeris weoren to *Forward*, To Darie feol a chaunse hard (ALIS. 4556.). *Whiles* *that* *Y* mai *gon* and *speke*, *Y* no schal neuer mi treuthe breke (AMIS. A. AMIL. 370.). Cry on, cry, *Whyles* *the* thynk good (TOWN. M. p. 11.)

In Old-Engl. *therwile*, *therwhiles* *therwhiles* is also used: *Therwhile*, sire, *that* *I* tolde *this* *this* *tale*, Thi sone mighte tholie dethes bale (SEVEN SAGES 701.) *Therwhiles* *he* liues thou mai sike (2160.). *Ther-whiles* sche liued, so sche dede (LAY LE FREINE 244.). This compound has naught in common with the Middle-Highdutch *der wile*. Modern Highdutch *derweil*, *derweile*, *derweilen*: its first constituent is the adverb *ther*.

The employment of *while* in the juxtaposition of contraries, in the meaning of the Fr.: *tandis que*, belongs to modern times.

In the most ancient times *pā hwile* *pe* chiefly supposes the equal duration of two actions. The commencement of an act during the continuance or consummation of another is indicated by various other particles, as *amang* *pam* *pe*, *mid* *pam* (*py*) *pe*, *mid* *pam* (*py*), *on* *pam* *pe*, which are early lost. Halfsax.: *Imong* *pat* *he* king *wæs* & his *wikenares* *chæz*, *Merlin* *him* æt-wende LAȜAM. II. 338.). Anglosax.: *Amang* *pam* *pe* *hig* þus *sprecon*. þær *vās* stefen and gāstlic breām (Ev. Nicod. 27.). *Amang* *pam* *pe* *hig* *ymbe* *pāt* *sprecon* and *ymbe* *pāt* *vundredon*, *pā* stōd þær *sum* of *pām* *compon* *pe* *pā* Hælendes byrgene healdan sceolden (15.). *On* *mang* *pam* *pe* þær *vās* *heora* *sehte* tō gadere eode (SAX. CHR. 1091.). *Mid* *pam* *pe* *hig* *væron* *gehende*

Egipta lande, þá evād Abram tō his wīfe (GEN. 12, 11. cf. 18, 8. 12. 22, 11.). *Mid þy þe se cyninge gehirde* þāt Apollonius pone rædels svā rihte āreðde, þā ondrē he þāt hit tō vidcūð være (APOLLON. OF T. p. 5.). *Mid þi þe he þas þing was sprecende tō him silfum*, þā færinga geseah he sumne fiscere gān p. 11.). *Mid þy hi þā cōmon on middan pære lyfte heānnyse*, þā cōmon him tōgeānes hāligra gāsta heāp (S. GUTHLAC 5.). Comp. Goth. *mippanei*, that is *mippan-* (Anglosax. *ponne*) *ei*. — *On þam þe Godvīne eorl and Beorn eorl lāgon on Pefenesæ mid heora scypon*, þa com Svegen (SAX. CHR. 1049.). Comp. Modern-Highdutch *indem*.

- b. The decided connection of the duration of one action with the duration of the other is effected by the particles *as* (so) *long as*.

As long as it lieth desolate it shall rest (Levit. 26, 35.). I'm the Emperor's officer, *As long as 'tis his pleasure to remain* *The Emperor's general* (COLER., Picc. 2, 11.). *As long as the general spirit of the administration was mild and popular*, they were willing to allow some latitude to their sovereign (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 33.).

I will live *so long as I may* (SHAKSP., Henry V. 2, 1). In the poor old Earth, *so long as she revolves*, all inequalities, irregularities disperse themselves (CARLYLE, Past a Pres. 3, 11.). *So long as you are innocent* fear nothing (LONGF. I. 153.). *So long as I had gold*, I gave it to thee freely (I. 155.). *So long as he stepped there* I had no apprehension (BULW., Money 3, 1.). As to sentences like: *For long as Albion's heedless sons submit* . . *So long shall last their unmolested reign* (BYRON p. 320.). See the Modal sentence.

This determination of time is also ancient. Old-Engl. It wexethe alle weys, *als longe as the sonne is in Cancro* (MAUNDEV. p. 44. cf. 130. 138. 229. 267.). For-thi loke thou lovey *As longe as thou durest* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 185.). Thou mai cache in an owre That shalle savour fulle sowre *As long as thou lyffys* (TOWN. M. p. 100.). — Hit is beter that we to heom shoure, *So longe so we may dure* (ALIS. 3722.). The oldest form is the combination of the adverb with the simple *svā* . . *svā*. Halfsax.: Swiken nulle ich nauere *swa long swa beoð auere* (LAJAM. II. 526.). Anglosax.: *Svā lange svā ge lybbon læreð eovre suna* (DEUTER. 4, 9.). — Apart from *þá hwile þe*, just touched upon, *penden* also occurs in the same meaning: Heold *penden lifde* . . glāde Scyldingas (BEOV. 114.). Brūc, *penden þu mōte*, manigra mēda (2359.). Heo wæron leof Gode *penden heo his hālige word healdan voldon* (UÆDM. 244.); yet also: Hi hyne þā āthæron tō brimes faroðe . . svā he selfa bād *penden vordum veold vine Seyldinga* (BEOV. 55.).

Old-Engl. also uses *till* in the same sense: His childre he wild auance, *tille he o lyue were* (LANGT. I. 18.). Schal ich the neuere i-se *til I live* (SEUTN SAGES 1664.). And lete hem dwelle there ful styлле *tyl hyt be oure lege kynges wylle* (HALLIW.. FREEMAS. 449.). So too the Gr. *ἕως*, the Lat. *dum* and *quoad*, the Goth. *unte*, that Middle-Highdutch *bis* were employed for *so long as* and *until*.

4. The duration of the activity contained in the principal sentence from its initial point or up to its final point is denoted by dependent sentences with conjunctions, of which Modern-English has especially preserved *since* and *till*, *untill*.

- a. a. The limitation of duration by an initial point is expressed by *since* (*sith*). The transfer of this particle to the province of causality, concurrently therewith, is very familiar.

As he spake by the mouth of his holy prophets, which have been *since the world began* (LUKE 1, 70.). 'Tis full ten months, *since*

I did see him last (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 5, 3.). How long may it be *since you declared your passion?* (COLER., Picc. 2, 3.) A hundred and sixty years have now elapsed *since the English people have by force subverted a government* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 35.). The usage of *since* appears divergent where there is no question of the starting point in time of the principal sentence: We know the time, *since he was mild and affable* (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 3, 1.). Dou you remember *since we lay all night in the windmill at St. George's fields?* (II Henry IV. 3, 2.) *Since* here stands instead of the expected *when, that*.

The variously abbreviated and amplified form of the Anglosax. *siððan*, *syddan*, *siotðan*, *seotðon*, properly *sið þan*, alongside whereof *sið þāt* also occurs, belonging to the Goth. *seipu*, Old-Highdutch *sīd*, Old-Sax. *sith*, Middle-Highdutch *sīt*, with the collateral-form *sint*, whence afterwards *sintemal*, has from the most ancient times served to introduce this temporal sentence, which originally united the meanings of the Lat. *postquam* and *ex quo*. Old-Engl.: Ac napeless so glad he nas *seppe* he was *ybore* (R. or Gl. I. 109.). Mony day is *seothe* ye *weore bore* (ALIS. 8753.). Me n'as neuer so wo, *Seththen that Y was born* (AMIS. A AMIL. 1070, cf. 374.). Was never wight, *siththen the world bigan*, That slough so many monstres as dede he (CHAUC., C. T. 15597.). The lond is wasted and fallen, *sithe the gernerres were made* (MAUNDEV. p. 52.) Was nevere gome upon this ground, *Sith God made the worlde*, Fairer underfongen P. PLOUGH. p. 187. cf. 187. cf. ALIS. 7954.). As many a yeer as it is passed henne, *Syn that my tappe of tyf bygan to renne* CHAUC., C. T. 3887.). How has thou farne *syn thou was here?* (TOWN. M. p. 128. Then was he as fare a man As euer he was ere than, *Sen he was born in londe* (AMIS. A AMIL. 2397.). Halfsax.: þar nas nauer nan man *seotðen* Noes *fiod hit hauede ouergan* LAJAM. I. 267.). Ne les he næwere leouere mon *seotðen* he *wes an liuen* (II. 339.). *Seopen Eneas Lauine heuede inomen . . he makede enne stronge castel* (I. 9.) [= *postquam*]. As in Middle-Highdutch *sīt*, *sint* (daz) was used for *after* and *since*, (See Benecke, Middle-Highdutch: II 321.) so in Anglosax. *siððan* (*þāt*): God þā āstāh upp fram Abrahame *siððan* he þās spræce *geendod hæfde* (GEN. 17, 22.). Æfter ge fliton, and ge dōd micle sviðor *syððan* ic *deād beō* [after I shall be dead] (DEUTER. 31, 27.). Ne glād he (sc. se steorra) ealne veig him ātforan, ac *syððan* hi cōmon tō *Judeiscum earde*, *syððan* he vās heora lātteōv (A-S. HOMIL. I. 108.). — *Syddan* ic of hire innoðe eode, þu vāre mīn God (Ps. 21, 8.). Ne veard dreorilicre dæd gedōn on pisan earde *siððan* Dene cōmon (SAX. CHR. 1036.) Þā fōr mid him and āfter him svā micel folc svā næfre ær ne dide *siððan* *þāt* se *fīrste farevās* (1128.).

β. But this dependent sentence was early employed in a causal meaning, so far as the cause appeared to be given in fact. *Since* is here in the same predicament as the Fr. *puisque*, that is, *postquam*.

Sith vnto such affayres My spedie diligence is requisite, I will appie effectually to doe What so your highnesse hath, commaunded me (GASCOYNE, Jocasta 1, 1.). Come forth, *sith that hir grace hath graunted leaue* (ib.). Thou hast one son, for his sake pity me; Lest, in revenge thereof -- *sith God is just* -- He be as miserably slain as I (SHAKSP., III Henry VI. 1, 3.). *Since thou dost seek to kill my name in me*, I mock my name, great king, to flatter thee (Rich. II. 2, 1.). *Since my country calls me*, I obey (DOUGL. JERROLD, Bubbles 4.). Robert Grantley — *since you are he* —

listen (Rent Day 2, 4.). *Since you ask me what I wish, gentlemen, this is my answer* (DICKENS, Christm. Car. 1.). *Since these men could not be convinced*, it was determined that they should be persecuted (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 59.).

Old-Engl.: *Sythe that I may not withdrawe you fro youre lewed courage*, I schal jeye you withouten wysschinge (MAUNDEV. p. 146. cf. 59. 256.). And thus ye may our mete make, *Sethe ye mowe non othyr take* (RICH. C. DE L. 1553.). *Sen I must nede* I wille do as thou has commaunde (TOWN. M. p. 169. cf. 177. 189.). *Syn thou wylt nedys selle hyt . . . thou schalt have money rounde* (HALLIW. Nugae P. p. 27.). Now *syns ye han so holy and meeke a wyf*, What nedith yow, Thomas to make strif? (CHAUC., C. T. 7581.) The causal meaning is also peculiar to the Middle-Highdutch *sît, sint, sintemâl* [sint des mâles, sint dem mâle], as well as to the Modern-Highdutch *sintemal*. *Sit es nieman reden sol*, ichn gewahe sin niemer mêre (IWEIN 100.) The transition from the temporal to the causal meaning is generally close at hand. Comp. Anglosax. Svâ him mihtig God þas dægveorces deop leán forgeald, *sifðan him gesælde sigorvorca hrœð*, þat he ealdordôm ágan sceolde ofer cynericu (CÆDN. 3243.).

From, fram, fra (that) was early used instead of *sithen* in the dependent sentence of time, by which the starting point in time was more decidedly denoted. Old-Engl.: *Dis was pre þousant and foure score and pre þer* *From þat þo* was first mad (R. OF GL. I. 20.). A smal web bi-clippeth hit al aboute, to holde hit to gadere faste, *From that hit is first i-kend* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 139.). Geve us leve to don her dwelle, *Fro that begynnes the gospelle*, Tyll the messe be sungge and seyð (RICH. C. DE L. 213.). That *from she was twelve yeare of age*, She of her love graunt him made (CHAUC., Rom. of the Rose 850.). *Fro they here that message* They wille be alle mery (TOWN. M. p. 268. cf. 274. 275. 324.). Hafsax.: Haffde itt all forworþenn Aþ *fra þatt Adam Godd forlet* (ORM. 354.). *Fra þatt hire make iss dæd* Ne kepeþ þho wiþþ operr (1276. cf. 5833. 8545. 9146.). This *from*, which makes the contrary to *tô* in the sentence of time, has no syntactical prototype either in Old-Norse or in Gothic.

- b. The extension of the action of the principal sentence to another as its final goal, is expressed by the dependent sentence with *till, until*.

And fought so long, *till that his thighs with darts Were almost like a sharp quill'd porpentine* (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 3, 1.). He steers his flight Aloft . . . *till on dry land He lights* (MILT., P. L. I. 225.). I attended her assiduously . . . *till she could be removed to the sea-side* (WARREN, Diary 1, 2.). He did not quit his desk *till it had struck ten* (2, 5.).

And so farewell, *until I meet thee next* (SHAKSP., I Henry VI. 2, 4.). They their live engines ply'd, not staying *Until they reached the fatal champain* (BUTL., Hud. 1, 2, 62.). Frances gazed *until could look no longer* (COOPER, Spy 6.). I shall be alone *until I die* (TENNYS. p. 105.). There was a short silence here, *until Mr. Brownlow took up the thread of the narrative* (DICKENS, Ol. Twist 49.). I toiled at the desk *until the removal took place* (MARRYAT, J. Faithf. 2, 1.).

Till and the modern *until (that)* have gradually obtained a great diffusion and from the fifteenth century supplanted the older particles formerly in use here. *Till* was primarily peculiar to Northern dialects, owing to the Danish influence. Old-Engl.: And fet him wel *til he is ful* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 225.). Na word þan sal þe quether sune, *Til þat*

pai be alle fallen dune (ANRICR. 498.). Ye mote abide and thole me *Till eftsone y come agé* (ALIS. 65. cf. 125. 909. 6096. Richard rod aftyr *tyl it was nyght* (RICH. C. DE L. 6803.). Thei scholde not telle that *avisoun, til that he were rysen from dethe to lyf* (MAUNDEV. p. 114. cf. 189.). Holde of thy cappe . . . *tyl thou have leve hyt on to do* (HALLIW., FREEMAN. 703. cf. 314.). *Til we be roten*, can we nat be rype (CHAUC. C. T. 3873. cf. 3871. 15498. 15513. 15996.). *until* is more rarely found: That sal men se ful sone, I trow, And thiself sal noght wit how, *Until thou lose al thine honoure* (SECVN SAGES 2839.). The knight gan playnly with hir pas *Vatil sho in hir chamber was* (3297). In Orm. *till* is found in the dependent sentence; Layamon knows it not Swa þe; ledenn heore lif *Till þatt tery wærenn alde* (ORM. 125.). Fra þatt he wass full litell *Till þatt he wærenn wass* (9146. cf. Intro. 3. The latest Anglosax has *til* in the dependent sentence: For he besæt heom *til hi ajāven up here castles* (SAX. CHR. 1140.). The Old Norse preposition *til*, which is found as a conjunction in the Swed. *tills, till dess*, Dan. *indtil* has replaced the Anglosax. preposition *ðs* as well as the corresponding conjunction. Hig vunodon þær . . . *ðs þāt hig gehælde vurdon* (JOS. 5, 8.). Hig fōron *ðs hig cōmon to Aran* (GEN. 11, 31.).

But *to, unto (that)* formerly stood as conjunctions alongside of *till, until* in the same meaning. Old-Engl.: The kyng there sojourned to he was *hooke* (ALIS. 5902.). Owttē of cuntré wille Y wende, *To Y have gold and syluer to spende* (SIR AMADAS 35.). Had I spoken with any man, *To seyns days war cumen and gane*, My hert sold sone have broken asonder (SECVN SAGES 3469.). *To I have done* that I wylle, tylle that it be noyn, That ye lyg stone, styлле to that I have doyn Town. M. p. 105. cf. 26. 30. 40. 52 64 etc.) He schall treuly have my curse, And ever schall have to that I dyze (HALLIW., NUGAE P. 20.). So fer bare a woulfe þe hede, & kept it a grete while, *Unto þe hede said*, here (LANET. I. 22.). Whom I love and serve, And evere schal, *unto myn herte sterve* (CHAUC. C. T. 1145.). Thay ar gone the same way, *Unto God wille herte thare mone* (TOWN. M. p. 36. cf. 123. 125.). With the interchange of the prepositions *til* and to this would not be surprising; but even Anglosax. takes the lead here: Näs þā long to þon þāt þā hild-latan holt ofgefan (BEOV. 5683.).

Besides *for to, forte, vorto, vorte, vort, fort* that is frequently employed in the same meaning, when we must not think of *for to*, but of the Anglosax. *forð þāt*, with which is associated the recollection of the construction of *forð to* and of the use the simple *to*. Old-Engl.: He perced ost and oþer *vorto he yseg ynou þe kyngys baner of Medes*: þat ys vnclē slou (R. or G. I. 216.). Þe pridde (sc. age) was from Habraham *forte Moyses com* (I. 9.). Þe sixte to þe incarnation, þat is, *forte God was ybore* (ib.). Al bernynge hit schut forth *forte hit beo i-brend to ende* (WRIGHT, POP. TREAT. p. 135. cf. 136. 137.). Hy token rest a litel wighith, *For-to it were ouer midnighth* (ALIS. 5362.). Any foughten . . . *For-to it were almost day* (5398.) *Fort he come ayen the paleis* . . . There was cri (SECVN SAGES 1335. He went himself, and send his soun, Wide-whar, into fele lond, *Fort that thei any* (sc. emperice) *founde* (237.). In Halfsax. *forte, fort* and *forte þat* occur only in the modern text of Layamon: Þus ladde Argal his lif *forte com his deap-sip* (I. 280. cf. I. 324. III. 17.). Resden to þan castle *fort him com þe nihte* (I. 71.). Mauric verde vorp riht mid preo wise cnihtes *forte þat he come to Maximian* (II. 35. cf. II. 171.) The older text commonly has only *þat* (See below) *Forð þāt* is presented by the later Anglosax.: And lāg ðær mid myclum scyp-herē *forð þāt se cāsere hāfde of Baldvine eall þāt he volde* (SAX. CHR. 1049.). Cōmon ānd hergodon and bārdnon on Viðre ceastre scire *forð þāt hi cōmon to þam porte sylfan* (1088.).

The particle *that* alone also takes the place of *till*, mostly supported by *so longe* or *so*. yet also without this reference. Old-Engl.: *So longe he*

dede ys sacrifice, and pleyde such game *pat he hadde a doȝter* (R. of GL. I. 26.). The frere . . . *tey So longe that he theȝe wulf i-sey* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 278.). *So longe* criede and bade, *That him com from heven rade* (ALIS. 6164.). *So longe* he wente be see and lond, and so enviroind the world be many seȝsons, *that he fond an yle* (MAUNDEV. p. 183.); where *till* also otherwise stands: *So lony* he wente hous by hous, *til he Com til an hous* (CHAUC., C. T. 7347.). *So longe* he shalle mynen and perre the erthe *til that he schalle passe thorghe* (MAUNDEV. p. 267.). Comp. Mod.-Engl. And *till we are indemnified, so long* Stays Prague in pledge (COLER, Picc. 4, 5) alongside of: He *gazed so long That both his eyes were dazzled* (TENNYSON p. 193.), where the consecutive passes into the temporal sentence: — Twey dayes heo wende in þe se fro þe lond of Grece, *So pat he comen to an yle* R. of GL. I. 14.). He strok swithe over all, *So that he of-sei ane wal* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 274.). *So* they rideth dale and doun, *That heo syghen a cité town* (ALIS. 7524.). — I shal herknen and sitten stille, *That thou have told* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 3.). Dame Siriz bigon to go . . . *That hoe come hire to then inne* (p. 9.). Siweth me thus al acost All *that y have Darie y-founde* (ALIS. 2144.). In Halfsax. in sentences of time *swa longe pat* and *swa pat*, a *pat*, and as well as *pat* I take the particle *a* to be *á* = *ever*. Heo færden . . . *swa longe pat heo to Alamaine comen* (LAȜAM. I. 117. cf. I. 41.). *Swá* he ferde mid his here *pat he on ænne hul bi-com* (I. 70.). — Þer inne heo wuneden *a pat her com liden ma of heore leoden* (I. Alle dæi was þat fehti (fihte?) *a pet com þe pestere niht* (I. 323.). — Feouwer daies fulle forð ward heo wenden *pat heo comen to þon earde* (I. 229. Dis lond he hire lende *pat come hir lifes ende* (I. 10. cf. I. 76. II. 173. III. 1. 17. 21. 40.). Anglo-sax. presents *swá lange óð*, but also the simple *pāt*: Þa viðlág se cyng . . . *swá lange óð pet folc* . . . *vearð ástyred ongeán þone cyng* (SAX. CHR. 1052). — And gevendon heom þá begen eastveard *pāt hi cōmon tō Viht* (ib.).

5. The determination of the time to which the main action belongs may be effected by means of a dependent sentence containing an action absolutely preceding or following it; the immediate succession of actions is not conditioned by these dependent sentences themselves. The particles coming here under consideration express by their comparative form a comparison of times.

a. The dependent sentence containing an activity preceding the action of the principal sentence is introduced by *after*.

The days of Adam, *after he had begotten Seth*, were eight hundred years (GEN. 5, 4.). "Where's Walter, I wonder!" Said Solomon Gills, *after he had carefully put up the chronometer again* (DICKENS, Dombey a. S. 1, 4.). A few weeks *after this scene occurred*, the army of Burgoyne laid down their arms (COOPER, Spy 2.). Thou knowest how her image haunted me Long *after we returned to Alcalá* (LONGF. I. 146.). It is astonishing how much I like a man *after I've fought with him* (BULW., Lady of L. 2, 1.)

The corresponding preposition has been employed from the most ancient times to connect sentences. Old-Engl.: At þe laste dyede Brut, þo al þis was ydo, *Aftur pat he com to Engelond* in þo four & twentipe ȝer (R. of GL. I. 23. cf. I. 142.). *Aftre that he was dryven out of Paradys*, he was there left (MAUNDEV. p. 67.). *Aftre thei hans layn hem*, thei spryngen the blood upon the ydolen (p. 174.). Forth he goth . . . Til he cam to the carpenters hous, A litel *after the cok had y-crowe* (CHAUC., C. T. p. 3355.). Thryes I tempte hym be ryth sotylle instawnce, *Aftyr he fast fourty days* (Cov. MYST. p. 240.); also: *Aftir warde pat he wasshede þe feet of hem*, he took his clopes (WYCL., Joh. 13, 12.). In Halfsax. the particle

seems not favoured beside others, as (see pag. 442): in Anglosax. on the other hand it is not common in a temporal as well as in other relations: *After þam þe Moises wāt þisse æ gebodu and þā gefilde*, he beþeād Leues kynne (DEUTER. 31, 24. cf. GEN. 6, 4.). *Þā sona āfter þam þe se cyng wās sūd āfaren*, feorde se eorl ānre nihte út of Bebbanburh (SAX. CHR. 1095.). Comp. Goth. *Afar þatei atgibans warp Joannes*, qam Iesus in Galeilais (MARC. 1, 14.). Here Anglosax. gives *syððan*.

b. The activity following the action of the principal sentence is introduced by *ere* (or) or *before* (afore).

a. The dependent sentence with *ere* is the older.

The time shall not be many hours of age More than it is, *ere foul sin, gathering head, Shall break into corruption* (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 5, 1.). Ages elaps'd *ere Homer's lamp appear'd* (COWPER p. 16.). I felt that he was present *Ere mine eye told it me* (SHERID. KNOWLES, Virgin. 5, 1.). *Ere I depart*, permit me to solicit favour for this gentleman (GOLDSM., G. Nat. M. 5.). Pause *ere thou rejectest* (BYR., Manfr. 2, 1.). Or still belongs to northern dialects: There will be broken heads among us *or it's long* (SCOTT, R. Roy 30.). — A strengthening of the notion of time is given by *ever* (e'er, ere), (comp. Germ. *je*), which in this case usually preserves the old form or: 'Twill be Two long days' journey, lords, *or ere we meet* (SHAKSP., John 4, 3.). I doubt, he will be dead, *or ere I come* (5, 6.). Long time elaps'd *or e'er our rugged sires Complain'd* etc. (COWPER p. 164.). He traverses Bohemia; but *ere ever He hath once seen the enemy*, faces round (COLER., Picc. 1, 12.). With *or ere* we must not perhaps think of that reduplication *ær . . ær*, in which Anglosaxon gives to the word a correlative in the principal sentence. Comp. below. The contraction of *æfre* into *ær* stands in LAZAM. II. 175.

In Old-Engl. the forms *ar*, *or*, *er*, *zer*, as well as *ær*, *ar*, *æære*, *ere*, *here*, in Hallsax, are in use for the Anglosax. *ær*. Heo ne fynede neuer mo, *ar þo oper ware at gronde* (R. of GL. I. 140.). Alisaundre, *or he hit wist*, In a put down him cast (ALIS. 716.). Seynt Peter forsoke oure Lord thries, *or the cok crew* (MAUNDEV. p. 91. cf. CHAUC., C. T. 4239. SKELTON I. 20.). Thu scholdest i-seo wel longe him smyte dundes with thin eye, *Er thu shuldest eni dunt i-hure* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 135.). *Ac er that kyng come*, Caym shal awake P. PLOUGH. p. 193.). *Zer hys terme come to an ende*, Hys hure may ful wel amende (HALLIW., Freemas. 175.). Hallsax. þat nolde he þonne faren *ar his feo[n]den feie weore* (LAZAM. I. 28.). þu most swiþer fehten *er we heonne iwenden* (I. 67. cf. 189. 238.). þatt here streon wass Drihhtin leof ȝet *ær itt wære streonedd* (ORM. 733.). As to *er* (or) *that*, *thanne*, *thenne* see p. 391. If we reduce the last combination to the dative *þam*, *þan*, *þon*, it may be granted that the adverbial form *þonne*, *þenne*, likewise found with the comparative *ær* even in Anglosax. was subsequently blended with the other form, with which comp. the Middle-Highdutch *ē danne* beside *ē das*, Mod.-Highdutch *ehe denn*, Lat. *antequam*, *priusquam*. In Anglosax., as it seems, complete dependent sentences do not present *ær þonne*, here there stands, beside *ær þam* (*þan*, *þon*) *þe*, *ær þȝ* (*þe*) the simple *ær*: Nu ic eo̅wer sceal frum-cyn vitan *ær ge fyr heonan leāse sceōveras on land Dena furdur-fēran* (BEOV. 308. cf. 5626. (SAX. CHR. 894.). A correlative *erst* or *before* is often met with *er* in Old-Engl. I shal seken Truthe *erst Er I se Rome* P. PLOUGHM. I. 105.). Fyf hundred ȝer and

tuenti it was eke *bifore*, *Er pan oure Lord Jhesu Cryst on erpe was ybore* R. OF GL. I. 40.). *Before or thei rcsceyve hem*, thei knelen doun (MAUNDEV. p. 83.). Comp. Halfsax. under *ȝ*. and Anglosax. *pā gelamp hit pāt se cyng Ādelrēd ær forðfērde ær pā scipu cōmon* (SAX. CHR. 1016. cf. BEOV. 1370. Grein.).

- β. *Before* is not distinguished from *ere* in the sentence of time; *afore*, likewise formerly in use, has been abandoned, although still in use in Northern dialects.

That we might sleep seven years together *afore we wake* (MARLOWE, Jew of M. 4, 4.). Serve it upon him quickly, *afore he be aware* (BEN JONS., Ev. Man in h. Hum. 4, 9. cf. 1, 1.). Use all your power To stop their marches *'fore we are inflamed* (SHAKSP., John 5, 1.). Dialectically: It's no like on yon side, when a chield may be whuppit awa' wi' ane o' Clerk Jobson's warrants, *afore he kens* where he is (SCOTT, R. Roy 18.). — Your son was gone *before I came* (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 2, 2.). You know what you were *before I married you* (BEN JONS., Poetast. 2, 1.). Perhaps you will take dinner *before you proceed to your chateau* (BULW., Lady of L. 1, 2.). You will greatly grieve and offend me if you ever allude to this again *before I mention it to you* (WARREN, Diary 2, 5.).

aforen, *aforn*, *afore*, formerly employed as a preposition, seems not to have been favoured as a conjunction in the literary language of ancient times: *biforen*, *before*, on the other hand, was long in use as a conjunction. Old-Engl.: More pan a ȝerð *beforn pat he laught pis schame*, A douhter was him born (LANGT. II. 243.). *Bifore pat Abraham was made*, I am (WYCL., Joh 8, 58.). Seynt Poul him self was there a phisi-cien . . . *before he was converted* (MAUNDEV. p. 123.). Halfsax.: *patt he sahh himn . . . Biforenn patt Filippe toc to clepenn himm to spæche* (ORM. 13908. cf. 968.), *ȝho wass æfre mæðennmann . . . Biforr patt ȝho wipp childe wass* (6484. cf. 10380. 12708.). Anglosax. instances are wanting; Gothic gives *þoln ð þoln* by *faurpizei*, *faurpize*: Vait attā izvar, pizei þaurþuþ, *faurpizai biþjaip ina* MATH. 6, 8. cf. Luc. 2, 21. 26. Joh. 8, 58.).

- γ. The dependent sentences introduced with *ere* and *before* (*afore*) often make the idea of time step into the background, in order to indicate the preference of the action contained in the principal sentence over that predicated in the dependent sentence, as, *rather than*, *potius quam*.

Had I been any god of power, I would have sunk the sea within the earth, *or e'er It should the good ship so have swallow'd* (SHAKSP., Temp. 1, 2.). Your mountains shall bend, And your streams ascend, *Ere Margaret be our foeman's bride* (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 1, 18.). — I'll forswear keeping house, *afore I'll be in these tirrits and frights* (SHAKSP., II Henry IV. 2, 4.). Her mother dread, *Before Lord Cranstoun she should wed*, Would see her on her dying bed (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 1, 10.). Believe a woman or an epitaph, Or any other thing that's false, *before You trust in critics*, who themselves are sore (BYR. p. 312.).

Old-Engl.: Many an hed wolde y cleove, *Are y wolde in prison bileve* (ALIS. 7702.). And *or that thou were fro me refte*, Alle thise paynes wold I thole ofte And for the dy (TOWN. M. p. 260.). So too *rather or*

combined: He wolde agayn for youre love blede, *Rather or that ye dampned were* (MS. in HALLIW. v. or), as still provincially in Middle-England. Hallsax.: *Ær* ich þe slæ mid mine spere *ar þu hit sule azen* (LAJAM. I. 168.). Forr *ær* þeþ woldenn þolenn dæp Wiþþ alle kinne pine *Ær þann þeþz woldenn gilltenn ohht Onnæness Godess wille* (OEM. 6316.) Thus in Middle-Highdutch *ær*, *é* passes for *cher* and *lieber*, equally used as adverbs in Mod.-Highdutch. Anglosax.: *Ær* he feorh seled alfor on ôfre, *ær* he þær in ville hafelan [*hydan*] (BROV. 1370. Grein).

The Dependent Sentence of the Causal Relation.

The principal may stand to the dependent sentence in such a relation that the subject matter of the one is related to that of the other as cause and consequence. So far now as the dependent sentence contains the cause or the consequence, two series of dependent sentences of the causal relation separate, the former of which comprises the various sentences of the cause, the others those of the consequence. The former comprises the causal sentence in the stricter sense, the conditional sentence and the concessive sentence; the latter, the consecutive sentence and the final sentence.

Dependent Sentence of the Cause.

The Causal Sentence in the stricter Sense.

The causal sentence, as distinguished from the remaining dependent sentences of this class, represents the cause as real or effective, which may have to be conceived as the real cause and the motive, or as the cause of knowledge and of explanation. The conjunctions coming under consideration are not absolutely separated according to the physical, ethical and logical relations which the dependent sentence can represent.

1. a. The particle *that* is also first to be mentioned as a causal particle, although the boundary between the causal sentence and the case sentence with *that* is hardly to be drawn with certainty. As a causal particle, *that* especially denotes the subjective motive or the motive of an action, of an emotion, judgment &c.

Do not smile at me, *that I boast her off* (SHAKSP., Temp. 4, 1.). We just as wisely might of Heav'n complain *That righteous Abel was destroy'd by Cain* (POPE, Essay on M. 4, 117.). He does hear me; and that he does I weep (SHAKSP., Temp. 1, 2.). Oh! weep not *that he does that our beauty wears Beneath the wings of Time* (R. MONTGOMERY, Lost Feelings). My soul is full of woe, *That blood should sprinkle me, to make me grow* (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 5, 6.). I am right glad *that he's so out of hope* (Temp. 3, 3.). I am heartily sorry *that he'll be glad of this* (All's Well 4, 3.). Cursed be I *that I did so* (Temp. 1, 2.). I now felt satisfied *that she was speaking of herself* (WARREN, Diary 2, 5.). I rather flatter myself *that I do hunt* (BOURCICAULT,)

Lond. Assur. 3.). God, I thank thee, *that I am not as other men are* (LUKE 18, 11. cf. *because* 17, 9.). I thank my God *that I believe you not* SHELLEY, Cenci 1, 1.). O worthy heart! I have deserved this, *that I feared to trust it*, (DOUGL. JERROLD, Prison. of War 1, 3.). They call me villain, *that in my selfishness I have given one unquiet thought to goodness such as yours* (ib.). Or is it *that I sue not in some form of scrupulous law*, that ye deny my suit? (SHELLEY, Cenci 1, 3.).

How far especially with the notions of emotion, the motive can be conceived as its object, Comp. S. 413. The extensive nature of the sentences attached by *that* often gives room to various points of view. Old-Engl.: I am fulle glad *that I am gon* (Cov. MYST. p. 217.). I am right joyful *that I have this grace* (p. 80.). I am aschamed, And sore anoyed, and agramed *That Alisaundre, with myghty hond, Hath me dryven of my lond* (ALIS. 3309.). The kyng was wroth . . *That his quene with childe was* (522.). His solace was alle reft, *pat scho fro him was gon* LANGT. II. 252.). For tene he wende to deie, *pat taken was his lemman* (II. 236.). Thou hast wrong, sere, be Seynt Denis, *That thou trestest that markys* (RICH. C. DE L. 3254.). Certes, he saide, he dude wowgh, *That he a knyght of Grece slough* (ALIS. 4026.). Hallsax.: Wel wurde þe Vortiger *pat þu ært icumen her* (LAJAM. II. 122.). Þe king dude unwisdom *pat he pat ilke maide nom* (III. 224.). Anglosax.: Ne blissige ge on þam þe eov synd gæstas underþeodde geblissjað *pæt eover naman synd on heofenum ævritene* (LCC. 10, 20.). Vépende sár *pæt hi ær fræðlice fremedon unriht* (COP. EXON. 79, 14.). Svylce þing gevurðað for folces synna *pæt hi nellað Infjan God and rihtvisnesse* (SAX. CHR. 1087.).

- b. After a comparative in the principal sentence, *that* often serves to account for the enhanced measure in which the predicate is allowed validity: it interchanges with *because* and the more frequent *as*, which in this position may also be the mean for the causal relation.

God shall forgive you Cœur-de-Lion's death *The rather, That you give his offspring life* (SHAKSP., John 2, 1.), Jeanie was affected . . and *the rather, that through the whole train of her wavering and inconsistent state of mind . . she discerned a general colour of kindness towards herself* (SCOTT, Heart of Mid. Loth. 2, 5.). I must consider it *the more weighty that you speak of it so lightly* BULW., Rienzi 1, 6.). Her fears, *not the less strong that they were vague*, increased upon her (ib.) Comp. Are they *the worse to me because you hate them?* (COLER., Picc. 5, 3.) All clung round him, weeping bitterly; *Weeping the more, because they wept in vain* (ROGERS, It., Foscare). She called for a domestic, but was for some time totally unattended to, which was *the more* provoking, *as I could perceive* I was the object of curiosity to several servants (SCOTT, R. Roy 5.). To apologize for my conduct were useless, *more especially as I am confident* that no feelings of indignation or sorrow for my late acts are cherished by you (BOURCAULT, Lond. Assur. 5.).

For sentences of this sort with *as* See the Modal Sentence. The agreement of the use of *that* with that of the Romance *que*, as well as of of the Lat. *quod* after the comparative, accompanied by *so*, is evident (See my Syntax of the Modern-French Language II. 154.). The Middle-

Highdutch: *daz*: Er muoz mich *deste baz* hân *daz*, *er mir leide hat* getân (LWEIN 84.). In Old-Engl I find the causal *for* chiefly employed: *Myd þys gode crounyng þe supper hii gonne hys, Vor Robert Courtheose was ycome to Normandy R of Gl. II. 421.* The more thingh *the more*, *for heo so nez ous is* (WRIGHT, Pope Treat. 134). Halfsax. Acc toc to shæwenn sone anan Meocnesse *pess te mare Forr þatt zho wolde zifenn uss God bisne* (OEM. 2635.). Anglosax. in the dependent sentence, after the comparative accompanied by *þe*, presents in the causal sense: *Ful georne hi wifân, þât hi nâgon mid rihte þurh ænig hæmeping, wifes gemânan; ac hit is þe vyrse, þe sume habbað twâ ôððe mâ* (LEGG. ÆTHELR IV. 6.). Þonne bið se man gebeorges *þe bet vyrðe þe he for neôde dyde þât þât he dyde* (LEGG. CANT. I. B. 66.).

- c. The dependent sentence with *that* in interrogative sentences may also serve as introducing the motive of the question.

Where be these warders, *that they wait not here?* (SHAKSP., I. Henry VI. 1, 3.) What means his grace, *that he hath changed his style?* (4, 1.) What, can he steal *that you demand so much?* (MARLOWE, Jew of M. 2, 2.) Was she thy god, *that her thou didst obey Before his voice?* (MILT., P. L. 9, 145.) Who am I *that I should go unto Pharaoh?* (EXOD. 3, 11.) Death! are we slaves still, *that we are to be thus dealt with*, we peasants (BULW., Lady of L. 1, 3.).

Old-Engl.: „What artow,” quod I tho, „*That thou my name knowest?*” (P. PLOUGH. p. 155.). Halfsax.: *Whæt is þe leofe mæi, þat þu swa wepest to ðæi?* (LAJAM. III. 215.). Anglosax.: *Hvæt ys þes, þât vindas and se hym hýrsumjað?* MATH. 8, 27.) *Hvæt is þeos nive lâr þât he on anwealde unclenum gæstum bebyð, and hi hýrsumjað him?* (MARC. 1, 27.) *Hvæt gesæve þu mid us þât þu swâ dôn woldest?* (GEN. 20, 10.). It is readily to be understood that not every dependent sentence with *that* supported by an interrogative sentence is to be considered as a causal sentence. Ordinarily only those sentences can pass as such which make a fact the starting point for the question.

2. The particle *for that*, gives to the dependent sentence the decided character of the causal sentence.

I'll well requite thy kindness, *For that it made my imprisonment a pleasure.* (SHAKSP., III Henry VI. 4, 6.). Joseph begged them to have mercy upon him: *for that he had been robbed, and almost beaten to death* (FIELD., J. Andr. 1, 5. With his last breath, he had told his attendants to thryw him into a ditch like a dog, *for that he was not fit to sleep in a christian burial ground* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. II. 53.). We in general consider *for*, not accompanied by *that* as employed in more freely connecting the sentence (see p. 365 and 451); As subordinating the dependent sentence it appears most decidedly before the appearance of the principal sentence. And, *for our coffers . . are grown somewhat light*, We are enforced to farm our royal realm (SHAKSP. Rich. II. 1, 4.). I'll tell thee, Suffolk, why I am unmeet. First, *for I cannot flatter thee in pride* II Henry VI. 1, 3.). The hills move lightly, and the mountains smoke, *For he has touch'd them* (COOPER p. 187.

As to the combination *for that* and other corresponding older forms of the conjunction See p. 392. The demonstrative *forthi* was still sometimes employed in Old-Engl. as a relative conjunction: A thousand besans of of gold (sc. the sent), *Forthi thè (= they?) faire serve wold* (ALIS. 3157), for which we see the originally interrogative form *for why* appear: My lord,

abyde a while *for why* A word to you I wold cleryfy (TOWN.M. p. 67.). Comp. *but what* *for but that* P. 398. Thus even in the later Anglosax. *forðig he vold faran, into Normandige* (SAX. CHR. 1086.). The use of the mere particle *for* in the dependent sentence is frequent in Old-Engl. And *for Mars and Saturnus liher in here poer beoth* . . . Therefore me schoneth moehe thane Saterdag bigynne . . . eni work (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 133.). And *for this axith grete cost*, the devil settith hem on an hiȝ hil, and schewith hem al the world (WRIGHT, A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 41.). *For he grauntyd hym hys askynge*, He thanked hym cortesly (SIR CLEGGES 494.). And *for it was in an asche y-founde* She cleped it Frair (LAY LE FREINE 223.). Whan the people grucched *for thei fownden no thing to drynke* (MACNDEV. p. 57.). Hallsax. Ah lut ȝer he leouede *for his ahne seopen hine sceat to deape* (LAJAM. I. 11.). How sentences of this sort attach themselves more freely even in Hallsax. See p. 365. I find one passage for the use of *for*, otherwise foreign to the Anglosax. in the latest corrupt language: *För þe king Stephne ofer sæ to Normandi, and þer ves underfangen, for þi þat hi vëndon þat he sculde bæn alsvic also þe eóm ves, and for he hadde get his tresör* (SAX. CHR. 1137.).

For in the Final sentence will be taken into consideration in its proper place.

Other causal particles of the ancient language have been abandoned. Here belongs the Anglosax. *purh þat* (*pe, pāt*). Hallsax. Adam wass wurr-penn deofless þeoww *purh þatt he dide his wille* (ORM., Introd. 31.). Anglosax: Gif he gevyrce, *pāt man hine āfylla purh þat þe he ongeān riht geānbyrde*, gif man *pāt gesōðige*, licge āgylde (LEGG. CRUT. I. B. 45.). Se cāsere gegaderode unārmedlice fyrde ongeān Baldvine of Brygge, *purh þat pāt he brāc pā palentan āt Neomagon* (SAX. CHR. 1049.) *pāt he dide . . purh þat he vās legat of pone Rōme-scott* (1127.). Comp. Middle-Highdutch: *durch das . . das, durch das*. Benecke Middle-Highdutch (Dict. I. 405. *pās pe* and *pȳ pe* are also employed to join the causal sentence: In Caines cynne pone cvealm gevrāc ēce drihten, *pās pe he Abel slōg* (BROV. 214 [107 Grein]. cf. 3259. 3699.). And *pȳ fultumode Beorhtric Offan pȳ pe he hāfde his dōhtor him tō cōene* SAX. CHR. 836.).

3. The hybrid particle *because* has also for five centuries shared the province of the particle *for* in the causal dependent sentence.

And so the earl of Armagnac may do, *Because he is near kinsman unto Charles* (SHAKSP., I Henry VI. 5, 5.). Freely we serve *Because we freely love* (MILT. P. L. 5, 538.). I was afraid, *because I was naked* (GEN. 3, 10.) *Because they never think of death*, they die (YOUNG, N. Th. 5. 490.) It is *because I am a bachelor* that I am miserable (BULW., Lady of L., 1, 2.). And *because right is right*, to follow right Were wisdom (TENNYSON p. 104.).

The abbreviation into *cause* formerly occurred frequently: „What do you mean to strangle me?“ — „Yes, 'cause you use to confess.“ (MARLOWE, Jew of M. 4, 2.) Then he, a patient shall reject all physick, 'Cause the physician tells him, you are sick (BEN JONS., Ev. Man out of h. Hum. Prol.). He ripp'd the womb up of his mother, Dame Tellus, 'cause wanted fother And provender (BUTL., Hud. 1, 2, 461.)

We also find the combination *for because* in former times: Which grateful gift, the Queene did so accept . . partly, *for bycause his comely grace Gawe great suspicion of his royall bloude* (GASCOYNE, Jocasta 1, 1.). And, *for bycause*, in vaine and bootlesse plainte I

have small neede to spend this litle time, Here will I cease etc. (ib.). Why rail I on this commodity? But *for because* he hath not woo'd me yet (SHAKSP., John 2, 2.). And, *for because* the world is populous, And here is not a creature but myself, I cannot do it (Rich. II. 5, 5.).

Old-Engl.: *Be cause* he was so litille, he myght not seen him for the peple (MAUNDEV. p. 98. cf. 143. 165. 168. 228. 292. etc.). That here lady shuld take an husband . . . *Bycause* she was of yonge age (IPOMYDOS 553. cf. 1708.). Your confessor, *Bycause* he is a man of great honour, Schal have the first fruyt (CHAWC., C. T. p. 7857. cf. 3859. 15590.). The combination with *that* is frequent with the same writers. See p. 393.

For cause is also used instead of *because*: Uchon sculle calle others felows by cuthe *for cause* they come of ladyes burthe (HALLIW., Freemas 51.). Man shalle falle tille his feete, *For cause* he can bales bete (TOWNS. M. p. 49).

The reduplication of the notion met with in *for because* (*that*) may be originally ascribable to the emphatic prominence of the causal relation. And *for because* *they have but fewe of hem*, therefore *they norisschen hem*, for to ere here londes (MAUNDEV. p. 72.). And *for because* *I have sette my pleasaunce In plenty of drynke*, I shall have in penaunce. To dwell in wayters HALLIW., Nugae P. p. 4.). And *for be cause* *that Saturne is of so late sterynge*, therefore the folk of that contree . . . han of kynde no wille for to mewe (MAUNDEV. p. 162. cf. 153. 165. 193.).

The introduction of this dependent sentence by *because* has analogies in Romance forms as the Fr. *à cause que*, Span. *á causa, por causa que*, Port. *por causa que* and the Lat. *ob eam causam, ea de causa quod*, Mod.-Engl. uses *reason* similarly in such periphrases as *for the same reason that*: „Why does he go so often to Madrid??“ — „*For the same reason that he eats no supper.*“ LONGFELLOW I. 144.) *For the reason that* *I am not a hoarder of money* . . . I am not lavish of it DICKENS, M. chuzzlew. 1, 3.).

4. In *that* also is employed in the causal sentence.

Some things they do in *that they are men*; some things in *that they are men misled and blinded with error* (R. HOOKER, Laws of Eccl. Policy 1594.). Let him die, *in that he is a fox* By nature proved an enemy to the flock (II Henry VI 3, 1, cf. Rich. II. 4, 2. I Henry VI. 3, 1. 4, 1.). I have my wish, *in that I joy thy sight* (MARLOWE, Edw. II. 1, 1.). I have sinned *in that I have betrayed the innocent blood* (MATTH. 27, 4.). For all the evils which they shall have wrought *in that they are turned to other Gods* (DEUTER. 31. 18.). His father might well declare that all men began . . . to extol his fortune *in that he had a son blessed with so excellent a disposition* (TROLLOPE, Framl. Parson. 1, 1.).

Dependent sentences of this sort are not distinguished from members of sentences formed by the preposition *in* and the gerund. and denoting partly the coincidence in time, partly the causal union of the actions. In Greek *ἐν ᾧ* was employed in the sentence of time, for wich the Anglosax. translation of the Bible usually put particles of time, as *þonne* (Joh. 5, 5), *svá lange svá* (MARC. 2, 19. LUC. 5, 34.). The Old-French used *en ce que* of time (See my Syntax II. 143.); the Mod.-Highdutch *indem* corresponds, which, in a temporal meaning, primarily denotes contemporaneousness, but then stands also in a causal sense. Ancient instances of *in that* in a causal meaning, however rare they may be, will not be wanting in English, since, towards the end of the fourteenth century, even the combination *for in that*, with which compare *for because*, occurs. He errith in the bileve,

for in that he takith the most precious werkis of God in play and bourde (WRIGHT. A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant II. 42. An analogous employment of *on þan þe* may moreover be met with in Anglosax.: *ic þe andette . . on þan þe ic geleornode and gelæstan mæg þæt ic þine dômas dædum healde* (Ps. 118, 7.). Gr. *ἐν τῷ μεμαθηέναι με πλ.*

5. a. The modal sentence with *as* may also be employed as a causal sentence, especially where the reason of the knowledge or explanation is indicated.

As no Peer is bound to swear . . It follows etc. (BUTL., Hud. 2, 2, 202.). *As I was now capable of reflection*, I began to consider my precarious situation (SMOLLET, R. Rand. 6.). My eldest son George was bred at Oxford, *as I intended him for one of the learned professions* (GOLDSM., Vic. 1.). *As the animosity of those factions did not really arise from the dispute about the succession*, it lasted long after all ground of dispute . . was removed (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 21.). *As the population of Scotland had been generally trained to arms . . they were not indifferently prepared for war* (SCOTT, Bl. Dwarf 2.). Comp. 1, b.

The particle *as* indicates, like the Fr. *comme*, in sentences of this sort the equal validity of the principal and the dependent sentence, thus representing the expression of a causal relation. Old-Engl.: No man mighte glade Theseus, Savyng his olde fader Egeus, That knew this worldes transmutacioun, *As he hadde seen it torne up and down* (CHAUC., C. T. 2839.). Lete me fro this deth fle, *As I dede nevyr no trespase* (Cov. MYST. p. 281.). Thus even the Anglosax. *svá, svá svá* serves to attach a sentence which serves as the cause of the preceding. *Þu scealt griot etan þine lifdagas, svá þu lādlice vrōhte onstealdost* (CÆDM. 906.). *Þu scealt geomor hveorfan árleas on earde þinum, svá þu Abele vurde tō feorhbanan* (1015.). Se on þās cynges hýrde Villedmes vās, *svá svá his fāder hine úres cynges fāder ær tō gisle geseald hāfde* (SAX. CHR. 1093.).

- b. The amplified forms *forasmuch as*, *inasmuch as* also operate causally.

Leave us not, I pray thee; *forasmuch as thou knowest how we to encamp in the wilderness* (NUMB. 10, 31. *Forasmuch as many have taken in hand to set forth in order a declaration . . It seemed good to me also etc.* LUKE 11 1—3.). *Forasmuch as the thirst is intolerable*, the patient may be indulged a little drink (WEBST., v. for). I regret this the more, *inasmuch as I may not yield to any dame the palm of my liege lady's beauty* (BULW., Rienzi 3, 2.).

The older language especially uses the particles *for als* (*as*) *moche as*, perhaps also *be als moche as*: He had sworn, that he scholde putte the ryvere in suche poynt, that a woman myghte wel passe there, withouten castynge of hire clothes; *for als moche as he hadde lost many worthi men*, that troweden to passen that ryvere by swymmyng (MAUNDEV. p. 41.). And *for als moche as it reynethe not in that contree . . therefore in that contree ben the gode astronomyeres* (p. 45. cf. 53. 66. 71. 126.). *For as moche as ther is no man certeyn*, if it be worthi that God give him victorie or nought . . therefore every man schulde gretly drede werres to bygynne (CHAUC., C. T. p. 163 II. cf. 166. I.). — The contree is sett along upon the ryvere of Nyle; *be als moche as that ryvere may serve be floods or othervise* (MAUNDEV. p. 45.) These particles agree in meaning with the *partant que, pourtant que, pour autant que*, to which they may be reduced. See Orelli, Old-French Gr. p. 407. Burguy, Gr. de la L. d'oïl II. 386.

6. How sentences with *now* and *since* serve to state the Motive of the principal sentence. See p. 433 and 442.
7. We may consider *seeing*, *considering* (*that*) and the like, as periphrases of the cause of the knowledge or of the explanation.

Then, *seeing 'twas he that made you depose*, Your oath, my lord, is vain and frivolous (SHAKSP., III Henry VI. 1, 2.) Ye know the heart of a stranger, *seeing ye were strangers in the land of Egypt* (EXOD. 23, 9.) [Anglosax. for *pam pe ge væron ælpeódie*]. I plied at the opera, madam; and, *considering 'twas neither dark nor rainy* . . . made a tolerable hand on't (GAY Begg. Op. 1, 1.). „I may say I never see him.“ — „That is strange . . . *considering he is your next neighbour*,“ (COOPER, Spy 5.)

These sentences agree with the French dependent Sentences introduced by *vu que*, *attendu que* although we meet with cases of the object in English, and nominative sentences in French after the verbal forms. Comp. the Prep. II. 1. p. 478.

The Conditional Sentence.

The conditional sentence, called preeminently the hypothetical sentence (although the concessive sentence is also of hypothetical nature) contains an assumed or set cause, the consequence of which is expressed in the principal sentence. The dependent sentence therefore represents the condition; the principal sentence, what is conditional, which receives its validity through the realization of the former. Whether the subject matter of the condition lies in the province of possibility or of impossibility, whether it is in itself realized or not realized, does not become absolutely evident from the sentence, but from other moments, as, from the further context, or from other acquaintance with the thing, in part, however, from the conventional use of the tenses and moods of the verb of the predicate. So far as the condition is, in itself, questionable, the interrogative sentence may take its place, a transmutation of this sentence which frequently appeared (See 5.).

1. The sentence of the condition is introduced by the particle *if*, which we still see employed as an interrogative particle in the indirect interrogative sentence (See p. 419). The dependent sentence may be affirmative or negative.
- a. As this dependent sentence, grammatically considered, contains no decision as to the realization of its subject matter, this always remains undecided, where the condition is stated simply, and no further reflection is to be transferred from the whole series of thoughts into the dependent sentence.

If you have tears, prepare to shed them now (SHAKSP., Jul. Cæs. 3, 3.). Storms rise t'o'erwhelm him: or *if stormy winds Rise not*, the water of the deep shall rise COWPER p. 188.). A penal statute is virtually annulled *if the penalties which it imposes are regularly remitted* (MACAUL. Hist. of E. I. 30.). I am to second Ion *if he fail* (TALFOURD, Ion. 3, 2.). *If you should go near Barnald Castle*, there is good ale at the King's head (DICKENS, Nickleby 1, 7.).

Old-Engl.: And *zef pou wolt zet per vppe more asche & wyte of me*, Al þe ende of loue & þe grond ich wol segge þe (R. or Gl. I. 30.). And *if that thou me tellest skil* I schal don after thi wil WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 3.). Touche it to the fuyr, and *zif it brenne*, it is a gode signe (MAUNDEV. p. 51.). Now herkneþ, *if you likith for to here* (CHAUC., C. T. 15469.). Halfsax.: *Zif þu þis nult ipolien* þe scal beon þa wise (LAȜAM. I. 21.). *Zif þu wolt þu miht wel helpen inc seluen* (I. 30.). Þu þohhtesst tatt itt mihte wel Till mikell frame turnenn *Ziff Ennglich folkk . . Itt wolde zerne lernenn* (ORM., Ded. 17.). Anglosax.: Onsend Higelâce *gif mec hild nime*, beaduscruda betst (BEov. 908.). *Gif hva mine spræce gehealt*, ne bið he næfre deað (JOH. 8, 52.). The simple statement of the condition chiefly takes place by the tenses of the present, or, in indirect speech, by tenses of the past.

- b. But the context may suppose the doubt or negation of the conditional sentence, when the negative conditional sentence starts from an affirmative supposition.

„Do you take me?“ — „Deuce take me *if I do*.“ (BULW., Lady of L. 1, 2.). I should very imperfectly execute the task which I have undertaken *if I were merely to treat of battles and sieges* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 3.). *If he Had killed me*, he had done a kinder deed (SHELLEY, Cenci 2, 1.). *If he were not a male-factor*, we would not have delivered him up unto thee (JOHN 18, 3.).

Senses of the past here come chiefly under consideration. Old-Engl.: For *zef ich seide in bismare*, oper bute yt ned were, Sone from me he wolde wende þe Gost (R. or Gl. I. 145.). *Zif that I me shulde greve* Hit were hounlaw (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 4.). *Zif it hadde ryveres and welles . . it scholde ben als fulle of peple etc.* (MAUNDEV. p. 43.). *Zif here fadre had not ben dronken*, he hadde not ylewe with hem p. 102. Anglosax.: *Gif God være eðore fæder*, vitôdlice ge lufedon me (JOH. 8, 42.). *Gif ge me lufedon*, ge geblissedon (14, 28.). Ac *gif þæt fulle mægen þær være*, ne eodon hi næfre eft tō sciponSAX. CHR. 1004.).

- c. But on the other hand the context may teach that the affirmative or negative conditional sentence claims validity in fact.

But *if Frankfurt was thus representative of the past*, it was equally representative of the present (LEWES, G. I. 17.). *If I have not married*, it is because I have not loved (KAVANAGH, Fr. Wom. of Lett. 8.). This case often appears in the opposition of sentences, to which validity belongs equally: *If thy family is proud*, Mine, sir, is worthy! *if we are poor*, the lack Of riches, sir, is not the lack of shame (SHERID. KNOWLES, Love Chase 3, 1.). But *if the town was heedless*, not so were the stars (LEWES, G. I. 15.). *If he had loved her before*, he now adored her (IRVING, Br. H., Ann. Delarbre). For, *if I slew thy brother dear*, Thou slew'st a sister's son to me (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 5, 29.). *If the divine fire of genius failed her . . she had at least that intellectual honesty etc.* (KAVANAGH, Fr. Wom. of Lett. 1.). The concessive sentence may here frequently be substituted for the conditional sentence. The sentence of the sentence referred to a fact may also approach the causal sentence. *If I shrink not from these, the fire-arm'd angels*, Why should I quail from him who now approaches (BYRON, Cain I. 1.).

Old-Engl.: *If I be master* I wille be brother (TOWNS. M. p. 180.). *Yef*

he were er y-bete sore, Thanne was he bete moche more (OCTOBIAN 1841.). That if that Palamon was wounded sore, Arcite is hurt as moche as he, or more (CHAUC., C. T. Anglosax.: *Gif he þā tealde godas, þe Godes spæc tō vās gevorden . ge secgað, þāt þu bysmer spycst* (JOH. 10, 35. *Gif þu him heoddæg vuht hearines gesprece, he forgið hit* þeah CÆDM. 657.). The conditional sentence bordering on the causal sentence is also old. Old-Engl.: *Perfore 3if I lorde and mayster haue waschen 3oure feet, and 3ee schulen wasche anoper þe topers feet* (WYCL., Joh. 13, 14.). Anglosax.: *Gif ic pvoh eovre fet . . and ge sceolon eac pvean eover ælc oðres fet* (ib) *Ic vāt þāt ge synd Abrahames bearn . . Gif ge Abrahames bearn synd vyrcað Abrahames veorc* (JOH. 8, 37—39.).

- d. As the sentence of time sometimes approaches the conditional sentence, so, conversely the latter borders on the sentence of time.

Slaves cannot breathe in England; *if their lungs Receive our air*, that moment they are free (COWKER p. 185.). *If she so much as rustled the folds of her hood*, he could hear the ill-looking man clap his hand upon his sword (DICKENS, Pickw. 2, 20.). *If they met*, they met merely as our Convocation now meets, to go through some venerable forms (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 42.).

Old-Engl.: *3if ony man or wōman be taken in avoutery*, anon thei sleen him (MAUNDEV. p. 249. Hallsax.: *3if heo fluzen to burgen*, þer heo forwurðen: *3if he flozen to þa wunde* (leg. wude), þer hi heom forduden (LAȜAM. II. 443.).

- e. The negative conditional sentence with *if* in general denotes that the negation of what is contained in the dependent sentence is the condition of what is predicated in the principal sentence, that the validity of the principal sentence is to be inferred from the former. But the negative sentence may also state an exceptional case, with the appearance of which the subject matter of the principal sentence is irreconcilable, without an internal causal nexus between the negation of the condition and of the consequence being proved. Both kinds of the dependent sentence certainly border hard on each other, and may sometimes have to be interchanged. The older language keeps them more sharply separated, the modern admits the introduction of the exceptional case with *if not*.

But if we haply scape (As well we may, *if not through your neglect*) We shall to London get (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 5, 2.). There is a place (*If ancient and prophetic fame in Heaven Err not*) another world (MILT., P. L. 2, 345.). *If I err not* hither speeds a messenger (SHERID., KNOWLES, Virgin. 5, 1.). Here also belong periods in which a single sharply defined determination is opposed to a negative or interrogative sentence with a negative supposition. No king of England, *if not king of France* (SHAKSP., Henry V., 2, 2.). And who should thrive In love, *if not Love's soldier* . . ? SHERID. KNOWLES, Love-Chase 5, 3.). This combination is especially selected in the incomplete dependent sentence.

In olden times the conditional relation was more sharply separated from the exceptive. To the latter belong the particles *but* and the subsequent *unless*, along with a few more (See 6, 7.), as Anglosax. especially employed *būtan*, where as Gothic could use *niba* like the Gr. *εἰ μὴ*, in

both kinds of sentences. Those English particles have also remained, to a great extent, in Modern-English, by which, on the whole the exceptive sentences, like the Lat. sentences and members with *nisi*, are separated from those with *if not*, Lat. *si non*. The form *nif* (*ne if*) occurring here and there in negative sentences in Old-Engl., may also be incidentally mentioned, which is said to survive in Somerset in the meaning of *if*. Comp. *Nif he nere scoymus & skyg & non scape louied*, Hit were a meruayl to much (MORRIS, Engl. Allit. Poems. Lond. 1864. p. 38.).

2. Modern-Engl. also formerly used the particle *and*, *an'*, *an*, in the conditional sentence, which also appears combined with *if* (*and if*, *an if*). The modern literary language has abandoned this particle, yet *an* has been preserved in the mouth of the people.

Corporal Nym, *and thou wilt be friends*, be friends: *an thou wilt not*, why then enemies with me too (SHAKSP., Henry V. 2, 1.). I'll make one; *an I do not*, call me villain (I Henry IV. 1, 2.). Ah! no more of that, Hal, *an thou lovest me* (2, 4.). Leave it, *an't please yaur honour*, to me, quoth the corporal (STERNE, Tr. Shandy 6, 6.). For once *he* had been ta'en or slain *An' it had not been his ministry* (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 2, 32.). *An this weather last*, what will come o'the lambs! (Bl. Dwarf 1.) *An he take the least alarm in that quarter*, we are but lost men (Ivanh. 2.). The knighthood was but a silly show, *an it were not for the wine from the horse's nostrils* (BULW., Rienzi 5, 5.). — In the sixteenth and seventeenth century the juxtaposition of *and*, (*an*) *if* is not rare, without *and* being the mean of connection with a preceding sentence: *And yf thou wilt strike me*, and breake thy promise, doo (JACK JUGLER p. 25.). „What's the prize?“ — „Your life *and if you have it* MARLOWE, Jew of M. 2, 2). But *and if that servant say* . . The lord of that servant will come etc. (LUKE 12, 45.). This must crave (*An if this be at all*) a most strange story (SHAKSP., Temp. 5, 1.). His father never was so true begot; It cannot be, *an if thou wert his mother* (JOHN 2, 1.). I'll break thy little finger, Harry, *An if thou wilt not tell me all things true* I Henry IV. 2, 3.).

The copulative particle *and*, which was often weakened down to *an*, has, from ancient times, taken the place of *if*. In English it has been restricted to the conditional dependent sentence and has only occasionally penetrated the indirect interrogative sentence, likewise introduced by *if*. (See p. 419), whereas in the Middle-Highdutch in the dependent sentence of the determination of place and time, in the conditional and concessive dependent sentence, as well as in the modal sentence, it might take the place of the conjunctions, and even represented the relative pronoun. Benecke presents numerous instances Middle-Highdutch Dictionary 3, 185. In the conditional sentence *und* certainly occurs most frequently, when the sentence stands in the inverse form of the question. Ich junge, *und tuot si das* (WALTH V. D. VOGELW. V. Pfeiffer, p. 38. Dict. 3, 184.). In English the interrogative form is not observed. Old-Engl.: For theas the weder is, ther is turment strong Of wynd, of water, and of fur, *and thaye threo were i-fere*, A melston scholde al to-dryve (WRIGHT Pop. Treat. p. 136.). *And thou childe in this hous*, Hit schal beo a thyng unwreste (ALIS. 618. cf. 2697 sq. 3886.). For *and she knew* thou went away, She lyveth nevyr to-morrow-day (FROMYDON 861.). He will not leevyn the forseyd sentence of myraclis pleyinge, but *and men shewen it hym bi holy writt* WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 50. *And I were a pope*, Nought only thou, but every mighty man . . Schould han a wif (CHAUC., C. T. 15436.). See Vol.

I. p. 423. Now welle were I *an it so were* (TOWNS. M. p. 156.). There nys earthly man But, *an he can Bone Aventure take*, There can no fauour nor frendshyp hym forsake (SKELETON I. 34.). This usage is found even in Halfsax.: For pat word pat ich þe sende bi mine lue ich hit halde, & *þu hit nult ileuen*, beoten hit læssinge beo, ich hit wulle trousien þurh mine tirlfulne godd (LAJAM. I. 355.). Help him nou *an þou miht* (I. 150. mod. text). Even in Anglosax. the sentence commencing with *and* takes the place of the conditional sentence: Forlæt minne sunnu þæt he þeovje me, *and þu noldest hyne forlætan* vitōdlice ic ofslea þinne frumcennedan sunu (EXOD. 4, 23). Gr.: εἰ μὲν οὖν μὴ βούλει ἐξαποσείλαι αὐτοὺς κτλ. — The combination and *if* may be compared with the Middle-Highdutch *und obe* wherein *und* apperas pleonastic; yet it is not old, and may attach to itself such pleonasmas as *for because*, and the like.

3. The conditional sentence is also introduced by *so*. As distinguished from *if*, *so* chiefly appears where the condition is of a restrictive nature and express a reservation, so that it is assimilated to the Lat. *modo*, *dum*, *dummodo*, although not always.

I am content, *so thou wilt have it so* (SHAKSP., Rom. a. Jul. 3, 5.). Why, let 'em come, *so they come not to war*, Or let 'em war, *so we be conquerors* (MARLOWE, Jew of M. 1, 1.). Would I had lost this finger at a venture, *So Wellbred had ne'er lodged within my house* (BEN JONS., Ev. Man in his Hum. 2, 1.). Revenge . . on itself recoils; Let it; I reck not, *so it light well ain'd . . on him* who next Provokes my envy (MILT., P. L. 171.). *So Mahomet and the mountain meet*, no matter which moves to the other (CHATHAM, Lett. 12.). Do so — in any shape — in any hour — With any torture — *so it be the last* (BYRON, Manfr. 2, 1.). The Palmer took on him the task, *So he would march with morning tide*, To Scottish court to be his guide ((SCOTT, Marm. 1. 29.). The vain puppets, *so they keep the semblance*, scarce miss the substance (BULW., Rienzi 3, 2.). *So you only catch'em*, it matters not whether you hook or tickle (DOUGL. JERROLD, Bubbles 2.).

In Old-Engl. *so* that is commonly put instead of *so*: Al my lond I will of him held, *So that he wil, for charité, In peace hereafter leave me* (RICH. C. DE L. 2340). Ye schole have þes, for evyr moo, *So that ye make kyng of Surry Markes Feraunt* (3222. *Soo that he wole*, thou hym proffre To let Jesu and Mary. To geve hym land a gret party 3654.). *So that ye take it not at greffe*, Full feyne he wolde prey you of leffe (IPOMYDON 197.) Ich wille help the, *So that thou wille spousi me* (SEYNS SAGES 2663.). Take all the gud that I have *So that thou wylt my ladè save* (SIR AMADAS 677.). *So that he were most y-worschede*, Thenne sculde he be so *yclepede* (HALLIW., Freemas. 45.). *So that he may fynde Goddes foyssoun there*, Of the remenaunt needeth nought enquire (CHACC., C T. 3165.). I couthe telle . . *so that ye be not wroth* (7829.). What so thou askys I graunte it the, *So that it be skylle* (TOWNS. M. d. 231.). Bothe gold and sylvyr þe xul have, *So that in clennes ze kepe my name* COV. MYST. p. 218.). The simple *so* is rare: Doujteth no dette, *so dukis hem preise* (DEPOS. or RICH. II. p. 19.). What, *so thou yelde agayn my tresore*, I schal the love for ever more RICH. C. DE L. 1595.) Alle my covandys holden shalle be, *So I have felyship me aboute* (TOWNS. M. p. 185.) It is oftener accompanied by a preposition *be*, *by*, *for*: He makethe him sum promys and graunt, of that the straungere askethe resonably, *be so it be not agens his lawe* (MACNEV. p. 40.). *By so that thou be sobre . .* Darstow nevere care for corn (P. PLOTGHM. p. 276.). Roughte ye nevere Where my body were buryed, *By so ye hadde my silver silver* (p. 206.). Ich wil the yive

of golde a mark, And a stede strong and stark, *By so thou wil, withouten ansuere, To youre kyng a lettre bere* ALIS. 5526.). Contricion myghte hym save brynge his soule to blisse; *for so that feith bere witness* P. FLOUGH. p. 278.). The use of *so* in the conditional sentence may lean primarily upon the temporal *so*, Anglosax. *swá*, (See p. 423), as a *so* forming a temporal condition has been developed in German. Mod.-Highdutch: Dis alles will ich dir geben, *so du niederfällst* und mich anbetest (MATTH. 4, 9.). This *so*, however, often exceeds the notion of a restrictive condition, contained in *soferne*. But the combination with prepositions seems to point to a Fr. origin, and to remind us of the old *par si que* = *pourvu que*: Car par lui ne voel pas garir *Par si que vous voie morir* (FLORE v. BL. 2807. Bekk.). (As to *par si que*, alongside whereof *par ainsi que* occurs, See my Syntax of the Mod.-Fr. Language II. 175.)

The particle *as* in the conditional relation is to be incidentally mentioned, as in: *As I were a shepherdess*, I would be piped and sung to; as a dairy-wench, I would dance and maypoles (BEN JON., Cynth. Rev. 4, 1.). Here the *as* which follows explained the origin of the complete sentence more freely annexed, which, abbreviated, might run; *as a shepherdess*, but would then at the same time lean upon the predicate *would be piped . . to*.

4. The sentences introduced by *on (upon) condition (that)*, *conditionally that*, *in case (that)*, as well as by such participles as *provided (that)*, may be considered periphrastic forms for the conditional sentence, to which other case sentences accompanied by imperatives, as *say, suppose*, may be appended. They are attached to Romance members of sentences which emphasize the notion of a condition, supposition or assumption.

Upon condition thou wilt swear To pay him tribute . . Thou shalt be placed as viceroy under him (SHAKSP., I Henry VI. 5, 4.). Mercy was offered to some prisoners *on condition that they would bear evidence against Prideaux* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. II. 220.). I here entail The crown to thee . . *Conditionally, that thou take an oath To cease this civil war* (SHAKSP., III Henry VI. 1, 1.). — This speak I, lords, to let you understand, *In case some one of you would fly from us*, That there's no hop'd-for mercy (III Henry VI. 5, 4.). *In case we are surprised*, keep by me (IRVING, Tales of a Tr., Story of the Bandit Chieft.). — Entertain Lodovick . . With all the courtesy you can afford; *Provided that you keep your maiden-head* (MARLOWE, Jew of M. 2, 2.). The mere delight in combining ideas suffices them; *provided the deductions are logical*, they seem almost indifferent to their truth (LEWES, G. I. 65.). Here also are to be referred such participles as *providing, supposing* and the like, along with which *forseeing* as well as a condition:

Imperatives like *say, suppose*, and the like may, moreover, indicate a concession as well as a condition: *Say, you can swim; alas! 'tis but a while* (SHAKSP., III Henry VI. 5, 4.). Well father, *say I be entertain'd*, What then shall follow? (MARLOWE, Jew of M. 1, 2.). But *say I were to be hanged*, I never could be hanged for any thing that would give me greater comfort than the poisoning that slut (GAY, Bedg. Op. 3, 1.). *Suppose he should relent . . with what eyes could we stand in his presence?* (MILT., P. L. 2, 237.). *Suppose 'twere Portius*, could you blame my choice? ADDIS., Cato 1, 6.) — Imperative sentences with *let* may likewise be cited as representatives of the conditional sentence: Setting aside his

high blood's royalty, And let him be no kinsman to my liege, I do defy him and I spit at him (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 1, 1.). *Let Earth unbalanc'd from her orbit fly*, Planets and suns run lawless thro' the sky (POPE, Essay on M. 1, 251.). For the imperative sentences See Vol. II. 1. p. 134. Other periphrases of the conditional by complete or incomplete sentences with a case sentence are readily explained.

Of these intelligible periphrases of conditioned actions we find in ancient times in case (*that*), Mod.-Highdutch *im Falle (dass), falls*, imported from the French: He sayd, he wold haue hyr to wyffe, If she wold, withouten stryffe; And in case *she wold not soo* — „I shall make hyr moche woo" (IPOMYDON 1607.). *In cas that he had ony werre . . . thanne he makethe certeyn men of armes for to gon up into the castelles of tree* (MACNDEV. p. 191.). *In cas no dowtys that we fynde may*, The trewth of hem þe may us telle Cov. MYST. p. 195.). To the French *à condition que* answers in some measure the Anglosax. form: *on þæt gerád þæt*: Eádmund cyning oferbergode dall Cumbraland, and hit lét call eall tō Malculme Scotta cyninge, *on þæt gerád þæt he være his midvyrhta ægðer ge on sæ ge eác on lande* (SAX. CHR. 844. cf. 1091.).

The ancient language also uses dependent sentences with *with that (thy)*, if the action of the principal sentence is annexed to a condition as a counter rendering or an equivalent. Old Engl.: Ich wile þeve the riche mede, *With that it be so* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 7.). Ich wille geve the gift ful stark . . . *With that min hernde be wel don* (p. 8.). Y wolde Y hadde al Perce y-geve, *With that y myghte have thi lif!* (ALIS. 4654.) Take thee al the goods that we have, *With that thou wilt our lyves save*, Lett us passe away al nakyd (RICH. C. DE L. 4155. cf. OCTOUIAN 158.). Nul y here byleve . . . *With that ye me from deth borve* (ALIS. 4520.). The leuedi seyð sche wald ful fain Sende him gode asses tvain, *With-thi he wald oway go* (AMIS. A. AMIL. 1777.). Halfsax.: Al pine wille he wule don *wið þon þe pu him zeue grið* (LAJAM. I. 352. cf. II. 55. 528. mod. text.). Al þis ich wulle don . . . *wið þat pu me lete liuien* (III. 36. cf. 171.). Anglosax.: Þa hæðenan Philistei behêton hira [hire?] sceattas, *wið þam þe heô beswice Samson pone strangan* (JUD. 16, 5.). Ic gife þe þa ððre *wið þam þe pu hirsunige me ððre seofen gear* (GEN. 29, 27.). Þa gerádde se cyng and his vitan þæt him man tō sende and him gafol behête, *wið þon þe hi þære hergunge geuicon* (SAX. CHR. 994.).

5. The inverted collocation of words, as in the question, is substituted for the conditional sentence. The question is felt as such only where a tense of the present in the indicative belongs to the sentence, when the mark of interrogation is usually employed.

Is my young master a little out of order? the first question is: What will my dear eat? LOOKE, Education.) *Were Richelieu dead* — his power were mine (BUTL., Richel., 2, 1.). *Wast thou a monarch*, Me wouldst thou make thy queen? (SHERID. KNOWLES, Love-Chase 3, 1, I would make remembrance of them to cease from among men: *were it not* that I feared the wrath of the enemy (DEUTER. 32, 26.). *Had the Plantagenets . . . succeeded in uniting all France under their government*, it is probable that England would never have had an independent existence (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 14.) *These high-aimed darts of death, and these alone, Should I collect*, my quiver would be full (YOUNG, N. Th. 5, 1022.). *Should an individual want a coat*, he must employ the village tailor, if Stultze is not to be had (SCOTT, Minstrelsy I. 58.). What was to become of them *should their provision fail?* (IRVING, Columb. 3, 7.)

This usage, diffused through many languages, especially modern ones, pervades all periods of our province. Old-Engl.: For *habbe þou power ynow*, þou myȝt be glad & blipe (R. OF GL. I. 114.) *Have ȝe good tydynges, mayster?* than be we glad (Cov. MYST. p. 77.) *May I hym mete*, I shalle hym slo (TOWN. M. p. 44.) *Be I taken* I be bot dede (p. 15.) *Weste hic* hit miȝtte ben for-holen, Me wolde thincke wel solen Thi wille for to fullen (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 8.) *Stode heo here*, as heo doþ pere, euer a wolde laste (R. OF GL. I. 146.) *Were ther a belle on hire beighe* . . Men mighte witen wher thei wente (P. FLOUGHM. p. 11.) Scant could sche feel more pine or reuth, *War it hir owen childe* (LAY LE FREINE 351.) *Knew I here namys*, wel were I (Cov. MYST. p. 86.) *No had beo oure Tiriens*, Thou haddest leye ther withoute defence (ALIS. 3365. cf. RICH. C. DE L. 3263.) *Ner thou oure brother*, schuldestow never thrive (CHAUC., C. T. 7526.) Hallsax.: Ac þære nadde he hi-come nere *hit for swikedome* (LAJAM. I. 396. mod. text.) Anglosax.: *Bið se torr pyrel, in-gong geopenad*, þonne ic ærest him purh eargfare in-onsende in breost-sefan bitre geþoncas (COD. EXON. 266, 23.) *Ahte ic minra handa geveald, and mōste āne tid ūte veordan, vesan āne vinterstunde*, þonne ic mid þis verode — (CÆDM. 367.) Here also belongs: He hȝ gevyldan meahte nære þāt hi on niht ūte ā-burston of þære byrig (SAX. CHR 943.), although the grammatical subject is wanting. Comp. Old-Engl.: I were right now of tales desolat, *Nere* that a marchaunt . . Me taught a tale (CHAUC., C. T. 4551.)

6. If the negative conditional sentence states a case with the presence of which the subject matter of the principal sentence is irreconcilable, this exceptional case is ordinarily introduced by other conjunctions than *if* (See 1, e.). We primarily mention the modern particle *unless* (nisi, ni, nisi forte), rarely appearing in the form *less*, formerly also *least*, sometimes too accompanied by *that*. It appears both with affirmative and negative principal sentences.

This sword hath ended him: so shall it thee, *Unless thou yield thee as my prisoner* (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 5, 3.). What place can be for us Within Heav'n's bound *unless Heav'n's Lord supreme We overpower?* ((MILT., P. L. 2, 235.) What's a tall man *unless he fight?* (BEN JONS., Ev. Man in his Hum. 4, 6.) To whose integrity you must In spite of all your caution trust, And, *'less you fly beyond the seas* Can fit you with what heirs you please (BUTL., Hud. The Lady's Answ. 325.). Lie is nothing *unless one supports it* (SHERID., Riv. 2, 1.). Yet, *unless I greatly deceive myself*, the general effect of this chequered narrative will be to excite thankfulness in all religious minds (MACAUL., Hist., of E. I. 2. Deny that she is mine, And I will strangle thee, *unless the lie Should choke thee first* (SHERID., KNOWLES, Virgin. 5, 3.). *Unless the poet know* how it is „behind the scenes“ he will never understand how actors speak and move (LEWES, G. I. 61.) — My cousins were soon too much interested in the business of the morning to take any further notice of me, *unless that I overheard Dickon the horse-jockey whisper to Wilfred the fool etc.*, (SCOTT, R. Roy 7.); with which the Lat. *nisi quod* and *but that*, (See 7) may be compared. The particle *least* was sometimes formerly used for *unless*. And *least thou yield to this that I entreat*, I cannot think but that thou hat'st my life (MARLOWE, Jew of M. 3, 4.).

That *unless* is to be reduced to the Fr. *à moins que* (. . ne), Span, Port. *a*

menos que there is no doubt upon *lesse than* is to be regarded as a literal translation. Old-Engl.: But that may not be, upon *lesse than* *wce move falle toward hevene fro the erthe*, where we ben (MAUNDEV. p. 164.), by which the form *onlesse*, occurring later, is explained (Fiedler's Gr. II. 349.). If the form *unless*, has produced from it, rests upon a mistake of the first element of the word. *lesse than*, was early diffused, *lesse than* subsequently. I shall . . . With strengthe take hir in hyr boure *Lesse than she may finde a knyght*, That for hyr love me darre fight (FROMYDON 1614.). But men of levyng be so owtrage, Bothe be nyght and eke be day, That *lesse than synne the soner swage*, God wyl be vengyd on us sum way (Cov. MYST. p. 40.). Pforfett never be no woman, *Lesse than the laure olove thi play* (p. 63.). I xal hem down dyngge, *Lesse than he at my byddynge Be busum to min honde* (p. 183. cf. 193.). — I xal forfare fior to grete synnys that I have do, *Lesse than my lord God sumdel spare* (p. 263.). The unclear conception of the particle seems to have procured admission for the form *least*.

7. The old exceptive particle *but*, whose present amplitude of usage always goes back to the original meaning *nisi*, comes here into extensive application.

- a. *But* in this sense stands with affirmative indicative principal sentences.

I would be sorry, my lord, *but it should be thus* (SHAKSP., II Henry IV. 4, 3.). I'll die, *but they have hid him in the house* (BEN JONS. Ev. Man in h. Hum. 4, 1.). Beshrew my heart, *but it is wond'rous strange* (ROWE, J. Shore, 4, 1.). I'll be damned, *but they come in for a bellyful* (GOLDSM., G. Nat. M. 3.).

But that more frequently states the exceptional case: it agrees with the Lat. *nisi quod*.

But that I scorn to let forth so mean a spirit, I'd have stabb'd him to the earth (BEN JONS., Ev. Man in h. Hum. 3, 2.). I should be sick, *but that my resolution helps me* (SHAKSP., Cymb. 3. 6.). Your daughter . . . Was a scorpion to her sight; whose life *but that her flight prevented it*, she had ta'en off by poison (5, 5. cf. 1, 2.). At ev'ry jest you laugh aloud, As now you would have done by me, *But that I barr'd your raillery* (BUTL., Hud. 3, 1, 1420.). I liked her, would have marry'd her, *But that it pleas'd her father to refuse me* (ROWE, Fair Penit. 1, 1.). Here we live in an old crumbling mansion that looks for all the world like an inn, *but that we never see company* (GOLDSM., She Stoops 1.). The folded gates would bar my progress now, *But that the lord . . . Admits to a share* (COWPER p. 171.). *But that the Earl his flight had ta'en*, The vassals there their Lord had slain (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 4, 10. cf. 3, 2.).

In former times the simple *but* is much more frequent in the negative sentence with affirmative principal sentences. Old-Engl.: *Bote y be perof awreke*, y schall dye for sore (R. OF GL. I. 18.). *Ȝef ich seide in bismare, oþer bote yt ned were* (I. 145.). *Plente me may in Engeland of all gode yse. Bute folc yt forgulte* (I. 1.). *Lothe were lewed men But thei youre loore folwede* (P. PLOTCHM. p. 301.). *Ich hire love, hit mot me spille, Bote ich gete hire to mi wille* (WRIGHT Anecd. p. 8.). *Bote we have the beter socour, We beth forlour* (RICH. C. DE L. 2993.). *But I in other wise may be wreke*, I schal defame him over al (CHACCC., C. T. 7793. cf. 3295.). *But ȝe me warshipe ȝe do me wronge* (Cov. MYST. p.

20.). I wyll myn heed be of y-smyte, *Bote hyt be so* (OCTOUIAN 125.). It were mervelle *but I the knew* (IPOMYDON 847.). I shrew those lypmys *bot thou leyff me som parte* (TOWN. M. p. 90.). Halfsax: *Pou art al dead buten pou do mine read, & pi læuerd a swa bote pu min lare do* (LAȜAM. I. 30.). Nu ic pe wulle quellen *bute pu beo stille* I. 287.). *Zif pu takesst twiȝess an Aund ekesst itt till fowwre, Pu finndesst, butt an wunderr be, Pe fulle tale of sexe* (ORM. 16352. cf. 7843.). Anglosax.: *Bûte ge tō hym gecyrren, se deofol cvecð his sweore tō eov* (Ps. 7, 12.). Nu bið fore preo niht, *pāt he on þære peode sceal . . gāst onsendan ellor-fūsne, bûtan pu ær cyme* (ANDR. 185.). *Pāt ve tîres vone ā bûtan ende sculon ermðu dreogan, bûtan pu ūsic . . hreddan ville* (CYNEVULF, Crist 280. Grein.).

In Old-Engl. *but if* are often combined, corresponding to the Lat. *nisi si*: And profreden hire hedes to wedde, *but zif it wolde falle* as'thei seiden (MAUNDEV. p. 167.). Muche wonder me thinketh *But if many a preest beere . . A peire of bedes in hir hand* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 302.). I-wis *but if I have my wille* For derne love of the, lemman, I spille (CHAUC., C. T. 3277. cf. 3299, 15399, 15401, 15983.). *But yiff you helpe, I goo to schame* (RICH. C. DE L. 1572. cf. 1055.). Hym though his hert wold to-broke, *But if he myght se that mayde* (IPOMYDON 142.). *But yf ze knowe were he is bent, Myn hert for woo asondyr wyl race* (COV. MYST. p. 195.). With negative principal sentences we observe this combination earlier (See b.).

I have not so frequently observed *but that* in this case, although it is old. Old-Engl.: Myn handwerk to sle sore grevyth me, *But that here synne here deth doth brewe* (COV. MYST. p. 43.). Forthwyth there I had hym slayne *But that I drede mordre wolde come oute* (SKELTON I. 50.). Remarkable is: *Bote on that thou me nout bi-melde, Ne make the wroth, Min hernde willi to the bede* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 3.). — Halfsax.: Freo-li he þas twein brotherne heolden þas eorldomes, *buten þat heo icneowen pone king for heore herre* (LAȜAM. I. 306.). He wolde al þis kine-lond setten on heore hond, *bute þat he icleoped weore king of þan londe* (III. 263.). Anglosax.: *Þā se ēgorhere . . eall ācvealde bûton pāt earcebord heold heofona fræd* (CÆDM. 1397.). Old-Sax.: So samo so thiū flod deda . . the thar mid lagustromun liudi farteride bi Noeas tidium, *bûtan that ina neride god* (HEILAND 8721.).

- b. Of wider application is the employment of the particle with negative principal sentences of every kind, when the adverb *scarce, scarcely* may represent the negation.

The simple *but* appears here most frequently. It is in the same predicament as *nisi* in regard to negative notions, but passes into the nearly related *quin*, It answers alternately to the German *wenn nicht, ausser dasz, ohne dasz, dasz nicht*. Thieves are not judged, *but they are by to hear* (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 4, 1.). I never do him wrong *But he does buy my injuries*, to be friends (CYMB. 1, 2.). Who never promises *but he means to pay* (I Henry IV 5, 4.). It cannot be *but he was murdered so* (II Henry VI. 3, 2.). Nor withstood them rock or hill, *But they . . found their way* (MILT., P. L. 7, 300.). That sword that . . never dealt its furious blows, *But cut the throats of pigs and cows* (BUTL., Hud., The Lady's Answ. 9.). In Eske, or Liddel, fords were none, *But he would ride them*, one by one (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 1, 21.). There *scarce* occurs a phrase or word relating to Robin Hood . . *but it is here collected and explained* (Minstrelsy I.

76.). I see *no* cause *but* we may seize on that (SOUTHERN, Oroon. 3, 2. — *But* is also attached to negative sentence in such a manner that a substantive notion occurring in the principal sentence is not repeated as the subject of the dependent sentence, and the latter appears as the representative of a negative adjective sentence: There is *not* a white hair on your face, *but* should have its effect of gravity (SHAKSP., II. Henry IV. 1, 2.). No voice exempt; *no* voice *but* well could join *Melodious* part (MILT., P. L. 3, 370.). I have *no* other way *But* as is as difficult, to play (BUTL., Hud. 3, 3, 537. cf. 545.). *Nor* herb, *nor* floweret, glisten'd there, *But* was carved in the cloister-arches as fair (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 2, 8.). Thou hast done, or assisted to nothing, *but* deserves to be pardon'd (BEN JONS., Ev. Man in his Hum. 5, 1.). I scarce can meet a monument, *but* holdst my younger (YOUNG, N. Th. 4, 21.). Attached to a negative principal sentence containing *so*, the determination of measure, *but* appears analogously to the Lat. *quin* in regard to *tam*, and the dependent sentence receives the colour of a consecutive sentence: Mine eyes are full of tears, I cannot see: And yet salt water blinds them *not so much*, *But* they can see a sort of traitors here (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 5, 3.). There cannot be a chance in life so miserable, *Nothing so very hard but* I could bear it, Much rather than my love should treat me coldly (ROWE, Fair Penit. 1, 1.). Age had *not* lock'd his senses up *so close*, *But* he had eyes, that open'd to his soul, And took your beauties in (SOUTHERN, Oroon. 3, 1.). *No* knight in Cumberland *so good*, *But* William may count with him kin and blood (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 4, 26.).

But that, *nisi quod*, here likewise passes into the meaning of *quin*, but appears more rarely and not without subject: I would ne'er have fled *But* that they left me 'midst my enemies (SHAKSP., I Henry VI. 1, 2.). I shall here abide the hourly shot Of angry eyes; *nor* comforted to live, *But* that there is this jewel in this world (Cymb. 1, 2.). The third things past could keep in memoree: So that *no* time *nor* reason could arise, *But* that the same could one of these comprize (SPENS., F. Qu. 2, 9, 49.). I know that her Majesty has not given you any such command, *but* that you might grant me a request of far greater courtesy (HUME, Hist. of E. 42.). I was *not so young* when my father died *but* that I perfectly remember him (BYRON, Conversat.).

How the exceptive conditional sentence gradually enters into further relations is shewn by its earlier employment. Old-Engl.: *pat* *pis lond* *neuer ywonne nere*, *Bute yt porf treson of pe folk of pe selue lond were* (R. of GL. I. 56.). *Pat no man yt nuste*, *Bute it were eny prive mon* I. 25.). He *ne mai nevere thanne come bote the weder uncunde beo* WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 135.). *Hy ne mytte non lengour libe*, *Bote here hedde were i take* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 273.). *Lent nevere was lif*, *But lifode were shapen* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 275.). *Pou schuldist not haue any power ajenes me no but it were zowen to pee from aboue* (WYCL., Joh. 9, 11.). *Worthe I nevir glad ne fayne But I bringe theym bothe agayne* (IPOMIOS 1443.). I will *not* ete with the *But* thou a bone will grant me (1661.). Ther was *none* that speke couthe *But* they the lady had in mouthe (137. cf. 309. 1521. OCTOUIAN 127.). So that *no* man wolde trowe the richesse

of the palays, *but he had seen it* (MAUNDEV. p. 188. cf. 175. 221. 242. 275.). I sawgh no man him greve, *But it were oonly Osewald* (CHAUSS., C. T. 3857.). Symkyn wolde no wyf . . . *But she were wel i-norissed* (3945.). I xal nevyr trowe it, *but I it prove* (COV. MYST. p. 152.). The omission of the subject with the reference backward to a denied substantive does not occur till later time: Ther is no man *but hens must wende* (COV. MYST. p. 232.); likewise the reference to a principal sentence with so: My sorwe was nevyr so grett, *but now my joy is more* (p. 76.). Halſax. Ne mihte hit iwurðen þat Bruttes ne musten reosen *buten heo ræd hæuden* (LAŒAM. III. 63.). Ne wend ich þat na man . . . me mihte þus lehtsiche allegen mid fehte *bute hit Arður weore* (III. 35.). Anglosax: Būton þā dagas gescyrte væron, nære nān man hāl gevorden (MATH. 24. 22.). Būton hvā beō ednivan gecenned, ne mæg he geseon Godes rice (JOH. 2. 3.). Ne mæg þāt gōd beōn getymbrod būton þāt yfel beō ær: tōvorpen (A.-S. HOMIL. I. 144.). Þāt ne geveorðe, būton he leaƿnesse habbe þāt hine man lāng feormige (LEGG. WINTRAD. 8.).

But if, but if that was very usual with negative principal sentences Old-Engl. *But if ye loven leelly* . . . Ye ne have na moore merite . . . Than Malkyn (P. PLOUGH. p. 25 sq.). Na-moore myghe God be man, *but if he moder hadde* (p. 343.). That no mason sculde worche be nyȝt *But ȝef hyt be in practesyng of wytte* (HALLIW., FREEMAS. 228.). Before the soudan comethe no strangier *but ȝif he be clothed in clothe of gold* (MAUNDEV. p. 39.). Thei drynken no wyn, *but ȝif it be on principalle festes* (p. 58. cf. 47.). No man comethe nouther in to that yle ne in to the other, *but ȝif he be devoured anon* (p. 285.). No man schalle neyghe the charyot, but only tho lordes, *but ȝif that the emperour calle any man to him* (p. 241.). No man . . . Schal not supplante othur security *But ȝef that hyt be so y-wroȝth*, That hyt turne the werke to noȝth (HALLIW., FREEMAS. 204.). Nu nis no squier of pris in this middel erd *But if that he bere a babel and a long berd* (WRIGHT, POLIT. S. p. 335.). Þfor ȝitt schet I nevyr at hert, are, nere hynde, *But yf that he deyð* (COV. MYST. p. 44.). Halſax: Þat ne bið he biwunne þurh nanes cunnes monnen, *bute ȝif hunger cumen þer an under* (LAŒAM. II. 358.). Nan ne sholde wurppenn þa sett to wurppenn prest, *but ȝif He prestess sune wære* (ORM. 492. cf. 1662. 1832. 2611 etc.). Forr mann ne maȝ noht unnderrfenn þatt god þatt iss inn heoffne *But ȝif þatt he be clennessed* etc. (5470.).

But that is rarer, although favoured by a few writers. Old-Engl.: No straungere comethe before him, *but that he makethe him sum promys and graunt* (MAUNDEV. p. 40.). No man schalle come before no prynce *but that he be better* (ib.). Thei knowe wel, that that myghte not be, *but that God lovethe it more than any other thing* (p. 165.). There nys no table, *but that it is worthe an huge tresour of gode* (p. 218. cf. 312. 313.). Salle non finde encheson þorgh quaintise to say, *Bot þat ȝe be allc boun with me to wende þat way* (LANGT. II. 291.). Ther xal be neyther kayser nere kynge. *But that I xal hem down dyng* (COV. MYST. p. 183.). Sentences like Anglosax: Deoƿ ne cymð būton þāt he stele (JOH. 10. 10.), do not belong here, the particle þāt having its particular final meaning, and arising through the contraction of two sentences. Gr.: οὐκ ἐρχεται, εἰ μὴ ἔρα κλέψῃ (see 9 extr.).

- c. With interrogative principal sentences, at the root of which lies the supposition of a negative answer, so that the question itself receives the logical meaning of a negative sentence, *but* is likewise in its place.

For *who* lived king, *but I could dig his grave?* SHAKSP., III Henry VI. 5. 2.). *What* boded this, *but well forewarning wind Did seem to say*, — Seek not a scorpion's nest (II Henry VI.

3, 2.). *Where's* the distance throws me back so far, *but I may boldly speak*, Tho' proud oppression will not hear me? OTWAY, Venice Preserv. 1, 1.) *What* can oppose us then *but we may tame?* (SOUTHERN, Oroon. 3, 2.). The subject of the principal sentence which is called in question, where at the same time it must be that of the dependent sentence, is not then resumed: *Who finds the heifer dead . . . And sees fast by a butcher with an axe, But will suspect 'twas he that made the slaughter?* (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 3, 2.), and the dependent sentence is immediately contracted with the subject of the incomplete principal sentence: *What day, what hour, but knocks at human hearts*, To wake the soul to sense of future scenes? (YOUNG, N. T. 7, 2.) *Who but must mourn*, while these are all at rage, *The degradation of our vaunted stage?* (BYRON p. 322.), with which compare the denied subject before *but*: *Not a soul But felt a fever of the mad* (SHAKSP., Temp. 1, 2.).

We must distinguish the support of the dependent by the interrogative sentence generally, and the immediate reference of the particle *but* to an interrogative word. The latter was formerly found chiefly in the incomplete dependent sentence. The further development of the use of *but* with interrogative sentences is annexed partly to its combination with sentences, partly to its appearance with a few members of sentences. The connection of the exceptive sentence with interrogative sentences is moreover in use in Anglosax.: *Cvyst þu dēms ðre æ ænigne man, būton hyne man ære gehyre?* (JOH. 7, 51.) *Hū mæg man in-gān on stranges hūs and hys fata hyne bereāfjan, būton he gebinde ærest pone strangan?* (MATH. 12, 29.) *Hvāt mæg ic dōne būtan me God visige?* (GRN. 41, 16.). In such sentences as: *Hvāt magon we secgean būton þāt hi scotedon sviðe?* ((SAX. CHR. 1083.) *þāt* introduces the objective sentence to *secgean*.

- d. The frequent use of the particle *but* before a member of a sentence or an incomplete sentence rests upon the abbreviation and contraction of sentences. The particle answering to the Lat. *nisi*, *praeter*, in this case often touches the preposition *but*, from which, through the obliteration of the case forms of nouns, it cannot be always with certitude distinguished.
- a. As to the employment of *but* with affirmative sentences or determinations comp. Vol. II. 1. p. 466. It may pass for a conjunction in: In a time of revolt and abrogation of all Law *but Cannon Law* (= but of Cannon Law) (CARLYLE, Fr. Revol. 3, 2, 2.); and so before adjectives and participles after *all* (*tantum non*): When breath *was all but flown* (SCOTT, Field of Waterl. 7.). The fine arts were *all but proscribed* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 80.). Here belongs the combination of *but* with a preposition, mostly *for*, by which the member conditioning the exception is introduced, which also occurs with negative sentences: The sweat of industry would dry, and die *But for the end* it works to (SHAKSP., Cymb. 3, 6.). Folly . . . Has made . . . Our arch of empire, *steadfast but for you*, A mutilated structure, soon to fall (COWP., p. 183.). It was a legacy his father left, *Who, but for Foscari*, had reigned in Venice (ROGERS, It., Foscari.). He would have put me into the hands of the

Prince of Orange, *but for God's special providence* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. III. 323.). A look that, *but for its quiet*, would have seemed disdain (BULW., Caxtons 15, 1.). Far less than this is shocking in a race Most wretched, *but from streams of mutual love*; And uncreated, *but for love divine* (YOUNG, N. Th. 3, 205.). — My care was wholly bent you, To find the happy means of your deliverance, Which *but for Hartings' death* I had not gain'd (ROWE, J. Shore 5, 1.).

Old-Engl.: For all shall be fordene that lif in land *bot ye* (TOWN. M. p. 23.). I myself wold kylle hym *Bot for Sir Pylate* (p. 207.). Halſax.: Hit likede wel þan kinge *buten for ane ping* (LAJAM. III. 264.). Anglosax.: Se is æthvām freond . . *būtan dracan anum* (GREIN, Ags. Poes. I. 233.) Gyf hvā þonne of þære ðære mægðe vrace dō on ænigum ðōrrum men *būtan on þām rihthanddædan*, si he geſāh við þone cyning (LEGG. EADM. 1.)

β. In regard to negative determination in the principal sentence *but* frequently is in the same predicament as *nisi*: For *never but once more* was either like To meet so great a foe (MILT. P. L. 2, 721.). The truth . . Though *not but by the Spirit* understood (12, 513.). What we cannot *but* consider as his error (MACAUL., Essays III. 1.). They cannot *but judge of him under the deluding influence of friendship* (III. 3.).

The simple *but* is certainly equivalent to *but* with a negation preceding, in the meaning of *nonnisi*. This isolated *but* evidently supposes a suppressed thought, which is to be regarded as a negative one, or, atleast, as one to be restricted: Erect his statue then and worship it, And make my image *but an alehouse sign* (SHALSP., II Henry VI. 3, 2.). Oaths are *but words*, and words *but wind* (BUTL., Hud. 1, 2, 107.). Rosano who *but now* escap'd the garden (ROWE, Fair Penit. 4, 1.). The first of poets was, alas! *but man* (BYRON p. 318.). The proudest royal houses are *but of yesterday*, when compared with the line of Supreme Pontiffs (MACAUL., Essays IV. 98.). The operation of *but* is in these cases equivalent to that of *not but*.

The reference to a negation in members with *but* is very frequent in all ages. Old-Engl.: Þer was *no kyng bote he* (R. or GL. I. 108.). Þe kyng nas *bute a schade* (I. 107.). *Ȝe ne konne noȝt bote ſe* (I. 100.). Crist dede *nothinge* to us *but effectuely in weye of mercy* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 42.). He cometh *noȝt but ofte* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 309.). Halſax.: Nu nabbe we of þan londe *buten þene west ende* (LAJAM. III. 273.). Iugenes ne leouede *buten seouen zeren* (I. 291.). Nes hit *buten lutel wile* (I. 70.). Anglosax. Þær ic ne gehȳrde *būtan hlīmanan sæ* (COD. EXON. 307.). Hig nāfdon on scype mid him, *būton ænne hlāf* (MARC. 8, 14.). Nis hēr nān þīn (þīng) *būton Godes hūs* (GEN. 28, 17.). Ne ādrifð þes deōfu ūt *būton purh Belzebug* (MATH. 12, 24.).

But in the meaning *nonnisi*, is likewise not to be far pursued. Old-Engl.: „Mid how many knyȝtes ys he come?“ Þe oþer aȝeyn seyde, „Madame *bute mid o mon*.“ (R. or GL. I. 35.). He lyued *bot a moneth* (LANGT. I. 13.). That thou tellest . . Is *but a tale of Waltrout* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 377.). Rychard wol do yow *but good* (RICH. C. DE L. 1575.). We dy *but oones* (TOWN. M. p. 265.). The notions *nisi*, tan-

tum and *sed* pass into each other in *but* (See p. 358); How all touch one another is shewn by passages like: Halfsax.: *Leode nere par name ne wapmen ne wifmen, buten westize pædes (only desert paths?)* (LAȜAM. I. 48.). Anglosax.: *Ðæt ne vāt ænig monna cynnes būtan metod ðna* (Cod. Exon. 223, 6.). Old-Fries.: *Thā stifne nēt nēn manniska būta god al éna* (RIEGER, Alt- u. Ags. Leseb. p. 213.). The exceptional case makes, at the same time, an opposition, appearing in the context as a limitation to one notion.

- γ. In regard to an interrogative sentence, regard is often had to the interrogative word by *but* with a member of a sentence.

Whom should I obey but thee? (MILT., P. L. 865.). *Where lies the fault but on you in Vienna?* (COLER., Picc. 1, 4.) *Say where greatness lies . . . Where but among the heroes and the wise* (POPE, Essay on M. 4, 217.). *Who but I can seal the lips of those below in my secret?* (BULW., Caxtons 15, 1.)

Old-Engl.: *Who folwith Cristes Gospel and his lore But we?* (CHAUC., C. T. 7517.). Anglosax.: *Hvā mæg synna forgifan būton God ðna?* (MARC. 2, 5. *Hvāt sindan þā gimmas svā scýne būton god sylfa?* (Cod. Exon. 43, 26.)

8. *Without*, as a particle for the dependent sentence, serves in a more limited measure to introduce a case with which the principal sentence is irreconcilable.

„Are all these things perceived in me?“ . . . „*Without you were so simple, non else would.*“ (SHAKSP., Two Gentlem. 2, 1.) The boys would not walk with me *without they were ordered* (MARRYAT, J. Faithf. 1, 4.). You will not enjoy health, *without you use much exercise* (WEBST. v.). This form is a favourite in the mouth of the people: *Thae corbies dinna gather without they smell currier* (SCOTT, R. Roy 18.).

As the Anglosax. prepositon *būtan* has frequently been replaced by *without*, this might also represent *but* as a particle of the sentence, as happened in Old-Engl.: The frosty grove and cold must be my bedde, *Without ye list gour grace and mercy shewe* (CHAUC., Court of L. 979.). *Withoutt I have a vengyng* I may lyf no langer (TOWN. M. p. 146.). *Modyr on erthe was nevyr non cler Withouth sche had in byrth travayle* (Cov. Mstr. p. 151.). This may brede to a confusyon, *Withoute God make a good conclusyon* (SKELTON I. 48.). See the prepos. *but* II. 1. See 466.

9. Another substitute for *but* is offered by *save, saving* (*that, except, excepting (that)*), wherewith also may be reckoned the expression of reservation, *reserved*, and the like.

He should have liv'd *Save that his riotous youth, with dangerous sense, might in time to come have ta'en revenge* (SHAKSP., Meas. I. Meas. 4, 4.). Dark was the vaulted room . . . *Save that before a mirror, huge and high, A hallow'd taper shed a glimmering light* (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 6, 17.). And — *saving that his face is to be noted Looking at hers* . . . — my sharp household eyes Have fir'd on no confusion of his making LEIGH HUNT, Leg. of Flor. 1, 2.). — Who preferreth peace More than I do — *except I be provoked* (SHAKSP., I Henry VI. 3, 1.). *Except I conceived very worthily of her, thou shouldst not have her* (BEN JONS., Ev. Man in his Hum. 4, 3.). In this poet the comic form *outcept* also occurs: *Outcept a man were a post-horse, I have not known the like of it* (Tale of a Tub 2, 1.). Thou couldest have no power at all against me,

except it were given thee from above (JOHN 19, 11.) [Comp.: Old-English: no but it were ȝouen to pee. WYCL. ib. Anglosax.: *búton* hyt være pe ufan geseald. ib.] No man can do these miracles . . except God be with him (3, 2. cf. MATTH. 12, 29. etc.). It was a fine April morning (excepting that it had snowed hard the night before . .) SCOTT, Bl. Dwarf 1.). „Shall our condition stand?“ — „It shall: Only reserv'd, you claim no interest In any of our towns of garrison.“ (SHAKSP., I Henry VI. 5, 4.) — Save and except are often used before members of sentences and before other dependent sentences with which, like *but* and other conjunctions, they enter into no immediate combination Where was the sin . . save in wealth? (WARREN, Diary 2, 5.). Bread not to be had except by ticket from the Mayor (CARLYLE, Fr. Revol. 3, 2, 2.). No Norman or Breton ever saw a Mussulman, except to give and receive blows (MACAUL., Essays IV. 106.). — Till now he hath Said nothing, save that all shall die (BYRON, Cain 2, 2.). Forgetfulness I sought in all, save where 'tis to be found (Manfr. 2, 1.). No noise is heard, Save when the rugged bear and the gaunt wolf Howl in the upper region (ROGERS, It., Banditti.). The moon went down; and nothing now was seen Save where the lamp of a Madonna shone Faintly — or heard, but when he spoke, who stood Over the lantern (ID., Gondola.).

In Old-Engl. *saf* (*save*) *that*, is earliest met with, then also *saving that*, as the prepositional *saf*, *salf*, *sauf*, formerly was diffused as *except*: Thei ben fulle resonable . . *saf that thei worschipen an ox for here god* (MAUNDEV. p. 196.). Thei taken the nexte of hire kyn to hire wyfes, *saf only that thei out taken hire modres etc.* p. 246.). Te Deum was our song, and nothing ellis . . *Save that to Crist I sayd an orisoun* (CHAUC., C. T. 7447.). Of the phenix kynde; Of whose incynerycyon There ryseth a new crecyon Of the same facyon Without alteracyon, *Sauyng that olde age Is turned into corage Of fresche youtþ agayne* (SKELTON I. 67.). — *Save* is also used with a few members of sentences: I were noght worthi . . To werien any clothes . . *Save for shame one* To covey my careyne (P. PLOUGHM. p. 293.). Of moo londres than ony can telle *Save he* that made hevене and helle (RICH. C. DE L. 4939.).

Anglosax. has other particles for the notion *nisi*, which stand with complete sentences and members of sentences, as *nefne*, *nemne* and *nymðe*, *nymðe* (whether = ne gif ne, ne gif þe, Comp. Goth. niba. nibai, Old-Highduth nibu, nobu, Old-Sax. neba, nebo, nebu along with newan, nowan, Middle-Highduth niuwan): Þone Grendel ær mæne æcvealde, svá he hira mǽ volde, *nefne him vitig God Vyrð forstóde* (BRØV. 2113.). Hū sceal min cuman gæst tō georce *nemne ic Gode sylle hýrsumne hige* (COD. EXON. 124, 10.). For hvon væst þu veán . . *nymðe þu æppel ænne byrgdest of þam yudubeáme* (CÆDM. 873.). Hvytle Israēla ēce hælu syleð of Sione *nymðe sylfa God?* (Ps. 52, 7.).

That *bútan* in Anglosax. like the particles abovenamed, may precede other dependent sentences, with which it does not immediately combine so that a contraction of two dependent sentences arises, is clear from the following instances: Svylce eac is vide cūð ymb preo and tvá peoðum gevelhvær his cyme Kalend ceorlum and eorlum, *bútan pænne bises geboden veorðe feorðan geære* (MÆNOL. 29.). Fægerre leóht þonne ve æfre ær eágum gesávon, *búton þá ve mid englum uppe væron* (CÆDM. II. 390.).

10. As to the employment of *though* in the conditional sentence, as

well as that of *if* in the concessive sentence, see the Concessive Sentence I.

The Concessive Sentence.

To the hypothetical relation in the widest sentence belongs also the concessive sentence. The concession has the character of a condition granted, whose presumptive consequence is, however, denied by the principal sentence: Hence forms recur here which belong also to the conditional sentence. The principal sentence forms an adversative sentence to which an adversative particle is also frequently given, See p. 389.

- 1, a. The principal particle of the concessive dependent sentence is *though* (*tho'*, *thof*, in popular dialects) or strengthened *although* (*altho'*), Anglosax. *peðh*, also *péh*, Old-Norse *pó* Goth. *pauhjabai*, *svepauh ei*, See p. 362.

Though thou liv'st and breath'st, Yet art thou slain in him (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 1, 2.). *Tho' women first were made for men*, Yet men were made for them agen (BUTL., Hud., The Lady's Answ. 239.). *Though, like the surgeon's hand, yours gave me pain*, Yet it has cured my blindness, and I thank you (LONGFELLOW I. 179.). *Though it has never put a scrap of gold or silver in my pocket*, I believe that it has done me good (DICKENS, Christm. Car. 1.). There are few men, *though I say it*, within twelve mile of the place to handle a fever better (FIELD, J. Andr. 1, 14.). *Though I say it*, she is . . the handsomest thing in the country (BOURCICAULT, Lond. Assur. 2.). [This form is ancient: *Though I seye it myself*, I have saved . . Many score thousand. P. PLOUGHM. p. 349. cf. p. 110.] And *tho' the side curls are a little restive* my hind part takes it very kindly (SHERID., Riv. 2, 1.). No shoes, *though it is winter* (CARL., Fr. Revol. 3, 2, 2.). Speak to me! *though it be in wrath* (BYRON, Manfr. 2, 4.). This restriction would make considerable room for such as, *old though they be*, possess to this age all the grace of novelty (SCOTT, Minstrelsy I. 89.). Oh, pardon — pardon! *Wretch, lost wretch though I be* (BULW., Caxtons 15, 1.). *Young though she was*, Madem: Huber was struck with the fervour and the eloquence of her new friend (KAVANAGH, Fr. Wom. of Lett. 21.) The particle also combines with an interrogative principal sentence instead of the dependent sentence: This also thy request with caution ask'd Obtain; *though to recount almighty works What words or tongue of Seraph can suffice?* (MILT., P. L. 7, 111.). Here the sentence with *though* is isolated, as that with *quamquam* in Latin detaches itself from the construction, in order to effect with a question a limitation of what precedes: Egredere . . *quamquam quid ego te invitem* . . ? (CIC., Cat., 1, 9.)

The amplified form *although* is not exactly felt as a strengthening: *Although the duke was enemy to him*, Yet he, most Christian-like, laments his death (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 3, 2.). *Although the imp might not be slain*, And *though the wound soon heal'd again*, Yet, as he ran, he yell'd for pain (SCOTT, K. Minst. 4, 15.). *Al-*

though a woman be not actually in love, she seldom hears without a blush the name of a man whom she might love (COOPER, *Spy* 4.). The truth is that, *although he felt very anxious, he was too much confused . . . to make any further inquiries just then* (DICKENS, *Ol. Twist* 20.).

The simple particle, which has assumed very various shapes, is the oldest of the two forms coming under consideration here, answering in usage to the Lat. *quamquam, quamvis* Old-Engl.: *peih he cunne of mete, he nele cunne of drinke* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., *Rel. Ant.* I. 131.). *Pei pou be in oper clothes, pi ryjte nys not þer downe* (R. OF GL. I. 105.). And þe some þut, *pe he were screwe, þen fader wel vnderstod* (II. 383.). Constantine þis vnderstod, *heþene pai he were* (I. 86.). Ac ys herte was eueres god, *þong þei he were* (I. 167.). *Þah anker on hire servanz for openliche gildes leie penitence, to preost noðere latere shriven ham ofte* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., *Rel. Ant.* II. 5.). Richard, *thah thou be ever trichard, trichen shalt thou never more* (WRIGHT, *Polit.* S. p. 69.). And theȝ Adam . . . hadde bi-gonne anon, *Tho he was furst y-maked, toward hevene gon . . . He nadde nojt þut to hevene i-come* (Pop. Treat. p. 134. cf. p. 136.). But hadden lever gon by londe, *they that hyt be more payne* (MACNDEV. p. 126.). Ich habbe i-loved the moni þer, *Thau I nabbe nout ben her Mi love to shoue* (WRIGHT, *Anecd.* p. 4. cf. p. 5.). *Thow that Mary Magdalyn in Cryst dede some beleve, And I was longe doweþful, jitt putt me in no blame* (Cov. MYST. p. 376.). *Thowe the wey nevyr so wykked were, On hys wey gan he fare* (TORRENT 154.). *Thof he be myn righte haire . . . Goddes bydyng shalle I not spare* (TOWN. M. p. 38.). *Þar-in he sal his birth abide þof he be in prisun bunden* (ANTICR. 62.). *Thoughe thei wolden putten hem into that see, thei ne wysten never, where that thei scholde arryven* (MACNDEV. p. 266.). *Though for fayling of good His felawe shulde sterve, He wolde nought lenen hym a peny* (P. PLOUGH. p. 494.). Halfsax.: *Þa com his lifes ende lað þah him were* (LAJAM. I. 11.). Ich mai sugge hu hit iwarð, *wunder þæh hit punche* (II. 531.). Me con bi þan læfe lasinge suggen, *peh he weore þe bezste mon þe æuere æt at borde* (II. 542.). *Þohh þatt he se þe lape gast, Niss he riht noht forræredd* (ORM. 679.). Anglosax.: *Þeah ic God ne ondræde . . . þeah . . . ic vrece hig* (LUC. 8. 4. 5.). *Þeah þe hg ealle geunþreowsjon on þe, ic næfre ne geunþrovsige* (MATH. 26. 33.). *Þeah ve vëpon on æfen, he gedéd þæt ve hlihhað on morgen* (PS. 29. 5.). Ic þe sylle svā hvāt svā þu me bitst, *þeah þu ville healf min rice* (MARC. 6. 23.). Ac þencað yfel þeah hi hvilum tela cvečen (PS. 11. 2.). As to the opposition of *þeah* — *peah*, svā *peah*, in Halfsax. *þohh (patt)* See p. 362.).

all (al) contained in *although*, was subsequently readily taken into the concessive sentence; Comp. below *alle if*. It is the same particle as also supports the idea of concession in *albeit* (See c.). It is sometimes placed after *though*: *Þof alle þat he werred in wo & in strife, þe foure & twenty houres he spenden in holy life* (LANGT. I. 23.). Since the fourteenth century *alle though* is frequent. For *alle thought it were so, that he was not cristend, yet he lovede Cristene men* (MACNDEV. p. 84.). And *alle thoughte he were a payneem, naþeles he served wel god* (p. 151. cf. 160. 266.). Som wikke aspect . . . Hath given us this, *although we hadde it sworn* (CHAUC., C. T. 1089.). [This concessive dependent sentence often appears formally in the meaning of „in spite of all.“ Nede he mot swynde *thah he hadde swore* (WRIGHT, *Polit.* S. p. 150.)] Be blithe, *although thou ryde upon a jade* (CHAUC., C. T. 16298.). Torrent thether toke the way *Werry allethow he were* (TORRENT 224.). *To me although it were promised Of laureat Phebus holy eloquence. All were to lytell for his magnificene* (SKELTON I. 12.).

- b. But *though* is employed where there is no question of any concession, rather taking the place of the conditional *if*. This especially happens in the combinations of *as though*, *what though* (*although*), which directly in interchange with *as if*, *what if*.

If she do bid me pack, I'll give her thanks, *As though she bid me stay by her a week* (SHAKSP., *Taming* 2, 1.). A Tartar of the Ukraine breed, Who look'd *as though the speed of thought Were in his limbs* (BYRON, *Mazeppa*). Like saints that at the stake expire, And lift their raptured looks on high, *As though it were a joy to die* (ib.). *What tho' the sickle, sometimes keen, Just scars us we reap the golden grain?* (YOUNG, *N. Th.* 3, 503.) see p. 456. It is, however, to be observed that in the latter case is not always purely conditional.

Though was also formerly found for *if* in a similar combination. Old-Engl.: Away they gan flyng fare, *Also theygh hit nought no ware* (ALIS. 4602.). *As though the world above and undyr Scholde falle* — so ferde the soun (RICH. C. DE L. 5590.). *Lovelyche to serven uchon othur, as thaugh they were syster and brother* (HALLIW., *Freemas* 351). It shalle falle to the botme of the vesselle, *as though it were quyksyloer* (MAUNDEV. p. 52.). Ye loke *as though the woode were ful of theys* (CHAUC., *C. T.* 7755.). So too in Hallsax.: *De king læi in his bædde, alse peah he ne mihte libben* (LAJAM. I. 285.). *Seoððen he sæt stille, alse peh he wolde of worlde icwiten* (II. 298. cf. I. 80. 284.). *though* was in general often used in ancient times, where the conditional, and even the interrogative *if* also has its place. Thus its stands in the Dependent Sentence with the notion of astonishment and Surprise. Old-Engl.: Or hym no schulde not wondry, *pay heo dude here myzt With here bodies* (R. OF GL. I. 12.). *Wondreth nought . . . Though that I speake of love to you* (CHAUC., *Troil.* a. Cres. 5, 163.). No wonder *thez hit smyte harde ther hit doth alihte* (WRIGHT, *Pop. Treat.* p. 136.). No wonder was was *thoffe hym wer wo* (SIM AMADAS 302. cf. ALIS. I. 120. WRIGHT, *Polit. S.* p. 340. (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., *Rel. Ant.* II. 54.). *Comp. Mod. - Engl.: I wonder, if Titania be awak'd* (SHAKSP., *Midst. N. Dr.* 3, 2. cf. 5, 1). This construction originates with the Anglosax.: *Nis hit nan vundor peah pu ný gôd and ic yfel* (Ps. 50, 6.). It is evident that the concessive shade of meaning is then weak. But *if* is also represented by *though*. Old-Engl.: *Ac theygh the merchaunt sette out his ware In the stret, and away fare*, *Amorwe, yef he come ther ageyn, Al away he shal fynde hit clene* (ALIS. 7077.). In Hallsaxon *peh* introduces the interrogative sentence: *Nute we on liue peh he heo nabbe to wife* (LAJAM. III. 18.). Anglosax. sometimes introduces the decidedly conditional sentence by *peah*: *Gif se bonda, ær he deað være, beclýpde være þonne andvirdan yrfenuman, svâ he sylf sceolde, peah he lif hæfde* (LEGG, *Cæc.* I. B. 70).

- c. Conversely the conditional sentence with *if* (*an*) may take the place of the concessive sentence, if the form of the principal sentence makes this known as an adversative sentence, or the context renders the adversative relation clear.

And if the devil come and roar for them, I will not send them (SHAKSP., *I Henry IV.* 1, 3.). *If your inside be never so beautiful you must preserve a fair outside also* (FIELD., *T. Jon.* 3, 7.). Which, *if not victory is revenge* (MILT., *P. L.* 2, 105.). He was nevertheless greatly respected, *if little loved by wife, children and friends* (LEWES, *G. I.* 11.). The gates were thrown open, and a well-armed, *if undisciplined*, multitude poured forth (BULW., *Rienzi* 2,

8.). My employers are enough to glut your rage *an you were a tiger* (4, 5.).

Old-Engl.: He þat bileueþ into me, *þe if he schal be deade*, schal lyue (WYCL. Joh. 11, 25.). Anglosax.: *Deah* he deað sý, *If we make never siche care*, His lyfe may we not wyn (TOWNS. M. p. 280). This commaundement must I nedes fulfille, *If that my hert wax hevy as leyde* (p. 36 sq.). To sir Pilate, *if he be wode*, Thus dar I say (p. 265.). „Sir, ye ar a prelate.“ — „So may I welle seme, *Myself if I say it.*“ p. 197.) [comp. *though I say it.* 1, a.)

alle, *al* is also added to the particle *if*, *ʒif*, as well as to the conjunction (see 1, a.), whereby the concessive nature of the sentence is denoted from the first *Alle* sometimes follows *if*, as it does *though*: And *ʒif alle it be so*, that men seyn, that this crowne is of thornes, ʒee schalle understonde, that it was of jonkes of the see (MAUNDEV. p. 13.). — Y wyl make ʒow no weyn carpyng, *Alle ʒif hit myzte som men lyke* (MS. in HALLIW. v. cf. ib. all-hool). Bot ye ne wold Her trow for good or ille, *the truthe alle if she told* (TOWNS. M. p. 297.). *Alle if he were the prince of peace* Therfor my sorow haves no releace (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 127.). Eche man may sorow . . This lordes death, whose pere is hard to fynd, *Alȝife Englund and Fraunce were thorow saught* (SKELTON l. 12. — In Anglo-saxon the meaning of *although* belongs to *gif* only where the real presence of an action becomes a condition. See p. 456.

2. The compound particle *albeit*, formerly also *albe*, which is nothing but the conjunctive sentence *be it* introduced by *all*, is still in use, though obsolescent, and a substantive sentence with or without that follows it. The adverbial *all*, omnino, properly denotes the complete concession of the thing.

Albe her guiltlesse conscience her cleared She fled into the wilderness (SPENS., F. Qu. 3, 6, 11. cf. 6, 3, 42. 6, 4, 39 etc.). *Albeit we swear a voluntary zeal, and unurged faith To your proceedings*; yet, believe me, prince I am not glad etc. (SHAKSP., John 5, 2.). *Albeit the world thinks Machiavel is dead*, yet was his soul but flown beyond the Alps (MARLOWE, Jew of M. Prol.). Even bearded knights . . Share in his frolic gambols bore, *Albeit their hearts, of rugged mould, Were stubborn* (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 1, 19. cf. 4, 9.). If this thou dost accord, *albeit A heavy doom 'tis thine to meet*, That doom shall half absolve thy sin (BYRON, Siege 21.). The poor keen air abroad, *Albeit it breathed no scent of herb, nor heard Love-call of bird nor merry hum of bee*, Was not the air of death (BRYANT p. 23.).

In Anglosax. concessive dependent sentences introduced with *alle*, *al*; were in use as periphrastic forms of a simple particle: *alle be it (that)*, *alle be it so that*, *alle were it so that* in use: And *alle be it that men clepen it a see*, ʒit is it nouthen see ne arm of the see (MAUNDEV. p. 115.). So that thei han many gode articles of oure feythe, *alle be it that thei have no parfitte lawe and feythe* (p. 136.). For *alle be it that this longe not to me*, Yet on my backe I bere suche lewde delynge (SKELTON l. 47.). But absens . . Abashyth me *albeit I have no nede* (l. 26.). And *alle be it so, that it be drye*, natheles ʒit he berethe gret vertue (MAUNDEV. p. 69. cf. 158. 184. 231.). And *alle were it so that he was payneme* . . ʒit God of his grace closed the mountaynes to gydre (p. 265.). The particle *all* appears in many other sentences: *Al be her herte wel nigh to-broke*, No word of pride ne grame she spoke (LAY LE FREINE 347.). That if so were that eny thing him smerte, *Al were it never so litel*, and I it wist,

Me thought I felte deth at myn hert twist (CHAUC., C. T. 10877.). His sacrifice he dede . . with alle circumstances *Al telle, I nat as now his observances* (2264.). Be not my fo, *All can I not to you . . Complain a right*, for I am yet to lere (Troil. a Cres 5, 160.). This usage agrees with that of the Middle-Highdutch *al: Al si ich niht ein künegin, ich wil ouch an der suone sin* (TRIST. 10535.). *Al ne wären sie niht riche sie wärn doch guote knehte* (ENSLER 4563). We may also compare the Ital. *tuttoché* and the Fr. *tout . . que*.

The form *for all (that)*, occasionally occurring, leaves it doubtful whether *all* is to be taken as the object to *for* or in immediate combination with the dependent sentence. Mod.-Engl.: Yet, on my conscience, there are verier knaves desire to live, *for all he be a Roman* (SHAKSP., Cymb. 5, 4.).

Old-Engl.: Non oper nolde hym crowne, *for al that þe erl bed* (R. or GL. I. 106.). Comp. the prepos. *for* II. 1. p. 438.

Howbeit (that) is occasionally employed like *albeit*, although we otherwise find it used as an adversative particle. (See p. 363.). Mod.-Engl.: The Moor — *howbeit that I endure him not* — Is of a constant, loving, noble nature (SHAKSP., Oth. 2, 1).

Old-Engl.: But ther was fals packing, or els I am begylde; *How be it the mater was eydynt and playne* (SKELTON I. 9.). Here, moreover, *how be it* may be taken adversatively. The transition of this compound particle into the meaning of the adversative nevertheless may be compared with the employment of the Lat. *etsi, quamquam*, which, detached from the construction, come at the the beginning of sentences which may be regarded principal sentences. The same also takes place occasionally with *albeit*.

Mod.-Engl.: *Albeit . . the people of the east country . . gathered together into a mighty conclave* (IVRING, Hist. of N.-York 4, 7.).

3. The concessive sentence is occasionally introduced by *notwithstanding*.

And you did wisely and honestly too, *notwithstanding she is the greatest beauty in the parish* (FIELD., J. Andr. 4, 2.). Of the 3000 l. . . little more than half remained — and this, *notwithstanding we had practised the most rigid economy in our household expenditure* (WARREN, Diary 1, 1.).

Old-Engl.; And therefore was I cast out into helle ful lowe, *Notwythstandyng I was the fayrest and berere of lyth* (Cov. MYST. p. 239.). The employment of the particle answers to that of the Old-Fr.: *nonobstant que* see my Syntax of the Mod.-Fr. language II. 181.

4. Sentences with inverted subject, whose verb of the predicate gives to the sentence, through the conjunctive with reference to an adversative principal sentence, the character of concession, are frequently used as concessive sentences.

Were he my brother . . I make a vow, Such neighbour nearness to our sacred blood Should nothing privilege him (SHAKSP., Rich. II 1, 1.). *Even were I disposed*, I could not gratify the reader with any thing like a fair sketch of the early days of Mr. E. (WARREN, Diary I. 18.). In all human movements, *were they but a day old*, there is order, or the beginning of order (CARLYLE, Fr. Revol. 3, 1, 1.). None can hear him, *cry he ne'er so loud* (MARLOWE, Jew of M. 4, 2.). Governing persons, *were they never so insignificant intrinsically*, have for most part plenty of Memoir-writers (CARLYLE, Fr. Revol. 3, 1, 1.). *Be he as he will*, yet once ere night I will embrace him with a soldier's arm (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 5, 2.). Yet doe I what I could, I had aboue fiftie in the company (KEMP.

Nine Daies Wonder p. 6.). Varney's communications, *be they* what they might, were operating in his favour (SCOTT, Kenilw. 16.). Here also belong the sentences with an anticipated subject of the second dependent sentence. *Do all we can*, women will believe us (GAY, Begg. Op. 2, 2.). Bring them back to me, *cost* what it may (COLERR., Wallenst. 2, 4.). See Vol. II. p. 30.

Old-Engl.: So þat pys Macolm, *nere he no so prout*, Dude kyng Wyllam omage (R. or GL. II. 388. And suor ys more op To be yecrouned wyþoute hym, *nere hym no so lop* (I. 242.). Shrift of mouthe sleeth synne *Be it never so dedly* (P. PLOUGH. p. 279.). Halfsax.: Comen þer heo comen, sæuere heo heom slojen (LAJAM. II. 144.). Anglosax.: Nān man ne dorste sleān ðærne man, *nāfde he nāfre svā mycel yfel gedōn við þone ðærne* (SAX. CHR. 1087.). *Være þær he være, þonne vās he mid his āgenum cynne* (BODM. 5, 1.). *Hycge svā he ville, ne māg verig-mōd vyrde við* (COD. EXON. 287, 15.).

5. Disjunctive sentences, with or without being combined by particles, may be used in the concessive sense, when the exclusive members are conceded in such a manner that no decision is come to, as to a valid one. Both indicative and the conjunctive may here have a place.

If the man go to this water, and drown himself, it is *will he nill* he, he goes (SHAKSP., Haml. 5, 1.). And *will you nill you*, I will marry you (Taming 2, 1.). Dialectically *willy-nilly* (DIAL. OF CRAVEN II. 261.). For likest gods they seem'd *Stood they or mov'd* (MILT., P. L. 6, 301.). *Be it so or not*, No other Spirit in this region hath a soul like his (BYRON, Manfr. 2, 4.). I'll be your servant, *Whether you will or no* (SHAKSP., Temp. 3, 1.). Do you believe Your image . . Follows me not *Whether I wake or sleep?* (SHELLEY, Cenci 1, 2.). The Domine loved a pun, *whether it was let off in English, Greek, or Latin* MARRYAT, J. Faithf. 1, 3.).

Old-Engl.: *Woltou multou hit wol spille* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 110. cf. 194.). *Wilthow nylthow thou shalt agayne* (IPOMYDON 1486.). *Wol he nul he*, ded he is (ALIS. 2317.). *Ben ye sele, ben ye wrothe*, Ynde and Perce buth myn bothe (7430. cf. 7242.). 4 clerkes, that writen alle, that the emperour seythe, *be it good, be it evylle* (MAUNDEV. p. 218.). It behovethe, that anon at the firste sight . . *be it in wyndowe, or in what place elles*, that men knele to him (p. 40. cf. 74.). For þoure coming ich am glad, ho so ow hider ladde, *were yt God, were yt oþer* (R. or GL. I. 113.). It fel that . . *Were it by aventure or destene*, . . Palamon . . brak his prisoun (CHAUC., C. T. 1464. cf. 1510.). Þou salle wende with me, *wudere þou wille or non* (LANGT. II. 292.). But *wethyr wee have les or more*, Alwaye thanke we God therefore (SIR CLEGGES 220.). *Wheder that he be blithe or wrothe*, To dele my good is me fulle lothe (TOWNS. M. p. 11. cf. 214.). Halfsax.: *Weore heom lef, weore heom lað*, alle heo sworn þene að (LAJAM. II. 415. cf. I. 272. III. 142.). Anglosax.: He sceolde . . bletsōn him tō biscop *volde he nolde he* (SAX. CHR. 1114.). He volde þurh his micle viles þear [pær] beōn, *vær hit twelfmōnð ðære mære* 1128.).

6. Generalized sentences with pronouns originally interrogative, and the adverbs derived from them, to which *ever*, *soever*, formerly also merely *so*, is added, are concessive dependent sentences if an adversative judgment stands opposed to the totality of the cases propounded, and it is valid in spite of them. The generalization

is not in itself concessive: the concession is not indicated by the conjunctive merely.

Whose hands soever lanc'd their tender hearts, Thy head, all indirectly, gave direction SHAKSP., Rich. III. 4, 4.). *Whatever the stars may have betokened*, this August 1749 was a momentous month to Germany (LEWES, G. I. 15.). I think it very insulting, *whatever it may be* (BOURCICAULT, Lond. Assur. 4.). I shall be happy, *whatever befalls us* (BULW., Caxtons 11, I.). *Whate'er he be*, 'twas not what he had been (BYRON, Lara 1, 5.). I am an old fool . . . *whichever way we look at it* (BULW., Caxtons 3, 4.). *How in my words soever she be shent*, To give them seals never, my soul, consent! SHAKSP., Haml. 3, 2.). *How sincerely Soever I return back to my duty*, It will no longer help me (COLER., Picc. 4, 3.). *Howe'er it be*, it seems to me. 'Tis only noble to be good (TENNYSON p. 128.). *Howe'er deserv'd her doom might be*, Her treachery was truth to me (BYRON, Giaour). As to sentences of the determination of place and time with *where*, *when soever*, *ever* See p. 426 and 430.

Old-Engl.: For þoure coming ich am glad, *ho so ow hider ladde* (R. or GL. I. 113.). *Whom so ye hate*, as beth not wroth with me (CHACC., Troil. a. Cres. 5, 145.). And *whomsoever that I commaunde to ben slayn*, that anon he be slayn (MAUNDEV. p. 254.). *Whatsomever they be* hougely they crye (Cov. MYST. p. 395.). Fader and moder, *whatsever they be*, wel ys the chylde that wel the (HALLIW, Freemas. 723.). *How euer blouce the wynde*, Fortune gydeth and ruleth all oure schyppe (SKELTON I. 34.). Halfsax.: An riht god rowwsunng patt Godess peoww, *whasumm itt iss*, Her bereþþ inn hiss heorrtē (ORM. 5563.). *Whasumm itt iss patt ilke mann* patt hafeþþ tweþþenn kirtless, Gife he patt an summ oþerr mann (9291.). *Wha sitt iss* patt heþhedd iss . . . Himm birrþ himm sellfenn . . . laþhenn (2641.). Comp. Vol. II. 1. p. 125 and the Adjective sentence.

7. The modal sentence also takes the place of the concessive sentence if a single predicative or adverbial determination is made prominent, which then precedes the particle *as*. This sort of concession refers especially to relations of fact. This form of sentence is, moreover, not limited to the concessive meaning. See the Modal Sentence.

Fond as we are, and *justly fond of faith*, Reason, we grant, demands our first regard (YOUNG, N. Th. 4. 748.). O! had I once divin'd *false as thou art*, A danger to thy life, I would have dy'd, I would have met it for thee (ROWE, J. Shore 4, 1.). His nose, which, *large as were the others*, bore them down into insignificance (MARRYAT, J. Faithf. 1, 3.). We wish however to avail ourselves of the interest, *transient as it may be*, which this work has excited (MACAUL., Essays I. 3.). *All seraph as he is*, I'd spurn him from me (BYRON, Heaven a. Earth I.). — *Much as he loved his wealth*, Mr. Wharton loved his children better (COOPER, Spy 6.). *Low as the tide has ebb'd with me*, It still reflects to Memory's eye The hour, my brave, my only boy Fell by the side of great Dundee (SCOTT, Ministr. 4, 2.). The Nonconformists, *rigorously as she treated them*, have, as a body, always venerated her memory (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 57.

The modal adverb seldom appears as the correlative of *as*: For

Nature, *as green as she looks*, rests everywhere on dread foundations (CAILL., Fr. Revol. 3, 1, 1.).

In effect that *as* approaches the particle *though*, as the instances cited at p. 470 (young though she was and the like) shew. In the older language, I commonly find *as* with a correlative, where a concessive relation takes place. Old-Engl.: And þut *as gret as urthe ond as lute as heo is*, Ther nis bote the sove del that men wonyeth on (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 137.). Ffor *as mad as I am*, thou; I litill kunne, I cowde it discryve in a fewe wordys (DEPOS. OF RICH. II. p. 5.). *As foule a laser as he was*, The leuedi kist him in that plas (AMIS. A. AMIL. 2161.). *As proud a pohen as ye sprede*, Of me and other ye may haue nede (SKELTON I. 20.). So — *as* stands like *as . . as*: So a fayre body *as bereth hee*, Allas, a coward that he shuld be (IPOMYDON 741.). With these may be compared Old-Fr. turns, like *Si vieux hom com estes et frailes*, Moulit avez anuit esté et quailles (JEAN DE BOVES), likewise the Mod-French concessive sentences *si . . que*. The oldest English tongue presents no support, although the generalizing form with original interrogatives *svá . . svá* is not without affinity.

Svá moreover undertakes in Anglosax. the introduction of a concessive sentence: *Svá he ús ne mág ænige syune gestælan . . he hæfð ús peáh þæs leóhtes bescyrede* CÆDM. 391. Grein).

Dependent Sentences of the Consequence.

The Consecutive Sentence.

The consecutive sentence serves to express the result or effect produced by the action expressed in the principal sentence, without that result's being placed in the intention of the subject denoted by the principal sentence.

1. The particle that is used in the dependent sentence.

- a. *that* is seldom found after an affirmative principal sentence without support by a modal determination.

The birds their notes renew and bleating herds Attest their joy, *that hill and valley rings* (MILT., P. L. 2495.).

That alone was formerly very common in the affirmative consecutive sentence. Old-Engl.: Heo þarkedon hem to gedere, *þat a fair ost it was* (R. OF GL. II. 12.). In water hit wolde gotheli loude, *that fur me schulde hit i-hure* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 135.). With the mouth he made a bere, *That al the halle was aferd* (ALIS. 550. cf. RICH. C. DE L. 233. IPOMYDON 1133.). Hallsax.: Him gunnen glide teores & urnen his ærene *þat his hired-men hit isezen* (LAJAM. II. 109.). And he *þat* treo smat *þat al his clubbe to-draf* (III. 35.). Anglosax.: Ða verp he þā tabulan of his handa *þat hig eall tō burston* (Exon. 31, 19.). Svápeð sige-méce mid þære sviðran hand, *þat on þat deope dāl deðfol gefeallað in sveartne lēg* (Cod. Exon. 93, 24.).

- b. A negative dependent sentence with *that* frequently, however, leans upon a negative principal sentence, and it answers to a Lat. sentence with *quin* and may interchange with a sentence introduced by *but* (*that*). See 464.

I never attempted impudent yet, *that I was not taken down* (GOLDSM., She Stoops 5.). He never opens his mouth *that I don't perspire for the borough* (DOUGL. JERROLD, Bubbles 1.).

No metal ever falls into his hands *that he does not make the most of it* (2.). We never met *that we didn't fight and scratch* (3.). Affirmative dependent Sentences are rare: Yet came my footes never within those doore cheekes . . . *That ever I saw a sorte in such a plight* (GAMM. GURT. NEEDLE 1, 1.).

Negatives principal and dependent sentences were frequently thus united. Old-Engl.: Heye men ne dorste by his day wylde best nyme noȝt, Hare ne wylde swyn, *pat hii nere to ssame ybroȝt* (R. of GL. II. 376.). Wurthe we never for men telde, Sith he hath don thys despite, Yiffe he ageyn passe quyte, *That he ne have frate a knok* (RICH. C. DE L. 488.). They sparyd neythyr lord ne grome, *That they ne dreeven alle adoun* (5774.). Ther durste no wight hand upon him legge, *That he ne swor anon he schuld abegge* (CHAUC., C. T. 3935). Halfsax.: No mihte Cadwaſſlan comen to pissen londe mid nauere nare lisse, *pat Edwine hit muste* (LAJAM. III. 331.). Anglosax.: Ic ne vāt pāt nān gevinna ne māg nānum man beon gevended, *pāt pāt mōd ne eie be sumnum dæle onstyred* (BORTH. 7, 1.). But negative sentences of this sort are also attached to affirmative ones. Old-Engl.: And drow to hire wan he wolde, *pat no man it muste* (R. of GL. I. 25.). Darst thou ryde upon thys best To the ryuere and water hym *that thou ne falle?* (OCTOBIAN 1427. cf. RICH. C. DE L. 6630.). Halfsax.: Seouen ȝer wes Astrild i pissen eorð-huse *pat neuer ne ferde heo with uten dore* (LAJAM. I. 101. cf. III. 297.). Anglosax.: Hig fōron pri dagas þurh pāt vēsten pāt hig nān vāter ne gemetton (EXON. 15, 22.). As to how sentences of this sort took the place of adjective sentences see the Adjective Sentence.

2. On the other hand, the support of the consecutive sentence with *that* by a demonstrative correlative in the principal sentence, such as *so*, *such* and *that*, is very familiar.

And swore *so loud*, *That, all amazed, the priest let fall the book* (SHAKSP., Taming 3, 2.). I was *so much struck* with this extraordinary narrative *that I have written it out to the best of my recollection* (IRVING, Br. H., Story-Telling). The roads which led to the secluded town were *so bad that few travellers had ever visited it* (MACAUL., Essays V. 91.). He gazed *so long That both his eyes were dazzled* (TENNYSON. p. 193.). Nature herself . . . Wrought in her *so, that, seeing me, she turn'd* (MILT., P. L. 8, 506.). The particle *so* is often detached from the principal sentence, that *so that* formerly accompanies the dependent sentence by comprehending the principal sentence retrospectively, as it were: That odious Acres is to be in Bath to-day; *so that, I protest, I shall be teased out of all spirits* (SHERID., Riv. 1, 2.). Let her be what she will, these ugly women will bring children, you know; *so that we must prevent the marriage* (FIELD., J. Andr. 4, 3.). And each . . . touch'd with some new grace Or seem'd to touch her, *so that day by day . . . Her beauty grew* (TENNYSON p. 210.). *Inasmuch* is also treated like *so*. They were all amazed *insomuch that they questioned among themselves* (MARK 1, 27.). Mr. Pinch . . . was particularly struck by the itinerant cutlery, which he considered of the very keenest kind, *insomuch that he purchased a pocket knife with seven blades in it* (DICKENS, Chuzzlew. 1, 5.).

O that there were *such an heart* in them, *that they would fear me* (DEUTER. 5, 29.). To *such a height* 'Tis swoln, *that at this hour the Emperor Before his armies . . . trembles* (COLER., Picc. 3, 1.).

Such has been the perplexing ingenuity of commentators that it is difficult to extricate the truth from the web of conjectures (IRVING, Columb. 1, 1.). His misery was such that none of the bystanders could refrain from weeping (MACAUL., Hist. of E. II. 193.).

I am not in that collected mood at present, That I could listen to them quietly COLER., Picc. 3, 1.). At this climax of the chapter of accidents, the remaining eight-and-twenty vociferate to that degree, that a pack of wolves would be music to them (DICKENS, Pict. fr. It., A Rapid Diorama).

Sentences of this sort may, on the one hand, pass into final sentences (See Vol. II. 1. p. 127), but on the other, appear as mere explanatory sentences, referring more to the manner indicated by the demonstrative correlative than to the intensity of an operative action, as is the case in the form, frequent in Old-Engl. all be it so that, all were it so that. Comp. Anglosax.: Ic purhvunode on þam munte XL daga and XL nihta svá þát ic ne át né ne dranc (DEUTER. 9, 9.).

The reference of the sentence with that to similar correlatives pervades all periods of the language. Old-Engl.: Er he be two i-veid þat he falle ðeste to honde (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 131.). De Saxons anon so gode were þat þe opere bigonne to fle echone (R. of GL. I. 114.). Men doo us so grete peynes, That we may neyther sit ne lyen (RICH. C. DE L. 3333.). And setten it on his heved, so faste and so sore that the blood ran down (MAUNDEV. p. 13.). Hire overlippe wypud sche so clene, That in hire cuppe was no ferthing sene Of gres (CHAUC., C. T. 133.). Now fell it so that fortune lust no lenger The high pripe of Nero to cherice (16005.). Nou fill it thus, that to the parish chirche . . This gode wyf went (3307.) Aſingret so that he ves wud (WRIGHT, A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 277.). Þe Brytones aryse faste, so þat, þoru Godes grace, Heo hadde þe maistry of þe feld (R. of GL. I. 50.). As an appel the urthe is round, so that evere mo Half the urthe the sonne bi-schyneth (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 132.). — We fond it more noble . . than ever we herde speke offe; in so moche, that we wolde never han leved it, had wee not seen it (MAUNDEV. p. 221.). Halſax.: He was swa feir mon þat wiſmen hine luveden (LAJAM. I. 297.). Þes ilke Enmaunus heold his kinelond þus þat nas na þein in piſſen londe þat naðe hine fæin slæ mid his honden (I. 293.). Of him was muchel speche þeond þas woruld riche swa þat al dis mon-cun þat of him iherden tellen, seiden þat he wes god (I. 299.). Anglosax.: Nys hyt svá stearc vinter þát ic ðurre lútjan át hám (THORPE, Aul. p. 102.). God ys svá mihtig, þát he mág of þysum stánum áveccean Abrahames bearn (MATH. 3, 9.). He hine hælde svá þát he sprác and geseah (12, 22.). Þá vundredon hi ealle svá þát hi betroux him cwædon: Hvát is þis? (MARC. I, 27.). Háfde se cyning his fyrd on tu tónumen, svá þát he væron symle healfre át hám (SAX. CHR. 894.).

Old-Engl.: Swyðke strokes they hem geve, That helm and bacynnet al to-reve, That on the schuldre fel the brayn (RICH. C. DE L. 4525.). Heo schulle be such, þat no prince dorre hem forsake (R. of GL. I. 112.). And the custom there is such, that men and wommen gon alle naked (MAUNDEV. p. 178. cf. 245. 285.). Halſax.: Witt sindenn off swille elde nu þatt witt ne muðhenn tæmenn (ORM., 201.). Anglosax.: Hvanon cymð him swile ge-þanc þat hig ondrædon me (DEUTER. 5, 29.). Sveic vās þeáv hira þát he æghvylcne ellþeódigra dydon him tō mōse mete þearfendum (ANDR. 25. cf. 28.).

Old-Engl.: Thei ben of that kynde, that iif thei beholden any man with wratthe, thei slen him anon (MAUNDEV. p. 285.). God graunt me that grace that I may it se (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 322.). In Anglosax. the support of the consecutive sentence by the demonstrative is found in the

combination *tô pam (pon) pāt, pās (tô pās) pāt*: Min heorte and min mōd me forlēton *tô pām pāt ic me nyste nænne ræd* (Ps. 39, 14.). Gif mon sý on þā hārðan *tô pam swiðe* gevundod, *pāt he ne mæge gestryngan*, gebēte *pāt mid LXXX scill.* (LEGG. *ÆLER. B. 40.*) Vās him se mon *tô þon leof, pāt he pone breost-vylm forberan ne mihte* (BEOV. 3757.). Nymðe hvylc *pās* snottor in sefan veorðe, *pāt he āna mæge ealle geriman stīnas on eorðan* (CÆDM. 3367.). Ac hvāt vilt þu pær on dōm-dāge dryhtne secgan, þonne ne bið nænig *tô pās* lytel lið on lime geveaxen, *pāt þu ne sceyle for æghvylc ānra on sundran ryht āgieldan?* (COD. EXON. 372, 18.). Comp. the Final Sentence 3.

3. In the consecutive sentence we frequently find the particle *that* interchanged with *as* after the correlatives *so* and *such*, so that the modal sentence contains the action which is to be regarded as an effect or consequence.

Great wealth and honour long we have enjoyed, *So as we cannot seeme with gredie mindes To wishe for change of prince* (FERREX A. PORR. 1, 2.), By seeing me from Princes royall state Thus busely brought into *so great contempt, As mine owne sonnes repine to heere my plaint* (GASCOYNE, *Jocasta* 1, 1.), Then the peril of our curses light on thee, *So heavy, as thou shalt not shake them off* (SHAKSP., *John* 3, 1. cf. *Taming* 3, 2.). Be thou *so precise As they may think it done of holiness* (MARLOWE, *Jew of M.* 1, 2.). I call'd him home, and taught him *So much, as I have made him my cashier* (BEN JONS., *Ev. Man in h. Hum.* 2, 1. cf. *Sejan.* 1, 1.). My request will come recommended in *so strong a manner, as, I believe, you'll have no scruple* (GOLDSM., *G. Nat. M.* 3.). While Fiesco was taking these important steps, he preserved *so admirably* his usual appearance of being devoted entirely to pleasure and amusement, *as imposed not only to the generous mind of Andrew, but deceived Gianettino* (ROBERTSON, *Charles V.*). — If we conclude a peace; It shall be with *such strict and severe covenants As little shall the Frenchmen gain thereby* (SHAKSP., *I Henry VI.* 5, 4.). Thou hast . . given unto the house of York *such head, As thou shalt reign but by their sufferance* (III *Henry VI.* 1, 1.). I will not open my lips *so wide as a bristle may enter* (Twelfth N. 1, 5.). I'll give him *such a warning* ere he goes *As he shall have small hopes of Abigail* (MARLOWE, *Jew of M.* 2, 2. cf. 3, 1.). Though number'd *such As each divided legion might have seem'd A numerous host* (MILT. P. L. 6, 229.). Dost thou know . . That I can place thee in *such abject state, As help shall never find thee?* (ROWE, *J. Shore* 4, 1.).

This combination, which begins to disappear, answers to the abbreviation of the period into a sentence in which the infinitive with *as* to follows *so*. See p. 44. It rests upon a few connections of the sentence of comparison, of which we shall speak when we come to the modal sentence (1. a. and d.) and touches the cases to be there cited. But, however frequently *as* stands, even in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, where the consecutive *that* is expected, this usage does not go further back into Old-English. The combination of *as that* in the dependent Sentence, which is subsequently attempted in this case, may be considered a periphrasis approximated to *as to* with the infinitive: Man cannot *so far* know the connexion of causes and events *as that he may venture to do wrong in order to do right* (JOHNSON). Is there *such a depravity* in man, *as that*

he should injure another without benefit to himself? (ID. in Wagner Gr. p. 379.). This juxtaposition does not agree with the older one of as that (See p. 397), but represents a contraction of two dependent sentences, of the modal and consecutive sentence.

4. As to how far the dependent sentence with *but* may be substituted for a negative consequence see p. 463.

The Final Sentence.

The final sentence serves to denote an intended consequence or effect, which is the purpose of the main action.

1. It is introduced by *that*, which appears partly alone, partly supported by a preparatory determination.

a. *that* standing alone is uncommonly frequent in affirmative and negative dependent sentences: in the modern language *may* commonly appears in the dependent sentence. See Vol. II. 1. p. 127.

Thy bastard shall be king; *That thou may'st be a queen* (SHAKSP., John 2, 1.). Satan hath desired to have you, *that he may sift you as wheat* (LUKE 22, 31.). Who art thou? *that we may give an answer to them that sent us* JOHN 1, 22.) Quick, *that all France may share your joy* (BULW., Richel 3, 3.). *That I may give thee life indeed*, I'll waste no longer time with thee (SHERID. KNOWLES, Virgin. 5, 3.). Constantius has separated his forces, *that he might divide the attention and resistance of the enemy* (GIBBON, Decl. 9.). I came, *that Marco might not come* (LEIGH HUNT, Leg. of Flor. 5, 1.).

Old-Engl.: Be þee mekid undur the myȝty hond of God, *that he enhance you* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 44.). God sente not his sone into þe worlde *þat he iuge þe worlde* (WYCL., John 3, 17.). Thei don away the left pappe *that thei may the better beren a scheeld* (MAUNDV. p. 154.). He bihet hem þe best lawes . . . To be hys helpe aȝen hys fen, *þat he nere ybroȝt to grounde* (R. OF GL. II. 386.). Hynges *that thei weren with her spouse Crist* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 50.). Halſax.: Godd itt haſſide lokedd swa þatt Sannt Johan Bapptisste þatt time sholde streonedd ben . . . *þatt hise frend mihtenn off himm* All þess te mare blissenn, And tatt te folc all þess te bett Hiss lare sholde follzhenn (ORM. 439.). Anglosax.: Hvat dô ic þätt ic éce lif áge? (MARC. 10, 17.). Gâð fromlice þät ge gûðfreân gylp forbégan! (ANDR. 1333.) Hvat eart þu? þät ve andvyrde bringon þâm þe ús tō þe sendon (JOH. 1, 22.). Hvi ne sealde heó þás sealfe við þrym hundred penegon, þät man mihte syllan þearfum? (12, 5.).

- b. Sentences with *so that* pass into final sentences if a tendency is expressed in the principal sentence.

I inquired, shifting my chair, *so that I might obtain a distincter view of her features* (WARREN, Diary 2, 5.). Comp. Vol. II. 1. p. 126.

Halſax.: Þe deofell badd himm maakenn bræd . . . *Swa þatt he sholde purrh þe bræd Fallenn i gluternesse* (ORM. 11629.).

- c. The modern language frequently combines *that* with *in order* by which the purpose or end is more particularly indicated, as formerly often by *to the end*, *to this end*, and the like.

I should be glad to fix what has brought us to Bath, *in order*

that we may lie a little consistently (SHERID., Riv. 2, 1.). He now ordered the doors to be thrown open, *in order that all who came to pay their duty might see the ceremony* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. II. 43.). To see operations of his mind . . . suddenly pulled to pieces, *in order that he might gain the superfluous knowledge of what they were, and what they were called, was to him tiresome and frivolous* (LEWES, G. I. 48.). — Now *to the end this blinde outrageous sire Should reape no joy of his vnnatural fruite, His wretched sonnes . . . Adjudge their father to perpetuall prison* (GASCOYNE, Jocasta 1, 1.) *To this end* was I born, and *for this cause* came I into the world, *that I should bear witness unto the truth* (JOHN 18, 37.). In the last case the dependent sentence is more closely supported by the demonstrative determination.

To the (that, such) ende and entent were formerly often prefixed preparatively to the dependent sentence. Old-Engl.: He . . . wolde suffre for us . . . *to that ende and entent, that his passioun and his dethe . . . myghte ben knowen evenly to alle the parties of the world* (MACDEV. p. 2.). He may telle it *if him lyke; to that entent, that tho that wole go by that weye . . . mowen knowen what weye is there* (p. 130. cf. 170. 241. *to suche entent that* p. 53.). I schalle schewe how *zee schulle knowe and prove to the end that zee schulle not ben disceyved* (p. 51. cf. 160.).

- d. As purpose and cause touch each other, if the cause of the action is the very end to be attained, *for that* may also introduce the dependent sentence of the purpose. The subject matter of the dependent sentence must in this case have to be removed to the time which follows the main action. In modern English *for that* is commonly limited to the idea of the cause. Comp. however:

For that our kingdom's earth should not be soild . . . And for our eyes do hate the dire aspect . . . Therefore we banish you our territories SHAKSP., Rich. II. 1, 3.).

Thus *for that* not rarely stands in olden times where the final meaning likewise belonging to the Anglosax: *for þam (þan,) þon) þāt* and *for þý þāt*, is close at hand. Old-Engl.: Hir chaar . . . This grete Romayn, this Aurilian, Hath with him lad, *for that men schulde se* (CHAUC., C. T. 15846.). Sche saide sche dede hit for non arm *But for he sscholde his bones warm* (SEUYN SAGES 1779.). *Þat he duden al for þon þat scuððen* [seuððen?] *sculden moni mon, þennen þe king weoren dæd, demen of his weorken* (LA-ŷAM. I. 303.). Anglosax.: Manegum men bioð eac forgifene *for þam þas voruld gesælða þāt hi scyle þam góðum leánjan hiora góð, and þam yflum hiora yfel* (BOETH. 39, 12.). Ic þe fette *for þi þāt þu mine fynd virigdest* (NEM. 23, 11.). See Vol. II. i. 127. A final sentence is otherwise introduced by *tō þam þāt, tō þý þāt*. Comp. Ps. 2, 6. A-S. HOMIL. I. 108.

2. The negative final sentence chiefly takes the particle *lest* (formerly also *least, last*), *quominus, ne*.

I read thee soone retyre, whiles thou hast might, *Least afterwards it be too late* to take thy flyght (SPENS. F. Qu. 3, 4, 14. cf. 34.). O, lady, weep no more, *lest I giv cause* to be suspected of more tenderness Than doth become a man (SHAKS., Cymb. 1, 2.). Ye shall not eat of it, neither shall ye touch it, *lest ye die*

(GEN. 3, 2.). Our psychology is in so chaotic a condition, that I dare not employ its language . . . *lest it mislead* (LEWES, G. I. 65.). Climb we not too high *Lest we should fall too low* (COLER., Wallenstein 1, 4.). Haste, hide thyself, *lest with avenging looks My brothers' ghost should hunt thee from thy seat!* (SHELLEY, Cenci 1, 3.).

As to how this final sentence may take the place of a sentence of the object see p. 415. Old-Engl.: *Ʒe kyng Arture hii radde anon, to London vorte wende . . . Leste such poer come vp hym* (R. of GL. I. 169.). *Theves he schal herberon never won . . . Lest hyt wolde turne the craft to schame* (HALLIW., Freemas. 181 cf. 326. 749.). *Speed the fast, Lest that our neyghbours the aspye* (CHAUC., C. T. 3726. cf. 7483. 15827.). The rejection of the pronominal *þy* (*þi*, *pē*) before *lās* (*pe*), which was as essential to the particle as the *quo* (*ut eo*) to the Lat. *quominus*, at the same time constituting the bond between the principal and the dependent sentence, is old, like the added final *te*, *t*. Hallsax.: *Nis pe non need to bringen mid þe muchel genge, leste ure Bruttes æft beon abolzen* (LAJAM. II. 207. cf. I. 283. II. 624. III. 33.). *Ne durste þer na cniht to ufele ræcchen na wiht leoste he sculden leosen his leomen* (III. 16.). *Lest* stands III. 29. Anglosax.: *God bebead ūs þāt ve ne æton nē ve þāt treov ne brædon þy lās pe ve svulton* (GEN. 3, 2.). *Aris Drihten, þy lās se yfel-villenda mæge dōn þāt he ville* — (Ps. 19, 15.). See II. p. 128. The negative notion lies in *lās*, which seems originally to soften the latter, as if the the main action aimed only at the weakening of another. But in fact the dependent sentence with *lest* takes the place of the negative with *that*. Comp. Anglosax.: *God him sealde tæen, þāt nān pæra pe hine gemette hine ne ofslōge* (GEN. 4, 15.). Mod.-Engl.: *The Lord set a mark upon Cain, lest any finding him should kill him* (ib.).

The Modal Sentence.

The modal sentence contains in general the determination of the mode and manner in which the main action is accomplished. It furnishes a measure over against the main sentence, and is therefore always a comparative sentence, which makes the activity of another subject, or another activity of the same subject, avail as a comparison.

Both quality and quantity and degree may be determined by the dependent sentence, and the relation taking place in these references between the principal and the dependent sentence may be that of equality or of inequality, to which this dependent sentence is subject; since the recurrence of the same members, often requisite with the complete period in the principal and dependent sentence, was early esteemed heavy and superfluous, and has led to the freer connection both of incomplete and complete dependent sentences, whereby formally grammatical correctness has suffered more than elsewhere.

1. If the principal stands to the dependent sentence in the relation of equality, or of assimilation as similarity, the cases are to be distinguished in which correlative particles in the principal as well as the dependent sentence are the medium for the relation, and those in which the particle of comparison is only given to the dependent sentence. Modern-English has, in the former, various

oppositions of the modal particles coming under consideration, which the older language does not in the same manner discriminate, and which, are also in part interchanged in the modern language.

- a, α. The parallelizing of *as* — *as* in the principal, and in the complete or abbreviated dependent sentence is familiar. The particle then attaches itself in the principal sentence both to qualitative and quantitative determinations, chiefly in the predicate, not immediately to the verb of the predicate. An indefinite quantitative notion, like *many*, *much*, used substantively, may also be determined by *as*. It is, further, especially restricted to affirmative sentences, and to negative ones in the interrogative form, which mostly supposes an affirmative answer or has the effect of an affirmative sentence. Its separation from *so* in *so* — *as* is not strictly carried out by the feeling of the language. See β.

Thou wert *as witty* a piece of Eve's flesh *as any* in *Illyria* (SHAKSP., Twelfth N. 1. 5.). In Britain the conquered race became *as barbarous as the conquerors* MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 4.). His loyalty was in truth *as fervent* and *as steadfast as was to be found* in the whole Church of England (III. 113.). It was *as blank* a house inside *as outside* (DICKENS, Dombey a. S. 1. 3.). Is not that *as good as a hanging of you?* (SHAKSP., Twelfth N. 1. 5.) Is not a belly-full in the kitchen *as good as a belly-full in the parlour?* (GOLDSM., She Stoops 2.) I have learn'd to lose *as little* of my kindness *as I can* (BEN JONS., Silent Wom. 1. 1.). *As many* of his attendants *as would be dangerous*, I sent dead drunk on shore (SOUTHERN, Oroon. 1. 2). Countries which, a century hence, may not improbably contain a population *as large as that* which now inhabits Europe MACAUL., Essays IV. 98.). Have you a son *as old as that gentleman?* (BOURCICAULT, Lond. Assur. 2.) I will run *as far as God has any ground* (SHAKSP., Merch. of Ven. 2, 2.). *As far as they could judge by ken*, Three hours would bring to Teviot's strand Three thousand armed English men (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 4, 7.). Men who love law, and will have even an explosion explode itself *as far as possible* according to rule (CARLYLE, Fr. Revol. 3, 1, 1.). Flying hulans and hussars have been seen on the Chalons road, almost *as far as Sainte-Menehould* (ib.). *As low as to thy heart*, Through the false passage of thy throat thou liest (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 1, 1.). The sun Was bid turn reins . . thence down amain . . *As deep as Capricorn* (MILT., P. L. 10, 671.).

The isolated (demonstrative) *as* in a principal sentence supposes the member of comparison in a principal sentence. They gathered every man according to his eating . . And it came to pass, that on the sixth day they gathered twice *as much* bread (EXOD. 16, 21.). Lorenzo! to recriminate is just . . *As just* thy second charge (YOUNG, N. Th. 5, 1.). The heroine is cool as snow, and *as pure* (KAVANAGH, Fr. Wom. of Lett. 3.).

Although the opposition of *as* — *as* with *as* in the principal sentence attached to single determinations, nowise rests upon the nature of the particle, it yet early appears along with other combinations. The originally identical forms *also*, *alse*, *ase*, *as*, Anglosax. *ealsvā*, are often repeated in the same manner, when the weakened form frequently appears in the dependent sentence, although it also occurs in the principal sentence. Old-Engl.: Bod ho no longer þat ho nas stadde a stiffe ston, a stalworth image *Al-so salt as ani se* (MORRIS, Allit P. p. 67.). That the mason worche . . *also trewly as he con* or *may* (HALLIW., Freemas. 270. cf. 164.). Rushes . . that prykken *als scharpely as thornes* (MAUNDEV. p. 13.). *Ase forð as ge muhen* . . beos large toward him (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 6.). *As muche as pou hast, as muche pou art worþ ywys* (R. or Gl. I. 30.). He sende *as quycliche as he myzte*, hys sonde II. 383.). He . . mai beo nouthe her and ther *as quic as manes munde* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 134.). Of his port *os meke as is a mayde* (CHACC., C. T. 69.). I will don al my diligence *Als fer as souneth into hynesté* (15452.). *As far as I ken* or *yit as I go*, We sely wodmen are mekylle wo (TOWN. M. p. 99.) These modal particles certainly attach themselves, even in the principal sentence, immediately to the subject as well as to the verb of the predicate. *Alse þe sa storre shat of hire þe liht . . alse þis edie maiden . . shedeð þat soðe liht* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 128.). *Ase fele thede, ase fele thewes* (I. 109.). Gif ho *serven þe anker al swa as ho mahen* (II. 5.). Gif ge finden þat ge *don alswa as ge reden*, þonkes God georne (II. 6.). How these forms are opposed to each other, thus in Old-Highdutch *alsô* — *alsô*, in Mod.-Highdutch *alsô* — *als*, *als* — *als*, which remained down to the sixteenth century. Hallsax. proceeds similarly. *Al swa he idode alse hit idemed was* (LAZAM. II. 218.). For *all all swa sumn* recless smec Iss swet biforenn manne *All all se* is swet biforenn Godd *þe gode mannes bene* (ORM. 1456.). Annd *all all swa se Godeess Lamb . . Lihtlice mihhte annd wel inoh þa seffne innsejless oppnenn All swa þe Lafferð Jesus Crist etc.* (Ded. 281.), where the repeated *all* is to be observed. In Anglosax. the correlation *eal svā* — *eal svā* is not favoured.

β. In the opposition of *so* — *as* the sentence with *so* appears as the principal sentence, and in this succession of the complete or incomplete sentences, *so* may be attached in the construction to each member, and encroaches on the province of *as* in the principal sentence. But it is here distinguished from *as* by its rendering the determination of degree more, although gently, prominent, whereas by *as* only the mutual equality is expressed.

Very frequently the *so* preceding *as* is inserted in negative sentences, so that the weight of negation chiefly strikes the member determined by *so*. Thou canst *not love so dear as I* (SHAKSP., Taming 2, 1.). Death itself is *not so painful As is this sudden horror and surprise* (Rowe, J. Shore 4, 1.). No country *suffered so much . . as England* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 9.). That there is no soul — No *not so much perdition as a hair* Betid to any creature (SHAKSP., Temp. 1, 2.). There remained *not so much as one* of them (EXOD. 14, 28.). I remarked particularly that there were no men, *nor so much as a boy of ten or of twelve years old*, to be seen among the inhabitants (SCOTT, R. Roy 30.). That none presume to come *so near As forty foot of stake of bear* (BUTL., Hud. 1, 1, 693.). With that is often found a contraction of the sentences, with a shortening of the principal sentence:

Be wise, that you *never so much as mention the name of one* (BEN JONS., Cynth. Rev. 3, 1.). I have been informed that he *never so much as goeth to the church* (FIELD., J. Andr. 2, 8.). You have *never so much as answered me* (SCOTT, R. Roy 18.).

No less familiar is *so* — *as* in affirmative interrogative sentences which suppose a negative answer: Is there hypocrisy *so foul as this?* (YOUNG, N. Th. 7, 1335.)

But affirmative sentences otherwise take the particle *so*. We have already discussed, on the sentences of time, the interchange of *so soon* (*long, often*) *as* with *as soon* etc. *as* (See p. 435 and 441), where the preceeding particles properly determine an element belonging to the principal sentence. Other instances are not wanting: If that thou beest found *So near* our public court *as twenty miles*, Thou diest for it (SHAKSP., As You Like It 1, 3.). And, after all, *to be debarr'd So much as standing on his guard* (BUTL. Hud., Ep. 159.) Benjamin's mess was *five times so much as any of theirs* (GEN. 43, 34.). I shall be pardoned for calling it by *so harsh a name as madness* (LOCKE, Hum. Underst.). In a world *so full of temptation as this* (MACAUL., Essays IV. 146.). He was poor, ignorant, *so far as the usual instruction was concerned* (COOPER, Spy, Introd.). *So many men as many minds* (CARLYLE, Past. a. Pres, 2, 7.) Make me lord of happiness, *so rich As monarchs have no thought of* (SHERID. KNOWLES, Love-Chase 3, 1.). *So much* has passed between us *as must make Me bold, her fearful* (SHELLEY Cenci 2, 1.). By the last cited cases of this sort the transition to consecutive sentences, in which *so* — *as* coincides with *so* — *that*, is prepared. See p. 480.

Less common is the case that *so* comes at the beginning of the sentence or immediately before the verb, whereas it often appears in assertions in which the principal sentence is to be valid only in the measure in which the action predicated in the dependent sentence is realized.

So do as thou hast said (GEN. 18, 5.). — *So* God help Warwick, *as he loves the land And common profit of his country!* (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 1, 1.). But God in mercy *so* deal with my soul, *As I in duty love my king and country* (ib.). *So* help me God *as I dissemble not* (I Henry VI. 3, 1.). *So* may the Koran verse display'd Upon its steel direct my blade, In danger's hour to guard us both, *As I preserve that awful oath* (BYRON, Bride 2, 12.). The inverse collocation of the sentences is analogous to the more general usage. See γ. and comp. b, β.

The opposition cited, in which *so* belongs decidedly to the principal sentence as *as* does to the dependent sentence, is often found in Old-Engl. in negative sentences: The cytee is *not* now *so gret, as it was wont to be* (MACNDEV. p. 107.). Sum men love *not* hem *so wel as the othere* (p. 160.). Other snayles there ben, that ben fulle grete but *not so huge as the other* (p. 193.). No cytee of the world is *so wel* storred of shippes, *as is that* (p. 207.). *Nowher so besy a man as he ther nas* (CHAUC., C. T. 323.). It is also in use otherwise: To bryng vs *so fre as we bep* in to fyl seruage R. or Gl. I. 47.). And *so wide as al this lond*, Ne mai no

man therin libbe (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 202.). Thei ben to *so meche as the Pygmeys* (MAUNDEV. p. 205.). Ther was no lord then besyde Had *halfe so many* [sc. gentyllmen] *as hee* (STR AMADAS 543.). Now, who would not be glad that had A child *so lufand as thou art?* (TOWNS. M. p. 37.). *so* and *as* also mingle in the principal sentence. Men might his bridel heere Gyngle . . . *so cleere And eek as lowde as cloth the chapel belle* (CHAUC., C. T. 169.). Hallsax: And *swa* he per agon *ase pe oðer hæfde idon* (LAJAM. I. 288.). Formerly indeed, just inversely, *also* stands, where *as* proceeds in the principal and *so* in the dependent sentence. Old-Engl.: Ac Asyge *al so muchul is, so Europe and Affryk* (ALIS. 918.). Theo falce god dude *al his wille Al so ofte so he wolde* (394.). His love is *al so swete, ywis, So ever is mylk or likoris* (427.). Yet he per stondeð, *swa* he deð *al swa longe swa pe world stondet* (LAJAM. I. 425.). Anglosax.: Nu þu gehýrst þæt seð beorhtnys is *ealsvā eald svā þāt fýr* þe heo cymð (THORPE, Anal. p. 61.).

But a second *so* in the dependent long follows the *so* in the principal sentence. Old-Engl.: *So right so he cunne* he hoveð in the sunne (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 210.). N'is in this world *so siker thyng So is deth*, to olde and yung (ALIS. 918.). *So white* she was, and fair of mood, *So is the snow on red blood* (ELLIS, Specim. II. 104.). Hallsax.: Þe king sende *swa wide swa ileste his riche* (LAJAM. I. 26.). Anglosax.: Andridon *svā vide svā hi voldon* (SAX. CH. 994.). Hie him þær fore gýslas sealdon *svā feala svā he habban volde* (877.). *Svā monig beoð* men ofer eorðan *svā beoð mōd-geponcas* (COD. EXON. 344, 3.). *Nymað . . . twi svā micel feos svā ge ær hæfdon* (Gm. 43, 11. 12.). Even now the opposition of *so* — *so* is in use in the proverb: *So many men, so many minds* and tho like. *So high* as heav'd the tumid hills, *so low* Down sunk a hollow bottom broad and deep (MILT. P. L. 7, 288.), where, however, the last sentence must be regarded as the bearer of the principal thought. Comp. too γ.

- γ. In the inverse collocation *as* — *so*, *so* appears in the principal sentence to which it belongs, with emphatic reference backwards to the preceding member, when complete sentences especially are opposed to each other.

As a flower of the field, so he flourishes (Ps. 103, 15.). *As he hath done* (LEVIT. 24, 29.). *As he breeds, so* shall he drink (BEN JONS., Ev. Man in h. Hum. 2, 1.). *As ye have receiv'd, so* have ye done done Invincibly (MILT., P. L. 6, 805.). *As I entered, so* will I retire (ROGERS, It., Foscari). *As heroes think so* thought the Bruce (SCOTT, Lord of the Isl. 3, 27.). *As no part of the country afforded such a variety of legends, so* no man was more deeply read in their fearful love than Hobbie of the Heugh-foot (Bl. Dwarf 2.). *As great men live not in their own time, But the next race — so* in the young my soul Makes many Richelieus BULW., Richel. 3, 1.). Patriotism, *as it is the fairest, so* it is often the most suspicious mask of other feelings (SCOTT, Waverl. 7.). Unweary and too desirous, *as before, So* now of what thou know'st not (MILT., P. L. 10., 947.). *As in different ages, So* in different climes — love varies wonderfully in the shapes it takes ((BULW., Rienzi 1, 7.).

After a comparison expressed by *as* — *as* the first member is again taken up emphatically by *so*: *As sure as in this late-betrayed town Great Cœur-Lion's heart was buried; So sure* I swear, to get the town, or die (SHAKSP., I Henry VI. 3, 2.). And *as*

many as you desire for the revolution, so many shall you receive (BULW., Rienzi 2, 4.).

If *also* stands in the principal sentence instead of *so*, the period is substituted for the copulative relation: Among these enthusiasts, Cromwell, *as he held the first place in rank, was also* preeminent in spiritual gifts (LINGARD, Hist. of E.). Now, *as it must be conceded . . . it must also* be allowed etc. (SCOTT, Minstrelsy I. 54.). Comp. *as — so . . . also*: And *as my duties be most infinite, So infinite must also* be my love (GASCOYNE, Jocasta 1, 1.). This *also*, which does not share the collocation of *so*, is in this case no longer to be regarded as a correlative, properly speaking, of *as*.

The interchange of *as — so* with *how — so*: is divergent: *How many men so many minds* (GASCYRNE, Jocasta 2, 1.). We shall speak of this *how* in its combination with comparatives further on. See 2.

The succession *as — so*, wherein *so* belongs to the principal sentence, had obtained a great extension even in the fourteenth century. Old-Engl.: *As the male is plentiouse of apples and of leues among trees of wodes, so is my derlyng among sones* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., I. 40.). *Pat as I have done to you, so and þee do* (WYCL. Joh. 13, 15.). *As a siourne may not make fruyte of it self . . . so neþer þee no but þif þee schulen dwelle in me* (15, 4.). Even *as he saide, so done has he* (TOWN. M. p. 263.). *Riht as most joye it is to steyen up into the hand of the mercy of God, so it is most hydous and ferful to fallen into the hondis of the wrahte of God* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., II. 44.). *Righte als the londes weren lost thorghe synne of Cristene men, so schulle thei ben wonnen aȝen be Cristen men* (MAUNDEV. p. 79.). And *as men here . . . wolde think . . . , right so hem thinkethe there* (p. 176.). The repetition in both members of *right*, also added to a single member, is much favoured. *Righte as the fyn perl congelethe . . . righte so dothe the verray dyamand* (MAUNDEV. p. 158. cf. 180. 184.). *Right as an hawk upon a sours Upspringeth into thaer, right so prayeres . . . Maken her sours to Goddis eeres tuo* (CHALC., C. T. 7520.). *so* is also repeated after *so as*: *Right so as oure Lord wil right, so be it doon* (ib. p. 151. I.). In Anglosax. the subordinate member with *svá svá* is often placed before the principal sentence accompanied by *svá*: *Svá svá him gelicode svá hit is gedôn* (Job b. Ettm. 4, 37.). And *svá svá mēdgildan dagas, svá sind his dagas* (6, 4.). Yet the inverse collocation also occurs: *Svá stōd se deofol on Godes gesihtfe svá svá dōd se blinda on sunnan* (3, 18.). Similarly Gothic presents *svasve — sva wś aŭtwś* in this and in the inverse collocation, whereas *sve — sva* commonly stands in the opposition of single notions. Anglosax. here also employs *svá svá*: And *svá on Noes dagum vās gevorden, svá beoð mannes Suna to-cyme* (Lcc. 17, 26.). Gr. *καθώς οὕτως*. Both members originally stood beside each other with equal grammatical value; the distinction of them into a principal and a dependent sentence is determined by logical points of view. The same was also properly true of *as — as*. The habitual annexation of one member, without a correlative, with *as*, has contributed to give to this conjunction, where opposed to *so*, the character of a subordinating conjunction.

δ. *as* has sometimes its correlative in the adverb *thus*.

As a person who is struck through the heart with a thunder-bolt, looks extremely surprised, and, perhaps is so too, — thus

the poor Joseph received the false accusation of his mistress (FIELD., J. Andr. 1, 8.). *Thus* torn defac'd, and wretched *as I seem*, Still I have something of Sciolto's virtue ROWE, Fair. Penit. 4, 1.).

Old-Engl.: To se my master dede; *Thus* wykydly *as he ist shent* (TOWN. M. p. 231. In Halfsax. similarly *pus* — *sua* stands like the Anglosax. *pus swā*: No isæh ich a none londe *pus* seolcude þinges *sua ich here biuoren me mid æzeuen bihalde* (LAȜAM. II. 144.). Anglosax.: Ne vās ænig þāra: þāt me *pus* priste *swā pu nu pā hālig* mid hondum hrinan dorste (JULIANA 510. Grein).

ε. *as* has also its correlative in the subordinate sentence in the pronoun *such*. *as* has taken the place of the older *so*. Anglosax. *swā*, which refers back to the like particle contained in *such*, Anglosax. *svycle*. The dependent sentence, even assumes directly the character of an adjective sentence so that *as* is in this case, equal to *so*, in use in German from the most ancient times, and not yet extinct, instead of *welcher*, *e*, *es*.

Such a one *as I* was this present (SHAKSP., Twelfth N. 1, 5.). There's no *such* word *As* — *fail* (BULW., Richel. 2, 2.). In *such* works *as the Lysistrata* etc. (MACAUL., Essays IV. 145.). Tears, *such as angels weep*, burst forth (MILT., P. L. 1, 620.) In at this gate none pass . . but *such as come well known* from Heav'n 4, 579.). *Such as our motive is*, our aim must be (COWP. p. 111.). The manner and expression of it (sc. of your letter) is *such, as*, I trust, *will one day make you a powerful instrument towards mending the present degeneracy* (CHATAM, Lett. 17.). To give our affairs *such* dispatch *as we expect* (BEN JONS., Silent Wom. 1, 1.). The tenant usually contrived to raise *such* a crop of oats or barley, *as afforded meal for his family* (SCOTT, Bl. Dwarf 2.). No *such* light *As warms your eyes* (TH. MOORE p. 228.).

The complete or incomplete sentence annexed by *as* has in this case the notion for its subject or object to which *as* is referred, which therefore seems to represent the nominative or the case of the object of a relative pronoun. The relation of *such* — *as* may be compared with that of the Lat. *talis* — *qualis*. Therefore a relative pronoun is still met with among the moderns, although censured by grammarians and departing from the general usage: *Such . . who, without assigning any particular faults, condemn the whole* (FIELD. in Wagner's Gr. p. 250.) His behaviour is *such that would not shame the best education* (FIELD. J. Andr. 4, 6.). In such passages as: In order to produce the merit of *such, whose modesty otherwise would have suppressed it* (ADDISON), the construction with *as* is certainly no longer applicable.

As in these cases *who*, *that* take the place of *as*, so *as* is used in various dialects instead of a relative referring to demonstratives and substantives: O aye, *those as won the race at the battle of uyreston* (SCOTT, Waverl. 49.). *Whea's sheep's them, as I sa ster-neet?* (DIAL OF CRAVEN I. 10.). I ha' brought up *the young woman as came to service to-day* (SCOTT, Heart of Mid-Loth. 2, 8.).

As to how the freer annexation of sentences with *as* with reference to *such* yields consecutive dependent sentences, in analogy to *so* — *as*, See p. 480.

The annexation of a dependent sentence with *as* to *such* (*swyrlk*, *swilch*, *swich*, *soch* etc.) and *slik* of the same meaning, which is equivalent to an adjective sentence, was early in use. Old-Engl.: *Ner me not to done Such pyng as pou me biddest to graunte þe*, so sone (R. of GL. I. 115.). To alle sicke thing *as is most contrarious to pley* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 48.). *Swyrlk fowayle as we bought yistryday*, For no catel gete I may (RICH. C. DE L. 1545.). *Swich good as God yow sent* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 25.). Leveth in *sweche* losels *As leccherie haunten* (p. 5.). *Wip such speche as he con lerne* (CASTEL OFF LOVE 30, ed. Weymouth). If he be *suche as I hym holde* (IPOMYDON 625.). *Suche* an on *as is of gode maneres* (MAUNDEV. p. 287.). Was never *such* another *as was he* (CHAUC., C. T. 15505.). I have herd say, men suld take of twa thinges, *Slik as he fynt*, or tak *slik as he bringes* (4127.). In: The doom schalle ben at Estre Day, *suche tyme as oure Lord aroos* (MAUNDEV. p. 114.), *as* no longer answers to the subject or object in an adjective sentence; it reminds us of the temporal sentence with *as*. The modal particle is, however, construed like a pronoun with a preposition after it: *Swilche wigeles, swo ich ar embe spac*. The particle *as*, *als* occurs with *swilc* even in Hallsax.: *Wipp all swilc rime als her is sett* Wipp all se fele wordess (ORM., Ded. 101.). Otherwise the older *so swā* also stands a long time here. Old-Engl.: *Alle hevie sennen, and swilche oðre so þe apostle her nemde* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 131.). Graunte me *soche* beryng *So fallith for a kyng* (ALIS. 4624.). Hallsax; His hæd [heer mod. text] wes *swulc swa beoð gold wir* (LAJAM. I. 300.). Penched (sc. þe wulf) to biten *swulc deor swa him likes* (II. 421.). Anglosax: Gif hvā ādelfe wāterpytte oððe betýnede ontýne and hine eft ne betýne, gyld *swilc neāt swā þæron befealle* (LEGO. ÆLER. B. 22.). Sverjað me nu þurh Drihten þāt ge dōn eft wið me *swilce* mildheortnisse *swā ic macode wið eow* (JOS. 2, 12.). Sculon wit þonne āsomne siððan brūcan *swylcra yrmða swā þu unc ær scrife?* (COD. EXON. 372, 32.). Otherwise is repeated, in the sense of *swylc* — *swylc* in the sense of *talīs* — *qualīs*: On þām dagum beoð *swylce* godrēfednyssa *swylce ne geurdon of frymðe þære gesceafte* (MARC 13, 19.), or the adverbial *swilce*: Gif ic hāfde *swilcne* anveald, *swylce se ālmihtiga God hāfð* (BOETH. 38, 2.). Þāt þu vite þāt nys nān oðer *swilce ure God* (EXOD. 8, 10.).

The adjective sentence has from ancient times taken the place of the dependent sentence with *as* (*so*, *so swā*). Old-Engl.: *Suche a soule that hath these sevene ziftes of the holy gost* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 39.). Nan *swich þing þat ou ne i-burð to habben* (II. 3.). *Soche folk that beon to your honour* (ALIS. 7:25.). Ich haue *swriche a malady*, *That mengeth al mi blod* (AMIS. A. AMIL. 1171.). By *swriche that doon ille* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 174.). To *swiche that suffre wolde* (311.). For *swiche that sike ben* (p. 327.). Thys me made do dedys *swyrlke* *With whych my goost ys ofte unglade* (MS. in HALLIW. v. swilke). Hallsax: Ich con *swulcne* leche-craft þe leof þe scal iurðen (LAJAM. II. 370.). Anglosax.: *Swylce* mihta þe þurh his handa geuordene synd (MARC. 6, 2.).

The employment of *as* in reference back to demonstratives and substantives does not seem widely diffused in literature. Sentences like *The most earnestful werkis of God, as ben hyse myraclis* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW. II. 43.) border on it, although admitting the citing of an instance by way of comparison. Yet there belongs here: *The firste soudan was Zarocon, that was of Mede (as was fadre to Sahaladyn)* (MAUNDEV. p. 36.). A relative adverb represents it in: *Nohwider elles ne ga, bute*

pider as mon sendes hire (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 4.). *Vp as hey hul, as mony roches were* (R. OF GL. I. 56.) [var. lect. *ther*]. Upon the weye as men gon toward the kyngdom of Caldee (MACNDEV. p. 40.). — Thus so also stands where the relative pronoun is expected: *ðis devel is mikel wið wil and magt, so wicches haven in here craft* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 221.). The Anglosax. *svá* approaches the relative in such a case: *Alra táčna gehvylc, svá Trojana purh gefeohf fremedon* (Elene 644.). *Þanan feorknere findað foldbüend, svá him fágere oft gegærevadest, god lifigende!* (Ps. 64, 10.) Comp. *An dem heiligen ewangelio so wir huto lesen* (WACKERNAGEL, D. Iseeb. 301, 39.).

ζ. The same comes also under consideration as the correlative of *as*, but only when the equality or homogeneity of one object with another, or of the same object under various regards, occasions a comparison. The dependent sentence, on the other hand, which refers to the same substantive notion, presents itself as an adjective sentence.

And may'st thou find *with Heav'n the same forgiveness, As with thy father here* (ROWE, Fair Penit. 5, 1.). His whole *skin was the same as steel* (COLER., Wallenst. 5, 1. I am the same to-day as yesterday (HARRISON, Engl. Language p. 362.). One ship will not run the same distance as another in the same time (WEBST., v. same.).

On the other hand: With the same measure that ye mete withal, it shall be measured to you again (LUKE 6, 38.). Homer . . gave us a pattern of both these, though that of the latter kind is entirely lost; which, Aristotle tells us, bore the same relation to comedy, which his *Ilias* bears to tragedy (FIELD., J. Andr., Introd.). Socrates makes precisely the same use of the statues of Polycleto and the pictures of Zeuxis which Paley makes of the watch (MACAUL., Essays IV. 100.). The milk-white pearls of the necklace which she wore, the same which she had just received as a true-love token from her husband (SCOTT, Kenilw. 6.).

Old-Engl.: Afte hem, comen another multitude of fyssche . . and don in the same manner as the firste diden (MACNDEV. p. 192), and so without that correlative: *The peper growethe, in maner as dothe a wylde vyne* (p. 168. cf. 197. 233. 275.), with which compare in proportion *as*. See c.

The adjective sentence, which is usually complete, whereas with *as* member; of sentences stand opposed to one another, likewise occurs. Old-Engl.: *De sam God ay was þat es now* (THE PRICKS OF CONSCIENCE 12. ed. MORRIS 1863.). Halfsax.: Off þa same staness þatt stodenn þær (ORM., 9915.). Anglosax. usually put either *se ylca* or *se sylfa* in the place of the Goth. *sa sama*: *Þam sylfan gemete þe ge metad eov bið gemeten* (LTC. 6, 33.). [Here the Goth. has the demonstrative pronoun.] *Þu þonne byst se ylca se þu ær være* (Ps. 101, 24.). Halfsax.: *Þiss iss þatt ilke, off whamm I spacc* (ORM. 12578.). The adverbial *same* in the combination *svá same svá* does not belong here: *Trá þára gecynde habbað nétenu svá same svá men* (BOETH. 33, 4.).

b. The modal sentence with *as* frequently has no correlative, either in complete or in incomplete sentences.

a. The modern language has here suppressed both the fuller form *also*, *als* etc. and the simple *so*; but the use of *as* is also here prepared by that of the Anglosax. *ealsvá*, alongside of which stands *svá*.

I love a teeming wit *as I love my nourishment* (BEN JONS., Alchem. 5, 1.). All hast thou spoken *as my thoughts are* (MILT. P. L. 3, 171.). The next "This is my body," was in his New Testament *as it is in ours* (MACAUL., Essays IV. 103.). We are all inclined to judge of others *as we find them* (III. 2.). You had a right to do with it *as you liked* (OXENFORD, Twice Killed 1, 2.). Rose who was bright *as the spirit of dawn* (TH. MOORE p. 79.).

Old-Engl.: *De child wex & wel prof, as þe clerk seyde er* (R. OF GL. I. 11.). To make a forme of a cord, *as yt myzte best be* (I. 65.). It bifel *as his fader seide* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 148.). It sytt betwene the hille of Aynges, *as Ierusalem dothe* (MAUNDEV. p. 106.). Why do þe not *as men ȝow pray?* (COV. MYST. p. 97.). Kißen i wille ðe ernes kinde, *also ic it o boke rede* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 209.). Ich wende, *al so othre doth*, That ich i-seie were soth (II. 276.). Al hem to-dryven *ase ston doth the glas* (WRIGHT., Polit. S. p. 189.). The spere karf thorough-out, *Also thorough a wollen clout* (ALIS. 4548.). By nightth *als a cat hy seeth* (5275.). Dede him toke & he died, *als it salle do vs* LANGT. I. 5.). Halſax.: *Grið he holde also his fæder* (LAȜAM. I. 260.). Birp wurrpenn milde . . annd æddmod *alls se cullfre* (ORM. 10836.). Anglosax.: *Ic dô ealsvâ ȝe biddað* (THORPE, Anal. p. 115.). Hine man hêng eall svâ he unc ær sæde (GEN. 41, 13. — *So frequently stands for a long time.* Old-Engl.: *Al is man so is tis ern* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 211.). *Newe ðe forði so ðe neddre doð* (I. 212.). Hem he gon lerin, *so we mugen i-herin* (I. 170.). *Do so ich þe lere* (I. 186.). Game is ood whil it lastes, *Ac hit fareth so wyndes blastes* (ALIS. 235.). And went away *so dragon wild* (353.). Halſax.: *Hit iwerð þere swa hit deð iwere* (LAȜAM. I. 12.). Anglosax.: *Ac hit nis nâ svâ hi cvedað* (PS. 3, 2.). *Dôð svâ ic bidde* (BROV. 2466.). Hergodon and bårndon *svâ heora gevuna is* (SAX. CHR. 1009.). Him pâ Anlâf behêt, *svâ he hit eac ȝelæste*, pāt he næfre eft tō Angelcynne mid unfriðe cuman nolde (994.). *Ic mæg vesan God svâ he* (CÆDM., 283.). The reduplicated *svâ svâ* may be distributed between two correlatives: *Didon svâ svâ him god bebead* (Job in Ettm. 6, 37.). He geseah Godes Gâst niðer-stigende *svâ svâ culfran* (MATH. 3, 16.). *Mīn brōðer is faren of pisse liue svâ svâ Crist volde* (SAX. CHR. 656.).

β. The dependant sentences or members of a sentence annexed by *as*, although referring to the same fundamental wiew, leave play to various shades of their relations.

aa. Not rarely such a dependent sentence serves to condition or to restrict a predicate, becoming often an incidental, illustrative remark, even an explanation of an expression used. In these cases, the immediate reference to a principal sentence, which, in its whole extent, constitutes the member opposed to the dependent sentence, is wanting to the sentence of comparison. Here and there, even parenthetically, it is separated from the context.

By foul play, *as thou say'st*, were we heaved hence (SHAKSP. Temp. 1, 2). Every day thou doſt me with some device, Jago; and rather (*as it seems to me now*) keep'st from me all conveniency, etc. (Oth. 4, 2.). Sir Everard's reception in this family was, *as it may be easily conceived*, sufficiently favourable (SCOTT, Waverl. 2.). Some of those

edited, *as we have occasion to know*, by men of distinguished talent, have appeared in a smaller form (Minstr. I. 84.). The term of *ποιῆτης*, *as it singularly happens*, is literally translated by the Scottish epithet (p. 10.) That seems to imply malice prepossessive, *as we call it in the law* (FIELD. *Amelia* 1, 10.). Your father . . . was only a sleeping partner, *as the commercial phrase goes* (SCOTT, *R. Roy* 1.). Mr. Herd, an accountant, *as the profession is called in Edinburgh*, was known and generally esteemed (Minstr. I. 71.).

Old-Engl.: *Al riht is leid, and wogh arered, also þe wise quæð* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., *Rel. Ant.* I. 130. cf. 128.). He was (*as yt is ywrite*) pur messed þo (R. OF GL. I. 86.). Amonges us . . . That man is dweslynge, And evere hath, *as I hope*, And evere shal her-after (P. PLOUGHM. p. 152. At that cytee entrethe the ryvere of Nyle in to the see; *as I to you have seyde before* (MAUNDEV. p. 56.). I seyde . . . that thei deidden synne, to hide Goddis myracle, *as me seemed* (p. 61.). A forster was he sothely, *as I gesse* (CHAUC., C. T. 117.). For, *as seint Jerom saith*, at every time that I remembre of the day of doom I quake (ib. p. 187. I.). *so* is often immediately prefixed to this *as*: For letter sleth, *so as we clerkes sayn* (CHAUC., C. T. 7376. cf. 38.), with which the Anglosax. may be compared: Varna þe við gitsunge forþam þe heó vitóðlice is eallra yfela yvritruma* *svá svá se apostol ávrát* (BASIL., *Advice* 9.). Halfsax.: O Moysesess laþhe stod *Swa sumn icc habbe shawedd*, þatt aþ þeþ sholldenn brinngett lac (ORM. 7881.). The Gr. *ὡς*, and Lat *sicut* are thus employed. In Anglosax. *þás*, *þe* is familiar along with *svá*. Heora (sc. scipa) *vás svá feala svá næfre ær, þás þe ús béc secgað*, on Angel-cynne ne gevruden on nānes cyninges dāge (SAX. CHR. 1009.). *Þæra öðer vās, þás þe hie gevislicost ge-vitan meahton*, idese onlicnes (BEOV. 2703.). *Þā geseah heó openum eāgum, þās þe hire þūhte*, of þās hūses hrōfe ufan micel leoht cuman (THORPE, *Anal.* p. 53.). The notion *quatenus* mingles with *sicut*.

- ββ. The dependent sentence may contain an assertion, the principal sentence of which lies, complete or implicitly, in the context. Comp. p. 486.

As I hope For quiet days . . . the strong'st suggestion Our worser genius can, shall never melt Mine honor into lust (SHAKSP., *Temp.* 4, 1.). No, *as I am a man* (SHAKSP., 1, 2.). His spiritual attendants regularly adjured him, *as he loved his soul*, to emancipate his brethren (MACAUL., *Hist. of E. I.* 24.). „A glass of wine, sir?“ „Nay, madam (eyes the wine — drinks). Nectar, *as I am a man.*“ (TAYLOR A. READE, *Masks* 1, 2.).

If the form of assertion commences with *so*, it appears as an elliptical principal sentence. You never shall (*so help you truth and heaven!* Embrace each other's love etc. (SHAKSP., *Rich.* II. 1, 3.). And I swear . . . *So help me our Lord and his saints!* (BULW., *Rienzi* 4, 5.). This with his sword he will maintain, *So help him God and his good cause* (SCOTT, *L. Minstr.* 5, 19.). The second member of the comparison is given in the sentence to which the form is added.

The assertion by the sentence with *as*, to which no correspond-

ing particle stands opposed, is long presented by Old-Engl.: And as thou were of a mayde ybore, sofre me never to be y-lore (HALLIW., Freemas. 651.). Or I wol dye, as wisly God me save (CHAUC., C. T. 3280.). As help me god, it wol not be (3709.). As I am faithful man . . I hadde lever etc. (15377.). — The form with *so* (*svá*), is older, which always has the character of imprecation. Ich wille oup, so God me rede! (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 277.) Alle . . Ben fowden sothe, so God me save! (I. 195.) That I have . . Sworen Goddes soule, And so me God helpe! (P. PLOTGHEM. p. 99.) A merry child he was, so God me save! (CHAUC., C. T. 3325.). So mote I thrive, I shall etc. (3675. cf. 7346. 7391. 7524. [al so 15330.] Gramatica ys the furste syens y-wysse, Dialectica the secunde, so have y blysse! (HALLIW., Freemas. 557. cf. 239.) Hallsax.: Swa me help min hond, þis forwerde ich þe halde (LAJAM. II. 241.). Anglosax.: Svá ic áge Pharaones helde ne farað ge ealle heonon ær þam þe eóver lassa bróder cume hider (GEN. 42, 16.).

- γγ. If an action is compared, with respect to the manner of its accomplishment or effect, with an assumed one (as its condition), the latter may be annexed by *as*, although here the conjunctions *as if*, *as though*, occur. See p. 472 and II. 1. p. 128.

Undoing all, as all had never been (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 1, 1.). Each on himself rely'd As only in his arm the moment lay (Of victory (MLT. P. L. 6, 238.). Then did she come out in haste, as she had suddenly bethought herself (COLER., Picc. 1, 7.). He looks as he had seen a ghost (Wallenst. 1, 5.). Even now you look on me As you were not my friend, and as if you Discovered that I thought so (SHELLEY, Cenci 1, 2.). Hence the form as it were: The crown was quite bald, but the base was fringed round, as it were, with a little soft, glossy, silver-hued hair (WARREN, DIARY 1, 18.). The paternal power Being, as't were, the shadow of his own (SHELLEY, Cenci 2, 1.). Upon that rests also the construction of *as* with a few members of sentences, which else take *as if*: She lay down as by her sleeping sister (ROGERS, It., Montorio). He trusted his secrets to books as to faithful friends [velut fidis sodalibus] (LEWES, G. I. 59.).

Old-Engl. again offers the forms *as*, *also* and *so* concurrently: Neptanabus lokid a-skof, As he no gef nought thereof ALIS. 874.). Hit draweth up of urthe in drie wether, as hit were a drie breth (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 135.). This monstre . . was as it hadde ben a men (MAUNDEV. p. 47). als so is unfamiliar: Oc daren stille in here pit, als so he weren of dede offrigt (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 226.), where *als* is correlative of *so*. In Hallsax. *alse*, *al swa* stands in this case also: Ofte heo luten a-dun, alse heo wolden ligen; ofte heo up lupan, alse heo fleon wolden (LAJAM. I. 80.). Bi þone toppe he hine nom al swa he hine wolde of-slean (I. 30.). So points to the oldest form. Old-Engl.: And saw on armed so hit weore his men (ALIS. 3915.). Hallsax.: Ac we scullen steppen heom to swa we stelen wolden (LAJAM. II. 249.). swilc, swulc is concurrently employed: Bi-foren þan wefeðe he heo (sc. þe hude) spradde, swlc he leie on bedde (I. 52.). Ælc spac wið oðer swulc he weore his broðer (II. 214.). In Anglosax. svá, svá

svá, *svylce* are used: *Discas lagon and dýre svyrd ðmige purh-etene, svá hie við eorðan fāðm þúsend vintra þær eardodon* (BEOW. 6089). *Þā geseah heō purh svefn, svá svá he semninga from hire ahafen and alæded være* (THORPE, Anal. 52.). *Svurdleóma stód svylce eal Finnsburuh fjrenu være* (FIGHT AT FINNESS., Thorpe p. 71.). *Hvi dydest þu svá þat þu átlæddeð mine dōhtra svilc hit gehergode hāftlingas væron* (GEN. 31. 16). In the later corrupt language *als* also stands as the correlative of *svile*: *Vard þe sunne svilc als it vare þre-niht ald mōne* (SAX. CHR. 1135.).

With a few members of sentences the particles quoted also occur in the meaning of *velut*, *quasi*. Old-Engl.: *Thei lijn as in a drem* (MACNDEV. p. 288.). Anglosax.: *Deað svá svá bútan orde* [quasi sine ferro] (PAST. 40.). *Þat vāter stód svylce tvegen hēge veallas* (EXOD. 14, 22.). Here, moreover, the meaning of *quasi* comes near to that of *sicut*.

As to *as* taking the place of *and* See p. 345. The combination of *that* with *as* in this sense is settled by what has been said about the addition of *that* to conjunctions of all kinds See p. 390. Old-Engl.: He bleynte and cryed a! *As that he stongen were unto the herte* (CHAUC., C. T. 1080.) *Sche feyned hir as that she moste goon* Ther as ye wot that every wight moot neede (9824).

As to the similar use of *cum*, *cume* in Old-French, *come* in Ital. *alsò*, *als* and in Old- and Mod.-Highdutch, see my Syntax of the Mod.-Fr. Language Vol. II. and Diez, Romance Gr. 3, 351.

- ð. It has been pointed out at p. 453 how the dependent sentence with *as* becomes a causal sentence in the stricter sense.

The formal annexation of the sentence with *as*, especially with the substantive verb of the predicate, to adjectives and participles, is related, as in: *Tortured as I am* with my own disappointments, is this a time for explanations? (GOLDSM., She Stoops 4.). *Kings . . should groan for such advantages; but we, humbled as we are*, should yearn for them (VIC. 29.). *Young, curious, excitable as he was*, nothing is more natural than that he should somewhat shock the "fair respectability" by his pranks and extravagancies (LEWES, G. I. 60.). A correlative of comparison may also complete the comparison: "I have no bed to go to." — "It's provoking . . so tired as you are too." TH. HOOK, Gilb. Gurney 5.) — These sentences may also become concessive: They were obliged to seek cheaper lodgings — *moderate as was the rent required for those* they had so long occupied (WARREN, Diary 2, 5), which have been treated of at p. 480.

From these is likewise to be distinguished the formal annexation of the sentence with *as*, particularly to those substantives and adjectives which contain a reproach. The dependent sentence becomes, as it were, a strengthening assurance of the adequate existence of the quality attributed to a person. I thought it should have continued alwaies Like a *fole as I am* and a drunken knave (JACK JUGLER p. 24.). Telling her, all would been very well, if she had not intermeddled, like a *b—as she was* (FIELD., J. Andr. 2, 5.). Ah, grovel in the dust! crouch — crouch! *wild beast as thou art!* (BULW., Rienzi 1, 12.)

In this case *as* interchanges with *that*. *Beast that I was* to trust him (BEN JONS., Ev. h. Hum. 4, 6.). *Beast that thou art!* (SHELLEY, Cenci 1, 3.) *Fool that I was* to choose so cold a friend To urge my cause (ADDIS., Cato 3, 3.). *Fool that I was*, to think of leaving a world, where such pleasure was to be had! (ROGERS, It, For. Trav.) An excellent ship; *fool that I was* to quit her (DOUGL. JERROLD, Prison of War 1, 1.). *Wretched woman that I am!* (ROGERS, It.: The Bag of Gold.) And this has turned thy brain, *silly urchin that thou art* (BULW. Rienzi 4, 1.). Punctual, silent, frugal, the sleek *Tartuffe that he was* (CARLYLE, Fr. Revol. 3, 2, 2.). *O cursed that I am!* (GASCOYNE, Jocasta 1, 1.). Ah, *wretched that I am!* Where shall I turn? (SHELLEY, Cenci 1, 2.)

The first cited employment of the dependent sentence belongs especially to the modern tongue. See p. 483. German employs in similar cases the particles *wie* and *als*. *As* interchanging with *that* recalls the French construction: *enfant que vous êtes; fou que je suis*, and the like, wherein the relative *that* substituted for *que*, is treated like the comparative particle (*quam = sicut*) contained in the Old-French in *faire, que fols, que sage, que male beste* etc. Comp. my syntax of the Mod.-French Language Vol. II. 215. Hence in Old-Engl.: Ne dude noȝt *as þe wise* (R. of Gl. II. 451.). Alle that wyrk *as the wise* (TOWN. M. p. 9.). He cried *as uncourteys* (RICH. C. DE L. 2111.). Harkyns *as heynd* (TOWN. M. p. 131.). Halfsax.: He dude *al so wis mon* (LAȜAM. II. 520.).

ee. The transfer of the modal dependent sentence to the province of time has time has been treated of p. 433.

ζζ. If the modal determination is immediately supported by a predicative or attributive adjective, or by an adverb in the principal sentence, the correlative of *as* is often wanting on the one hand, and most naturally where the notion in regard which the members are compared is taken absolutely, so that both members have a share in it in a like manner, but also, on the otherhand, where that notion itself would have in the correlative an indication of the measure or degree, which are determined by the dependent sentence.

The former mode of comparison, not always to be strictly separated from the other, particularly applied with *as* with adjectives: High stomach'd are they both . . In rage *deaf as the sea, hasty as fire* (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 1, 1.). To fly through regions *unconfined as air* (GOLDSM., Vic. 29.). "I can do nothing with this boy, Sir," said he, *red as fire* (MARRYAT, J. Faithf. 1, 3, 3.). Thy thoughts Are *eager as the favouring darkness* (TALFOURD, Ion 3, 2.). The September world remains *dark, fuliginous, as Lapland witch-midnight* (CARLYLE, Fr. Revol. 3, 1, 1.). With demonstration *clear as Scripture* (3, 2, 2.). Two adjectives are also combined by *as*, which are to have validity in the same manner: While the fair populace of crowding beauties, *Plebeian as Patrician*, cheer'd us on With dazzling smiles

(BYRON, Foscare 1, 1.). *Generous as brave*, Affection, kindness, the sweet offices Of duty and love were from his tenderest years To him as needful as his daily bread (ROGERS, It., Foscare). Yet was it *sad as sweet* (ib.). Both with adjectives and adverbs the dependent sentence frequently points more decidedly to a determination of measure and degree. This is *strange and barbarous as ever I heard* (BEN JONS., Ev. Man in h. Hum. 4, 5). Cerdon and Colon, warriors *stout*, And *resolute as ever fought* (BUTL., Hud. 1, 3, 245. cf. 1, 2, 687.). A *very troublesome* fellow this *as ever I met with* (GOLDSM., She Stoops 2.) *Far as Creation's ample range extends*, The scale of sensual, mental powers ascends (POPE, Essay on M. 1, 207. cf. 1, 101.). *Often as returns* The twentieth of September, they are bound *Fast* from the midnight watch to pray till morn (WALPOLE, Myster. Mother 1, 1.). But humour them, they are *water soon as fire* (SHERID. KNOWLES, Virgin. 5, 1.). To-morrow *early as the breaking day* We rendezvous behind the citron-grove (SOUTHERN, Oroon. 3, 2.). Conduct them *silently as may be* To the house (COLER., Wallenst. 4, 2.). Whose heart is warmly bound to thee *Close as the tenderest links can bind* (TH. MOORE p. 74.). Comp. *soon* as p. 435, *long* as p. 441.

In the older English the phenomena recur, when *so* of course still occurs alongside of *as* in the subordinate member: *De prince pat in tyme of werre as a lomb ys bope meke & mylde*, And in tyme of pes as a lyon bope cruel & wylde (R. OF GL. I. 57.). *As an appel* the urthe is *round* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 132.). A pruest *proude ase a po* (Polit. S. p. 159.). *Thei ben blake as the Moures* (MACNDEV. p. 46.). A gay daggere, Harneysed wel, and *scharp as poynt of spere* (CHAUC. C. T. 113.). He is *blac so bro of qual* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 225.). He *bicam blind so ston* (SEYDN SAGES 2359.). Theo day *bycam dark so the nyght* (ALIS. 642.). Off that lady *whyte so flour* (RICH. C. DE L. 138.). — He riseð and *remeð lude so he mai* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 225.). Alisaundre comuth . . Al *fast as he may* (ALIS. 3445.). Ys ther ony renogat among us *fer as ye knawe?* (COV. MYST. p. 384.). A *pratty child* is he, *As syttes on a woman's knee* (TOWN. M. p. 115.). Anglosax.: *Heò vās hāl gevorden svā seò ððer* (MATH. 12, 13.). *Beð eornostlice gleāve svā nāddran*, and *bilvite svā culfran* (10, 16.). — *Sona svā he pā boc unfeöld*, pā fnde he pær āvriten, Dryhtnes Gāst ys ofer me (LUC. 4, 17.). Comp. Temporal Sentence p. 436.

77. The incomplete dependent sentence with *as* also appears where members of sentences are joined as instances to the assertion contained in the principal sentence.

I am sworn brother to a leash of drawers, and can tell them all by their Christian names *as* — *Tom, Dick, and Francis* (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 2, 4.). I wonder how these common forms, *as God save you, and You are welcome*, are come to be a habit in our lives (BEN JONS., Silent Wom. 5, 1.). In the other cities, *as Milan, as Verona, as Bologna*, the people are under the rule of one man (BULW.,

Rienzi 2, 1.). Some, as *Bibliopolic Momoro*, seem to hint afar off something which smells of Agrarian Law (CARLYLE, *Fr. Revol.* 3, 1, 1.).

Before substantive members of a sentence the correlative *such* also appears: Allan Ramsay inserted several old ballads, *such as Cruel Barbara Allan, The Bonnie Earl of Murray*, etc. (SCOTT, *Minstrelsy* I. 43.). — Old-Engl.: *Hii rerde abbeyes & priories vor her synnes po, As Teokesbury & Oseneye* (R. OF GL. II. 369.) *Zomen, that kepen bryddes, as ostrycches, gersfacouns, sparehawkes* etc. (MAUNDEV. p. 238. cf. 118.). *Tentes that thei maken of skynnes of bestes, as of camaylles* (p. 63.). In place, where they may fynden watre, *as on the Rede See* (ib.). If he repreve him uncharitably of synne, *as, thou holour, thou dronkelewe harlot, and so forth* (CHACC., C. T. p. 193. II.). In Anglosax. the specific notion, joined by way of example to the more general notion, is introduced with *svá sáá*: *Sume beoð lang sveorede svá svá svanas and ylfettan* (BASIL., Hexam. 8.). *Þá beoð lang-svyrede þe libbað be garse, svá svá oľfend, and assa, hors and hryðeru, heaðeðr and riðeðr, and geheylce cðre* (9.). Comp. the Lat. *ut*, the Germ. *als*.

29. In modern times *as* is frequently associated with a predicative nominative and accusative See Vol. II. 1. p. 37 and 202. In this case the predicative determination is detached from immediate combination with the verb, and the subject or object of the sentence is represented, as it were, adequately to another object.

To prey on nothing that *doth seem as dead* (SHAKSP., *As You Like It* 4, 3.). Let him *be regarded As the most noble corse* (*Coriol.* 5, 5.). This Wednesday is *to be regarded as one of the notabest* (CARLYLE, *Fr. Revol.* 3, 1, 1.). Actions . . . *are represented . . . as wise, virtuous, heroic* (MACAUL., *Essays* III. 5.). Man is *generally represented as an animal formed for, and delighted in, society* (FIELD, *Essay on Conversat.* init.). That great anomaly *known as the dispersing power* (MACAUL., *Hist. of E.* 31.). — The unthinking *have censured this as partiality* (GOLDSM., *Vic.* 29.). He whom all civilized nations now *acknowledge as the Father of Poetry* (SCOTT, *Minstrelsy* I. 8.). I *knew myself Only as his — his daughter* (COLER., *Picc.* 2, 7.). We are by no means without sympathy for Mr. Montagu even in what we *consider as his weakness* (MACAUL., *Essays* III. 2.).

In such cases moreover the idea of comparison or of equation partly shines through as a subjective view. The German *als* and the Fr. *comme* likewise appear: the former is here as foreign to Old, and even to Mod.-Highdutch as *as* to Anglosax. For instances of Old-Engl. See Vol. II. 1. p. 202., with which comp.: *Thei semen as wode* (MAUNDEV. p. 50.). *Nevere afre schulle thei ben holden as frendes* (p. 202.). And *held that lord as prynce of that contree* (p. 151.). How near, moreover, the decided comparison stands to such an annexation of a predicative notion is shewn by such instances as: Mod-Engl.: *I am but as a guiltless messenger* (SHAKSP., *As You Like It* 4, 3.). Old-Engl.: *Thei ben but as nakyd lettris* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., *Rel. Ant.* II. 50.), and the like.

u. Nearly related to the transmutation of the predicative de-

termination into a modal one stands the like process with a notion otherwise appositive. Apposition absolutely attributes a determination to an object, and may be reduced to an adjective sentence: if the modal particle *as* is added, the object is considered, so far as it is to be set as identical with a determination, or so far as a determination belongs to it, when *as* may pass into the causal meaning.

The *bears and dogs* on four legs go, *As beasts* but synodmen on two (BUTL., Hud. 1, 3, 1297.). From the opinions which *he* expresses *as a biographer* we often dissent (MACAUL., Essays III. 1.). The national feeling of the Italians impelled them to resist any change which might deprive their country of the honours and advantages which *she* enjoyed *as the seat of the government of the Universal Church* (IV. 112.) *As a man* who has embraced His child for the first time since infancy, And presently must part with him for ever, *I* do adjure ye leave us! (TALFOURD, Ion. 4, 1.) Of *Ritson's* own talents *as an editor of ancient poetry* we shall have occasion to speak hereafter (SCOTT, Minstrelesy I. 68.). With that the joining of adjective notions stands in connection: The king was her head. The limits of the authority which *he* possessed *as such*, were not traced with precision (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 53.). Waverley . . answered . . that he could not venture to offer *an opinion as derived from military skill* (SCOTT, Waverley 11.). How notions annexed with *as* are treated with the same freedom as appositions is discussed as at p. 326.

Thus the Germ : *als* and Fr. *comme* are used in like manner. Old-Engl.: *Cordeylle* þe kyndom fong *as þe ryzt eyr* (R. OF GL. I. 37.). *He* went to Rome, *as man of holy wille* (LANGT. I. 20.). To maken *him* homage, *as the most noble kyng* (MAUNDEV. p. 193.). We pray you, *as oure freynde*, Alle nyght to abyde for charite (TOWN M. p. 275.). *His* name . . *as a seynt* (MAUNDEV. p. 177.). See elsewhere: Þis *Roseamiraduk*, *als fol & unwise*, His letter gan rebuk, sette it at light prise (LANGT. II. 246.). With that compare the form: *Creseide* . . lite answerde *As she that was with sorow oppressed so* (CHAUC., Troil. a. Cres. 5, 177.). Corresponding constructions are wanting in the most ancient times.

That *as* may often be exchanged for *like* in incomplete sentences before substantive notions is natural. *Like our shadows*, Our wishes lengthen, *as our sun declines* (YOUNG, N. Th. 5, 661.). It will make her sleep *like Juliet's drug* (OXENFORD, Twice Killed 1, 2.). Old-Engl.: He groneth *lik our boor* (CHAUC., C. T. 7411.). *Like* is in such a case an adjective or adverb, and supposes the likeness or similarity of two objects or classes of objects.

But *like* also combines with *as*, when the correlative *so* may follow the *as*: *like* is, properly speaking, the adverbial correlative of *as*, which in the latter case is resumed by *so*. *Like as a father pitieth his children*, *so* the Lord pitieth them that fear him (Ps. 103, 13.) *Like as a sun*, *so* shines she in the east (COLER, Picc. 4, 1.). Old-Engl : Euen *lyke as Eve modyr of wo was*, *So* xal a maydyn be modyr off blyss (COV. MYST. p. 67.). Had i-ptyked *lik as he were wood* (CHAUC., C. T. 12504.). I must wepe *lyke as*

ze do (Cov. MYST. p. 235.). The Fader voyce oure myrthes to amende Was mad to me *lyke as a man* (TOWN. M. p. 245.). Thus *geliche als* stands in Mid.-Highdutch: So daz ir lop *geliche* ob allem lobe schöne *als ein kröne* swebt (v. D. HAGEN, Minnes 2, 142.). Dô gebârte si *geliche als si mit bœsem mære zuo im gesendet wære* (IWEIN 89); hence later *gleich als* and *gleichwie*. In Anglosax. *gelice* and *anlice* as correlatives of *svá*: Ðæt ve *gelice* sceolon leánun hléotan *svá ve videfeorh veorcum hlóðun* (CYNEVULF, Crist 783. Grein). Ða hi me ymbsealdon *samod anlice svá beón bitere* (Ps. 107, 12.).

- γ. The particle *as* is, in many combinations, used apparently pleonastically, so far as the reference to a second member of the comparison is more remote. It operates in a restrictive manner, so that a determination of a sentence, or even a sentence is thereby expressly pointed at, which is represented as precisely measured and adequate.

This *as* is found with adverbs of time: Though in mysterious terms, judg'd *as then* best (MILT., P, L. 10, 173.). My return to England has not *as yet* been made public GOLDSM., G. Nat. M. 3.). Action and enterprise were dearer to him, *as yet*, than the rewards which they proffered (BULW., Rienzi 3, 1.). *As yet* all seemed to promise well (MACAUL., Hist., of E. II. 145.). It often appears with prepositional members, especially with *to* and *for*. Thy brother Fsau, *as touching thee*, comfort himself, purposing to kill thee (GEN. 27, 42.). I am not indifferent *as to any one thing* that relates to you (CHESTERFIELD, Lett.). No man is correctly informed *as to the past* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 3.). A man may . . live a free life *as to wine or women* (SHELLEY, Cenci I. 2.). But *as to the wench*, I am resolved she shall not settle here (FIELD., J. Andr. 4, 3.). She gave them instructions *as to the personal comforts of her new charge* (BULW., Rienzi 4, 1.). *As to the armies*, public defence must evidently be put on a proper footing (CARLYLE, Fr. Revol. 3, 2, 2.). *As for the peers*, that back the clergy thus, If I be king, not one of them shall live (MARLOWE, Edw. II. 1, 4.). *As for me*, behold, my covenant is with thee (GEN. 17, 4. cf. 15. 20.). *As for the dirty slut*, we shall have nothing to do with her (FIELD., J. Andr. 4, 3.). *As for the spontaneous Commune*, one may say that there never was on earth a stranger town-council (CARL., Fr. Revol. 3, 1, 1.). *As for bed* this chair will do vastly well (BULW., Maltrav. 1, 1.). Thus *as* also stands with *to* before sentences used substantively: *As to the how this act Be warranted*, it rests with you (SHELLEY, Cenci 4, 2.). The bigger boy was questioned *as to what efforts he had made* to rescue his companion (TH. HOOK, Gilb. Gurney 1.). *As* is also met with in combination with *how* and *why*, both in abbreviated and complete sentences: „It's an excellent policy to owe much in these days, if you note it.“ „*As how*, good signior?“ (BEN JONS., Ev. Man out of h. Hum. 1, 1.). „*Marcia might still be yours.*“ — „*As how*, dear Syphax?“ (ADDIS, Cato 2, 5.). Now are the Jacobins milder; *as how could they*, the flower of patriotism? (CARL., Fr. Revol. 3, 1, 1.) Much of this sort belongs to the

lower people: If he could be ruined alone, she should be very willing of it; for because *as why*, his worship very well knew he deserved it (FIELD., J. Andr. 3, 12.). I believe *as how your man deals with the devil* (SMOLLET, H. Clinker I. 274.). She says, *as how . . . you should have thought of all this long ago* (WARREN, Diary 2, 5.). As to the interrogative instead of the substantive sentence with *that* See p. 412.

Instead of *as to*, *as for*, quantum ad, quod attinet ad, the form *as respects* is also used: *As respects natural religion . . .* it is not easy to see that a philosopher of the present day is more favourably situated than Thales or Simonides (MACAUL., Essays IV. 100. cf. 104.), wherein, with other anomalies, the original character of the *as* comes clearly out.

This *as*, which has a partial counterpart in the Mod.-Highdutch *als* in combination with *heute*, *gestern*, *morgen*, *übermorgen* and the like, as well as in common life with various other determinations, is early met with in many cases in English, where it seems to be added pleonastically. So too with the statement of the number of years: Ac he deide . . . *As endleue hundred zer of grace & eizteti & nine* (R. of GL. II. 481.). Henri, is eldoste sone, ibore was in this wo, *As in twelf hundred zer & eizte & nammo* (II. 494.). He spousesde þe quene *As in þe zer of grace a þousand and seventene* (I. 317.); with adverbs; Towche me nott *as zet*, Mary (Cov. MYST. p. 361.). Beth glad and joyful *as for than* (p. 363.). He shalle be slayn *as tyte* (Town. M. p. 230.); likewise with prepositional members of all kinds: *As to my doome*, Thou art a maister (CHAUC. C. T. 15423.). *As to my thynkyng*, these days thre . . . Be more lengere in ther degré Than alle the space of XII þere day (Cov. MYST. p. 197.). Suffising right enough *as for a day* (CHAUC., C. T. 3297.). And *as ffor me thoro Goddys grace dyvyne*, I wyl forthwith aplye me therto (Cov. MYST. p. 34.). And *as for yourself* here, thus xal þe begynne (p. 86.). *As for that*, serys, have þe no dowth (p. 269.). Ye mosten be ful derne *as in this caas* (CHAUC., C. T. 3297. cf. 3385. 6979. 7107. Cov. MYST. p. 69.). Ne strengre was in feld of alle thing *As in his tyme* (CHAUC. 16039.). To þe on ende of Engolond, *as in þe West Soupe* (R. of GL. I. 20.). For theau love thy sonne hym make, *As in the stede of me* (TORRENT 2085.). Corowned she was, *as aftir his degré* (CHAUC., C. T. 15851.). For fro his vices he wol him chastise Discretly *as by word*, and nought by dede (15991.); with the infinitive with *to*: But *as to speake of love . . .* I had a lord, to whom I wedded was (Troil. a. Cres. 5, 974.). Now *as to speke of the firste coveitise* etc. (C. T. p. 191. II.) It is also found with *how*: „And do I lawfully.“ — „*As how?*“ (Town. M. p. 230.). Thou wote *as how* (p. 249.). Lastly *as* imperative sentences: That hote cultre . . . *As lene it me* (CHAUC., C. T. 3774.). *As beth not wroth with me* (Troil. a. Cres. 5, 147.). For love of God . . . *As go we seene the paleis of Creseide* (5, 522.). This usage does not extend back into Hallsax. From that is to be distinguished the use of *as* for the Gr. *ὡς* (also *ὡςτε*), in the sense of an approximate determination with numbers, for which the modern language uses *about*: Whanne þei hadden rowide *as fyue and twenty furlongis or þritti* (WYCL., Joh. 6, 19.). The Goth. here used *sve*, as MARC. 5, 13. 8, 9. LUC. 1, 56. 3, 23. 8, 42. 9, 14. 28. etc. Anglosax., where it renders this determination at all with numbers, *svylce*: Vunede mid hyre *svylce þryȝ mōnðas* (LUC. 1, 56.). Vās on elde *svylce þryȝig vintre* (3, 23.). Þā hig hāfdon gerōven *svylce twentig furlonga* (Joh. 6, 19.). The number is only good by way of comparison, that is, approximatively.

e. If it is a question with the comparison, not immediately of equality or adequacy, but the higher or lower determination of the degree of the one member is made dependent upon that of the other, a proportional equation arises. The higher degree on the one-side may then be conditioned by the lower one on the other. The determination of degree being in fact mutual, the distinction of a principal and a dependent sentence depends not so much upon the collocation of sentences as upon the total context, which causes a conditioning member, (a dependent sentence) to be separated from the conditional one (the principal sentence). Ordinarily a comparative stands in both members.

α. The opposition of two comparatives, accompanied by *the* the old instrumental, is familiar, which may be attached to various determinations in both sentences of the period. *The* before the comparatives answers to the Lat. *quo* — *eo*, *quanto* — *tanto*, the Gr. ὅσῳ τοσούτῳ, an ablative or dative of the measure.

The smaller compass that the realme doth holde, The easier is svey therof to welde (FERREX A. PORR. 1, 2.). And *all the more it seeks to hide itself, the bigger bulk it shows* (SHAKSP., Temp. 3, 1.). Who wickedly is wise, or madly brave, Is but *the more a fool, the more a knave* (POPE, Essay on M. 4, 231.). *The earlier you rise, the better your nerves will bear study* (CHATHAM, Lett. 18.). And still *the less they understand, The more th' admire his sleight of hand* (BUTL. Hud. 2, 3, 5.). *The more he look'd at her, The less he liked her* (TENNYSON p. 215.). The correlative may be wanting in the principal sentence: *The hot hell . . tortures him now more, the more he sees Of pleasure not for him ordain'd* (MILT., P. L. 9, 489.). As beards, *the nearer that they tend To th'earth, still grow more reverend* BUTL., Hud. 2, 1, 261.).

This opposition of *the* — *the*, when, as in some of the instances quoted, the particle *that* is often added to the dependent sentence, is familiar in Old-Engl. *The bet the be, the bet the byse* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 113.). And *ever the lasse that he bereth, The hardier he is of horte* (P. PLOUGHM p. 291 sq.). *Evyr the fayrer that she spake, The fouler braydes gan he make* (IPOMYDON 1833.). *The sarre he penest hem yn that plase, The more yoye wes to hem of Cristus grace* (HALLIW., Freemas. 525.). *The more they be, the more I schal sloo* (RICH. C. DE L. 640.). *The lenger they tary, the more is my payne* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 45.). *Ever fro the heigher degré that man fallith, the more is he thral* (CHACC, C. T. p. 186. II. cf. 187. II. 188. I. 192. I. 193. II. 194. II. 209. I.). *Ever the hiere that thou art, Ever the lover be thy hert* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 92.). *A the more I loke theron, A the more I thynke I fon* (TOWN. M. p. 229.). *The the* can be absent from the principal sentence. *The longere that day dawes, Wars pepille wars lawes* (TOWN. M. p. 310.). The frequent strengthening by *ever*, a (= Anglosax. *ā*) is conformable to the most ancient usage, the opposition of comparatives with *the* — *the* is, however, not frequently met with. Anglosax.: Symle bið *pý heardra, þe hit hreoh vāter svearte sæstreāmas sviðor beātað* (CÆDM. 1320.). Svā þincð ānra gehvām eorð-būendra siō sode gesæld symbe *þe betere and pý vynsunre, þe he vīta mī heardra hēnða her āðregeð* (ÆLFREDS METRA 12, 18. Grein). Ælc

pingd [leg. ping] *pé hit fyrr bið pé hit pé lässe* pingð (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 3.). See b.

The absence of *the* in the principal sentence answers to the omission of the demonstratives τοσούτω εο. Καλεπώτεροι ἔσονται ὅσω νεώτεροι εἰσι (PLATO, Apol. p. 39. D.). *Consilium quo audacius erat, magis placebat* (LIV. 25, 38.).

- β. The equality of relation of both members to each other is concurrently expressed by the modal particle *as* and *so*. The quantitative determination *much* is added before the comparative to the latter, which may appear in the principal sentence, and it also stands with *as*, if it is opposed in the principal sentence to *as* in the dependent sentence. *As* is commonly used onesidedly in the principal sentence. The instrumental *the* may either be added to the comparative or be absent.

And *the more I see Pleasures about me, so much more I feel Torment within me* (MILT., P. L. 9, 119.). But *the more he charged them, so much the more a great deal they published it* (MARK. 7, 36.). *As much our ardeur less, as greater is our light* (YOUNG, N. Th. 9, 991.). The good or bad the gifts of fortune gain; But these *less* taste them, *as they worse obtain* (POPE, Essay on M. 4, 83.). Without satiety, tho' e'er so blest, And but *more relish'd as the more distress'd* (4, 317.). While the clouds, that crowd away before the driving wind, *More ardent as the disk emerges more*, Resemble most some city in a blaze Seen through the leafless wood (COWP. p. 252.). I do not think that I ought to abandon Rumelia for the Peloponnesus until *that Government shall desire it; and the more so, as this part is exposed in a greater degree to the enemy* (BYRON, Lett.).

A positive in the member with *as* sometimes stands opposed to the comparative. Self-love still *stronger, as its objects nigh* (POPE, Essay on M. 2, 71.). *More pow'rful each as needful to the rest* 3, 299.).

How much is also opposed as a correlative to the particle *so*, when appearing with *much* before a comparative or any other determination in the sentence, when the preposition *by* ordinarily stands in both members of the period. *How*, properly the instrumental of the interrogative pronoun, has a relative meaning. Although comparatives do not come absolutely under consideration, the preposition *by* especially gives to the correlative notions the meaning of *tanto — quanto*, which diverges from the simple equation by *so — as*. *By how much better than my word I am, By so much shall I falsify men's hopes* (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 1, 2.). „How much unlook'd for is this expedition!“ — „By how much unexpected, by so much We must awake endeavour for defence.“ (John 2, 1.) *By how much they would diminish the present extent of the sea, so much they would impair the fertility, and fountains, and rivers of the earth* (BENTLEY in Webster v. how.).

The use of adverbs of mood points to the originally most widely diffused form of this junction of sentences, wherein *so — so* (svā . . svā) stand before comparatives. Old-Engl.: And in als moche as thilke love is more grevous to performe, so moche is the more gret remedye and merit (CHAUC., C. T. p. 196. I.). And is þe prest swō muchele forcuðere þane

þe lewede, *swo he uurtæð his hore more þen his spuse* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 129). *So lengore o so betere* thou were (I. 48). Fader, Sune, Hali Gast, an almihti God, give ure lavedi his grace, *se lengre se mare* (II. 5.) [*se* does not stand for *þe*, but for *so*, as *se* occurs for *svá* in Anglosax.] In Anglosax. *svá* — *svá* commonly corresponds to each other in members with the comparative, concurrently with which the generalization by *á* or *æfre* often recurs. *Þé* is wanting, yet *micle* often stands with the comparative *Svá hig sviðor væron gevencte*, *svá væron hig sviðor gemenigfildes* (EXOD. 1. 12.). *Svá he him sviðor bebead*, *svá hig sviðor bododun* (MARC. 7. 36.). *Svá lengra dæg svá bið se niva mōna ufor geseven* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 14. cf. 9. 15. 19.). *Ac svá man sviðor spræc embe rihte lage*, *svá man dyde mære unlagas* (SAX. CHR. 1087.). *Ac svá he bið ylðra svá he fægerra bið* (BEDA 1. 1.). *Þá vās he svá micle sviðor on his mōde gedrefed*, *svá his mōd ær sviðor tō þām voruldsælðum geuonod vās* (BOETH. 1.). *Þæt ge villon fylstan tō þissum svá micle bet*, *svá us is callum mære pearf*, *þæt hit gebealden sý* (LEGG. EADM. II. 5.). And *á svá man bið mihtigra . . svá sceal he deoppor synna gebēten and ælce misdæda deórar ágyldan* (LEGG. ÆTHELR. IV. 37.). And *á svá man bið mihtigra . . óððe mārān hādes*, *svá sceal he deoppor for gode and for voruld unriht gebētan* (LEGG. Cnut. I. B. 35.). Hit is on vorolde *á svá long svá vyse* (G. HICKES, Dissertat. p. 99.). *Ac svá hit æfre forðlicor beon sceolde*, *svá veað hit fram dāge tō dāge lātre and vyse* (SAX. CHR. 1066. cf. 999.). With *svá* — *svá* agrees the Middle-Highdutch before comparatives: subsequently also *sō ie* — *sō ie* (ever) at the same time recalls the Anglosax. *á*, which is the very same word (Old-Highdutch *eo*, *io*). — *svá* is not always reduplicated. Of þam twigge siððan ludon lāðvende leng svá sviðor rēðe vāstme (CæDM. 986.).

Comparatives with *svá* are not always opposed to each other: *Me þin mōdsefa licað leng svá vel* (BEOW. 3711.) [Grein, Gloss. II. 498. supposes, instead of *vel* the comparative *sēl*]. Comp. Lat. *Quanto pecunia diles et voluptatibus opulentos, tanto magis imbelles Aeduos evincite* (TACIT., Ann. 3. 46.).

In *how much* — *so (much) how* the Germ. *wie*, has taken the place of *as (so)*. We have already seen it opposed to *so* in the modern language. See p. 503. In a similar manner *wie* has only in modern times been given as a correlative to *so* in German: in High-German *wie* — *wie* is repeated, not only before the positive, but the comparative also. See Vernaleken, German Syntax II. 403. The employment of *hū* in Anglosax. with the comparative instead of *svá* is remarkable, although not as the correlative of an opposed *svá*: *Lufade hine and lærde lenge hū geornor* (COP. EXON. 110, 18.) = whereas *hū* occurs only in the direct or indirect question and in the (interrogative) exclamation.

- γ. The members of the period in question stand of themselves in a causal relation; the decision as to the principal members depends upon which of both is to be considered as containing the consequence. The dependent Sentence of the period may therefore be readily exchanged for a causal sentence in the stricter sense, which explains in any manner the heightened measure in the principal sentence. Sentences of this sort are attached not merely by *as*, *inasmuch as*, and the like, but also by *that*, *because* etc. See p. 451.

That other dependent sentences, such as conditional and concessive sentences may be added to a principal sentence with the determination of an enhanced degree, is readily intelligible. To the last named belong the sentences whose principal sentences contain *nevertheless*.

3. The opposition of two superlatives within the same sentence or in two sentences may be considered as the substitute for a period with the reduplicated comparative and its correlatives.

The *fairest* mark is *easiest* hit (BUTL., Hud. II. 1, 663.). The *farthest* from the fear, Are often *nearest* to the stroke of death (YOUNG, N. Th. 5, 790.). Like a coy maiden, Ease, when courted *most*, *Farthest* retires — an idol, at whose shrine Who *oftnest* sacrifice are favour'd *least* (COWP. p. 173.). They who know the *most* Must mourn the *deepest* o'er the fatal truth (BYR., Manfr. 1, 1).

In sentences of this sort is properly speaking, only predicated that one determination enhanced to the highest degree is to be thought as united with another of the same degree, or, in negative sentences, as not combined with it. Such comparisons belong to all periods of the language. Old-Engl.: When the coppe is *follest*, thenne ber hire *seyrest* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 112.). Ever the *levest* we leoseth *a-last* (WRIGHT, Polit, S. p. 149.). The *grettest* clerks beth not the *wisest* men (CHAUC., C. T. 4052.). Anglosax.: Manega *fyrreste* beoð *ytteste*, and *ytteste*, *fyrweste* (LUC. 9, 48.). — Comp. Lat. *Summum jus, summa injuria* (CIC., Offic. 1, 10.). *Optimus quisque maxime* posteritati servit (LUC. 1, 15.). Gr.: *Ἀὐτὸς αἰσχρὸν εἶναι φύσει μάλιστα παθεῖν* (XENOPH., Mem. S. 4, 1, 3.).

- e. Sentences expressly stating that the subject matter of a sentence takes places in the degree, or proportion, in which that of the other is realized are those introduced by *in proportion as*. They may be readily transmuted into periods with comparatives accompanied by *the*, but are not themselves tied to the acceptance of comparatives, although they do not exclude them.

As rivers are often alike tranquil and profound, *in proportion as they are remote from the springs* etc. (BULW., Alice 1, 1.). *In proportion as he approached the regions* where he expected to find land, the impatience of his crews augmented (IRVING, Columb. 3. 4.). *In proportion as men know more and think more*, they look less at individuals and more at classes (MACAUL., Essays I. 6.).

The form, which rests upon the French *en proportion* belongs to the most recent times. With respect to the combination with *as* compare the Anglosax *be mæde swá*, in some measure kindred in sense: *Æghyrc dæde tōscāde man wārlice, and dōm āfter dæde medemige, be mæðe swá for gode sý gebeorhlic* (LEGG. ÆTHELW. IV. 11.). See also p. 490. Adequacy in general is expressed in the ancient language by *after hat*. Old-Engl.: Men that beoth i-bore under here miȝte i-wis Schulle habbe diverse miȝte, and lyf, *after that here vertu is* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 133.). Alle these thinges, *after thay be grete or smale*, engreggen the consciens of a man (CHAUC., C. T. p. 208. II.). Comp. Anglosax.: *After þon þe hi ær funden hæfdon wæs gehālgod tō biscope se leofa ver sanctus Paulinus* (BEDA 2, 9.) = *juxta quod dispositum fuerat, ordinatur episcopus*. With the relation of inequality, appearing in comparison, the complete or abbreviated dependent sentence receives the particle *than*, Anglosax. *panne, ponne*, which, in this application, answers to the Middle-Highdutch *danne, denne*, Mod.-Highdutch *dann, denn*, although this has from the sixteenth century been almost supplanted by *als*.

- a. *than* stands, with reference to a comparative. with the member exceeded qualitatively or quantitatively, with regard to the determination of more or less, expressed by the comparative. The two sentences may have either one common verb or different verbs of the predicate, and either a common subject or different subjects.

Different is the contraction of sentences with recurrent determinations of the sentence. I hear a tongue, *shriller than all the music* (SHAKSP., J. Cæs. 1, 2.). I will do a greater thing *than that* (Merry W. 1, 1.). The simple Catholic, who was content to be no *wiser than his fathers* (MACAUL., Essays IV. 108.). This tribunal of the Seventeenth is *swifter than most* (CARL., Fr. Revol. 3, 1, 1.). The number of her children is *greater than in any former age* (MACAUL., Essays IV. 98. Man that fears you *less than he* (SHAKSP., Coriol. 1, 4.). One is *more than a multitude* (BEN JONS., Cynth. Rev. 5, 3.). Sir Nicholas Bacon held the great seal *more than twenty years* (MACAUL., Essays III. 12.). That venerable peer . . . had appointed no *fewer than four gentlemen of his household* to draw up the events of his life (SCOTT, R. Roy 1.). He was often considered *rather* a pedantic *than* a practical commander, *more capable* to discourse of battles *than to give them* (MOTLEY, Rise of the Dutch Rep. 3, 1.). And treat this passion *more* as friend *than foe* (POPE, Essay on M. 2, 164.). See p. 406. In this contraction and blending of sentences the single notion which is to be apprehended more intensely is introduced by *more than*, or, on the contrary, by *less than*. O, it is *more than most ridiculous*, (BEN JONS., Ev. Man out of h. Hum., Prol.). Out on thy *more than strumpet impudence* (Ev. Man in h. Hum. 4, 8.). So frequent Death, Sorrow, *he more than causes*, he confounds (YOUNG, N. Th. 3, 68.) Touch'd by the cross, we live, or *more than die* (4, 677.). I had *more than begun* to think it long etc. (CHATHAM, Lett. 19.). Her acquisitions in the New World have *more than compensated* her for what she has lost in the Old (MACAUL., Essays IV. 98.). That little *less-than-little* wit (SHAKSP., Troil. a. Cress. 2, 3.).

Complete sentences mostly suppose, with the same subject, different verbs of the predicate, or different verbal forms, or different subjects and predicates. We are no *less* Cynthia *then we were* (BEN JONS., Cynth. Rev. 5, 3.). I was *happier than I am* (SHELLEY, Cenci 1, 1.). She appeared *younger than she was* (BULW., Rienzi 3, 3.). I am . . . no *less honest than you are mad* (SHAKSP., Wint. T. 2, 3.). What wealth in fancy, fir'd to form a *fairer scene, Than sense surveys* (YOUNG, N. Th. 6, 442.) A fourth, alas! were *more than we could bear* (BYRON, Engl. Bards p. 315.). Among the sentences with a different subjects and predicates are to be remarked those dependent sentences referred to the comparative *rather* (potius) which are connected by *than* or *than that*. She . . . *rather* chose to guylde hir banysh't sire, *Than cruell Creon should haue his desire* (GASCOYNE, Jocasta, Argum.). *Rather than my lord Shall*

be oppress'd with civil mutinies, I will endure a melancholy life (MARLOWE, Edw. II. 1, 2.). Thou, *rather than thy Justice should be stain'd*, Didst stain the cross (YOUNG, N. Th. 4, 207.). May our name *rather* perish . . . *than that ancient and loyal symbol should be blended with the dishonoured insignia of a traitorous Roundhead* (SCOTT, Waverley 2.). We are contented *rather* to take the whole in their present though imperfect state, *than that the least doubt should be thrown upon them, by amendments or alterations* (Ministrelsy I. 88.). In the meaning *quam ut* = *⁂ ṽṽṽ* that is not readily to be omitted. Mine iniquity is *greater than that it may be forgiven* (GEN. 4, 13. Randglosse). On the otherhand: My punishment is *greater than I can bear* (ib. Text).

The abbreviation of the dependent sentence down to the particle corresponds to similar contractions, as that of *as when*, *as if*, *as though* etc. Nor was his ear *less peal'd* With noises loud and ruinous . . . *than when Bellona storms* . . . ; or *less than if this frame Of Heav'n were falling* (MILT., P. L. 2, 924.). See p. 406.

The relation of inequality has, from the earliest times, been, in our linguistic province, distinguished from that of equality by modal particles. As the Gothic employed for the former the particle *pau*, so Anglosax. employed *panne*, *ponne*, which has remained to Mod.-Engl. in *than*.

Instances of the contraction and abbreviation of the dependent sentence with *than* from the earliest times are given at p. 406. It is but little more extensive in modern than in ancient times. The interchange of the case accompanied by *than* with the mere dative of the object, with which an exceeding one is compared, when a common verb of the predicate belongs to them as subjects or objects, was, however, early abandoned. This construction, also belonging to the Gothic, which is analogous to the use of the Latin ablative and the Greek genitive with comparative sentences, was obliged to disappear with the obliteration of case terminations. Comp. *Me is snāgl sviftra* (Cod. EXON. 426, 7.) *þam þā geafas* [reaglas-Grein] *beoð nādle scearþran* (373, 31.) *Leode ne cūðan, mōð-blinde men, meotud oncnāvan, flintum heardran* (73, 10.). *Him onscinað ærgevyrta . . . sunnan beorhtran* (76, 17. cf. 181, 3). We find this case, frequent in Gothic, exchanged in the Anglosaxon translation of the Bible for the abbreviation of the sentence by *panne*, *ponne*. Anglosaxon might also exchange *panne* with *pe*. *Nās him se svēg tō sorge þon mō pe sunnan scima* (CÆDM. II. 3782. cf. Grein, Ags. P. Daniel 264.). *He heold þat rice ðōrum healfum geāre lās pe XXX vintra* (SAX. CHR. 901. cf. 495. 755. GREIN. Gloss. II. 577.).

Complete periods appear, even formerly, only where a further abbreviation is rendered difficult, although the verb (*beon*) recurs, where it might be absent, oftener in the earliest than in subsequent times. Old-Engl.: *The sonne is heȝere than the mone more than suche threo Than hit beo hunne to the mone* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 134.). *Betere ansuere ne soolde we fynde, þan ge abbeþ nou ysed* (R. or Gl. I. 197.). *But muche more ȝe moste wyten theȝne ȝe fynden hyr ywryten* (HALLIW., Freemas. 583.). Halfsax.: *þou me leuoste swpe mar þan is on lue* (LAJAM. I. 127.). [*þou me louest swipe more þan alle þat his a-lue* [modern Text.]. *Heo werðede* [modern Text.] *heore moddri mare þene heo sulden* (I. 160.). *Nis þer nan hetere red þene Margadud hawoð ised* (III. 275.). *Forþi wass Elysabæþ Onn alle wise lahre þann ure laffdiȝ Marȝe wass* (ORM. 2677.). *þurh þatt he þære brohhte himm onn To ȝeornenn afterr more innsiht . . . þann himm hiss Drihtin upe*

(12340.). *Patt Cristess hallþe bede maȝ Towarrrd hiss faderr forþenn Unnser enndlike mare inoh pann aniz wiht maȝ pennkenn* (1758.). Anglosax.: Nu is *s væremid mec þinra synna rōd . . þonne seō ðæder wās* (CYNEVULF, Crist 1490. Grein). Ic eom on stence *strengre þonne ricels ððe rose sȝ* (Grein, Ags. Poes. II. 388.). Flugon on þæt fasten and hyra feore burgon, and manna *mā þonne hit ænig mæd være* (BYRHTNOTH 194. Grein.). Gif he hi *rihtlicor* healdon volde *þonne he ær dyde* (SAX. CHR. 1014.). — With regard to comparatives the mere *than* is frequent in ancient times, where *than* that is expected, particularly in sentences with the conjunctive. Old-Engl.: That he askith we wol him sende, And make him our freonde: *Betre* is, so Yow telle, *Than he ous alle aquelle* (ALIS. 3035.) *Betere* hit were that o man deyde, *than al volk were ylore* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 24. cf. 242.). Wyte to soþe, þat we wollep for oure franchise fygte And, for our lond, *raper þen we lesed with vnryzt* (R. OF GL. I. 47.). Halfsax.: *Leouere* heom his to libben bi þan wote-roten . . *þane heo pine þeowedomes lengre ipolien* (LAȜAM. I. 20 sq.). *Betere* us is on londe mid monscipe to liggan *þene we þus here for hungere to-wurðen* (II. 447.). The omission of *that* mostly occurs where it is a question of preference [comp. Lat. *potius quam* instead *potius quam ut*], yet also where the comparative denotes a comparison to such a degree that its effect prevents something else *h̅ w̅æt, h̅ w̅is ær c. optat.*]. Anglosax.: Ðæt he him lifdagas *leoþran* ne visse *þonne he h̅yrde heofoncyninge* (CÆDM 3338.). Min unrihtvisnisse is *mære þonne ic forgifenyse wyrðe sȝ* (GEN. 4, 13.). Anglosax. also suppresses other conjunctions with *þonne*, as *gif. þonne* (quum). Ic eom on gōman gena *sveitra þonne þu beo-bread blende mid hunige* (COD. EXON. 425, 18. cf. 449, 22.).

- b. As *than* is conditioned by comparatives, so it is also by a few notions denoting a comparative difference, as, *other, else, otherwise*.

To those baby eyes, That never saw the giant world enraged; Nor met with fortune *other than at feasts* (SHAKSP., John 5, 2.). We . . heard within Noise, *other than the sound of dance or song* (MILT., P. L. 8. 242.). That the reader may not expect *another* kind of entertainment *than he will meet with in the following papers* (FIELD., Pref. to the Famil. Lett.). But *other* harvest here *Than that* which peasant's scythe demands, Was gather'd in (SCOTT, Field of Waterloo 5.). I would not have thee *other than thou art* (TALEOURD, Ion. 1, 2.). Who *else than Lara* could have cause to fear His presence? (BYRON, Lara 2, 7.) What *else* are they *than the sticks and straws* which float along the eddying and roughened surface? (WARREN, Ten Thous. a-year 3, 1.) We do *no otherwise than we are willed* (SHAKSP., I Henry VI. 1, 3.). No, no, *anotherguess* lover *than I* (GOLDSM., G. Nat. M. 2.).

With regard to *other*, *but* is sometimes used instead of *than*, if the principal sentence is interrogative or negative. This happens even if a comparative stands in the principal sentence: *What other* harm have I, good lady, done *But spoke the harm* that is by others done (SHAKSP., John 3, 1.). Take your oath — That you elect *no other* king than him (Henry VI. 4, 1.). In the tower *no other* light was there *But from these stars* (COLER., Picc. 2, 4.). — Thou knowst *no less but all* (SHAKSP.,

Twelfth N. 1, 4.). With the moderns such combinations are considered incorrect.

As in Latin *alius*, *aliter*, *secus* with *quam*, so too *other*, *otherwise* etc. in Engl. Old-Engl.: She kowde wete for no case Whens he come no what he was, Ne of no man cowde enquire *Other than the strange squyere* (IPOMYDON 355.). Sey non *other than trowthe* (COV. MYST. p. 63.). Whan the thing semeth *otherwise than it was biforn* (CHAUC., C. T. p. 153. l.). Hallsax.: Ah al hit iwað [= iwarð] *oðer pene heo iwenden* (LAJAM. II. 395.). Middle-Highdutch: Er ist *anders denne wir gevar* (PARZIV. 22, 8.). In Anglosax. we have as yet met with no instance of *oðer þonne*, although the notion of difference *ungelic* is construed with this particle: Ealle we syndon *ungelice þonne we we iu in heofonum hæfdon ærror vlitte and veorðmynt* (CÆDM. II. 151.). *gelic*, otherwise, combined with *and* is indeed also combined with *þonne*. Efe mine eagan synt ealra *gelicast þanne esne bið* (Ps. 122, 2.), along with *þæt bið gelic and eagenbōt* (LEGG. ÆLER. B. 40. cf. LEGG. Cnut. I. B. 48.).

On the other hand, with interrogative and negative principal sentences with *other* and *elles*, *but*, Anglosax. *būtan* and *nymðe* are often met with. Old-Engl.: Cani do non *othir dede*, *Bot my paternoster and my crede* (WRIGHT. A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. 146.). Planetes ne doth non *other bote zeveth in manes wyll* To beo lither other god (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 133.). Thou xalt have . . Noon *other* God *but the kyng of blyse* (COV. MYST. p. 60.). Goddes hous, that ys y-mad for *nothing ellus* *But for to pray yn* (HALLIW., Freemas. 498.). Anglosax.: Mæg ic *oðre spreca* *būtan þæt Drihten hét?* (NUM. 23, 12.). Þonne beo þær nān *oðre būton þæt he gange to paw pryfealdan ordāle* (LEGG. Cnut. I. B. 27.). Hwā ārist *elles of Sion būtan þu?* (Ps. 13, 11.). *Þæt nænig oðer nymðe nergend god hý æfre mā eft onlūceð* (CYNEVELF, Crist 324. Grein). — *but* also formerly stood with the comparative. Old-Engl.: *What woldest þou more of hym, bute þat he we truage bere?* (R. of GL. I. 58.). He no couthe *no bet*er dyght, *Bote out of lond stal by nyht* (ALIS. 117.). The interchange of *bot* with *als* is here remarkable: *Richer kyng is non in pis world bot ze, No valiant*er of bon in Cristendam *als he* (LANGT. I. 144.). Anglosax.: Ne nom he . . mām-æhta mā, þeah he þær monige geseah, *būton þone hafelan and þā hild somod* (BEOV. 1612. Grein). The transition to the exceptive particles is as readily explained as the employment of the preposition *from* with *other*. Mod.-Engl.: This is a far *other* tone *from that*, In which the Duke spoke eight, nine years ago (COLER., Picc. 1, 12.), so far as the idea of difference lies in *other*.

C. The Dependent Sentence as an attributive Determination.

As the substantive notion is determined by the adjective, it may also be determined by a dependent sentence, which therefore becomes an adnominal, or attributive determination. But this dependent sentence is not merely the periphrasis of a part of speech, as, of the adjective or participle, but it appears where such would not suffice, or does not exist at all. For it is, on the one hand, qualified to take further determinations than a single part of speech; on the other, to bring to light the significance, as well as the objective and subjective relation of an attribute, and, generally to put the act and every possible form of activity in the place of the quality inherent in a substantive notion.

Forasmuch as the attributive dependent sentence must be supported by a given substantive notion, the retrospective relation to it is to be indicated in the dependent sentence, which takes place essentially by a relative pronoun.

The substitution for it of a relative adverb, as well as the rejection of the relative pronoun, or the transmutation of the dependent sentence into one loosely attached, are phenomena taking a proportionately limited domain in the extensive province of the adjective sentence.

As the adjective is capable of being used substantively, so too the attributive dependent sentence may take the place of a substantive notion. We therefore first consider the adjective sentence, in the stricter sense, and then the adjective sentence used substantively, or, generally, that introduced by the substantive pronoun.

The Adjective Sentence in the stricter sense.

The adjective sentence is a relative sentence whose relative conjunction refers to a substantive notion. This is represented partly by a substantive, with or without an adnominal determination; partly by pronouns representing a substantive, to which personal pronouns also belong; partly by members of sentences and entire sentences.

1. The relative pronouns which introduce the adjective sentence are *that*, *which* and *who*.

a. Since the abandonment of the unchangeable relative *pe*, the originally neuter *that* (*pät*), employed relatively as well as demonstratively, which, like the former, became an indeclinable pronoun, has in English chiefly gained ground among the pronominal forms, and relatively. It is referred to names both of persons and things, both to pronouns and to substantives, and is subject to but few limitations in its use. To this belongs that *that* cannot be accompanied by a preposition preceding it (though it may by one standing at the end of the sentence), and that it must stand at the head of the adjective sentence: it is also not referred, with a relative meaning, to a sentence or member of a sentence. In a few cases it forbids a regard to perspicuity and euphony.

The man *that* made Sansfoy to fall (SPENS, F. Qu. 1, 5, 26.). A very melancholy knight in a ruff, *that* demanded my subject for somebody (BEN JONS., Silent Wom. 3, 1.). The enemy *that* sowed them (MATTH. 13, 39.). Are you the gentleman *that* is named here? (WARREN, Diary 1, 1.) Thou shinest in every tear *that* I do weep (SHAKSP., Love's L. L. 4, 3. The only favour *that* I can ask you (TROLLOPE, Framl. Parson. 1, 16.). The ship *that* somebody was sailing in (SCOTT, Heart of Mid. Loth. 2, 6.). Of mine own brood, *that* on my bowels feed (MILT., P. L. 2, 863.). All things *that* offend (MATTH. 13, 41.). The rights of Liege, *that* are in more danger than ever (SCOTT, Qu. Durw. 21.). Her,

whom of all earthly *things That lived*, the only thing he seemed to love (BYRON, Manfr. 3, 3.).

Personal pronouns and their possessive forms, as well as demonstrative interrogative and indeterminate pronouns, admit also the retrospective relation by *that* with regard to persons, although *who* has here gained ground to a wide extent. After the interrogative *who* especially, euphony prohibits the like relative form, and requires *that*. *I that know the obstinacy of it* (MONTAGUE, Lett.). *Thou, O Spirit, that dost prefer Before all temples th'upright heart and pure* (MILT., P. L. 1, 17. cf. 2, 681.). *He tires betimes, that spurs too fast betimes* (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 2, 1.). *He also that received seed among the thorns is he that heareth the word* (MATTH. 13, 22.). *He that is void of wisdom, despiseth his neighbour* (PROV. 11, 12.). He has no hope who never had a fear: *And he that never doubted of his state, He may perhaps* (COWP. p. 47.). *Warn them that are unruly* (THESSALON. 1, 5, 14. cf. Ps. 70, 2.). *It will break my heart . . . that have been toiling more like a dog than a man* (SCOTT, R. Roy 2.). Let grief and sorrow still embrace his heart, *That doth not wish you joy* (SHAKSP., Temp. 5, 1.). *Why then their loss deplore that are not lost?* (YOUNG, N. Th. 1, 107.). *Who's this that dares usurp The guards and habit of Numidia's prince?* (ADDIS., Cato 4, 2.). *Those win the day that win the race* (BUTL., Hud. 3, 3, 292.). *Thine only gift has been the grave To those that worshipp'd thee* (BYR., Ode to N. B. p. 346.). *Who that have felt that passion's power, Or paus'd, or fear'd in such an hour?* (Parisina 3.). The wretch, that works and weeps without relief, *Has one that notices his silent grief* (COWP. p. 101.). *I am as one that's dead* (SHERID., KNOWLES, Virgin. 5, 3.). *Strange ruin shall destroy both her and thee, And all that yet remain* (BYR., Manfr. 4, 1.). Up to the sky like rockets go *All that mingled there below* (Siege 33.). Comp. c.

With the reference to neuter pronouns, to which the indeterminate forms and those substituted for them especially belong, *that* has maintained itself with a certain tenacity, not perhaps without the influence of its original neuter meaning, although the modern language takes offence at the employment of *that* after the demonstrative *that*. *What is it that thou dost see?* (BYRON, Manfr. 2, 1.). *Least thou yield to this that I entreat* (MARLOWE, Jew of M. 3, 4.). *That thou hadst seen that that this knight and I have seen!* (SHAKSP., II Henry IV. 3, 2. cf. 4, 4. I Henry VI. 3, 1. 4, 1. etc.) *All that I live by is, with the awl* (J. Cæs. 1, 1.). He may thank you for *all that hath happened* (FIELD. J. Andr. 4, 1.). See the sage hermit, by mankind admir'd, *With all that bigotry adopts inspir'd* (COWP. p. 41.). A conflict against *all that was most illustrious in the Established Church* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. III. 35.). *Much that is great and excellent will we Perform together yet* (COLER. Picc. 5, 2.). *For aught that ever I could read* (BUTL., Hud. 1, 3, 1025.). *Shall I have nought that is fair?* (LONGFELLOW I. 7.) *When you would say something that is sad* (SHAKSP., Henry VIII. 2, 1.). There

was something that reminded me of Dante's Hell in the look of this (CARLYLE, *Pas a. Pres.* 1, 1.). He never does anything that is silly (BULW., *Money* 1, 2.). She has nothing that I want (SOUTHERN, *Oroon.* 1, 2.). Ther's nothing in Widdrington's notes that we need be afraid of (WARREN, *Ten Thous. a-year* 2, 1.). As to how which has penetrated here See b.

That as a relative pronoun was early transferred to names of persons and things of every gender, both in the singular and in the plural. Old-Engl.: Ure *pat hart* in hevene (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., *Rel. Ant.* I. 22.). He was *pe wisiste mon* *pad was* in Engelande on (I. 170.). Oure Lord, that *i-kend* is of the holi gost (I. 42.). Oure Loverd, that all makede (WRIGHT Pop. Treat. p. 132.). *Mercurius . . . That seide* is of ous *i-seze* (ib.). *Do emperour pat was po* (R. OF GL. I. 90.). *Per nas prince non pat hym dorste arere strif* (I. 89.). Maidin and moder *pat bar pe hevene king* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW. I. 22.). Nis no *icurst woxen . . . pet evvre muge pe lif up helde* (I. 175.). Cecily het *pat on pe eldeste, pat was at Came nonne & abbesse* (R. OF GL. II. 370.). *Do Romaynes, pat he fond, to gronde faste he slow* I. 88.). *Men that beoth i-bore under here mizte* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 133.). For alle *po men that are in sinne bunden* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., *Rel. Ant.* I. 22.). The *wymmen that wepen upon hym* (II. 48.). Blisced be *pe pappys pat Godis sone sauk* (ib.). Alle the *masonus that ben there* (HALLIW., *Freemas.* 137.). Alle the *soh sawes That Salomon seide evere* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 174.). He byhet hem *pe best lawes, pat euere were yfunde* (R. OF GL. II. 386.). *Rushes of the see that prykken* (MAUNDEV. p. 13.). This usage occurs in Halfsax. He was *pe bezste latimer pat ær com her* (LAJAM. II. 174sq.). Colgrim was *pe hæhst mon pat ut of Sazlonde com* (II. 417.). *Diss gode prest patt we nu mæleñn offe* (ORM. 461.). Alle *pa prestess pat off pa twezenn prestess comenn* (495.). Alle *pa ilke men . . . pat luuied pene cristindom* (LAJAM. II. 29.).

The retrospective reference to pronouns of every kind, if denoting persons, as well as to possessive forms also, belongs equally early to the form *that*. Old-Engl.: *Ac y am hoten Antygton, That mony a mes-sage have y-don* (ALIS. 4166.). *I that am calde kyng Abias* (Cov. MYST. p. 67.). A tale of me that am a pover man (CHAUC., C T. 4339.). *We that mynistere here in Goddys presens*, In us xuld be fownd no maner of foly p. 71.). *He that swiche eraftes can* To counseil is cleped (P. PLOUGHM. p. 174.). *He that can his time abyde*, Al his wille him schal bytyde ALIS. 462.). Theves he schal herberon never won, Ny *hym that hath y-quellude a mon* (HALLIW., *Freemas.* 181.). They slew him, that *holp hem oft at nede* (SKELTON, I. 8.). Wolues dede *hii nymen vorp, pat er dude as lombe* R. OF GL. II. 369.). Wo to hem that *seien gode, yvel* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., *Rel. Ant.* II. 51.). The wyse man damned hem that *gladen whan thei don yvel* (ib.). Thou seyst thou art with hem that in tribulacion be (Cov. MYST. p. 75.). For *hys love that deyð on rood* (RICH. C. DE L. 4468.). For *hys sake that sytte above* (HALLIW., *Freemas* 405.). Our redempcyon for to make *That slayn were through syn* (TOWNS. M. p. 155.). Vor her soules, *pat per aslawe were* (R. OF GL. II. 369.). *Thilke that God gyveth moost*, Leest good thei deleth (P. PLOUGHM., p. 175.). *Tho that hit loste weore wrothe* (ALIS. 1126.). *Tho that be curayd . . . And tho that be blyssyd* (Cov. MYST. p. 71.). Myche more thei ben reprovabul that *wepen for the pley of Cristis passioun* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., *Rel. Ant.* II. 48.). Als we forgyve þam *pat midon hus* (I. 22.). For alle *pat on herpe us fedin and fostre* (ib.). On that was clept *Guytoga* (MAUNDEV. p. 37.). Ther nuste non that *hym was nygh*, What tyme out of londe he fleygh (ALIS. 119.). Halfsaxon

also offers this reference to persons: *ƿe ilke ƿat halt ƿene nap*, he hine drinkeð up (Lajam. II. 175.). *Wha is ƿat me fihthe wið?* (III. 35.). Mid muðe heo hit seiden, *ƿeo ƿat hit isezen* (I. 274.). He lufepþ *alle ƿa ƿatt soþ clænse foltzhenn* (O. M. 3512.).

With neuter pronouns, as with all neuters in the singular, *that* of course belongs to the most ancient times. Old-Engl.: *This that shewyth as bred to ȝour apparens*, Is mad the very flesche and blod of me (Cov. Myst. p. 271.). Eyther of hem helpeth oother *Of that that hem nedeth* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 164.). An erthely servaunt dar not taken in pley and in bourde *that that her erthely lord takith in earnest* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 43.). Ȝif we don to hym *that that is in oure power* (II. 44.). Ernestful levynge of *that that God biddith* is despising of God (II. 45.). For hem that knowe not, ne beleve not, but *that that thei seen* (MAUNDEV. p. 222. cf. 182. 183. 226. 265. 306.). Fforyge me *that, That I to the now don have* (Cov. Myst. p. 335.). Forgive ous *alle ƿat we havið don* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 57.). Y loue more þi leue lyf þan *al ƿat in ƿe world ys* (R. OF GL. I. 30.). Ny tel thou not *al that thou heres* (HALLIW., Freeman. 770.). *Al that ther was* yong and old (AMIS. A. AMH. 1300.). Bi oght *that I can witt*, He semys fulle welle thereon to sytt (TOWN. M. p. 4.). For nought *that may bifalle* (CHAUC., C. T. p. 3415.). For nothing *that ever is min*, Thau thou hit jirne (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 3.). Hallsax.: *ƿa com hit al togadere ƿat hæst wes on londe* (Lajam. II. 40s.). *Al ƿat Arður isæh*, al hit him to bæh (II. 531.). *Al ƿat heo bigunnen al heo hit biwunnen* II. 108.). To forrbuðhenn . . *All ƿatt tatt Godd forrwerrepp* (ORM. 8803.). Anglosax.: Hi voldon mæst ealle *ƿæt ƿæt he wolde* (Sax. Chr. 1052.). *ƿæt þu wilt þu lufast; ƿæt ƿæt þu nell, ƿæt þu ne lufast* (THORPE, Anal. p. 62.). Hū mæg ic *ƿæt findan, ƿæt svā fyrrn gevearð vintra gangum?* (ELENE 631.). *Eall ƿæt grōvende vās vearð ādilegod* (GEN. 19, 25). Genāmon eall *ƿæt ƿær binnan vās* (Sax. Chr. 894.). Him vās þā unhold eall *ƿæt his ær gyrnde* (1040.). [In the last instance the neuter stands collectively of persons, as also in a few of the modern and Old-Engl. and Hallsaxon instances].

In Anglosax. *se, seð, ƿæt* are used both as relative and as demonstrative pronouns. To these is also attached the indeclinable relative pronoun, in which case they are to be regarded as correlatives of *pe*, which by itself operates as a relative. This relative comes down to the thirteenth century, and appears concurrently with other relative pronouns. Old-Engl.: On of *pe holie wites ƿe ben red herinne* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 128.). Of an edie meiden, *pe was i-feren biþpused ƿe hevenliche kinge* (ib.). ƿis weorld is cleped *sæ, ƿe flouweð and ebbeð* (ib.). ƿat soðe liht, *pe lihteð alle brihte þinges on eorðe* (ib.). *Ancre ƿe haveð achte* (II. 2.). ƿeos ancras *pe tilieð oðer habbeð rentes i-sette* (ib.). In Hallsax. Lajamon often presents *pe*, yet various forms mingle here, as the plural form *ƿa* (Anglosax. *ƿa*), which is mingled with *pe*. The modern text often has *pat* for *pe*. *ƿa wes wa Coel ƿe king was on Brutene* (II. 29.). Hæfuede enne dohter, *pe wes him swiðe deore* (II. 30.). — Wreke we Beduer min æm *ƿa bezst wes of ure cunne, ƿa Buc-cus hafð of-stungen* (III 101.) [= *qui . . quem*]. *ƿa hefenliche geuene ƿa drihten akende* (II. 468.). *pe* (also *ƿeo*), *ƿa* and *pat* in general interchange in the same meaning.

- b. The originally interrogative pronoun *which*, which has also been preserved as such, and is referred to all substantive notions, and whose Anglosaxon form *hwilc hwylc, hvelc* might pass from the interrogative into the indeterminate, (Comp. Lat. *quis aliquis*), but not into the relative meaning, has, in English, like other interrogative words, become also relative. This relative has, as

distinguished from the relative *who*, been gradually restricted to the neuter, or rather the impersonal domain, when it is permitted to except the notion of the sexually undeveloped child out of the domain of personal beings. These determinations are indeed, in themselves arbitrary, and the living language still transgresses them in a few cases, especially with collective notions.

Which, and formerly also *the which* (See p. 238) now chiefly refer to substantives, originally denoting impersonal beings, with or without an adnominal determination. Here belong both abstract and concrete names of things and of animals.

To love no soul or body, but for *ends*, *Which are her sports* (BEN JONS., *New Inn* 1, 1.). Let your song augment our *grief Which is so great* as not to wish relief (WALLER, P. W. I. 107. *Edinb.* 1777.). The *cities in the which Lot dwelt* (GEN. 19, 29.). Upon the *soil the which Our Monarch conquer'd* (COLER., *Picc.* 4, 5.). I would hear yet once before I perish *The voice which was my music* (BYRON, *Manfr.* 2, 4.). His dark *abode, Which even imagination fears to tread* (THOMSON, *SUMMER*). All the *floods In which the full-form'd maids of Ayric lave* Their jetty limbs (ib.). *Long wool is that in which the fibres are rendered parallel by the process of combing* (CHAMBERS, *Informat.* I. 345. II.). *Mountain-ranges, which leave a narrow tract of low land lying along the sea-coasts* (II. 289. I.). Another of the *Cavidæ is the agouti, which is an inhabitant of the Antilles* (I. 138. II. The *wild boar, which abounds in some parts of the continent of Europe* (I. 140. I.).

Collectives, which comprehend persons, are not rarely construed with *which*, happens most naturally where the collective, as the expression of a united whole, is indicated in the relative sentence by the subject *which* with the verb of the predicate in the singular, but also elsewhen, when totalities are apprehended as such. I perish by this *people which I made* (TENNYSON p. 192.). The *misdeeming crowd which judges* by what seems (BYRON, *Manfr.* 5, 1.). The Jews cannot be numbered among the *nations which contributed to improve navigation* (ROBERTSON, *Hist. of America*). Such notions as mind, soul, although referable to personal individuals, admit *which*. An *erring soul which might repent and live* (SHELLEY, *Cenci* 1, 1.). The many evil and unheavenly *spirits, Which walk the valley of the shade of death* (BYRON, *Manfr.* 3, 1.). Finally, even names of persons do not completely exclude *which*, although for two centuries admitting it in a considerably diminished measure.

The old *shepherd, which stands by* (SHAKSP., *Wint.* T. 5, 2.). *Mulmutius, which Ordain'd our laws* (Cymb. 3, 1.). That very *duke Which was thrust forth of Milan* (Temp. 5, 1.). A *man which sowed good seed* (MATTH. 13. 24.). When for the night some lately titled ass *Appears the beggar which his grandsire was* (BYRON, *Engl. Bards* p. 323.). She liked the greatest *fool which she had presented to my father* better than all the rest (MARRYAT,

J. Faithf. 1, 1.). About ten thousand picked and veteran soldiers were thus obtained, *of which the Duke of Alba was appointed general-in-chief* (MOTLEY, Rise of the Dutch Rep. 3, 1.).

Pronouns used substantively admit analogously a relative *which* in modern times, when they correspond to original neuters. The *that*, naturalized here from the most ancient times, gives place to *which* after a demonstrative *that*: yet *which* is added also to other neuter pronominal forms. That it might be fulfilled *which was spoken by Esaias the prophet* (MATTH. 4, 14.). And know'st thou what it is *which we must do?* (COLER., Picc. 3, 1.) What is *this which thou hast done?* (MILT., P. L. 10, 158.) You must consider *this, which nobody knows better than I*; that I was for much plainer and poorer things (DICKENS, M. Chuzzlew. 1, 2.). If *this which he avouches* doth appear (PLANCHÉ, Fortunio 2, 3.) And catches away *that which was sown in his heart* (MATTH. 13, 19.). I admire . . the painter's magic skill, Who shows me *that which I shall never see* (COWP. 174.). He had done *that which could never be forgiven* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. II. 186.). They call *that Ideal which no Reality can reach* (LEWES, G. I. 64.). Yet *what thou canst attain which best may serve To glorify thy Maker* . . shall not be withheld Thy hearing MILT., P. L. 7, 115.). I only mean to say, that in *all which has occurred*, I have been a passive, rather than an active, personage (MARRYAT, P. Simple 1, 1.). But *much yet remains To which they show no title* (SHELLEY, Cenci 2, 1.). With pronouns *which*, when referred back to impersonal substantives, have a relative sentence, this is readily intelligible. In the earlier Modern-English the construction of substantive pronouns, denoting persons, with *which* is not uncommon. Had *I* been there *which am a silly woman* (SHAKSP., III Henry VI. 1, 1.). Shall *I* of surety bear a child, *which am old?* (GEN. 18, 13.). If *thou which lov'st all* canst love any best (DONNE, Sat. 1, 14.). This is *he which received seed by the way-side* (MATTH. 13, 19.). As soon as *they which pursued after them* were gone out, they shut the gate (JOSH. 4, 7. cf. 1 Cor. 9, 13.).

Which alone can, as relative, refer back to other members of the sentence and to whole sentences.

For those that fly *may fight again, which he can never do* that's slain (BUTL., Hud. 3, 3, 243.). Martin Chuzzlewit signed to his young companion to *withdraw, which she immediately did* (DICKENS, M. Chuzzlew. 1, 3.). I am what your theologians call *Hardened; which they must be in impudence* (SHELLEY, Cenci 1, 1.). Lord Piercy of the North, *being highly mov'd, Brav'd Mowbery in presence of the king; For which*, had not his highness lov'd him well, *He should have lost his head* (MARLOWE, Edw. II. 1, 1.). When the Doctor took liberties, *which was not seldom the case*, his patron became more than usually cold and sullen (MACAUL., Hist. of E. III. 17.). "*Captain Wharton has accounted for my error.*" — "*For which I thank Captain Wharton,*" said the surgeon (COOPER, Spy 9.). In every circle you engross the

whole conversation, where *you say a thousand silly things and laugh at them all; by both which the world is always convinced that you have very fine teeth and very bad sense* (GOLDSM., Temple Beau 1, 1.).

As to the combination of *which* with substantives, in which it is at the same time adnominal, see p. 238 and below, as to the attraction in general which comes under consideration here.

The relative *which* long appears after *that* in English and was especially diffused under the influence of Old-French in the combination *the which*. A discrimination of the impersonal from the personal does not there take place; on the contrary the pronoun very frequently represents names of persons. The particle *that*, often added, is in the same case as in other relative and interrogative sentences. See p. 396. *Which, the which (that)* is most commonly referred to substantives, or to sentences and members of sentences, not so frequently to substantive pronouns, beside which it associates itself adnominally with substantives.

Instances of the construction with impersonal substantives are in Old-Engl.: His *sweord* he bar in hond y-drawe, *With whiche he hadde mony y-slawe* (ALIS. 4390.). *Withouten horses, withouten steden, Of whiche no mon ne couthe areden The nombre* (5114.). Hy habbeth in hem hondes two, *With which hy don mychel woo* (5794.). His *hous, of which the dores were fast i-schitte* (CHAUC., C. T. p. 152. II.). Out of *miserie in which thou art falle* (15492.). No *drynke which that dronke might hem make* (7481.). Of al this thing, *which that I of have sayd* (7827.). The new fest of *whiche iij in thi zere we exercyse* (COV. MYST. p. 71.). In a boke, *pe whilk made he* (THE PRICKE OF CONSC. 3950.). *Suche fruyt, thorghe the whiche every man is saveh* (MAUNDEV. p. 3.). Fro thens toward the Est, a 3 bow schote, is *Bethfagee: to the whiche oure Lord sente seynt Peter* (p. 97.). I have fon a tre . . . *On the whiche he shalle suffre payu* (TOWN. M. p. 209 sq.). Instances of the construction with impersonal substantives are in Old-Engl.: In *Jhesu Crist, the sone of hym only oure lord, the wuche is conceyved of the holy gost* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 38.). Many gode *Cristene men, the whiche that lasten hire godes* (MAUNDEV. p. 260.). This *Pompeus . . . which that flove* (CHAUC. C. T. 16174.). Roger, *which that bisschop was of Pise* (15902.). Lo, *Sampson, whiche that was annunciate By thangel* 15492.). I go fulle securly to my *Fader, hevyns kyng, The whiche . . . is mekille more than I* (TOWN. M. p. 297.). *Almyghty God loke thou honoure, Wiche that made bothe drye and wete* (COV. MYST. p. 50.). *Which* of course also stands with collective names of persons: His *meyné which that herd of this affrey* (CHAUC., C. T. 7638.).

The reference to personal pronouns is, however, also found: *He which hath no wif* I hold him shent (CHAUC., C. T. 9194.). Only *hym love whiche bodyly ffood Doth zeve alle day, and gostly helthe* (COV. MYST. p. 60.). Fro dethe he xal ryse, this is a trewe talle, *Fyguryd in me, the whiche longe befor Lay iij days beryed within the qralle* (p. 67.).

The retrospective reference to sentences and members of sentences is not rare: Unethe scholde ony contree have so moche people with in him, as *lay slayn in that vale, as us thoughte; the whiche was hidous sight to seen* (MAUNDEV. p. 283.). *Thou hast thy felaw slayn, For which I deme the to deth* (CHAUC., C. T. 7605. cf. 15995. 16171.).

The subsequent transition of *which* (*hvilc*), *qualis*, into the meaning of *qui* is analogous to that of the German *welcher*, which the Middle-Highdutch did not know.

- c. A second interrogative pronoun, which has passed into the relative meaning alongside of the demonstrative *that* is *who*, Anglosax. *hwá*. The modern language has restricted it, in the case forms *who*, *whom*, to the representation of the personal notion, using, on the other hand, *whose* (Anglosax.: *hwás* gen. masc. and neutr.) of persons and things. That limitation has in it something arbitrary, especially in regard to *whom*, which answers at least to the Anglosax. dative of the masculine. Ancient also diverge here from modern times. Namely, as early as the cases of *who* were used relatively, which appeared long before *which* was employed relatively, the nominative *who* was excepted from the purely relative, retrospective reference, and *whom* was referred both to things and to persons.

In the present position of the language the older *that* has been importantly limited by *who*, *whom*. The latter have appropriated essentially the relative reference to persons and personified beings, when the boundary of the personification is not to be always determined.

We first consider *who* and *whom* in their reference to substantives. They refer to the singular and plural of both sexes of persons. That such a *slave* as this should wear a sword, *who wears no honesty* (SHAKSP., Lear 2, 2.). I know this from *Cordelia*; *Who has . . . been inform'd Of my obscured course* (ib.) A poor woman *who was my nurse* (BULW., Money 1, 2). His noble mother and his wife, *Who . . . mean to solicit him For mercy to his country* (SHAKSP., Coriol. 5, 1.). The righteous gods, *whom I have sought to please* (ADDIS., Cato 5, 2.). Some few friends she had *whom she really loved* (TROLLOPE, Framl. Parson. 1, 17.). I was settled . . . some time ago by *persons to whom you referred it* (1, 19.). They are employed with collective names of persons, especially if the relative as the subject, is followed by the recognisable plural of the verb of the predicate, and, generally, where not so much the idea of one or of several totalities as that of their personal elements is present to the speaker. The *Directory, who are not very fond of princes* (BULW., Lady of L. 2, 1.). Of that *half the population who think differently from yourself* (Money 2, 5.). Why scourge thy kind *Who bow'd so low the knee?* (BYRON, Ode to N. B. p. 346). Mountains interpos'd *Make enemies of nations, who had else Like kindred drops been mingled into one* (COWP. p. 185.). The Saxon families *who fled from the exterminating sword of the Conqueror* (SCOTT, Minstrelsy I. 98.). A people *whom I have not known shall serve me* (Ps. 18, 43.). By trampling on the *people among whom they had settled* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. 66.). The house of Stewart, *whom they regarded, with justice, as their oppressors* (SCOTT, Bl. Dwarf 2.). With personified substantive notions the employment of the pronoun is a matter of course: The envious moon *Who is already sick* (SHAKSP., Rom. a. Jul. 2, 2.). *Ye avalanches, Whom a breath draws down In mountainous o'ervrwhelming* (BYRON, Manfr. 1, 2.). It is referred to the animal world,

especially in the older language. *Adders who*, with cloven tongues, *Do hiss me into madness* (SHAKSP., Temp. 2, 2.). The *wolf, who from the mighty fold Fierce drags the bleating prey*, ne'er drunk her milk (THOMSON, Spring). How unkind then to torture this faithful creature, *who has left the forest to claim the protection of man* (GOLDSM., The Dog). The *serpent, whom they call'd Ophion* (MILT., P. L. 10, 580.). The *beasts whom God . . Created mute* (9, 556.). The brace of large greyhounds, *who were the companions of his sports* (SCOTT, Bl. Dwarf 2.).

But even lifeless objects, the personification of which is not evidently in the speakers intention, were formerly denoted retrospectively by *who, whom*. The *world who of itself is peised well* (SHAKSP., John 2, 2.). *Usurping ivy, briar, or idle moss Who*, all for want of pruning, *with intrusion Infect thy sap* (Com. of Err. 2, 2.).

Substantive pronouns referred to persons, even in their possessive forms, have likewise to a great extent preserved those relatives in their train. *I cannot blame thee, Who am myself attach'd with weariness* (SHAKSP., Temp. 3, 3.). *I, who pity not* (BYRON, Manfr. 2, 4.). He is most innocent! 'T was *I who did it* (ROGERS, It., Foscari). *To thee who hast thy dwelling here on Earth* (MILT., P. L. 4, 444.). *He who is content to walk*, instead of to run (MARRYAT, P. Simple 1, 1.). It is time to decide between *her whom you love and her whom you do not* (BULW., Money 2, 3.). How happy *they who wake no more* (YOUNG, N. Th. 1, 7.). And what are *they who do avouch these things?* (BYRON, Manfr. 3, 1.). Praise is not thine, But *his who gave thee* (COWP. p. 103.). How hard is our fate, *who serve in the state* (ADDIS., Rosam. 1, 3.). Fickle *their state whom God Most favors* (MILT., P. L. 9, 948.). Nor better was *their lot who fled* (SCOTT, Lord of the Isl. 5, 29.). *Those Who have but half an eye* (BEN JONS., New Inn 1, 1.). *Those who run from th' enemy*. Engage them equally to fly (BUTL., Hud. 3, 289.). I'm one of *those who think feelings a kind of property* (BULW., Money 1, 2.). To *one whom they had punish'd* (SHAKSP., J. Cæs. 5, 1.). There was *one in that house whom I had loved at the first sight* (BULW., Money 2, 3.). Not *all who break his bread* are true (BYRON, Bride 2, 16.).

The old genitive *whose* admits the reference to persons and things without distinction. The *wits of whose names we shall treat* (THACKERAY, Engl. Humourists 2.). A *nation whose tongue thou shalt not understand* (DEUTER. 28, 49.). Ye *craggs, upon whose extreme edge I stand* (BYRON, Manfr. 1, 2.). *Thou whose mind was moral* (YOUNG, N. Th. 2, 447.). That was *he Wüh-out whose life I had not been* (TENNYSON p. 172.). *Betwixt those into whose hands she had fallen* (SCOTT, Heart of Mid. Loth. 2, 6.). The *wolf Whose howl's his watch* (SHAKSP., Macb. 2, 1.). The *winds whose pity . . Did us but loving wrong* (Temn. 1, 2.). To the *rural seat, Whose lofty elms, and venerable oaks, Invite the rook* (THOMSON, Spring.). There yet remains a deed to act *Whose horror might make sharp an appetite Duller than mine*

(SHELLEY, Cenci 1, 1.). A calm, placid, impenetrable lake, whose surface is reflexion (BOUCAULT, Lond. Assur. 1.).

In the older language wemest with *who* used, not absolutely relatively, as now the neuter form of the same pronoun *what*. On the other hand the case *whom* (*wham*, *whan*) for the singular and plural, and that mostly in combination with prepositions, early occurs, subsequently the genitive *whos* (*whoos*), in a purely relative reference, and the former especially is referred both to substantives of the thing and to persons, whereas the genitive form belongs especially to the person. *Whom* stands in Old-Engl. in regard to names of persons. *The clark of wam I telle* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 11.). *Uter, þe gode kyng (of wan we speke by vore* (R. of Gl. I. 165. cf. I. 166.). *Bitwene man and womman of wham we beoth be zite* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 137.). *The threo knyghtis of whom y saide* (ALIS. 4136.). *Rychard hyghte the fyrate, i-wis, Of whom this romance i-makyd is* (RICH. C. DE L. 201.). *Thei hadden an abbot, to whom thei weren obedient* (MAUNDEV. p. 83.). *To that man, to whom alle the world is insuffisant* (p. 293.). *A kyng of Fraunce boughte theise relikes sometyme of the Jewes; to whom the emperour had leyde hem to wedde* (p. 13.). *Many gode holy men and holy heremytes, of whom the book of fadres lyfes spekethe* (p. 79.). *A man of gret honour To whom that he was alway confessour* (CHAUC., C. T. 7745.). *Henri . . Whom all the londe loved* (DEPOS. OF RICH. II. p. 1.); in regard of names of beasts and of things: *Heo noriceth delfyns and cockadrill, Of whom after telle y wol* (ALIS. 6576.). *There is gret plente of neddres, of whom men maken grete festes* (MAUNDEV. p. 208.). The ovemeste is the riȝte hevne in *whan the sterren beoth* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 132.). *The four elementz, of wham we beoth i-wroȝt* (p. 134.). *And ȝit was al þe folnesse on þat to him-self bi-lay, Wipoute whom he ne mai His kindom wip pees wysen* (CASTEL OF LOUE 294. ed Weymouth 1864.). *And nom of hire his monhede porw whom he wrey his Godhede* (917.). *He sal enherite þan Wormes and neddres . . Til wham fallēs mans flessch* (PRICKE OF CONSC. 870.). It even occurs with reference to a sentence: *Algate he hap mis-don porw whom he is in my prison* (1085.). Halfsaxon takes the lead in both respects, *wham* stands of persons: *He maȝ wel bitacnenn himm Whamm he stod inn to follzhen* (ORM. 6520.). *Allmahhtig Godd purrh whamm zho wass wipp childe* (1975.). *Patt Jesu Crist wass witerriȝ patt ilke, off whamm prophētess Haffdenn forrlanngē cwidedd ær* (6994. cf. 12578. 16340.) *Min eldre of wan we beop i-spronge* (LAȜAM. II. 632. mod. text.). *Belyn and Brenne of wam we beop of-spronge* (III. 50. mod. text.); rarely, however, of things. *He makede þane kalender bi wan geop þe zer* (I. 308. mod. text.). *Lede hit [sc. þat sweorde] bi his broper porh wan his bane he hadde* (I. 326. mod. text.). It is remarkable that *what* is found as a neuter relative in Orm.: *Forr fand mann nan þing upponn hemm patt miht ohht anngrēnn opre; Durh whatt tu miht nu sen patt teȝ Rihhtwise and gode wærenn* (ORM. 431.). *Ure preost patt noht ne miht trowenn patt word tatt himm purrh Gabriel Wass seȝd o Godess halife, Forr what himm wass hiss spæche anan . . all biræfēd* (2827.); and even in regard to such a correlative as *all*: *Patt teȝ muȝhenn shæwenn ȝw All whatt itt seȝp andd menep* (5502.). This usage stands isolated in the most ancient times as interchanges of the relative *that* and *what* are subsequently met with here and there. Old-Engl.: It is I, drede you noȝht, *What was wont with you to gone* and *dere with ded you boght* (TOWN. M. p. 283.).

I am only able to point out the genitive *whose* as a relative in ancient times in relation to persons. Old-Engl.: *Sahaladyn, in whoos tyme the kyng of Englonde, Richarde the fyrste, with manye othere, kepten the*

passage (MAUNDEV. p. 36.). Syk lay the housbond man, *whos that the place is* (CHAUC. C. T. 7350.). He was ay God in trinite . . . *Was myght and wytte of him-selve was tan* (PRICKS OF CONSC. 20.). *God . . . By whoys glorious power alle thyng is wrought, in whom alle vertu plentifulously is founde, Withowtyn whos wyl may be ryth nought* (COV. MYST. p. 40.).

The nominative *who* is avoided as a relative even in the fifteenth century. The transition to it is prepared by *who* in generalized sentences with the resumption of the subject *who* . . . *he*.

2. The pronominal relative sentence may be represented in a manner more or less restricted by various other forms or the sentence.

- a. Here belong especially sentences with the adverbs of place *where*, *whence*, *whither*, and with the forms compounded or construed with prepositions, especially of *where*. They may indeed substitute the adverb of place for a relative pronoun accompanied by a preposition, but not the simple relative subject or object. They also chiefly refer to names of things, although not wanting in the reference to names of persons.

I am near to the *place where they should meet* (SHAKSP., Cymb. 4, 1.). Rude as the rocks *where my infancy grew* (BYRON p. 305.). Oh! that pang *where more than madness lies* (BRIDE 2, 27.). Lodged in sunny cleft, *Where the cold breezes come not* (BRYANT p. 25.). Edward's seven sons, *whereof thyself art one* (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 1, 2.). Let it work like Borgia's wine, *Whereof, his sire, the pope, was poison'd* (MARLOWE, Jew of M. 3, 4.). Long suits in that sunny land, *Wherein, as Whereof, I now write, are unknown* (BULW., Rienzi 1, 7.). The cell *wherein the pale-eyed student holds Talk with melodious science* (BULW., Richel. 4, 1.). This is the hour *wherein I shall proceed* (MARLOWE, Jew of M. 4, 3.). As large as is the stage *whereon we act* (BEN JONS., Ev. Man out of h. Hum. Prol.). Ye shall find a colt tied *whereon never man sat* (MARK 11, 2.). Before I have shook off the regal thoughts *Wherewith I reign'd* (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 4, 1.). Knowledge the wing *Wherewith we fly to heaven* (II Henry VI. 4, 7.). The love *wherewith I love you* is not such As you would offer me (LONGFELLOW I. 171.). In the language *wherewith Sp'ing Letters cowslips on the hill* (TENNYSON p. 35.). Northumberland, thou ladder *Wherewithal The mounting Bolingbroke ascends my throne* (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 5, 1.). The object *whereabout they are conversant* (HOOKER, b. Webster v.). In each a squared lawn, *wherefrom The golden gorge of dragons spouted forth A flood of fountain-foam* (TENNYSON p. 113.). — To leave his wife, to leave his babes, His mansion, and his titles, in a place *From whence himself does fly?* (SHAKSP., Macb. 4, 2.). The coachman accompanied me to the place *from whence the stage was to part* (MARRYAT, P. Simple 1, 1.). Even such delicate threads, Gather'd by Fate's engrossing hand, supply The eternal spindle *whence she weaves the bond Of cable strength* in which our nature struggles! (TALFOURD, Ion 2, 2.). — At every place *whither we shall come* (GEN. 20, 13.). We came unto the land

whither thou sentest us (NUMB. 13, 27.). The relative adverbs in this reference to substantive notions are especially to be met with in poets, who also preserve obsolescent forms.

The reference to entire sentences is not foreign to relative adverbial sentences: Particles like *whereupon*, *wherefore* are to be referred hither, which instead of demonstrative forms continue the speech with a reference to what precedes.

The reference of relative adverbs of place to substantive notions is a phenomenon diffused through many tongues and reaches even into Anglosaxon. Before the interrogative forms were employed as relatives the demonstratives passed for them. With many old writers both forms run parallel to each other. Old - Engl: In a *taverne wher they were* (RICH. C. DE L. 655). Under the *tourre whare the lady was* (SEDOY SAGES 3005). A *payre chirche of oure Lady where she dwelled 7 jeer* (MAUNDEV. p. 34.). Myn *hondaxe . . . Wher with ich hadde geandes mony on yslawe* (R. OF GL. I. 25.). The *crowne of oure Lord, wherwith he was crowned* (MAUNDEV. p. 12.). He brings up *sum word oter sum oter hwaet hmer purh ho to huren* (WRIGHT. A. HALLIW, Rel. Ant II. 5. Ni do þing ne seggen *hwer purh hire silence muhe beo desturbet* (ib.). Al he hit hath thurf thulke *soule whar-thurf he is man* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 140.). To stoppe the *see of Calpias, Wher thorough heo hadde heore pas* (ALIS. 622ⁿ). The *tables where on men eten* (MAUNDEV. p. 275.). That place thei clepen *Oreb, where of Holy Writt spekethe* p. 62.). This man . . . can I fynd withe no *wrang, Wherfor ye shuld hym draw* (TOWN. M. p. 205.). He com to *Caric, þere ys dozter was* (R. OF GL. I. 35.). & *jit þe chapelle standes, þer he weddid his wife* (LANGT. I. 26.). In the *tour ther scheo is* (ALIS. 1049). The *place is voyde ther in he lay* (TOWN. M. p. 263.). The *cause therefore I thedyr wyl wende*, Is flor to reise . . . Lazarus (COV. MYST. p. 230. The *throte . . . of whens thei droppen venym* (MAUNDEV. p. 290.). The *cytee of Araym . . . from whens Abraham departed* (p. 43.). Halfsax.: Eode in to þan *inne þer wunede Rouwenne* (LAJAM. II. 173.). I þe *wesste þær he was* (ORM. 827.). Wurchen ænne *castel þer ic mihte on inne lubbe* (LAJAM. II. 222.). Anglosax.: Tō *ceastre forþ þær Israēla æhta væron* (CÆDM. 3560.). Godes engel forstōd þone *veg þær he wolde ridan* (NUM. 22, 22.). Siððan hine sylfne . . . befor on *heáhne beám þonan yðast mæg on eastvegum sið be-healdan* (GREIN, Ags P. I. 218.). In Anglosax. the preposition is mostly placed after both the relative and the demonstrative adverb, as often frequently takes place in Mod.-English. See Vol. II. 1. p. 487, as well as on the adverb of place generally in its relation to substantive notions. Vol. II. p. 424.

- b. When the adverb of time *when* is referred to a substantive notion, the dependent sentence may in an analogous manner be considered the representative of an adjective sentence. The substantives coming under consideration are notions of time. See Vol. II. p. 429.
- c. The relation of dependent sentences introduced with the adverb *why*, supported, as a relative, by a substantive, is similar. The substantive notion is indeed restricted to that of the cause and the reason.

The *reason why the seven stars are no more than seven*, is a pretty reason (SHAKSP., Lear 1, 5.). "It is very late." — "The better *reason why I should be at* * * *". (BULW., Maltrav. 1, 1.). It it

a reason *why* I come so seldom (Money 3, 3.). I know no cause *Why* I should welcome such a guest as grief (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 2, 2.). What's the natural cause *Why* on a sign no painter draws *The full-moon ever*, but the half? (BUTL., Hud. 2, 3, 783.) Assign the cause, *Why* you denied A Roman maid . . *Her liberty* (SHERID., KNOWLES, Virgin. 5, 1.).

The adverb *why*, originally the instrumental *hwy* and *hwy*, may be supported immediately by a substantive with the same reason as other relative adverbs. Old-Engl.: The cause *whi* his doughtres made him drunken, and for to ly by him, was this (MAUNDEV. p. 102.). I knowe not the resoun, *whi* it is (p. 193.). Thou art cause *why* thy felaw deyth (CHAUC., C. T. 7623.). *Wherefore* may of course be substituted for *why*. No man knowethe the cause *wherfore* it may ben (MAUNDEV. p. 192.). In former times, however, *why* was not referred relatively to substantives. It only stands in direct and indirect questions.

The collateral form of the same word, *how*, Anglosax. *hú*, is sometimes with the moderns attached relatively to a substantive, as in: But is there yet no other way . . *how* we may come to Death? (MILT., P. L. 11, 527); with which we may compare older modes of expression: As I shalle devyse þou suche as thei ben, and the names *how* thei clepen hem (MAUNDEV. p. 53.). Instances of this kind border hard on indirect interrogative sentences.

- d. Dependent sentences with the conjunction *that* may likewise be placed alongside of adjective sentences, if the *that* referred to a substantive is equivalent to a prepositional relative.

Here belong the dependent sentences with *that* in combination with substantives containing a notion of time, for the discussion of which see p. 431.

Hither also may be referred the sentences with *that* referred to the notion of cause, the place of which is usually taken by those with *why*. This is the reason *that* I sent for thee (MARLOWE, Jew of M. 5, 2.).

In ancient times the more general *that* takes the place of the relative pronoun, yet more frequently where it requires a prepositional determination. As we see *pāt* interchange with *pe* with notions of time even in Anglosaxon (P. 434), so *that* subsequently appears as *that* indeclinable *pe*. Old-Engl.: The cause now is this *that* I send for you alle (TOWN. M. p. 147.). In the place *that* they were ere (IPOMYDON 939.). Whan he come into that stede *That* the kyng, his fadyr, was dede (1535). There ben havenes *that* men taken the see (MAUNDEV. p. 54.). At the firste sight, *that* men see the soudan (p. 40.). With alle the craft *that* he cowde, in the hyste voys *that* he myghte (p. 305.). „How shalle we theder wyn?” — “Fulle welle wote I The best wyse *that* we may.” (TOWN. M. p. 137.). Hallsax.: I patt illke mahhte patt Helyas shall cumenn eft (ORM. 180.). Anglosax. would use *pe*: Tō pære stove *pe* he pāt veofod ær ārærde (GEN. 13, 4.). Ve cōmon tō þam earde *pe* ge ðs hēton faran (NUM. 13, 28.). A sæton on pā healfre þās deōpes *pe* pā Deniscan scipu āseten væron (SAX. CHR. 897.). Þurh þās sylfes hond *pe* ic ær onsended vās (COD. EXON. 370, 12.).

To the earlier language also belongs the employment of *that* with a personal pronoun after it, instead of a simple relative pronoun. This especially takes place in combination with negative principal sentences, and in negative dependent sentences which receive the character of consecutive dependent sentences (See p. 477); yet this

construction is also met with after affirmative principal sentences and in affirmative dependent sentences. Old-Engl.: A ryvere that cometh from the mounteyne of Lybane, *that men hyt callen Albane* (MAUNDEV. p. 127.). In that partie is a *welle, that in the day it is so cold*, that no man may drynke there offe (p. 156). There ben also many *trees, that of nature thei wole never brenne ne rote in no manere* (p. 289.). I saugh to-day a corps y-born to chirche, *That now on Monday last saugh him wirche* (CHAUC., C T 3429.). A knight ther was, and that a worthy man, *That from the tyme that he first bigan To ryden out, he lovede chyvalrye* (43.). A maner folk ther is y-founde, *That men hem clepeth ceehounde* (ALIS. 5668.). Unnethe is nu eny man that can eny craft, *That he nis a party los in the haft* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 339.). Man ne beest non there nas, And he were of hem y-bite, *That he nas ded* (ALIS. 5437.). I wiste nevere renk that riche was . . . *That whan he rekene sholde That he ne dredde hym sore* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 280.). There was none of English blood *That he ne had as much As they would draw or bear To ship* (RICH. C. DE L. 1943.). In al the route *nas ther yong ne old, That he ne seyde it was a noble story* (CHAUC., C T. 3112.). Ther nys noon of us alle, *That sche nath ben duchesse or a queene* (924.). Ther *nas king ne prince in al that lond That he nas glad if he that grace fond etc.* (15815.). *that* stands even before a possessive pronoun: Whilom ther was an irous *potestote As seith Senek, That duryng his estaat Upon a day out riden knightes tuo* (7599.). The *stewardes eme* he was, *That the emperour had shent his face* (RICH. C. DE L. 2397.). On the falle swich a cas As dede on him *that his heued was of his sone i-cast in a gong* (SEUYN SAGES 1215.). Hallsaxon: *Nauede Belin nan cnihte pet he næs pere god kimppe* (LAȜAM. I. 241.). *Nefde he neuere nænne coc pat he nes keppe swide* [= swiðe god, neuær nanes cnihtes swein pat he nes bold pein (II 413.). The employment of *pat* seems related, when followed by an adverb compounded with a preposition, as in: *Ðe staness patt he spacc þær off, þeð wærenn rihte staness* (ORM. 9367.). The periods brought together here approach Romance constructions (See Diez, Romance Gr. 3, 363 ff.); yet the periphrasis of the relative by *pāt* with a personal pronoun is not foreign even to Anglosax.: *Ðær is mid Estum ān mægð pāt hī māgon cyle ge-vyrcau* (OROS. I, 1.). *Nænig forðum vās, pāt he æviscmōð eft siððade heān hyhta leās* (COD. EXON. 157, 22.).

- e. How far the dependent sentence with *as* may take the place of an adjective sentences See p. 489.

But it may be observed that in the train of a substantive, to which an adjective determined by *so* is given, an adjective sentence sometimes takes the place of a consecutive sentence, for which a sentence of the consequence with *that* or *as* with the infinitive might be substituted. There was no man *so sanguine who did not apprehend some ill consequence from the late change* (SWIFT). *Breathes there the man with soul so dead, Who never to himself hath said, This is my own, my native land!* (SCOTT, L. Ministr. 6, 1.) Modern Grammarians take offence at sentences of this sort, as well as at adjective sentences with *such*.

But this combination of sentences was formerly a favourite mode of expression with the negative principal sentence (to which an interrogative sentence is equivalent). Ther was *non so stoute ne gryme, That durste jouste tho with hym* (RICH. C. DE L. 561.). There was *none so hardy a man That one evil worde spake gan* (2025. cf. 3032. 4833.). Was noon

so hardly walkyng by the weye, *That with hir dorste rage or elles pleye* (CHAUC. C. T. 3955.). Halssax.: Næs per nan swa þriste cniht under criste þat durste þene king fræine (LAJAM. III. 13.). Þat nan neoren swa kene þat heom neh comen (III. 33.). The analogy of these dependent sentences with similar ones with *such* is evident. Comp. p. 477.

3. Both in the literary and in conversational language the elliptical mode of expression is diffused, which arises through the suppression of the relative pronoun. This ellipsis, with which the relative subject and object, also the case to be construed with a preposition after it, may be omitted, has gained importantly in extent in the course of time. The omission of the relative subject appears less natural to modern grammarians.

There be some sports are painful (SHAKSP., Temp. 3, 1.). There is a devil haunts thee (I Henry IV. 2, 4.). The hate of those love not the king (Rich. II. 2, 2.). There's sir Moth, your brother, is fallen into a fit of happyplex (BEN JONS., Magnetic Lady 3, 3.). I have a grief admits no cure (SOUTHERN, Oroon. 2, 1.). I know a charm shall make thee meek and tame (SHELLEY, Cenci 1, 3.). 'Tis faith disarms destruction (YOUNG, N. Th. 4, 726.). 'Tis Rome requires your tears (ADDIS., Cato 4, 4.). I know not what it is makes me so restless (LONGFELLOW I. 166.). 'Tis distance lends enchantment to the view (TH. CAMPBELL, Pleas. of Hope 1.). I know that of him will hang him (SCOTT, Heart of Mid. Loth. 2, 6.). — All he could, he graced him with her (SPENS., F. Qu. 6, 9, 39.). When I forethink the hard conditions Our states must undergo (BEN JONS., Catiline 1, 1.). I found the grapes I had hung up were perfectly dried (DE FOE, Rob. Rob. Crus. p. 85. Tauchn.). I'm not that abject wretch You think me (OTWAY, Venice Preserv. 1, 1.). And all our church can teach thee shall be taught (BYRON, Manfr. 3, 1.). What hideous thought was that I had even now? (ib.) He thought of that sharp look, mother, I gave him yesterday (TENNYS. p. 131.). The minstrel . . might . . substitute corruptions for words he did not understand (SCOTT, Minstrelsy I 21.). Her face seemed whiter than the white dress she wore (WARREN, Diary 2, 1.). — And meet the liberty you oft have wish'd for (BEN JONS., Catiline 1, 1.). He dispatched those three . . and all the rest he could come up with (DE FOE, Rob. Crus. p. 197.). The realm thou shouldst be parent to (TALFOURD, Ion 2, 3.). The race of him my arm hath dealt with (4, 2.). My lips seemed rigid as those I looked at (WARREN, Diary 2, 1.). See Prepositions Vol. II. p. 485.

Where a prepositional relation is wanting one may in part think of the omission of the conjunctive *that*, which may also be absent with actions of time. See p. 432. Off with the traitor's head, And rear it in the place your father's stands (SHAKSP., III Henry VI. 2, 6.). As well appeareth by the cause you come (Rich. II. 1, 1.). And all we can absolve thee shall be pardon'd (BYRON, Manfr. 3, 1.).

The omission of the relative pronoun perhaps proceeds from the neglect of the relative pronoun as a subject; at least this ellipsis did not extend further in the earliest times. The omission of the relative subject was also subsequently predominant. Old-Engl.: Herkne to my ron . . Of

a *mody mon*, *Highte Mazumon* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 119.). He smot a *duyk hatte Currend* (ALIS. 3243.). Daudid had *douhtres pre*, *were gyven to pre lordynges* (LANGT. II. 249.). And had a *wif was queint and fair* (SEUYN SAGES 2205.). And sent yt to a *lady gent*, *Was born in Cornewayle* (SIR CLEGES 376.). Was there any with *Campanyus dyd fight?* (IPOMYDON 908.). With him ther was dwelling a *pore scoler*, *Had lerned art* (CHAUC., C. T. 3190.). Ther was no man for *perel durst him touche* (8930.). Ther is no *wyn byrevelth me my might* (7641.). His childre angred hym amang, Caym slo *Abelle was hym fulle dere* (TOWN. M. p. 35.). Here is the *chylde this werde hath wrought* (COV. MYST. p. 151.). Blyssyd be that *body of the xal be bore* (p. 76.). — Went to an *hul they clepeth Celion* (ALIS. 6161.). Mony is the *riche lond*, *Thou haste y-wonne into thynd hond* (7492.). Thi wayyson shalle thou have forthy By hym *me boght* (TOWN. M. p. 128.). Thus he gettes many fees of *theyme he begyles* (p. 192.). *The leste drope I for the blod Myght* clens the soyn (p. 261.). — To one *putte wes water inne* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 273.). — *The place thou standes in there* Forsoth, is halowd welle (TOWN. M. p. 58.). This body let us take, And, *wyth alle the worschepe we may*, ley it in the grave (COV. MYST. p. 397.). In Hallsax. and Anglosax. we frequently meet with sentences without a subject, requiring the resumption of a preceding substantive. Hallsax.: *Per hefde Brutus enne mæi haihte Turnus* (LAZAM. I. 73.) [*pe h. T. mod. text.*]. An *preost* wes on leoden, *Lazamon wes shoten* (I. 1.), and thus often with the supplementary quoting of proper names. (I. 24. III. 18. 27. 102. *Pa fond he per ane quene quecchen mid hafde*, *heor-lockede wif*, *weop for hire wei-sið* (III. 25.). Anglosax.: *Mid heora cngningum, Rædguta and Eallerica væron hátene*, *Române burig Æbræcon* (BORTH. 1.). *Se fæder hirð sealde æne peovene Bala hátte* (GEN. 29, 29.). *Geaf hit þa his æn munac, Brihnôð vās gehāten* (SAX. CHR. 963.). He ne sparode his *ægenne brôðer Odo hét* (1087.). *Færde fram his æn castel*, *Belmont hét* (1124. cf. MARC. 5, 22.); frequently likewise in the naming of proper names: *Hēr on þisum geāre gefōr Alfrēd, vās on Bæðum gerēfa* (SAX. CHR. 907.). This omission is peculiar to Middle-Highdutch. *Diu gōtinne der wisheit ein vrouwe si hiez Pallas* (BARLAAM. 258, 31. ed. Pfeiffer). In *einen walt, was wit* (M. ALTSWERT 14, 27. ed. Holland and Keller) See Weinhold, Alemann. Gr. p. 295. Where in Anglosax. the relative *pe* is wanting with the demonstrative, we find an attraction, as in: *Svâ hvâ svâ gebyrgde þās on þam bæme geveðz* (CÆDM. 480.).

4. Sentences beginning with relative pronouns referred to the same substantive notion are coordinate adjective sentences. But sometimes instead of such a coordination of relative sentences the transition from the relative sentence into one not relative is chosen, in which the substantives is resumed by a personal (demonstrative) pronoun.

He *whom* next thyself, Of all the world I loved, and to *him* put The manage of my state (SHAKSP., Temp. 1, 2.). He held a pouncet-box, *which* ever and anon He gave his nose, and took't away again (I Henry IV. 1, 3.). There is a thing . . *which* thou hast often heard of, and *it* is known to many in our land by the name of pitch (2, 4.). One Almighty is, *from whom* All things proceed, and up to *him* return (MILT., P. L. 5, 469). The workers of iniquity, *which* speak peace to their neighbours, but mischief is in *their* hearts (Ps. 28 3.). He . . In *whose* eyes a vile person is contemned; but he honoureth them that fear the Lord (15, 4.). So too a substantive pronoun may be resumed by one not relative:

Upon whom thou shalt see the Spirit descending, and remaining on him, the same is he which baptizeth with the Holy Ghost (JOHN 1, 33.). The interchange of the single relative sentence with another is, however, different: Not Mexico could purchase kings a claim To scourge him, weariness his only blame (COWPER, p. 102.).

This succession of sentences, in part called forth by the interchange of the case with or without a preposition, is in disfavour with the moderns, who prefer uniformity of the sentences. In former times it is found more frequently. Old-Engl.: For the grete love *that* he hadde to us, and we nevere deserved *it* to him (MAUNDEV. p. 2.). Oure Lord *that* naylyd was on the rode, And betyn out was *his* bodyes blode, He is aresyn (Cov. MYST. p. 357.). Even the transformation of the relative sentence, to be prospectively attached, does not appear offensive. "Had I wist" is a thing *it serves of noght* (TOWN. M. p. 100.). In Anglosax. transitions of that sort are not uncommon: Se *pe* peof gefēht ðæsse him mon gefangene āgyf and he hine þonne ālāte . . forgyldre þone peof his vere (LEGG. I.Æ. 36.). Se *pe* friore forstāle and he hynne bebycge . . svelte tō deaðe (LEGG. ÆLÆ. 15.). Ofer þone *pe* þu gesyhst nyðer-stigendne Gast, and ofer hynne vunjende, þat ys se *pe* fullað on Hālgum Gāste (JOH. 1, 33.). Comp. also: Manige Francisce and Englisce þær heora stafas and rice forluron *pe* hi mid unrihte begeāton ðæsse mid vōge þær on lifedon (SAX. CHR. 1102.).

5. To adjectives also belong sentences with the adnominal pronouns *which* and *what*.

- a. We have already mentioned the adnominal *which* p. 238. The substantives with which this pronoun appears are certainly always drawn in such a manner into the dependent sentence that the adjective sentence also yields the determination of the substantive contained in it. Yet *which*, in the cases cited, refers at the same time to a substantive or a sentence. An attraction of the substantives, when no reference of the relative takes place, rarely occurs in these sentences, which then attach themselves to the use of generalized pronouns.

Lead me *which way you please* (SHERID. KNOWLES, Virgin. 5, 1.). *Whichever road you take*, it will conduct you to town (WEBST. v. *Whichever*.).

This *which*, approaching *what*, rests upon *while*, *whulc*. Old-Engl.: Ȝour abyndynge xal be with ȝour maydenys ffe, *Whyche time as ze wole have consolacion* (Cov. MYST. p. 86.). Hallsax.: *Whulc riche mon per at-fleh* in to castle he abeh (LAJAM. I. 222.). *Wulc mon swa wurs dude* þene þe king hafde iboden, he wolde hine ifusen (II. 505.). Anglosax.: *Svā hvylce daga ic þe deorne cige*, gehȳr me (Ps. 137, 4). The Anglo-saxon used *svā hvylc* or *svā hvylc svā* in generalizing *hvylc*.

- b. The adjective *what* chiefly stands with its substantive without reference backward, by exercising the attraction just mentioned upon the substantive to be determined by the dependent sentence. It likewise attaches itself originally to the use of the pronoun in generalizing the notion, and also appears adjectively in the amplified forms expressly denoting this generalization. But the pronoun thus includes, as it were, a demonstrative besides the relative.

He it was, whose guile . . deceiv'd The mother of mankind,

what time his pride Had cast him out from Heav'n ((MILT., P. L. 1, 34.). Full to the utmost measure of *what bliss Human desires can seek or apprehend* (5, 517.). There, my mistress used to rise *what time she now lies down* (SHERID. KNOWLES, Hunchb. 2, 1.). It is well known that the entertainer provides *what fare he pleases* (FIELD., T. Jon. 1, 1.). *What fear he feels* his gratitude inspires (COWPER, p. 44.). Let the reader pronounce *what judgment of it he thinks fit* (LEWES, G. I. 13). May I not employ *what banker I please?* (WARREN, Diary 2, 5.). Discarding *Whatever original words or phrases time or fashion had* (SCOTT, Minstrelsy I. 21.) *Whatever honours be awarded to me*, should be extended also to the Vicar of the Pope (BULW., Rienzi 2, 8.).

A further application of this use of *what* is the reference back to a substantive, remaining to be added to it in thought, so that *what* in fact approaches a purely relative pronoun, although it is essentially distinct from it in not immediately representing a substantive notion, but in being capable of being resolved into *that* (*those*) *which*, for which reason a predicate, referred to the identical object named, does not always appear in the dependent sentence.

I hope there is not dissatisfied *person* but *what is content* (SHERID., Riv. 5, 2.). With *joy* beyond *what victory bestows* (COWPER p. 3.). I rather impute what you say to your secrecy, a very commendable *quality*, and *what I am far from being angry with you for* (FIELD., J. Andr. 1, 5.). *A scene* so different from *what last night's journey had presaged* (SCOTT, Guy Manner 4.). Neither were the *congratulations* paid to Sophia equal to *what were conferred on Jones* (FIELD., Tom. Jon.). But Winter has yet brighter scenes, — he boasts *Splendours* beyond *what gorgeous Summer knows* (BRYANT p. 24.). How comes this hair undone? Its wandering *strings must be what blind me so* (SHELLEY, Cenci 3, 1.).

Old-Engl.: *Thei mai ðeven hem to what man thei wole* (MAUNDEV. p. 179.). *Sche may ðeve it to what man sche list* (p. 288.). Every man *takethe what part that him likethe* (p. 179.). The *that* often occurring in the train of the substantive is in the same case as the *that* added to interrogative and relative words in general. See p. 516. Loke also thou *scorne no mon, Yn what degré thou syst hym gon* (HALLIW., Freemas. 757.). *What tyme thei offere there, Alle here jardyds in thin hond thou take* (Cov. MYST. p. 94.). The substantive which is accompanied by *what* is very often resumed by a pronoun after it, which however, is not in the same relation as the demonstrative to the relative, but falls under the category of the reduplication of the subject or object, or under that of the anacolouthon, as occurs also with the adjective sentence used substantively (See it). That was the lawe of Jewes *That what womman were in avoutrye taken* . . . With stones men sholde hire strike (P. PLOUGHM. p. 232.). *What man in synne doth alle wey scleppe, He xal gon to helle ful deppe* (Cov. MYST. p. 41.). *What man for his mys Doth penawns here, i-wys, His sowle he dothe wel leche* (p. 203.). One sees how the interrogative *what* and the generalizing *what* which has become adjective (*quis, quicumque*) pass at the same time into the narrower notion of *is qui*. Its isolation with reference to a preceding substantive

belongs to a subsequent age. It is assimilated to the treatment of the substantive *what*.

The Adjective Sentence used substantively.

The adjective sentence used substantively, which is introduced in Modern-English by the absolute pronouns *who* and *what* and their amplified forms, by which the generalized notion is expressly denoted, answers to a personal or neuter substantive notion which is to be taken up into the principal sentence as the subject, predicative complement, object or prepositional case. If this substantive sentence is not taken up in such wise into the construction, an anacolouthon as it were, arises, as it does frequently where the generalized sentence becomes a concessive one. *Who* and *what*, supported by no preceding substantive notion (absolute) are not to be considered mere relatives where a pronoun follows them which resumes the substantive notion. They are in the same case as *wer* and *was* with *der* and *das* after them in German, and give the sentence the character of a whole, complete in itself, which may therefore represent the different cases and be construed with prepositions. The case of the pronoun appearing in the sentence used substantively is ordinarily determined by this sentence. The pronouns originally interrogative have made the transition through the notion of generalization to that of demonstrative relatives generally.

1. The sentences with *who*, *whoever*, *whosoever*, formerly also *whoso*, represent the personal substantive notion in the singular and plural.

Who alone suffers, suffers most i'the mind (SHAKSP., Lear 3, 6.). *Who cheapens life*, abates the fear of death (YOUNG, N. Th. 4, 65.). *Who sent thee there* requires to here (BYRON, Manfr. 2, 4.). *March who will* (MARLOWE, Edw. II. 1, 1.). *Let who will be President* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. III. 113.). *Who venerate themselves*, the world despise (YOUNG, N. Th. II. 355.). *There be who say . . . That splendid lies are all the poet's praise* (BYRON, Engl. Bards p. 327.). *But whom thou hat'st I hate* (MILT., P. L. 6, 734.). *On whom we send*, The weight of all and our last hope relies (2, 415.). *Go . . . ethereal messenger, Sent from whoso sovran goodness I adore* (8, 646.). *Bliss is the same in subject or in king, In who obtain defence, or who defend* (POPE, Essay on M. 4, 58.). *Their love Lies in their purses; and whoso empties them, By so much fills their hearts with deadly hate* (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 2, 2.). *They . . . were but too ready to believe that whoever had incurred his displeasure had deserved it* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 33.). *In defence of their common freedom every where, and against whosoever shall aspire to be prince* (BULW., Rienzi 2, 1.). *An attraction of the case by the principal sentence is seldom found. Vengeance is his or whose he sole appoints* (MILT., P. L. 6, 808.). *That the gates and bridges of the State should be under the control of whomsoever should be elected Chief Magistrate* (BULW., Rienzi 2, 6.).

The repetition of the substantive notion by a pronoun, or even by another substantive, is equivalent to other reduplications. *Who murders time, he crushes in the birth A pow'r ethereal* (YOUNG, N. Th. 2, 10.). *Who noble ends by noble means obtains . . . That man is great indeed* (POPE, Essay on M. 4, 233.). A pronoun is, on the other hand, placed after the sentence beginning with *who* and taking the lead of the period, where it appears as a subject, if it is to be conceived as an oblique case in the principal sentence. *Who sows the serpent's teeth, let him not hope To reap a joyous harvest* (COLER., Picc. 4, 7.).

In the older language *that* is in such a case sometimes used for *who*. Plead for him *that will*, I am resolv'd (MARLOWE, Edw. II. 1, 4.). Handsome is, *that handsome does* (GOLDSM., Vic. 1.). Here also may be referred: Say, in pursuit of profit or delight, Who risk the most, *that take wrong means or right?* (POPE, Essay on M. 4, 85.). In this period indeed, the sentence with *that* is supported by the subject indicated in the interrogative sentences.

The sentences now in question are to be distinguished from the indirect interrogative sentences with which they frequently come in contact, although that very contact may have helped to occasion the transition from generalized sentences into those which are not so. Many are at present, with or without designation of the generalization of the notion, of general nature. The oldest sentence of the sort are introduced by *who so*, *whose*, *whoever*, which are very commonly followed in the principal sentence by a pronoun in the nominative, or in another case required by this sentence. *who (that)* appears only subsequently, likewise mostly with a subsequent reference to the substantive notion. Old-Engl.: *Hwo se haveð eni unpeas of peo ðet ich er nemde . . . heo haveð prude sikerliche* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 67.). *Hwo se wule hire inwit witen clene and feir, heo mot fleon ðe vorrideles* (I. 68.). *Whose zong lerneth, olt he ne leseth* (I. 110.). *Wo so listneð develes lore, on lengðe it sal him repen sore* (I. 221.). *Who so synneth in the Seint Spirit, Assoilled worth he nevere* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 359.). Hem semethe, that *whoso evere be meke and pacyent*, he is holy and profitable (MAUNDEV. p. 170.). *Ho so haveth of urthe mest, he is slou as an asse* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 138.). *Who so failleth at this nede, mote he never in othir spede!* (ALIS. 4308. cf. 767.). *Whose useth hem wel, he may han heven* (HALLIW., Freemas. 576. cf. 1.). *Whose hath any god, hopeth he nout to holde* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 149.). *Who so that nyl be war by other men, By him schal other men corrected be* (CHAUC., C. T. 5762.). *Whoevere so doth he errith in the byleve* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 42.). *Ho so were an hez bi a sterre . . . So moche wolde the urthe thenche that he ne scholde hire noyt i-seo* (WRIGHT, Pope Treat. p. 132.). *Who so first cometh to the mylle, first grynt* (CHAUC., C. T. 5971.). *Cach who so may* (5658.). *Who that hath trewe amye Joliflich he may hym in her afyghe* (ALIS. 4750.). But *ho be greved in his gost*, governe him better (DEPOS. OF RICH. II. p. 4.). *Who that is so bold I brane hym thrughe the hede* (TOWN. M. p. 142.). *Whom in erthe ye lowse of syn in heven lowsyd shalle be. And whom in erthe ye bynd therin, in heven bonden be he* (TOWN. M. p. 285.). In Hallsax. *hwa (wa), swa (wo so* in the mod. text of Lajamon), *hwase* are used: *Wa swa wulle libba alde pas sibba* (LAJAM. I. 155.). *Wea swa nolde, he sculde beon iwite* (I. 88.). *Wha swa i pen stræten breken grið pe king him wolde bi-nimen his lif* (I. 206. cf. II. 513. III. 140.). He mai *wham swa he wule wurðcipe* II. 347.). *Whase dop hiss are o pe Tibi propitiatur* (ORM. 1042.). *Whamm se pu seost tatt Godess Gast . . . cumeþþ uponn himm . . . He fullht neþþall* (12604 sq.). These forms

answer to the Anglosax. *svá hvá svá*: *Swá hvá svá ágit mannes blóð, his blóð bið ágoten* (GEN. 9, 6.). *Sittan læte ic hine við me sylfne, svá hvá svá þát secgan cymeð* etc. (CÆDM. 436.). In the meaning of *ælc, þe, se þe*, however, *svá hvílc svá* is very common, Comp. MATTH. 11, 42. LUC. 8, 18. 17, 32. 18, 17. MARC. 9, 37. 10, 15.

But the pronoun *that* is early familiar in the personal substantive sentence, which is not to be taken for the demonstrative with the relative omitted, but rather for the relative with the demonstrative rejected, with which compare the Lat. *qui* with reference to an absent general substantive notion. Old-Engl.: *That er werede robes*, now wereth ragges (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 150.). As a prince serued he wes . . And *that brought him to that state*, Stode bischet withouten the gate (AMIS. A. AMIL. 1904.). He smot Favel with spores of golde, Sewe hym *that sewe wolde* (RICH. C. DE L. 5039.). *Þat was right heire* is dede (LANGT. II. 249.). *Þat* is thus used even in Hallsax: *ʒif me mot ilasten þat lif a mire breosten, & hit wulle me iunne þat i-scop mone & sunne* (LAȜAM. II. 461.). *Þa weoren ærhest þat ær weoren baldest* and gunnen to fleonnen (II. 489.). In Anglo-saxon the personal sentence may be introduced both by the relative *þe* alone and by the mere *se*: *Tō myddes eov stōd þe ge ne cunnon* (JON. 1, 26.). *Gilde pone byrst þe þāt fyr ontende* (EXOD. 22, 6.). *Nu synd forðfarene þe þās cildes sǽve sōhten* (MATH. 2, 20.). *Velan āh in vuldre se nu vel penceð* (COD. EXON. 452. 11.).

2. The pronoun *what*, together with its generalized forms, serves to form sentences representing a neuter substantive, or a neuter notion permitting the same grammatical treatment as the personal one.

What he hath utter'd, I have writ my sister (SHAKSP., Lear 1, 4.). *What thou could'st*, thou didst (ROWE, Fair Penit. 1, 1.). *What Reason weaves* by Passion is undone (POPE, Essay on M. 2, 42.). *What solid was*, by transformation strange, Grows fluid (COWP. p. 187. *What followed* was in perfect harmony with this beginning. (MACAUL., Hist. of E. II. 26.). Do I *what I could* (KEMP, Nine Daies Wond. p. 6.). Milton . . inherited *what his predevessors created* (MACAUL., Essays I. 4.). That's *what we ought to be considering* (WARREN, Diary 1, 15.). Men who pay for *what they eat* (FIELD., T. JON. 1, 1.). I am a fool to weep at *what I am glad of* (SHAKSP., Temp. 3, 1.). And hinder them from *what this ecstasy May now provoke them to* (3, 3.). As we have now leisure only to attend to *what is very material* (FIELD., T. JON. 18, 10.). As to *what she suffers from her father* etc. (SHELLEY, Cenci 1, 2.). The theatre affords the most appropriate example of *what we mean* (SCOTT, Minstrelsy I. 58.). A gloomy tree, which looks as if it mourn'd O'er *what it shadows* (BYRON, Cain 3, 1.). *What-e'er this world produces*, it absorbs (COWPER p. 111.). Hence I despatch at once *whatever I have to do* (LEWES, G. I. 12.). From the Duke Comes all — *what-e'er we hope, what-e'er we have* (COLER. 1, 1.). [In cases of this sort the substantive sentence is in the apposite relation.] *Whatsoever thwarts or puts me out of my way*, brings death into my mind (CH. LAMB, Essays). Thou canst make conquest of *what-e'er seems highest* (COLER, Picc. 5, 2.).

The reference to a neuter *what* by a demonstrative, especially that is frequent. *What he hath won, that hath he fortified* (SHAKSP., John 3, 4.). *What I say . . that can I show* (BULW., Rienzi 1,

5.). *What I saw to be the right thing, that I did* (LEWES, G. I. 14.). The construction of *what* with a predicative nominative or accusative of the plural, without a reference to a preceding substantives being possible (as above 5 p. 526), perhaps rests upon the indefinite generality of the neuter *what*, which may therefore be also taken collectively. If the verb follows the plural of the predicative word, this happens by attraction. Like making *what are called at school nonsense verses* (SCOTT, *Minstrelsy* I. 9.). Producing panegyrics upon public characters, *what were called odes upon public events* etc. (THACKERAY, *Engl. Humourists* 2.). It will be seen that even *what we justly account our chief blessings* were not without alloy (MACAUL., *Hist. of E. I.* 2.) To attain *what his age might suppose to be the highest graces of poetry* (SCOTT, *Minstrelsy* I. 20.). With that compare the sentence with *what* followed by appositive substantives. She wore, *what was then somewhat unusual*, a coat, vest and hat, resembling those of a man, which fashion has since called a riding-habit (R. Roy 5.). Still more striking is: I'm thinking Captain Lawton will count the noses of *what are left* before they see their whale-boats (COOPER, *Spy* 8.), where no attraction is produced by a predicative notion, and *what* is treated as a collective notion.

that, formerly equivalent to *what*, is obsolete. But fittest is, that all contented rest With *that they hold* (SPENS. F. Qu. 6, 9, 29.). I lend no credit to *that is fabled of 'em* (BEN JONS., *Ev. Man in h. Hum.* 3, 1.).

The oldest sentences of this sort are introduced with *whatso*, *whatse*: the simple *what* frequently stands both in indirect and direct interrogative sentences, and in the former often borders hard on the sentences considered here, in which certainly, from the fourteenth century *what* (*that*) more frequently appears, although the simple *that* still predominates. We may exclude as indirect interrogative sentences all those whose principal sentence may make the dependent sentence the subject of a subjective reflection. Old-Engl.: Let him say to me *what so him list* (CHAUC. C. T., 6872.). *What so he biddes me*, good or ille, *That shalle be done* (TOWN. M. p. 37.). Pay them trwly . . . *what that they deserven may* (HALLIW., *Freemas.* 93.). To her hure take no more But *what that they mowe serve fore* (95.). Of that salt, every man takethe *what he will* (MAUNDEV. p. 149.). And bere with him *what him list* (p. 198.). And dede *what him leste* (CHAUC., C. T. 3421.). *Ze may go do what ze xalle* (COV. MYST. p. 87.). Now have ye hard *what I have sayde* (TOWN. M. p. 183.). Do wyth hym *what thou thynk gud* (p. 232.). *Thynk on what I you say* (p. 171.). *What he with wronge begyle his brother*, In blysse full sone shall he forsake (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., *Rel Ant* 1. 198.). Halfsax: *Þat we leteþ him one don wat so he wolle* (LAJAM. III. 19. mod. text.). *Swa we don unnhaerliþ Whattse we don to gode* (ORM. 425.). The pronoun stands in a remarkable manner after all where it might be taken purely relatively: *Þatt he þæroffe sholde don All whattse his wille ware* (ORM. 2383.). *Þatt te birrþ hatenn . . All whattse iss woh and sinne* (5552.). *All whatt itt sezþþ* (5503.). [Comp. Middle-Highdutch *daz . . waz* (BENECKE, Wb. 3. 566. II.)], as *whatt* here occurs for a neuter *which*. Comp. Old-Engl.: *Knyghtes servyd ther good spede, Off whatt to telle is no rede* (RICH. C. DE L. 157.). The neuter *what se* is met with instead of the masculine: *What se hæfde richedom*, he hine makede wræcche mon (LAJAM. I. 279.) [*rose hadde* mod. text]. The simple *what*, id quod, is besides found here and there. Beduer iherde *what*

his lauerd him seide (LAIAM. III. 24.). In Anglosax. the generalizing *svá hvāt svá* is to be met with: *We vyllað þát þu ús dô svá hvāt svá ve biddað* (MARC. 10, 35.). *Svá hvāt svá vit hér morðres poljað hit* is nu Adame eall forgolden (CÆDM. 752.).

That indirect interrogative sentences with *what* are not always to be with certainty distinguished from those in which a demonstrative relative (*quod*, id *quod*) is to be supposed, lies in the nature of the thing. Sentence, like: *Gif he nábbe hvāt he við þære stale sylle*, sylle hine man við fes (EXOD. 22, 3.), are explained by the comparison with the Lat. *Non habeo quid scribam* (CIC., ATT. 15, 5.), that is non scio, perspectrum habeo and the like.

From the most ancient times *that*, now abandoned in the meaning of *id quod* is found. Old-Engl.: *Monimon wenit þat he wenen ne þarf* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW. I. 174.). *Leevynge plesingly to do that God biddith hem* (II. 45.). To London he wende, for to amende *þat þer was amys* (B. or GL. I. 144.). To scope come, *þat Seynt Edward byuore hys depe sede* (II. 386.). *That oon doth*, alle doth (P. FLOUGHM. p. 341.). Til briddes bringe us *That we sholde lyve by* (p. 313.). *That thou herdest* is fairye (ALIS. 6924.). *That he askith* we wol him sende (3035.). *Ὁ εἶδεις . . . quod vides . . . That thou seest*, is ground of alle the feythe of this world (MAUNDEV. p. 77. cf. 146. 164. 252. 310. RICH. C. DE L. 1700. (SECVN SAGES 1494. CHAUC., C. T. 7485. 7625. TOWN. M. p. 1. 39. 157. COV. MYST. p. 213. 324. SKELTON I. 29. 58 etc.). The substantive sentence is frequently attached with prepositions. Here dede is al uncuð wið *ðat spekeð here muð* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 222.). *Darie was wel apaied Of that Archelaus haveth y-saide* (ALIS. 2031. cf. 4116. 4158. SIR CREGES 280.). Men myȝten as wel have huntyd an hare with a tabre, As aske ony mendis ffor *that thei mysdede* (DEPOS. OF RICH. II. p. 16.). They sterte up, and wer affrayde for *that he hadde to hem sayde* (RICH. C. DE L. 4241.). *Aȝens that he seyth* no man seyth may (COV. MYST. p. 215.). Halfsax.: *Ȝef us þat we wilniað* (LAIAM. II. 64.). *Denne most þu þolien þat þu ærst for-hozedest* (II. 621.). And forȝet sone *þat his lauerd him seide* (III. 25.). *Uss birrp follȝhenn blipeliȝ þatt ure ȝunngre uss lærepp* (ORM 13278.). Anglosax.: *þā vās gefylled þāt gecveden vās purh Hieremian* (MATH. 2, 17.). *Hit vās Godes villa þāt me hradlice ongeán com þāt ic volde* (GEN. 27, 20.). *Donne sprec ic þāt þe licað* (PS. 18, 13.). *Bête sviðe georne þāt he ābreccen hābbe* (LEGG. ÆTHELR. V. 6.). *Ealle þā þe voldon þāt he volde* (SAX. CHR. 1065.). This usage is intelligible, since *se*, *seó*, *þāt* may appear in all cases of the singular and plural, not merely relatively, but also substantively.

General Observations upon Relative Sentences.

Adjective and substantive relative sentences, as well as adverbial sentences which may be regarded as representatives of adjective sentences, occupy a wide field in the domain of language. The notion of activity contained in them admits various points of view for the logical relation of the dependent to the principal sentence, with its various tenses, and by its construction with all kinds of determinations of the sentence. Adjective sentences in particular may in this respect be compared with the participles which are attached to a substantive notion.

But the following cases are to be observed as peculiarities of relative sentences in general.

1. The relative sentence often serves, not so much to periphrase an attribute as to connect a fact, which may be attached to a sub-

stantive notion or to a sentence, as a consequent in time, or an inference and illustration in such manner that the former there appears as a subject, or as otherwise partaking of it. A coordinate principal sentence, in which a demonstrative operated retrospectively instead of the relative, might be substituted for the dependent sentence.

I gave him a piece of bread, *which he ate* (DE FOE, Robins. Crus. p. 196. Tauchn.). A large glass of claret was offered to Mannering, *who drank it to the health of the reigning prince* (SCOTT, Guy Manner. 36.). He thus began in haste . . . *To whom the winged warrior thus return'd* (MILT., P. L. 4, 560—76.). For the truth of this custom, he quoted the chronicle of Antwerp and that of Martin; *against which authorities Lovel had nothing to oppose* (SCOTT, Antiquary 3.). They leave us The dangers, the repulses, judgments, wants; *Which how long will you bear?* (BEN JONS., Catiline 1, 1.) So glist'rd the dire snake . . . *which when she saw,* thus to her guide she spake (MILT., P. L. 9, 643—46.). The same phenomenon is presented by sentences with relative adverbs. I carried her to the bed *where I laid her down* (WARREN, Diary 2, 1.). With full assent They vote; *whereat his speech he thus renews* (MILT., P. L. 2, 398.) etc.

Freer connections of this sort belong to the influence of the Latin. In English such connections commence in the progress of narrative with the extension of the usage of *which*. Old-Engl.: And saugh an hond . . . *For fere of which he quook* (CHAUC., C. T. 15689.). "Sir", wold he sayn, "an emperour mot neede Be verutuons and hate tyrannie." *For which he in bath made him to bleede* (15993.). He fond an yle, where he herde speke his owne langage . . . *whereof he hadde gret mervayle* (MAUNDEV. p. 183.).

2. It is especially intelligible that a conditional sentence might often be substituted for a generalized relative sentence. Thus a substantive sentence coming out of the period particularly appears.

Villain, thou knowst, the law of arms is such, That, *whoso draws a sword*, 'tis present death (SHAKSP., I Henry VI. 3, 4.). Hereby is explained the form still in use *as who should say*, He . . . only gave me a nod, *as who should say*, it is even so (MARLOWE, Jew of M. 4, 4. cf. Edw. II. 1, 2.). He wistly look'd on me; *As who should say*, I would thou wert the man (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 5, 3. cf. I Henry VI. 1, 4.).

In ancient times adjective sentences, and sentences used substantively, often come out of the construction, which, although representing an anakoluthon, contain the condition of something. Old-Engl.: A man *that is joyful and glad in herte*, it him converseth florishinge in his age (CHAUC., C. T. p. 151. II.). For he *that sloys yong or old* it shalle be punyshed sevenfold (TOWN, M. p. 16.). *Hwase mai wel beo widuten*, ich hit mai polien (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 4.). For *who so kutte hem with iren*, it wolde destroye his vertue (MAUNDEV. p. 50.). So dide Jhesu in hise dayes, *Who so hadde tyme telle it* (P. PLOUGHM. 402.). For is noon of this newe clerkes, *Who so nymeth heede*, . . . That an auctour kan construwe (p. 317.). The form *as who seith* is old: And penne is *as wo seip* ðe pure lond a midde (R. of GL. I. He toc hym poer, *as wo seip*, of all Engelond (384.). Thei spenden, *as who seythe*, right nought (MAUNDEV. p. 253.). This reminds us of the Fr. form *comme qui dirait*. Anglosax.: Se man *pe at þam fyrdrunge tóforan*

his hláforde fealle . . þá heregeata forgyvenne (Læc. Cnut. I. B. 25. [let the furniture of the army be thus issued]. Se þe útlages veorc geyrce, wealde se cyning þás friðes (I. B. 12.).

3. The generalized relative sentence is used as a concessive sentence. See p. 476.
4. That the relative pronoun may be drawn into dependent sentences appears from many of the instances already quoted. But a phenomenon frequently recurring is its reference to a substantive sentence following an inserted principal sentence, partly with the particle *that*, but mostly without it. From this there arises an interlacing, when the relative itself may be attracted by the principal sentence, although the principal sentences, with the rejection of *that* in modern times, mostly receive the semblance of interpolated sentences, which may be regarded as parenthetical. That many of these dependent sentences may be transformed into the infinitive is evident.

Hast thou eaten of the tree *whereof* I commanded thee *that thou shouldest not eat*? (GEN. 3, 11.) "What lady would you choose to assail?" — "Yours. *whom in constancy* you think *stands so safe* (SHAKSP., Cymb. 1, 5.). I speak not this in estimation As *what* I think *might be*, but *what I know* *Is ruminated, plotted and set down* (I Henry IV. 1, 3.). Though *what* thou tell'st *Hath pass'd in Heav'n* some doubt within me move (MILT., P. L. 2, 204.). And *what* thou know'st *I answer'd then*, Will serve to answer thee agen (BURT., Hud. 1, 3, 1335.). I bring you something, my dear, *that I believe will make you smile* (GOLDSM. G. Nat. M. 2.). The origin of his own practice, *which* he says *was a tendency* he never could deviate from (LEWES, G. I. 60.). *What* we think *ought to be*, we are fond to think will be (COOPER, Spy 6). The resumption of the relative by an interrogative sentence is analogous. Doctrin *which* we would know *whence learn'd* (MILT., P. L. 856.). The interlacing of such sentences becomes visible in the same process with interrogative pronouns in interrogative sentences. *Whom* will you now here *That I do to this body*? (COV. MYST. p. 399.). Anglosax.: On þære stove þe he gecist *pāt man his naman on nemne* (DEXTER. 14, 22.). Binnan þam dice . . þe ve gemynegodon *pāt Severus se cāsere hēt þegns ofer pāt eadland gedicejan* (BEDA 1, 11.). Þonne þu ænig þing begite *pās þe þu vēne pāt me lȳcige*, bring me *pāt ic ete* (GEN. 27, 3.). He þær vigena fand āsberendra XVIII and CCC eac peodne holdra, *pāra þe he viste pāt meakte vel æghwylc on fyrd vegan fealve linde* (CÆDM. 2035.). Sōhton sārigu tu sigebearn Godes ænne in *pāt eorð-ārū, þær hī ær viston pāt hine gehyddan hāleð Judea* (COD. EXON. 460, 2.). — *Hvāt þyncst þe pāt þu siet*? (JON. 8, 53.). *Hvām vēne ic pāt hit beo gelic*? (LUC. 13, 16.). *Hu fela manna vile ge on eóvrūm cynne pāt faron*? (EXOD. 10, 8.) *Hvāt sæde ic pāt ic nyste*? (BOETH. 35, 2.)

Relative as well as interrogative sentences appear from the most ancient times in such combination, when the dependent sentence, however, does not usually dispense with the particle *that*. Old-Engl.: There was a noble rede knyght *The whiche* all men that gan hym see, Said, *than he was better than hee* (IROMYDON 1042). — *What worschepe and grace semyth you now here That I do to this body*? (COV. MYST. p. 399.). Anglosax.: On þære stove þe he gecist *pāt man his naman on nemne* (DEXTER. 14, 22.). Binnan þam dice . . þe ve gemynegodon *pāt Severus se cāsere hēt þegns ofer pāt eadland gedicejan* (BEDA 1, 11.). Þonne þu ænig þing begite *pās þe þu vēne pāt me lȳcige*, bring me *pāt ic ete* (GEN. 27, 3.). He þær vigena fand āsberendra XVIII and CCC eac peodne holdra, *pāra þe he viste pāt meakte vel æghwylc on fyrd vegan fealve linde* (CÆDM. 2035.). Sōhton sārigu tu sigebearn Godes ænne in *pāt eorð-ārū, þær hī ær viston pāt hine gehyddan hāleð Judea* (COD. EXON. 460, 2.). — *Hvāt þyncst þe pāt þu siet*? (JON. 8, 53.). *Hvām vēne ic pāt hit beo gelic*? (LUC. 13, 16.). *Hu fela manna vile ge on eóvrūm cynne pāt faron*? (EXOD. 10, 8.) *Hvāt sæde ic pāt ic nyste*? (BOETH. 35, 2.)


Section The Third.

Of the Collocation of Words and Sentences.

The more a language wears off and loses its inflective forms, the less capable it becomes of a freer collocation of words and members of sentences in speech and writing. The so called logical succession of words, which even languages rich in inflection in general make predominant in calmly measured speech, consists in connecting words in such wise that the notions meet, so as to form a visible and perspicuous unity, when the groups of words or members of sentences immediately connected permit, within their own limits, a certain liberty to habit. The progress from the more general to the particular, from the more indefinite to the more definite is always readily presented, and represents most simply in a sensuous manner the march and growth of a series of ideas and thoughts. The rhetorical collocation of words, on the other hand, assigns to words and members of sentences a position which, by reason of their particular importance for the speaker, seems adapted to give them an especial emphasis. It therefore departs, as an inversion, from the habitual logical collocation, without thereby rendering the relations of the words and members unclear. The law of euphony and of rhythm, concurrently therewith, pervades both prose and poetry, although the latter attributes to it the greater weight. Inversion is rendered difficult in languages poor in inflection, as is the case in the Romance languages.

The English language, although poorer in inflective forms than the Romance, has preserved advantages over these in the arrangement of words and of members of sentences, for which it is essentially indebted to the Anglosaxon. It unites in this respect the advantages of French in the lucidity of speech, and is at the same time not without boldness and variety in its outward articulation. The full freedom of Anglosaxon is of course denied to it, even in poetry; but it has preserved enduringly echoes of Germanic connections of words, and has turned them most to account in poetry, as frequently reflected in dialects and in the popular speech. Inversion is also protected and indicated by a higher accent, which considerably distinguishes English from French.

Forasmuch as the collocation of words is frequently conditioned by the grammatical relation of the words, and the popular habit connected therewith, it has been already touched upon in many places of our grammatical investigation. We have therefore here in part to give only a general picture of it, in part to refer to what has already been discussed.



1. The Position of the Subject and of the Predicate.

- A. 1. In the indicative principal sentence, both the affirmative and the negative, the most general practice makes the subject come at the commencement.

Time glides on; *fortune* is inconstant: *tempers* are soured (MACAUL., *Essays* III. 3.). *Plato* is never sullen (ib.).

Old-Engl.: *Edward* wele has sped (LANGT. II. 245.). *Costantynoble* is a fulle fayr cytee (MAUNDEV. p. 15.). Halfsax.: *His fader* wes a Gric ikoren (LAJAM. I. 17.). Anglosax.: *Niht* is ge-sett mannun tō reste (WRIGHT, *Pop. Treat.* p. 5.) *Pegnās prymfāste* peoden hēredon (CÆDM. 15.).

2. The commencing the sentence with the verb of the predicate, if this is preceded by no determination, has not in general remained familiar to the language. This inversion of the subject and verb is usual in interpolated or postpositive sentences, if the subject is introduced speaking.

"It is a false conclusion," said *Tinto*: "I hate it." (SCOTT, *Bride* 1.). Whisht, whisht!" cried *Shaya* (MARRYAT, *P. Simple*, 1, 12.). "How shall I construe that, Sir Solomon" answered *Louis* (SCOTT, *Qu. Durw.* 28.), although the regular collocation frequently appears, even here. "My son, my son!" he cried, "they have murdered him." (BULW., *Rienzi* 5, 3.). "I am not to be lodged there," the king said with a shudder (SCOTT, *Qu. Durw.* 26.). The verb stands archaically and poetically at the beginning of the speech: *Quoth Hudibrass*, "I smell a rat" (BUTL., *Hud.* 1, 1, 821.). *Quoth he* 2, 2, 665.). *Thought he*, "this the lucky hour" (2, 1, 285.). *Answered the Warder* (SCOTT, *Lord of the Isl.* 1, 25.); and thus intransitive verbs often come at the beginning. *Fled the fiery De la Haye* (SCOTT, ib. 2, 13.). *Smiled then*, well pleased, the aged man (L. *Minstr.* 4, extr.). *Follow'd the king* (BULW., *K. Arth.* 7, 3.). *Shook all the hollow caves* (7, 56.). *Kneel'd there*, his train (7, 58.). *Pass'd he* who bore the lions and the cross (7, 69.). *Seemed it*, that the chariot's way Lay through the midst of an immense concave (SHELLEY, *Qu. Mab* I. p. 12.). *Removed he* too from Roumelie (BYRON, *Bride* 2, 16.). *Times presses, floats my bark* 2, 21) etc. Prose uses this collocation in public proclamations, as: *Died at old Rain* . . *Charles Leslie* SCOTT, *Ministr.* I. 85.).

The insertion and postposition of inverted sentences with speeches quoted is common to all ages. Old Engl.: "Sire Emperour", *quop þe erl po*, "ne be þe noȝt so bolde" (R. OF GL. I. 58.). "Dame" *gnod Melibeus* etc. (CHAUC., *C. T.* p. 164. I.); as inversely: "Sire", *he side*, "all þi wille þou hast." (R. OF GL. I. 58.). Halfsax.: "Lauerd" *quaf Anacleus*, "don ic wille pine lare." (LAJAM. I. 30.). Anglosax.: "Hvæt sceal ic vinnan?" *cvæð he*. (CÆDM. 278.). "Sigefero is min nama", *cvæð he*, "ic eom secgena leod." (FIGHT AT FINNESB. 48) The postposition of the subject, and the position of the personal form of verbs of all kinds at the commencement is in Old-Engl. especially peculiar to poetry: *Quoth Alisaundre*, with voys hynde "Now y schal wite who is my freonde (ALIS 3762.) *Sayde the kyng*: I geve hem leve (RICH. C. DE L. 1225.). *Bifel a cas* in Briteyne (LAY LE FREINE 23.) *Syngith the nygtyngale*, *gredeth theo jay* (ALIS. 142.). *Holde ich* no mon for un-sele (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., *Rel. Ant.* I. 113.). *Longith*

the day (ALIS. 139.). *Was reised ther al maner pley* (194.). *Sawe y never mon no kyng Make so muche mornynge* (4492.). Halfsax. *Heuede Sauine þa quene kine bearn on wombe* (LAJAM. I. 9.). *Comen i pissen londe to ane hustinge Cadwan & Margadud* (III. 202.). In Anglosax. the commencement with the personal form of the verb is very familiar, both to prose and to poetry. *Spræc þa ides Scylding* (BEOV. 2341.). *Druncon vin veras* (2470.). *Habbað ve tō þam mæran micel ærende Deniga frean* (545.). *Ville ic æsecgan* (693.). *Sceop þa bām naman lifes brytta* (CæDM. 128.). *Forlæt se here þa burh* (SAX. CHR. 921.). *Vās eac oðer treov* (BASIL., Hexam. 15.). *Vās min fæder folcum gecyðed* (BEOV. 592.). *Ilāfde Hæsten ær gevorht þæt geveore āt Beāmfleote* (SAX. CHR. 894.).

3. The transposition of predicative determinations is familiar, so that these stand at the front, and before the intransitive verb to which the subject is attached. Here also belongs the participle in the periphrastic forms of the passive. The subject also precedes the personal form of the verb.

High stomach'd are they both (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 1, 1.). *Hard is the doubt* (SPENS., F. Qu. 4, 9, 1.). *Wise are all his ways* (MILT., P. L. 3, 680.). *Very civil were the salutations on both sides* (FIELD., J. Andr. 2, 3.). *Typical of his own nature and strivings is this conjunction of the Classic and the German* (LEWES, G. I. 17.). *More dear were the scenes which my infancy knew* (BYRON p. 305.). *Blest is the man who etc.* (p. 327.). *Bitter but unavailing were my regrets* (WARREN, Diary 1, 1.). *Opposed to them were the hardest spirits of America* (COOPER, Spy 6.). *Inclosed is a letter from**** (CHATHAM, Lett. 23.). *Then sacred seem'd th'elthereal vault no more* (POPE, Essay on Man 3, 263.). *And hotter grew the air* (BRYANT p. 94.). *Such has been the perplexing ingenuity of commentators* (IRVING, Columb. 1, 1.). *Many are the roofs once thatched with reeds* (CARL., Past a. Pres. 2, 16.). *Many are the hours I have thrown away* (COOPER, Spy 8.). *The first pledge of their reconciliation was the Great Charter* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 14.). *Merry brides are we* (TENNYSON, p. 44.). *A stark moss-trooping Scot was he* (SCOTT, L. Ministr. 1, 21.). — *Certain it is that etc.* (IRVING, Columb. I. Intr.). *Volatile he was* (LEWES, G. I. 48.). *All blood he was* (SHAKSP., Henry V. 4, 6.). *Pretty lads they were* (FIELD., J. Andr. 2, 17.). *Victories indeed they were* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 19.). *Young he seemed And sad* (ROGERS, It., An Advent.).

Old-Engl: *Hardi was is herte to hem* (R. of Gl. I. 123.). *Bryght and fair was hire face* (ALIS. 211.). *Stedfast seldom ben lechoures* (7701.). *Mad was the marriage at Snowdon* (LANGT. II. 237.). *So foul lechour was þe king* (R. of Gl. I. 119.). *Mony was þe gode body, þat yslawe was þer* (I. 9.). *A worthyer lorde forsothe am I* (Cov. MYST. p. 20.). *Vana gloria hette þe vorme* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 66.). *Such is worldes wunne* (I. 120.). Halfsax.: *Sorhful wes his duxete* (LAJAM. III. 201.). *Wete weoren his wongen* (III. 215.). *Vnder-zetene weren þe pinges* (I. 12.). *Achalon heihte an flum* (I. 24.). Anglosax.: *Gode væron begen* (CæDM. 1581.). *Eadig is se innod þe þe bār* (LUC. 11, 27.). *Hālig eart þu* (Cod. EXON. 25, 19.). *Ænlic is þæt iglond* (198, 12.). *Dridda is Tigris* (CæDM. 231.). *Svelc vās peav hira* (ANDR. 25.). *Vrāclīce syndon vāgea gangas* (Ps. 92, 5.). *Pinra handa geveorc syndon heofonas* (BASIL., Hexam. 4.). The position of the subject before the personal form is also familiar. Old-Engl.:

Sori ich am (R. of Gl. I. 113.). *Ychose we* bep her to (I. 112.). *Spoused scheo* is, and set on deys (ALIS. 1039.). *Riche y* was of londe (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 120.). *Fair y* was and fre (I. 121.). *Curteys he* was (CHAUC., C. T. 250.). *Moder thou* art of muchel mist [mijt] (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 48.). *Kyng Phelippes quene scheo* is (ALIS. 151.). Halſax.: *Stif he* wes on þonke (LAJAM. I. 89.). *Christine we* beoð alle (III. 194.). Anglosax.: *Sviðe prýste þu* være þá (THORPE, Anal. p. 105.). *Afastnod ic* eom on lime grundes (Ps. 69, 2.). *Undeór hit* is (ÆLF. GL. Som. 62.).

4. The object placed emphatically at the front may have as a consequence the inversion of the subject, which then comes after the personal form of the verb. Yet this is far more frequently without influence upon the position of the subject and upon the personal form of the verb.

High sparks of honour in thee have I seen (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 5, 6.). *Silver and gold* have I none, but such as I have, give I thee (ACTS 3, 6.). *Peace* hast thou never witness'd (COLER., Picc. 1, 4.). *Much* hast thou learnt, my son, in this short journey (ib.). *One effort* will I make to save thee (SCOTT, Ivanh. 36.). *Friends* have I none (WARREN, Diary 1, 4.). *Such a changed France* have we (CARLYLE, Fr. Revol. 1, 1, 2.).

Old-Engl.: *Monie mo hweolpes* . . haveð *þe liun of prude i-hweolped* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 66.). *Hunten herd y* blowe (120.). *Se ðridde lage* haveð *se leun* (I. 209). A *yeman* had *he* (CHAUC. C. T. 101.). *Hire overlippe* wypud *sche* so clene (133.). *Full many a deynre hors* hadde *he* in stable (168.). *This mene I* now by mighty Theseus (1675.). *Oure lorde Gode* wurchip *we* (Cov. MYST. p. 20.). Halſax.: *Patt seýðe he* (ORM. 687.). *Weorre* makede *Turnus* (LAJAM. I. 8.). *Ænnne sune* heude *Asscanius* I. 11.). Anglosax.: *Heðcún* sohte ic and Beádecan (THE SCOP 225.). *Feala vorda* gesprác *se engel* (CÆDM. 271.). *Ænne háfde he* svá sviðne gevorhtne (2:2.). *Þis cvæð se Hælend* on his hálgan godspelle (BASIL., Hexam. 2.). *Þás gifu* sealde *seð ceastervaru* on Tharsum Apollonio (APOLON. OF T. p. 10.).

5. On the otherhand, an adverbial particle or a prepositional determination more often effects the inverse position of the subject.

Here is Carlisle (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 5, 6.). *Here's no foppery* (BEN JONS. Ev. Man in h. Hum. 4, 1.). *Here* is stuff (ib.). *Here* comes *Virgil* (Poetast. 5, 1.). *Here* are the *other passengers* (DICKENS, Pickw. 2, 20.). *Here* have we gained a victory, unparalleled in history (SCOTT, Waverl. 50.). *There* was a famine in the land (GEN. 12. 10.). *There* was the mother! (WARREN, Diary 1, 2.). *There* can be no dispute (MACAUL., Essays III. 1.). And *thither* were all the flocks gathered (GEN 29, 3.). *Henceforward* will I bear Upon my target three fair shining suns (SHAKSP., III Henry VI. 2, 1.). Give me that glass, and *therein* will I read (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 4, 1.). *Therefore* must your edict lay deep mulct On such etc. (BEN JONS. Sejan 5, 3.). *Therefore* am I bold (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 4, 4.). *Then* went *Esau* unto Ismael (GEN. 28, 9.). *Then* was formed *that language*, less musical indeed etc. (MACCUL., Hist. of E. I. 17.). Yet mark'd I where the bolt of Cupid fell (SHAKSP., Mids. N. Dr. 2, 2.). *Soon after* began the

busy and important part of Swift's life (JOHNSON, *Lives* II. 168.). *Now*, however, came *great news* to St. Edmundsburg (CARL., *Past a Pres.* 2, 7). *Seldom* had so curious a phenomenon worse treatment from the Dryasdust species (Fred. the Gr. 4, 1.). *Scarce* had I left my father etc. (ADDIS., *Cato* 4, 4.). *Scarcely* had James the First mounted the English throne etc. (MACAUL., *Hist. of E. I.* 63.). *Thus* must thou speak (Love's L. L. 5, 2). *Thus* had Savage perished by the evidence of a bawd (JOHNSON, *Lives* II. 100.). *Thus* was dissipated . . . *that body of forces* which etc. (HUME, *Hist. of E.* 57.). *So* ended he his tale (SPENS., *F. Qu.* 4, 9, 58.). *So* fled the bridal train (SCOTT, *Harold* 5, 16.). *So* stands it written (CARL., *Fr. Revol.* 1, 1. 1.). *Off* goes his bonnet to an oystervench (SHAKSP., *Rich.* II. 1, 4.). *On* swept his followers — forward went the cavalry headed by Gianni Colonna (BULW., *Rienzi* 5, 3.). *Away* went Claudio (SHAKSP., *Much Ado* 3, 3.). *Away* went the four long tailed . . . horses (DICKENS, *Pickw.* 2, 20.). *Heavily* swung back the massive gates at his approach BULW., *Rienzi* 1, 4.). *O* swiftly can speed my dapple-grey steed (SCOTT, *L. Minstr.* 1, 24.). *Long* and deeply did I cogitate upon the future MELVILLE, *Digby Grand* 15.). *Well* have ye judged, well ended long debate (MILT., *P. L.* 2, 390.) etc.

Adverbial cases of substantives also come under consideration. *The same day* went Jesus out of the house (MATTH. 13, 1.). *Three times* was the sally led from the gate; *three times* were the Romans beaten back (BULW., *Rienzi* 5, 3.).

Prepositional members of all sorts operate thus. *In the window* . . . lay Spencer's Fairy Queen (JOHNSON, *Lives* I. 1.). *In the church* was I (COLER., *Picc.* 2, 3.). *In purple* was she robed (BYRON, *Ch. Har.* 4, 2.). *Near that village* stood an ancient and stately hall (MACAUL., *Hist. of E.* II. 196.). *At the same time* came the disciples unto Jesus (MATTH. 18. 1. *In those days* came John the Baptist 3, 1.). *Upon their ruins* was founded the formidable house of Douglas (SCOTT, *Minstr.* I. 99.). *Into your hand* are they delivered (GEN. 9, 2.). *Towards that heaven* will we (CARL., *Past. a Pres.* 1, 6.). *With her* vanishes Duke d'Aiguillon and Company (Fr. Revol. 1, 1, 3.). *To such straits* is a Kaiser driven (Fred. the Gr. 5, 6.). *With still less judgment* did he choose blank verse as the vehicle of rural sports (JOHNSON, *Lives* II. 80.). *With these bad terms* was I obliged to comply (WARREN, *Diary* 1, 1.). *With eyes averted* prayed he (SCOTT, *L. Minstr.* 2, 20.). *Between them* lay, during a considerable time, a middle party (MACAUL., *Hist. of E.* I. 48.) etc.

The inversion of the subject is in all cases supported by other and richer determinations, especially by relative sentences coming after it: the verbs with which it is most readily preserved are intransitive and auxiliary and modal verbs, which are employed to form and to periphrase tenses. Instances of particles are numerous in the most ancient times. Old-Engl.: *Her is the blisse* of paradisi (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., *Rel. Ant.* II. 275. *Her is mete, her is drinke* (ib.) *Zent ryd Maximon* (I. 123.). *Ther com a wolf* (II. 274.). *Ther is joye* (I. 49.). *Per* was po strif at Rome (R. of GL. I. 90.). *Pere* passe men the ryvere of Danubee (MAUNDEV. p. 7.). *Therefore* hathe white thorn any vertues (p. 13.). *Fro thens* was he translated in to

Paradys (p. 67.). *Ther above is Godes riche* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 132.). *Ther thurf urneth the wateres* (p. 137.). *Perto had he no right* (LANGT. I. 86.). *Dider com Edgar* (I. 91.). *Tho was Darie sore agast* (ALIS. 4586.). *þanne geð he to a ston* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 210.). *Thanne is thother half durk* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 134.). *Now sit Darge on a hulle* (ALIS. 4144.). *Nu wunieð þar inne fueles* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 129.). *Now skulkes David aboute* (LANGT. II. 243.). *Now wol I speke of the remedies* (CHAUC., C. T. p. 196. I.). *Afterward cam his brother* (GAMELYN 89.). *And yit say I more* (CHAUC., C. T. p. 159. II.). *Seppe haþ Engeland ybe ywerred* (R. OF GL. I. 3.). *Euer hadde y* [add. þe] *loued as my fader* (I. 30.). *Ever stood Gamelyn even upright* (GAMELYN 335.). *And anon begonnen othere Lordes to do the same* (MAUNDEV. p. 41.). *Selden deyeth he out of dette* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 281.). *Dus er many pat trowes na þing* (PRICKE OF CONSC. 303.). *Dus er þai bunden* (3214.). *Dus fel Adam* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 224.). *So prikeþ hem nature* (CHAUC., C. T. 11.). *So fare we alle* (MORRIS, Allit. P. p. 15.). *Forthi seide the aungel* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 9.). *Of goth the skyn* (CHAUC., C. T. 3309.). *Up styrt hir Alisoun* (3822.). *Up roos thanne an advocate* (p. 151. II.). *In goth the sperres* (2604.). *Out goon the swerdes* (2610.). *Forth goth Alisaundre* (ALIS. 1083.). *Forth will i go* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 12.). *Dow than cam his brother* (GAMELYN 151.). *Agein answered the champion* (254.). *Wel havest thou said* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 9.). etc. *Halsax.: Her enndenn twa Goddspelles* (ORM. 241.). *Der wes moni dunt iþeuen* (LAJAM. III. 74.). *Par com Eneas* (I. 7.). *Par inne weren his lafe feond* (I. 27.). *Þær-afterr wurp itt efft to nohht* (ORM. 10960.). *Pa cleopode he eorles twie* (LAJAM. III. 42.). *Pa com pat word to him* (I. 8.). *Þenne seide he to Wendoleine* (I. 101.). *Ofte wes þe drake buen* (III. 15.). *Æuere wes Arður ærhðe bideled* (III. 33.). *Sippenn warrþ Elyzabeth . . wipp childe* (ORM. 231.). *Nu bidded Lazamon* (LAJAM. I. 3.). *Þuss ofercomm þe lape gast Adam annd Eve* (ORM., 12376.). *Þuss hafeþþ Drihhtin don wipp me* (237.). *Dus seide Brutus* (LAJAM. I. 30.). *Welle wide sprong þas eorles word* (III. 43.) etc. *Anglosax.: Hēr fōr se here tō Lundenbyrig* (SAX. CHR. 872.). *Hēr ærest gesceop ēce drihten . . heofon and eorðan* (CÆDM. 112.). *Þær vās Vulfurrunn genumen* (SAX. CHR. 943.). *Þær vās cirm micel* (ANDR. 41.). *Þā vās Mathews . . comen* (40.). *Þā cvaðon þi englas* (GEN. 19, 12.). *Þā stōd he nacod on þam strande* (APOLLON. OF T. p. 11.). *Þānne forð gevāt . . Laurentius* (MENOL. 143.). *Nū sceal liffeā þōne vērġan heāp vrāðum āhreddan* (CYNEV., Crist. 15. Grein). *Hvilum uppāstōd . . egesa ofer yðlið* (ANDR. 443.). *Oft gesamnodon side herigeas* (652.). *Svā hi ālȳsde life ealdor . . þāt þæra æfre ne com in spelboda* (Ps. 105, 10.). *Svā on Sȳne beorg somod up cymeð māġenfolc micel* (CYNEV., Crist 876. Grein) *Þus sindon hāten hāmsittende fāder and mōdur* (ANDR. 686.) etc.

Adverbial determinations by cases and prepositional members were likewise combined in former times to the greatest extent with the inversion of the subject, although, like most particles, not necessarily. Old-Engl.: *Four & tuenti wynter lasted þis sorow* (LANGT. I. 40.). *Seuen zere was he kyng* (I. 23.). *At Siforde setin kinhis monie* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 170.). *Euene azeyn Fraunce stonde þe contre of Chichestre* (R. OF GL. I. 6.). *In that desert duellyn manye of Arrabyenes* (MAUNDEV. p. 63.). *Before that chirche is the ymage of Justynyan* (p. 8.). *Under boske shal men weder abide* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 113.). *Of hym com þe gode Bruyt* (R. OF GL. I. 10.). *To wrotherhele was he wroght* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 280.) etc. *Halsax.: Þeo while com þe eotene faren* (LAJAM. III. 31.). *Inne Griclonde was a zung mon* (I. 17.). *Mid him com moni Aufrican* (II. 6.). *To wroper heore hele habbeð heo such werc idon* (I. 21. sq.). *Anglosax.: Þȳ ilcan geāre slōġon Eāst-Engle Beornvulf* (SAX. CHR. 823.). *Be sūðan him syndon Svæfas* (OROS. I, 1.). *On oðre heāfe Dōnua þære*

ed is pāt land Carendre (ib.). *On pisse abbudissan mynastre vās sun brō-
ðor* (BEDA 4, 24.). *On anginne gesceōp se ālmihtiga fāder pysne mid-
daneard* (BASIL., Hexam. 2.). *Fram pam Vōdne āvōc eall ūre cynecynn*
(SAX. CHR. 449.). *Mid him fērde þes cynges stivard* (1124.). *Vīd þone
here gefuhton Oerīc . . and Aðelvulf* (860.) etc.

6. Negative particles, like *never*, *neither*, *nor* at the commencement, often of themselves effect the inversion of the subjects; negative particles, which in such a case stand in connection with other adverbial or prepositional determinations, have likewise frequently an inverted subject in their train.

Never met we . . on hill, in dale (SHAKSP., Mids. N. Dr. 2, 2.). *Never was there a mind keener or more critical than that of Middleton* (MACAUL., Essays III. 4.). *Never were such thrice-magnificent Carnival amusements* (CARL., Fred. the Gr. 6, 3.). *Neither do the spirits damn'd Lose all their virtue* (MILT., P. L. 2, 482.). *Neither was I offended* (SCOTT, R. Roy 3.). The tale is long, *nor have I heard it out* (ADDIS., Cato 4, 3.). *Nor is this much to be regretted* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 44.). *No sooner was he aware of this, than he repented* (LEWES, G. I. 57.). *Not only does he master it . . — he seems so bent on reaching the goal that he scarcely thinks on anything else* (I. 66.).

From the most ancient times the negative sentence shows an inclination to invert the subject, when a negative particle commences the sentence. Old-Engl.: *Nis nowor non trewðe* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 130.). *Ne may he newir for-farin* (I. 176.). *Ne sal þu þi wif bi hire wlite chesen* (I. 178.). *Ne gladieth me no gest* (I. 125.). *Ne was I never er now . . Somound unto your court* (CHAUC., C. T. 7201.). Thou ne has no champion *Ne fighte canstow nat* (5050.). *Ne con ich saien non falsdom* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 4.). *Ne shal ich never have reste ne ro* (p. 9.). *Nought was forgothe the porter Ydelnes* (CHAUC., C. T. 1942. cf. 2023. 2313.). *No more did Gospatrik* (LANGT. I. 79.). *No dorste no mon him bystryde* (ALIS. 706.). *Never ne hadde he mo in all his lif* (CHAUC., C. T. 13421.). *Never bifor in Wales was don so grete greue* (LANGT. I. 91.). *Noȝer bi Norp no bi Soup com him never help* (I. 41.). Halfsax.: *Næs ich nauere of Arðure aƿered* (LAȜAM. III. 36.). *Nis he in nare kuððe þe hit þe mæȝe icuððe* (III. 41.). *Ne scalt þu næuer halden dale of mine lande* (I. 131.). *Næs næuere king nan* (II. 563.). *Ne maȝ nan man her wurrpi ben* (ORM. 17158.). Anglosax.: *Ne lōh ic, ac þu loge* (GEN. 18, 15.). *Ne dear ic hām faran* (44, 34.). *Ne beoð eðvre dæda dyrne* (COD. EXON. 130, 12.). *Ne vās pāt ongin svylc* (123, 22.). *Þāt næfre forlæted lifgēnde god eorl on eorðan* (ANDR. 459.). The subject usually follows *næfre* in the principal sentence.

7. Even when the principal sentence appears as an apodosis, with or without a conjunction or adverb, the inverted subject often stands after the verb of the predicate.

But when the day-blush bursts from high *Expires that magic melody* (BYRON, Bride, 2, 28.). Wherever flagged his own, or failed the opposing, force, *glittered his white robe, and rose his bloody battle-axe* (BULW., Rienzi 5, 3.). While the government of the Tudors was in its highest vigour, *took place an event* which etc (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I.). If love can sigh For one alone, *Well pleased am I To be that one* (TH. MOORE, Nat. Airs.). If the town was heedless, not so *were the stars* (LEWES, G. I. 15.). Not as

the world giveth *give I* unto you (JOHN 14, 27.). The smaller compass that the realme doth holde, the easier *is the swey therof to welde* (FERREX A. PORR. 1, 2.). The greater the new power they create, the greater *seems their revenge* against the old (BULW., Rienzi 2, 8.).

That the same influences may be predominant in the apodosis as in every other principal sentence is readily intelligible. Yet the inclination to inversion of the subject is especially visible in former times. Old-Engl.: Wher so me eny mete deles, *Gest thou* nout withoute (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I 111.). ðanne he lieth to slepen *sal he* never loken ðe lides of hise egen (I. 209.). Seßen hie henen wenden, *attai pat lond* unwend (I. 129.). Right als Hardeknout had left alle *pat folie Com Edward*, Eilred sonne (LANGT. 56.). By so that thow be sobre . . Darstow nevere care for corn (P. PLOUGHM. p. 276.). If men lyvede as mesure wolde, *Sholde* nevere more be *defaute* (p. 277.). If he naked man se ne *wile he* him nogt neggen (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 212.). The inversion is frequent if a correlative to the dependent sentence is added to the apodosis. *Ther parfit* truthe and poore herte is . . *Ther is Charité* the chief chambrere (P. PLOUGHM. p. 279.). *When* mon is in treye and tene *Thenne herith* God ys bene (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 113.). *Whan* nothing ne halth hit up . . *Thanne falli h hit* softe a-doun (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 137.). *Whan* he wend haf passed þo *pat gon him dryne, þan were* argued in Humber *pritty schippes & fyue* (LANGT. I. 16.). *Though* we killen the cat *Yet sholde* ther come another (P. PLOUGHM. p. 12.). As the male is plentynouse . . among trees of wodes, *so is my derling* among sones (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 40.). The same thing takes place in the principal after the relative sentence. *Wose* lat is wif his maister wurpen, *sal he* never ben his wordes loverd (I. 180.). Halfsax.: þa wile þe heo tweoneden þus, *clepede Membricius* (LAJAM. I. 39.). Þohh þatt he se þe lape gast *Niss he* riht nobht forræder (ORM. 679.). *þa* þis child was feir muche, *þa luæde he* a maide (LAJAM. I. 12.). *Denne* ich was on bedde iswaured . . *þen* com biuoren *þa fairest þing* (II. 234.). Annd *tohh þatt* tiss Elyzabæp . . Wass þuss off Aaroness kinn *pohh seȝp þe Goddspell-whritte* etc. (ORM. 308.). Anglosax.: Syððan he com ofer Vätlinga-stræte, *vorhton hi* þat mæste yfel (SAX. CHR. 1013.). Gif þu þat angin fremest . . *forhele ic* incurum herran, þat me hearmes svâ fela Adam gespræc (CÆDM. 575.). — *þa* hi þa þat gebed gefylled heafdon, *þa com* þær sum vif (GUTH-LAC I.). *Mid þi þe* he þas þingc vās sprecende . . *þa færinga geseah he* sumne fiscere gān (APOLLON. OF T. p. 11.). *Ær* þær være ænig spere ges-coten *ær fleah þat Englisce folc* (SAX. CHR. 1055.). *Svâ hvilec man svâ þe* lifigende tō him bringð, *onfō se* fiftig punda goldes (APOLLON. OF T. p. 8.). This is the common collocation with correlative particles in Anglosax., whence the inverted position of the subject in the apodosis, as opposed to the dependent sentence, appears as decidedly usual.

B. In the interrogitive principal sentence, whose subject is not an interrogative pronoun, or accompanied by an adjective interrogative, the inverted position of the subject is the rule.

What *need we* fear who knows it? (SHAKSP., Macb. 5, 1.). Thoughts, whither *have ye* led me? MILT., P. L. 9, 473.) How *do you* guard your property? (SCOTT, Qu. Durw. 16.). *Are you* a Christian? (ib.) Why *should not the generosity* of our poet be equally interesting to us? (LEWES, G. I. 8.). What *is this Fingal*? (MARRYAT, P. Simple, I, 12.) Will *nothing* move you? (BYRON, Fosc. I, 1.) On the other hand: *Who* is your leader and commands you? (SCOTT, Qu. Durw. 16.) etc. The question may also

take the form of an assertion, the real or ironical questionableness of which is denoted, not by inversion, but by the accent. *They will not banish me again?* — No — no, Let them wring on (BYRON, *Fosc.* 1, 1.). The question may also appear as an indirect question in the sense of another person. *How it is to be cured?* (CARL., *Past a. Pres.* 1, 4.)

If the question assumes the character of surprise and of exclamation, we meet partly with the inversion of the subject, partly with the collocation of the indicative sentence. What visions *have I* seen! (SHAKSP., *Mids. N. Dr.* 4, 1.) How modestly *has he* spoken of himself! (BEN JONS., *Catil.* 5, 6.) How foolish *was I*! (WARREN, *Diary* 1, 1.) On what small and insignificant things *do our fates* depend! (ib.) beside: What taste *some people have*! (SPERID., *Riv.* 2, 2.) Oh, how pleasant *it must be*! (COOPER, *Spy* 2.) Alas! how pale *thou art*! (BYRON, *Manfr.* 3, 4.)

Inversion is traditional in the question. Old-Engl.: *Hast þou forȝete þe gret wo?* (R. OF GL. I. 24.) Wat *þenkestow* for to do? (ib.) *Lovest thou wel* dame Margeri? (WRIGHT, *Anecd.* p. 8.) Halfsax.: Whonene *beo ze?* (LAȜAM. I. 61.). Whær *ært þu?* (II. 327.). Anglosax.: *Slepest þu?* (MARC. 14. 37.). *Lufast þu me?* (JOH. 21, 15.). Hū *mæg he?* (GEN. 29. 6.) Hvāt *sceal ic vinnan?* (CÆDM. 278.). Hvāt *scal þe svā lāðlic strid við þines hearran bodan?* (659) For hvi *ne fixast þu* on sære (THORPE, *Anal.* 108.). The sentence also appears as a question in the form of the assertion. Old-Engl.: And *þou hast* now forsake My doȝter, þat schulde be þi wif, & to a kemelyng take? (R. OF GL. I. 25.) Anglosax. goes further. *Ye oðres sceolon ābidan?* (MATH. 11, 3.) Hū *ve singað* (PS. 136, 5.) [quo modo nos contabimus?] Svā *lange ic eov polige?* (MARC. 9, 19.) [How long shal I suffer you?] Forhvan *þu þāt sele gescot . . unsȳtre biemite?* (COD. EXON. 90, 28.) [Why didst thou . . defile?] — The interrogative pronoun as the subject preceeded, the verb as it does now: *Hvā meahste me svile gevit gifan?* (CÆDM. 668.)

It is natural that the expression of surprise occurs with an interrogative particle or a pronoun from the earliest times in a double collocation. Anglosax.: Eāllā! hū *leās* and hū *unvrēst is þisses middan-eardeð vela!* (SAX. CHR. 1087) — Hū *þu gleavlice mid noman ryhte nemnad være Emmanuhel!* (COD. EXON. 9, 6.). Eālla hū *egeslic þeðs stov ys!* (GEN. 28. 17.) Hū *vundorlic þin nama ys!* (PS. 8, 1.)

- C. Imperative sentences make the pronominal subject follow the personal form of the verb; to them are mostly attached, in regard to the subject generally, optative or periphrastic imperative sentences.

Do thou stand for me! (SHAKSP., I Henry IV. 2, 4.). *Vex not thou the poet's mind* (TENNYSON p. 41.). *Pour ye wine!* (MRS. HEMANS p. 12.). *Do you begin!* (SHAKSP., *Rich.* II. 1, 1.) *Be we bold!* (COLER., *Picc.* 2, 1.) *Perish the baubles!* (GOLDSM., *She Stoops* 2.) *May I be poor and free!* (COWPER p. 5.). O'er roses *may your footsteps move* (BYRON, p. 308.). With the conjunctive, and in periphrases of it, the inverse collocation also occurs: *God forbid! Heaven defend!* — *The Lord judge between me and thee!* (GEN. 16, 5.)

Old-Engl.: *Help thu me!* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., *Rel. Ant.* I. 101.) *Nail we him opoŋ a tre* (I. 101.). Ille *might thou spedel!* (TOWN. M. p. 11.) Halfsax.: Hail *seo þu* Luce! (LAȜAM. III. 2.) *Lete we hit þus stonden* (II.

217.). Liðe him *beo Drihten!* (I. 3.) *Ga we nu till þatt ilke tun* (ORM. 3390.). *Ne be 7e nohht tærænness* (14025.). Anglosax.: *Hál vās þu!* (MATH. 27, 29.) *Hāle vese-ge!* (28, 9.) *Up-āhebben-ve his naman* (Ps. 33, 3.). *Vurðe gōd se ende* (SAX. CHR. 1066.). *Vazan hī hira reaf* (Jos. 19, 10.). Therewith Old-Engl.: *Of noþing ge ne drede!* (R. of Gl. I. 140.). *God almiȝtten be her-inne!* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 3.) *God the i-blessi* (p. 6.). *Mahowne the shelde* (TOWN. M. p. 127. Anglosax.: *Hī vādġan?* (Ps. 108, 9).

D. Dependent Sentences are in general more averse than principal sentences to inversion, with respect to the position of the subject and of the verb of the predicate. We may find therein a reaction of the Anglosaxon, which in the dependent sentence chiefly postpones the verb of the predicate to the subject, and even remits it to the end of the sentence. In a few cases certainly the inversions occurring in the principal sentence are also found; in particular where *there*, *always* appearing, precedes the verb of the predicate.

1. Among substantive sentences the indirect interrogative sentences are to be observed, which from the earliest times have mostly adopted the succession of the subject and the verb of the predicative familiar to the rest of the sentences of this class.

Whence *thou return'st* . . I know (MILT., P. L. 12, 610.). Say, where *greatness lies* (POPE, Essay on M. 4. 217.). He slew That which he loved, unknowing what *he slew* (BYRON, Manfr. 2, 1.). We can't make out why *you thought* fit to summon him in such haste (WARREN, Diary 2, 5.). Remark, meanwhile, how . . *new powers are fashioning* themselves (CARL., Fr. Revol. 1, 1, 2.). Con- currently therewith: What *were his thoughts* I cannot tell

Old-Engl.: I ne wot wider *I sal faren* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 235.). & asked *whēpen þei wære?* (LANGT. II. 236.). And asked hym, what *he wolde* (MAUNDREV. p. 24.). Wher that *he be*, I can nat sothly sayn (CHAUC., C. T. 3670.); beside: Wat *is thi wille* let me wite (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 3.). Halfsax.: Annd ta þeȝ wistenn sone anan Forr whatt *he dvelledð hæfde* (ORM. 226.). Þe king hine bi-poute was *he don mahte* (LAȜAM. I. 44.). He poute of his swefne & hou *þe læfdi him sæide* (I. 53.). Anglosax.: Frige hvæt *ic hātte?* (COD. EXON. 398, 20.). Saga . . *hū ic hātte?* (381, 21.). Frāgn . . *Abel eorðan wære* (CÆDM. 999.). Hāfde þā gefrunen hvanan *sið fæhð aras?* (BEOV. 4797.).

2. In the sentences of the determination of place, relative adverbs often operate like others upon the inversion of the subject.

The heads and leaders thither haste *where stood* *Their great Commander* (MILT., P. L. 1, 357.). Yet *Mafrā* shall one moment claim delay *Where dwelt* of yore *the Lusian's luckless queen* (BYRON, Ch. Har. 1, 29.). *Ruppin, where lies* the main part of the regiment *Goltz* (CARL., Fred. the Gr. 9, 2.). All flesh, *wherein is* the breath of life (GEN. 6, 17.). The armories *wherein are gathered* the weapons etc. (LEWES, G. I. 3.).

Where is love and leautee, Thei wol noht come there (P. FLOUGHM. p. 67.). Thou hast made IX, *there was* X (TOWN. M. p. 4.). To the pay-loun *There as lay* *Kyng Phelipoun* (ALIS. 480.). Halfsax.: Wurðscipe uallæð adune *þer wes ær winne* (LAȜAM. III. 216.). Anglosax.: *Vunode, þær hie strang begeðt wite* (CÆDM. 2561.).

3. Dependent Sentences of the conditional and of conces-

sion are frequently represented by the inverted form of the sentence. See p. 460 and 474.

4. In modal sentences inversion may appear after *as*.

Death itself is not so painful *As is this sudden horror* (Rowe, Jane Sh. 4, 1.). I am even as unconcerned *as was that honest Hibernian* who etc. (POPE, Lett.). His nose, which, large *as were the others*, bore them down into insignificance (MARRYAT, J. Faithf. 1, 3.).

Old-Engl.: His love is al so swete, y-wis, *So ever is mylk or likoris* (ALIS. 427.). Al so lene was his hors *as is a rake* (CHAUC., C. T. 289.). *As meke as is a mayde* (69.). Halſax.: Wes swulc *swa beoð gold wir* (LAȜAM. I. 300.). Duden þus *swa hit hæhte Febus* (II. 95.). Sende swa wide *swa ileste his riche* (I. 26.). *Swa summ itt wolde Godd* (ORM. 749.). Anglosax.: Svá stóð se deófol on Godes gesihðe *svá svá deð se blinda* on sunnan (JOB A. Ettm. 3, 18.). Ic hǽlign gǽst hyhte belúce emne svá écne, *svá is ðor gecveden fader ððre freobearn* (GREIN, Ags. P. II. 293.).

5. In the adjective sentence, which begins with a prepositional member, the intransitive and passive verb especially admit an inversion; on the other hand, the preceding case of the object is seldom accompanied by an inverted subject of the transitive verb.

That spirit, *upon whose weal depend and rest The lives of many* (SHAKSP., Haml 3, 3.). The . . hamlet of Tully-Veolan, *close to which was situated the mansion of the proprietor* (SCOTT, Waverl. 8.). A very neat cottage residence, *in which lived the widow of a former curate* (TROLLOPE, Framl. Pars. 1, 2.). *From which follows a „King of Bohemia” elected there* (CARL., Fred. the Gr. 3, 14.). He . . held that post in his Serai *Which holds he here* (BYRON, Bride 2, 16.).

Old-Engl.: The ende *for the which* be wrouze myraclics to us (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 50.). *For which oppressioun was such clamour* (CHAUC. C. T. 6471. cf. 15647.). God . . *withoutyn whos wyl may be ryth nought* (Cov. MYST. p. 40.). Anglosax.: Eall flæsc on þam þe ys lifes gæst under heofenum (GEN. 6, 17.). Meotud mon-cynnes, *in þæs meathum sind & bûtan ende ealle gesceafta* (COD. EXON. 253, 18.).

E. With respect to the verb of the predicate it is to be observed that the compound tenses, as well as commonly the verb of existence enriched by predicative complements, except with the already cited inversions of the subject, make the personal form of the auxiliary verb precede the participle.

That heart *hath burst* — that eye *was closed* (BYRON, Bride 2, 26.). *Cæsar was mighty* (SHAKSP., J. Cæs. 3, 1.). On the other hand often: A strong tyrant *who invaded has* Her land (SPENSER, F. Qu. 5, 10, 6.).

In ancient times the inverse collocation was common. Old-Engl.: When Zephirus . . *Euspirud hath* . . The tendre croppes (CHAUC., C. T. 5.). Alisaundre *anviwed was* (ALIS. 1102.). *As ys power lute was* (R. OF GL. I. 92.). *Asyge al so muchel is* (ALIS. 45.). The queen wolde *awreke beon* (1364.). Halſax.: Heora kun we *aqueald habbeð* (LAȜAM. I, 42.). *Þe mid him ifunden weren* (I. 25.). Ure laffdiȝ *icdedd wass* (ORM. 2023.). He sholde *nemmedd ben* Emanuel (3088.). Anglosax.: Ic forvorht *hæbbe* . . hyldo þine (CÆDM. 1020.). Svá hire veoruda helm . . *beboden hæfde* (ELENE 224.). Þa hie þa þæt geveorc furðum *ongunnen hæfdon* (SAX. CHR. 896.).

Mycel here-hūſe þær gemumen vās (993.). *Svā hit gecvæden is* (1003.). Anglosax. frequently proceeds thus in dependent sentences.

H. The Position of adverbial Determinations of the Sentence.

A. Among these we first of all consider the cases.

1. The case of the object, which in plain speech follows, and is attached to the verbal notion, but also, as we have seen, may precede it and effect the inversion of the subject, may, without influencing the place of the latter, change its logically measured position.
- a. Thus we especially find an original accusative of a substantive, with or without adnominal determinations, as well as the substantive pronouns, placed before the verb of the sentence, and even the imperative.

Your eunuch send to me (BEN JONS., Sejan 2, 1.). *My drunkenness* I confess (DIAL. OF THE DEAD 2.). *Thy frauds* I see (ADDIS., Rosam. 1, 3.). *Her loud laughter*, though so near me, I had not once heard (WARREN, Diary 2, 1.). *A short cry* she uttered, but she stirred not (ROGERS, It., An Advent.). *Bars and bolts* we have none (ID., The Bag of Gold). *Italian* he learn'd by listening to his father. . . *French*, too, he learned (LEWES, G. I. 22.). *One thing* thou lackest (MARK 10, 21.). *One thing* I do know (CARL. Past. a. Pres. 3, 10.). *These thoughts* Full counsel must mature (MILT., P. L. 1, 659.). *This two-fold character* Frankfurt retains to the present day (LEWES, G. I. 17.). *Such evils* Sin hath wrought (COWPER p. 188.). *No pause of dread* Lord William knew (SCOTT, Harold 5, 15.). *Thee* I revisit safe (MILT., P. L. 3, 21.). *Him* the Almighty

- *Power* Hurl'd headlong flaming from the'ethereal sky (I, 44.). *Him* they crush down (CARL., Fr. Revol. 1, 1, 4.). *Them* unexpected joy surprised (MILT., P. L. 6. 774.). *This* he owed partly to his father (LEWES, G. I. 14.). I am fond of people, and *that* every one feels directly (I. 12.). If the object is denoted or accompanied by a relative pronoun, to which also belongs the combination with the adnominal *whose*, this collocation is necessary. Many and various were the curiosities *which* he showed (SCOTT, Antiqu. 3.). John o'the Girnell, *whose* grave I will show you (ib.). The same is the case in the interrogative sentence with the interrogative pronouns. See also the Infinitive 1. a.

In the oldest time the case of the thing, as well as the case of the person, very frequently occupies both places: the former also without the inversion of the subject, as also with the imperative. Old-Engl.: *Potage* eoteth bliſeliche (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 1.). *Paniers* he made (P. PLOUGHM. p. 312.). *Purple and pal* he droh (I. 119.). *Ya hoc* an honde he nom (ib.). *An oſer kinde* he haveſ (I. 208.). *My coppe* thou haſt y-stole (ALIS. 4202.). *Thal honour* thou haſt lore (4215.). *Such myzt* . . þou myzt þær þoru aſonge (R. or GL. I. 91.). *So muche* ich habe þe myſdo (I. 35.). *Hem* ye make at eſe (P. PLOUGHM. p. 315.). *Ilkon* he ſlouh (LANGT. I. 75.). — *My chil-*

dren *þat* ich ȝef my god (R. OF GL. I. 35.) etc. Halfsax.: *His* sceld he bræid on breoste (LAȜAM. III. 25.). *Mine* leomen he hæuē to-broken (III. 26.). *Þa* ȝaten alle he to-brac (III. 27.). *All* þis ich wulle don (III. 36.). Anglosax.: *Mildheortnesse and eadmodnesse* he lærde (LEGG. ÆLSEERD. 49.). *Gārstan and vndu-hunig* he āt (MARC. I. 6.). *Satan* ic sēcan wille (CÆDM. 757.). *Hæstenes viſ and his suna tvegen* mon brohte tō þam cyninge (SAX. CHR. 894.). *Þā* men mon lædde tō Vintecastre (897.). *Þine stemne* ic gehyrde (GEN. 3, 10.). *Ealle steorran* he eac þā gevorhte (BASIL., Hexam. 7.). *Hie* hig and gars for metealeaste mēde gedrehte (ANDR. 38.). — *Hire* þā Adam and-svarode (CÆDM. 824.). *Him* þā ādre God and-svarede (869.). *Him* seō vēn geleah (49.) In the relative sentence the same position of relative pronouns takes place as that of interrogatives in the interrogative sentence.

- b. Less diffused and more poetical is the position of the object between subject and verb.

Love *so much* could (SPENS., F. Qu. 6. 9, 37.). Thou *My being* gav'st me (MLT., P. L. 2, 864.). The birds *their notes* renew (2, 494.). The serpent *me* beguil'd (10, 162.). For me, the mine *a thousand treasures* brings (POPE, Essay on M. 1, 137.). In vain the spring *my senses* greets (ADDIS., Rosam. 1, 4.). Arthur's slow wain *his course* doth roll (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 1, 17.). Yet *I thy* hast will all perform at full (TENNYSON p. 192.).

The cases of the substantive otherwise often stood between subject and verb, but especially the personal pronouns most frequently: in dependent sentences the cases also formerly readily came betwixt the elements of the periphrastic verbal forms. Old-Engl.: Eneas . . . *Ascayn ys sone* nome (R. OF GL. I. 10.). Unkyndnesse *caristiam* maketh (P. PLOUGHM. p. 277.). Briddes and beestes That *no blisse* ne knoweth (p. 280.). Ych *þe* loue (R. OF GL. I. 36.). *Þat þou* hire spousedest (I 91.). *Þe* Brutones *hym* crownede (I. 87.). Thow *hem* grevest (P. PLOUGHM. p. 280.). Foweles *hym* fedde (p. 312.). If *I hit* lacked (SIR GAWAYNE 1250. ed. Morris). — William has *hauen* nomen (LANGT. I. 79.). Tho he hadde furst *man y-maked* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 140.). Whan it hadde of this fold *Flesshē and blood* taken (P. PLOUGHM. p. 24.). Halfsax.: Penda *his sweord* ut a-droh, and he *Oswald* of-sloh (LAȜAM III. 262.). *Þa* ælc *his stude* hafde inomen (II. 95.). Her he *heo* bi-burede (III. 28.). *Ȝe us* habbað ofte imaked wrað (II. 96.). *Þatt* blisse *þatt us* comm (OEM. 719.). — *Þu* hauest *þine willen* iseid (LAȜAM. III. 272.). We habbaeð *writen* ibroht *þe* (III. 2.). *Þa* he hafde *þis* idon (III. 29.). Anglosax.: Ecbyrht *sige* nam (SAX. CHR. 823.). Ic *his blōd* āgeāt (CÆDM. 1026.). Hī *þone here* geflymdon (SAX. CHR. 860.). Ic *tearas* sceal geotan (COD. EXON. 11, 8.). Ve *hine* fræton (Ps. 34, 23.). Drihten *ūs* hatað (DEUTER. 1, 27.). *Þu hit* segst (LUC. 23, 3.). *Þā* he hafde *ealle* āmyrrede (15, 14.). *Þe* þes dēma hafað *þā vyrretan* vitu gegearvad (JULIANA 249. Grein).

2. If a factitive accusative is added to the case of the object, this ordinarily follows the former, whatever may be the position of the verb of the predicate. Instances see Vol. II. 1. p. 195.

The inversion of these cases is by far the rarer phenomenon in English. I might behold *adrest* the king (SHAKSP., Love's L. L. 5, 2.). His crime makes *guilty* all his sons (MLT., P. L.

3, 290.). But *light* I held this prophecy (SCOTT, *Lady of the L.* 1, 23.).

Adjectives and participles especially occur there inverted. Some of this has been observed with regard to the verb *have*. Old-Engl.: *A mayd undefyled* I hope he xal me prove (Cov. MYST. p. 141). Adjectives are often put first in Anglosax. *Hálné me gedô* (MATH. 14, 30.). *Beorn-leasne ge habbað me gedônné* (GEN. 42, 36.).

3. The position of the accusative with adjectives of measure, which commonly follow this case, is clear from the instances Vol. II. p. 164.

4. The case accompanied by a preposition, which comprehends a great series of determinations connecting the different members of the sentence in the logical context of the speech, admits the most various interpolations within the sentence. The most natural position of this member is its junction each time to the notion to which it is immediately referred. We therefore only consider those separations of it from its nearest relational word which have become more familiar.

a. Thus it very frequently comes at the commencement of the sentence which is attached, without inversion of its subject, to the prepositional member.

Of deare Sansfoy I never joyed howre (SPENSER, *F. Qu.* 1, 4, 46.). *Of noble race* the Ladye came (SCOTT, *L. Minstr.* 1, 11.). *Of cowardice* Monmouth had never been accused (MACAUL., *Hist. of E.* II. 186.). *To him* she hasted (MILT., *P.* L. 9, 853.). *To their wills* we must succumb (BUTL., *Hud.* 1, 3, 459.). *To a degenerate and embruted people*, liberty seems too plain a thing (BULW., *Rienzi* 2, 8.). *To these peculiarities* Mr. Mertoun added another (SCOTT, *Pirate* 1.). *Into this federation* our Saxon ancestors were now admitted (MACAUL., *Hist. of E.* I. 9.). *In parts superior* what advantage lies? (POPE, *Essay on M.* 4, 259.). *And under such preceptors* who can fail? (COWP. p. 192.). *In such a state* we both were (DIAL. OF THE DEAD 1.). *Beyond this flood* a frozen continent lies dark and wild (MILT., *P. L.* 2, 587.). *For several days* they were detained in a harbour (IRVING, *Columb.* 4, 6.). *At eve* the battle ceased (BULW., *Rienzi* 5, 3.). *In the year 1603* the great Queen died (MACAUL., *Hist. of E.* I. 63.). *For this*, his name deserves to be handed down to eternal infamy (MOTLEY, *Rise of the D. Rep.* 1, 1.) and so on. The placing first is bolder with a relative sentence. Yet are these two *For battle* who prepare (SCOTT, *Harold* 5, 15.).

Although the inversion of the subject was formerly very usual here, the commencement with the prepositional member was frequent, even without this. The placing first of local, temporal, causal and modal determinations belongs to the action in its totality is the most natural, although they do not refuse a nearer reference to the verb of the predicate. The inversion of the subject always represents this more decidedly. But that, even at present, determinations standing in the nearest relation to the predicate are thus separated, is shown by many of the instances already cited. Old-Engl.: *Of water* he haveth wete, *Of eyr* he haveth wynd (WRIGHT, *Pop. Treat.* p. 138.). *Hof on* ich

herde saie (Anecd. p. 2.). *To the mete they weoren y-set* (ALIS. 538.). *To deth he was y-slawe* (720.). *To Yrlond heo flowe* (R. OF GL. I. 1.). *In that on half the sonne sent on hire list* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 134.). *On the rode heo gonnen him slo* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 48.). *Through counsel of his barony, He made him steward* (RICH. C. DE L. 2440.). *After þe acord sone Philip dight him forward* (LANGT. I. 156.) etc. Halfsax.: *Of his horte he preou* (LAȜAM. I. 35.). *Of Ignogen his guene he hefde preo sunen* (I. 89.). *To blisse hit awurðe!* (III. 14.). *On Italize heo comen to londe* (I. 5.). *An ælche helue heo forð fluzen* (II. 163.). *For nauer nere speche pas preo eorles riche nolden abiden* (III. 46.) etc. Anglosax.: *Of eallum his earfoðum he hine ælȝsde* (PS. 33, 6.). *Of Ægyptum ic minne sunu geclypode* (MATH. 2, 15.). *Tō his ægenum he com* (JOH. 1, 11.). *On handa pine ic bebeode gæt minne* (PS. 31, 6.). *Fram him þas yfelu sind becomen on us* (DEUTER. 31, 17.). *On niht he tæhte eov* (1, 33.). *On þeðs geære* . . North-hymre and Eastengle hæfdon Ælfrede cyninge æðas geseald (SAX. CHR. 894.) etc.

- b. A prepositional member appears at present far more rarely betwixt the subject and the verb of the predicate, if the former is a personal pronoun, although such a member frequently attaches itself to other subjects, especially when it more readily separates itself from the immediate construction with the verb of the predicate, or represents an adverbial form.

He *to England* shall along with you (SHAKSP., Haml. 3, 3.). Lewis, *in a few weeks*, reconquered Franche-comté (HUME, Hist. of E. 66.). The commons, *soon after the establishment of that council*, proceeded so far etc. (67.). King Henry, *on the other hand*, had already arrived in the camp (MOTLEY, Rise of the D. Rep. 1, 3.). One favourite story, *in particular*, haunted her imagination (MACAUL., Essays V. 18) etc.

The older language goes further even here. Old-Engl.: *Thou in to hevene trede* (WRIGHT, A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 48.). *Þat anker on hire servanz for openliche giltes leie penitence* (II. 5.). *Þe noble man Eneas To Lombardye com* (R. OF GL. I. 96.). *He to William went* (LANGT. I. 81.). *Malcolme with skrite him bond* (I. 79.). *Malcolme in Kumberland dos þat he may tille ille* (I. 86.). *Oon Makometh . . in mysbileve broughte Sarzens* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 318.) etc. Halfsax.: *Brutus i þare hauene læi* (LAȜAM. I. 60.). *Brutus hine . . into þane oostle dude* (I. 73.). *Þa Corineus of wode com* (I. 74.). Anglosax.: *Þa he of slæpe ævôc* (APOLLON. OF T. p. 1.). *Þæt þas mædenes fostor-môdor in to þam bære eode* (p. 2.). *He mid micclan gefean to scipe gevande* (p. 6.). *Drihtnes engel on svefnum atȳvde* (MATH. 1, 20.). *Ær sunne to sette eode* (EXOD. 17, 12.). *Nē ic mid niwre lāre nelle læran þe nu* (BASIL., Admon. 1.).

- c. Prepositional members not rarely come between the elements of compound tenses, as, generally, between auxiliary and modal verbs and their complements.

Every private had, *from infancy*, respected his corporal much and his Captain more (MACAUL., Hist. of E. V. 2.). It had, *on the contrary*, been better received (V. 15.). An event which had not, *in the sixteenth century*, been stated by custom (MOTLEY, Rise of the D. Rep. 1, 1.) etc.

Old-Engl.: *Þo þei were in þe schippes ydo* (R. OF GL. I. 96.). Halfsaxon: *Itt iss inn a cribbe læȝd* (ORM. 3366.). *Þer wes Baldric eorl*

anan mid bronden to-heouwen (Lajam. III. 202.). Anglosax.: *Disse cýninges efen veard of life geviton* (APOLLON. OF T. p. 1.). *lc eom mid mánfulre scilde besmiten* (p. 2.).

As to the position of the preposition itself in these members See Vol. II. 1 p. 482.

5. The vocative, which, by its nature, stands outside of the construction of the sentence, when it is not attached as a pronoun to the imperative, admits various interpolations into subjunctions to the sentence. See Vol. II. 1 155.

B. Among the participials:

1. The infinitive is in general excluded from the first place in the articulation of the sentence, by its dependence upon other notions as a predicative and adverbial determination.

- a. As the subject of the sentence, on the other hand, answering to an abstract substantive, it frequently occupies, as a substantive, the first place, unless a grammatical subject is at first substituted for it, when it may also take other determinations.

Have is have (SHAKSP., JOHN 1, 1.). *To sport* would be as tedious as *to work* (I Henry IV. 1, 2.). *To trifle* is to live (YOUNG, N. Th. 2, 60.). *Which not to have done*, I think, had been in me Both disobedience and ingratitude (SHAKSP., Wint. T. 3, 2.). *To advance towards London* would have been madness (MACAUL., Hist. of E. II. 170.).

The inverse position, however, takes place, if the predicative determination of the sentence, as in other sentences, (See p. 546) comes at the beginning. Long were *to tell* What I have done (MILT., P. L. 10, 469.). The most grievous misfortune to a virtuous man is *to be in such state*, that he can hardly so act as to approve his own conduct (DIAL. OF THE D. 1.). The logical relation of the infinitive is concealed in such cases, in which the feeling of the language seeks another support for the prepositional member, which is by its nature subordinate to it. (See Infinitive with *to*.)

The older language is not fond of making the infinitive the starting point of the sentence. Old-Engl.: Therfor *lerne the byleve* Levest me were (P. PLOUGHM. 452.). *To misdo* was ay thy wone (ALIS. 881.). *Unto a poure ordre for to geve* Is signe that a man is wel i-schreve (CHAUC., C. T. 225.). In general the verb of the predicate, with or without a predicative determination, is also placed before the infinite unsupported by a grammatical subject. Me is best *take mi chaunce* (LAY LE FREINE 107.). Halſax.: Lað him wes *to leosen leouen his leoden* (Lajam. II. 556) Anglosax.: Eallum us leofre ys *vicjan mid pam yrðlinge* þonne mid þe (THORPE, Anal. p. 113.). Him vās lað *tō amyrrenne his agenne folgað* (Sax Chr. 1051.).

- b. The infinitive otherwise conditioned regularly follows its word of reference

I saw him *repress his tears* (LEWES, G. I. 19.). The Queen had been graciously pleased to *appoint me to an ensigny* (WHYTE MELVILLE, Digby Gr. 1.). The accusative dependent on the infinitive is still sometimes met with before it. With gentle wordes he *gan her fairely greet* (SPENS., F. Qu. 1, 4, 46.). He comes

his Rosamond to greet (ADDIS., Rosam. 1, 1.). The foot ordain'd the dust to tread (POPE, Essay on M. 1, 259.). In doubt his mind or body to prefer (2, 9.).

Yet the infinitive is also placed before its word of reference, which does not happen in the modern language without its emphatic prominence.

For die you shall (SHAKSP., II Henry VI. 4, 1.). Return he cannot (Cymb. 1, 6.). Die he or Justice must (MILT., P. L. 3, 210.). Venture to go down into the cabin I dare not (MARRYAT, J. Faithf. 1, 2.). Hate them, perhaps, you may say, we should not, but despise them we must, if enslaved, like the people of Rome (ROGERS, It., Nat. Prejud.). To suffer, as to do, our strength is equal (MILT., P. L. 2, 199.). Suns to light me rise (POPE, Essay on M. 1, 139.). Who most to shun or hate mankind pretend, Seek an admirer (4, 43.). To sigh for ribbands if thou art so silly, Mark how they grace Lord Umbra, or Sir Billy (4, 277.).

The language has always preeminently let the infinitive follow its word of reference: it frequently makes it come at the end, therefore putting the case depending upon it before it. Old-Engl.: Heo bigonne . . . pat folk to sle (R. or Gl. I. 97.). Thise bigonnen that folk assayle (ALIS. 5372.). Taughte hem . . . Treuthe to knowe (P. PLOUGHM. p. 21.). Halfsax.: And prattest hine tō slenne & his cun to fordonne (LAJAM. II. 362.). Himm wass ec patt name sett Forr mikell ping to tacennn (ORM. 735.). This was very familiar to Anglosax. He mæg bearn æveccan (LCC. 3, 8.). Hi ne mihton hit æteon (JOH. 21, 6.). Þæt him sylfum selle pynced Leahtras tō frenman (COD. EXON. 266, 32.). Ic vāt, þæt ælc þara vile þæs vundrjan (BOETH. 39, 9.) etc.

The transposition of the infinitive is a phenomenon which was also formerly frequent, which attributes no particular weight, especially where the infinitive does not come at the beginning of the sentence. Old-Engl.: Deliuere we shal yt (R. or Gl. I. 93.). Grone he may and wepen ay (WRIGHT A. HADLW., Rel. Ant. I. 102.). Silden he us wille (I. 209.). Wenden ich me sal to þis oþir werlde (I. 186.). Cessen shal we nevere (P. PLOUGHM. p. 37.). We ar but dust, And dy we must (SKELETON I. 18.). As ye well y-seen may (ALIS. 143.). Of whom after telle y wol (6576.). To lovien he begon On wedded wimmon (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 2.). Anon to drawen every wight bigan (CHAUC., C. T. 844.). To soupy at table they wente tyll (OCCOULAN 755.). Halfsax.: Binimen heo him pohte his lif (LAJAM. I. 170.). Witten he wolde (I. 12.). His fur he beten agon (III. 31.). Ðu neimnenn shallt tatt illke child Jesum (ORM. 3044.). Anglosax.: Ic me vënan ne pearf þæt me bearn vræce (GREIN, Aps. P. II. 379.). Ic his bīdan ne deor (COD. EXON. 397, 6.). Þonne ic ydan sceal (484, 13.). Gōd is þæt land þe god ðis syllan vyl (DEUTER. 1, 25.). Vit unc við hron-fixas verjan þohton (BRON. 1085.). Nō ic viht fram þe svylcra searu-niða secgan hýrde (1167.). Ða ic sendan gefrægn svegles aldor svefe of heofnum (CÆDM. 2534.). Tō preðagenne ge logjað eovere spræce (JOB in ETTM. 6, 2.). This transposition particularly touches the pure infinitive.

2. The participles, so far as they are joined syntactically to the subject or object of the sentence, have a more or less free position in the sentence. If they become attributive adjectives, they conform to the points of view which govern the adjective;

as predicative complements, they take the place belonging to these, and share their inversions. They stand substantively where the substantive finds a place in the sentence.

- a. Conceived according to its verbal character, the participle, both of the present and of the perfect, stands in general after the object to which it is referred. (a) Numerous instances for the former reference are offered by the doctrine of the participle. See p. 62. With respect to the participle attached syntactically to the subject, that in *ing*, as well especially as that compounded with *having* and *being*, is freer than the simple participle of the perfect, although the immediate succession to the subject, especially if this is a substantive, is a familiar phenomenon, even after pronouns. We often find it placed before the subject of the sentence.

Climbing up another perpendicular flight . . *Mr. Ralph Nickleby* stopped etc. (DICKENS, *Nickleby* 1, 3.). *Wondering* I blush (SHELLEY, III. 79.). A kinsman . . To whom *being going*, almost spent with hunger, *I* am fallen in this offence (SHAKSP., *Cymb.* 3, 6.). *Having run* his fingers through his hair, *he* meekly signed her to lead the way (DICKENS, *M. Chuzzlew.* 1, 3.). *Having said* which, *Mr. P.* threw himself back in the easy chair (ib.). *Being grieved* for the hardness of their hearts *he* saith etc. MARK 3, 5.). *Plan'd* merely 'tis a common felony (COLER., *Picc.* 4, 7.). It is not common to place first a participle referring to the object. And these news, *Having been well*, that would have made *me* sick, *Being sick*, have in some measure made *me* well (SHAKSP., II *Henry IV.* 1, 1.). As to the placing first of the participle of the perfect with a possessive pronoun after it, See p. 86. That a participle belonging to the subject may also stand at the end of the sentence, if the reference is to be kept clear, is readily explicable. This my *hand* will rather The multitudinous seas incarnardine, *Making* the green one red (SHAKSP., *Macb.* 2, 2.). *He* allowed himself no great leisure, *being busily engaged* with the supper (DICKENS, *M. Chuzzlew.* 1, 8.).

The participial construction, which only in modern times has obtained so wide an extension, and employs the compound forms in so great a measure, admits, in its more simple construction, along with the immediate succession of the participle, a double position in regard to the subject, when the position at the end, after the conclusion of the predicate, seems to preponderate. Old-Engl.: *Al bernynge hit schuth forth* (WRIGHT, *Pop. Treat.* p. 134.). *Laughing he sayde* etc. (P. FLOUGH. p. 453). And therefore *havyng* more compassion of peyne than of synne, *thei* falsly wepyn (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., *Rel. Ant.* II. 49.). — *Hure heiest lorde* . . muneged us . . þus *queðende* (I. 131.). To synful men that erren *thei* broukten forgyvenesse of synne, *settyng* hem in the weye of riȝt beleve (II. 42.). Whan a man sleth another him *defendaunt* (CHARR., *C. T.* p. 197. l.). We passe ovyr that, breffnes of tyme *consyderynge* (Cov. MYST. p. 79.); and so frequently. Anglosax.: On eorðan *forgynden*, *fæmende he* tearfode (MARC. 9, 20.). Ealle niht *svincende* ve nāht ne gefēgon (LUC 5, 5.). — *Hi standað* āforan his prymsetle . . *hābbende* heora palmŭvigu on handa (A. S. HOMIL. I. 90.). *Se Hælend* cvað, þis

gehyrende (MATH. 9, 12.). Immediate attachment to the substantive notion is very frequent.

- b. In the absolute participial construction the participle follows the subject, which presents itself as a substantive or pronoun; the position of this member which represents a sentence, is, on the other hand, free.

We sitting, as I said, the cock crew loud (TENNYSON p. 201.). French vaudevilles, which, *it being* then war-time, were not quite so easy of access (TH. HOOK, *Gilb. Gurney* I.). It is as certain as that he took away my Antigonus, *no leave asked* (SCOTT, *Antiqu.* 3.).

The absolute case, which indeed is followed by the so called logical subject, when the grammatical subject *it* precedes, does not now, as formerly, admit an inversion. Old-Engl.: *Wijn faylynge, faylynge* þe modir . . seyde (WYCL., *Joh.* 2, 3.). Now *hym comynge* doune, þe seru-auntis camen aȝenes hym (4, 51.). The son wax marke, *alle men seand*, when he died on the tre (TOWN. M. p. 287.). There appered first oure Lord . . *the gates enclosed* (MAUNDEV. p. 91.); beside: It is . . the mydes of all the world; *wytnessynge the philosopre*, that scythe etc. (p. 2.). For soth is seyde goon ful many yeres, That feld hath eyen (CHAUC., 1523.). Thus from the most ancient times the absolute case has admitted the position of the participle also before the substantive. Anglo-sax.: *Him þa git sƿecendum* hig cōmon (MARC. 5, 35.). Gif he *sunnan scinendre* þæt deō (EXOD. 22, 3.). He bi up-āhōf hire handa gegripenre (MARC. 1, 31.); beside *Rixjendum Eadbaldum* Mellitus forðferde (SAX CHR. 616.). Gif he ðferne gemēteō mid his ævum vife *betymedum durum* (LEGG. ÆLFERD. B. 38.). *Yearō deād nā lafedum sæde* (MARC. 12, 20.).

- c. The position of gerunds construed with prepositions is to be judged partly by the position of prepositional members generally, partly by that of the dependent sentences corresponding to them.

- C. The adverb, to which modern cases and forms which have become adverbial must also be added, makes in general, by reason of its nearer relation to the verb, an effort to come near to it, where, however greater freedom prevails with regard to its position in the sentence.

1. The position of the adverb after the verb of the predicate, and its predicative or other determination, is frequent in sentences receiving no comprehensive development, especially by objects.

All wisdom centres *there* (YOUNG, *N. Th.* 4, 484.). Thou led'st me *here* (BYRON, *Bride* 2, 11.). He is *above*, sir (SHERID., *Riv.* 2, 1.). Feversham followed them *thither* (MACAUL., *Hist. of E.* II. 167.). I'll be wise *hereafter* (SHAKSP., *Temp.* 5, 1.). My life is spann'd *already* (HENRY VIII. 1, 2.). This custom of shaving not . . much wanted *now* (BULW., *Dever.* 5, 2.). This sort of injury is felt *very early* (SCOTT, *Minstr.* I. 19.). It is *even so* (CARLYLE, *Past. a. Pres.* 3, 1.). The siege was pressed *more closely!* (MOTLEY, *Rise of the D. Rep.* 2, 9.) I will go *instantly* (BULW., *Lady of L.* 1, 3.). Oliver cried *lustily* (DICKENS, *Ol. Twist.* 1.) etc. So too in the participial construction: These injuries having been comforted *externally* etc. (DICKENS, *M.*

Chuzzlew. 1, 2.). Yet the adverb before other determinations may be supported by the verb, but also with its pronominal object, and even with another object. He heard *again* the language of his nursery (MACAUL., Hist. of E. VI. 116.). The volume before us reminds us *now* and *then* of the life of Cicero (MACAUL., Essays III. 5.). You may cast your eye *slightly* on What you have before you (SHAFTESBURY, Characterist. I. 1.). You always put things *so pleasantly* (BULW., Money 3, 4.).

Old-Engl.: We shall abide you *here* (TOWN. M p. 38.). And smyte eyper oper *her & þer* (R. of GL. I. 185.). It lay *there* 200 ðeer (MACSDEV. p. 12.). Thurfte him noht seke tresor *so fer*, he mihte finde *ner* (WRIGHT, Polit. S. p. 338.). Thus farith al the world *nuthe* (p. 202.). As ych seyde *er* (R. of GL. I. 85.). Hit is byfalle *so* (WRIGHT A. HALLW., Rel. Ant. I. 122.). It is not *so* (MAUNDEV p. 10.). Had þe do *duly* (DEPOS. OF RICH. II. 8.). Halfsax: He welde þat riche *hær* (LAFAM. I. 165.). Ðe fulluht broute *hider in* (I. 2.). 3if we henen fareð þus (I. 248.). Eneas nom Lauine *leofliche* to wife (I. 8.sq. Anglosax.: Ðe me mid his earmum vorhte *hær* mid handum sinum (CÆDM. 541.). Vand him up *þanon* (444.). God geseah þa þat hit gôð vās (GEN. 1, 4.). He ārās *sona* (19, 1.). On vorulda voruld vunie *syððan* (Ps. 103, 29.). Adræf þa bātheortnyse fram þinre sǣve *hræfe* (BASIL., Admon. 5.). Se sôðfāsta symble on drihten blissað *baldlice* (Ps. 63, 9.).

2. We have already seen (see p. 538) how the adverb coming at the commencement of the Sentence, with the inversion of the subject, connects itself more closely with the verb of the sentence. But concurrently therewith, its separation from it by the subject is frequently in use. The commencement with the interrogative and relative adverb is explainable, with the inversion in the direct question already touched upon; without it, in the indirect interrogative and in the relative sentence. English agrees therein with many ancient and modern tongues. The adverbs used as conjunctions are also mostly found at the beginning of the sentence, without the inversion of the subject. But other local, temporal and modal adverbs also take this place.

Here we are at Lyons (BULW., Lady of L. 5, 1.). *Here* he studied grammar (IRRVING, Columb. 1, 1.). *Thither* he plies (MILT., P. L. 2, 954.). *There* you are wrong (BULW., Money 1, 1.). *There* he stood (SCOTT, Monast. Introd.). *Down* I went (TENNYS. p. 91.). *Once again* we'll sleep secure (SHAKSP., I Henry VI. 3. 2.). *Hence* it is etc. (MACAUL., Essays III. 2.). *Meantime*, we thank you (SHAKSP., Haml. 2, 2.). *Everywhere* Fable and Truth have shed . . Each her peculiar influence (ROGERS, It., Naples.). *Then* all advanced (ib., An Advent.). *Now*, I saw the damp lying on the bare hedges (DICKENS, Gr. Expectat. 1, 3.). *Thus* Beelzebub Pleaded (MILT., P. L. 2, 378.). *Round* he spun (BYRON, Siege 27.). *Freely* ye have received, *freely* give (MATTH. 10, 8.). *Haply* thy voice may rouse her (TALFOURN, Ion. 2, 2.). Modal adverbs meet us more seldom; adverbs of the sentence, containing assurances and the like, of course occur oftener.

Old-Engl.: *There* thou myghtest here bere (ALIS. 3417.). *Forth* hey wente (RICH. C. DE L. 619.). *Ertly* he ariseth (ALIS. 4063.). *Sone* hit

ginneth tēde (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 135.). *Here-to-fore* ye haveth herd etc. (ALIS. 6018.). *Afterward* he was lad in to a gardyn (MAUNDEV. p. 14.). *Thus* we carpeth (WRIGHT, Polit. 8. p. 149.). *Wel* zerne he him bi-thoute (Anecd. p. 3.). *Faire* he hire grette (p. 6.). *Ful evele* I fare (p. 7.). *Wel* Alisaunder hit undurstood (ALIS. 4235.). *Ful milde-liche* therto thou bowe (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 48.). Halfsax.: *ƿer* heo leien stille (LAJAM. III. 44.). *Hider* ƿe kaisere us sent (II. 449.). *Forð* he gon liden (I. 432.). *Adun* he warp ƿe dede swin (III. 31.). *Nu* we majen to zere careles wunien here (II. 96.). *Sone* heo bit bi-wunne (II. 98.). *To-gadere* heo weoren ibredde (II. 206.). *Swa* heo gunnen wendan (II. 153.). *Faire* heo hine igrættan (ib.) etc. Anglosax: *Þá* se hálga hēht his heorðverod væpna onfōn (CæDM. 2034.). *Seldom* heo bað-jan volde (Beda 4, 19.). *Oft* ic sceal við væge vinnan (Cod. Exon. 398, 1.). *Simle* ƿu bist hālig (25, 22.). *Næfre* him deað sceðeð (203, 23.). *Nu* ic eov sende (MATH. 10, 16.). *Git* he leofað (Gen. 43, 28.). *Sāre* ic vās mid sorgum gedrēfed (GRÆIN, Ags P. II. 145.). *Vel* ƿu sprācst (DEUTER. 1, 14.). *Sōðlice* se vyrhta ys vyrðe hys metes (MATH. 10, 10.) etc.

3. The insertion of the adverb between the subject and the verb is very common, so that the adverb is mostly attached immediately to the verb. This position is especially given to adverbs of time and manner, as well as to causal particles.

We *since* became the slaves to one man's lust (BEN JONS, Sejan. 1, 1.). The moon *then* shone very bright (FIELD, J. Andr. 1, 12.). He *always* rides a black galloway (BULW., Money 1, 2.). He *yet* continues, there, as handsome and as gallant as ever (COOPER, Spy 4.). We *sometimes* find it where we had least thought of it (DOUGL. JERROLD, Rent. Day 2, 1. Mr. Oldbuck *immediately* rose (SCOTT, Antiqu. 3.). It *now* seemed probable etc. (MACAUL., Hist. of E. VIII. 3.). He *first* summoned Bath (II. 25.). Charles *early* showed a taste for that art (Essays V. 4.). He *soon* found a kind and munificent patron (ib.). The old people of the neighbourhood *still* remember etc. (IV. 4.). To foreigners he *often* seemed churlish (Hist. of E. III. 3.). We *no longer* believe in St. Edmund (CARL., Past. a. Pres. 3, 1.). He *never* knew adversity (LEWES, G. I. 17.). What so moves thee all at once? (COLER., Picc. 1, 4.). They *only* served to mark the entrance to some narrow close (DICKENS, Picc. 2, 20.). Their polity *naturally* took the same form (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 28.). The rebels *accordingly* proceeded to Wells (II. 170.). He *scornfully* thrust aside . . all that black letter learning (IV. 31.). We *readily* acknowledge etc. (Essays III. 1.). Genoa, *also*, . . yielded but little scope for enterprise on shore (IRVING, Columb. 1, 2.). The study *therefore*, of lays . . must in every case possess considerable interest (SCOTT, Minstrelsy I. 14.).

This insertion answers to the frequent ancient usage. Old-Engl.: A wynd *ƿer* com ƿo in ƿe see (R. OF GL. II. 367.). Mony stede *ther* proudly leop (ALIS. 3413.). The foles herte *tho* gan sprynge (3075). The vessele . . that *evermore* droppeth watre (MAUNDEV. p. 15.). His craft he *ðus* kiðeð (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 211.). Neptanabus *sore* is annoyed (ALIS. 129). He *spedly* brennith, and sleth (3451) etc. Half-saxon: All ƿe folc *ƿær* utē stod (ORM. 141.). Er we *heonne* wenden

(LAJAM. I. 67.). Waliscloŋd þat zet stond a mire hond (III. 294.). Ða heo *to-gadere* hafden ispeken (III. 238.). Ða he þas hafde idon (III. 240.). Heo *wisliche* andswerden (II. 153.). Heo hine *leofliche* (I. 354.). 3iff þu dost þatt ifell iss, annd *openlike* gilltest (ORM. 5144.). Anglo-saxon: Þenden þu *hēr* leofast (CÆDM. 932.). Svā hi *ēasten hider* on þysne sið sendeð (552.). Se esne hig *hāmveard* lædde (GEN. 24, 61.). Heo þā þās ofātes āt (596.). He þā vēpende . . grētte . . (ANDR. 59.). Þær heo *siððan forð* on þinre mildheortnesse mōta vunjan (Ps. 142, 12.). Ic æron nyste (EV NICOD. 12.). He *eft* āvacenede (BEDA 5, 12.). Seō [sc. ādl. *dāghwamlīce* veōx (4, 30.). Heo *lange* ne tȳmde (GEN. 30, 9.). Þās ge *fāgre* sceolon leān mid leofum lange brūcan (CYNEVULF, Crist 1361. Grein.). Me þin se gōða gāst *gleawe* lædde (Ps. 142, 11.). Ðā þe deoplicost dryhtnes geryno . . reccan cūðon (ELENE 281.). The Anglo-sax. evidently permitted this collocation to a far wider extent than the modern language does.

4. Sentences in which auxiliary or modal verbs appear with a completing participle or infinitive, or *be* is construed with a predicative determination, frequently make the adverb follow the auxiliary or modal verb, and it then comes nearer or next to the notion to which it is essentially referred.

Nor is the passion *any where so strongly felt* (SHAFTESBURY, Characterist. I. 95.). Information of this correspondence was *soon* carried to Richelieu (HUME, Hist. of E. 50.). The English sovereigns had *always* been entrusted with the supreme direction of commercial police (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 62.). The desired article was *immediately* produced (COOPER, Spy 3.). The assertion is *indignantly* contradicted by his son (IRVING, Columb. 1, 2.). Their language was *everywhere* nearly the same (HUME, Hist. of E. 2.). War was *not only* his passion, but his trade (MOTLEY, Rise of the D. Rep. 1, 2.). They have *therein* outgone Their own great wisdoms (BEN JONS., Sejan. 1, 2.). The conversation we have *now* had (DIAL. OF THE DEAD 1.). We have quietly closed our eyes to the eternal substance of things (CARL., Past a Pres. 3, 1.). You'll *always* have somebody to sit with you (DICKENS, Pickw. 1, 12.). He should go into the army, and *practically* learn soldiering (CARL., Fred. the Gr. 5, 5.). So much of treason did William of Orange *already* contemplate (MOTLEY, Rise of the D. Rep. 2, 9.).

Old-Engl.: There he was *first* examyned (MAUNDEV. p. 13.); Þis counsel was *wel* yherd (R. OF GL. I. 156.). How heo were *first* arered (I. 7.). Darie was *ful sore* anoyed (ALIS. 4158.). His muð is *get* untrewē (WRIGHT A. HALLIW. I. 211.). That wes *ever* his wone (I. 109.). Hit schal beo *ful deore* aboutht (ALIS. 4154.). I have *often tyme* seen it (MAUNDEV. p. 14.). Sal he *nevere* luken ðe lides (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 209.). Halssax.: He beoð *to gadere* icumene (LAJAM. I. 20.). Nes he *neure* iboren (III. 6.). Ðat was *usefe* idon (III. 11.). He wass, *wiss to fulle soð*, zehaten Zacarije (ORM. 111.). Drihttū hafde *þanne* sett etc. (1945.). He schall *newenn* cumenn forþ (331.). Ðat heo sculden *somed* faren (LAJAM. III. 21.). Ðe king . . dæð þe *ful wel* to witen (II. 12.). Anglosax.: He ne vās *nāhvar* fundun (APOLLON. OF T. p. 6.). Þær vās vōp vera *vide* gehȳred (ANDR. 1554.). Ðāt yldum vās *lange* behȳded (ELENE 791.). Bið foldan dæl *fāgre* gegierved (GREIN, Ags. P. 383.). Þu bist *þonne* se ilca (Ps. 101, 24.). Habbað ve ealle *sōa* for þinum leāsungum *lyðre* gefēred (CÆDM. II. 61. Grein.). Ðā ve sceolon

symle ácvellan (A.-S. HOMIL. I. 138.). *Se fäder þóhte hvam he hi mihte heálícost forgifan* (APOLLON. OF T p. 1.).

5. If the adverb in general decidedly serves to determine a single notion, such as an adjective or adverb, it ordinarily stands before it:

With *most painefull pangs* (SPENS., F. Qu. 3, 11, 8.). One state . . *so excellently best* (DUNNE, Sat. 2, 3.). I think it *very insulting* (BOURCICOULT, Lond. Assur. 4. 1.). Perhaps I *am too grave* (BULW., Richel. 2, 1.). The *anxiously expected* intelligence (DICKENS, Pickw. 2, 20.). Some *soon gotten* stuff (DUNNE, Sat. 6, 19.). That *ever glorious, almost fatal* fray (BYRON, p. 319.). The daughter of a *once dear* friend (BULW., Money 2, 3.). The marriage will take place *almost immediately* (3, 2.). There were *only two* persons in the room (Devereux 5, 3.) etc. The adverb *enough*, on the other hand, with a few exceptions, stands after the notion determined by it. You are *old enough* (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 3, 2.). Every body lets him *alone enough* (DICKENS, Oliv. Twist. 5.). Yet also *Were enough noble* (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 4, 1.). My health is *quite enough restored* (KINGSLEY, Two Years ago 2, 1.). Inversely, other determinations follow: Finding in the lowest depth a *deeper still* (DICKENS, Ol. Twist 2.), as is generally the case with adverbs which, detached from their reference to a single notion, are referred to the predicate generally, therefore may take any other place. I have *only* been six days at Petersburg (BULW., Dever. 5, 2.).

The language has at all times leaned to this position. Old-Engl.: *A wel god lond* (R. OF GL. I. 1.). *Þat ys somdel grete* (I. 8.). *Suythe pycke man he was* (II. 377.). *Hi ne beoþt noȝt ful grete* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 139.). *Noȝt alle i-liche gode* (ib.). *Thei ben covenably large* (MAUNDEV. p. 49.). *Ffull prevyly* they plucked thy power away (DEPOS. OF RICH. II. p. 6.). Halfsax.: *Ȝef ȝines swiðe gode* (LAJAN. II. 4.). *Heo beoð ful deore aboht* (II. 97.). *Cnihtes wel idone* (II. 93.). *Leouuede wel longe* (II. 1.). Anglosax.: *Væron swiðe gesalige* (CÆDM. 17.). *Þonnð he ðær lif eft gesæceð, mycele fægerre land* (CÆDM. II. 212. Grein). *Þe þines siðes hær ful bealdlice bidað* (Ps. 68, 7.). *Ne ful gearu cūðon . . gesecgan* (ELENE 167.). *Fuf oft mec gesiðas sendað after hondom* (GREIN, Aes. P. II. 384.). *Gif hie svá swiðe synna fremmað* (CÆDM. 2406.). *Ne fare ȝe tó feorr* (Exod. 8, 28.). Yet adverbs are also found placed after. *Is þes ānga stede ungelic swiðe þam ðærum* (CÆDM. 355.). *Þæt . . þin mōðsefa māra vurde and þin lichoma leōhtra micle* (500 sq.). The adverbial *enough*, like the indeterminate pronoun, readily follows. Old-Engl.: *The eȝen i-closed faire y-nou* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 140.). Halfsax.: *Lihhtlike mihhte andd wel inoð þa sæfne innseþless oppnenn* (ORM., Ded. 283.). Yet also Anglosax.: *Genoð longe* gevunodon on þisse dūne (DEUTER. 1, 6.).

6. As to the negative adverb *not* in particular, it is in general attached, as a negation of the sentence, to the personal form of the verb, postpositively; as the negation of a single member or notion, on the other hand, it precedes them.

In the first case it stands immediately after the personal form in indicative, interrogative and imperative sentences: I eat *not* lords (SHAKSP., Tim. I. 1.). She left *not* her mistress so easy (FIELD., J. Andr. 1, 9.). I know *not* (BULW., Rienzi 2, 3.).

He cometh *not* (TENNYSON p. 10.) He has *not* filled up your place in the household (SCOTT, *Pirate* 2.). Who does *not* wish for freedom? (MRS. CENTLIVRE, *The Wonder* 1, 1.). Say *not* ye, There are yet four months, and than cometh harvest? (JOHN., 4, 35.) Has *not* he seen Pharsalia? (ADDIS., *Cato* 4, 4.) Did *not* you see me in that odious light? (DIAL OF THE DEAD 1.) Make *not* thy voyage long (LONFFELLOW I. 142.). Vex *not* thou the poet's mind (TENNYSON p. 41.). Trust *not* me (MARLOWE, *Jew of M.* 5, 4.). Yield *not* me the praise (TENNYS. p. 242.), it partly permits the reference to the pronominal object, and even to other objects, when these depend upon the personal form of a full word, as well as to the pronominal subject in the inverted form of the sentence: If the devil dress her *not* (SHAKSP., *Ant. a. Cleop.* 5, 2.). It boots me *not* to threaten (MARLOWE, *Ed. II.* 1, 4.). His own received him *not* (JOHN 1, 11.). I heard him *not* (ROGERS, *It., An Advent.*). This world . . Contents us *not* (POPE, *Essay on M.* 4, 131.). How came ye to know That the Count Galas joins us *not*? (COLER., *Picc.* 1, 1.). Therefore suffered I thee *not* to touch her (GEN. 20, 6.). With his dark renown, Cumber our birth-place *not!* (MRS. HERMANS p. 21.). The case of the object may also depend upon the infinitive: My dull eyes can fix thee *not* (BYRON, *Manfr.* 3, 4.) beside: He will want *not* our aid to hang himself (BULW., *Rienzi* 3, 1.). Shall they *not* both fall into the ditch? (LUKE 6, 39.) Art thou *not* guilty? (ROGERS, *It., Foscari.*) Why may I *not* . . Release her from a thralldom worse than death? (*ib.*, *An Advent.*) Was it *not* dropt from heaven? (*ib.*, *Naples*)

The position of *not* betwixt the subject and the personal form of the verb in the indicative sentence was formerly not disfavoured. I *not* doubt (SHAKSP., *Temp.* 1, 2.). The green-sour ringlets . . Whereof the ewe *not* bites (5, 1.). She *not* denies it (MUCH ADO 4, 1.). We *not* endure these flatteries (BEN JONS., *Sejan.* 1, 2.); thus also in DRYDEN: I *not* offend, and the like.

In the second case, where the negative touches chiefly and primarily a single notion, *not* may appear in every place in the sentence. *Not until he had completely recovered* did she voluntarily enter on it (LEWES, *G.* 1. 13.). [In cases of this sort *not* with the dependent sentence answers to a concluded adverbial determination]. *Not a man* depart (SHAKSP., *Jul. Cæs.* 3, 2.). *Not a tomb or an inscription* marks the place that received his ashes (ROSCOE, *Lorenzo*). *Not all the pearls* queen Mary wears, *Not Margaret's yet more precious tears*, Shall buy his life a day (SCOTT, *L. Minstr.* 5, 11.). But *not to me* returns Day (MILT., *P. L.* 3, 41.). *Not thrice* your branching limes have blown (TENNYSON p. 127.). *Not this alone* I bore (p. 238.). *Not only* have they returned but etc. (BULW., *Rienzi* 3, 2.). *Not distant far*, a house etc. (CRABBE, *Borough* 1.). Though *not for me* 'twas Heaven's divine command To roll in acres of paternal land (KIRKE WHITE, *Clifton Grove*). My father had lost his life by *not adhering* to his own principles (MARRYAT, *J. Faithf.* 1, 2.). The sole drift of my purpose doth extend *Not a frown further* (SHAKSP., *Temp.* 5, 1.) Let us lose

not a moment (BULW., Rienzi 1, 1.). His top-boots would have puzzled the lady *not a little* (DICKENS, Pickw. 2, 20.). Can hearts, *not free*, by tried etc. (MILT., P. L. 5, 531.). An act *not less horrible* was perpetrated (MACAUL., Hist. of E. III. 11.) etc. Instances of every kind are given at p. 124. Transpositions of the negation by separation from the notion primarily touched are explained by the possibility of comprehending the predicate in its totality. For me . . . my relation does *not* care a *rush* (BULW., Maltr. 5, 6.). *Not* also often stands after the single notion. Me also he hath judg'd, or rather *Me not*, but the brute serpent (MILT., P. L. 10, 494.). Immortal love, *Ceasing not*, mingled (TENNYSON p. 22.). *Not* precedes to where it is referred to the infinitive with *to*. To be or *not to be* (SHAKSP., Hamlet 3, 1.). 'Twere better *not to breathe* (TENNYSON p. 293.). Yet *not* is also met with between both. If we had not weighty cause *To not appear* in making laws (BUTL., Hud., The Lady's Answ. 253.). How sweet the task to shield an absent friend! I ask but this of mine, *to — not defend* (BYRON, D. Juan 16, 104.), with which compare the insertion of other adverbs, as in: I had been accustomed to *hereditarily succeed* to my father's cast off skins (MARRYAT, J. Faithf. 1, 2.).

The historical development of the use of this particle (p. 124.) affords explanation of its position as a negation of the sentence. Its immediate attachment to the preceding verb needs no further mention, but it also readily tolerates (with or without *ne* preceding) a pronominal object or the inverted pronominal subject before it. Old-Engl.: þou ne louest me *noht* (R. or GL. I. 31. Lecherie loveth him *noht* (P. PLOUGH. p. 288.). Sche saw him *not* with eye (CHARC., C. T. 3415.). Lede us *not* into temptacioun (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 38.). Þe worlde knewe hym *not* (WYCL., Joh. 1, 10.). Ne shal I the *nouȝt* blame (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 4.). Hym ne slow he *noȝt* (R. or GL. I. 22.). Kan I *noht* his name (P. PLOUGH. p. 43.). Kan I hym *naght* discryve (p. 88.). Hallsax.: Hit neas him *noht* iqueme (LAJAM. I. 26.). Nulle we *noht* pis on-fon (I. 48.). *not* was early met with between subject and verb, especially in dependent sentences. Old-Engl.: That thou me *nout* bi-melde (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 3.). He callys hym so, bot he *not* is (TOWN. M. p. 229.). Hallsax.: Þatt þwerit ut *nohht* ne leȝhepp (ORM. 760.). Anglosax.: Þæt þu *nāht* ne tveoȝe (BORTH. 5, 3.).

With proximate reference to a member of a sentence or to single notions, *not* early preceded them. Old-Engl.: *Not oonly* in breed a man lyveth (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 41.). *Not oo word* spak he more (CHARC., C. T. 306.). *Nat fully quyk*, ne fully deed they were (1017.). I se . . . *Noght ful fer hennes* Rightwisnesse come (P. PLOUGH. p. 379.). To riche and *noght riche* (p. 283.), so too with the infinitive. *Nought for to stynte* to doon synne, may nought avayle (CHARC., C. T. p. 185. II). Hallsax.: Ne comm *nohht* zet min time (ORM. 14371.). Anglosax.: Þæt mynster vās . . . getimbred *nōht micle ær* fram Hegu (THORPE, Anal. p. 50.). *Nōht longe* ofer pis (GREIN, Ags. P. II. 99.). Anglosax. had many other negations to employ in such a case. That the substantive *nōht*, *nāht* may also stand at the commencement of the sentence, is readily intelligible.

7. The single sentence may take in a number of adverbial determinations, which, with the freedom permitted to every single member, range themselves variously about the verb of the pre-

dicare, and may come before the subject. If the plainest speech here readily lets the accusative object follow the verb, before other determinations: We have read *this book with great pleasure* (MACAUL., *Essays* II. 17.), — They . . pitched *their tents, that day* about three miles from Bridgewater, on the plain of Sedgemoor (Hist. of E. II. 171.), it gives on the other hand the preference to the personal case (the dative) before the accusative object: I'll give *you boot* (SHAKSP., *Troil.* a. Cr. 4, 5), when however the concurrence of an original dative and accusative of personal pronouns admits different collocations. See Vol. II. l. p. 207. The further development of an accusative object frequently thrusts it, notwithstanding, to the end of the sentence. The reasons by which the succession or separation of adverbial members is otherwise determined lie partly in their growing weight and extent, partly in their nearer affinity, partly in their variety. He was *here yesterday* with her ladyship (TROLLOPE, *Framl.* Parson 1, 9.). I'll send *him to your ladyship* in a crack (CH. MACKIN, *Man of the the W.* 1, 1.). He was hunting *one day in Dorsetshire* (HUME Hist. of E. 2.). And *presently, at full speed*, some thirty horsemen dashed through the gate (BULW., *Rienzi* 5, 3). *At noon on Friday*, the sixth February, he passed away without a struggle (MACAUL., Hist. of E. II. 12.). The law of perspicuity is frequently the sole limit for subjective license.

The rhetorical approximation of determinations of the sentence may also be here incidentally mentioned, known under the name of Chiasm. It extends to every, (not merely adverbial) member, distributes the members between two sentences, and consists in the juxtaposition of like and related or contrary notions in such manner that two series of notions are placed in the inverse order to each other. I form'd them *free*, and *free* they must remain (MILT., P. L. 3, 184.). Though fall'n *on evil days*, *On evil days* though fall'n (7, 25.). They are still *here*, *here* still! (COLER., *Picc.* 1, 11.) To rave *with Dennis*, and *with Ralph* to rhyme (BYRON, *Engl. Bards* p. 318. Spreads *all his canvass*, *ev'ry sinew* plies (COWP. p. 39.). In age *courteous*, *be sedate* in youth (CRABBE, *The Borough* 4.). Close *the door*, *the shutters* close (TENNYNS. p. 45.). Nor will I Deed *done*, or *spoken word* deny (SCOTT, *Rokeby* 2, 19.). Even tiger *fell*, and *sullen bear* (3, 1.). His time *a moment*, and *a point* his space (POPE, *Essay on M.* 1, 72.). Hearts firm *as steel*, *as marble* hard (SCOTT, *Rokeby* 2, 11.).

It needs no further evidence that the ancient language was able to give the sentence a richer meaning by various adverbial determinations. Anglosax.: prose offered a well ordered junction of them; verse, a bolder one. As is evident from the discussion of the individual members of sentences, English preserves to a wide extent the freedom of the Anglo-saxon collocation, and the influence of the French has not limited the language in this respect.

As regards Chiasm, the parallelism of transposed series of notions has at all times been usual in poetry. Old-Engl.: Bi hire make ge sit o nigt, o dei ge goð and flegoð (WRIGHT & HALLIW., *Rel. Ant.* I. 224.). Thou hast . . Brent my *tounes*, my *men y-slawe* (ALIS. 1720.). Beoth *hardy* and *monly doth* (1953.). The dai is *gone*, and *comen* the night (SEYDN SAGES 1947.). Now he is *gon*, *gone* is our frende (Cov. MYST. 235. Halfsax.: Lauine hehte his *leuemon*, *pene castel* he clepede Lauinion

III. The Collocation of attributive Determinations of the Sentence. 561

(LAJAM. I. 9. Þar was muchel *blod-gute*, *baluwe* þer wes riue (I. 27.). Anglo-sax : Ærest gesceop . . *heofon and eorðan*; *rodor* ārærde (CÆDM. 112.). Vās him gylp forð, beot *forborsten*, and *forbiged* þrym (69.). Þā forman tvā, fāder and *mōder*, *vif* and væpned (194.). Gārsecg *hlynode*, beoton brimstreāmas (ANDR 238.). Hie þam hālgan þær handa *gebundon*, and *fāstnodon* feondes crāfte hāleð hellfuse (48.). Ne magon þær ge-vun-jan *viðfērende*, nè þær *elpeðlige* eardes brūcað (279.).

8. As to the adverb as the representative of attributive determinations See p. 137.

III. The Collocation of attributive Determinations of the Sentence.

A. The position of the determinatives of the substantive notion is so closely connected with the syntactical relation of notions that it must be essentially treated of in the grammatical discussion pertaining to it. In general, the position before the substantive notion, as well as before the attributive determinations in the stricter sense, is to be assigned to them, although another is frequently conceded to them.

1. Both the definite and the indefinite article are essentially proclitic in their nature, always therefore preceding the notion determined by them, whether this is a substantive and adjective or a pronoun. For particulars see the treatise upon the article p. 141—207.

2. Numerals ordinarily precede the substantive notion. The Section p. 207—215 yields a few exceptions. It has still to be quoted that the cardinal number sometimes follows the substantive in the cases not cited there.

They pass the planets *seven* (MILT., P. L. 3, 480.). Lines *forty thousand*, cantos *twenty five* (BYRON, Engl. Bards p. 318.). The Druid Urien had daughters (SCOTT, Harold 4, 14.).

This was frequent in ancient times, without any particular weight's being attributed to the number which follows. Old-Engl : Now hadde kyng Lud . . *þonge sones twei* (R. OF GL. I. 47.). *Smale bollen threo* (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 138.). With loves *fyf* and fissesches *tuo* (CHAUC., C. T. 4922.). I have mad avowes *fourty* (P. PLOUGHM. p. 101.). These holy martyres *fourre* (HALLIW., Freemas. 501.). In the syens *seven* (556.). Oone God in persons *thre* (TOWN M. p. 1.). The planetes *seven* (p. 2.). My harp, and syngeres *ten* (p. 51.). That Lord mid woundes *fyfe* (p. 305.) etc.; also: *CCC dayes and fyfty* (p. 32.). *Twenty* degrees and *oon* (CHAUC., C. T. 16681.). Hallsax.: Haued sunen *tweien* (LAJAM. II. 520.). Godnessess *seffne* (ORM., Ded. 252. cf. 180.). also: *þho wass sextiz* winn-terr ald *Annd fowure annd twenntiz* þanne (ORM. 7675.). Anglosax.: Mid his eaforum *prim* (CÆDM. 1540.). Cōmon þær scipu *six* tō Viht (SAX. CHR. 897.). Mine suna *twelfe* (GREIN, Ags. P. II. 354.). Mid þām æfelestum ceastrum *ānes vana prittigum* (BEDA 1, 1.). Commonly indeed the cardinal members stand before the substantive notion.

In combination with *first* and *other* we find the cardinal number placed before or after: The *four first* acts (SHERID., The Critic 1, 1.). For the *first ten* minutes (COOPER, Spy 13.). Four *other* children (LEWES, G. I. 18.). *Other seven* days (GEN. 8, 12.).

3. The position of pronouns of all classes is clear from the statement of their use See p. 215—278, where the combination of

determinants with one another and the same substantive has been regarded.

With regard to the possessive pronoun it remains to be observed that it sometimes interchanges the position before the substantive with that after it: in Mod.-Engl. this touches the pronoun *mine*, especially in addressing persons.

You brother *mine* (SHAKSP., Temp. 5, 1.). Nay, sweet lady *mine* (BULW., Rienzi 3, 2.). In truth, lady *mine*, I rejoice for graver objects (ib.).

The older language extends this usage further. Old-Engl.: Arcita, cosyn *myn* (CHAUC., C. T. 1283.). Y set at table *myn*, For reverence of lord *thyn* (ALIS. 4200.). Kep children *myne*, So hit farith to honoure *thyne* (4638.). Lad me arst to chaumbre *thin* (SECVN SAGES 2452.). Vader *oure* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 42. cf. 235. 282.). Bread *oure* eche dayes yef ous (I. 42.); beside: *Oure* iche-dayes-bred (I. 282.). Halſax.: Broþer *min* (ORM., Ded. 1. 3. 5.), Swa þu scalt wunien in wurðſcipe *þine* (LAJAM II. 520.). Angloſax.: Dryhten *min* (ANDR. 190.). Hafa bletsunge middangeard *mine* þær þu fīre (223.). Þæt mæg engel *þin* ead gefcran of heofenum (194.). Þonne brōðor *þin* onfeng . . fulvihtes bād (ELFE 489.). Hlaford *ūser* (BEOV. 5278.).

→ B. The attributive adjective and the adjective participle is also primarily attached, by reason of its grammatical relation, to its substantive notion, with which it is also held together under one principal accent. Yet various cases are to be here distinguished.

1. A single, although adverbially determined adjective or attributive participle

× a. commonly, and above all in prose, immediately precedes the substantive, without permitting its separation from it by a determinant.

A *contentious* man (PROV. 26. 21.). The *English* humourists of the *past* age (THACKERAY, Engl. Humour. 1.). On the *following* Friday (TROLLOPE, Framl. Parson 1, 8.). Some *ruined* temple or *fallen* monument (ROGERS, It., Naples). *Faithful* Mamsell Bülow (CARL., Fred. the Gr. 6, 9.). Of the *right noble* Claudio (SHAKSP., Much Ado 1, 1.). A *very sober* countenance (THACKERAY, Engl. Humour. 1.). The air of the *now declining* day (BULW., Rienzi 4, 2.). His *already wearied* horse (3, 1.). A *somewhat remote* century (CARL., Past a. Pres. 2, 1.). Thy *too-piercing* words (MARLOWE, Edw. II. 1, 4.). Thy *too hard* fate (ROWE, Fair Penit. 4, 1.). A *too-long* *wither'd* flower (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 2, 1.). A *too thankful* heart (SHERID. Riv. 3, 2.). Your *so grieved* minde (FERREX A. PORR. 1, 1.). Give *as soft* attachment to thy senses As etc. (SHAKSP., Troil. a. Cress. 4, 1.).

× Yet the habit is old of letting the article *an*, *a* come between the adjective determined by *too*, *so*, *as*, *how* and the substantive. You have *too heinous* a respect of grief (SHAKSP., John 3, 4.). It seems *too broad* an averment (SCOTT, Minstrelsy I. 51.). I am surprised that one who is *so warm* a friend can be *so cool* a lover (GOLDSM., She Stoops 2). The vicinity of *so remarkable* a people (MACAUL., Hist. of E. I. 12.). Sturdy he was . . *As great* a drover, and *as great* A critic

too, in dog or neat (BUTL., Hud. 1, 2, 457.). *How high* a pitch his resolution soars! (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 1, 1.). *How long* a time lies in one little word! (1, 3.). *How mere* a maniac they supposed the Duke (COLER., Picc. 3, 1.). Comp. *many, such, half*, with the article after them. Even with other adjective determinations the substantive is sometimes used with *an, a* after it. Our knight did bear *no less* a pack (BUTL., Hud. 1, 1 291.). Sometimes the adverbial determination alone precedes the article. They were of *somewhat* a different complexion (SCOTT, R. Roy 36.). No *so hard* a hearted one (BUTL., Hud. 1, 3., 330.).

Thus too *my* separates the adjective from the substantive in: *Good my liege!* (SHAKSP., John 1, 1. (ADDIS., Rosam. 1, 6. BULW., Richel. 4, 1.). *Good my lord* (SHAKSP., Temp. 2, 1.). *Good my mother* (John 1, 1.). *Dear my liege* (Rich. II. 1, 1.). and the like.

The practice of putting the simple adjective immediately before the substantive goes back to the Anglosaxon, where prose especially holds fast this usage, whereas poetry acts very freely with the adjective and participle. Old-Engl.: A *litel* los (P. PLOUGHM. p. 12.). On *wedded* wimmon (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 2.). *æt defte* maiden (WRIGHT A. HAL- LIW., Rel. Ant. I. 209.). The *most fayre* chirche (MAUNDEV. p. 8.). A *fullehedus* syn (TOWN. M. p. 137.). *So clene lond* ys Engolond (R. OF GL. I. 8.). *So noble* folc, þat of *so gret* blod come (I. 12.). Hallsax.: In an *haye* munstre (LAJAM. II. 231.). Mid *suiðe* *uæire* læten (II. 231.). Anglosax.: Manig *mære* man (APOLLON. OF T. p. 1.). He hæfde æne *swide* *vlitige* dōhter (ib.). Hæfad *micele* *lengran* dagas (BEDA 1, 1.). *Svā mycel* *yfel* (BASIL., Hexam. 18.). Þā *creōpendan* *vyrmas* (9.).

A separation of the adjective from the substantive by determinatives of various kinds, even without an adverbial amplification's being assigned to the former, was formerly still more extensive. Old-Engl.: *Vyl* a thing is that sed (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 138.). Than *scholde* I make *to longe* a tale (MAUNDEV. p. 6.). *To bad* a marchawnt (Cov. MYST. p. 267.). He is *so foule* a thing (AMIS. A. AMIL. 1593.). With *so benigne* a cheere (CHAUC., C. T. 9616.). Thou art *bicome al* to *wis* a grome (SKEYN SAGES 1110.). *As good* a man's son was I As any of you (TOWN. M. p. 105.). *As dereworthe* a drury As *deere* God hymselfen (P. PLOUGHM. p. 20.). *How gret* a sorwe suffreth now Ar- cite! (CHAUC., C. T. 1221.). Hallsax.: At *æwelen* are *chirechen* (LAJAM. I. 1.). *Longe* ane stunde (II. 290.). Mid *fæire* are burne (III. 24.). *Seocken* þan kinge (II. 391.). Mid *scærpen* þan hungre (II. 498.). *Sele* tweie *cnihtes* (II. 434.). *Goden* twælf *cnihten* (II. 232.). In *leo- fen* pine drihten (II. 280.). *Leofe* ure drihten (II. 285.). Mid *fæire* his worden (384.). *Longe* heore *sweordes* (II. 454.). Comp. Anglosax.: At þām *āl-cealdan* anum (ÆLER. METRA 24, 19. cf. 20, 179. Grein). Hēr syndon inne *unvenne* tvā dōhtor mine (CÆDM. 2458.). On *midde-veardum* hyre ryne (WRIGHT, Pop. Treat. p. 9.). A separation of the adjective from the substantive by other members in general is familiar to Anglosax. poetry. He him *ēce* *geceās* maht and mund- byrd (Cod. Exon. 154, 34.). Nu þe *ālmihhtig* hated heofona cyning (ANDR. 1504) etc.

- b. The single adjective or participle is also frequently placed after the substantive. The attribute not otherwise determined appears here more rarely in prose, more frequently

- x in poetry: participles are, however, familiar to prose: Falstaff, varlet *vile* (SHAKSP., Merry W. 1, 3.). God *omnipotent* (Rich. II. 3, 3.). Thoughts of things *divine* (5, 5.) Nobles *richer* (Henry V. 1, 2.). The law *Salique* (ib.). The Lords *spiritual* . . the Lords *temporal* (Rich. II. 4, 1.). Those armies *bright* (MILT. P. L. 1, 272.). Their essence *pure* (1, 425.). Of depth *immeasurable* (1, 549.). Heroes *old* (1, 552.). Of creatures *rational* 2, 298.). Of systems *possible*, if 'tis confest, That Wisdom *infinite* must form the best (POPE, Essay on M. 1, 43.). With insolence *unjust* (ROWE, J. Shore 1, 1.). Of things *impossible* (YOUNG, N. Th. 1, 165.). From fields *Elysian* (SWIFT P.). The body *politic* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. 1, 2.). The States *General* (I. 25.). Scraps of Law *French* and Law *Latin* (IV. 31.). From time *immemorial* (VIII. 109.). The descent both of the titles and estates was to heirs *male* (LAKE, Life of L. (BYRON). I would be a merman *bold* (TENNYSON p. 58.). I would be a mermaid *fair* (p. 60.). The day *following* (JOHN 1, 43.). Glooms *inviting*, Birds *delighting* . . Charm my tortur'd soul no more (ADDIS., Rosam. 1, 4.). The law makes a difference between things *stolen* and things *found* (FIELD., J. Andr. 1, 14.). Among the pieces *performed* (LEWES, G. I. 53.). Some highly-gifted individual, possessing in a preeminent and uncommon degree the powers *demand'd* (SCOTT, Minstrelsy I. 12.). The ship *destroyed* was Dirk Hatteraick's (Guy Manner. 10.). For the absolute participle See p. 70 85.

If an adverb precedes the attribute, its transposition is facilitated, and a matter of course with the wider compass of adverbial determinations; if a further determination follows, its postposition is requisite. The Lord *most high* is terrible (Ps 47, 2.). A price *so heavy* (COLER., Wallenst. 1, 4.). The scene *so fair* (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 2, 2.). A determination *precisely contrary* (R. Roy 1.). Obstacles *somewhat more serious* (MOTLEY, Rise of the D. Rep. 3, 2.). Of men *still living* (MACAUL., Hist. of E. 1, 1.). A liberty of discussion and of individual action *never before known* (ib.). A character *almost indelibly sacred* (SCOTT, Minstr. I. 12.); also: His vows *to Eleonora due* (ADDIS., Rosam. 1, 1.). — A plant *proper to almost all soils* (I. 11.). A man *wise in his own conceit* (PROV. 26. 12.). His teeming muse *Prolific every spring* (BYRON, Engl. Bards p. 328.). Quays *crowded with people* (DICKENS., Amer. Notes 2.). An incident *worth lingering on* (CARL., Past a. Pres. 1, 1.).

The postposition of the adjective in similar cases goes back to the most ancient times, being not quite foreign even to Anglosax prose. That of the mere adjective and participle is frequent. Old-Engl.: Marie, moder *milde* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 48. Mid hire teð *sarpe* (I. 218.). Levedi *brist* [= *briht*] (ib.). Englonð is lond *bea* (R. OF GL. I. 8.). His beryng *hie* (LANGT. II. 236.). Of maistres *wise* (ALIS. 668.). Scheldis *hard* (690.). Of that wyn *rede* (4186.). His cosyn *deere* (2765.). Brent to aschen *colde* (2959.). The bokes *olde* (2296.). On Monday *next* (3516.). A madyn *fre* (TOWN. M. p. 270.). Fader *dere* (p. 37.). Lord *omnipotent* (p. 35.). Of the blood *royall*

(SKELTON I. 6.). In time coming (CHAUC., C. T. p. 107. II.). In þe ȝere folowand (LANGT. II. 235.). Halſax.: In ane weie brade (LAȜAM. II. 227.). Enne cnaue zunge (II. 229.). Þurh æne wude muchelen (III 45.). Nenne red godne (III. 22.). Þane duc stronge (I. 159.). Þa bond men faſte kempen *Romanisce* (III. 67.). Angloſax.: God *almihtig* (BASIL., Hexam. 1.). Þone ſtorm *tôwardne* foreſeah (BEDA 3. 15.). Håfde hyge *ſtrangne* (CÆDM. 445.). Atres drinc *atulne* (ANDR. 53.). þeoden *leoſeſta!* (288.). Fyrdrincaſ *frome* (262.). Vordum *vratlicum* (630.). Sige forgeaf . . cyning *almihtig* (ELENE 145.) etc.

Instances of adjectives following with a more particular determination are not wanting.). Old-Engl.: Ich wille geve thi gift *ful ſtark* (WRIGHT, Anecd. p. 8.). With ſcite & oth *fulle ſtark* (LANGT. II. 237.). In a tounge *wele vrough!* (II. 341.). Maidnes *ſhene ſo hon* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 123.). Lovedi *ful of hovenne bliſe* (I 102.). The knyght *gentyll of blode* (SIR CLEGGES 60.). etc. Halſax. Sceld *ſwiðe godne* (LAȜAM III. 44.). Ænne ȝære *ſwiðe stronge* (III. 24.). Angloſax.: He viſte ſum ealānd *ſynderlice digle* (GUTHLAG 3.). Þam þe ealra iſ drihtna drihten *dædum ſpædigast* (Ps. 135, 3.). Þe uſ bōc åvrāt . . *leohtre be dæle* þoune Baſiliuſ (BASIL., Admon. Prol.).

2. If more than one adjective ſerve to determine a ſubſtantive in the relation of inordination or of coordination, the ſame points of view in general govern as with the ſingle adjective.

a. The adjectives namely, even with an adverbial determination, may all precede the ſubſtantive.

A *ſharp keen* wind (DICKENS., Americ Notes 2.). The ſame *allegorical and poetical* ſtyle (DIAL. OF THE D. 3.). Thy *ever dear and honour'd* countenance (COLER., Wallenſt. 2, 1.). The *faireſt and moſt loving* wife in Greece (TENNYſ. p. 105.).

Old-Engl.: He iſ *more myghty and grette* Lord (MACNDEV. p. 42.). For particulars See p. 288.

b. or they may all follow, when another determination may cooperate.

Gods *partial, changeful, passionate, unjust* (POPE, Eſſay on M. 3. 256.). A damſel *ſo diſtreſſ'd and pretty* (ADDIS., Roſam. 1, 4.). Anſwer from England, *affirmative or even negative*, we have yet none (CARL., Fred. the Gr. 7, 1.).

Old-Engl.: Thine children, *ſmale and grete* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 275.). In the name of God *glorious and almyghty* (MAUNDEV. p. 6.). Angloſax.: Ealra þinga, *geſevenlicra and ungeſevenlicra* (THORPE, Anal. p. 59.) See p. 288.

c. or they are ranged about the ſubſtantive.

Free ſpeech and fearless (SHAKSP., Rich. II. 1, 1.). Full of *great rooms and ſmall* (TENNYſ. p. 115. A *ſtrange ſpectacle and a ſacred* (BULW., Rienzi 3, 2.).

Old-Engl.: Leve ſone *dere* (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 188.). A *yong knyght, joliſ and kene* (ALIS. 2716.). *Yonge knyghtes proude* (CHAUC. C. T. 2600.). A *wiſ child and a fair* (SECTN SAGES 283.). Halſax.: God preoſt and God *full oreme* (ORM. 118.). *Grôvende ȝârſ and sæd vircende* (GEN. 1, 11.). Further ſee p. 288.

C. The adnominal ſubſtantive (and partly the pronoun) appears.

1. in the genitive, which in the modern language always precedes iſ word of reference. See p. 291.

2. in prepoſitional members, which are in general attached to the ſubſtantive notion.

Inversions and separations of them from their word of reference sometimes occur as with other combinations of prepositional members. We especially remark the inversion, partly familiar in prose, of the member introduced by *of* in a qualitative and partitive meaning.

Polibus, *Of Corinth* king (GASCOYNE, *Jocasta* 1, 1.). *Of incense* clouds (MILT., P. L. 7, 599). *Of all thy sons* The weal or woe (8, 637). *Of human ills* the last extreme beware (YOUNG, N. Th. 1, 387.). The waves efface *Of slaves and sandal'd feet* the trace (SCOTT, *Marm.* 2, 9.). *Of middle air* the demons proud (3, 22.). Minors, *of their sires* in dread (CRABBE, *The Borough* 6.). In the partitive relation this is common to prose with poetry. *Of Scotland's stubborn barons* none Would march (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 4, 8.). While *of the cured* we not a man can trace (CRABBE, *The Borough* 7.). *Of fuel* they had plenty (SCOTT, *Monast.* 1.). *Of their number* . . not one-sixth could be deemed men-at-arms (BULW., *Rienzi* 5, 3.).

Thus too the relative pronouns *which* and *whom* in combination with *of*, when their word of reference is not a case accompanied by a preposition or, mostly, not however without exception, if it is an indeterminate pronoun or numeral, like *some*, *all*, *each*, *one both*, *most* etc., may be placed before the word of reference, while the reverse position is also used. The former happens with regard to the conjunctive nature of the relative combining the sentences, the other in regard to the relation of government. The cases coming under consideration are the dependence of the relative from the subject or object of the sentence. Why should we endeavour to attain that, *of which* the possession cannot be secured? (JOHNS.). He could observe their ordinary accompaniments, portcullis and drawbridge — *of which* the first was lowered, and the last raised (SCOTT, *Qu. Durw.* 3.). Borne on the air *of which* I am the prince (BYRON, *Cain* 2, 1.). The bodiless thought? the Spirit of each spot? *Of which*, even now, I share at times the immortal lot (CH. HAR. 3, 74.). The art of reading that book *of which* Eternal Wisdom obliges every human creature to present his or her own page (DICKENS, *Hunted Down* 1.). Two children . . *of whom* one only . . will come much across us in the course of our history (TROLLOPE, *Framl. Parson.* 1, 10.), beside: I had two elder brothers, one *of which* was lieutenant-colonel (DE FOE, *Robins.* Cr. p. 1.). Five sons all *of whom* died young (Lake, *Life of Byron*). *Of* those better qualities, the possession *of which* in our persons inspires our humble self-respect (DICKENS, *M. Chuzzlew.* 1, 2.).

The inversion of the prepositional member, answering to the position of a genitive, early occurs. Old-Engl.: þo he hadde . . Yslawe *of þis maydenes* þat swete companie (R. or GL I. 96.). He . . kneow in the sterre *of alle this kynges* theo grete weore (ALIS 113.). *Of chyvaltry* the flour (CHAUC., C. T. 3061.). *Of Palmire* the queene (15733.). *Of the orient* conquerour (16179.). *Of fatte weperes* an hundred pousand (R. of GL I. 52.). Hallsax.: *Of Rome* he wes legat and *of þan hirede* prelat (LAJAM. II 607.). In the partitive sense there stands in Anglo-sax.: Slōh *of his mannon* mycelne dæl (SAX. CHR. 1087.).

The precedence of a relative pronoun with *of*, referred to the subject or object of the sentence in the meaning of an adnominal genitive, belongs to olden times. Old-Engl.: Of ten pinges . . . *Of which* sum by-for þat day sal be (THE PRICKE OF CONSC. 3986.). Of al men . . . *Of which* som sal be demed, and som noght (3988.). Ȝif ȝee been out of discipline of the *whiche* alle gode men ben maad perceveris (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II 43.). *Of the whiche* the cause was etc. (II. 52.). His hous, of *which* the dores were fast i-shitte (CHAUC., C. T. p. 150. II.). 4 wyfes . . . of the *whiche* on dwellethe at Jerusalem (MAUNDEV. p. 38.). The grete tour of Babel . . . of the *whiche* the walles weren 64 furlonges of heighthe (p. 40. cf. 41.). A juyce . . . of the *whiche* the serpent and the venymous bestes haten and dreden the savour (p. 169.). A 200 or 300 persones . . . of the *whiche* thei bringen the bodies before the ydole (p. 176.). This seems in general to be in the usage first prevalent with every subject and object: which is only departed from with a prepositional substantive, since the relative could not, like *whose* and the Latin *cujus*, *quorum*, *quarum*, be put between the preposition and the cases belonging thereto. And saugh an hond . . . For fere of *which* he quook (CHAUC., C. T. 156-9.). Or may we even assume this insertion in sentences like: In swich licour, *Of which* vertue engendred is the flour (3.).

- D. The position of the appositive member is evident from what has been said upon the syntactical import and the consequent capacity of this member for transposition.

IV. The Collocation of Sentences.

- A. The Collocation of Sentences attached to one another in the relation of Coordination is conditioned by the nature of the series of thoughts, which, in this mode of joining sentences, is in part able to go freely. Where an attached sentence (or, in the abbreviation of sentences, a member) is measured by the conjunction according to a logical category, as that of the cause or the consequence, there can no longer be a question of a transposition of the judgments contained in the sentences, because the particle would be itself useless. Otherwise, and especially in sentences following each other asyndetically, it is only a question of the preservation of the clearness of the succession or of their internal relation. The measure for the succession of sentences in each case is given by their applicability, pointed out in the syntax, in the concatenation of definite series of thoughts.

If the copulatives then coming into use have in general their place in the front of sentences, adverbial particles, such as *else*, *then*, *nevertheless*, *therefore* etc. may also take another place, being in this respect equivalent to other adverbs.

- B. In the relation of the subordination of the dependent sentence to an absolute or relative principal sentence there results, for the period in the stricter sense, the possibility of a different attachment or insertion of the member developed into a sentence. The analogy of the substantive sentence, adverbial sentence and adjective sentence with the parts of speech by which we name them assigns to them that place in the sentence which would each time belong to them in the simple sentence; but they also share in a

full measure the inversion departing from the commonest collocation. With the exception, therefore, of the adjective sentence in the narrower sense, which appears only as an intermediate sentence or after the principal sentence, every other dependent sentence, although in a different measure, finds place before, within or after the principal sentence. We have already mentioned the order of the period in different relations. See p. 379. Instances and indications as to the principle of the succession of sentences are moreover presented by individual dependent sentences. A general survey of the whole domain would here be in its place.

1. The substantive sentence generally, whether with or without support from a grammatical subject or object, takes a place after the principal sentence. Yet it is not rarely found, both as a subject and object, at the commencement of the period, in the latter case, in analogy with the inversion of the substantive.

That he never will is sure (MILT., P. L. 2, 154.). *That he deserved a better fate* was not questioned by any reasonable man (HUME, Hist. of E. 57.). *That he had inherited his organization and tendencies from his forefathers* . . he has told us in these (LEWES, G. I. 6.). *Whether decline has thinn'd my hair*, I'm sure I neither know nor care (TH. MOORE p. 4.). *What this may be* I know not (TENNYSON p. 108.). *Whatever is capricious and odd*, is sure to create diversion etc. (SHAFTESBURY, Char. III. 5.). *Who sent thee there* requires thee here (BYRON, Manfr. 2, 4.).

The sentences coming under consideration are partly sentences with *that*, partly in direct interrogative sentences, and frequently adjective sentences used substantively. Their postposition is presented by numerous instances of the categories cited; likewise their insertion attached to a single notion, as a substantive. This collocation, to be denoted as an inversion with the sentence of the object, occurred formerly also. Old-Engl.: *That Jesu hem helped* it was wel sene (RICH. C. DE L. 4551.). *That I am dronke* I knowe wel (CHAUC., C. T. 3140.). *That I am teewe*, sone xalt thou se (COV. MYST. p. 25.). *That I wer ded* I wer ful fayn (RICH. C. DE L. 954.). *Wheder he be ryzen and gane* Yet we ne know (TOWN. M. p. 274.). *Whether that it was*, as us semede, I wot nere (MAUNDEV. p. 283.). *Who so wil have sapience*, schal no man dispraise (CHAUC., C. T. p. 153. l.). *That he askith* we wol him sende (ALIS. 3035.). I have not found the dependent sentence with *pāt* in the most ancient times. That of the indirect interrogative sentence is rare. Anglosax.: *Gif he synful is*, pāt ic nāt (JOH. 9, 25.). The generalizing substantive relative sentence, on the other hand, often occurs at the commencement of the period. Halfsax.: *Wa swa wulle libba alde pas sibba* (LAJAN. I. 155.). Anglosax.: *Svā hvāt svāt svā man hāfð* he svā for his life (JOB in Ettm. 5, 14.).

2. The adverbial sentence, like the adverb itself, is most capable of taking each of the three possible positions in the period.

Dependent sentences of the determinations of place, and of time, of the cause, the condition and of concession shew themselves most pliant in this respect, and they stand at the command of the changing necessities of speech as protases, intermediate sentences and sentences of the consequence. The doctrine of the period affords explanation in detail, as the pre-

dominant inclination of a few dependent sentences to take the first or the last place, is evident from instances already quoted.

The idea of the succession of time, as well as of the effect and of the goal, has chiefly conceded to sentences of time with *til*, *until* and the corresponding particles in Old-Engl. and Anglosax., as *forþo*, *to* (*that*), *tō þon pāt*, *ōð* etc., as well as to consecutive and final sentences, the place after the principal sentence; as conditioning sentences, which cite an exceptional case, are often subjoined, as supplemental determinations of the principal sentence. Yet the language is not bound, even in most of these cases, so that even the apparently inverted collocation of sentences occurs, which is not indeed permitted to the consecutive sentence referring to a word of reference. In this respect compare:

And *till we are indemnified*, so long Stays Prague in pledge (COLER., *Picc.* 4, 5.). *That I may give thee life indeed*, I'll waste no longer time with thee (SHERID. KNOWLES, *Virgin.* 5, 3.). *That they might have no difficulty in finding him*, he was to walk etc. (MACAUL., *Hist. of E.* VIII. 112.). But *lest the difficulty of passing back Stay his return* . . let us try Advent'rous work (MILT., *P. L.* 10, 252.). *Lest Barclay's absence* . . should cause any suspicion, it was given out that his loose way of life had made it necessary etc (MACAUL., 1. c.). And, *but thou love me*, let them find me here (SHAKSP., *Rom. a.* Jul. 2, 2.). *But that the Earl his flight had ta'en*, The vassals there their Lord had slain (SCOTT, *L. Minstr.* 4, 10.). *Unless the swifter I speed away*, Short shrift will be at my dying day (SCOTT, *L. Minstr.* 3, 7.). *Except I conceived very worthily of her*, thou should'st not have her (BEN JONS., *Ev. Man in h. Hum.* 4, 3.). *Except a man be born of water and of the Spirit*, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God (JOHN 3, 5.).

Old-Engl.: And *till I com to Clergie* I koude nevere stynte (P. PLOUGHM. p. 136.). *For to I com dar he not styr* (TOWN. M. p. 40). *For þat me schulde ys chauntement yse*, He lette hym make wyngon R. or Gr. I. 28.). *But we have the beter socour*, We beth forlour (RICH. C. DE L. 2993.). *Withoutt I have a vengyng* I may lyf no langer (TOWN. M. p. 146.). *That lesse than synne the soner swage*, God wyl be vengyd en us (COV. MYST. p. 40.). Halfsax.: All mannkinn . . Anan *till þatt itt cumenn wass Till Cristess dæp* . . All for till helle (ORW., *In* *Intro.* 1. sq.). *Buten ich habbe þinne ræd*, ful ræfe þu isihst me dæad (LAJAN. II. 370.). Anglosax.: Ac *þylās ic lenge pone þanc hefige þāra leornendra* . . svā svā ic strange sæ and mycele oferlīde (GUTHLAC, *Prol.*). *Būtan ge hit gelyfan ne mæge ge hit understandan* (THORPE, *Anal.* p. 61.).

Among modal sentences, those serving the relation of equality, are capable of the most various positions. (See p. 486 and 490); those having relation to comparative notions, the sentences with *than*, ordinarily follow the comparative notion; yet abbreviated sentences (members of a sentence) often precede their word of reference with *than*, especially in poetry. This is always the case if *than* is combined with the relative pronoun.

Than be so, Better to cease to be (SHAKSP., *Cymb.* 4, 4.). *Than wine or than wassail, to him was more dear* *The minstrel's*

high tale of enchantment to hear (SCOTT, Harold 4, 13.). Yet *who, than he*, more mean? (SHAKSP., Cymb. 2, 3.). Be this or ought *Than this* more secret now design'd (MILT., P. L. 2, 837.). None are clear, And none *than we* more guilty (COWP. p. 188.). Accepted Howard *than whom* knight Was never dubb'd, more bold in fight (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 5, 5). The negro grinning assent from under a leathern portmanteau, *than which* his own face was many shades deeper (DICKENS, M. Chuzzlew. 1. 17.).

This sort of inversion also formerly occurred Old-Engl.: White lyouns, *than boles* [= bulls] more (ALL. 5386.); it seems, however, not to have been favoured in the most ancient times. Comp. Lat. His igitur, *quam physicis*, potius credendum existimas? (CIC., Divin. 2, 16.)

3. The adjective sentence, in the proper sense, follows its word of relation either immediately or separated from it, by other parts of the sentence, particularly the verb of the predicate, when in the former case the adjective sentence often appears as an intermediate sentence. With the placing first of relative sentences it is to be considered that not so much hyperbaton is to be assumed, where a word of reference seems to follow, as rather a reduplication of the subject or object after a relative sentence used substantively with *who*, as well as with *what*. See p. 529.

Here also seem to belong sentences in the older language, as Old-Engl.: *That kept him in prisoun*, Edward did him calle (LANGT. I. 219.). *That Poul precheth of hem* I wol nat preve it here (P. PLOUGHM. p. 3.). Anglosax.: Ðā āra's braðe, *se þe oft ræd ongeat*, Loth on recede (CÆDM. 2454.).

As to the position of dependent sentences and, in particular, as to their insertion after the conjunction of another dependent sentence so that two of them meet each other. See p. 380.

4. In conclusion as to the place of the conjunctions introducing the dependent sentence, the general rule, according to which they come at the commencement, admits an exception, partly also to ordinary prose. A member of the dependent sentence itself namely, may be placed before the conjunctions belonging here, as also before the relative pronoun.

From burning suns when livid deaths descend (POPE, Essay on M. 1, 142.). *Made for his use all creatures* if he call, Say what their use had he the powr's of all? (1, 177.). Then *in madness and in bliss*, If my lips should dare to kiss Thy taper fingers amorously, Again thou blushest angerly (TENNYS. p. 16.). *Small* though the number was that kept the town, They fought it out (MARLOWE, Jew of M. 2, 2.). The planet Earth *so steadfast* though she seem (MILT., P. L. 8, 129.). *Oft on those errands* though she went in vain . . He bore her absence for its pious end (TH. CAMPBELL, Theodric). [As to *though, that* and as with an adjective or substantive preceding them and as to their distinction See p. 494] *On their own axis* as the Planets run . . So etc. (POPE, Essay on M. 3, 313.). The hands, *the spear* that lately grasp'd (SCOTT, L. Minstr. 5. 6.) The dark seas, *thy towers* that lave (Lord of the Isles 1, 1.). Thus this infinitive may precede, in the relative sentence, the object with *whose* belonging to the infinitive. Speed, *to describe* whose swift-

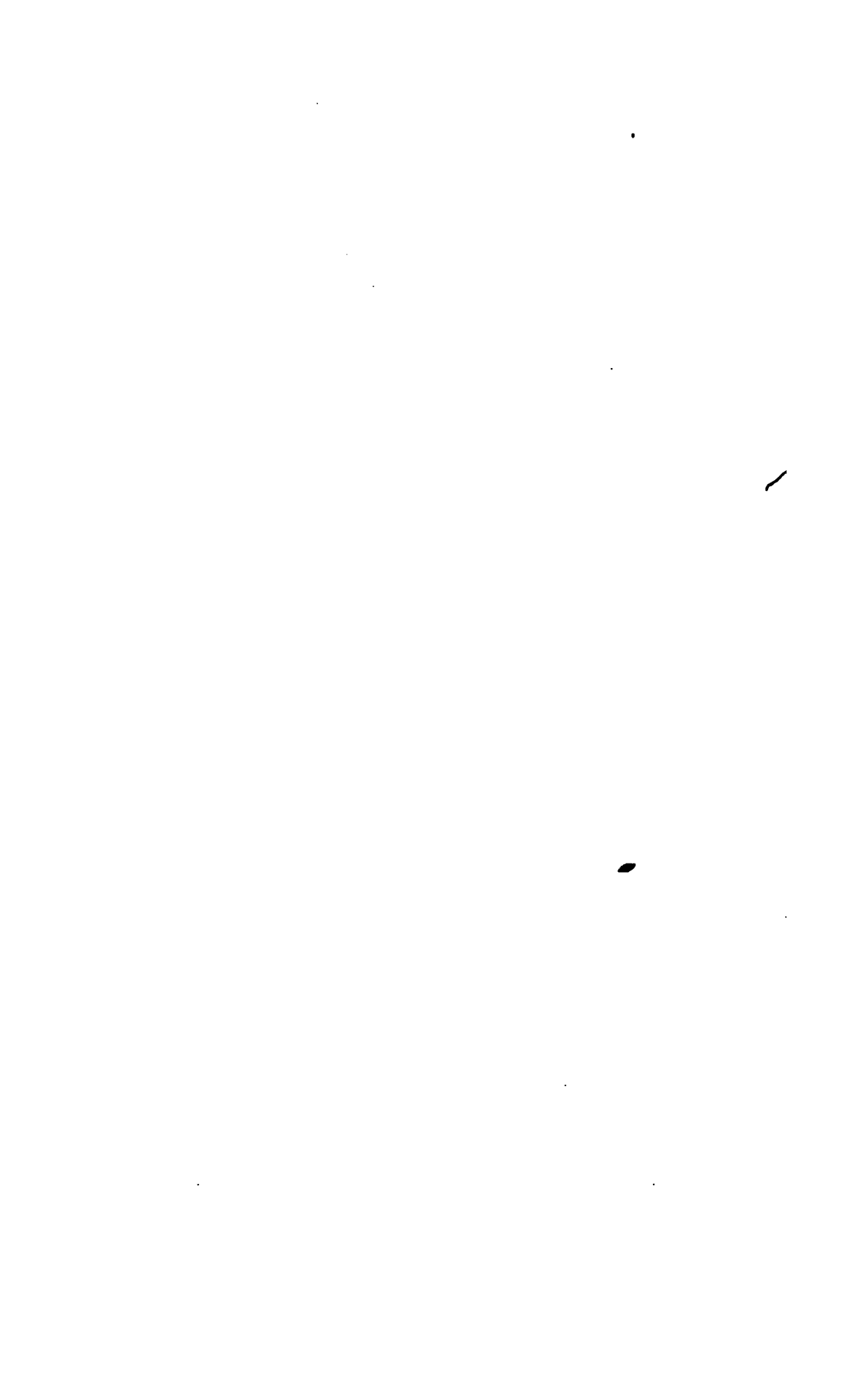
ness number fails (MILT., P. L. 8, 38.). She . . . *To guide* whose hand the sister arts combine (BYRON, Engl. Bards p. 327.). The relative pronoun even as the member of another dependent sentence, always precedes its conjunction, except the particle *than*. See p. 570.

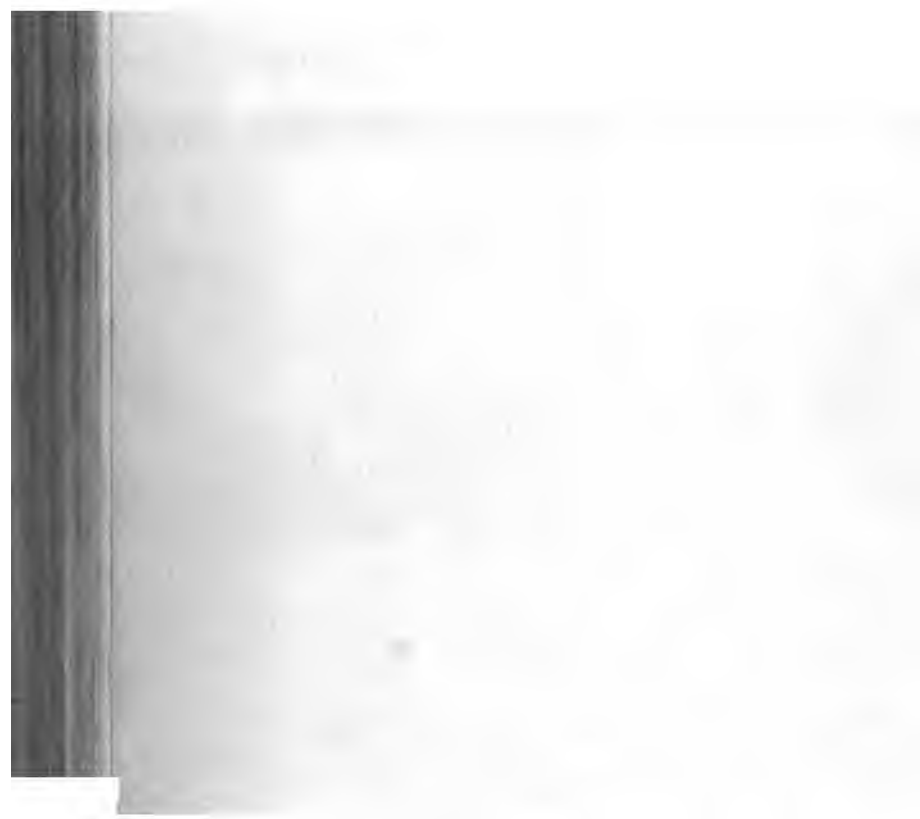
The insertion of the particles and of the relative pronoun was very familiar in ancient times, especially in poetry. Old-Engl.: *Togedyr* when the hoostes mete, The archeres myghte no more schete (RICH. C. DE L. 4521.). *The prisoun* when he cam to, With his ax he smot tho (2209). *To the mete* when thou art y-sette, Fayre . . . thou ete hytte (HALLIW., Freemas. 731.). Lothe *from Sodome* when he yede, Thre cytees brent yit eschapyd he (TOWN. M. p. 35.). No sojornyng he no nam, *To Mace-doyne* til he came (ALIS. 125.). Now xal wepyng me fode and fede, *Some comforte* tyll God sende (COV. MYST. p. 328.). *Zitt this dede* or I fulfyll . . . thi mouth I kys (p. 54.). Sum other man he had in honde, *Hens* sythe that I went (p. 118.). Ac y wol, *with good skile* *Your* *privet* that thou hele (ALIS. 439.). Thou save as sekyl . . . *Synne* that we noon done (COV. MYST. p. 42.). When thou comest byfore a lorde . . . *Hod or cappe* that thou of do (HALLIW., Freemas. 695.). *De wateres* for to loken aboute þe se heo were, *A companie of þis maydenes* so þat heo mette þere (R. OF GL. I. 96.). *Drunken mon* þif [leg. gif] þu mestes etc. (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. I. 186.). Aȝens God þe don amys, *Hys byddyng* yf þe xuld forsake (COV. MYST. p. 54.). Ys herte Tas euere god, *ȝong* þey he were (R. OF GL. I. 167.). He wolde no wyff . . . *With grete tresore* though he her fonde (RICH. C. DE L. 45.). *In maistres bokes* as we fyndith (ALIS. 6171.). Heo . . . *My wiȝ* that shulde be (WRIGHT A. HALLIW., Rel. Ant. II. 121. cf. 122.). Where God Almighty . . . *Fourmed Adam our fader* that was (ALIS. 5686.). *Ony werke* of synful dede, *Oure lord God* that xulde agryse (COV. MYST. p. 41.). Hallsax.: þat he heom wolde leaden . . . out of þeowedome, *freo* þat heo weoren (LAȜAM. I. 16.). Brutus him swar an æð *braken* þat he hit nælde (I. 30. cf. 183.). *Halde* ȝeif þe wulleð, eow swal [leg. scal] beon þe betere (I. 231.). Ða com his lifes ende, *lað* þah him were (I. 11. cf. 26. 45. 99. II. 118. 532. III. 33.). *In his wæize* þat he funde, al he hit acqualde (III. 66.). This insertion of conjunctions, where a member of the dependent sentence is to be made prominent, familiar to Latin and widely diffused in Hallsaxon, is disfavoured in Anglosax., where the whole members of the dependent sentence usually meet within the conjunction, leaving, however, full freedom to inversion, as in the principal sentence.

It may also be incidentally remarked that, where a relative or pronoun precedes the relative as in: on *either which* . . . (BUTL., Hud. I, 1, 67.). . . *all which* he understood (I, 1, 135.). . . *both which* I conceived myself to possess (SCOTT, R. Roy 6.) etc., an appositive relation properly takes place, in which at the same time another determination of the substantive notion is added to the adjective sentence.

5. As to the Concatenation and Interweaving of Dependent Sentences see p. 383.

Printed by Unger brothers (Th. Grimm), Berlin.







.

.

]

.....

.

.

.